https://ntrs.nasa.gov/search.jsp?R=19790003956 2017-09-18T16:03:37+00:00Z

NASA
SP-4204

Moonport

A History of Apollo Launch Facilities and Operations

National Aeronautics and Space Administration

Moonport
A History of Apollo Launch Facilities and Operations

USA

NASA SP-4204

Moonport
A History of Apollo Launch Facilities and Operations

Charles D. Benson
William Barnaby Faherty

The NASA History Series

Scientific and Technical Information Office 1978
NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND SPACE ADMINISTRATION
Washington, D.C.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Benson, Charles D.
Moonport.

(The NASA history series) (NASA SP ; 4204)
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.
1. John F. Kennedy Space Center—History.
I. Faherty, William Barnaby, 1914- joint author. II. Title. III. Series: United States. National Aeronautics and Space Administration. The NASA History series. IV. Series: United States. National Aeronautics and Space Administration. NASA SP ; 4204.
TL4027.F52J635 629.47'8'0975927 77-29118

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 (paper cover)

Stock No. 033-000-00740-0/Catalog No. NAS 1.21:4204

CONTENTS

Page

Foreword xiii

Preface xv

1. The First Steps 1
2. Launch Complex 34 17
3. Launching the First Saturn I Booster 41
4. Origins of the Mobile Moonport 65
5. Acquiring a Launch Site 87
6. LC-39 Plans Take Shape 109
7. The Launch Directorate Becomes an Operating Center 133
8. Funding the Project 153
9. Apollo Integration 173
10. Saturn I Launches (1962–1965) 191
11. Ground Plans for Outer-Space Ventures 221
12. From Designs to Structures 247
13. New Devices for New Deeds 271
14. Socio-Economic Problems on the Space Coast 299
15. Putting It All Together: LC-39 Site Activation 317
16. Automating Launch Operations 347
17. Launching the Saturn IB 365
18. The Fire That Seared the Spaceport 381
19. Apollo 4: The Trial Run 403
20. Man on Apollo 435
21. Success 461
22. A Slower Pace: Apollo 12–14 479
23. Extended Lunar Exploration: Apollo 15–17 505
24. Five Years After 527

Appendixes

A. Launches of Saturn IB and Saturn V 533

B. Launch Complex 39 535

Page
C. Apollo 9 (AS-504) Countdown 538
D. Apollo 11 (AS-506) LC-39 Processing 544
E. Apollo 14 (AS-509) Countdown 548
Source Notes 553
Bibliography 599
Index 619

Illustrations

Figure
Frontispiece. Apollo 17 during the countdown demonstration, 21 November 1972.
1. Map of Cape Canaveral and vicinity, ca. 1958 5
2. View south from lighthouse on Cape Canaveral, ca. 1950 6
3. ICBM row, 1967 9
4. Master plan for launch complex 34 22
5. Flame deflector, support arms, and hold-down arms at LC-34 24
6. LC-34 pad under construction, 1960 25
7. LC-34 service structure 28
8. LC-34 blockhouse 31
9. High-pressure gas facility, LC-34 33
10. LOX facility, service structure, and pad, LC-34 33
11. LOX facility, LC-34 33
12. Flame deflector in position beneath the pad 35
13. Top of the pedestal, LC-34 35
14. LC-34 soon after dedication 38
15. LC-34 39
16. Jupiter, Juno, and Saturn models 42
17. Long cable mast for LC-34 48
18. The *Compromise* carrying SA-1 51
19. Transporting SA-1 to the pad 52
20. Lifting the first stage from the transporter 54
21. Hoisting the first stage 54
22. Setting the first stage on support arms, LC-34 54
23. Erecting the upper stages of a Saturn I 55
24. Liftoff of Saturn I 63
25. Map of launch complexes at Cape Canaveral, 1963 66
26. Possible offshore launch facility, 1961 70

Figure Page
27. Possible mobile launch concept, 1961 84
28. Land acquisition, 1962–1964 99
29. Titan-Saturn siting controversy 99
30. Sketch of proposed C-4, being moved by barge 114
31. Sketch of proposed Nova, being moved by rail 114
32. Steam-shovel crawler used in surface coal mining 119
33. Open version of proposed assembly building 124
34. Closed version of proposed assembly building 124
35. Briefing President Kennedy, 1963 147
36. Seamans, von Braun, Kennedy, 1963 147
37. Apollo-Saturn V document tree 151
38. Cost of LC-39 160
39. Government-industry team behind Apollo 174
40. SA-4 ready for launch, March 1963 195
41. Proposed launch complex 37 197
42. LC-37 under construction 198
43. LC-37 service structure 200
44. LC-37 service structure in open position 201
45. Industrial area on the Cape 204
46. Mating spacecraft modules 204
47. The Pregnant Guppy 206
48. Transporting SA-5 first stage 206
49. Erecting SA-5 207
50. Service structure moving back from SA-5 210
51. Launch of SA-5 213
52. Launch of SA-5, moments later 213
53. Pad damage caused by launch 214
54. Petrone briefing President Johnson, 1964 217
55. Countdown demonstration test of SA-8 218
56. Cutaway view of assembly building 226
57. Sketch of assembly building, 1963 228
58. Sketch of launch control center, 1963 231
59. Model of launch control center 232
60. Cross-section of crawlerway 234
61. Sketch of LC-39 pad 236
62. Model of LC-39 pad A 237
63. LC-39 milestone chart, 1964 239

Figure Page

64. Map of LC-39 and Merritt Island industrial area, 1963 240
65. Hypergolic building in the fluid test complex 243
66. Dredging hydraulic fill from Banana River 248
67. Barge canal and turning basin 248
68. Wharf at turning basin under construction 249
69. Hydraulic fill piled on site of LC-39 pad A 249
70. Driving piles for assembly building, August 1963 255
71. Driving piles for assembly building, September 1963 255
72. Pouring floor of assembly building 256
73. Assembly building under construction, May 1964 258
74. Assembly building under construction, September 1964 258
75. Assembly building under construction, October 1964 259
76. Assembly building under construction, January 1965 259
77. Launch control center under construction, 1964 261
78. Firing room 1 under construction 262
79. Firing room 1 ready for equipping 262
80. Extensible work platform for assembly building 264
81. Topping-out ceremony 265
82. Interior of operations and checkout building 267
83. Sketch of Saturn V on crawler-transporter 271
84. Schematic of crawler-transporter 273
85. Crawler-transporters under construction 275
86. First test of crawler-transporter 276
87. Crawler-transporter ready for service 276
88. Building crawlerway through marshy terrain 278
89. Crawlerway under construction 278
90. Crawlerway nearing completion 279
91. Mobile launchers under construction 280
92. Platform and base of tower of mobile launcher 280
93. Mobile launcher on crawler-transporter 281
94. One of the nine swing arms 282
95. Schematic of hold-down arm 287
96. Hold-down arm ready for installation 287
97. Tail service mast 288
98. Start of construction of LC-39 pad A 290
99. Cellular construction of hardstand 290
100. Pad A under construction 291

Figure Page

101. Pad A virtually complete 291
102. Model of service structure 293
103. Crawler-transporter ready to pick up service structure 294
104. Aerial mosaic of Cape Canaveral, 1967 311
105. Site activation schedules 321
106. Crawler carrying a mobile launcher 329
107. Sketch of crawler bearing, which failed 329
108. Sketch of redesigned sleeve bearing 329
109. LC-39 site activation master schedule 331
110. Critical path summary for site activation 332
111. Service arm 9 ready for installation 336
112. Service arm 9 being mounted on mobile launcher 337
113. AS-500F emerging from the assembly building 340
114. Same event, as seen from the air 341
115. AS-500F starting up the incline to the pad 341
116. Crawler carrying the service structure 342
117. Diagram of the LOX spill, August 1966 343
118. LC-39 computer system schematic 351
119. Operations in the firing room 354
120. Automatic checkout of spacecraft 363
121. Automatic checkout equipment room 363
122. Schematic of Saturn IB 368
123. Second stage of Saturn IB 370
124. Second stage for AS-201 being hoisted at pad 34 370
125. Second stage for AS-201 stacked at pad 34 370
126. Service module for AS-201 371
127. Crew of AS-204 381
128. Mating AS-204 spacecraft modules 387
129. Interior of AS-204 after the fire 393
130. Exterior of AS-204 after the fire 393
131. Schematic of S-IC, first stage of Saturn V 406
132. Schematic of the second stage, S-II 406
133. Schematic of the third stage, S-IVB 407
134. Schematic of the instrument unit of Saturn V 407
135. Flow chart for assembling Saturn V 410
136. S-IC stage in assembly building 411
137. Stacking the space vehicle: the second stage 414

Figure Page
138. Stacking the third stage 415
139. Stacking the instrument unit 416
140. Adding Apollo on top of the Saturn 417
141. View from top of AS-501 418
142. Test cells in low bays of assembly building 419
143. Milestones in checkout of Saturn V 420
144. Crawler under mobile launcher and Saturn V 422
145. AS-501 en route to the pad 423
146. AS-501 being tested on pad 39A 424
147. Firing room in launch control center 425
148. Working with mockup of lunar module 436
149. Spacecraft simulator 445
150. Astronauts and spacecraft in altitude chamber 446
151. Apollo 7 flight crew 448
152. Lunar module on the Super Guppy 453
153. Apollo officials in launch control center during countdown 472
154. Apollo 11 spacecraft in altitude chamber 473
155. Testing the landing gear of the lunar module 473
156. Mating command and service modules with spacecraft–lunar module adapter 473
157. Departure of Apollo 11 475
158. Cutaway of Apollo 13 fuel cells and cryogenic tanks 493
159. Hydrogen tank shelf 493
160. Schematic of oxygen tank 493
161. Training aids for simulating work on the moon 498
162. Practicing with scientific gear 498
163. Practicing setting up the flag 498
164. The lunar surface ultraviolet camera 506
165. Deployment of the lunar rover 512
166. Apollo 15 astronauts training with rover 512
167. Apollo 17 astronauts with the rover 513
168. Rep. Olin Teague and Mrs. Teague in the rover 513
169. Diagram of crew equipment stowage in Apollo 15 521

Tables

Table Page

1. Comparison of rockets launched by MFL/LOD/LOC, 1953–1965 18
2. Launch complex 34 cost estimates 29
3. RF instrumentation test procedures, SA-1 59
4. Comparison of proposed launch complexes 76
5. Dimensions and weights of proposed launch vehicles 81
6. Slippages in LC-39 site activation, 20 January 1966 334

Page intentionally left blank

FOREWORD

By now the grandeur of the achievement of landing men on the moon and returning them to earth has taken its place in our language as a yardstick of human accomplishment—"If we could send men to the moon, why can't we do so-and-so?" The most imposing artifact of that achievement is the Apollo launch facilities at Kennedy Space Center.

When the national objective of landing men on the moon was dramatically announced in May 1961, it quickly became apparent within NASA that the remainder of the decade was little enough time to design, build, and equip the extensive and unprecedented facilities required to launch such missions. Indeed, time was so pressing that for many months the planning, designing, even initial construction of launch facilities had to go forward without answers to some essential questions, such as: How big would the launch vehicle(s) be? How many launches would there be, and how often?

Intense effort by a rapidly growing team of people in government, industry, and the universities gradually filled in the grand design and answered those questions. Land was acquired, ground was broken, pipe was laid, concrete was poured, buildings rose. When the launch vehicles and spacecraft arrived, the facilities were ready and operations could begin. Seldom was the pressure off or the path smooth, but the end of the decade saw the deadline met, the task accomplished.

This history tells the story of the Apollo launch facilities and launch operations from the beginning of design through the final launch. You will meet many of the cast of thousands who took part in the great adventure. You will read of the management techniques used to control so vast an undertaking, of innovation in automation, of elaborate, repetitive, exhaustive testing on the ground to avoid failures in space. You will also learn something of the impact of the Apollo program on the citrus groves and quiet beaches of Florida's east coast.

It is fitting that, as this manuscript was being prepared, these same facilities were being modified to serve as the launch site for Apollo's successor, the Space Shuttle, for at least the remainder of this century.

August 1977

Lee R. Scherer
Director
Kennedy Space Center

Page intentionally left blank

PREFACE

On 28 July 1960, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) announced a new manned spaceflight program. Called Apollo, its aim was to put three astronauts into sustained earth orbit, or into a flight around the moon. The timing of the announcement was not auspicious. The next day, NASA's first Mercury-Atlas (MA-1) disintegrated and fell into the ocean 58 seconds after takeoff from Cape Canaveral. This disaster ushered in a bleak four months during which the test rocket Little Joe 5 joined the MA-1 in the ocean, and the first Mercury-Redstone lifted a fraction of an inch and settled back on its launch pad. The last failure, on 21 November, marked the absolute nadir of morale for the engineers working on Mercury. The people at the new NASA headquarters in Washington, coping with financial and administrative problems and facing a change of administration after the national election, were only a little less dispirited than the workers in the field. But the fledgling space agency had an asset that made its announcement of an ambitious Apollo program more than an exercise in wishful thinking—it had the support of the American people.

If there is an American psyche, it had been shaken 4 October 1957 by the news that Russia had launched the first man-made earth satellite—Sputnik 1. To those apprehensive of anything Soviet, the news was a red flag. The military and the President played down Sputnik's significance, but a layman could not but wonder if Sputnik was one of those scientific breakthroughs that could alter the balance of power. The average American was perhaps most concerned because someone else was excelling in technology—an area in which the U.S. was accustomed to leading.

There was an almost unanimous determination to get into the space race and win it. Three Presidents, with firm support from Congress, channeled the public will into an answer to the Russian challenge. Lyndon B. Johnson, the Senate majority leader, pushed the Aeronautics and Space Act through Congress in 1958. Under its authority, President Eisenhower set up NASA and transferred the armed services' non-military space activities to the new civilian agency. The following year NASA received a vital asset—the Army team of former German V-2 experts who were working up plans for Saturn, a large rocket. Assigned the task of manned spaceflight, NASA's immediate goal was the successful orbiting of a man aboard a Mercury spacecraft. NASA's Ten Year Plan of Space Exploration, revealed to Congress in early 1960, called for nearly 260 varied launches during the next decade, with a manned flight to the moon after 1970. The House Committee on Science and Astronautics considered it a good program except that it did not move ahead fast enough.

Meanwhile, the Russians were not idle. On 12 April 1961, they put Major Yuri A. Gagarin into orbit around earth. The Soviet Union and the United States were locked in a confrontation of prestige in Cuba, in Berlin—and in space. Convinced it was necessary to show the world what America could do, President Kennedy told Congress on 25 May 1961:

> Now it is time to take longer strides—time for a great new American enterprise—time for this nation to take a clearly leading role in space achievement which in many ways may hold the key to our future on earth . . . . I believe that this nation should commit itself to achieving the goal, before this decade is out, of landing a man on the moon and returning him safely to earth. No single space project in this period will be more exciting or more impressive to mankind or more important for the long-range exploration of space and none will be so difficult or expensive to accomplish . . . . In a very real sense, it will not be one man going to the moon—it will be an entire nation. For all of us must work together to put him there.

If President and people were agreed on the end, what about the means? Kennedy's proposal was not made lightly. Before coming to a decision, he had taken counsel with advisors who believed that the moon project was feasible, largely because it could be accomplished without any new scientific or engineering discoveries. It could be done ''within the existing state-of-the-art'' by expanding and extending the technology that existed at that time.

What was the ''existing state-of-the-art'' as of 25 May 1961? Since December 1957, when the first Vanguard orbital launch attempt had collapsed in flame before a television audience, the United States had tried to put 25 other scientific satellites into earth orbit; 10 had been successful. Two meteorological satellites had been placed into orbit, and both had operated properly. Two passive communications satellites had been launched, but only one had achieved orbit. Nine probes had been launched toward the moon; none had hit their target, although three achieved a limited success by returning scientific data during flight. After its 1960 failures, NASA had put a Mercury with Alan B. Shepard aboard into suborbital flight on 5 May 1961.

Just 18 months before the Kennedy recommendation, the Atlas military missile, at that time America's most powerful space booster, had made its first flight of intercontinental range—some 10000 kilometers. Not three years had gone by since the smaller intermediate range ballistic missiles, Jupiter and Thor, had made their first full-range flights. Yet by May of 1961 none of these military rockets had reached a high degree of reliability as space carriers.

When the President laid his proposed goal before the Congress, the spacecraft that would carry man to the moon existed only as a theoretical concept tentatively named Apollo.

The powerful rocket that would be necessary to launch the spacecraft with sufficient velocity to escape earth's gravity was only a few lines on an engineer's scratch pad. Conceivably, it would be one of a family named Saturn: specially designed space carrier vehicles, each generation larger and of greater power than the preceding one. The first Saturn would not make its maiden flight for another six months.

The vast support, checkout, and launch facilities of the earthbound base whence men would launch other men on their journey did not exist. The moonport had yet to be located, designed, built, and activated—and this book tells that story.

Other books now being prepared for NASA deal with the other aspects of the program—the Saturn launch vehicles, the Apollo spacecraft, astronaut training and the missions. Another volume, a history of NASA administration, 1963–69, will include the headquarters story of Apollo.

The central feature of this book is launch complex 39 (LC-39), where American astronauts were launched toward the moon. Its story begins in early 1961 with the earliest plans for a mobile launch complex and proceeds through design and construction to the launching of Apollo 11 and subsequent lunar missions. The construction story is a big one—the building of the Apollo launch facilities was the largest project of its time. In many ways, however, the operations at LC-39 were an even greater challenge. As an Apollo program manager has noted, the Kennedy Space Center was at the "tail end of the whip." There all the parts of the Apollo program came together for the first time. The launch team ensured that the space vehicle would work.

While LC-39 is the principal focal point, it is not the only one. Two other Apollo-Saturn complexes on Cape Canaveral, LC-34 and LC-37, launched the program's early flights; at LC-34 the program's great tragedy occurred. The Apollo spacecraft were tested in the operations and checkout building in the Merritt Island industrial area. Vital telemetry equipment was located nearby in the central instrumentation facility. Moreover, the size and shape of the launch facilities were largely determined by the Saturn family of launch vehicles, which were produced under the direction of Marshall Space Flight Center at Huntsville, and by the Apollo spacecraft, under the Manned Spacecraft Center at Houston. An understanding of launch facilities and operations requires, to some degree, an appreciation of program-wide activities.

The history is complicated because planning, construction, and launch operations were conducted concurrently during much of the program. Three topics take up most of the first ten chapters: the construction of launch complexes 34 and 37 and the subsequent Saturn I tests; the planning of a moonport on Merritt Island and the purchase of that area; and the buildup of the launch team. Chapters 11–15 relate the design, construction, and activation of launch complex 39. Chapters 16–23 describe the Apollo launch operations from early 1966 through the launch of Apollo 17 in December 1972. Chapter 24 is a tentative summing-up.

The work comprehends three kinds of history: official, contemporary, and technological. The technology of the moonport crossed many scientific and engineering disciplines from microelectronics to civil engineering; expertise was needed in telemetry, fluid mechanics, cryogenics, computers—even lightning strikes. Although NASA engineers gave us a great deal of help, it was our task to make the technical terms comprehensible. Another problem stems from NASA's requirement that its authors use the new international system of units. One obvious way to comply, without losing most of our readers, would have been to give all measurements in both international and old-fashioned units. Unfortunately, with that solution the prose immediately bogs down. We have therefore proceeded as follows. First, where physical units were not essential, we have eliminated them. Second, the more familiar of the international units, such as meters and kilograms, we have used alone. Third, only the more esoteric terms, such as newtons, have we translated in the text.

The contemporary historian's task is to walk into a virgin forest of unsifted materials, with no clearings made by destruction of the unimportant and no trails blazed by prior researchers. Yet the journey can be propitious: we were able to interview hundreds of eyewitnesses who told it as they saw it. They recalled personality conflicts that sometimes affected major decisions. They narrated events never put down in writing and reached into personal files for documents not available in the archives. The use of eyewitnesses naturally required the resolution of some conflicting evidence, and their additional material increased the problems of selection. The insights gained, however, more than compensated for the trouble.

The great weakness of contemporary history, a want of perspective, is irremediable. Until the Russian story is on the record, our view of the space race is limited. Future judgments of the Apollo program will reflect further developments in space exploration. Thus, with respect to the launch facilities, the wisdom of building the moonport in the way it was done depends in part on the programs to be launched henceforth. The moonport was funded, designed, and built on the assumption that the lunar landing was only a beginning. With these considerations in mind, we defer to 21st-century historians a definitive evaluation of the effort.

Under the contract with the University of Florida, NASA enjoyed the rights to final review and publication of this book. We worked largely from NASA documents and with NASA officials. This may have tempered some of our conclusions, consciously or not, but we are satisfied that this is not a court history. Criticisms directed at the Kennedy Space Center (KSC) team and mistakes in the launch operations are treated in detail. Contrary to the wishes of some participants, conflicts within the program are aired. A greater fault may lie in our dependence on NASA documents. Although we tried to balance the account with corporation documents and interviews, the history inevitably focuses on NASA's direction of Apollo launch operations. The Apollo contractors and other support agencies, such as the Air Force, may receive less than their due.

Understandably, our treatment of certain events will not satisfy everyone. For example, too much controversy still surrounds the Apollo-Saturn 204 fire. We have largely avoided two other controversial questions. Was the KSC operation more or less efficient than other governmental projects of the 1960s? There was undoubtedly waste in the construction of the Apollo launch facilities and in the launch operations, but we are not in a position to judge the cost efficiency of the KSC team against similar projects, such as a large defense contract. The second question—the worth of the Apollo program—will be, as previously stated, left to future historians. In our personal view it was a noble goal, nobly achieved.

A word is in order with regard to Kennedy Space Center speech usages, especially acronyms. The scientists and engineers at KSC do not use a peculiar tongue to mystify the layman—but as a matter of fact, that is one result. When an LCC man says "the crawler is bringing the bird back from pad 39 to the VAB," he is understood by anyone at the space port. Every discipline has its technical language, which sometimes goes too far. We believe we reached the nadir in space jargon when we uncovered the record of a "Saturn V Human Engineering Interstage Interaction Splinter Meeting of the Vehicle Mechanical Design Integration Working Group."

Apollo scientists and engineers were establishing a terminology for new things; no one had defined them in the past because such things did not exist. *Module* is an example. As late as 1967, the *Random House Dictionary of the English Language* gave as the fifth definition of *module* under *computer technology:* "A readily interchangeable unit containing electronic components, especially one that may be readily plugged in or detached from a computer system." The space world was well ahead of the dictionary because, as every American television viewer knew, a module—command, service, or lunar—was a unit of the spacecraft that went to the moon. *Interface* is another word that was recast at the space center. Defined in the dictionary as "a surface that lies between two parts of matter or space and forms their common boundary," it grew to encompass any kind of interaction at KSC. Perhaps this was subliminal recognition that Kennedy Space Center was the Great Interface where the many parts and plans that went into the moon launch had to be fitted together.

Like all government agencies since 1950, NASA made extensive use of acronyms. In February 1971, the Documents Department of the Kennedy Space Center Library compiled a selective list of acronyms and abbreviations. It contained more than 9500 entries. We have tried to avoid acronyms as much as possible; when used, the acronym is coupled with its full and formal terminology on its first use.

The astronauts were quick to acknowledge that Apollo was a team effort. Appropriately enough, the same can be said for this history of the Apollo launch operations. We drew extensively upon the work of previous researchers. Dr. James Covington and Mr. James J. Frangie prepared material on the design and construction of the launch facilities. Dr. George Bittle and Mr. John Marshall performed helpful research on launch operations. Mr. William A. Lockyer and Mr. Frank E. Jarrett of the KSC historical office provided much reliable criticism. Dr. David Bushnell, the University of Florida's project director for the history, rendered administrative and editorial assistance. Finally, thanks are due to scores of KSC personnel who provided recollections, documents, and patient explanations on the workings of Apollo.

1

THE FIRST STEPS

Genesis of the Saturn Program

America took its first step toward the moon in the spring of 1957, four years before President Kennedy declared the lunar expedition a national mission. While still preparing for the launch of its first Jupiter (31 May 1957), the Army rocket team at Huntsville, Alabama, began studies of a booster ten times more powerful than the 667 200-newton (150 000-pound-thrust) Jupiter. The tenfold increase in thrust could put a weather and communications satellite into orbit around the earth, or propel a space probe out of earth's orbit.

The change of emphasis from intermediate range and intercontinental ballistic missiles (Jupiter, Thor, Atlas) to a super-rocket capable of space exploration signified a change of attitudes at the Department of Defense. The change was also grounded in interservice politics: the previous November, Secretary of Defense Charles Wilson had assigned responsibility for all intermediate and long-range missiles to the Air Force. If the Army was to stay in the big-rocket business, it would have to find new tasks for its Wernher von Braun team of rocket experts at the Redstone Arsenal in Huntsville.* Maj. Gen. John B. Medaris, commander of the Army Ballistic Missile Agency (ABMA), set his sights on the new super-rocket, subsequently to be named Saturn.[†1]

Medaris's effort to gain Defense Department support for the big rocket was bolstered by the Soviet Union's accomplishments in the fall of 1957. The contrast between the 500-kilogram Sputnik 2 and America's

---

*In the collapse of the Third Reich in 1945, United States Army Ordnance seized 300 carloads of V-2 components—the operational rocket used by Germany in the last winter of the war. In addition, 115 German rocket specialists, led by Wernher von Braun, senior civilian scientist at the V-2 rocket station at Peenemünde, signed contracts to work in the United States. First located in Fort Bliss, Texas, and White Sands, New Mexico, the group was moved in 1950 to Redstone Arsenal, Huntsville, Alabama, headquarters for the Army Ballistic Missile Agency.

[†] Originally termed the Juno V, the super-rocket was renamed Saturn in Huntsville work papers of mid-1958, and the new name received official status in early 1959. From the beginning it had a dual connotation: (1) a clustered booster, and (2) a multistage rocket in which the clustered booster would serve as the first stage.

8-kilogram Explorer 1 was persuasive. In December von Braun's group (officially known as the Development Operations Division of the ABMA) set out arguments for the new booster program. The super-rocket would develop 6 672 000 newtons (1 500 000 pounds of thrust) and serve as a steppingstone to an even larger rocket capable of manned lunar missions. Its early development and adaptation in a multistage vehicle could accomplish a number of space objectives pointing toward a landing on the moon in 1967.[2]

Although the ABMA proposal was reinforced by the public's embarrassment over Sputnik, approval for the Huntsville project was delayed for several months. Medaris's program faced two obstacles: the Eisenhower administration's fiscal conservatism and the priority given to intercontinental missiles. While Medaris pressed his campaign, the von Braun team was far from idle. Between April 1957 and August 1958, ABMA logged 50 000 man-hours on the project. Finally, in July 1958, the Advanced Research Projects Agency, established earlier that year to coordinate Defense Department space activities, announced its intention to develop a super-rocket. The following month ABMA was directed to start on the Saturn.[3]

In September 1958, General Medaris and Roy Johnson, the Director of the Advanced Research Projects Agency, established a flight-test schedule of four Saturn launches. The first was set for September 1960. The third, eight months later, would employ an upper stage to place limited payloads in orbit. The written agreement between the two men was still shadowed by the Eisenhower administration's reluctance to spend money on non-military space ventures. Johnson promised to provide $72.3 million over a three-year period. (The Saturn I program would eventually cost more than a billion dollars.) The size of the commitment meant that, at least in the beginning, Saturn would operate on a shoestring.[4]

The original Saturn design reflected a concern to save time and money, and to employ components that could be moved by air transport. The booster made extensive use of available Army hardware. It used eight engines and a cylindrical center tank copied after the Jupiter, a single-stage rocket with a range of 2700 kilometers. For its eight clustered tanks, the von Braun team went back to their favorite Redstone rocket. The propellants would be RP-1 (kerosene) and liquid oxygen.

Early plans included a stipulation that no component could exceed 11 340 kilograms or a cross-sectional dimension of 3 meters, the maximum limits of aircraft transport at the time. To meet these limitations, the booster was initially designed with the center and eight outer tanks separate from the frame and engine assembly. The fuel tanks were to be mated with the frame on the launch pad. The idea was discarded in early 1959 for two reasons. Huntsville engineers agreed that flying out a disassembled thrust unit and rebuilding it on the pad would reduce reliability; and transportation studies indicated that air freight by 11 C-124s would cost more than construction of a cradle to carry the Saturn down the Tennessee River by barge.[5]

A Saturn Launch Site

With better than 20 years' experience, the von Braun team preached and practiced that rocket and launch pad must be mated on the drawing board, if they were to be compatible at the launching. The new rocket went hand in hand with its launching facility. The short-lived plan to transport the Saturn by air was prompted by ABMA's interest in launching a rocket into equatorial orbit from a site near the Equator; Christmas Island in the Central Pacific was a likely choice. Equatorial launch sites offered certain advantages over facilities within the continental United States. A launching due east from a site on the Equator could take advantage of the earth's maximum rotational velocity (460 meters per second) to achieve orbital speed. The more frequent overhead passage of the orbiting vehicle above an equatorial base would facilitate tracking and communications. Most important, an equatorial launch site would avoid the costly dogleg technique, a prerequisite for placing rockets into equatorial orbit from sites such as Cape Canaveral, Florida (28° north latitude). The necessary correction in the space vehicle's trajectory could be very expensive—engineers estimated that doglegging a Saturn vehicle into a low-altitude equatorial orbit from Cape Canaveral used enough extra propellant to reduce the payload by as much as 80%. In higher orbits, the penalty was less severe but still involved at least a 20% loss of payload. There were also significant disadvantages to an equatorial launch base: higher construction costs (about 100% greater), logistics problems, and the hazards of setting up an American base on foreign soil. Moreover in 1959 there was a question as to how many U.S. space missions would require equatorial orbits. The only definite plans for equatorial orbits were in connection with communications and meteorological satellites operating at 35 000 kilometers.[6]

While there was disagreement over the merits of an equatorial base for future Saturn operations, the Atlantic Missile Range was the clear choice for the developmental launchings. At the range's launch site, Cape Canaveral, the Air Force Missile Test Center provided administrative and logistical support. The range's ten tracking stations, stretching into the South Atlantic, gave good coverage of test flights. Moreover, ABMA's launch team, the Missile Firing Laboratory (MFL), had launched missiles from Cape Canaveral since 1953. Cost and time considerations agreed. As an MFL study noted, the Atlantic Missile Range met "the established [launch] criteria in the most efficient, timely manner at a minimum cost."[7]

The Making of "the Cape"

Cape Canaveral, better known as "the Cape," had been earmarked as a missile testing range in 1947.* An elbow of land jutting out into the Atlantic midway between Jacksonville and Miami, the Cape covers about 60 square kilometers. Early Spanish sailors, marking it down as the only major feature of the long Florida coast line, named it for its abundance of cane reeds. Its choice as a missile range was dictated by several factors: the planners could set up a line of tracking stations stretching southeasterly over the Atlantic to provide the longest range necessary for missile testing; the Banana River Naval Air Station could serve as a support base; and the launch area was accessible to water transportation. The Air Force took over the Banana River Naval Air Station on 1 September 1948, contemplating its use as a headquarters for a Joint Long Range Proving Ground. The Coast Guard opened its 2.5 square kilometers on Cape Canaveral to missile use in February 1950. The government obtained the remainder from private owners by negotiation or condemnation.

Cape Canaveral was a scenic but comparatively unsettled place—beautiful beaches, excellent fishing areas, a lighthouse, scattered private residences, an inn that became the Cape Canaveral Auxiliary Air Force Base Headquarters, a few unpaved roads or trails, a dock used by shrimpers, and welcome and unwelcome wildlife including deer, alligators, rattlesnakes, and many millions of the pests that gave their name to Mosquito Lagoon to the north. In a clearing, made by burning the underbrush and uprooting the palmettos with bulldozers, construction workers completed a concrete pad on 20 June 1950. They also cleared all land within 1.6 kilometers of the pad.

Few pictures reflect the state of American rocketry in 1950 so accurately as the first launch pad at Cape Canaveral. It was a 30-meter-wide layer of concrete, poured on top of sandy soil a little more than a kilometer north of the lighthouse. When a dozen jeeps and delivery trucks sank to their axles on the sandy paths that passed for roads, a layer of gravel was laid over the

---

*The selection was made by a Joint Chiefs of Staff committee. When the armed services went into rocketry in 1945, the Army stationed its launch team of German V-2 experts at White Sands, New Mexico—near the scene of Robert Hutchings Goddard's pioneering work in the 1930s. The southwestern desert proved too small for rockets. On 29 May 1947, a modified V-2 went the wrong way and landed in a cemetery south of Juarez, Mexico—one of the factors that decided the Joint Chiefs to move rocket experiments to the east coast of Florida.

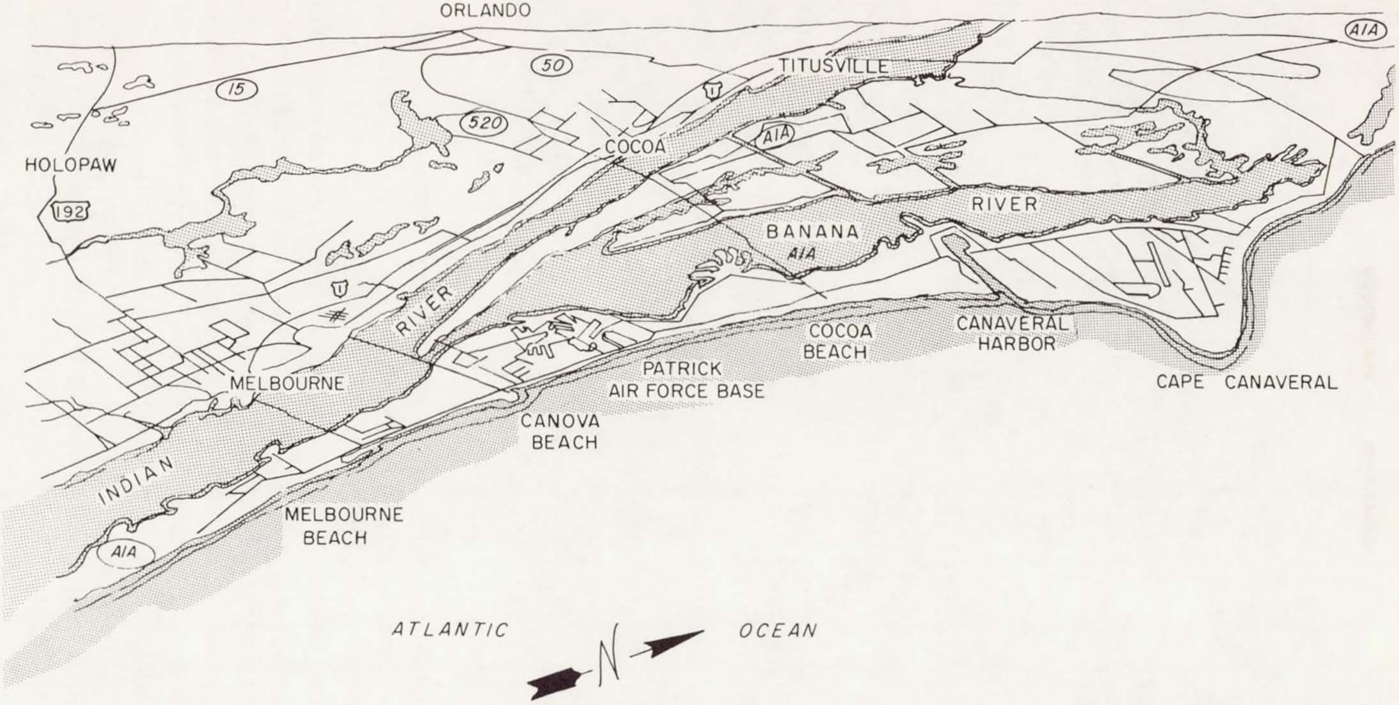

ORLANDO
A1A
50
15
TITUSVILLE
1
520
COCOA
A1A
HOLOPAW
192
RIVER
BANANA
A1A
1
RIVER
MELBOURNE
PATRICK
AIR FORCE BASE
COCOA
BEACH
CANAVERAL
HARBOR
CAPE CANAVERAL
CANOVA
BEACH
INDIAN
MELBOURNE
BEACH
A1A
ATLANTIC
N
OCEAN

Fig. 1. Cape Canaveral and vicinity, ca. 1958.

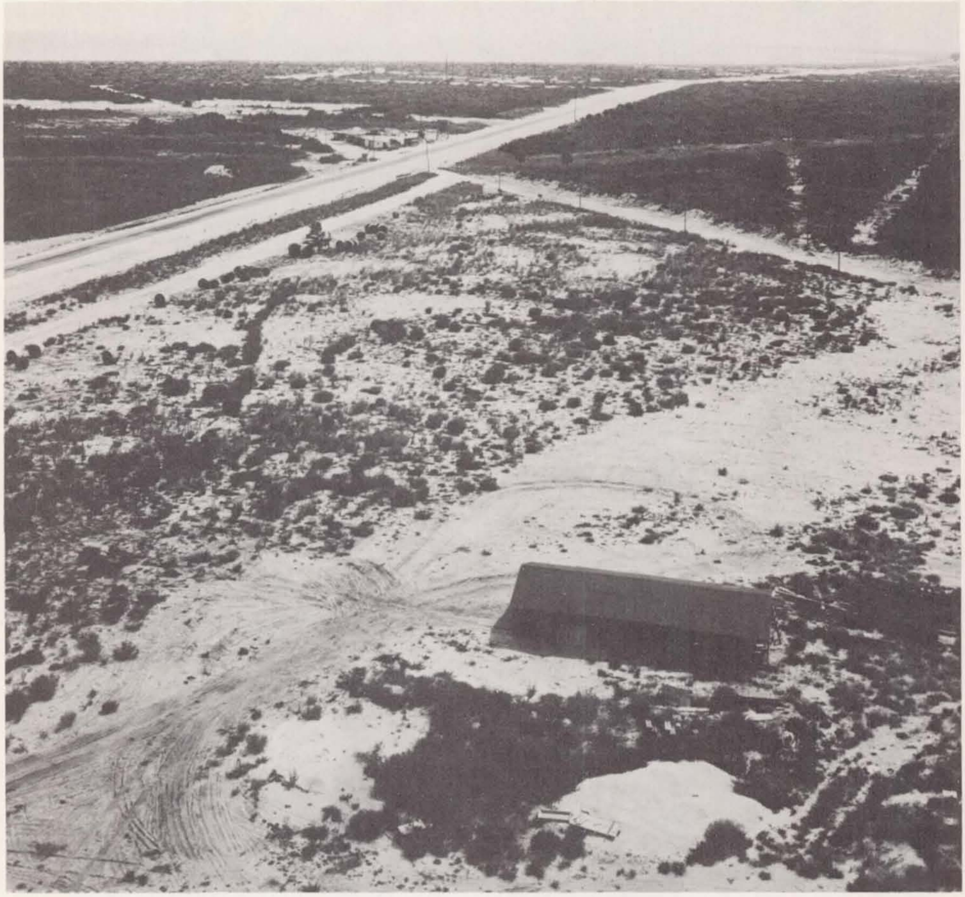


Fig. 2. Cape Canaveral. View south from the lighthouse, ca. 1950.

sand. Steel scaffolding, purchased from painters, surrounded the missile to form the first gantry, or service support tower. Plywood platforms stood at various levels of the scaffolding. If more than ten workers climbed the piping at the same time, the whole rickety framework seemed ready to fall down. The crew stacked sandbags around an old shack, a onetime dressing room for swimmers, and turned it into a launch control blockhouse. It stood a scant 91 meters from the pad. A row of trailers contained additional facilities to coordinate countdown, information, and reports from tracking sites. Heat and humidity sapped men's energy. Mosquitoes saturated the air.

The primitive spaceport was inaugurated 19 July 1950 by Bumper 7, a modified V-2 first stage combined with a WAC Corporal second stage. While the launch crew—Army, General Electric, and California Institute of Technology people—and 100 newsmen waited on the beach, Bumper 7 sputtered and fizzled at countdown. An autopsy revealed that salt air had corroded some of its elements. Five days later, the launch crew tried again with Bumper 8, a sister missile. The missile rose steadily into the air while a thundering roar rolled across the Cape. At 15 500 meters, the WAC Corporal second stage ignited and accelerated to 4350 kilometers per hour before dropping into the sea. Thereafter, the Cape was in almost continuous use as the armed services brought missiles to Florida for testing—the Lark, Matador, Snark, Bomarc.[8]

The Cape had its share of growing pains. The Korean War diverted funds. The multi-service operation posed problems. On 30 June 1951, the Defense Department changed the official title of the Air Force unit managing the Cape from Headquarters, Joint Long Range Proving Ground Division, to Headquarters, Air Force Missile Test Center, with the Air Force in sole charge. The Cape was designated the Cape Canaveral Missile Test Annex. The Navy had Point Mugu, California, and the Army had White Sands, New Mexico. But soon after the Army's rocket team moved to Huntsville, a representative was knocking on the door at the Cape, asking for launch facilities.

In the meantime, negotiations with Great Britain resulted in the Bahamas Long Range Proving Ground Agreement on 21 July 1951. This pact and subsequent agreements gave the United States the use of a 1600-kilometer range through the Bahamas with tracking stations at Point Jupiter, Florida; Grand Bahamas Bank; and Grand Turk Island. Subsequent negotiations extended the range to Ascension Island, more than 8000 kilometers southeast of Cape Canaveral.[9]

While working out the downrange bases, the Air Force had to cope with a communications problem at home. The division of operations between the administrative headquarters at Patrick Air Force Base and the launch site at Cape Canaveral, 29 kilometers to the north, resulted in a costly duplication of effort. In the summer of 1953 Pan American World Airways, an old hand at operating bases around the world, convinced the Air Force that it could reduce the costs of running the range. Pan American was awarded a contract for day-to-day operations and was soon engaged in many activities from setting up cafeterias to providing security on the pads. The Radio Corporation of America received a subcontract for the technical aspects of range operations.

With the launch of Redstone #1 in August 1953, the Missile Firing Laboratory inaugurated the testing of ballistic missiles. In those days, launch procedures were unsophisticated. Albert Zeiler, one of the Peenemünde veterans, had to decide within a split second whether to shut off the engine immediately after ignition, basing his decision upon the color of the flames. An off-color indicated an improper mix of the propellants. A couple of minor delays had occurred earlier, but on the morning of 20 August 1953 the flame color met Zeiler's approval, and the Redstone rose. The powered flight lasted only 76 seconds and fell far short of the anticipated 257-kilometer range. Still the missile met most of the test objectives, its structure proved sound, and the propulsion system worked well.[10]

Building a Launch Complex

By the late 1950s, the Cape Canaveral skyline already had distinctive features. Towering gantries rose along "ICBM Row." The various missiles had certain similarities in ground environmental needs and operational requirements. In the test phase, each required an assembly and checkout building, transport from assembly area to launch complex, a launch pad, a gantry service tower, a blockhouse for on-site command and control of the launch, and a network of power, fuel, and communication links that would bring it to life. For a long while, the complexes resembled each other. Igloo-shaped blockhouses stood 230 meters from the pads and looked like the pillboxes of World War II. They provided protection for the launch crew and the control consoles and instrumentation. In the case of complexes 11, 12, 13, and 14, designed for the Atlas ICBM, the inside walls of the 12-sided domed structures were 3.2 meters thick at the base with 12 meters of sand around them.

Besides the blockhouse or launch control center, the essential features of a fixed-pad complex included a concrete or steel pedestal on which to erect and launch the vehicle, a steel umbilical tower to provide fluid and electrical connections to the vehicle, a flame deflector, and a mobile service structure that moved around the vehicle so ground crews on platforms could service and test various components. Other features of the complex included an operations support building, storage facilities for kerosene and liquid oxygen, a tunnel for instrumentation and control cables, roads, camera sites, utilities services, and security.

Three factors largely determined the choice of sites for the launch complexes: explosive hazards, the dangers of overflight, and lines of sight. In 1959 the launch planners assumed that the first five or ten missiles in a new program would have a high rate of failure on the pad or shortly after launch. Approximately 5% of the Cape's previous developmental launches had exploded a few seconds after takeoff, most of them in an area 10° to either side of the intended azimuth (direction) of launch. Experience thus showed the wisdom of locating a pad in an area where there were no permanent facilities immediately downrange. Likewise, the frequency of accidents during test

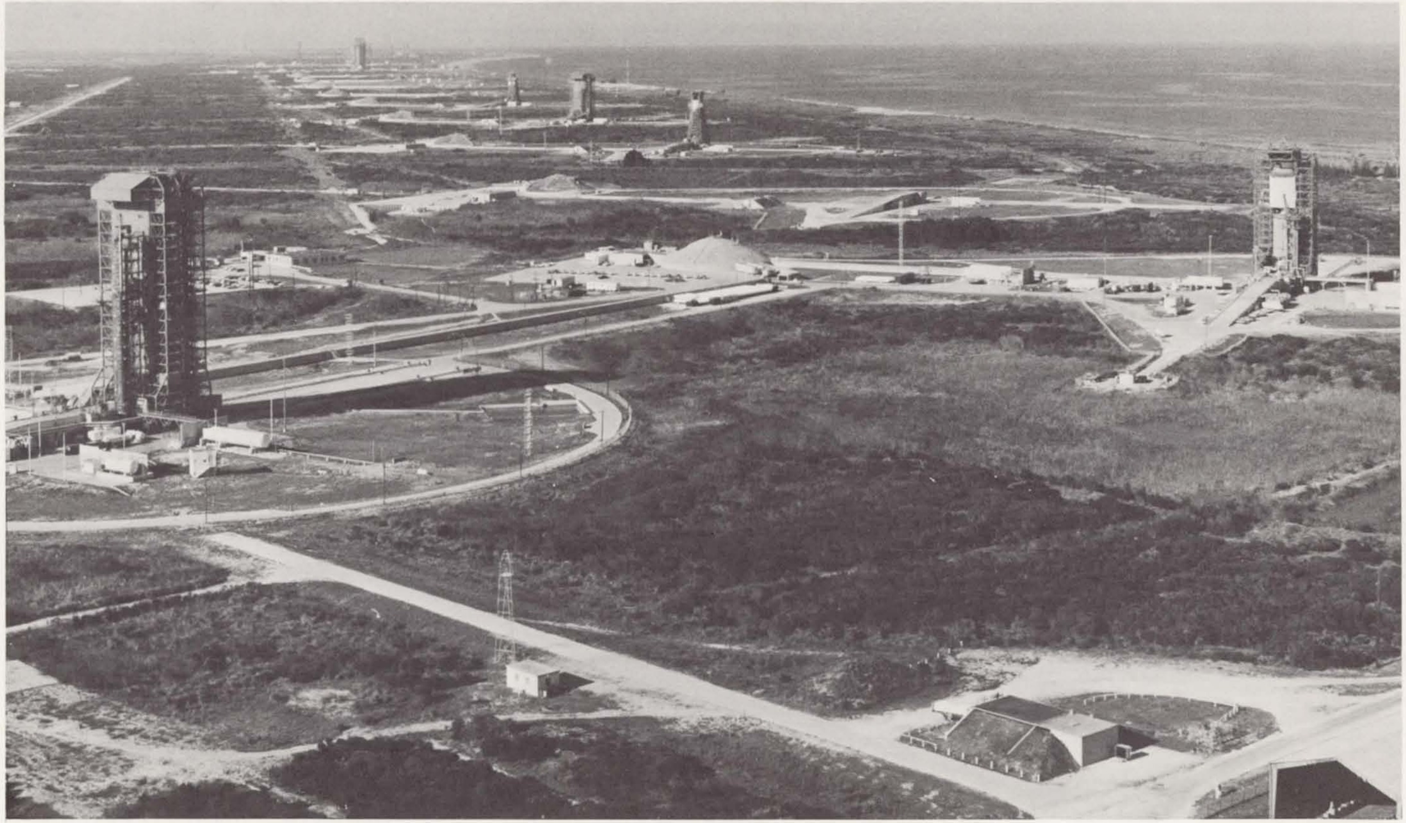


Fig. 3. ICBM row, December 1967.

programs made backup pads desirable. The explosive hazard further influenced the placement of facilities within the launch site to minimize damage to "long-lead-time" equipment. Planners also had to maintain a clear line of sight from the launch vehicle to the launch control center, and to electronic and optical instrumentation sites.[11]

To meet the constantly expanding needs of the many missile groups, the Corps of Engineers eventually built 21 missile assembly buildings patterned after Marine Corps hangars at El Toro, California. Shop, office, and assembly area met the requirements of the early missiles; inside, a maze of power and instrumentation circuits ran through covered trenches. Criteria prepared by the Facilities Division of the Joint Long Range Proving Ground standardized the basic framework of the last 18 of these assembly buildings and developed overhead cranes that were interchangeable in all structures.[12] As missiles grew more complicated over the years, the assembly buildings began to reflect the characteristics of the individual vehicles they would service.[13]

Missions for Saturn

In the fall of 1958, the Army Ballistic Missile Agency's Missile Firing Laboratory (MFL), after five years at Cape Canaveral, was concluding its Redstone research and development program; the launch on 5 November was the last in a series of 38. A parallel program, training field artillery units to launch Redstone, was also nearing completion. With Redstone attaining operational status, MFL's Cape activities would center around Jupiter launches and the preparation of Pershing facilities. Big on the horizon was its greatest challenge—Saturn. Although Defense Department officials had approved the Saturn rocket and its Cape Canaveral launch site, wheels at Washington would grind another 18 months before the program was (to indulge in government jargon) finalized. The rocket teams at Huntsville and Cape Canaveral had to work, if not in the dark, at least in a twilight zone where there were few certainties. What was the United States going to do in space? What part would the Saturn have in the space program? What governmental agency would handle its development? How much money would be available? It was the beginning of the if-and-when planning that would bedevil the program for five years.

Even as initially set up by General Medaris and Roy Johnson, the project was dotted with question marks. Some were in the technological area, involving the working out of the overly simplified reference in the Medaris-Johnson pact to "booster flights which, without sophisticated upper stages, would be capable of placing limited payloads in orbit" (page 2). More questions developed from the involved process of transferring the Saturn project from the Army to NASA. In 1958, the Defense Department's Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA) was dealing with the Army Ballistic Missile Agency (ABMA) concerning the Development Operations Division's Saturn, and its Missile Firing Laboratory's Saturn launch facilities. By 1960 NASA's Office of Launch Vehicle Programs was handling the same subject matter with the Marshall Space Flight Center (MSFC) and its Launch Operations Directorate (LOD). All of this called for much clearing of the lines of authority.

Meanwhile, the space experts debated the use of the new booster in multistage vehicles. In December 1958, with Saturn still an Army project, ARPA ordered ABMA to study future Saturn configurations with second and third stages. Herman Koelle, chief of the Future Projects Office, directed a task group in an examination of 1375 configurations during the next three months. The study concluded that a modified version of the Atlas, the 3-meter-diameter Titan, or the 4-meter Titan could be used as a second stage on top of the Saturn booster already on the drawing boards at Huntsville. The Centaur was recommended as the logical choice for the third stage.* An ARPA evaluation committee, composed of NASA and Defense Department members, accepted the study findings and selected the 3-meter Titan for the second stage. In May 1959, ABMA was directed to develop the three-stage Saturn.[14]

Within days after completing the Saturn systems study, the Koelle group was attempting to devise an appropriate mission for the super-rocket. A 24-hour communications satellite, the only firm requirement for Saturn, did not justify ABMA's large expenditures. Koelle's answer was Project Horizon, a plan to place a military colony on the moon. The summary of the five-volume Horizon study appeared in June 1959. The report proposed a manned lunar landing in 1965, with establishment of a 12-man lunar outpost the following year. As logistical support for a lunar base would require the launching of 64 Saturns annually, approval of the Horizon project would secure ABMA's position for at least a decade.[15]

While ABMA and the Army examined ways to employ the Saturn, NASA was drawing up its own plans for programs beyond Mercury.† Suggestions included an earth-orbiting manned space station, manned circumlunar flights, manned lunar landings, and ultimately interplanetary flights.

---

*The Air Force began work on the Titan I missile in May 1955 as a backup to the Atlas. The missile was 30 meters long, burned LOX and RP-1, and relied on radio guidance. It first flew at AMR on 5 Feb. 1959. The Centaur, the earliest hydrogen-fueled stage, was built by Convair and achieved 133 440 newtons (30 000 pounds of thrust).

†Mercury was the first U.S. manned spaceflight program. Its objectives—orbital flight and successful recovery of a manned satellite, and a study of man's capabilities in a space environment—were achieved in a series of flights, 1961-63. See Loyd S. Swenson, Jr., James M. Grimwood, and Charles C. Alexander, *This New Ocean: A History of Project Mercury*, NASA SP-4201 (Washington, 1966).

NASA appointed the Research Steering Committee on Manned Space Flight, chaired by Harry J. Goett of Ames Research Center, to study those suggestions. On 25 May 1959, the committee recommended manned interplanetary travel as NASA's ultimate goal. As a more immediate objective, some members wanted manned flights around the moon; others wanted to land on the moon. George Low of Space Flight Development strongly urged the latter objective. He believed that, among other advantages, Congress would more readily fund this package. He further urged using existing vehicles, such as the Army's Saturn booster, rather than developing a completely new and larger launch vehicle.[16]

Meanwhile, NASA's Office of Program Planning and Evaluation, under the direction of Dr. Homer Joe Stewart, whose specific task was to formulate an overall program, set up a Long Range Objectives and Program Planning Committee. With the assistance of the Goett Committee, the Planning Committee submitted a working draft on 1 June 1959, spelling out the problems, costs, and equipment required for landing one or two men on the moon and returning them safely to earth after a period of exploration.[17]

A Marriage of Convenience

At this point the Army had a Saturn vehicle for which it was seeking a mission, and NASA had a mission for which it was seeking a vehicle. A marriage of convenience was indicated. Dr. T. Keith Glennan, first NASA administrator, had attempted to bring half of the von Braun team into his new organization on 15 October 1958. Secretary of the Army Wilbur Brucker and General Medaris successfully rebuffed that effort; the Army still had military projects to supervise (Jupiter and Pershing) and did not want to break up the von Braun team. Brucker suggested, as a compromise, that NASA place a liaison group at Huntsville and plan to use the Redstone Arsenal facilities for certain programs. Coveting the Saturn program, NASA accepted Brucker's proposal as the best of a bad bargain. In January 1959, ARPA and NASA representatives established a National Space Program. NASA would concentrate on smaller vehicles while the Defense Department developed larger ones including the Saturn. Although this understanding appeared to secure a role for Saturn, it actually spelled trouble for ABMA. The Huntsville organization had hoped that NASA would provide financial assistance for Saturn since the new space agency would likely use the big booster. NASA, however, unable to direct the Saturn program, refused to underwrite any of its costs.[18]

Saturn's prospects worsened after a key Defense Department official opposed the Army program. In the spring of 1959, Dr. Herbert F. York, newly appointed Deputy Secretary for Research and Engineering, assigned responsibility for future military space activities to the Air Force. Having previously disclaimed any Defense interest in moon exploration, York in April indicated a desire to cancel the Saturn.* He could see no military justification for the big rocket. ARPA, perhaps influenced by York, suspended studies of the second stage on 31 July, directing ABMA to conduct a new series of cost and time estimates based on a 4-meter Titan. The larger Titan offered several advantages, including compatibility with the Air Force Dyna Soar, a manned space-glider program.[19]

Two decisions in September reaffirmed the Saturn program. An ARPA-NASA Large Booster Review Committee, after examining Army, Air Force, and industry programs, recommended the clustered Saturn booster as "the quickest and surest way to attain a large space booster capability in the million-pound thrust [4 448 000-newton] class."[20] York and Dr. Hugh Dryden, NASA's Deputy Administrator, reached a similar conclusion in their comparison of the Saturn and the Air Force's Titan C proposal. (The latter would have employed a cluster of upgraded Titan I engines to provide a thrust comparable to the Saturn.)[21] The York-Dryden committee also recommended that ABMA conduct a new study of second and third stages.

ABMA presented a second Saturn systems study to a Defense Department conference in Washington 29–30 October 1959. The report offered four alternative configurations, ranging from a Titan second stage and Centaur third stage to an optimum vehicle with a new 5.6-meter-diameter conventional second stage (burning RP-1), a new hydrogen-fueled third stage, and a Centaur fourth stage. Knowledge that President Eisenhower had decided to transfer Saturn and the Development Operations Division to NASA lessened the study's impact. After assuming technical direction of the Saturn in November, NASA initiated still another study of upper stages. Dr. Abe Silverstein, NASA's Director of Space Flight Development, headed a committee representing the Air Force, NASA, ARPA, and ABMA.[22]

Upper Stages

The Silverstein Committee established two criteria for a successful Saturn program: development of a rocket with an early launch capability as well as growth potential. The group listed three missions for the initial Saturn vehicle: unmanned lunar and deep space missions with an escape payload of about 4500 kilograms; 2250-kilogram payloads for a 24-hour equatorial orbit; and manned spacecraft missions in low orbits, such as Dyna Soar. The committee matched a number of configurations against these missions. Current ICBMs such as the Titan were adjudged unsatisfactory; they would not generate sufficient thrust for the lunar mission. A larger, conventionally fueled second stage—5.59-meter diameter—met mission requirements, but time and cost seemed excessive for a rocket stage with little growth potential. The solution lay with the early development of high-energy (liquid hydrogen) propellants for all stages above the first. In defense of this rather bold position the committee noted: "If these propellants are to be accepted for the difficult top-stage applications, there seems to be no valid engineering reasons for not accepting the use of high-energy propellants for the less difficult application to intermediate stages." The committee also recommended a building block concept stating that "vehicle reliability will be emphasized . . . through a continued use of each development stage in later vehicle configurations." The Saturn C-1* would consist of the clustered booster, a new Douglas Corporation second stage with four hydrogen-burning Centaur engines of 66 720–88 960 newtons (15 000–20 000 pounds of thrust) per engine, and a modified Centaur as a third stage. The C-1 would become the C-2 upon insertion of a new oxygen-hydrogen second stage with two 667 200–889 600-newton (150 000–200 000 pounds of thrust) engines. The top two stages of the Saturn C-1 would then become stages three and four on the C-2 version. The committee proposed to launch ten C-1s starting in the fall of 1961.[23]

---

*In a letter to the authors, York elaborated on his motivation. In early 1959 York viewed the U.S. space program as a "mess" and thought the transfer to NASA of the von Braun team and its big booster would improve matters. Neither the Army nor the Navy needed large rockets, and the Air Force was developing the Titan. NASA, on the other hand, required large boosters in future space programs. York wrote, "While ARPA did have other legitimate roles in Defense R&D, I concluded it was really just one more unnecessary layer in the management of large rocket and space programs, and so I recommended its role in Space be cancelled."

On the last day of 1959, Glennan approved the Silverstein recommendations, and Saturn got its upper stages. Chances of meeting the new schedule improved with two Eisenhower administration decisions in January 1960. The Saturn project received a DX rating, which designated a program of highest national priority. Besides reflecting the administration's support, the rating gave program managers a privileged status in securing scarce materials. More important, the administration agreed to NASA's request for additional funds. The Saturn FY 1961 budget was increased from $140 million to $230 million.[24] On 15 March 1960 President Eisenhower officially announced the transfer of the Army's Development Operations Division to

---

*Until 1963 Saturns were classified by a *C* and an arabic numeral. People generally assume that *C* stood for configuration; but according to Kennedy Space Center's *Spaceport News* (17 Jan. 1963), MSFC engineers used it to designate vehicular "concepts." Saturn C-1 denoted the concept of the S-I booster topped with upper stages using liquid hydrogen as a propellant. C-2, C-3, and C-4 were drawing-board concepts that preceded the C-5 (Saturn V) moon rocket. For additional information on the origins of Saturn, see John L. Sloop, *Liquid Hydrogen as a Propulsion Fuel, 1945–1959,* NASA SP-4404, in press, chap. 12.

NASA. He took the occasion to name the Huntsville installation the Marshall Space Flight Center, for his wartime commander, General George C. Marshall. The DoD's Missile Firing Laboratory at Cape Canaveral became the Launch Operations Directorate of the new organization.

Page intentionally left blank

2

LAUNCH COMPLEX 34

The Director

The Missile Firing Laboratory's director, Dr. Kurt Debus, had wasted no time in getting a launch pad ready for the new rocket. Early on the morning of 26 September 1958, four days after the Medaris-Johnson Agreement to launch four Saturn boosters, a small group of MFL members left Huntsville Airport for Patrick Air Force Base. They joined the Cape Canaveral members of the MFL team in Debus's office for a discussion of ways and means of putting the proposed super-rocket into space.

After the Army had relocated its missile team from Fort Bliss to Huntsville in 1950, Wernher von Braun became Technical Director of the Ordnance Guided Missile Center. Debus, who had worked with von Braun at Peenemünde, was Assistant Technical Director. When von Braun established an Experimental Missile Firing Branch, Debus was placed in charge. The name was changed to Missile Firing Laboratory in January 1953, with Debus remaining at the helm. MFL maintained offices at Huntsville, although Debus spent much of his time at Cape Canaveral. During his early years at the Cape, Debus wrestled with a gamut of problems. One was a shortage of experienced people; a year after its formation, his team had only 19 members. The launch team for Redstone 1 in the summer of 1953 numbered 82, but only 37 were permanently assigned to the Missile Firing Laboratory. As the Redstone and Jupiter programs burgeoned, MFL grew also and by 1960, on the eve of its transfer from the Army to NASA, numbered 535 people. Thus, while the well-known "von Braun team" operated in Alabama, a less known and initially subsidiary "Debus team" was growing up at Cape Canaveral.[1]

Slowly the qualities of Dr. Debus became evident as he moved out of the shadow of the more charismatic von Braun. A doctor of philosophy in engineering from Darmstadt University, Debus had been headed for a professor's chair when he was recruited into the Peenemünde group. Debus was a systematic man; he kept a daily journal and believed a well-ordered desk was a sign of an orderly mind. On his monthly inspections, he might help a subordinate clear his desk of nonessentials; or he would do it himself if the man was away at the time. He purged his own files regularly.

Totally committed to his work, Debus expected total commitment from those with him. Thus he would have less respect for a happy-go-lucky individual, no matter how well that man might do his job, than for one who shared his own seriousness of deportment. He set his goals and brooked no opposition to them. But he allowed his subordinates a choice of methods in reaching those goals. He relied more on his personal experience of a man's capabilities than on records or written recommendations—a penchant he could not indulge in later years as the operation expanded. While not outgoing in manner, he had a deep concern for others. He showed the same reserved courtesy to the electrician who interrupted his busy day to replace a burned-out fluorescent tube as to the congressional leader who came to his office to discuss launch operations. While his team was small, he remembered birthdays with letters and cards. Straightforward in approach, he let his achievements speak for him—not always the most effective means of getting ahead. He was a man to get the job done. Now his job was to put a Saturn into space.

The proposed super-rocket dwarfed anything heretofore handled by the Army Ballistic Missile Agency (see table 1). The problems caused by the clustered engines were particularly significant. To guarantee proper ignition of all engines, the booster would have to be held on the launch pad for a few seconds. A complex mechanism to do this had to be developed. There was also a psychological factor, related to the Saturn's great expense. With

TABLE 1. COMPARISON OF ROCKETS LAUNCHED BY MFL/LOD/LOC, 1953-1965

(Vehicle characteristics varied during rocket development; figures represent an approximate average.)

	Redstone	Jupiter	Saturn I (Block I) SA-1-SA-4	Saturn I (Block II) SA-5-SA-10
Height (meters)	21	18	50	58
Diameter (meters)	1.75	2.63	6.40	6.40
Propellant weight (kilograms)	18 000	38 500	290 000	450 000
Total weight at liftoff (kilograms)	28 000	50 000	430 000	515 750
Total thrust (newtons)	333 600	667 200	5 871 400	1st stage, 6 690 000 2d stage, 400 300
RF links	2	4	8	13
Telemetered measurements	116	215	560	1180
Pad time (days)	15	25	61	103

previous military missiles, launch equipment failures had been relatively inconsequential. Each program called for a number of tests; the MFL staff learned from mistakes. The millions of dollars tied up in each Saturn, however, meant that launch facility failures could not be tolerated. Finally there was the problem of time. With the first launch only two years away, there could be no serious delay in determination of criteria, in design, or in construction.[2]

Conversations with the Air Force

The purpose of the MFL staff meeting on 26 September 1958 was to determine the support requirements needed from the Air Force. A number of topics were discussed including safety zones, construction costs, fuel requirements, instrumentation, a service structure, and a launch site. The matter of a site, for what would eventually be launch complex 34, received further attention that Friday afternoon when Debus introduced the Saturn project to Maj. Gen. Donald N. Yates, Air Force Missile Test Center Commander. Debus suggested placing the new complex in the central part of the Cape near pad 26. That pad was presently in use for the Jupiter program, but would be phased out in 1960. Yates believed that construction near LC-26 would interfere with other contractors and pose safety problems. He suggested the use of areas near complex 20 (Titan), complex 11 (Atlas), or at the north end of the launch area, which had been tentatively reserved for large boosters.[3]

During the next two weeks an MFL facilities team made a preliminary survey of five possible sites. James Deese drew upon eight years of Cape experience in directing the survey. The team focused much of its attention on ground safety. The potential blast effect of an explosion on the pad established a ground safety zone and a minimum intraline distance. The safety zone, marking the danger area for exposed personnel, would be cleared of all persons 30 minutes prior to launch. The minimum intraline distance delimited the area within which a pad explosion would cause damage to adjacent pad structures or vehicles. Deese estimated that the fuel would have half the explosive force of TNT. With an estimated fuel load of 476 tons (equivalent to 238 tons of TNT), the three-stage Saturn would require a ground safety radius of 1650 meters and intraline distance of 400 meters. The proposed firing azimuths (44° to 110°) excluded sites that would result in overflying permanent launch facilities already constructed to the east.[4]

The Deese team recommended only one site, an area approximately 300 meters north of complex 20. By using the existing Titan I blockhouse (launch control center) at LC-20, costs and construction time would be minimized. The Air Force Missile Test Center objected to this location, contending that the Saturn pad should be at least 610 meters from other structures. This precluded joint use of the Titan blockhouse, because the data transmission equipment used in checkout of the Saturn would be adversely affected by voltage drops over a 610-meter circuit.* MFL arguments that the Air Force recommendation would increase facility costs by 30% and construction time by four months proved to no avail. In mid-January, after a six-week delay, the Advanced Research Projects Agency sited the Saturn complex 710 meters north of pad 20.[5]

Writing the Criteria Book

Criteria development for the Saturn complex proceeded more cordially. Close coordination was required between four groups: MFL, the Systems Support Equipment Laboratory of the Development Operations Division at Huntsville, the Jacksonville District Office of the Army Corps of Engineers, and an architect-engineering firm. Their goal was to collect and organize all the data necessary for satisfactory design and construction. The procedures used in developing Saturn launch criteria followed a pattern set in earlier programs. MFL and the Systems Support Equipment Laboratory prepared basic data on all launch facilities and equipment. The architect-engineer then formalized the data in a criteria book. The Army Corps of Engineers reviewed this document for cost, utility, and compliance with federal and Atlantic Missile Range codes. The launch criteria book provided a general description of facilities, proposed methods of construction, the placement of utilities and equipment, facility dimensions, distances between facilities, cost estimates, and preliminary drawings.[6]

The blockhouse for LC-34 was patterned after the control center at complex 20. The reinforced concrete design permitted the planners to locate the structure 320 meters from the launch pedestal. A domed roof would be built up in three layers: an inner layer of reinforced concrete 1.5 meters thick; a middle layer of earth fill 2.1 to 4.2 meters in depth; and a 10-centimeter cover of shotcrete. The last, a concrete with a high cement content, was pressure-driven through a 15-centimeter tube onto a reinforced mesh screen. The 930 square meters of floor space provided room for 130 persons, with test and launch consoles, instrumentation racks, remote control fueling devices, and television and periscope equipment for the observation of activities on the launch pad. Blockhouse operations required substantial air conditioning for such equipment as computers, as well as for the people. Should a delay in firing occur after the rocket was fueled, the blockhouse could be buttoned up for 20 hours. Two tunnels provided escape routes in case an explosion sealed the door.[7]

---

*Some MFL officials believed the Air Force simply did not want to share blockhouse 20. The Air Force, however, consistently gave range safety a high priority. As General Yates recalled, the Air Force received numerous complaints from contractors because of concessions the Missile Test Center made to MFL.

Two Cape veterans, R. P. Dodd and Deese, drew up preliminary criteria for the launch complex. Their plans called for a two-pad complex with only the northern pad (pad A) constructed initially. A raised concrete circle 130 meters in diameter would form the base of the pad. The central area's slight depression facilitated replacement of refractory brick after a launch. Dodd included a water deluge system to reduce the intense heat and wash away spilled fuel, which would be channeled toward a perimeter trench. A skimming basin would prevent kerosene from entering the area's drainage ditches. Beneath the pad, a series of rooms provided space for mechanical and electrical checkout and firing equipment such as terminal boards, instrumentation racks, electrical cables, and generators.

Three facilities along the south edge of the complex would service the Saturn's propellant needs. In the southeast corner near the ocean stood tanks for RP-1, a grade of kerosene, to fuel the Saturn I booster (first stage). The liquid oxygen (LOX) tank in the middle of the southern boundary stored the oxidizer for all Saturn stages. This tank was insulated; in its liquid state, oxygen is cryogenic—super cold—with a boiling temperature of 90 kelvins (−183°C). Dodd and Deese placed a high-pressure-gas facility in the southwest corner of the complex, near the blockhouse. The tanks in this storage area held two gases, nitrogen and helium, used in launch operations. Large amounts of nitrogen were used to purge and dehumidify the cryogenic lines that ran from the LOX tanks to the Saturn vehicle. The nitrogen also actuated LC-34's pneumatic ground support equipment. On later launches, gaseous helium would be used to purge the hydrogen fuel lines to the Saturn upper stages. With an even lower temperature than liquid oxygen, liquid hydrogen boils at 20 kelvins (−253°C). Since nitrogen would solidify in the presence of liquid hydrogen, helium was substituted. A few bottles of nitrogen and helium went aboard the launch vehicle to pressurize some of the subsystems.

In the final plans, the flame deflector and its spare were parked north of the pedestal. The service structure pulled away on rails running from the pad to a parking area 185 meters west. The designers placed the umbilical tower on the northeast side of the launch pedestal. Eventually 70 meters

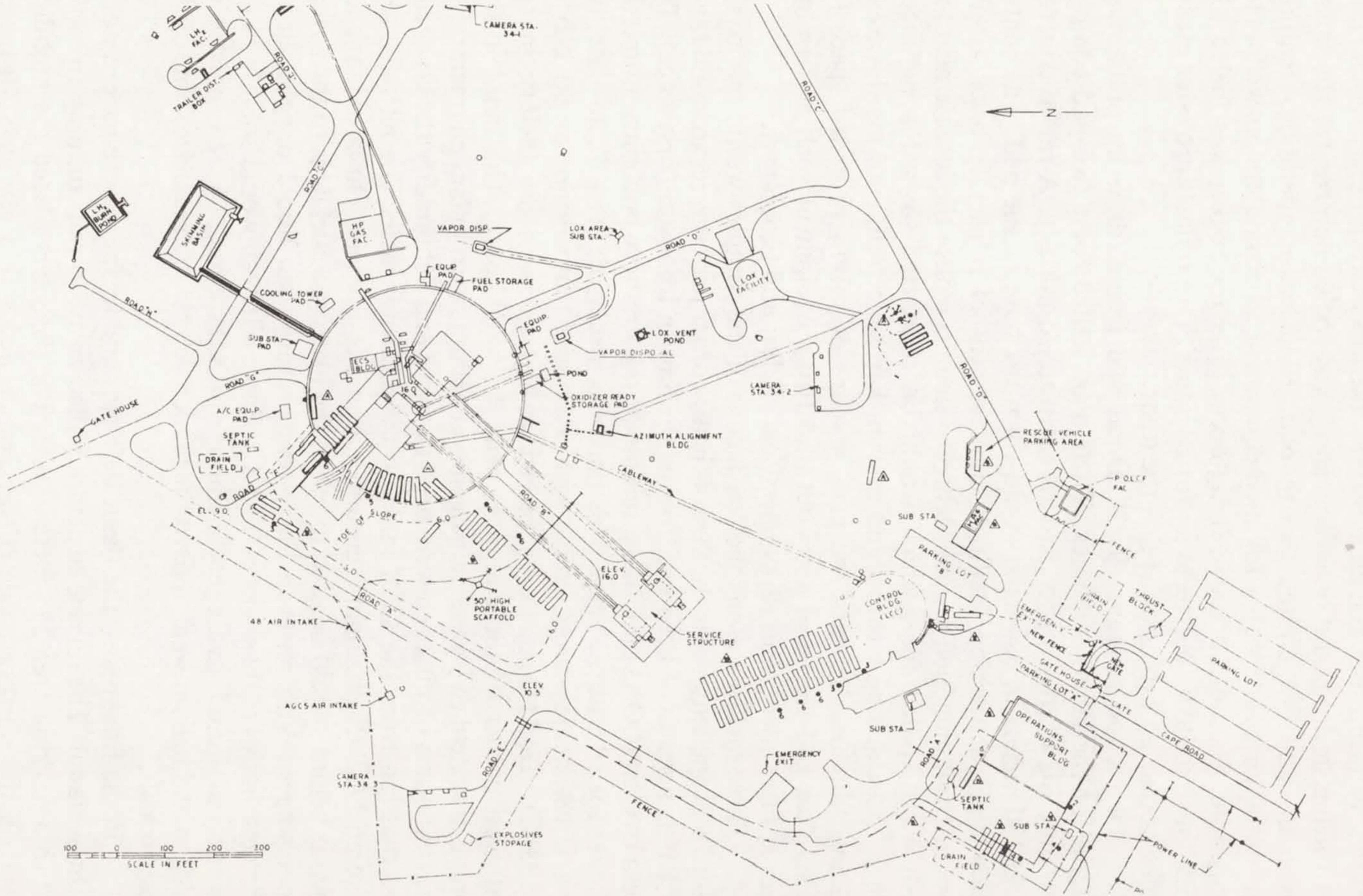

CAMERA STA. 34-1
L.H₂ FAC.
TRAILER DIST. BOX
ROAD "J"
ROAD "C"
L.H₂ BURN POND
SKIMMING BASIN
HP GAS FAC.
VAPOR DISP.
LOX AREA SUB STA.
ROAD "D"
LOX FACILITY
EQUIP PAD
FUEL STORAGE PAD
COOLING TOWER PAD
ROAD "H"
SUB STA. PAD
ECS BLDG
EQUIP. PAD
VAPOR DISPO AL
LOX VENT POND
POND
16.0
ROAD "G"
OXIDIZER READY STORAGE PAD
CAMERA STA 34-2
A/C EQUIP PAD
GATE HOUSE
SEPTIC TANK
DRAIN FIELD
AZIMUTH ALIGNMENT BLDG
ROAD "E"
ROAD "D"
RESCUE VEHICLE PARKING AREA
CABLEWAY
P OLCF FAC
EL. 9.0
TOE OF SLOPE
6.0
ROAD "B"
SUB STA
FENCE
PARKING LOT "B"
3.0
ELEV. 16.0
CONTROL BLDG (LCC)
DRAIN FIELD
THRUST BLOCK
ROAD "A"
50' HIGH PORTABLE SCAFFOLD
48" AIR INTAKE
SERVICE STRUCTURE
EMERGENCY EXIT
NEW FENCE
NEW GATE
PARKING LOT
6.0
GATE HOUSE
PARKING LOT "A"
GATE
ELEV 10.5
AGCS AIR INTAKE
SUB STA
OPERATIONS SUPPORT BLDG
CAPE ROAD
EMERGENCY EXIT
ROAD "A"
ROAD "E"
CAMERA STA 34-3
FENCE
SEPTIC TANK
SUB STA
EXPLOSIVES STORAGE
DRAIN FIELD
POWER LINE
100 0 100 200 300
SCALE IN FEET
N

Fig. 4. The master plan for launch complex 34.

high, it would carry fuel lines and other connections to the Saturn before liftoff. Two requirements governed the location of the umbilical tower and the service structure: the need for clear lines of sight from the erected launch vehicle to radar and telemetry stations in the industrial area 3 kilometers to the southwest, and an anticipated launch azimuth of 75° to 90°.[8]

Problems in Design

At Huntsville the Systems Support Equipment Laboratory designed the ground support equipment, a term applied to components used in the preparation, testing, monitoring, and launching of a rocket. The interface, or fit, of the launch vehicle and the support equipment largely determined the design of the latter. Accordingly, work in the Systems Support Equipment Laboratory paralleled Saturn development and was very much a research and design effort. Five design problems, in particular, challenged the laboratory: the launch pedestal, the hold-down and support mechanisms, the deflector, the cryogenic transfer equipment, and the umbilical tower.

Initial launch pedestal plans called for a hexagonal structure of tubular steel. George Walter, the laboratory's expert on structures, suggested a reinforced concrete design, which was eventually adopted. Walter's pedestal, 13 meters square and 8 meters high, was supported by corner columns and opened on all four sides to allow use of a two- or four-way flame deflector. A torus ring of large water nozzles, designed by Edwin Davis, encircled the 8-meter-wide exhaust opening. During launch and for some seconds thereafter, the nozzles would spray water on the pedestal, across the exhaust opening, and down the opening's walls, cooling the deflector and pedestal.[9]

Designing the eight vehicle support arms to be located on top of the pedestal proved a long and difficult task. Four of the arms, cantilevered at the Saturn's outboard engines, would retract horizontally after ignition, providing clearance for the engine shrouds at liftoff. Should one of the engines fail during the first three seconds following ignition, these four arms could return to the support position. The possibility of damaging the rocket as it settled back on its supports complicated the design of the arms. The Systems Support team developed a nitrogen-fed pneumatic device that brought the support arms safely back under the launch vehicle within 0.16 second. The remaining four support arms were designed to hold the vehicle on the pad for three seconds after ignition so that blockhouse instruments could test engine thrust. Donald Buchanan's design section considered more than 20 different proposals before selecting one suggested by Georg von Tiesenhausen, Dep-

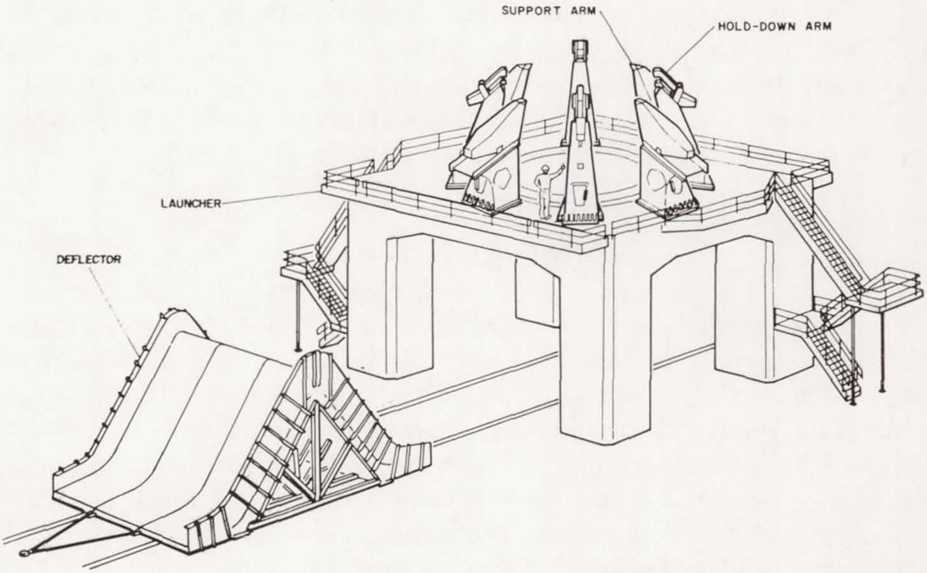


Fig. 5. A 1962 drawing showing the pad at LC-34, including the flame deflector, support arms, and hold-down arms.

uty Chief of the Mechanical Branch. Von Tiesenhausen's concept, modeled after an old German bottle top, had been planned for use in securing a Jupiter seaborne model.* The hold-down arms employed an over-center toggle device to achieve the necessary leverage and rapid release capability.[10]

The flame deflector design stirred debate within the laboratory: Should it have two or four sides? Should it be dry or wet (with cold water circulating through pipes beneath the metal shield)? The Huntsville engineers ruled out the four-sided deflector, previously used for Redstone and Jupiter missiles. The flame, spewing in all directions, would obstruct vision from the blockhouse and endanger equipment at the base of the umbilical tower. Both the size and cost of a wet deflector were unacceptable; one similar to those used on the test stands at Redstone Arsenal would cost ten times more than an uncooled deflector. Its size would increase the height of the launcher platform above ground, a dimension MFL wished to minimize. Despite doubts that a dry deflector could survive a single launch, a two-way uncooled deflector was selected.[11]

Fueling the Saturn promised to be another problem. The booster required 182 200 liters of liquid oxygen (LOX), six times the amount expended

---

*In November 1955, Secretary of Defense Charles E. Wilson directed the Navy to adopt the Jupiter as a shipborne IRBM. Navy leaders, unenthusiastic about seagoing liquid-fueled rockets, subsequently were able to replace the Jupiter with the solid-propellant Polaris missile.

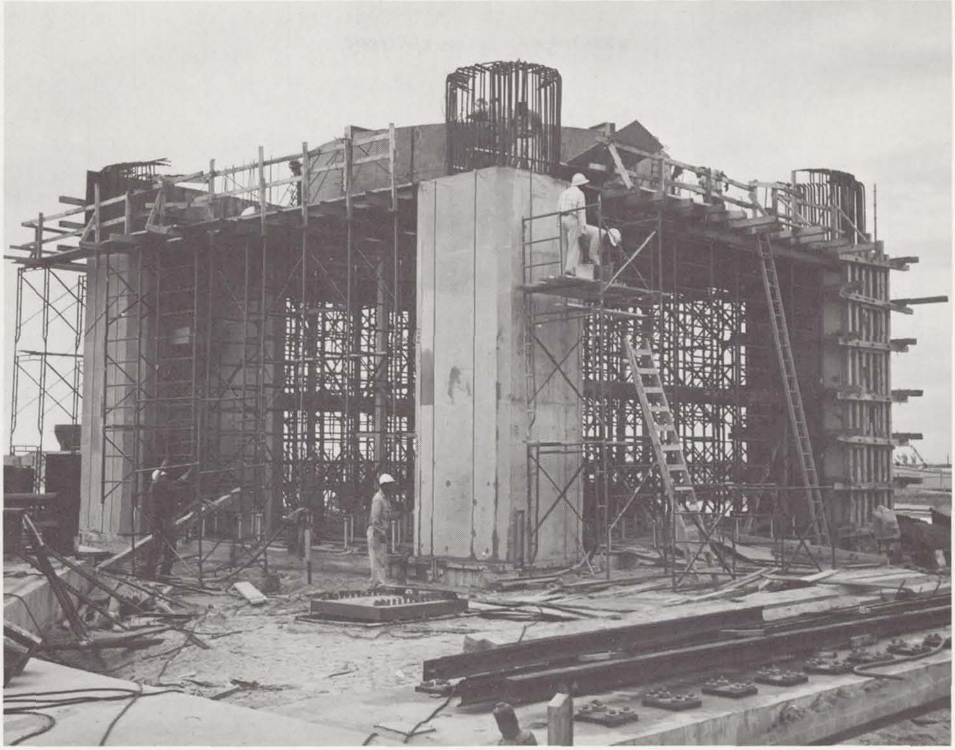


Fig. 6. The pad under construction, 1960.

by the Jupiter missile. The LOX would evaporate at a rate of 163 liters every minute during fueling and up until launch; some provision for replenishing this loss was required. Explosive hazards dictated placement of the LOX facility a minimum of 200 meters from the launch vehicle. Orvil Sparkman, a Huntsville native who had been working on propellants since 1953, was responsible for designing the cryogenics equipment.

The main storage tank would be an insulated sphere with a diameter of 12.5 meters; it could hold 473 125 liters of liquid oxygen. A centrifugal pump would deliver the LOX through an uninsulated aluminum pipe to the filling mast on the launcher. This was the "fast fill" and operated at 9460 liters per minute. With some of the LOX boiling off as its temperature rose during the filling process, a smaller (49 205-liter) tank would send additional LOX through a vacuum-jacketed line to replace the boil-off, thus keeping the vehicle tanks full. Since the launch team wanted to automate LC-34 fueling, remote controls were designed for the launch control center. Early plans called for a differential pressure sensing system in the rocket's LOX and RP-1 tanks to control propellant flow (much as a washing machine controls flow by measuring the difference in pressure between the top and bottom of the tank). At Debus's request, the system was later replaced by an electrical capacitance gauge. The LOX tank's fuel level sensor also actuated a pneumatic valve on the replenishing line.[12]

A Service Structure for Saturn

MFL's Mechanical Branch, meanwhile, considered the assembly, transport, and service of the launch vehicle. The March 1959 criteria book called for checkout of the Saturn stages in hangar D in the Cape's industrial area, transfer to the pad, and erection and mating of the stages on the pad. The plan required extensive modifications to hangar D, as the booster's size necessitated an increase in hook height from 8 to 13 meters. This additional space could be provided by cutting the roof structure from its columns, jacking the entire roof up as one assembly, and building up the columns.[13]

Some of the Development Operations Division's plans for a Saturn service facility, drawn in terms of a 25-meter booster and limited funds, seem primitive in contrast with the eventual structure. One early study proposed to eliminate service platforms by designing the upper stages with sufficient work space inside the rocket. Another short-lived scheme lowered platforms down over the launch vehicle, attaching them to the rocket's outer surface at the required working levels. Workers would ride elevator stands up to the work platforms. In a November 1958 memorandum, Albert Zeiler scoffed at the notion of men servicing a rocket from a little platform, high above the ground. He said it would be "practically impossible" to perform assembly and checkout tasks, especially in bad weather. In addition, the rocket would be exposed to rain and high winds; in the event of the latter, it would have to be secured by guy wires.[14] He recommended instead a large stand with lifting equipment to assemble and erect the booster and upper stages. Service platforms to support personnel and equipment, elevators, and weather protection would be incorporated in the stand.

MFL awarded the criteria studies for the launch complex and service structure to the Miami firm of Maurice H. Connell and Associates. The Miami architects, veterans of the Redstone program, completed both studies by mid-March 1959. At a conference later that month, Saturn engineers agreed to complete design work by 1 August 1959. The conference set a 1 July 1960 target date for construction of the complex, excepting the blockhouse and service structure.[15]

Connell and Associates had completed the criteria studies and moved into the design phase when MFL decided on major revisions in the assembly and service concepts. Prior to the criteria review, IDECO, a Dressler Industries division, had approached MFL with a proposal for a tubular steel service structure. It was designed in the shape of an inverted U, open at both ends. IDECO's design offered several advantages: greater accessibility to the booster, a minimum hook height of 13 meters, and more flexible service platforms (the platforms telescoped in and out of the main frame design, were vertically adjustable, and could match up with various booster or upper stage diameters).[16]

An additional attraction of the IDECO proposal stemmed from a new MFL proposal to assemble and check out stages of the launch vehicle in a building 180 meters from the launch pedestal. The facilities people at the Cape had never really liked the idea of modifying hangar D; many thought the raised roof would collapse in a hurricane. In the new plan the staging building shared a bridge crane with the IDECO service structure. Rails at the ceiling level of the staging building matched up with the bridge crane rails at the 13-meter level in the service structure. A cutout portion in the center front of the staging building roof provided space for the bridge crane roof. The dual use of the bridge crane allowed the transfer of the stages from the staging building to the launch pedestal in one operation.[17]

General Medaris was impressed with the IDECO proposal and ordered an extension of the service structure study. At a 13 April meeting, MFL directed Connell representatives to prepare a new design incorporating 14 function capabilities of the IDECO proposal. The Miami firm satisfied this requirement in ten days. The design called for a structure of girders and platforms shaped like an inverted U 95 meters high. The service structure was 40 meters wide, including the 17-meter open space where the structure extended over the launch pedestal. A bridge crane supported 40- and 60-ton hoists at a 75-meter hook height. Each hook had a forward reach of 9 meters and a lateral reach of 6 meters. Seven fixed platforms were housed within the tower legs, each providing 73 square meters of working area. Each half of the six enclosed retractable platforms had a capacity of 12 persons and 272 kilograms of equipment. The platforms were vertically adjustable from the 25-meter to the 68-meter level. Three elevators provided a 227-kilogram lift.[18]

Construction bids followed in June. Since assembly and service methods were still not firm, the contract called for additional design work. Kaiser Steel Corporation's $3.9 million bid, $400000 less than an IDECO proposal, won the contract. Kaiser formally began work on 14 August 1959, but construction did not start until the following summer.[19]

Brick and mortar work on the new complex proceeded satisfactorily, slowed little if at all by the still meager Army appropriations and the prospects of major administrative changes taking form in Washington. In early June 1959 the Western Contracting Company began hydraulic-fill operations

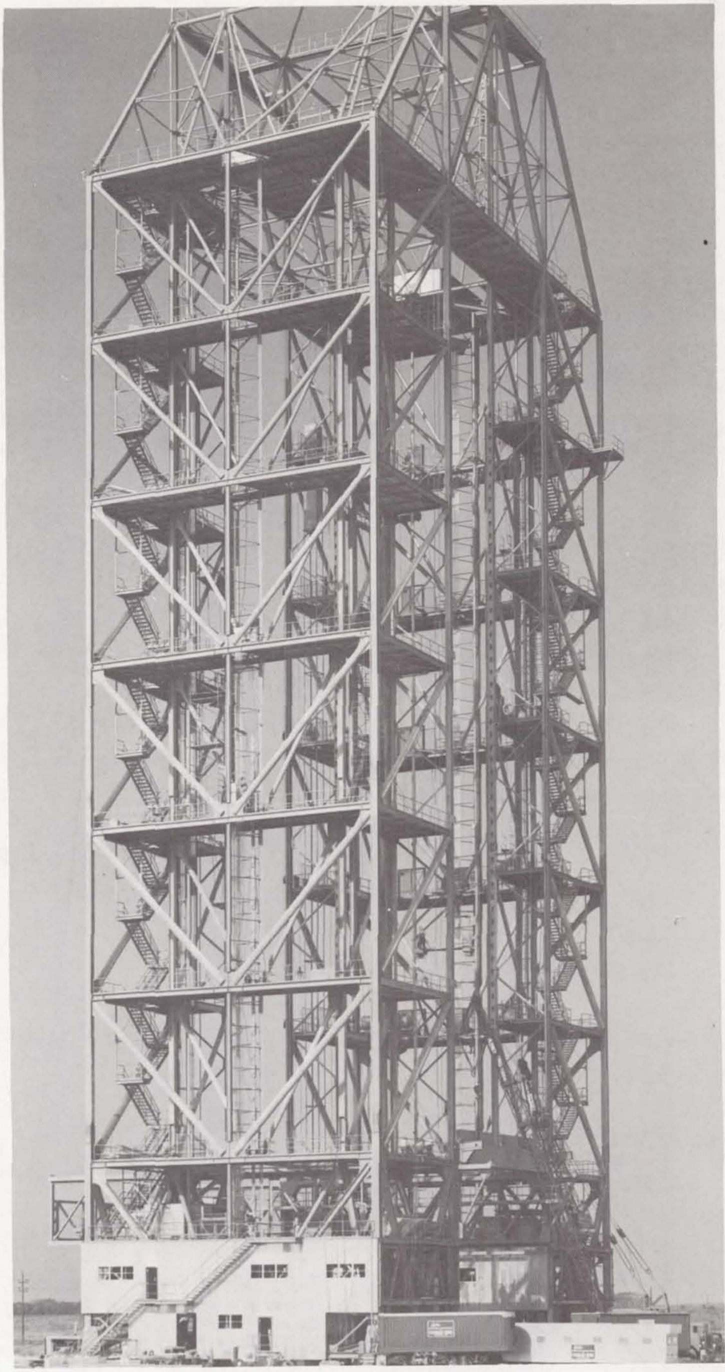


Fig. 7. The service structure, LC-34.

at the pad. A proprietary process, vibroflotation, was used to compact the fill. The Vibroflot machine consolidated the marshy soil by simultaneous vibration and saturation; the machine vibrated the sand with ten tons of centrifugal force as it pumped in more water than the surrounding soil could absorb. The sand formed a dense mass, the excess water floating fine particles to the surface. Workmen shoveled in backfill (roughly 10% of the total volume compacted) to increase the density. Vibroflotation on LC-34 required 5350 cubic meters of fresh sand to provide compact soil 8.5 meters deep. In late November, the Henry C. Beck Construction firm started work on the pad facilities. Three hundred and twenty meters to the southeast, the blockhouse was taking shape.[20]

A Money Transfusion

In the meantime, Debus received good news. With the Saturn's metamorphosis from Army orphan into NASA prima donna, cost estimates at the launch facility could be revised upward to what were considered more realistic levels (see table 2). Limited Army financing had constrained the Development Operations Division to view the Saturn program as a minimum operation to demonstrate the feasibility of the clustered booster, and funding for its Cape Canaveral launch facility during the first nine months was piecemeal and unrealistic. As a later MFL study noted: "Prior to this date [31 July 1959] no budget submissions could be considered an estimate of re-

TABLE 2. LAUNCH COMPLEX 34 COST ESTIMATES

(in millions of dollars)

	9 March 1959	31 July 1959	August 1960
Blockhouse	1.3	1.1	1.1
Service structure	3.0	4.6	5.1
Launch pad and area development	3.6	5.4	5.4
Capital equipment (high-pressure-gas systems, instrumentation)	.3	2.0	2.5
Ground support equipment		8.0	23.1
Operations support building			.9
Industrial facilities	.5		
Totals	8.7	21.1	38.1

Source: J. P. Claybourne, Saturn Project Office, LOD, memo for record, "Cost of Saturn Launch Facilities and Ground Support Equipment," 13 Sept. 1960.

quirements, merely a series of proposals on how to apply initial inadequate funding with the promise of additional operating funds to come.''[21] Rough estimates in September 1958 placed the cost of the launch complex at $4.5 million. The original project request, made on 9 March 1959, called for a total expenditure of $8.7 million. The price of the service structure alone had increased from $400 000 to $3 000 000. By 31 July 1959, revised estimates had increased the figure for MFL expenditures to $13.1 million, with an additional $8 million requested for ground support equipment. One year later MFL officials would be justifying a $38 million price tag for LC-34. Their explanation would offer a number of reasons: underestimates, inflation, organizational changes, vehicle design alterations, and the Saturn program's changing guidelines and objectives.[22]

Besides the rising costs of LC-34, MFL faced the need for a backup Saturn launch complex. While the Silverstein Committee report was pending in late 1959, MFL began its own investigation of hydrogen-filled upper stages. A committee, headed by Charles Hall, examined equivalent TNT forces and concluded that an explosion would render LC-34 useless for a year. MFL reassessed its Saturn launch capability in light of that report. The LC-34 staging building, tentatively located near the pad, was moved back to the industrial area and the service structure was fitted with blow-out panels around the base. In January 1960, Debus notified Eberhard Rees, Deputy Director at Huntsville, of the Hall Committee findings and strongly recommended a second Saturn complex. Construction of LC-34's second pad would not do since the 730 meters separating the LC-34B site from LC-20 was too short for safety, with the new Saturn configuration. The Development Operations Division gave its approval and MFL was soon planning for what would become launch complex 37.[23]

With the transfusion of new money, construction of LC-34 proceeded apace. Reminiscent of Florida's Seminole Indian Wars of the 1830s, the first structure to take form was the blockhouse (launch control center). The dangers had changed and so, too, the design of the blockhouse. The interior diameter of the igloo-shaped building at LC-34 was 24.4 meters, its maximum height 7.9 meters. Two stories provided space for control instrumentation, measuring racks, and firing consoles. Construction took 13 months; the blockhouse was ready for occupancy in July 1960.

The Ground Support Equipment

At Marshall Space Flight Center the development of ground support equipment proceeded under a new office. With the reorganization of ABMA, on the takeover by NASA in March 1960, the Systems Support Equipment

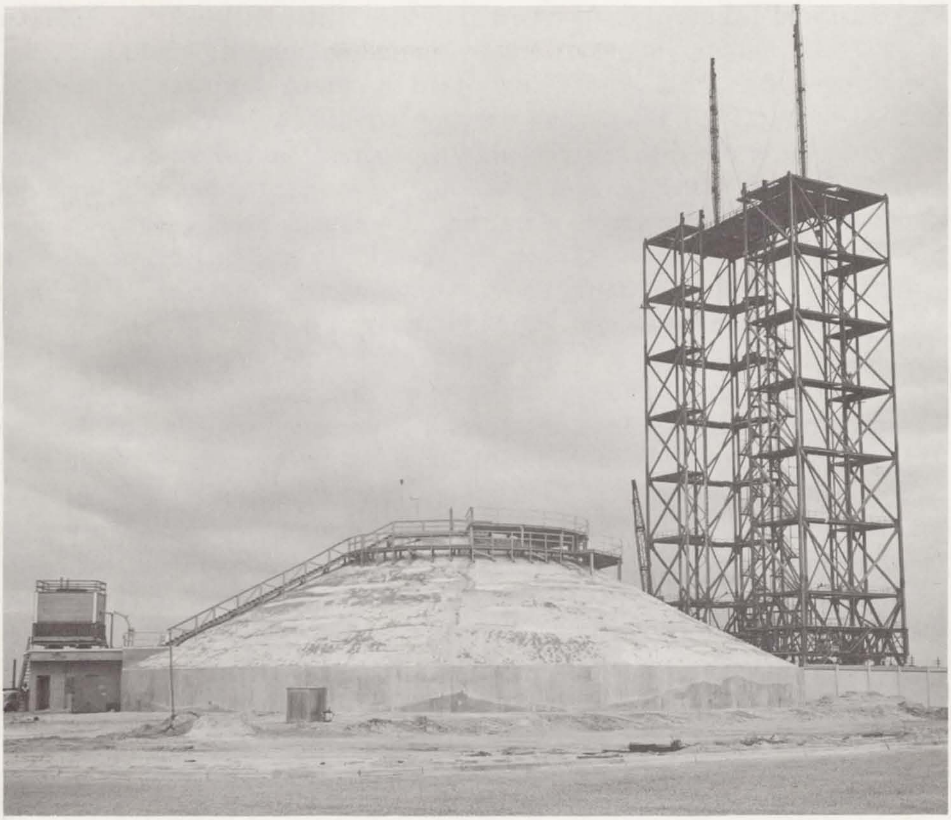


Fig. 8. The blockhouse at LC-34, with the service structure rising behind it, November 1960.

Laboratory disappeared. Most of the laboratory's personnel joined LOD as members of Theodor Poppel's Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office (LFSEO). Poppel's experience with ground support equipment dated back to World War II. A native of Westphalia, Poppel had begun work at Peenemünde in 1940, following graduation from an engineering school in Frankenhausen. He had been among the first Germans to enter the United States in 1945. The deputy to Poppel, Lester Owens, like many American members of the von Braun team, was Alabama-born and Auburn-trained. Five of the six suboffices worked in Huntsville; the other line unit, R. P. Dodd's Launch Facilities Design Group, was based at the Cape.[24]

By May 1960, LFSEO leaders felt sufficiently confident about the development of ground support equipment to discuss responsibilities for installing equipment at LC-34. A conference on the 17th set beneficial occupancy dates (the dates on which each facility within the complex would become available to MSFC and its contractors for installation of collateral equipment). MSFC plans called for a rudimentary high-pressure-gas (nitrogen and helium) facility. Two flatbed trailers, each with a 3785-liter storage tank, pump, vaporizer, and associated equipment, would bring liquid nitrogen to the pad. After being routed through a vaporizer and warmed to 294 kelvins (21 °C), the gaseous nitrogen would be stored under high pressure in a cluster of bottles protected by a concrete vault. Two booster compressors located in the storage area would pressurize the helium. Since the introduction of upper stages after the third launch would increase high-pressure-gas requirements, Chester Wasileski's Propellants Service Design Group was planning a central compressor-converter for LC-37. The basic LC-34 arrangement, however, would be ready by 1 August 1960.

Discussion moved next to RP-1 facilities. LFSEO planned to test the integrated fuel storage and transfer system at Huntsville before 10 August. During the fall, the General Steel Tank Company would install the two 113 550-liter storage tanks at the pad. Hayes Aircraft personnel would then clean, install, assemble, and pressure-test the entire transfer system from tank to fuel mast. The two 3785-liter-per-minute pumps were standard equipment and posed no problems. The propellant operations and status panel required additional testing at Huntsville, but would be ready for blockhouse installation in the fall. Wasileski thought the entire system could be operational by 1 February 1961.

Wasileski envisioned a similar schedule for LOX facilities: completion of testing at Huntsville on 10 August; installation of storage and replenishing tanks by Chicago Bridge Company between September 1960 and 15 January 1961; cleaning, assembling, and installing the transfer system (the pipes that carried LOX from the tanks to the Saturn) by Hayes before 15 January 1961; and operational status as of 1 February 1961. During the installation, the Chicago Bridge Company would conduct a flow test between the storage tank and replenishing tank to qualify the vaporizer design.

Work on the cable masts was proceeding satisfactorily. The Saturn booster required a 21-meter aluminum boom to service the instrument compartment with pneumatic pressure, electrical power, and coolants. LFSEO expected to deliver the long mast 1 March 1961. Shorter cable masts, mounted on the launcher support arms, would provide pneumatic and electrical connections to the tail section of the booster. The electrical connections powered and monitored the propulsion system, while the pneumatic lines purged and pressurized the fuel systems. The conference set 1 February 1961 as the installation date for launcher support arms, hold-down arms, and short cable masts.[25]

Development of the flame deflectors took Poppel's office about six months longer than expected. LFSEO had begun testing angles of impingement in early 1960 to establish the flow pattern for the Saturn's exhaust. If

Launch complex 34

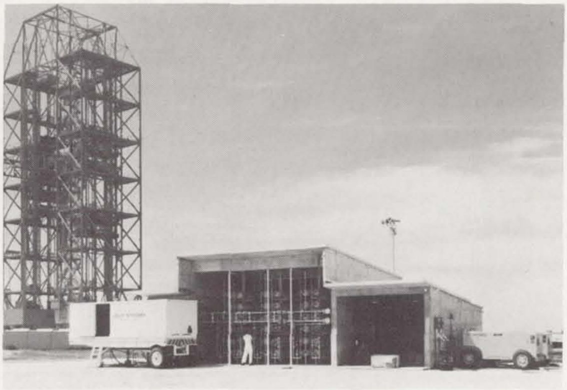


Figure 9

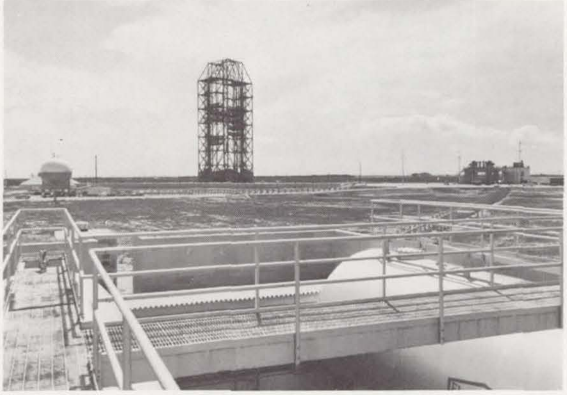


Figure 10

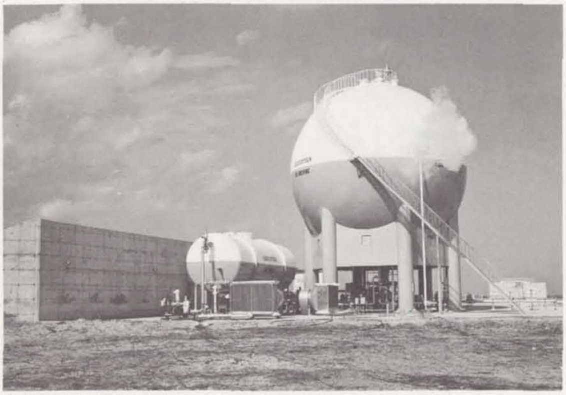


Figure 11

Fig. 9. The high-pressure-gas facility. Fig. 10. LOX facility (L), service structure (C), and pad (R), seen from the top of the RP-1 facility. Fig. 11. The LOX facility. The pad is to the left.

the deflector was set at the wrong angle, a detached shock wave would form, choke the exhaust flow, and raise the heat and pressure on the launch vehicle beyond tolerable limits. Donald Buchanan's Launcher System and Umbilical Tower Design Section experimented with several angles before contracting with the Hayes Corporation of Birmingham to construct two 80° deflectors. Delivery was set for November 1960. During subsequent tests in August 1960, Buchanan and Edwin Davis determined that a 60° deflector (30° angle of impingement) would further reduce the backflow. Although the 80° deflector still met launch vehicle requirements, rocket designers prevailed upon von Braun to modify the Hayes contract. The Birmingham firm shipped the first deflector to the Cape in April 1961. Due to its size, 6 × 8 × 13 meters, and weight, 99 tons, the deflector was shipped in seven sections.[26]

The change in the deflector design was not a unique event. The office frequently altered its designs to fit requirements of other MSFC groups; few concessions were made to LFSEO. For one example, the support arms could have been simplified by strengthening the booster frame. This LFSEO recommendation was rejected because it meant adding 1100 kilograms to the launch vehicle weight. Eventually, the weight increased several times that amount, but for other reasons. MSFC officials, fearful of a rocket collision, restricted the size of the umbilical tower. An LFSEO engineer, believing the final design of the tower base was unsatisfactory, surreptitiously increased its dimensions. Speculation about German-American friction at Huntsville was largely unfounded, but disagreements between vehicle designers and ground support engineers were common.

By mid-1960, costs of the two Saturn launch facilities were burgeoning. A July Saturn Project Office memorandum noted that "rising costs, the influence of the committee on Saturn blast potential [Charles J. Hall Committee], and the full impact of [the Saturn] C-2 on the VHF-37 complex . . . indicated that approximately 44 millions were required in lieu of the available 31 millions [for FY 1961]."[27] The Launch Operations Directorate established priorities to complete the essential portions of LC-34 and LC-37 while the remaining facilities awaited adequate funding: first, prepare LC-34 for the three Saturn booster shots without hydrogen capability or umbilical tower; second, prepare LC-37 as a backup pad for the second launch; third, complete LC-37 for launch of a two- or three-stage Saturn C-1 or C-2; fourth, complete LC-34 for Saturn C-1 configuration.* Construction of

---

*In July 1960, the Saturn launch schedule called for the first three booster shots to carry dummy upper stages. This was eventually changed to four booster shots (the block I series) and six two-stage launches (block II series). The block I series ran from 27 Oct. 1961 to 28 Mar. 1963.

Launch complex 34

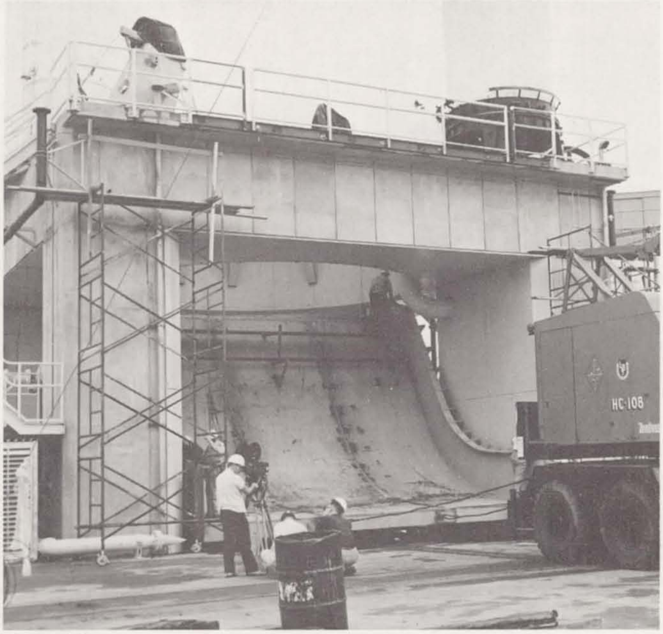


Figure 12

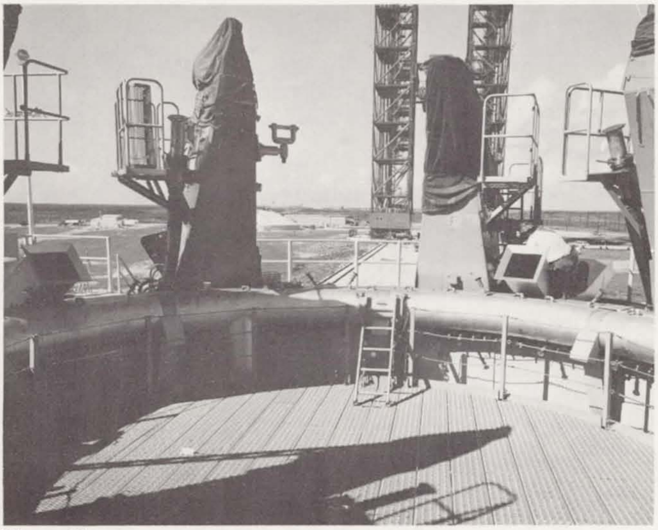


Figure 13

Fig. 12. The flame deflector in position beneath the launch pad. Fig. 13. The top of the pedestal. The metal grating, a work platform, was removed before launch. The spray nozzles can be seen beneath the torus ring. The rocket rested on the hold-down arms, which are under protective covers. The rectangular ducts (one of which is in front of the workman) removed exhaust gases.

LC-34's umbilical tower began in September 1960 but stopped at the 8.2-meter level; the long cable mast would provide umbilical connections for the booster launches.[28]

Labor Difficulties

Construction on several of LC-34's most prominent features including the service structure, launch pedestal, and umbilical tower was just getting under way when a serious labor dispute broke out at the Cape. On 5 August 1960, members of the electricians' union (International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers) informed a Corps of Engineers representative that, "It's too hot and ABMA is making it hotter . . . . We're going fishing."[29] The Launch Operations Directorate had generated the heat earlier that morning when some of its personnel unloaded a dozen firing consoles at the launch control center. The incident touched off four months of conflict between LOD and labor unions at the Cape, and eventually received the attention of Congress and the Secretary of Labor.

Involved were jurisdictional issues between unions, as well as the role of labor unions in research and development work. During the late 1950s, the building trades unions had achieved jurisdiction over a large share of the construction of ground support equipment for missiles. They feared loss of such jobs to the aircraft industry union. LOD officials believed that the building trades unions had won a number of concessions at the Cape because the Air Force normally yielded to labor demands. While the urgency of military programs made the Air Force position understandable, Debus refused to take the same course.* LOD articulated its philosophy in a 6 September presentation to General Davis, Air Force Missile Test Center Commander:

> All ground equipment including measuring, launch controls, plumbing, instrumentation which are directly connected to the missile are a very integral part of the missile system. In the early phase of any program, the missile constitutes a flying laboratory for the purpose of gathering *data* and testing feasibility on design concepts, operational techniques . . . . Thus the ground equipment is just as important to the success of the mission as is the actual flight of the missile . . . and must come

---

*Gen. Donald Yates contends that Air Force policy was a better approach to labor relations. Non-union contractors did work at the Cape, but the Air Force never placed a non-union contractor on the same job with a union contractor. Furthermore, Yates felt that LOD leaders tended to challenge union labor with their new rules.

> under the direct control, from installation to final use, of the LOD *missile* people. All our firings will be R&D in nature, not operational prototypes.[30]

General Davis was impressed with the LOD arguments, but not so the unions. When LOD personnel returned to the launch control center on 10 October to install more panels, 47 electricians walked out again. Ten days earlier, 27 ironworkers had left work on the service structure complaining of excessive supervision; on 4 October, 17 carpenters stopped work in a jurisdictional dispute with electricians over the installation of static ground lines.[31]

These walkouts were brief and contractors lost only 800 man-days from August to November. Then on 14 November LOD resumed its activities at LC-34, with civil service personnel installing cables and consoles. When the electricians struck again, LOD initiated injunction proceedings. The other trade unions retaliated with a mass walkout at the Cape. By Thanksgiving 650 union members were on strike. With the problem attracting national attention, Secretary of Labor James P. Mitchell intervened. His appointment of a fact-finding committee placated the unions and work resumed 28 November. The committee's findings, released after the New Year, included recommendations that LOD improve its communications with the unions and that both sides reexamine the controversial interface points (between rocket and ground support equipment). While the basic issue remained and work stoppages continued, relations never again reached the low ebb of November 1960.[32]

Work moved ahead rapidly on LC-34's major structures in early 1961. By February the inverted U shape of the service structure's rigid box truss frame was clearly recognizable. At the pad, four reinforced concrete columns, 7 meters high and more than 2 meters thick, stood at the corners of the 13-meter-square launch pedestal. Nearby rose the steel frame of the abbreviated umbilical tower. The walls of the 7 × 7 × 8-meter base would incorporate blowout panels to reduce structural damage from a pad explosion.

At its formal dedication 5 June 1961, LC-34 represented the largest launch facility in the free world. Although complexes 37 and 39 would soon overshadow it, LC-34 was destined to play an important and tragic role in the Apollo history. Its inaugural would come in four months with the first Saturn I launch as the United States tried to recover lost ground in the space race.

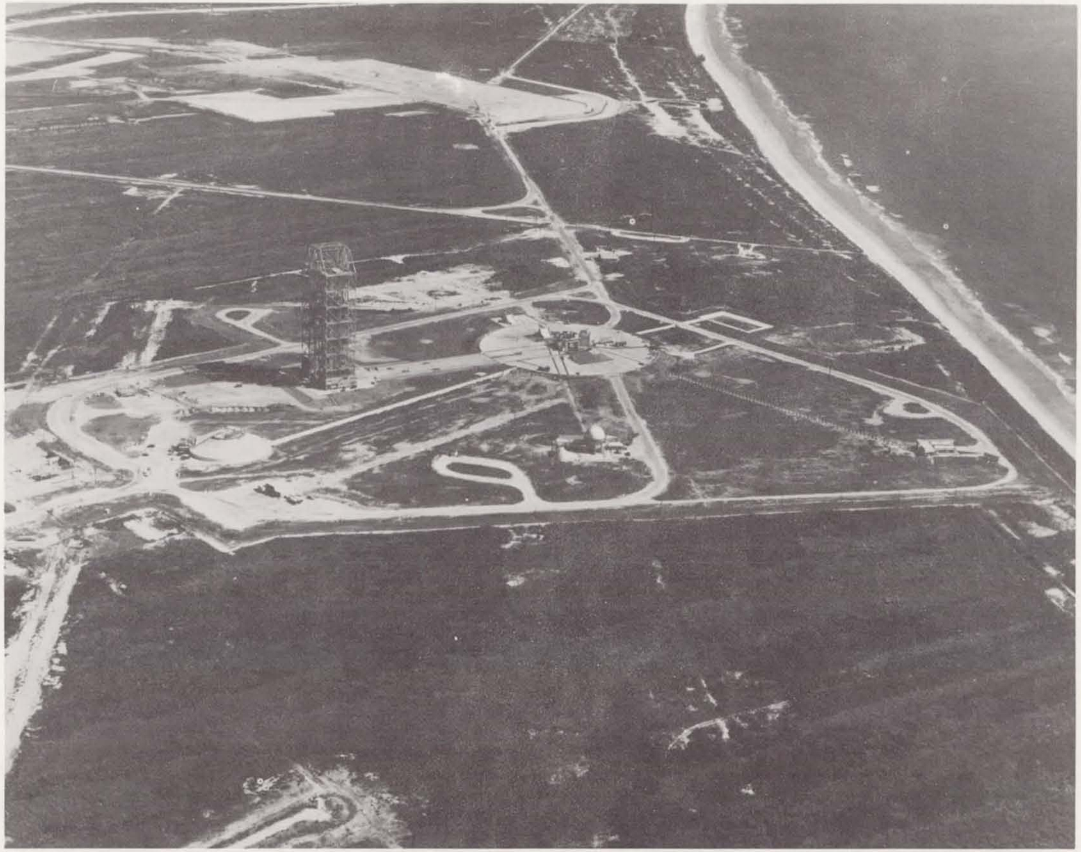


Fig. 14. LC-34 soon after its dedication. Looking north, the pad is in the center; the service structure has been removed along its parallel tracks to the parking position. The control center (blockhouse) is on the near side and left of the service structure. In the background, land is being cleared for LC-37.

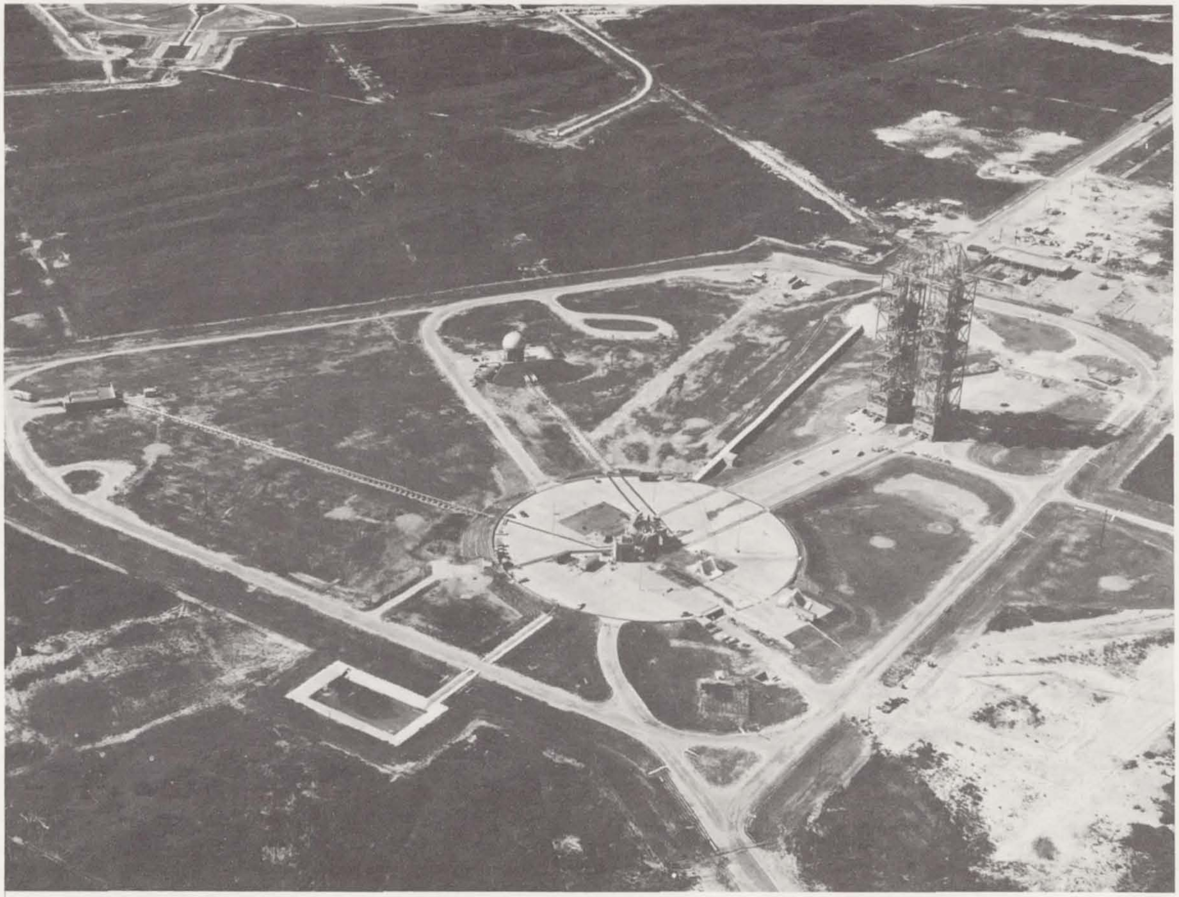


Fig. 15. LC-34, looking southwest. LC-20 is in the background. The white rectangle in the foreground is the skimming pond. The RP-1 facility is at the extreme left.

Page intentionally left blank

3

LAUNCHING THE FIRST SATURN I BOOSTER

The Magnitude of the Task

Just as launch complex 34 dwarfed its predecessors, Saturn checkout represented a new magnitude in launch operations. The Saturn C-1 stood three times higher, required six times more fuel, and produced ten times more thrust than the Jupiter. Its size, moreover, was only a part of the challenge to the Launch Operations Directorate (LOD) at Cape Canaveral. The costs and complexity had also increased markedly. Because of the costs (eventually $775 million for the Saturn I program's research and development alone), there would be fewer test flights. This meant the engineers at Marshall Space Flight Center (MSFC) had to have more test data per flight—such measurements as the temperature of the flame shield, the pressure in combustion chambers, the rocket's angular velocity in pitch and roll. Whereas two telemetry links (radio transmitter-receiver systems) sending 116 measurements had been adequate for Redstone testing, the first Saturn booster employed eight telemetry links to report 505 measurements. The rocket's overall complexity necessitated a longer checkout: Saturn C-1 launch preparations averaged 9 weeks, almost three times longer than for a Jupiter missile.[1]

Ultimately the new procedures were to work a major change in the human role on the launch pad. Until the Saturn, the Debus team had been on a first-name basis with the rockets. LOD members who were not crawling around inside the Jupiter worked within a few yards of the pad. The Saturn brought little change initially; checkout for the first Saturn C-1 remained largely a manual operation. In the blockhouse, a console operator with a test manual threw a switch connected to a rocket component and checked the results on a meter or strip chart. Automation on the first Saturn booster was rudimentary, limited to relay logic during the last minutes of countdown. It increased as the Saturn grew more complicated. The addition of a live second stage to the Saturn C-1 and the appearance of the much larger Saturn V dictated greater reliance on machines and computers. By the mid-1960s the Saturn checkout was well on the way to automation. Chapter 16 will address this subject in detail.

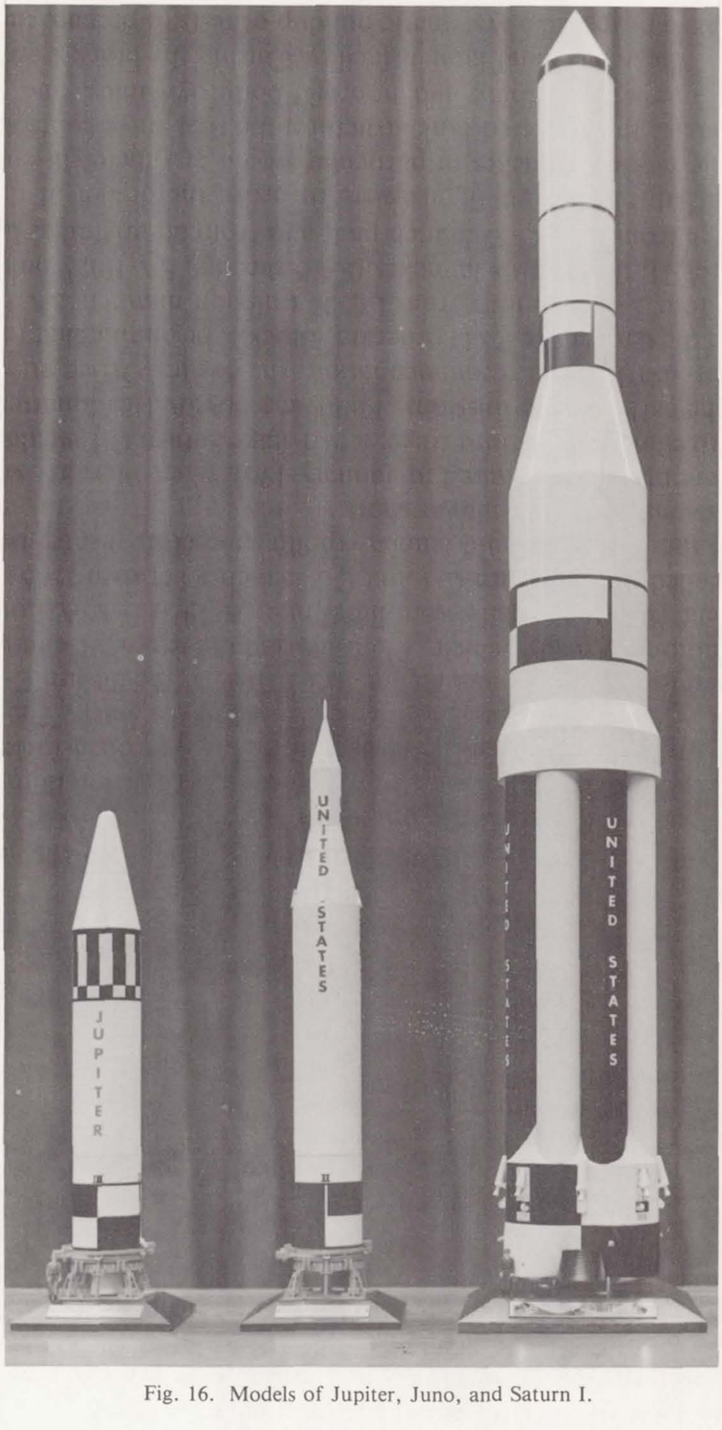

JUPITER
UNITED STATES
UNITED STATES
UNITED STATES

Fig. 16. Models of Jupiter, Juno, and Saturn I.

NASA had firmed up the Saturn C-1 program in late 1959 by adopting the Silverstein Committee's proposals (pages 13–14). Marshall Space Flight Center would start with the clustered booster (S-I) and dummy upper stages. A second block of missions would add a hydrogen-fueled second stage, and a third block would add a third stage to the stack. The Program Office listed the SA-10 launch, set for April 1964, as the Saturn C-1's debut as an operationally ready vehicle. Plans beyond the ten-vehicle research and development (R&D) schedule were indefinite. A 1960 NASA Long Range Program called for 50 Saturn C-1 and C-2 launches between 1965 and 1970. Twenty of these flights would launch Apollo spacecraft reentry tests, earth orbital missions, and circumlunar shots.[2]

These plans were altered in January 1961 when Wernher von Braun proposed to eliminate the third stage; a two-stage Saturn C-1 would meet the needs of the early Apollo missions. Following NASA Headquarters formal approval of von Braun's recommendation, the Saturn Office in Huntsville rearranged the ten-vehicle R&D program. Block I, beginning that fall, would consist of four S-I stage tests from LC-34 (mission numbers SA-1 through SA-4). Block II, the next six launches (SA-5 through SA-10), would add the second stage from the LC-37 launch pad, and from an upgraded LC-34.[3]

The Saturn C-1 test flights were to prove the design of the launch vehicle. The block I launches in particular would test the eight-engine propulsion system, the clustered tank structure, the first-stage control system's ability to cope with sloshing and nonrigid-body dynamics, and the compatibility of the vehicle and launch facility. During the block I series, Marshall engineers proposed a systematic buildup of tests to prepare the way for two-stage flights. Broadly stated, LOD's responsibilities were fourfold: assuring that transportation had not affected vehicle components, mating stages and ground equipment to verify the compatibility of the different stages, launching the rocket, and analyzing the performance of all vehicle systems immediately after launch to detect flight failures. Although the mission was referred to as "launch vehicle test and checkout," less than half of LOD's scheduled activities involved test performance. The balance of the total launch preparation effort included activities more properly described as assembly, installation, preparation for test, and evaluation of records.[4]

The Leadership

Entries in the LOD Director's daily journal during 1961 indicate that Debus kept a close eye on SA-1 operations. Other problems, however, occupied his time: a new launch facility for Saturn V—eventually the moonport for the moon rocket; Centaur facility development; and Mercury-Redstone, Pershing, and Ranger launches. On account of these duties, Debus did not deal with the details of the SA-1 checkout. That burden fell on his operations office chiefs, their deputies, and the veteran test engineers.

Dr. Hans Gruene headed the Electrical Engineering Guidance and Control office. A native of Braunschweig, Germany, he had earned his engineering degree at the technical university in his home town. Gruene had joined the Peenemünde operation in 1943 and emigrated to Fort Bliss after the war. Since 1951 he had served as the electrical networks chief for the launch team. Small in stature and unassuming, Gruene enjoyed great respect from his associates. Gruene's deputy, Robert Moser, had joined the von Braun team as an Army enlisted man in 1953, three years out of Vanderbilt University. He had reverted to civilian status in 1955, but stayed on in Huntsville as Gruene's right-hand man. Moser's launch countdowns resembled an orchestral performance and earned him high praise as test conductor for Explorer 1 and Alan Shepard's Mercury-Redstone flight. Gruene's office supervised the performance of all equipment affecting rocket guidance and control. This required a wire-by-wire knowledge of the electrical systems, both on board the vehicle and at the launch site. Gruene's men also evaluated preflight telemetry records relating to guidance, stabilization, control, and electrical networks of the vehicle.

Albert Zeiler's Mechanical, Structural, and Propulsion Office handled missile receipt and transfer, stage erection, and assembly. The team tested pressures, located leaks, and made necessary replacements, repairs, or modifications. One of the branch's sections was responsible for fueling the rocket, another for the firing. After the launch, the branch evaluated flight data to check on mechanical functions and make corrections for future flights. The Austrian-born Zeiler had served at Peenemünde throughout World War II, testing and launching V-2s. Following duty at White Sands, he had moved to Huntsville and worked with MFL. Robert Gorman, deputy in the Mechanical Office, had begun his engineering career in NACA's wind tunnels at Langley Field. A ready ear for subordinates' ideas contributed to his success. His calm manner balanced Zeiler's excitable nature, and the two provided the office with effective leadership.

Quiet and intense, Karl Sendler, chief of the Measuring and Tracking Office, seemed aloof to strangers, but to colleagues showed a warmth that sparked loyalty. He was Vienna-trained and reflected the traditions of the old Hapsburg capital in his manner and attire. At Peenemünde, Sendler had tracked the V-2s fired northward along the Baltic experimental range. He, too, had worked at White Sands before moving to Huntsville in 1950. His deputy, Grady Williams, had graduated from Auburn in 1949 and joined the von Braun team three years later. Associates considered him one of the friendliest members of the team. Like Sendler, Williams had a penchant for order. The two gave the Measuring and Tracking Office a reputation for being immaculate. During checkout, Sendler's systems engineers tested and calibrated the Saturn's measuring instruments—pressure gauges, thermometers, accelerometers, and the telemetry that relayed the measurements back to earth. At launch his office collected the flight data. Supporting ground radars tracked the flight for deviations in direction and range, which would reveal problems in the guidance and propulsion systems. Along with the other offices, Sendler's group prepared designs and established criteria for launch facilities. The unit's work brought frequent contact with other agencies investigating telemetry, high-frequency signals, and the measuring and tracking of launch vehicle flights. The branch's previous efforts had contributed to the development of three specialized tracking systems: DOVAP, "Beat-Beat," and UDOP.*[5]

The work of the three LOD operations offices involved close liaison with other Marshall divisions. Thus, Hans Gruene and his engineers spent more than half of 1960–1961 in Huntsville with the MSFC Guidance and Control Division. In turn, a dozen Guidance and Control engineers took part in the SA-1 checkout at the Cape. The launch team still considered itself an extension of Marshall. As one veteran recalled, "In the 1950s we looked at equipment when it came down here as not trusting a single thing in it. We were going to check everything from one end to the other."[6] Consequently, LOD's checkout was precise and exhaustive, "a laboratory type check on the pad."[7] Basic operating procedures were established and followed closely. Debus detailed some of these procedures in a letter to NASA Headquarters shortly after the first Saturn launch. LOD employed a test sequence that proceeded from components, through subsystems and systems, to overall tests. "If the preceding less complex tests are eliminated, as is tried frequently to shorten overall test schedules, any failure of one single component in an overall systems test necessitates activation of all other components whether critical to running time or not."[8] Debus insisted that his engineers conduct at least one systems test in its entirety to ensure a total working package. Other rules, established from long experience, included: calibrating sensors at the latest possible time, removing all connecting circuitry and components in a system when the cause for random irregularities could not be established, and disturbing a minimum of electrical and pneumatic connections after the final overall test. Some procedures concerned LOD's relations with other Marshall divisions. One provided for a speedy MSFC ruling on launch vehicle and ground support equipment modifications at the pad; another assured the availability of current Huntsville drawings.

---

*DOVAP (doppler velocity and position) was a velocity-measuring system that used a ground transmitter, a transponder on the launch vehicle, and a number of ground receivers. The change of frequency between the signal transmitted from the ground and that later received on the ground, called the doppler shift, could be converted to the velocity of the rocket. Integrating the velocity with time provided distance, which applied to the known departure point indicated the rocket's position. The "Beat-Beat" system detected the deviation of a missile from a predetermined flight path. It derived its name from the use of two receivers that compared, or beat, two frequencies against each other. The system consisted of a pair of DOVAP receiver stations placed symmetrically about the flight path. When the missile deviated to the left or right, one receiver would detect an increasing frequency, the other a decreasing frequency. See W. R. McMurran, ed., "The Evolution of Electronic Tracking, Optical, Telemetry, and Command Systems at the Kennedy Space Center," 17 Apr. 1973, mimeographed paper. "Beat-Beat" could be used equally well with UDOP or telemetry signals. UDOP (ultra-high-frequency DOVAP), operating at 440 megahertz, offered certain advantages over DOVAP, including higher resolution and less loss of accuracy from ionospheric refraction.

The technical checkout of the various Saturn systems fell to LOD's test engineers. Debus considered these engineers "the backbone of LOD test activities"; they carried "full responsibility for preparing a launch vehicle to the point of launch readiness [and] merited equal status with . . . engineers in design, development, and assembly operations. While an error made in the design or development phase could be detected by a test engineer, a mistake by an LOD systems engineer would inevitably lead to mission failure."[9]

Conceding that launch site tests were part of a continuous program to assure reliability and quality, Debus stressed the test engineer's need for autonomy. "Since the systems engineer carries the full responsibility for the flight-readiness of his assigned system, this responsibility should not be attenuated by assigning a separate inspection or quality assurance team to check on the systems engineer for compliance to test procedures and test performance." Although limited manpower ruled out a two-shift operation at the Cape, Debus opposed it on principle: "A systems engineer had to be kept informed continuously of the status of his assigned system and all occurrences during the test period."[10] When problems arose, the launch team resorted to overtime. The work day during the SA-1 checkout varied from 8 to 16 hours.

The Test Catalog for SA-1

LOD began preparing for the first Saturn launch in mid-March of 1961 when Debus directed the Scheduling and Test Procedures Committee to review launch procedures. The Director did not want to "automatically transfer into the Saturn, things that may have been important in past operations."[11] The committee—composed of the operations office deputies Gorman, Moser, and Williams—agreed that Saturn required basic changes in launch procedures. For example, LOD personnel had conducted a detailed identification of component serial numbers on previous rockets. Since a serial inspection of Saturn components would require many man-hours, the committee proposed to rely on MSFC's detailed list instead. LOD would update the Marshall list when components were changed. The committee eliminated some redundant systems checkouts and recommended less component testing. During the Saturn C-1 launches, the emphasis would shift gradually from component testing to integrated systems testing. As the checkout for SA-1 was revised, other MSFC personnel undertook to coordinate all Saturn testing.[12]

The test catalog that emerged in May 1961 indicated the magnitude of the Saturn C-1 program. The catalog included 233 system tests, 102 of which were prepared by LOD. The tests were grouped in seven categories: electrical networks, measuring, telemetry, radio frequency and tracking, guidance and control systems, mechanical systems, and vehicle systems. The last category included overall tests, simulated flight tests, cooling systems tests, propellant loading tests, static firing, and fuel tank pressurization. Most of the tests ran from four to eight hours; a few required days. An example of LOD's contribution was 6-LOD-26, the fuel and LOX systems full-pressure tests: *6* indicated the category, mechanical systems; *LOD*, the responsible division; and *26* identified the particular test among 42 in that category. The test objectives were to "accomplish a pressure test of both propellant tanks to full working pressure, performed and monitored from the Blockhouse to determine if any major structural defects have occurred due to transporting, handling, erecting, etc. Pressure drop-off time, and pressure switch cycles will be recorded for system leakage analysis at full working pressures."[13]

While operations personnel were determining test requirements, construction at the launch complex progressed toward the 5 June 1961 dedication, when the Corps of Engineers would formally transfer LC-34 to NASA. LOD personnel began outfitting the service structure in early May. The propellants team used "live" fuel to run a "wet test" of the fuel system on the 19th. No serious leaks appeared in the LOX and RP-1 transfer lines, and the pumps worked satisfactorily. At the dedication ceremony the long cable mast and two short cable masts were the only major items missing. Redesign had slowed their development, but shipment from Huntsville was expected in mid-June.[14]

A new ground support requirement, however, threatened to delay the October launch date. On 11 May launch vehicle designers notified Maj. Rocco Petrone's Heavy Vehicle Systems Office that the high-pressure gas system would have to be modified. Model tests indicated that LOX sloshing in the Saturn tanks caused condensation of the gaseous nitrogen used for pressurizing the fuel, and this lowered the pressure to marginal limits. The solution was to pressurize the LOX tanks with helium. Petrone took immediate steps

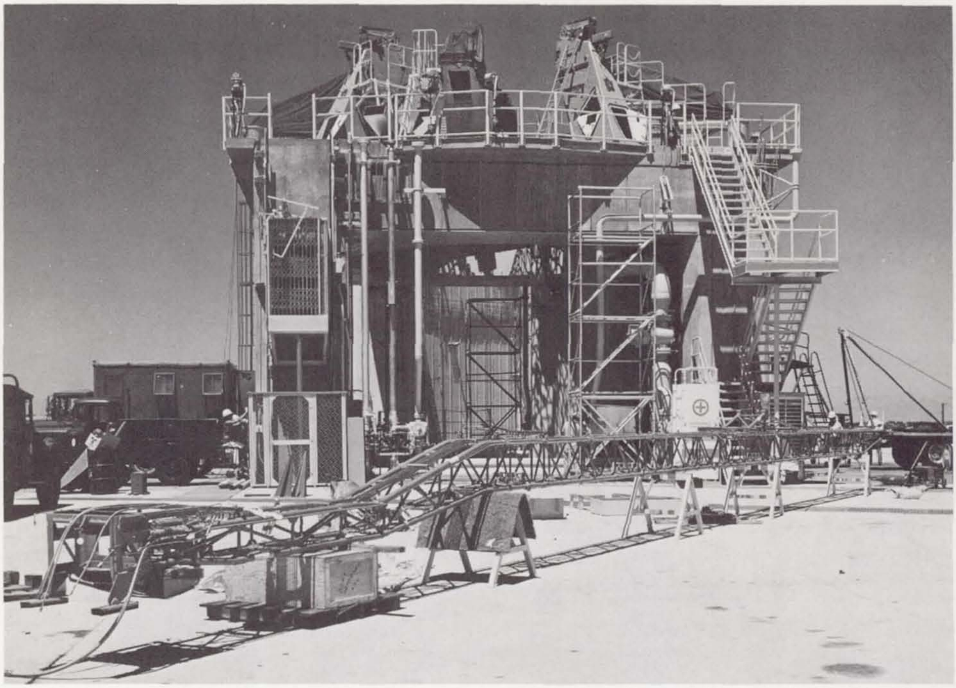


Fig. 17. Assembling the long cable mast at LC-34.

to procure a helium facility through sole-source procedures—an emergency government purchase without competitive bidding. He transferred LC-37 funds to cover the expense and secured eight steelworkers, skilled in working on high-pressure tubes. Debus told von Braun the following day that the change to helium might hold up the launch. The Marshall director mentioned NASA Headquarters fear that a delay would have political repercussions, but assured Debus that Huntsville understood the problem. Modifications progressed rapidly, easing Debus's mind, and the helium facility was ready by mid-September.[15]

Up in Huntsville, the Fabrication and Assembly Engineering Division had fallen behind on its booster assembly schedule. Debus reluctantly agreed to have the work completed at the Cape. Albert Zeiler detailed a list of unfinished items in a letter to Debus on 14 July. Zeiler expressed particular concern about the scheduling problems posed by these requirements:

> 3 - Install hula hoops [rings that retained the heat shield] and coat uncoated portion on eight engines.

This would require 30 hours of unobstructed work in the tail section during the last 10 days before launch.

10 - Heat shield beams have to be coated, estimated time three days for application and up to ten days in addition where no work can be performed around the tail section because the coating discharges, during the curing time, burnable fumes.

Zeiler considered this a safety, as well as a scheduling, problem, but noted that the curing time could possibly be shortened.

11 - Four curtains for outboard engines will be prefitted, then coated, and then shipped.

The installation would require one day and should be done as late as possible to avoid any damage.[16]

Robert Moser was responsible for fitting the Fabrication Division's activities into the Saturn checkout. As SA-1 test conductor, he coordinated launch operations and ensured that proper procedures were used for the 102 formal tests. Moser's operations schedule, prepared in early August, included:

15 Aug. - Unloading barge and transporting S-I stage to pad 34.
17-21 - Erection of stages.
15 Sept. - Removing service structure for RF tests with the range.
20-25 - Overall systems tests.
2 Oct. - LOX loading test.
9 - Simulated flight test.
12 - Launch day.

Moser's schedule also listed much component testing and instrument calibration during the first half of the schedule; system and vehicle tests predominated in the second half.[17]

The Saturn Goes Sailing

Two years earlier Marshall Flight Center officials had decided to transport the Saturn booster (SA-1's only live stage) from Huntsville to Cape Canaveral by water. In April 1961, Test Division personnel loaded a water-ballasted tank, the approximate size and weight of the booster, and a dummy upper stage aboard the barge *Palaemon*. The barge, resembling a Quonset hut on a raft, made the first leg of its trial trip in five days, descending the Tennessee, Ohio, and Mississippi Rivers to New Orleans. There, a seagoing tug replaced the river tug. The *Palaemon* crossed the Gulf of Mexico to the

Florida Keys, sailed through the straits, and up the Atlantic coast via the Intracoastal Waterway. The LOD team on the Saturn dock, located at the south end of the Cape industrial area, witnessed a strange sight when the simulated booster emerged from the *Palaemon*'s hatch. The big spoked rings, 4.3 meters across, on each end of the 25 x 2.1-meter tank, looked like the wheels and axle of a gigantic vehicle. The simulation served its purpose, proving that both the *Palaemon* and the Cape's secondary roadways could carry the load.[18]

The *Palaemon* was undergoing modifications back at Huntsville in early June when the lock at Wheeler Dam, Tennessee, collapsed, stranding the barge upriver. Test Division and LOD personnel moved quickly to secure a reserve barge from the Navy's mothballed fleet at Green Cove Springs, Florida. Although there was not enough time to construct a cover for the second barge, the Avondale Shipyards at Harvey, Louisiana, made emergency modifications. Concurrently, the Tennessee Valley Authority enlisted the Corps of Engineers to build a bypass road and dock at Wheeler Dam. The Navy had identified its drab barge by a number, YFNB33. NASA rechristened the vessel *Compromise*, in hopes it would prove a workable one.[19]

The booster was ready for shipment in early August, following static firing and two months' further testing at Redstone Arsenal. To protect the booster during its voyage, the Test Division installed humidity and pressure regulating equipment within the LOX and RP-1 systems. Protective covers were placed on each end of the booster, as well as on the dummy upper stage and payload. After the assembled booster, with its support cradles, connecting trusses, and assembly rings, was jacked onto two axle-and-wheel units, an M-26 Army tank retriever towed the load to Redstone's dock. Marshall engineers had provided for the Tennessee River's three-meter fluctuation at the arsenal by building special ballasting characteristics into the *Palaemon*.[20]

The portage at Wheeler Dam, the reloading on the *Compromise*, and the journey to New Orleans went smoothly. Out in the Gulf of Mexico, however, the ten-man crew had rough sailing. Test Director Karl L. Heimburg attributed the handling problems to the *Compromise*'s insufficient ballast. Negotiating the Intracoastal Waterway proved even more difficult, and the *Compromise* went aground four times. Heimburg blamed this on unreliable channel depths due to the shifting of the loose, sandy bottom. Crosswinds were an additional hazard; besides threatening to blow the barge around, the wind caused several near-accidents at bridges. (The *Compromise* was to collide with a bridge on the return trip, causing minor damage.) Despite Heimburg's frustrations, the SA-1 arrived unscathed at the Cape's Saturn dock on the 15th.[21]

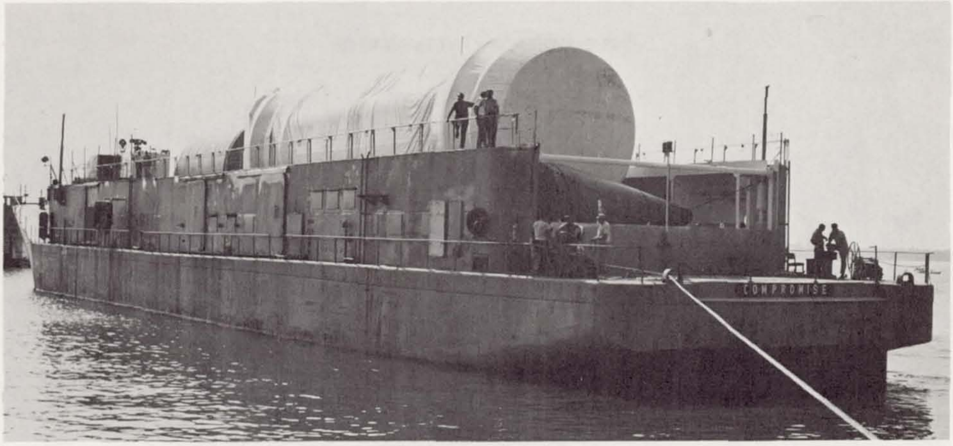


Fig. 18. The *Compromise* at Wheeler Dam, 5 August 1961, with SA-1 onboard.

Unloading the booster was relatively easy in the almost tideless Banana River. Henry Crunk's vehicle-handling unit towed the S-I transporter across the Cape at a majestic 6.5 kilometers per hour. Although the operation required little physical exertion, the ten-man team perspired freely on the treeless Cape. At pad 34 ocean breezes made the heat and glare more tolerable. Most visitors, associating Florida's beaches with leisure, would have found the mixed sounds of service structure cranes and pounding surf incongruous. The novelty for LOD veterans lay in the huge Saturn booster, which had at last arrived at its action station.[22]

The booster or S-I stage was erected on Sunday, 20 August. Crunk's unit had practiced maneuvering a dummy tank on the pad, but this was the first mating of the booster to the launch pedestal. With the service structure in place over the pedestal, an M-26 driver positioned the transporter parallel to the service structure base. The crew connected crane hooks to pickup points on the booster, a 60-ton hook to the forward sling and a 40-ton hook to the thrust frame sling. The crane operator raised the S-I stage vertically, brought it into the service structure, and lowered it onto four preleveled support arms. Removal of the transportation assembly rings proved the most time-consuming aspect of an uneventful operation. Early the following week, Crunk's unit hauled the dummy stages and payload from hangar D, where they had undergone inspection. The handling unit mated the dummy stages and the nose cone on the 23d. Cables and cable masts were installed, the four retractable support arms positioned, and network power applied on the 25th. Concurrently the Fabrication Division installed exhaust duct brackets, access doors, and the radio frequency shield.[23]

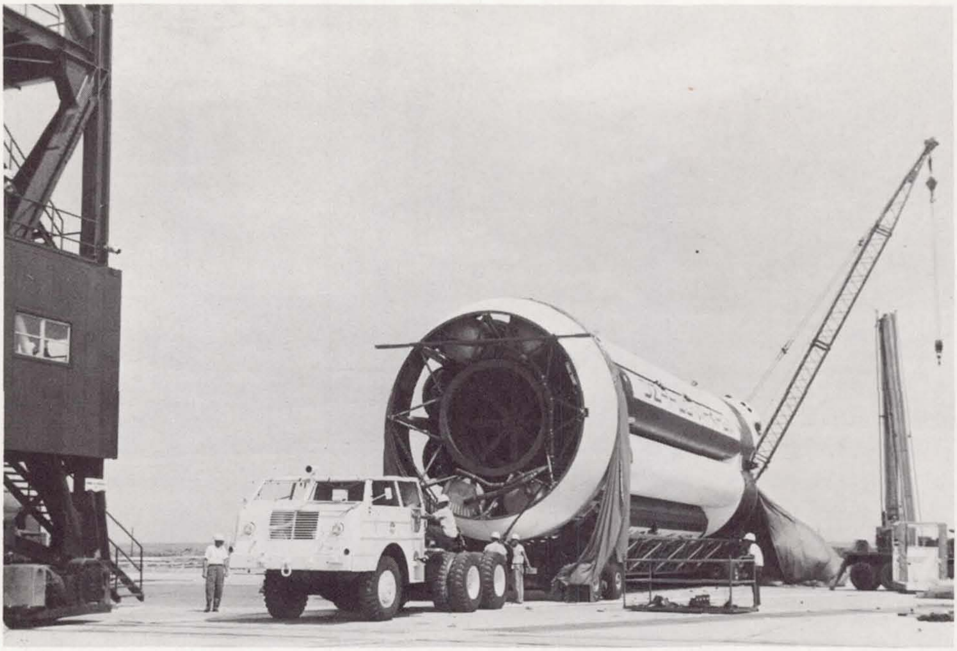


Fig. 19. Transporting SA-1 to the pad.

Beginning the Checkout

Andrew Pickett's Vehicle and Missile Systems Group (part of Zeiler's Mechanical Office) spent the next month installing the accessories of SA-1* and conducting a series of launch vehicle tests. In some, the purpose was to make sure that various components responded correctly to pressure stimuli. Others checked for leaks caused by the barge trip and the subsequent erection of the S-I stage. The first week the group performed pressure switch functional tests, verifying the pickup and dropout pressures for several hundred switches. The Saturn's 48 nitrogen bottles, which pressurized the RP-1 fuel tanks during flight, were then tested at one-half the operating pressure.

During the second week, the unit checked out the pressurizing and venting capability of the LOX tanks. Air pressure was applied to a switch in the tanks' electrical system. The switch, when functioning properly, would terminate pressurization at a certain level. If excessive pressure built up, a second switch would vent the hypothetical gaseous oxygen. LOX and RP-1 system leak checks followed; in both tests the team pressurized the tanks to about one-half the operating pressure, looking for seal leaks.

---

*Both the rocket and the mission carried the designation SA-1.

Concurrently Pickett's group conducted a series of engine tests. A nitrogen purge of the LOX dome, located at the top of the H-1 engine, served several purposes. A low-level purge, begun prior to propellant loading and continued until shortly before engine ignition, exceeded atmospheric pressure to prevent contaminants from entering the thrust chamber nozzle and flowing up to the injector plate and LOX dome. This also prevented moisture from condensing in the area. If a launch was cancelled, a full-flow nitrogen purge would quickly expel all LOX from the dome to avoid a possible explosion. Similar purges of the liquid-propellant gas generator, LOX-injector manifold, and the fuel-injector manifold of the thrust chamber prevented the entry of unwanted substances.

The full-tank pressurization test on 6 September ended the first phase of mechanical checkout. Allowing for the possibility of an explosion while bringing the launch vehicle to full pressure, LOD officials cleared the pad for the Wednesday morning test. The two-hour exercise went smoothly, and that afternoon engineers were back at the launch vehicle for further operations.[24]

Calibration of the measuring devices that were to report more than 500 flight measurements was a daily operation. Sensing devices such as transducers, potentiometers, thermocouples, and strain gauges measured pressures, propellant flows, temperatures, and vibrations. A signal from one of these sensors, measured in millivolts, was routed to a signal conditioner which amplified the reading until it could be read on a scale of 0–5 volts. The calibration of these signal conditioners, popularly referred to as black boxes, was a major concern of Reuben Wilkinson's Measuring Group (a unit of Sendler's Measuring and Tracking Office). The team sometimes stimulated a sensing device by tapping on a portion of the rocket to cause vibrations or by placing a hot soldering iron near a thermocouple. More often they simulated a signal with an electrical input through an "interrupt box" located between the sensor and the signal conditioner. While calibrating the black boxes, the launch team bypassed the telemetry system. The amplified signal went from the signal conditioner through a series of remote-controlled relays, and then over wires to a measuring station in the base of the service structure. The calibrating equipment in the station normally performed a five-step sequence, checking the reading of each instrument at 0, 25%, 50%, 75%, and 100% of maximum value. After the tests were completed, Wilkinson's team reconnected the measuring and telemetry systems for readings over the radio frequency (RF) links.* The Measuring Group removed faulty instruments

---

*According to the *Saturn SA-1 Vehicle Data Book*, the following types of measurements were made on the SA-1: "propulsion, expulsion, temperature, pressure, strain and vibration, flight mechanics, steering control, stabilized platform, guidance, RF and telemetering signals, voltage, current and frequency, and miscellaneous." Nearly 400 of SA-1's 510 telemetered readings concerned propulsion, temperature, or pressure. F. A. Speer, "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation," 1st American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Meeting, 29 June–2 July 1964, fig. 4.

Erecting SA-1

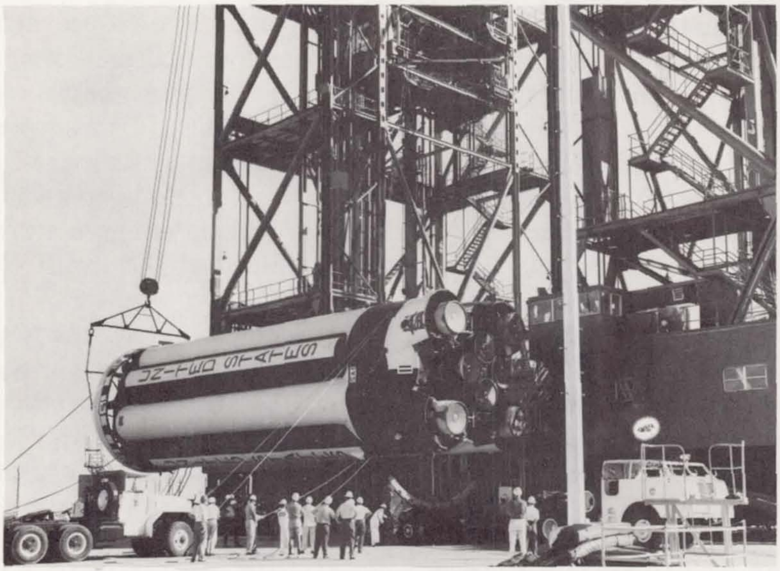


Figure 20

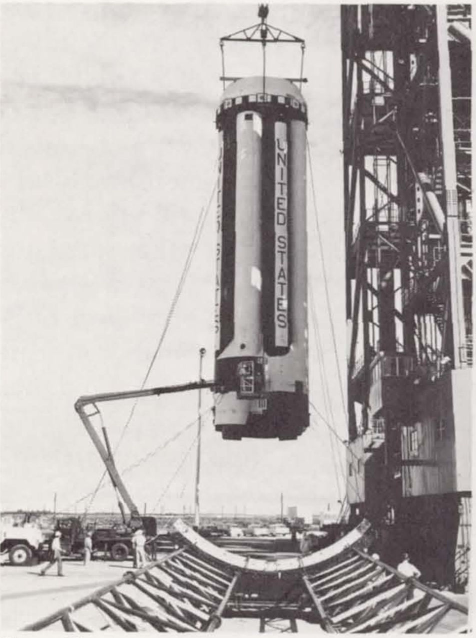


Figure 21

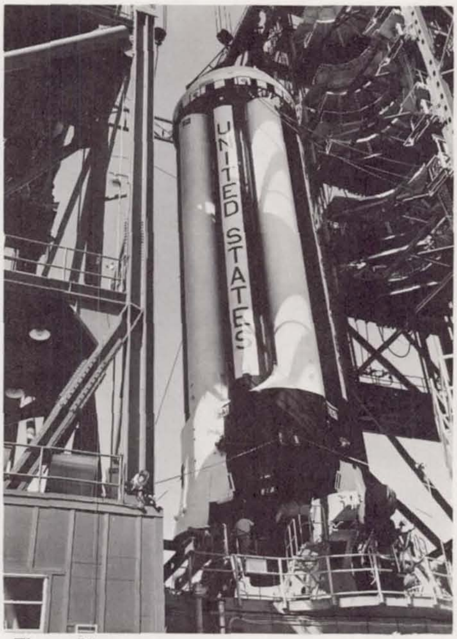


Figure 22

Fig. 20. Lifting the first stage from the transporter. Fig. 21. Hoisting the stage in vertical attitude. Fig. 22. Setting the first stage on the support arms at LC-34.

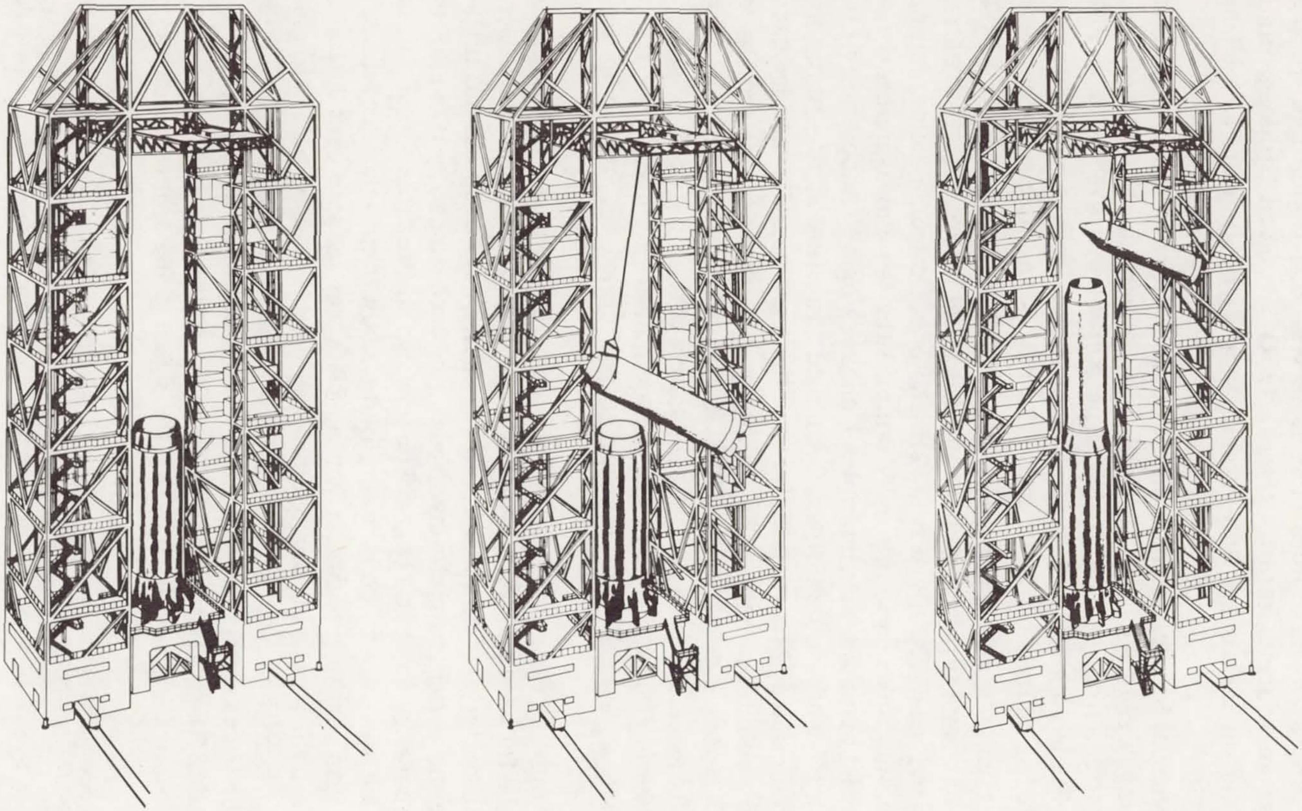


Fig. 23. Erecting the upper stages.

from the launch vehicle for further checks at calibration stands or in an instrument-calibration laboratory. The team was also responsible for the blockhouse measuring-station. Here LOD received 100 ground measurements on the rocket and ground support equipment, as well as telemetry data.[25]

Another of Sendler's units, Daniel McMath's telemetry team, checked out the booster's eight RF links. Seven of the links used the XO-4B package, a proved system from Jupiter flights. The XO-4B was a PAM–FM–FM (pulse amplitude modulated–frequency modulated–frequency modulated) system with 15 channels of continuous data and 54 multiplexed channels.*

The Guidance and Control Division in Huntsville had developed the eighth link to ensure sufficient data channels for the Saturn C-1. The central feature in the new XO-6B was a 216-channel electronic commutating system.† Sub-multiplexers sequentially sampled the same measurements for each of the eight engines. Sub-multiplex 1 might sample "temperature LOX pump bearing" while sub-multiplex 2 sampled "pressure at fuel pump inlet." The main transistorized multiplexer, in turn, sequentially sampled each of the 27 sub-multiplexers. The multiplexer's output was fed to a 70-kilohertz wide-band subcarrier. This frequency permitted the use of a commercially available oscillator that accurately carried the 3600-pulse-per-second wave train and utilized existing demodulation equipment. The result was that 216 separate Saturn measurements traveled on one radio frequency.[26]

McMath's Telemetry Group first tuned the two sets of antennas located at the forward end (top) of the S-I stage. The six-man team next performed transmitter and power amplifier checks. A third operation, alignment of the subcarrier channels, involved tuning each subcarrier oscillator to its center frequency and band edges. The test also ensured that signal output from the oscillators was of correct amplitude. Midway into the second week the team began verifying telemetry wiring. Data was fed into each line at a break between the measuring and telemetry systems. If range operations permitted, the team conducted an "open loop test," with the RF transmitter radiating the telemetry signal to receivers in the blockhouse and hangar D. But if radiating RF signals would interfere with any other activity in the area, the team operated "closed loop" with the signal going from the telemetry link over wire to the telemetry ground stations. After all eight links were checked out, the team reconnected the measuring and telemetry systems for subsequent tests of the launch vehicle.[27]

---

*Each telemetry link employed one frequency, e.g., SA-1's link 3 used 248.6 megahertz. Oscillators within that system produced sub-carrier channels, referred to as straight channels because they carried continuous data from one sensor. Most measuring instruments, however, shared telemetry time by means of a multiplexer. On the XO-4B links, two 27-channel mechanical commutators provided the multiplex function.

†Commutation in telemetry is sequential sampling, on a repetitive time-sharing basis, of multiple-data sources for transmitting on a single channel.

During the first month of checkout, Jim White's Tracking Group worked on the tracking systems for the SA-1: cameras, UDOP and UDOP Beat-Beat, S-band radar, C-band radar, Azusa, Beat-Beat MKII Telemetry, and Telemetry ELSSE.* The two radar systems were controlled by the Air Force. The S-band provided position data by tracking the Saturn beacon. The C-band was a backup, should the Saturn beacon fail. LOD had eight UDOP stations in the Cape area, each connected by RF data links to a central recording station in hangar D. The Beat-Beat MKII Telemetry employed two baselines: one set of antennas located south of LC-34 determined whether the rocket made its proper turn out to sea; the other set, southwest of LC-34, ascertained flight path deviations downrange. The UDOP Beat-Beat system would fly on SA-1 as an experimental package.[28]

White's team employed a test transmitter to check out the UDOP stations. The test team simulated launch vehicle movement by varying the transmitted frequency. A drop in frequency simulated velocity away from the receiving station; conversely, a frequency increase represented rocket movement toward the receiver. These response tests checked the data-link equipment as well as the eight UDOP receiving sets. Preparation of the Beat-Beat systems included "walking the antenna," a basic test, but one which pointed up the importance of the tracking unit's work.† First, antenna connections were broken at one end of the baseline. Then a team member, equipped with a hand antenna and field telephone, walked a certain distance to set up a new baseline. Launch vehicle signals received at the new baseline indicated a theoretical rocket deviation from the previous flight path (read at the old baseline), the degree and direction of the deviation depending on the man's new location. By correlating the deviation and the new baseline, White's team determined whether the Beat-Beat system was functioning properly.[29]

---

*See footnote on p. 45 for descriptions of Beat-Beat and UDOP. Azusa dated back to the early 1950s and was named after the southern California town where the system was devised. The Azusa ground station determined the vehicle transponder's position by measuring range and two direction cosines with respect to the antenna baselines. ELSSE (Electronic Skyscreen Equipment) was used "to determine angular deviations of the missile from the flight line. The system consists of two ELSSE receivers placed behind the missile equidistant on either side of the backward extended flight line." W. R. McMurran, ed., "The Evolution of Electronic Tracking . . . at KSC," p. 3.

†According to LOD veterans, an incorrect performance of this test had cost the Air Force its first Thor shot several years earlier. After establishing its new baseline, an inexperienced contractor crew had picked up an LOD test transmitter frequency rather than the Thor's RF. Getting the opposite results from what they expected, the team had rewired the indicating device. When the Thor was launched, the range officer destroyed it unnecessarily, because the Beat-Beat system indicated a westward flight toward Orlando.

SA-1 required many modifications of equipment and procedures; as early as the second week the activities report listed among its major events, "engineering changes underway."[30] Characteristic of first launches, SA-1 was the most difficult and time-consuming of the Saturn block I launches. Robert Moser altered the schedule, when necessary, at the daily operations meeting in blockhouse 34.[31]

The scheduling committee planned an RF compatibility test for the midway point in the eight-week checkout (see table 3). The test was a major one for SA-1, marking the first time the vehicle stood alone (service structure removed from pad) for a complete check of the radio systems. Power was applied to the vehicle's RF systems to transmit signals to Cape receiving stations for telemetry, radar, and command and control. The launch team was particularly interested to see if the test would cause any interference in the command destruct system. Earlier launch programs had involved two to four telemetry links. SA-1's eight links increased the possibility of carrier and subcarrier frequencies beating against each other to produce harmonics that would feed back into receiving antennas. The effect might introduce spurious signals into the command destruct system.* The operations served both a validation and confidence function, proving each radio channel's performance and demonstrating that no serious interference would enter the destruct system. As an unexpected bonus, the test also demonstrated the launch vehicle's stability. Shortly after removal of the service structure, a sudden September squall subjected the rocket to 48-kilometer-per-hour winds without ill effect.[32]

LOD started integrated systems tests in the fifth week of checkout. Overall test (OAT) #1 (mechanical and network) was the first run of the launch vehicle's sequencing system, the relay logic that controlled the last minutes of countdown. OAT #2, a "plugs-drop test," put the vehicle on internal power with ground support disconnected. The key overall test, the guidance and control OAT #3, pulled all systems together in a check verifying the previous five weeks' work. The launch team began preparations for the test Saturday, 23 September. The advance work fell into seven categories: vehicle networks, ground networks, mechanical, electrical support, measuring, RF, and navigation. Vehicle network requirements included the connection and verification of telemeters, calibrators, radars, and 60 test cables, e.g., the Thrust OK Switch Engine #3 test cable. The checkout on Monday morning went well; MSFC officials were increasingly confident that SA-1 would fly.[33]

---

*In a subsequent Saturn I checkout, after additional telemetry links had been added and before LOD adopted a digital command receiver, the launch team had considerable trouble with interference in the command channel.

TABLE 3. RF INSTRUMENTATION TEST PROCEDURES, SA-1

T–20	(20 minutes prior to launch).	
	1.M:	Telemeter 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 ON
	2.M:	Auxiliary Equipment ON
	3.M:	Azusa ON
	4.M:	UDOP ON
	5.M:	C-Band beacon to FILAMENT
	6.M:	S-Band to FILAMENT
	7.M:	Command Receiver +1 ON
	8.M:	Command Receiver +2 ON
	9.M:	Telemeter Calibration to PREFLIGHT
	10.M:	Telemeter Calibration Command to 50%
	11.RANGE:	Radars ON and away from pad
T–18	1.TM-D:	Telemeter Recording ON
	2.TM-B:	Telemeter Recording ON
T–17	1.M:	C-Band Beacon to B+
	2.M:	S-Band Beacon to B+
T–16	1.M:	Telemeter calibration command to 0% for 10 sec.
	2.M:	Telemeter calibration command to 100% for 10 sec.
	3.M:	Telemeter calibration command to 0%, 25%, 50%, 75%, 100%, 0% in 2 sec. increments
T–15	1.M:	Telemeter calibration to INFLIGHT
	2.M:	Telemeter calibration command ON & OFF
	3.RANGE:	Command Carrier ON
	4.RANGE:	Check Azusa and report verbal readout to Test Conductor
	5.RANGE:	Interrogate C- and S-Band Beacons and report verbal readout to Test Conductor
T–12	1.RANGE:	Cutoff command on request of Test Conductor
	2.RANGE:	Destruct command on request of Test Conductor
	3.RANGE:	Switch transmitters as required by Range and repeat functions
	4.RANGE:	Secure Command Carrier
	5.M:	Command Receiver #1 OFF
	6.	Command Receiver #2 OFF
T–10	1.M:	Telemeters 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 OFF
	2.M:	Auxiliary Equipment OFF
	3.TM-D:	Telemeter Recording OFF
	4.TM-B:	Telemeter Recording OFF
T–5	1.M:	Azusa OFF (or sooner if RANGE readout is complete)
	2.M:	UDOP OFF
T–0	1.M:	C-Band Beacon OFF (or sooner if RANGE readout is complete)
	2.M:	S-Band Beacon OFF (or sooner if RANGE readout is complete)

Source: "Saturn Test Procedures, RF Instrumentation Test SA-1 (4-LOD-3)," Robert Moser papers. This test format is similar to, but briefer than, most of the several hundred other procedures prepared by LOD for SA-1.

Symbols:	M	Firing Room Measuring Panel
	TM-D	LOD Telemeter Station Hangar D
	TM-B	Blockhouse 34 Telemeter Station
	RANGE	Items for Test Conductor and Safety Officer

By early October the original launch date of the 12th had slipped eight days. On the 4th the launch team conducted the LOX loading test, a major exercise for SA-1 since it represented the first integration of the Cape's cryogenic support equipment with the Saturn vehicle. LOD followed this successful exercise with another plugs-drop test on the 10th. Engine-swivel checks were completed by the end of the week. The launch team began the ninth week of checkout with the simulated flight test, the last major preflight test. Robert Moser's 43-page procedure covered preparations for launch, the last 90 minutes of countdown, and activities for 5 hours after liftoff. The test went well, but MSFC delayed the launch another week while its Saturn Office debated the merits of adding more sensors near the base of the booster to provide additional information on the critical bending during the first 35 seconds of flight. It was finally decided that SA-1's instrumentation was adequate and the launch was set for 27 October. During the last week, LOD completed ordnance fitting (the command destruct system) and repeated the simulated flight test.[34]

The Launch of SA-1

Prelaunch preparation began at 7:00 a.m. on 26 October 1961. Mechanical Office tasks that morning included inspection of the high pressure gas panel, cable masts, and fuel masts; ordnance installation; and preparation of the holddown arms. At 12:30 p.m., Thomas Pantoliano's 12-man propellants section checked out the RP-1 fuel facility while Andrew Pickett's team pressurized the helium bottle. RP-1 loading began an hour later. The propellant team filled the launch vehicle's tanks to the 10% level, using a slow, manual procedure of approximately 750 liters per minute to check for leaks. A leak in the fuel mast vacuum breaker was easily repaired, and at 2:30 p.m. the launch team cleared the pad for the automatic "fast fill" operation. Fuel flowed into the launch vehicle at 7570 liters per minute, reaching the 97% level in about 35 minutes. The propellants team then reverted to the "slow fill" procedure. As the design of the Saturn included a fuel drainage system, Pantoliano's crew placed 103% of the required RP-1 aboard the Saturn. Just before launch, the propellants team would take a final density reading and drain sufficient kerosene to achieve the desired level.[35]

The ten-hour countdown started at 11:00 p.m. as LC-34 switched to the Cape's emergency generating plant. This facility supplied the launch team a current relatively free of the fluctuations common in commercial power. The Saturn's electrical circuits and components began warming up when vehicle power was applied at T – 570—570 minutes before launch time exclusive of holds. Five minutes later the measuring panel operator turned on the eight telemetry channels. A series of calibration checks followed. At T - 510 range and launch officials initiated an hour of radar checks.[36]

Loading of liquid oxygen started after 3:00 a.m. on the 27th (T - 350). The Saturn's LOX tanks were 10% filled to check for leaks in the launch vehicle or in the 229-meter transfer line, as well as to precool the line for the fast flow of super-cold LOX. While the automatic fast fill from the 473 000-liter LOX storage tank employed a centrifugal pump, the 10% precooling operation relied on the pressure in the reservoir. The 10% level in the Saturn's tanks was maintained for the next four hours by feeding LOX from the 49 000-liter replenishing tank.[37]

Testing of command and communication systems began at T - 270. The flight control panel operator activated the guidance system's stabilized platform, the ST-90, to check pitch, roll, and yaw response. Ten minutes later the network panel operator placed the vehicle on internal power to ensure that the Saturn's batteries functioned properly. Meanwhile other engineers conducted Azusa, UDOP, radar, and telemetry checks. The operation was over by T - 255, and the launch vehicle was returned to external power.[38]

Two hours from the 9:00 a.m. scheduled liftoff, an unfavorable weather report prompted launch officials to call a hold. When the count resumed at 7:34 a.m., the launch team rolled the service structure back to its parking area, 180 meters from the rocket. The propellants team set up the LOX facility for fast fill at T - 100. The order to clear the pad came 20 minutes later; the blockhouse doors swung shut at T - 65. One hour from launch the pad safety officer gave his clearance and the propellants team initiated a 6.5-minute precool sequence, a slow fill to recool the main LOX storage tank line, which had not been in use for four hours. When the "Precool Complete" light flashed on, the LOX facility's pump began moving 9500 liters per minute into the Saturn. In 30 minutes the tanks were 99% full. LOX loading changed over to the replenish system. An adjust-level drain* had already been made on the RP-1 tanks, bringing the fuel level down to 100%.[39]

Launch officials, concerned that a patch of clouds over the Cape might obscure tracking cameras, called a second hold at 9:14 a.m. A northeast breeze was soon clearing the skies, and within half an hour the countdown resumed. During the last 20 minutes, the launch team made final checks of telemetry, radar, and the command network. Automatic countdown operations commenced at T – 364 seconds. A sequencer or central timing device controlled a series of electrical circuits by means of relay logic; i.e., if event A occurred (e.g., opening a valve), the sequencer triggered event B, and so on through the required functions to liftoff. The sequencer monitored tank, hydraulic, and pump pressures; ordered a nitrogen purge of the engine compartment; and closed the LOX tank vents to pressurize the liquid oxygen. The Saturn vehicle switched to internal power at T – 35 seconds. Ten seconds later the sequencer ejected the long cable mast. The pad flush command at T – 5 seconds began a flow of water around the launcher base. At that time, a number of possible malfunctions (a premature commit signal, insufficient thrust in one or more engines, rough combustion, short mast failure, detection of fire, or voltage failure) could still cause the automatic programmer to terminate the countdown.[40]

---

*Establishing an exact ratio of RP-1 to LOX was important since simultaneous depletion of propellants at cutoff was desired. Flight data later indicated a 0.4% deviation in the RP-1 fuel density sensing system, 0.15% above design limits. Too much LOX (400 kilograms) and not enough RP-1 (410 kilograms) were therefore loaded. The error contributed to a premature cutoff 1.6 seconds ahead of schedule.

Away from launch complex 34, Cape watchers gazed uncertainly at the Saturn rocket as the countdown neared completion. No previous maiden launch had gone flawlessly, and the Saturn C-1 was considerably more complicated than earlier rockets. LOD officials gave the rocket a 75% chance of getting off the ground, a 30% chance of completing the eight-minute flight. Although odds on a pad catastrophe were not quoted, launch officials acknowledged their vulnerability. With the construction of LC-37 barely begun, a pad explosion could delay the Saturn program a year. Critics had questioned the wisdom of the clustered booster design. Propellant pumps were supposedly reaching design limits and the Saturn C-1 had 16 pumps in eight engines. Local wags derisively referred to the SA-1 launch as "Cluster's Last Stand."[41]

Saturn backers, while expressing confidence in the rocket, were concerned about its launch effects. During test firings at Redstone Arsenal, residents 12 kilometers away had reported shattered windows and earth tremors. The launch team had set up panels and microphones at the Cape to register the Saturn's shock and sound waves. At the press site, 3 kilometers from pad 34, reporters were issued ear plugs as a precautionary measure. LOD officials had assured local residents that fears of the rocket were exaggerated. Still, everyone wondered what it would be like. The moment of truth came at 10:06 a.m. Contrary to popular belief, no one pushed a firing button to send SA-1 on its way. Launch came when the sequencer ordered the firing of a solid propellant charge. The gases from the ignition accelerated a turbine that in turn drove fuel and LOX pumps. Hydraulic valves opened, allowing RP-1 and LOX into the combustion chambers, along with a hypergolic fluid that ignited the mixture. The engines fired in pairs, developing full thrust in 1.4 seconds. A final rough combustion check was

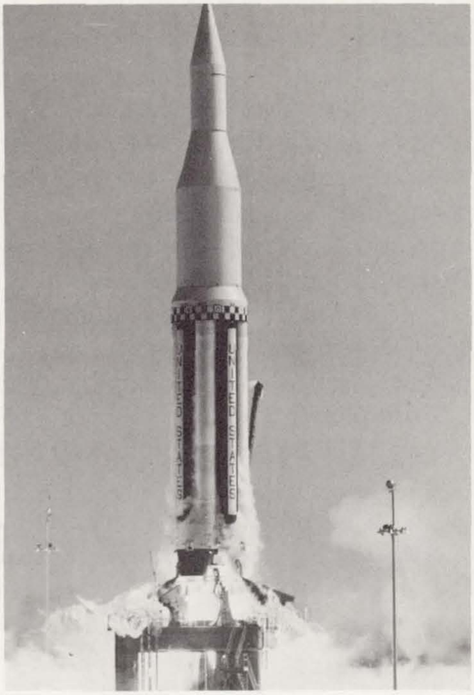


Fig. 24. Liftoff of Saturn I. Note the long cable mast falling away on the right.

followed by ejection of the LOX and RP-1 fill masts from the booster base. The four hold-down arms released the rocket 3.97 seconds after first ignition. SA-1 was airborne.

Spectators saw a lake of flame, felt the rush of a shock wave, and then heard the roar of the eight engines. Trailer windows at the viewing site shook in response to the Saturn's power. Yet for many of the thousands watching the launch, the roar was a letdown. Reporters thought the sound equaled an Atlas launch viewed at half the distance.* The Miami *Herald* headline the next morning read: "Saturn Blast 'Quieter' Than Expected."[42]

Although the Saturn's roar failed to meet expectations, the human noise at LC-34's control center was impressive. Bart Slattery, a NASA information officer, told reporters that when the rocket passed maximum Q (point of greatest aerodynamic pressure) at about 60 seconds into the flight, "all hell broke loose in the blockhouse." Kurt Debus's face reflected the happy sense of accomplishment hours later when he informed the press that it had been a nearly perfect launch.[43]

---

*Marshall Center scientists, after studying readings taken in nearby communities during launch, explained that weather conditions were such that sound was absorbed by the atmosphere. As a result, sound levels were less than those experienced during static firings at Huntsville.

The success was particularly welcome to the Kennedy administration, coming at a time of high tension between the United States and the Soviet Union. The raising of the Berlin Wall had stunned the Western world in August 1961. President Kennedy had responded with a partial mobilization of U.S. reserve forces, but most political analysts considered the events a Russian victory. In late October, as the Soviet Union prepared to test a 50-megaton H-bomb, the President had proposed a massive fallout shelter program. On the day of the SA-1 launch, Russian tanks moved into East Berlin for the first time in several years.

The space race was an important element in a Cold War that threatened to turn hot. With the success of the Saturn booster, the United States had achieved a launch capability of 5.8 million newtons (1.3 million pounds of thrust). Space reporters were quick to point out the limits of the American success. The Soviet Union already had workable upper stages for their first stage. Furthermore, the current Russian tests in the Pacific would likely result in sizable booster advances. Despite these caveats, commentators agreed that SA-1 was an important step toward a lunar landing.[44]

4

ORIGINS OF THE MOBILE MOONPORT

Ambitious Plans and Limited Space

The original commitment of the Saturn program to a Cape Canaveral launching site was for the research and development launches only.* A launch site for operational missions remained an open question long after construction started on LC-34. Four major questions were involved: Would blast and acoustic hazards require an isolated—perhaps offshore—launch pad for larger Saturn rockets? If not, could the pads be safely located on the coast of Florida or elsewhere—Cumberland Island, Georgia, perhaps? Would the Saturn become America's prototype space rocket? If so, how many Saturn launches per year would be required? In the midst of these questions was one stern reality: Cape Canaveral was running out of launching room.

By early 1960 the Cape resembled a Gulf Coast oil field. Launch towers crowded the 16 kilometers of sandy coastline with less than a kilometer of palmetto scrub separating most of the pads. The busy landscape testified to the recent advances in America's space program, but the density of the launch pads posed a problem for NASA and Air Force officials. Launch programs were under way for Titan, Polaris, Pershing, and Mercury; plans for Minuteman and Saturn were well along. A Department of Defense management study, prepared in April 1960, reported that the Atlantic Missile Range was "substantially saturated with missile launching facilities and flight test instrumentation."[1] This seconded a 1959 congressional study that criticized the range's severe shortage of support facilities.[2] With the siting of the second Saturn launch complex (complex 37) near the northern boundary of the range, launch officials were running out of real estate.

The lack of room at the Cape did not deter Marshall Space Flight Center personnel from preparing plans for 20, 50, even 100 Saturn flights a

---

*In mid-1960, 10 R&D launches were scheduled. LC-34 was to launch the first four Saturn C-1 shots (testing the booster). Six subsequent C-1 R&D missions with upper stages would be launched from a modified LC-34 and from LC-37. The latter complex would also be used for an undetermined number of C-2 R&D shots. Operational launches were still very tentative; a NASA Headquarters schedule in late 1960 called for 50 C-1 and C-2 launches between 1965 and 1970, 20 of them concerned with the Apollo program (reentry tests, earth orbital missions, and circumlunar missions).

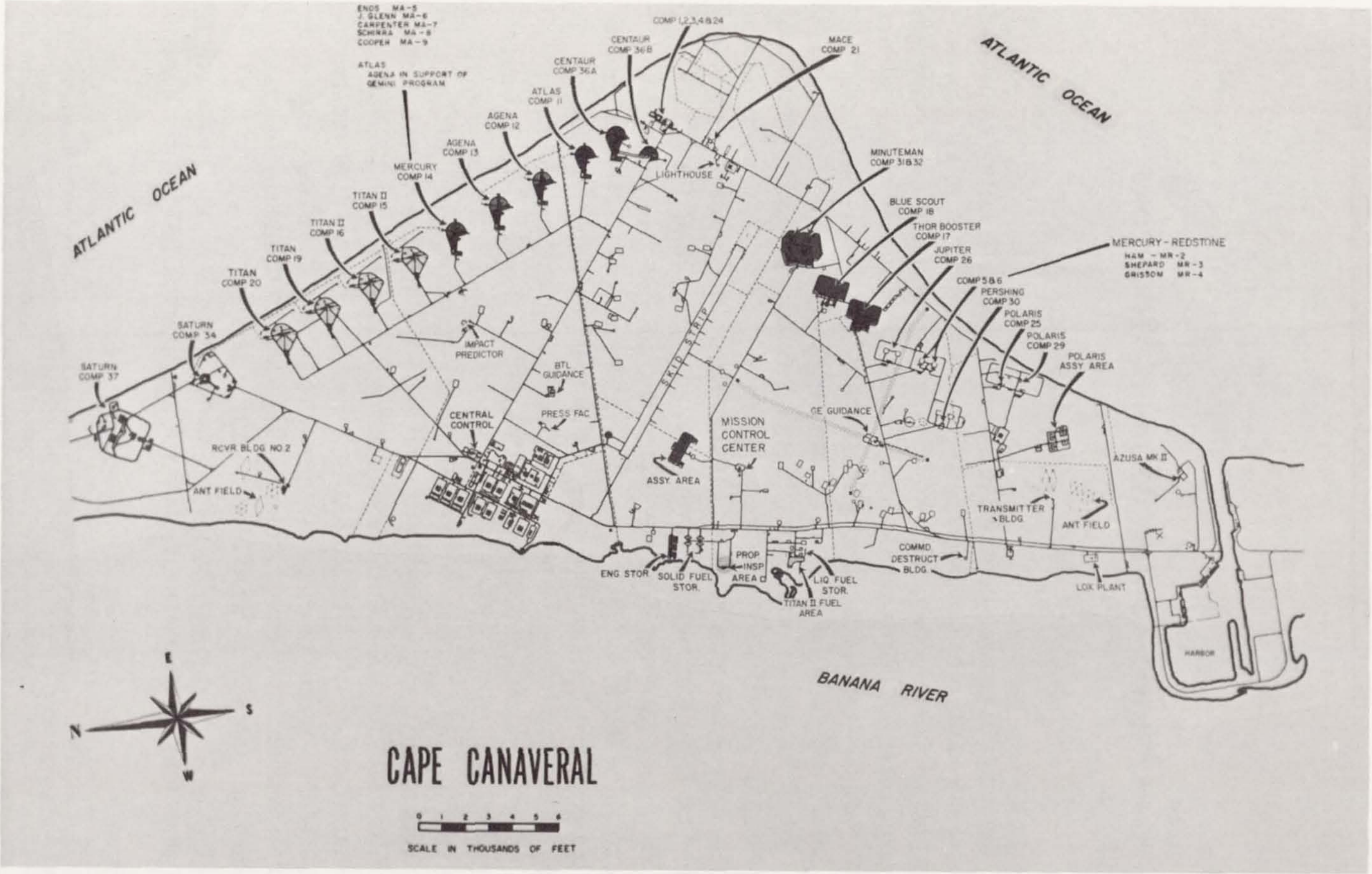

ENOS MA-5
J. GLENN MA-6
CARPENTER MA-7
SCHIRRA MA-8
COOPER MA-9
ATLAS
AGENA IN SUPPORT OF GEMINI PROGRAM
COMP 1,2,3,4 & 24
CENTAUR COMP 36B
CENTAUR COMP 36A
MACE COMP 21
ATLAS COMP 11
AGENA COMP 12
AGENA COMP 13
MERCURY COMP 14
TITAN II COMP 15
TITAN II COMP 16
TITAN COMP 19
TITAN COMP 20
SATURN COMP 34
SATURN COMP 37
ATLANTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
LIGHTHOUSE
MINUTEMAN COMP 31 & 32
BLUE SCOUT COMP 18
THOR BOOSTER COMP 17
JUPITER COMP 26
MERCURY - REDSTONE
HAM - MR-2
SHEPARD MR-3
GRISSOM MR-4
COMP 5 & 6
PERSHING COMP 30
POLARIS COMP 25
POLARIS COMP 29
POLARIS ASSY AREA
IMPACT PREDICTOR
BTL GUIDANCE
SKID STRIP
CENTRAL CONTROL
PRESS FAC
MISSION CONTROL CENTER
GE GUIDANCE
RCVR BLDG NO 2
ANT FIELD
ASSY AREA
AZUSA MK II
TRANSMITTER BLDG
ANT FIELD
ENG STOR
SOLID FUEL STOR.
PROP INSP AREA
LIQ FUEL STOR.
TITAN II FUEL AREA
COMMD DESTRUCT BLDG.
LOX PLANT
HARBOR
BANANA RIVER
E
N
S
W
CAPE CANAVERAL
0 1 2 3 4 5 6
SCALE IN THOUSANDS OF FEET

Fig. 25. The crowded Cape, 1963.

year. The Army's failure to carry out Project Horizon and put a squad of men on the moon had not dulled Hermann Koelle's enthusiasm (page 11). Now under NASA, his Future Projects Office was investigating earth-orbital space stations, a permanent scientific facility on the moon, a "switchboard in the sky" to serve communications satellites, and manned exploration of Mars. The last project would extend into the 1980s and involve sending several spaceships to that planet.[3]

NASA's ability to implement Koelle's plans depended upon the development of the launch vehicle in Huntsville. With the Saturn C-1 off the drawing boards, Huntsville planners were working on Saturn C-2. This three-stage rocket was to use the two stages of the C-1 configuration and insert a new second stage incorporating Rocketdyne's J-2 engine. A cluster of four J-2s, fueled by liquid hydrogen and liquid oxygen, could produce 3 520 000 newtons (800 000 pounds of thrust), giving the C-2 a total of 10 428 000 newtons (2 370 000 pounds of thrust). The C-2 could carry a payload 2.5 times that of the C-1; large enough to send a 3630-kilogram manned spacecraft to the vicinity of the moon, that payload would still be far short of what was needed for a direct ascent lunar landing (flying one spacecraft to the moon, landing, and returning to earth). An alternative to direct ascent was the use of earth-orbital rendezvous. This scheme involved launching a number of rockets into earth orbit, assembling a moon rocket there, and then firing it to the moon. NASA officials estimated that an earth-orbital rendezvous would take six or seven C-2 launches to place a 3630-kilogram spacecraft on the moon, nine or ten launches for a 5445-kilogram spacecraft. With this in mind, Koelle warned Debus at a 15 June 1960 meeting that such programs might require as many as 100 C-2 launches annually.[4]

Debus considered Koelle's projections plausible. Future Projects Office charts indicated that the cost per launch vehicle might drop as low as $10 million at the higher launch rate. If the space program received 3% of the annual gross national product for the next two decades, the American launch program could reach 100 vehicles per year.[5] A launch rate of such magnitude seemed unrealistic to other Launch Operations Directorate (LOD) members in light of their experience with the Redstone and Jupiter missiles—programs that had not exceeded 15 launches per year. Some doubted the Atlantic Missile Range's capability to sustain so large an operation, as well as the nation's willingness to fund it. Aware of the impact his program would have on LOD, Koelle asked Debus to determine the highest possible firing capability for Saturn from the Atlantic Missile Range.[6]

There was general agreement within LOD that launch procedures at complex 34 could not satisfy the Future Projects Office plans. Debus and his associates estimated that LC-34 could launch four or five vehicles per year, depending upon the degree to which checkout was automated. This allowed two months for vehicle assembly and checkout on the pad and a month for rehabilitation after the launch. With its two pads, LC-37 could handle six to eight launches annually.[7] The two complexes together barely satisfied Koelle's lowest projection for the C-2 study (12 launches annually); 48 Saturn launches per year would require at least 10 launch pads. Since the protection of rockets on adjacent pads might entail a safety zone of nearly 5 kilometers, a Saturn launch row could extend 48 kilometers up the Atlantic Coast. Purchase of this much land would be a considerable expense, and the price of maintaining operational crews for 10 pads would eventually prove even more costly. Limited space, larger launch vehicles with new blast and acoustic hazards, a steeply stepped-up launch schedule—all combined to set up a study of new launch sites for the Saturn. How and where to launch the big rocket?

Offshore Launch Facilities

As early as 1958, Livingston Wever, a member of the Army Test Office's Facilities Branch, had proposed the use of a modified Texas Tower* as an offshore launching platform for big rockets. Concerned about the Saturn's noise-making potential, Wever renewed his proposals in March 1960. Preliminary calculations, extrapolated from the noise levels measured during Atlas booster tests, indicated the Saturn C-1 would generate acoustical levels as high as 205 decibels at a distance of 305 meters from the launch pad. Peaks of 140 decibels, the threshold of pain, could be expected more than 3000 meters from the pad. Wever was particularly concerned that the Saturn vehicle might emit a shock wave in the early stages of its trajectory (at heights from 600 to 900 meters) that would cause serious damage in nearby towns. He proposed to solve the acoustical problem by moving the launch platform to a structure 169 kilometers southeast of Cape Canaveral and 56 kilometers north of Grand Bahama Island. Wever noted that "because of the shallow waters and slight tide actions in the proposed area, it would not be unfeasible to construct a rugged, but unadorned, steel platform as large as 500 feet [150 meters] square, not only for immediate static tests of the Saturn, but also for actual launchings of the Saturn and large boosters of the future." Venting the rocket's exhaust into ocean water would save the cost of an expensive flame deflector. Wever also anticipated savings on the construction cost of the firing room (blockhouse).[8]

---

*Named for their similarity to offshore oil rigs in the Gulf of Mexico, Texas Towers were skeletal steel platforms built in the mid-1950s by the Air Force. The structure's massive triangular platform, supported by three 94-meter stilt-like legs, provided space for three large radars and a 73-man crew. Three of these towers were placed about 128 kilometers off the northeast coast of the U.S. to provide early warning of air attack.

Wever's proposal met with mixed reactions at the Army Test Office's Facilities Branch. Although Nelson M. Parry, assistant branch chief, approved Wever's effort to circumvent blast and acoustical problems, Parry disagreed with the solution. Parry himself had been working on plans to develop artificial islands for several years. In a study completed December 1958, entitled "Land Development for Missile Range Installations," Parry proposed an artificial island large enough to contain a blockhouse, instrumentation, camera mounts, fuel storage, and launch pad and tower. His process involved pumping sand from the shallow waters just off the Cape. Parry estimated that an artificial island 1.6 kilometers square, with a mean elevation of 1.8 meters above high water, could be constructed for $9 million. This compared favorably with the $11 million cost of one Texas Tower in the early warning defense system. More important, the island would be a fixed platform; the Texas Towers swayed in moderate winds. Parry also objected to Wever's proposal to remove the launching site from the Cape to the Bahamas. This would introduce problems of telemetry, coordination, tracking, and camera coverage.[9] Although supporting Parry's landfill procedures, Facilities Branch Chief Arthur Porcher considered the Banana River a better site for an island than the ocean floor off the Cape. He thought that any attempt to build up islands in the Atlantic would run into construction difficulties.[10]

In the Launch Operations Directorate, the job of evaluating offshore launch facilities fell to Georg von Tiesenhausen's Future Launch Systems Study Office. Tall, thin, and scholarly in appearance, von Tiesenhausen's looks befitted his "think-tank" role. His interest in offshore launch facilities dated back to World War II. Following the Allied bombing of Peenemünde in August 1944, von Tiesenhausen had recommended construction of floating pads to permit the dispersion of V-2 static firings. His plan had employed two barges, with the missile emplaced on cross bars.[11] At the Cape, von Tiesenhausen assigned direct responsibility for studying offshore facilities to Owen Sparks, a former U.S. Army colonel and the team's unofficial technical writer. Sparks's first task was to prepare a preliminary survey for Debus.

Sparks's May 1960 report listed a number of launch problems for the Saturn program. These included the shortage of space at the Cape, safety hazards, and the problem of constructing an adequate flame deflector. The noise factor merited attention but was secondary. He suggested locating an offshore launch complex downrange in the nearest ocean area with a depth of 15 meters of water. He believed such a site would satisfy the requirements

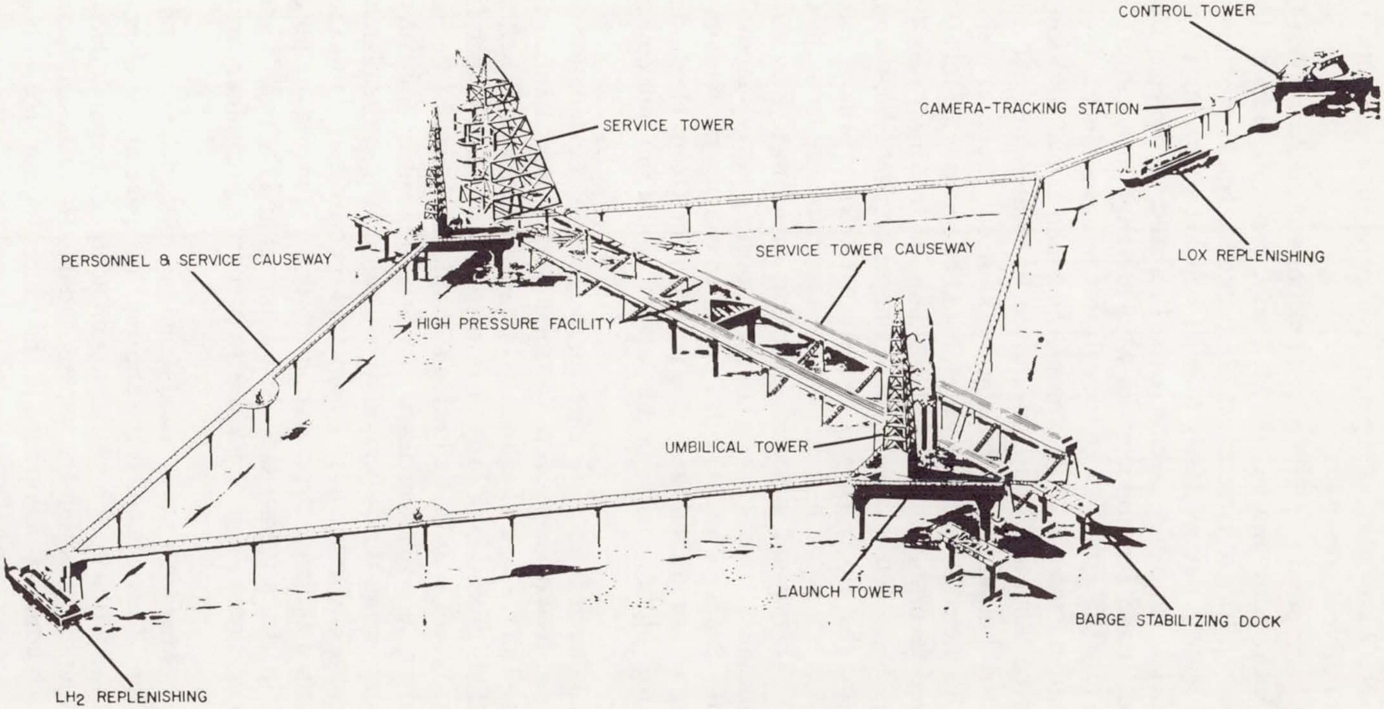

CONTROL TOWER
CAMERA-TRACKING STATION
SERVICE TOWER
LOX REPLENISHING
PERSONNEL & SERVICE CAUSEWAY
SERVICE TOWER CAUSEWAY
HIGH PRESSURE FACILITY
UMBILICAL TOWER
LAUNCH TOWER
BARGE STABILIZING DOCK
LH2 REPLENISHING

Fig. 26. Possible offshore launch facility, from a study by Owen Sparks in 1961.

of blast absorption without unduly complicating range support. Since marine construction involved a great many problems, the design should be as simple as possible. Sparks recommended the use of a stiff-leg derrick combined with the umbilical tower to reduce gantry requirements, and the employment of a knock-down mobile service structure. Beyond provision for both static firings and launches, any offshore facility should, he said, be expansible into a multipad complex.[12]

Sparks followed his first estimate with a preliminary feasibility study in late July 1960. His rationale for an offshore launching site had not changed. An evaluation of a half-dozen facilities favored the Texas Tower. This kind of facility, Sparks noted, could be placed in deep water where blast and sound posed no problems. Among other advantages, the offshore location would provide unlimited room for expansion, and fuel supplies could be kept on barges at a savings, compared to storage facilities on land. Sparks was no longer certain that the exhaust should be vented into the ocean—the resulting waves might damage the pad. Major disadvantages of a Texas Tower included the high cost of marine construction, the logistical problems of waterborne support for the facility, and the difficulty of providing a stable platform for handling vehicle stages and propellants. Sparks suggested further investigation of oceanographic conditions and their effects on launch structures, platform stability, and space vehicle requirements.[13]

Texas Tower vs. Landfill

Under increasing pressure to develop a greater launching capacity, LOD spent early 1961 examining the merits of offshore facilities and landfill proposals. In February the Office of Launch Vehicle Programs at NASA Headquarters asked LOD to step up its planning. Samuel Snyder, assistant director for Launch Operations, feared a pad explosion might shut down both LC-37A and LC-37B, and this in the face of a possible demand for nearly simultaneous C-2 firings on rendezvous missions. With space at the Cape already in short supply, he predicted it might be further limited if the Air Force stepped up its Dyna-Soar (glider-bomber) program. He asked LOD to plan a third fixed complex for FY 1963. Although Debus objected that the Saturn schedule did not at that time warrant an additional launch complex, LOD continued studies to find additional space.[14]

Debus then asked Col. Asa Gibbs in the NASA Test Support Office to obtain information on the cost of land reclamation, in either the Atlantic Ocean or the Banana River. Debus said he needed space for three additional dual-pad complexes and wanted to compare the expense of this operation with offshore Texas Tower facilities.[15] Gibbs's office responded on 9 March with two proposals for land development in the Banana River using hydraulic fill. A "maximum" concept involved filling approximately 2.5 square kilometers of Banana River tideland. The pad and support areas would rest on compacted earth about five meters above mean low water. Two of the proposed launch complexes could be built in this area, with the third pad on existing land north of LC-37. The total cost was $25 200 000. A "minimum" concept provided for two islands in the Banana River, each 610 meters in diameter, with 15-meter-wide causeways to link each island with the Cape, and a cost of $5 830 000.[16] Debus asked Gibbs in early April to secure Atlantic Missile Range approval for the tentative siting of the larger plan.[17]

At the same time, the survey of offshore facilities was accelerated. Concerned by a recent report on the blast hazards of the liquid hydrogen engine, Debus established an ad hoc committee under von Tiesenhausen's direction to select contractors who would conduct the offshore study. Early in February, Debus set the scope of the study. It should include expansion of the Cape northward by reclaiming and pumping up land; semi-offshore sites using Texas Towers or manmade islands; an offshore launch complex at some distance from the Cape; and a floating pad capable of location anywhere on the oceans.[18] Plans to solicit proposals moved ahead in February and March, but the offshore launching sites encountered heavy going. Sparks's study, submitted to Debus on 4 April, failed to satisfy the Director. He thought that transferring present launch methods to a Texas Tower would not suffice.[19]

Offshore facilities received a further setback in May with the presentation of Nelson Parry's land development scheme. Parry's list of drawbacks, two pages long, reflected the results of his interviews with Launch Operations personnel. Disadvantages included higher construction and maintenance costs, increased problems of communications and logistics, and a morale problem. While Parry's report did not give specific costs for remote offshore facilities, he was certain that land development would be cheaper than Texas Towers. His cost estimate sheets, prepared by James Deese of the Facilities Design Group, further indicated that building islands on the Atlantic shelf would be much more expensive than reclaiming land in the Banana River. A 2.3-square-kilometer island, 16 kilometers off the Cape, would cost $12.7 million; an island of 15 square kilometers, $59.9 million. He contrasted these figures with price tags of $18.7 million for dredging 7 square kilometers in the Banana River and $16 million for buying 750 square kilometers on Merritt Island.[20] Working independently, Rocco Petrone's Heavy Launch Vehicle Systems Office reached similar conclusions. The construction costs for causeways in the Florida Keys convinced them that the expense of building facilities in the ocean east of the Cape would be prohibitive.[21]

The ad hoc committee finally selected two study contractors on 15 May, but events rendered the C-2 offshore launch study moot. Marshall planners dropped the proposed rocket and started planning for a larger C-3 model. An even more decisive vote was cast by the Air Force–NASA Hazards Analysis Board (below, pp. 87–88), which found that "operational hazards for liquid and solid boosters did not dictate going to offshore launch sites."[22] Large vehicles could be launched from the coastline if Merritt Island was purchased as a safety zone. On 24 May, Debus told von Braun the contracts would not be let as the studies were no longer required.[23] Perhaps the biggest reason for the verdict against offshore facilities was seldom mentioned. In January 1961, a Texas Tower, part of the U.S. Air Force early warning system, had disappeared in a heavy storm with a loss of 28 lives.[24] Despite assurances from engineers that a similar catastrophe could be avoided, LOD leaders did not want the task of convincing Congress and the American public that an offshore facility would be safe against storm hazards.

The Mobile Launch Concept

During the early months of 1961, LOD took under consideration a third launch alternative, one that would eventually place men on the moon—the mobile launch concept.* The great advantage of a mobile launch concept lay in its promise of faster launch operations. With the fixed launch operation, e.g., SA-1 at LC-34, all rocket systems were mated and went through a thorough checkout at the pad. In the new scheme, LOD proposed to mate the vehicle and conduct these checks in an assembly building some distance from the pad. Only a brief prelaunch checkout at the pad would be needed to verify the rocket systems. Two digital computers, one in the launch control center and one on the transporter, would accelerate the checkout program and detect any change in rocket systems that might occur during the transfer to the pad. The computers were part of an automatic checkout system under development at Huntsville. By combining a mobile concept and automation, LOD leaders expected to reduce time on the pad from two months to no more than ten days.

There were other advantages to a mobile concept. Cape weather had corroded earlier rockets and might affect an exposed Saturn. An assembly building would provide cover for both the launch vehicle and the launch

---

***Concept* vied with *interface* for first place in Cape Canaveral jargon. Meaning of *concept* ranged from the first "batting around" of an idea to its fruition in a multi-million-dollar building or procedure. While the authors have tried to limit their use of the term, they confess to ill success especially in the early days when LOD planners were dealing with many contingencies and termed each tentative plan a concept.

team. Having worked on rockets in the open, LOD leaders knew how difficult it could be for technicians laboring in wind, rain, and lightning at the upper levels of the space vehicle. Finally the mobile concept offered considerable savings in labor costs. Concentrating the work force in one assembly building, rather than on the ten pads projected for 48 launches per year, would reduce personnel requirements substantially.

The idea of assembling a rocket in a location remote from the pad and then moving it to the launch area dated back to World War II. At Peenemünde the German rocket team had transported V-2s in a horizontal attitude to a hangar where they were erected in checkout stalls. Following transfer to a rail-mounted static-firing tower, each V-2 was rolled out in a vertical attitude—sitting on its tail—for an engine calibration test and static firing. The missile received a final checkout in the hangar before being placed horizontally on a *Meillerwagen* for the ride to the launch site.[25] Both the Redstone and Jupiter programs had employed a mobile launch concept with the rockets traveling from assembly building to pad in a horizontal attitude. LOD officials had hoped to use the same principle at LC-34, but time and money dictated otherwise. The Saturn C-1 test series permitted at least four months between launches, which was enough time to assemble and check out each vehicle on the pad.

Space planners outside NASA appreciated the merits of the mobile concept. The Air Force in 1960 had commissioned the Space Technology Laboratory to determine an optimum vehicle system for military use from 1965 to 1975. Entitled "The Phoenix Study Program," the work was subsequently completed by Aerospace Corporation and the Rand Corporation in June 1961. One of the recommendations of the study was an integration building where assembly and checkout could be completed before the vehicle was moved—sitting on its tail—to the firing area. It was estimated that pad time for the Atlas-Agena could be reduced from 28 days under the current operation to 5 days with a mobile system.[26] In similar fashion, two Saturn C-2 launch studies, conducted by the Martin Company and Douglas Aircraft, concluded that Marshall's high launch rates would require a mobile complex.

The Mobile Concept—Initial Studies

Although LOD officials had appreciated the advantages of a mobile launch system for years, a Russian space achievement provided the impetus for the study that culminated in launch complex 39. Reports in early 1961 indicated a Russian capability of launching rockets from the same complex within a few days' time. LOD leaders saw a need to reassess American launch methods. Appropriately, considering the thousands of hours of overtime put into the future moonport, the initial plans were laid after duty hours. On the first weekend in February 1961, Debus discussed a new Saturn launch concept with Theodor Poppel and Georg von Tiesenhausen. At the end of the meeting, von Tiesenhausen was given the task of preparing several mobile launch alternatives.[27]

After von Tiesenhausen's Future Launch Systems Study Office began work in mid-February 1961, time clocks were ignored. One team member wryly recalls the two weeks compensatory time he enjoyed later in the year as scant repayment for the many hours of overtime devoted to the study. The survey considered moving the rocket from assembly area to pad in either a horizontal or vertical attitude and by barge or rail.[28]

While the Study Office examined the new proposal's impact on launch facilities, other LOD officials considered operational aspects. At a 21 March staff meeting, Debus challenged his subordinates to point up the concept's weakness. There was opposition, mostly on the grounds of cost. After a second day of debate, Debus appointed a formal committee under Albert Zeiler to consider the operational aspects. Any major problem area was to be brought to his attention before 31 March, at which time Debus intended to introduce the concept to the Marshall Space Flight Center Board. On 30 March, Rocco Petrone described the new plan to Abraham Hyatt, director of NASA's Office of Program Planning and Evaluation. The following day Debus made his presentation before the Marshall Board. Von Braun and other MSFC officials reacted favorably and asked for a comparison of vertical versus horizontal transfer costs. Debus promised to provide the results of an in-house survey in four weeks. The Board also considered hiring Connell and Associates to conduct a more detailed investigation. On 10 April, LOD officials briefed Gen. Don R. Ostrander, director of the Office of Launch Vehicle Programs in NASA Headquarters, who exercised general management over Marshall and LOD. Although receptive to the new launch concept, Ostrander strongly opposed any idea of trying to incorporate it into LC-37. Budgetary planning was too far along to permit extensive changes. He cautioned Debus that any launch concept had to be compatible with the launch vehicle. Reliability, rather than high launch rates, should serve as the guiding principle.[29]

The Future Launch Systems Office was ready by mid-April to submit its findings to Debus. Included among numerous charts and drawings prepared for the briefing was an analysis of the new proposals (table 4), from which von Tiesenhausen's group concluded that a mobile concept based on a horizontal barge transfer was most economical.[30] The projected cost advantages of the mobile proposals were good news, especially at a rate of 48

TABLE 4. COMPARISON OF PROPOSED LAUNCH COMPLEXES

Mobile complex		Fixed pad (similar to LC-37)
Vertical transfer	Horizontal transfer	
Expensive assembly building	Economical assembly building	No environmental protection for vehicle during assembly
Minimum loss by catastrophe	Minimum loss by catastrophe	Maximum loss by catastrophe
Hurricane protection	Hurricane protection	No hurricane protection
Maximum vehicle handling	Maximum vehicle handling	Minimum handling of assembled vehicle
Maximum R&D	Maximum R&D	Minimum R&D
Reconnect cables and retest on pad	Reconnect cables and retest on pad	No electrical or pneumatic disconnections required after checkout
Wind loads critical at transfer	Wind loads not critical at transfer	Wind loads critical during erection
Operational costs using barge or rail transport from assembly area to pad, and using a fixed pad (in millions of dollars)		
At a launch rate of 8 per year:		
barge $125	barge $60	$60 (LC-37)
rail 105	rail 70	
At a launch rate of 48 per year:		
barge $210	barge $130	$370 (6 LC-37s)
rail 180	rail 145	

Source: O. K. Duren, *Interim Report on Future Saturn Launch Facility Study,* Future Launch Systems Study Office, MSFC, MIN-LOD-DL-1-61, 10 May 1961.

launches a year. Other questions remained unanswered. The offshore studies might still affect the choice of a launch concept. There was some question about the delivery dates for automated checkout equipment. The latest word from Haeussermann's Guidance and Control Division placed complete automation three to four years away.

Despite these uncertainties, Debus was anxious to secure approval from NASA's top management for further studies. A meeting with Robert Seamans, NASA Associate Administrator, was set on 25 April 1961 for this purpose. Debus met with von Braun one week earlier to review Marshall's position on launch facilities. The two men agreed that work on LC-37 should continue as planned. January 1964 was set as a tentative date for establishing the LC-39 criteria, allowing LOD nearly three years to investigate the mobile concept. The Seamans briefing went well, and feasibility studies for the new concept were authorized. The Associate Administrator told Debus to base the planning for LC-39 on technical considerations; cost was not to be the overriding factor.[31]

Martin and Douglas Aircraft Companies, at work on the C-2 operational-modes study since November 1960, were logical choices to conduct a feasibility study of the mobile launch concept. Both Martin and Douglas engineers believed the present facilities would be satisfactory for a rate of 12 Saturns per year. For higher launch rates, a mobile concept was recommended "because of more efficient utilization of personnel and equipment, and reduced land requirements by virtue of its centralized assembly and checkout procedures."[32] Douglas recommended transporting the mated booster stages from an assembly building in an upright position and adding the payload at the pad. Martin employed a rail-mounted vertical transporter or A-frame and called for mating the spacecraft in the assembly area with only propellant loading and countdown left for the pad. Both companies agreed that a mobile concept would provide more flexibility "because a greater latitude of launch rates is realized for any given expenditure." However, a Martin group working on Titan at the Cape recommended that LOD continue to assemble the rocket on the pad.[33]

NASA Plans for a Lunar Landing

The task of extending the Martin and Douglas study contracts to include the mobile concept was complicated by an unanswered question: what rocket would be launched from LC-39? Since the fall of 1960, NASA officials had given much thought to ways of accomplishing a lunar landing. A meeting in early January 1961 revealed the divisions within NASA as to the best means to accomplish this goal. The Space Task Group, responsible for Project Mercury, and the Headquarters Office of Launch Vehicle Programs favored using the Nova rocket for a direct flight from earth to the moon.* Marshall Space Flight Center advocated the use of several smaller Saturn launch vehicles to rendezvous in earth orbit, refueling one vehicle for the flight to the moon. A group at Langley Research Center supported a third mode—a lunar-orbital rendezvous. This involved placing a spacecraft into lunar orbit where it would detach a portion of the ship for the short trip to and from the moon. During the month of January 1961, a committee headed by George Low, Program Chief for Manned Space Flight, examined the manned lunar landing program. The committee concluded in its 7 February report that both direct ascent and earth-orbital-rendezvous methods were feasible. Using the Saturn C-2, the latter could be achieved at an earlier date (1968–69), but posed a high launch rate in a short period of time (six or seven C-2s for a 3630-kilogram spacecraft) and a mastery of rendezvous techniques. The direct ascent mode would take two years longer, depending on the development of the Nova rocket.[34]

---

*Nova was the name used by NASA during 1959-62 to describe a very large booster in the range of 44-88 million newtons (10-20 million pounds of thrust). The rocket never advanced beyond the conceptual stage, as was also true of the Saturn C-2 and C-3.

Doubts about the adaptability of the Saturn C-2 to lunar landing missions appeared in March. Testifying before the House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Abraham Hyatt said that the Saturn C-1 would be used for an earth-orbiting laboratory and the C-2 for orbiting the moon. For missions beyond this such as a lunar landing, "payload capabilities greater than that of the Saturn C-2 appear to be necessary."[35] NASA officials had in mind a Saturn C-3 employing the new F-1 engine. Under development by Rocketdyne Corporation since January 1959, the F-1 burned the same fuel as the H-1 engine in the Saturn C-1's first stage. The F-1, however, dwarfed the H-1 in size and thrust: two F-1s in the proposed Saturn C-3 would produce 13 344 000 newtons (3 000 000 pounds of thrust), nearly double the lift of the Saturn C-2's proposed first stage.[36]

NASA's revised budget request of 25 March sought and obtained additional funds for the Saturn C-2 launch vehicle and the F-1 engine. Plans to accelerate C-2 development were announced 31 March, but the program was shortlived. Marshall engineers concluded in May that a Saturn vehicle more powerful than the C-2 was needed for circumlunar missions. Von Braun announced the demise of the C-2 the following month, at the same time stating that NASA's effort would be directed toward a clarification of Saturn C-3 and Nova concepts.[37]

May 1961 found LOD personnel grappling with a changing launch vehicle, the dangers of blast and sound from the large vehicles, and the demand for new launch facilities. The Director's daily journal reflected the frequent changes in the organization's planning:

26 April – Marshall's Future Projects Office initiated with LOD help an extension of the C-2 operational modes study (Martin and Douglas).

1 May – Debus informed NASA Headquarters that he would probably reorient launch study from offshore to mobile concept.

9 May – Von Tiesenhausen directed to proceed immediately with preparation and issuance of following studies: 1. C-2 offshore facilities with high firing-rate capability; 2. facility

for a solid booster of 44–88 million newtons (10–20 million pounds of thrust) from offshore, semi-offshore, and land; 3. add $100 000 to the C-2 operational modes study contracts to permit consideration of liquid-fueled vehicles of 22–44 million newtons (5–10 million pounds of thrust).

12 May - Von Braun requested a consideration of modifying LC-37 to accept a booster with either two F-1 engines or a 20-million-newton (4.5-million-pound thrust) solid motor.
15 May - Two contractors selected for offshore launch facilities study.
23 May - Cancellation of offshore study as designed.
26 May - C-3 launch facility contract with Martin initiated.
29 May - Nova offshore contract initiated.
5 June - NASA Headquarters notified LOD that C-3 and Nova studies were disapproved. Ostrander rescinded that disapproval at a Cape meeting.[38]

The Fleming Committee

In Washington, President Kennedy's announcement on 25 May spurred NASA's examination of the requirements for a lunar landing. An ad hoc committee chaired by William Fleming (Office of Space Flight Programs, NASA Headquarters) was conducting a six weeks' study of the requirements for a lunar landing. The Fleming Committee, judging the direct ascent approach most feasible, concentrated their attention accordingly. They devised a launch schedule employing Saturn C-1s for manned orbital flights in late 1964, a Saturn C-3 for circumlunar flights in late 1965, and a Nova, powered by 8 F-1 engines, for lunar landing flights in 1967. Seamans was unwilling to adopt the Fleming recommendations without a quick look at the rendezvous thesis. In early June, Bruce Lundin, deputy director of the Lewis Research Center, led a week-long study of six different rendezvous possibilities. The alternatives included earth-orbital rendezvous, lunar-orbital rendezvous, earth and lunar rendezvous, and rendezvous on the lunar surface, employing Saturn C-1s, C-3s, and Novas. His committee concluded that rendezvous enjoyed distinct advantages over direct ascent and recommended an earth-orbital rendezvous using two or three Saturn C-3s. NASA officials were sufficiently impressed to postpone a decision pending further studies.[39]

The Fleming Report's flight schedule caused some anxiety at the Cape. During his 5 June visit, General Ostrander suggested that the committee's recommendations might force a reevaluation of the new mobile launch proposals. In fact, the report indicated that the Saturn C-3 launch rate would not exceed 13 per year. This was a far cry from the Future Projects Office's revised projection of 30 to 40 annual Saturn C-3 launches. Debus called von Braun to point out the significance of the Fleming schedule. LOD's estimates of the economic crossover point between fixed and mobile launch facilities placed the figure around 15 launches per year. If NASA Headquarters adopted the Fleming recommendations, conventional launch facilities would probably be more appropriate. After checking into the matter, Marshall officials informed Debus that the 13 annual launches represented only a part of the future Saturn C-3 launch rate. Earth-orbital flights and interplanetary missions would keep the rate well above the economic break-even point for a mobile launch facility.[40]

Another troublesome matter stemming from the report had to do with NASA's possible use of solid-fueled rockets. The Fleming Committee's proposed launch vehicles included solid-liquid versions. In the C-3 configuration three solid-propellant motors would take the place of the two F-1 engines in the first stage. NASA Headquarters officials wanted the C-3 and Nova launch study contractors to design a facility that could service solid as well as liquid rockets. Debus objected, insisting that a "dual use" facility would penalize the liquid program. Solid motors, because of their greater weight and blast, would require expensive modifications to either conventional facilities or the new mobile concept. Furthermore, Debus was anxious to get the C-3 launch facilities study started and detailed criteria for solid rockets were not yet available. The difference of opinion took several weeks to resolve, but LOD's position prevailed. When LOD received data for the solid motors, additional studies might be done. In late June, Martin started work on the C-3 (liquid version) launch facilities study.[41]

Debus-Davis Study

The Fleming Committee's final report, 16 June 1961, listed construction of the launch complex as a "crucial item" and recommended that a "contractor immediately be brought aboard to begin design."[42] One week later Robert Seamans initiated a joint NASA–Air Force study of "launch requirements, methods, and procedures" for the Fleming Committee's flight program. LOD would concentrate on establishing mission facility criteria; Maj. Gen. Leighton I. Davis's Air Force Missile Test Center would determine support facility criteria.[43] In a second letter Seamans stated the study's objectives more precisely. The LOD-AFMTC team was to examine launch site locations, land acquisition requirements, spacecraft and launch vehicle preparation facilities, launch facilities, and launch support facilities.[44] The ensuing four-week study produced the *Joint Report on Facilities and Resources*

Required at Launch Site to Support NASA Manned Lunar Landing Program (the Debus-Davis Report). Because of its major recommendation that Merritt Island be the launch site for the Apollo program, the report will be discussed at some length in the next chapter. But the study advanced LOD thinking in regard to the mobile launch concept and must therefore be taken up at this point.

Two of the ground rules governing the Fleming Committee complicated LOD's work on the subsequent Debus-Davis study. One was that intermediate major space missions, such as manned circumlunar flights, were desirable at the earliest possible date to aid in the development of the manned lunar landing program. This envisioned a flight program using two radically different launch vehicles, the C-3 and the Nova, and consequently two distinct launch procedures. The second involved NASA's intention to develop liquid- and solid-propellant rockets on parallel lines. LOD planners would have to calculate costs and requirements for a liquid Saturn C-3, a solid-liquid C-3, a liquid Nova, and a solid-liquid Nova (table 5). The study was further complicated by NASA's decision to examine eight possible launch sites (see p. 91). The launch team faced the plight of a dressmaker, called on to outfit a beauty queen a month before she is selected from 50 contestants.[45]

The men who developed the Apollo launch facilities recall this study as one of the more hectic periods in the program's history. Some planning sessions extended into the early hours of the morning. One participant recalls arriving at his Cocoa Beach motel on a Saturday evening with the Miss Universe contest on TV. To his wife's amazement, his interest in feminine pulchritude gave way to fatigue and he was asleep before the final selection. Work on the study continued right up to the 31 July deadline, and the report was collated on the flight to Washington. Despite some embarrassing errors on the charts prepared for the NASA-Defense Department briefing, the 460-page survey was a real achievement.[46]

TABLE 5. DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS OF PROPOSED LAUNCH VEHICLES

	1st stage diameter (meters)	Total length (meters)	Weight at liftoff (kilograms)
Saturn C-3, July 1961			
liquid fuel	8.2	70.1	1 254 000
solid/liquid fuel	10.3	65.5	1 881 000
Nova, July 1961			
liquid fuel	13.4	102.1	4 336 000
solid/liquid fuel	13.7	97.5	5 561 000
Saturn V, Dec. 1961	10.0	84.9	2 860 000

A spirit of competition with the Air Force Missile Test Center spurred on the LOD effort. Air Force personnel caused some friction by offering unsolicited assistance in LOD areas. One such incident involved an Air Force recommendation to build a liquid-hydrogen plant at Cape Canaveral. There was uncertainty at this time as to how long liquid hydrogen could be stored at 20 kelvins (−253 °C) and therefore a question as to how much production capacity was needed. LOD officials considered the Air Force proposal technically infeasible; the proposed plant's electrical power needs would far exceed what the central Florida area could reasonably provide. Instead LOD wanted to purchase liquid hydrogen commercially, and the final report clearly stated that view. Working relations during the study were generally good, but some LOD officials believed that their Air Force counterparts wanted to assume a larger role in the manned lunar landing program.[47]

Debus appointed Rocco Petrone, Heavy Vehicle Systems Office, to represent LOD on the study's Executive Planning Committee. As a young ordnance officer, Petrone had helped the Director launch the first Redstone in 1953. Impressed by his work, Debus welcomed Petrone's reassignment to the launch team in July 1960. The joint study began Petrone's rise to prominence in the Apollo program. In various positions during the next nine years he would direct the Saturn program, first the facilities planning and construction, later the launch operations. He would acquire influence at the launch center second only to Debus. Tenacity, intellectual honesty, aggressiveness, and ambition were the basic ingredients in Petrone's advancement. A native of Amsterdam, New York, Petrone had been a tackle on the Blanchard-Davis teams at West Point. A determined pursuit of knowledge characterized his tour with the Missile Firing Laboratory in the 1950s. Associates recall that he devoured every piece of Redstone literature. His knowledge of launch operations made him a logical choice for Saturn program management. Petrone could get along well with people and even be charming. He demanded honesty, however, and did not hesitate to brand poor work for what it was. Consequently, some controversy accompanied his success. Described by intimates as basically shy and sensitive, Petrone displayed an aggressive exterior. His drive made workdays of 12–14 hours typical. Perhaps most important, Petrone's high ambition matched the Apollo program's lofty goals.[48]

Debus-Davis Report—Launch Concept

Although the mobile launch concept would not reach fruition for another year, by July 1961 its four major features were clear:

- Vertical assembly and basic checkout of the space vehicle on a mobile launcher-umbilical tower, located within an industrial and environmentally controlled building;
- Transfer of the assembled space vehicle and mobile launcher to the pad for final checkout, fueling, and launching;
- Control of operations from a remote launch control center; and
- Automation of vehicle checkout and launch.

The Debus-Davis Report represented considerable progress since the Study Office's May report. All aspects of the Saturn concept were described in greater detail, particularly the automated checkout. The flexibility that would characterize LC-39 was evident. The basic concept assumed a launch rate of 26 Saturns per year, but LOD plans allowed for additional pads and assembly bays to accommodate higher launch rates and special missions involving the launch of several vehicles in a brief period. Expediency dictated that rail be the only form of transfer considered. There was not enough time to prepare good cost estimates for canal and road. Further, LOD officials were confident from their LC-34 experience that a rail system would work.[49]

One of the initial mobile concepts, the horizontal transfer, had been eliminated by mid-1961 and was not mentioned in the Debus-Davis study. In its May report the Study Office had noted "certain operational limits of the horizontal transfer which might prohibit good reliability."[50] The statement reflected Albert Zeiler's concern that inspectors would damage wires and tubing during checkout of a horizontal vehicle. (During a vertical checkout workers would stand on platforms extending around the rocket. With the vehicle in a horizontal position, it would be difficult to keep workers from damaging the rocket's thin skin.) Maintenance of umbilical connections during a horizontal transfer was another problem. Fear of the stresses generated in lifting a large launch vehicle from a horizontal to a vertical position was the third and decisive consideration leading to the concept's demise. Huntsville engineers were aware of the strain placed on the 21-meter Redstone's joints and outer skin during this operation. The stress on the 70-meter Saturn might well be excessive.[51]

The Saturn C-3 (liquid) launch complex plan comprised a vertical assembly building (VAB), a launcher-transporter, an arming area, and launch pad. The VAB would consist of assembly bay areas for each of the stages, with a high bay unit approximately 110 meters in height for final assembly and checkout of the vehicle. Buildings adjacent to the VAB would house the Apollo spacecraft and the launch control center. The launcher-transporter would incorporate three major facilities: a pedestal for the space vehicle, an umbilical tower to service the upper reaches of the space vehicle, and a rail transporter. An arming tower would stand about midway between the

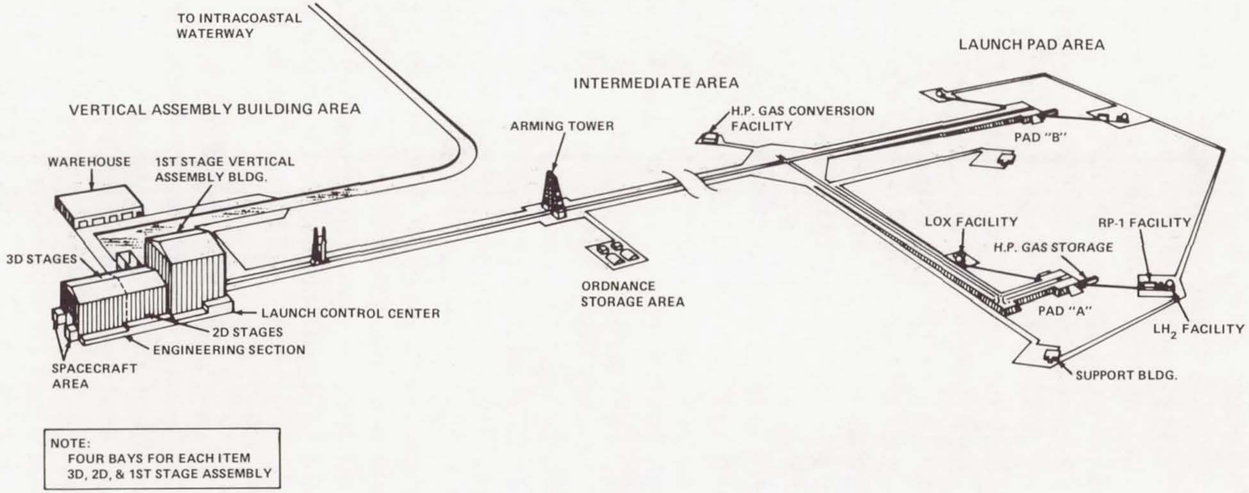

TO INTRACOASTAL WATERWAY
LAUNCH PAD AREA
INTERMEDIATE AREA
VERTICAL ASSEMBLY BUILDING AREA
H.P. GAS CONVERSION FACILITY
ARMING TOWER
PAD "B"
WAREHOUSE
1ST STAGE VERTICAL ASSEMBLY BLDG.
LOX FACILITY
RP-1 FACILITY
H.P. GAS STORAGE
3D STAGES
ORDNANCE STORAGE AREA
PAD "A"
LAUNCH CONTROL CENTER
2D STAGES
LH$_2$ FACILITY
ENGINEERING SECTION
SPACECRAFT AREA
SUPPORT BLDG.
NOTE:
FOUR BAYS FOR EACH ITEM
3D, 2D, & 1ST STAGE ASSEMBLY

Fig. 27. Mobile concept as described in the Debus-Davis report of July 1961.

assembly building and the pads. The Apollo Saturn would carry a number of hazardous explosives: the launch escape system (the tower on top of the vehicle that lifted the spacecraft away from the launch vehicle in case of an emergency), retrorockets to separate the stages, ullage rockets to force fuel to the bottom of tanks, and the launch vehicle's destruct system. Launch officials wanted to install these solid-propellant items in an area apart from the rest of the operation.[52]

By July 1961 LOD engineers had fixed the requirements for the mobile launch concept's electrical checkout. These were fourfold: first, the electrical ground support equipment was to be designed so that checkouts could be conducted simultaneously on vehicles in the VAB and on the pad; second, the electrical systems of the vehicle and launcher-transporter would remain intact after checkout in the VAB; third, the launch control center would be able to launch rockets at a distant pad and check vehicles in the nearby VAB; and fourth, there would be a minimum of connecting cables between the launch pads and the control center because of the distances involved. The plan required the use of two digital computers, one located on the launcher-transporter and the other in the launch control center. The former would be used for checkout of the launch vehicle both at the VAB and on the pad. The performance of the computer on the launcher-transporter would be remotely controlled by the computer in the launch control center. Two firing rooms were necessary—one for control of checkout procedures in the VAB and the other for launch pad operations.[53]

The significance of the initial mobile launch studies lay more in the timing than in the content. LOD officials would not agree on a final concept for another year. By mid-1961, however, they were confident that some form of vertical transfer would work. Debus's initiative in February 1961 provided LOD time to examine the concept and make some reasonable judgments. When the Kennedy administration announced the lunar landing program in May 1961, LOD officials had a suitable launch concept in mind. Without the three months gained by the February decision, it is doubtful that LOD would have ventured on a new launch concept. The Apollo facilities might well have resembled a larger LC-37.[54]

Page intentionally left blank

5

ACQUIRING A LAUNCH SITE

Hazards Board Recommends Merritt Island

While Dr. Debus took the occasion of the top-level meeting at Huntsville on 25 April 1961 to brief Robert Seamans, NASA Associate Administrator, on the mobile launch concept, the conferees discussed other questions, especially the lack of space at Cape Canaveral. Gen. Donald Ostrander, Dr. Wernher von Braun, and William Fleming, soon to be head of the Project Review Division, participated in the discussion. At its conclusion, Debus was directed to meet with Maj. Gen. Leighton I. Davis, commander of the Air Force Missile Test Center, to discuss NASA's need for additional land.[1] The presidential challenge (a man on the moon by 1970) lent urgency to Debus's inquiry. Very likely, the launching of a moon rocket, Saturn or Nova, would create blast hazards requiring a large safety zone around the pad. Acquisition of many acres of real estate was the next step in building the moonport and the question facing the Launch Operations Directorate (LOD) was, Where? The answer would prove twofold: NASA would build the moonport on land (Merritt Island) within the Air Force sphere of influence at Cape Canaveral, but in the process would work out an understanding with the Air Force that would secure freedom of action in NASA's launch area.

Before recommending any land purchase, NASA and the Air Force had to determine the dangers involved in testing and launching a moon vehicle. In the last week of May 1961, the two groups set up a Joint Air Force–NASA Hazards Analysis Board to study the effects of blast, noise, fire, fragmentation, radiation, and toxicity. It would also prepare preliminary design data as a basis for safety perimeters for personnel and facilities within government-controlled areas, as well as for people and property in areas adjacent to the launch site.[2] Since NASA had reached no decision on the vehicle for the moon landing, the analysts considered the use of a Saturn C-3 booster of 13 million newtons (3 million pounds of thrust) and Nova boosters of 53, 98, and 164 million newtons (12, 22, and 37 million pounds of thrust). These were further classified as to fuels: liquid propellants, solid propellant for the booster and liquid propellants for the upper stages, and liquid propellant for the booster with a nuclear-powered upper stage.

On 1 June 1961, the board published a preliminary report of its findings and recommendations. The hazards analysis indicated that the minimum distance required for overall safety between the launch pad and uncontrolled areas varied from 5270 meters for the Saturn C-3 to 15 240 meters for the 164-million-newton (37-million-pound-thrust) Nova booster. The minimum safe distance for nuclear stages reached 16 kilometers. The board concluded that if the government acquired additional land on Merritt Island, vehicles without nuclear upper stages could be launched from onshore facilities along False Cape north of Cape Canaveral. Further, since persons working within government-controlled areas could be given adequate protection, Merritt Island provided suitable land for industrial and technical support areas.[3]

A New Home in Georgia?

When the news spread that NASA was investigating launch sites, a group of Georgia businessmen suggested the coastal islands of their state. A survey team of NASA, Air Force, and Pan American personnel found many advantages at Cumberland Island: undeveloped land, railroad facilities, a coastal waterway, and port facilities. The team concluded that Cumberland Island merited further investigation as a site for launching large rockets.[4]

Beginning near the Florida state line, Cumberland Island extends north for 32 kilometers. It varies in width, being some 5 kilometers at the widest point. Extensive tidal flats, saltwater marshes, and the Intracoastal Waterway separate it from the Georgia mainland. Deepwater docks along the Intracoastal Waterway provided access to cheap water transportation. King's Bay Ammunition Facility was close at hand, owned by the government, with readily accessible railroad sidings. Anticipated real estate costs were relatively low; to the north, however, were expensive island resorts.

In the meantime, the Air Force went ahead with proposals to purchase 93 square kilometers adjacent to Cape Canaveral at an estimated cost of $10 million.[5] One month after the Mercury flight of Alan Shepard, General Ostrander and Samuel Snyder from NASA Headquarters, Eberhard Rees from Huntsville, and Debus met with a group at Cape Canaveral on 5 June 1961. The conferees agreed that the NASA program would require more than the 93 square kilometers. A few days later, General Ostrander suggested that the group give greater consideration to Cumberland Island.[6] An ad hoc committee under the chairmanship of William A. Fleming began work on 8 May. Its report, turned in on 16 June, spoke favorably of the southeast Georgia site. "There are alternate possibilities, besides AMR. . . . One of the most promising . . . is the King's Bay area along the Georgia coast. . . ."[7]

The advantages of the Canaveral area were nevertheless overwhelming. It lay at the head of the Atlantic Missile Range, a series of tracking stations that reached southeastward almost 9000 kilometers to Ascension Island (with further extensions under way for the Mercury program). Its trained personnel had launched many missiles. No big cities stood in danger from accidental explosions or wandering missiles. The noise would not disturb a large civilian population. Finally, while the Cape itself was filled up, there was room for expansion on Merritt Island and along the coastline north of False Cape.

The Canaveral area and Cumberland Island shared one advantage over other possible sites. Barges from Huntsville could sail down the Tennessee, Ohio, and Mississippi Rivers, through the Gulf, and up the east coast of Florida. In view of the mammoth proportions of the Saturn and Nova boosters under consideration as moon vehicles, this access to barge transport was an important consideration.

Organizing for the Debus-Davis Study

High-level agencies in Washington took a hand in the matter. On 16 June 1961 Roswell L. Gilpatric, Deputy Secretary of Defense, alerted the Secretaries of the Army, Navy, and Air Force to the joint planning by NASA and the Department of Defense concerning all elements of the space program, "including the extension of ground facilities."[8] He directed them to instruct commanders of national ranges and other officers in charge of space resources to lend their full support. At the Cape this responsibility fell to Gen. Leighton Davis. Montana-born, Davis had excelled at West Point as a student and instructor. After the entry of the United States into World War II, he had expressed dismay at the quality of the sighting equipment on the planes in his bomber command. The Army transferred him to research and development of gun and bomb sights at Wright Field in Ohio. Other R&D assignments followed, prior to his taking command of the Air Force Missile Test Center in May 1960.[9]

On 23 June, Robert Seamans formally requested Debus and Davis to study all major factors concerning launch requirements and procedures for direct or orbital flights to the moon (page 80). NASA was to set up criteria for mission facilities, and AFMTC was to arrange for support facilities; both were to suggest guidelines for management structure and division of authority. On the 30th Seamans asked the two men to study all possible sites—mainland, offshore, and island locations. Their responsibility extended to the facilities and the acquisition of land, but not to worldwide tracking and command stations.[10]

On 6 July, Petrone for the Director of the Launch Operations Directorate, Col. Leonard Shapiro for the Air Force, and Col. Asa Gibbs, NASA Test Support Office Chief, drew up a detailed outline for the Debus-Davis study of the facilities and resources required at the launch site to support NASA's manned lunar landing program.* Petrone was responsible for operational plans and concepts and mission functions, launch facilities, operations control, and support requirements. Shapiro would develop plans for range support to be provided by the Department of Defense, including support facilities, utilities, and instrumentation in the launch area and downrange. Gibbs was responsible for analyzing and recommending appropriate management relationships at the range, including flight control and ground safety.[11] Since Shapiro had limited experience in this field of work, Col. Verne Creighton took his place for a time. Later, Shapiro returned to finish the report.[12]

While the opening section of the Debus-Davis Report explicitly set out a "NASA Manned Lunar Landing Program," the section on funding revealed a different point of view on the part of the Air Force representatives. NASA's proposal called for NASA to provide funds for construction of range support facilities, all mission facilities, and all instrumentation required for the Manned Lunar Landing Program. The Department of Defense would budget and fund for operation and maintenance costs of the range in support of this program, and NASA agreed to assist the Department of Defense in justifying these costs.[13]

The Air Force, on the other hand, saw the program as "national," combining civilian and military control, rather than as a strictly civilian (NASA) enterprise. In the same Debus-Davis Report, the Air Force recommended that NASA and the Department of Defense budget their needs separately. NASA would budget and fund mission requirements. The Department of Defense would budget and fund range support requirements. The Defense proposal then spelled out its viewpoint: "Budgetary requirements for the Manned Lunar Landing Program will be submitted and justified as a 'Joint Package,' segregated by agency and department," and "funds apportioned to the respective organizations will be administered according to policies and procedures internal to the agency or department."[14] Several years would elapse before the two organizations would clarify this delicate matter.

---

*As Chief of the NASA Test Support Office since its inauguration in April 1960, Gibbs had served as liaison officer between the Launch Operations Directorate and the Air Force Missile Test Center.

Recommending a Launch Site

During the month of July, the NASA-Air Force team considered eight sites:

- Cape Canaveral
- Offshore from Cape Canaveral
- Mayaguana Island in the Bahamas
- Cumberland Island, Georgia
- A mainland site near Brownsville, Texas
- White Sands Missile Range in New Mexico
- Christmas Island in the mid-Pacific south of Hawaii
- South Point on the island of Hawaii

Of the eight, the Debus-Davis Report estimated that White Sands would cost the least to develop and operate. These advantages were offset by its landlocked location; the lack of water transport would virtually dictate construction of the space vehicle assembly plant and test-firing stands near White Sands. Cost alone eliminated the island sites of Mayaguana, Christmas, and Hawaii, where construction and operation costs would be more than twice the estimates for White Sands or Cape Canaveral. The islands also posed severe problems of logistics. Although Brownsville costs were reasonable, launches from the Texas coast entailed a serious over-flight hazard for populated areas in the southeastern United States. Construction costs for an offshore complex at Cape Canaveral ran about 10% more than the costs of land purchase and development on shore, and maintenance estimates for the offshore sites were much higher.[15]

Cumberland Island enjoyed some of Cape Canaveral's advantages: accessibility to deep water transport and railroads and no problem with overflight or booster impact. However, the Air Force listed a number of problems at Cumberland:

- Interference with the Intracoastal Waterway.
- Expensive launch area instrumentation would have to be duplicated.
- Land-based instrumentation for the early portion of flight would not be available.
- Extensive communications tie-ins with Cape Canaveral and downrange stations would be necessary.
- Towns in the area were small. The local economy might not support the large influx of people.
- The land area involved was primarily marshland.[16]

The Air Force listed only two disadvantages for Cape Canaveral: comparatively expensive land acquisition and higher-than-average cost for electrical power and water. Among the advantages for the Cape, the Air Force noted that "The Titusville-Cocoa-Melbourne area of Florida is a dynamic area which has been continuously growing with Cape Canaveral since the Cape's inception. Therefore, we expect a minimum of problems in the further area expansion which will be necessary for this program." Since "practically the entire local area population is missile oriented," the Air Force foresaw a "minimum of public relations type problems due to missile hazards and inconveniences."[17]

The NASA portion of the report cited two disadvantages at the Cape: labor conditions and the possibility of hurricanes. Local lore assured Canaveral newcomers that the eye of a hurricane had never passed over the area. Hurricanes had indeed passed near Merritt Island in 1885, 1893, 1926, and 1960—one year before.[18] As for its labor problem, Florida had never been an industrial state. Skilled workers in most categories were scarce, nonexistent in others. This meant that NASA and its contractors would not only have to call in engineers, scientists, and other experts from all parts of the country, but would have to attract craftsmen or train local men on the job for a wide variety of skills. Along with the men, manufactured goods would have to pour in from elsewhere, "such as copper wire, power and instrumentation cable, transformers, oil circuit breakers, generators"—to list but a few.[19]

Some shortcomings of the Cape went unmentioned in the report. Debus subsequently stated: "The chief drawback with this particular site was the danger of being swallowed up by the existing organization."[20] This concern perhaps underlay the interest in Cumberland Island. There were also doubts as to the area's ability to support the Apollo program. Remoteness—a positive factor in the matter of safety—had its disadvantages in the lack of housing, stores, schools, and recreational facilities for new residents. The fastest growing county in the nation, Brevard had scarcely been able to keep up with the needs of pre-NASA expansion. Debus was keenly aware of the impact of a NASA-engendered boom on the people of Brevard County, an interest that later took such forms as a Community Impact Committee set up by Debus, Davis, and Governor Farris Bryant of Florida.[21]

The Questions Begin

Even before submission of the report, Debus had misgivings about NASA's grip on the purse strings in the event the moonport was located within the Air Force sphere of influence at Cape Canaveral. Someone in the Department of Defense, it appeared, had already initiated plans to take over funds for LOD instrumentation and facilities. During a conference with Eberhard Rees, Associate Director of the Marshall Space Flight Center, Debus emphasized that the Launch Operations Directorate should control these funds at the Atlantic Missile Range and gave several instances of past problems to substantiate his position. Since Rees would be in Washington when Petrone was to deliver the report, it was agreed that Petrone would furnish Rees with arguments supporting NASA's retention of funding control.[22]

On 31 July 1961, scarcely a month after starting its work, the committee presented the Debus-Davis Report to Seamans in Washington. Two days later NASA Headquarters announced a worldwide study of launching sites for lunar spacecraft. Reflecting the concern of many inside and outside NASA, a *Washington Post* article stated that the size, power, noise, and possible hazards of Saturn or Nova rockets would require greater isolation for public safety than current NASA launch sites offered.[23]

At this juncture, Milton W. Rosen, Acting Director of Launch Vehicle Programs, submitted a report to Webb and Dryden that called for a more complete study of Cumberland Island before a final decision in favor of the Canaveral area. Rosen wrote:

> At Cumberland, however, there is an opportunity, one which we should not lose, to operate in a much simpler and more effective and less time-consuming manner. At Cumberland there could be at the beginning, at least, essentially one project directed toward a single major objective. The newness of Cumberland would be an asset. Both White Sands and Canaveral had simpler and more direct and less time-consuming procedures in their early days, when they did not have to cope with their present volumes of traffic.

Rosen noted that personnel living in the northern suburbs of Jacksonville could drive to work at Cumberland through less traffic than employees faced at Cape Canaveral. The cost of duplicating instrumentation was minor in contrast to the total investment at either site.[24]

On the same day, however, the highly respected scientist-administrator Dr. Hugh Dryden sent in his conclusion: "In my judgement, the nation's interests would best be served by expanding the existing range rather than developing an entirely new and separate installation at this time."[25] NASA Headquarters announced plans six days later (24 August) to acquire approximately 324 square kilometers north and west of the Cape Canaveral launch area, largely on Merritt Island, for manned lunar flights.[26] While most observers felt that the deciding factor was financial, Gibbs believed that "the Hazard Report [of June 1961, pp. 87–88] was the whole basis on which the selection was really made."[27] Petrone thought the decision had a wider base:

the low cost, the proximity to available range resources, and compatibility with program requirements. In response to a direct question on the weight given in the Debus-Davis study to Merritt Island's proximity to the tracking system, Petrone placed it "very high." He also noted that when the decision was made, complex 34 was ready for operation and complex 37 was under construction on Cape Canaveral. With NASA making preliminary Saturn launches from these pads, locating the moonport hundreds of miles from the Cape would have created severe dislocations.[28] Whatever the decisive factors, NASA was committed to launching its manned lunar flights from the Florida facility. Working out of the same geographical area, NASA and the Air Force would have to face the magnitude of the man-in-space program, and the Air Force would have to recognize that NASA was not simply another range-user, waiting in line for its turn. New policies and procedures were called for.

The Webb-Gilpatric Agreement

On the same day that NASA announced its intention of obtaining land on Merritt Island, it signed an agreement with the Department of Defense that set guidelines for managing and funding the Manned Lunar Landing Program. This agreement, which took its name from James E. Webb, whom President Kennedy had just appointed to head NASA, and Deputy Secretary of Defense Roswell Gilpatric, set down three preliminary considerations: the Department of Defense and NASA recognized the great impact of the Manned Lunar Landing Program on the Atlantic Missile Range; in the national interest, the two should pool their resources to make the most effective use of the facilities and services; and the traditional relationship between range-user and range-operator would continue.[29]

The agreement contained 11 provisions that gave NASA ultimate responsibility for acquiring the new land, improving it, constructing necessary buildings, and operating the Manned Lunar Landing Program facilities on the new site and elsewhere. The seventh provision read:

> (7) As agent for NASA, the Department of the Air Force will: a) prepare and maintain a master plan of all facilities on the new site, to include the selection of sites for mission and range support facilities (NASA will be represented on the Master Planning Board); b) prepare design criteria for all land improvements and range support facilities subject to NASA approval, and arrange for the construction thereof; c) design,

> develop, and procure all communications, range instrumentation, and range support equipment required in support of NASA at or near the launch area.[30]

Unfortunately, this hastily drafted document neither defined some critical terms nor included interpretative guidelines. The two parties resolved some simple disputes easily; others they found harder to overcome.[31]

Disagreement centered on the definition of the word *agent* in paragraph (7). According to NASA, an agent was one who acts for or in the place of another by authority from the principal. In the NASA view, the intent of the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement was not to give authority to the Air Force for master planning on Merritt Island; rather, the Air Force was to exercise the master planning functions by authority of NASA and subject to its approval. The Air Force, in contrast, stated that since range users never had the right to locate their launch facilities at the Atlantic Missile Range, it was the range commander's responsibility to site all facilities in accordance with needs of all users. The Air Force, however, had no intention of assuming responsibility for design planning of any NASA mission facilities, such as launch pads.[32]

The Air Force quite simply viewed the new area as an extension of the Cape Canaveral Missile Test Annex. To avoid unnecessary duplication of facilities and personnel, it seemed best that a single manager should control the operation. Responsible for development of the Eastern Test Range since October 1949, the Air Force had supported other agencies, including NASA, with manifold facilities in the areas of range safety, logistics, and tracking. From November 1958 to August 1961, first as the Atlantic Missile Range Operations Office, then after 1 July 1960 as the Launch Operations Directorate, NASA had funded the construction of blockhouses, launch pads, and assembly buildings for its specific programs on the Cape. The Air Force Missile Test Center had purchased and improved land and incorporated the new facilities into its real property accountability system. "Only certain specified services and functions," the *History of the Air Force Missile Test Center* pointed out, "were provided NASA on a reimbursable basis."[33]

Now there was to be an important departure from the Air Force policy of retaining control of all real property at Canaveral. The Department of Defense could not provide money for an immediate purchase of Merritt Island. NASA would have to buy the land. During deliberations in the Office of the Secretary of Defense, preliminary to the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement, the Department of Defense Research and Engineering representatives had inserted a clause in the draft agreement to the effect that all land acquired in behalf of NASA should be transferred to the Department of Defense and incorporated into the Atlantic Missile Range. Gilpatric had questioned the need for such a clause and transfer, saying that the land belonged to the government. Gilpatric's attitude would prove an unfavorable harbinger to Air Force enthusiasts who viewed Merritt Island as an extension of their Cape.[34] NASA eventually took the position that the Air Force, as the agent for NASA in relation to the new land, had assumed a completely new management position, and that NASA had the authority to control the management actions of its agent in these new and separate areas.[35]

For the time, a reading of the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement, especially the controversial seventh provision, along with an understanding of the traditional Air Force viewpoint, might lead one to wonder how the Director of the Launch Operations Directorate had presumed he would have sufficient freedom of movement. Sometime later Debus recalled his reasons for agreeing to these arrangements. He stated,

> Although it may appear that this agreement was to the advantage of the Air Force, you must remember that the Air Force did everything—everyone else was a customer. All their efforts were space oriented and anyone encroaching on this area was considered a challenge by the Air Force. During this period we had to continually make an effort to understand the Air Force's position.[36]

At the time, Debus discussed the tenancy aspects of the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement with Samuel Snyder, Associate Director of Launch Operations at NASA Headquarters, and General Ostrander. While he had suggestions for improving several points, Snyder had urged that "if we could live with it," NASA should sign.[37] Debus and the Commander of the Missile Test Center hoped that they could avoid referring most issues to Washington, preferring to settle them locally.

The Launch Operations Director came to feel during the ensuing months that he needed a stronger hand in site selection and approval of facilities and could not live with the Air Force assumption that Merritt Island was simply an extension of Cape Canaveral. Even a casual observer could see that the two groups would not always be working in harmony and that their areas of operation overlapped at certain points. A new arrangement would eventually have to succeed the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement of August 1961.

Merritt Island Purchase

On 1 September, NASA asked Congress to authorize the purchase of 324 square kilometers of land on Merritt Island, immediately north and west of the existing missile launching area at Cape Canaveral. In support of the proposal, Senator Robert Kerr of Oklahoma, Chairman of the Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, stressed several factors. Stringent time schedules for the lunar program made the area ideal. NASA could reduce costs by use of existing resources, facilities, and personnel. The tracking network stretched almost 14 500 kilometers into the Indian Ocean. If NASA tried to start from scratch in another area, this one aspect of the program would be prohibitive. NASA could plan efficiently for future expansion in the new complex. And lastly, Senator Kerr insisted that this facility would be used for many years to come. Congress was favorable.[38]

On 21 September, Seamans requested the Army Corps of Engineers to undertake the land acquisition.[39] Congress adjourned before authorizing the purchase. Without such authorization, NASA could not ask for the appropriation; but the agency's reprogramming authority made it possible to start purchasing land before the end of 1961. NASA transferred funds from its Research and Development account to its Construction of Facilities Account, and advanced the money to the Army Corps of Engineers, its agent in purchasing the land, and balanced the books the following year.[40]

The use of the Corps of Engineers in this way followed an established pattern of cooperation between NASA and the Corps.*[41] Morris A. Spooner, Chief, Real Estate Division, Jacksonville District Engineers, supervised the buying of the land. After notifying the public of NASA's plans and the exact boundary of the area involved, the Corps opened an office in Titusville, the county seat, before the end of September. When all owners had listed their holdings, 440 tracts were involved. Three-fourths of the owners were absentee; three-fifths lived outside of Florida. The Corps hired experienced land appraisers from firms in Lakeland, Miami, Jacksonville Beach, and Melbourne and issued a booklet to explain the procedures to property owners.[42] First, the Corps would identify the owner, map the land, and describe it legally. Then the appraiser would evaluate each tract. Finally, the Corps would negotiate with the owner. If negotiations proved successful, the direct purchase representative closed the deal; sometimes negotiations broke down and the government had to begin condemnation proceedings.[43]

According to the NASA plan, one group of owners had to vacate their property by the end of February 1962. Many complained to the Titusville *Star-Advocate* that the Corps had not gotten in touch with them and offered a fair price. An editorial on 17 February 1962 maintained that the

---

*Relations between LOD and the Corps did not always run smoothly. After a March 1962 visit to the Jacksonville office of the Corps, an LOD finance officer noted that the Corps was anxious to "dump" administration charges on NASA. In interviews, NASA officials have commented that Corps support did not come cheaply.

Corps had not moved as fast as it should have. It insisted that the agents of the federal government should have placed an equitable price on each piece of property and mailed the offer to the owner with a self-addressed return envelope. If the homeowner agreed, he could have notified the Engineers. If he did not, the Engineers could proceed with the suit in court.

> It is common knowledge [the editorial went on] the Corps of Engineers is making offers for property subject to negotiation. Is this proper? Should the federal government agents go into the horse-trading business? . . . To send in negotiators is nothing less than high-pressure tactics to get the most for the least.

It urged the owners not to allow the Engineers to high-pressure them. If any delay occurred, the editorial concluded, "the Corps of Engineers should carry this delaying responsibility."[44] In spite of this and other complaints, most land acquisitions moved ahead without too much delay. Many individuals took the Corps and NASA into court, but in almost every instance the jury verdict was in the government's favor or close to the figure the government had offered.[45]

While not involving a great number of people, the exodus had its poignant elements—as do all such transfers. This was home for many people, and a lovely home. One family had come down from Savannah, Georgia, a few years before and purchased a small estate near Happy Lagoon, about three kilometers north of where the assembly building was to rise. Husband and wife had come to cherish their new location. The Corps of Engineers assured them that if they purchased similar land north of Haulover Canal, they need never worry about moving again. They took the advice, only to have NASA subsequently reassess its needs and decide to expand farther north. The couple moved to Orlando.[46] The government retained 60 homes for interim use by NASA, the Corps of Engineers, or the Air Force.[47] Some individuals moved their houses to the mainland or to the south end of Merritt Island.

The Titan III Problem

During the fall of 1961, the Air Force was faced with the problem of finding a launch area for its new Titan III. This 39-meter missile consisted of a liquid-fueled central rocket flanked by two solid boosters of great power. Launch sites on Cape Canaveral, including pad 18, pad 20, and the tip of the Cape, were deemed unusable on account of blast and toxicity factors. Events

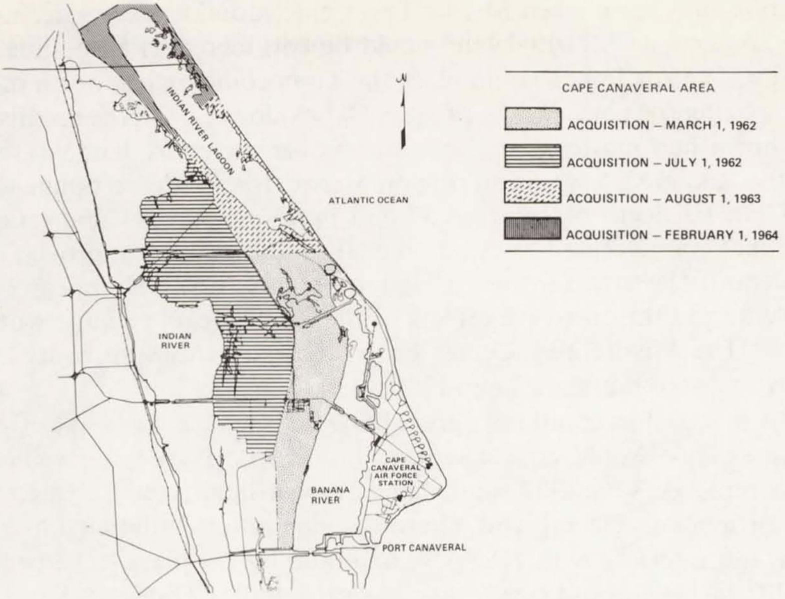

CAPE CANAVERAL AREA
ACQUISITION – MARCH 1, 1962
ACQUISITION – JULY 1, 1962
ACQUISITION – AUGUST 1, 1963
ACQUISITION – FEBRUARY 1, 1964
INDIAN RIVER LAGOON
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN RIVER
BANANA RIVER
CAPE CANAVERAL AIR FORCE STATION
PORT CANAVERAL

Fig. 28. Land acquisition, 1962–1964.

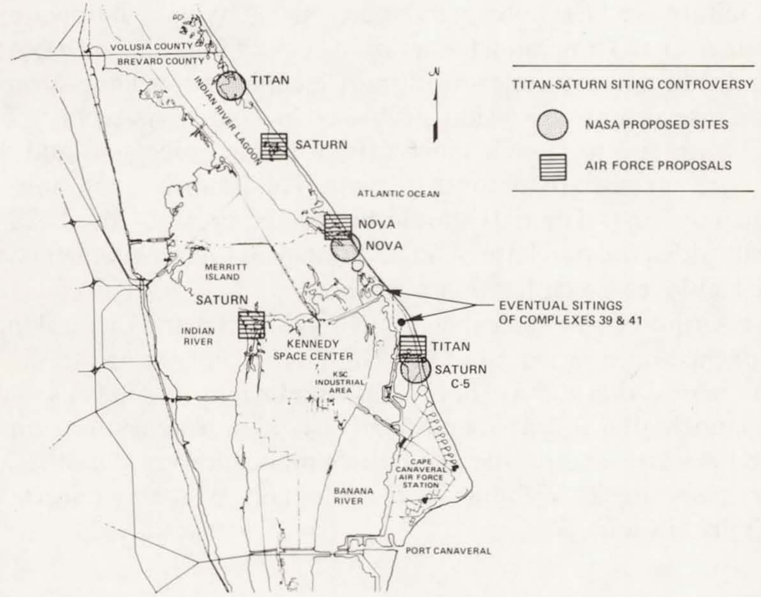

TITAN-SATURN SITING CONTROVERSY
NASA PROPOSED SITES
AIR FORCE PROPOSALS
VOLUSIA COUNTY
BREVARD COUNTY
TITAN
INDIAN RIVER LAGOON
SATURN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NOVA
NOVA
MERRITT ISLAND
SATURN
EVENTUAL SITINGS OF COMPLEXES 39 & 41
INDIAN RIVER
KENNEDY SPACE CENTER
KSC INDUSTRIAL AREA
TITAN
SATURN C-5
CAPE CANAVERAL AIR FORCE STATION
BANANA RIVER
PORT CANAVERAL

Fig. 29. The Titan-Saturn siting controversy.

took a collision course when Missile Test Center administrators decided the new NASA land on Merritt Island could be considered as a possible Titan launch site. The Air Force would place the Titan complex just north of complex 37, spacing the pads for use of class IX* explosives. On the premise that the Air Force had master planning powers over the entire launch area, including the land NASA was acquiring on Merritt Island, the recommendation to site Titan III north of complex 37 and partly on NASA land (and submerged land) was accepted by Air Force Headquarters and approved by the Department of Defense. Further, a Titan overflight of LC-37 appeared to be no problem, and the corrosive effects of the Titan rocket exhaust would be negligible. The Missile Test Center proposed that NASA move its launch pads north to accommodate Titan III.[48]

To this, Debus could not agree. LOD believed the corrosive effects of the Titan exhaust would pose a serious hazard to NASA space vehicles on launch complexes 34 and 37, and that any overflight would create serious safety restrictions. Placing the Titan III integration building on Merritt Island would interfere with NASA's canal and bridge plans. The proposed Titan III firing rate would close down launch complex 37 or pad A of launch complex 39 once every ten days. Moving LC-39 farther north would double the distance from assembly building to launch area, increase the cost of communications lines by $1 million, and force NASA personnel to detour around the Titan III area in going from the Cape to LC-39. In sum, LOD believed a Titan III failure could seriously endanger NASA's flight hardware, pads, and personnel; that Titan launch operations would interfere with NASA activities; and that a heavy concentration of escaping propellants from Titan III might cause serious corrosion problems in NASA spacecraft. Finally, LOD did not intend to launch spacecraft over Air Force sites and did not want Air Force missiles flying over its pads. The Launch Operations Directorate concluded that Titan III should be located north of the NASA area and recommended the purchase of an additional 60 square kilometers of land above the Haulover Canal for that purpose.[49]

The Air Force was agreeable to buying this land and earmarking it for NASA, but this was no balm to LOD. The Titan affair seemed to say, if not in so many words, that the Air Force was standing on its rights as master of the entire launch area and deemed Merritt Island an extension of the Cape. Debus and his staff were troubled about the implications of the situation and tried—for many weeks without success—to convey their concern to the NASA administration.

---

*In the U.S. military forces, this designation identifies high explosives such as dynamite, materials that are very susceptible to ignition by spark or friction and burn with explosive violence.

In an effort to work out some of the problems, General Shriever, General Davis, and their staffs met on 19 February 1962 with a NASA team of D. Brainerd Holmes, Debus, and others. The conference produced a lamentable communications gap. Shriever understood that Holmes and Debus were agreeable to siting Titan III in the south where the Air Force wanted it, deferring selection of a moonport site, and purchasing additional land north of Haulover Canal. The actual NASA position, as set out at a Management Council meeting under Holmes's chairmanship on 27 February, was that "the preferable solution to Cape siting problems is immediate acquisition of additional land to the north and siting the Titan III at the north, Nova in the center, and [Saturn] C-5 to the south."[50] Much of the following month was devoted to the solution of this impasse, a process complicated by misunderstandings within the NASA command. Much to Debus's disappointment, NASA agreed tentatively to the southern sitings.[51] On 27 March a statement of the acceptability of overflight was signed by L. L. Kavanaugh, for the Department of Defense, and Robert Seamans. A still unreconciled Debus told the Management Council that NASA should retain control over NASA-purchased lands and seek an amendment to the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement providing for joint master planning.[52]

Congress Says NASA

The LOD director was to have his turn sooner than he knew, but for the time being NASA Headquarters appeared loath to cross swords with the Air Force. Nor was the Air Force ready to relinquish any of its perquisites. On 29 March, John H. Rubel, Assistant Secretary of Defense, presented a statement to the Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics. Rubel reviewed the procedures at the Atlantic Missile Range during 11 years. He gave no indication that the Air Force saw any noticeable difference between the manned lunar landing program and the other programs that had used the Cape during that time. The range commander had to have authority to make decisions in the common interest of all range users. At the same hearing, Seamans pointed out that some of the launch pads for Titan III would be on lands funded by NASA, just as some of the Saturn C-1 facilities were located on land originally funded by DoD. He stated: "It is not a question of our land or their land. It is the country's land. It is a national range."[53]

The subcommittee chairman, Olin E. Teague (D., Tex.), told Rubel that the dispute confused him:

> The main thing that troubles the committee is, we go to the Cape, for example, we talk with some of your responsible people there, we talk with some of Dr. Seamans' responsible people and we come away confused, frustrated, disturbed, and they don't agree on this overflight matter, and they don't agree to a Titan siting next to a Saturn. . . . We have some questions we are going to submit to you, Mr. Rubel and Dr. Seamans, which we want answered for the record.

As a result the Teague committee sent 28 questions to the Department of Defense and NASA. Typical of the questions were:

> - What is the management arrangement between DoD and NASA regarding NASA's utilization of the national missile ranges?
> - From a management and technology standpoint, does NASA lack the necessary capability to do their own siting and preliminary design for the new area?
> - Would it be considered undesirable duplication to allow NASA to develop their own support unit for activities at AMR?[54]

In a generally conciliatory set of answers, NASA recognized the contribution of the Air Force on the Cape, but strongly insisted that, "since NASA has MLLP [Manned Lunar Landing Program] responsibility to the Congress, it must exercise management and funding control of all its aspects."[55] The Air Force felt that in answering Teague's 28 questions, NASA had shifted its position and was interpreting the terms of the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement in a manner that would place the Air Force Missile Test Center in a subordinate role to NASA in every range matter concerned with the manned lunar landing program. The Air Force felt it could not give up its traditional role in the management and operation of the range, including the new area, "without a deterioration of its services to all agents collectively."[56]

Having stated its case, the Air Force did something about it. When the question of custody of the title to the land on Merritt Island arose, General Davis requested the District Chief of the Corps of Engineers to transfer the title of all property on Merritt Island to the Air Force.[57] Moreover, despite indications that land ownership was going to give NASA special status as more than an Air Force tenant, NASA Headquarters at Washington seemed ready to concede the point with the proposed new purchase. It would let the Air Force buy and hold title to the 60 square kilometers at the north end of the range which, it was agreed, should be acquired for NASA's use in lieu of the land lost to Titan III.

In looking back at the issues, Rocco Petrone stated flatly in an interview some years later: "The ownership of the land . . . was a key one." "In those days NASA was a pretty small customer," Petrone admitted, "and tackling DoD was a tough game. . . . Webb knew that at all costs he had to have peace in a federal family, the two agencies that could go into space, NASA and DoD." Further Webb had to face one of the most prestigious men in the new administration, Secretary of Defense Robert S. McNamara; and Webb had to recognize that the Air Force had long considered space its province. Petrone felt that only the presidential decision had given NASA priority in the lunar program.[58]

For the time being NASA Headquarters was cooperating with the Air Force to enable the latter to purchase the land earmarked for NASA in compensation for the Titan sites. Seamans wrote Webb on 13 April that "although the Debus-Holmes recommendation is that NASA seek to acquire the additional acreage, it is my feeling that since the Titan III program forms the basis for this need, it is more desirable for DoD to seek this additional land."[59] Webb agreed and notified McNamara of NASA's acquiescence in the Air Force siting of the Titan pads, and the Air Force purchase of compensatory acreage.[60] An article in *Missiles and Rockets* for 30 April 1962 reported that the Air Force wanted to put its Titan pads at the south end of the coastal area of the expansion tract (NASA's Merritt Island purchase), and that this would force NASA to relocate its pads. "The NASA position is that this is fine as long as the Air Force provides the funds."[61] The Bureau of the Budget approved the Department of Defense request.[62]

By this time it appeared to NASA people at Canaveral that Headquarters in Washington had given in and agreed that the lunar team was only one of many tenants using Air Force facilities at the discretion of the Air Force. But help came from another quarter. Robert Seamans and Dr. Brockway McMillan, the Assistant Secretary of the Air Force for Research and Development, appeared before the Military Construction Subcommittee of the Senate on 8 May to testify in favor of DoD's acquiring the additional land. Their testimony backfired. Henry Jackson (D., Wash.), Chairman of the Subcommittee, saw the wisdom in the purchase of the new land. But the testimony showed that the additional acreage would support NASA development. Since NASA was a civilian agency, he would not honor the request and so wrote McNamara on 21 May.[63] In a reply three days later, McNamara explained the Air Force's position, but conceded the Senator's point that it could well be a NASA purchase "provided the use of this and all other land at the Cape is subject to the joint use policy under a single manager."[64] McNamara concluded his letter with the assurance that NASA was in the process of presenting the request through the proper congressional committee. NASA then took over the task of pushing the matter with Congress.

On 14 June, Debus notified Davis of word received from Washington. NASA and the Department of Defense had agreed that NASA would buy the additional 60 square kilometers of land and was submitting the recommendation to Congress for the FY 1963 authorization bill. He understood that the concerned congressional committees had not opposed the purchase.[65] James Webb appeared before the Senate Subcommittee on Appropriations on 10 August and explained in full the need for additional land. Chairman Warren Magnuson (D., Wash.) and Senator Leverett Saltonstall (R., Mass.) did most of the questioning as Webb went beyond the simple request for more funds to a wide statement on the whole program.[66] NASA's 1963 Authorization Act, passed four days later, included funds for the additional land north of Haulover Canal and included a key statement as to jurisdiction: "All real estate heretofore or hereafter acquired by the United States for the use of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration shall remain under the control and jurisdiction of that Administration, unless it is disposed of in accordance with the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (63 Stat. 377), as amended."[67]

At this point the bureaucratic infighting reached a draw. The Air Force had placed its Titan III facilities on part of NASA's Merritt Island land, but NASA retained jurisdiction over the land, nailed down by its further acquisition of the last 60 square kilometers at the northern limits of the Florida launch area. NASA had established its status as more than a tenant of the Air Force. It would be a mistake to make too much of the disagreement. At the Cape, NASA and Air Force personnel were working together on a day-to-day basis, and the Launch Operations Center was always quick to acknowledge its debt to the Missile Test Center. There is some force to an Air Force suggestion that it was creating issues to get clear-cut decisions from Washington on the powers and responsibilities of the two agencies. The decision finally came down—NASA, and not NASA and the Air Force, would put a man on the moon. During the negotiations John Glenn and Scott Carpenter had orbited the earth, and the American public was cheering for its new space agency.

A New Agreement

It was time for a review of the Webb-Gilpatric Agreement. NASA and the Department of Defense had distinctive programs. The Department of Defense agencies that used the range were primarily research and development users of a test facility for the development of weapon systems. NASA, in addition to doing R&D, was an operational user of launch facilities for the exploration of space. Congress indicated its intent that the land on Merritt Island remain under the control of NASA by the way funds were appropriated for its purchase, but NASA did not propose to disturb in any significant way the arrangements at Cape Canaveral or the downrange facilities and intended to pay a prorated share of the operating expenses of the Atlantic Missile Range. Under these circumstances, Webb wrote to Gilpatric on 14 August 1962, with a draft that he hoped would replace their earlier agreement.[68] During the fall and early winter of 1962, NASA and the Department of Defense engaged in a series of conferences that led to a clarification of relationships at Cape Canaveral and Merritt Island. General Davis wrote to the Secretary of Defense, for instance, pointing out the duplication of support activities that might be required—such things as guard services, printing plants, fuel analysis laboratories, instrument repair shops, fire protection, and weather forecasting. He admitted that a division on a geographical basis was possible, but advised that NASA be prepared to accept the responsibility for the necessary duplication.[69] On 17 January 1963 NASA Administrator Webb and Secretary of Defense McNamara signed a new agreement.

NASA gained two points. Paragraph B of the General Concept stated: "In recognition of the acquisition by NASA of MILA (Merritt Island Launch Area) and its anticipated use predominantly in support of the Manned Lunar Landing Program and in order to provide more direct control by NASA of MILA development and operation, the Merritt Island Launch Area is considered a NASA installation separate and distinct from the Atlantic Missile Range."[70] In the area of master planning, NASA also had more liberty. Further agreements and additions during the spring and summer of 1963 settled many of the minor problems that remained.[71]

Land, Lots of Land—Much of It Marshy

While NASA and the Air Force pursued their own battle for beachheads, the Corps of Engineers continued its less spectacular efforts to stake out NASA's new land holdings on Merritt Island and at the north end of the range. Within two and a half years of its initial commission (that is, by 1 February 1964), the Corps had acquired the bulk of the needed land. Out of the more than 1500 ownerships involved initially, a few were to remain unsettled for several years more.[72] Not unexpectedly, the absentee owners of large tracts who could delay and negotiate came off better than the small owners who sometimes found their awards inadequate to purchase similar property in the neighborhood. At least one person owning cultivated land on Merritt Island sold the tract for $244 an acre. But one year later, when she wanted to purchase a similar plot on a non-NASA section of the island, she found the price to be $3000 an acre.[73]

The buildings did not prove as simple an acquisition as the land. The Corps sold some for salvage, transferred 44 to the Brevard County School System for use as temporary classrooms, and turned one old building into a museum. The Air Force, among others, used the Standard Oil station to service official vehicles, the Roberts residence as a first-aid station, and several homes as security patrol offices. The purchase included a considerable number of trailers that eventually served in a variety of capacities.[74]

The disposition of more than 12 square kilometers of citrus trees proved one of the most difficult problems. NASA at first proposed to lease the land to the growers for five years. A representative of the Merritt Island citrus growers stated that they were willing to vacate their dwellings and farm the groves in accordance with NASA regulations, but desired to retain title to the property. They were afraid that a lease system would not guarantee them any right of repurchase if NASA no longer needed the tracts. The growers rightfully pointed out that it was difficult to spray, fertilize, and cultivate the groves without a guarantee that they could gather the fruit. Debus met with J. Hardin Peterson, a lawyer representing the Florida Citrus Mutual, as early as December 1961 and assured him and representatives of the citrus growers on North Merritt Island of NASA's good will.[75]

A group of citrus growers carried their complaints to Senator Spessard L. Holland (D., Fla.), Chairman of the Subcommittee on Appropriations, who asked some sharp-edged questions of NASA Associate Administrator Robert Seamans in the April 1962 hearings on the Second Supplemental Appropriation Bill. Seamans referred the queries to Ralph E. Ulmer, Director of Facilities Coordination. Ulmer tried to dismiss Senator Holland's question with the statement: "We have received no recent complaints from landowners on that score." Senator Holland answered flatly: "You have received them, because I passed them on myself directly to Mr. Webb and to others in NASA, going back to last fall." The Senator insisted that the heart of the matter was NASA's attitude toward the production of citrus on eight square kilometers of valuable groves. Ulmer promised to give the matter careful attention. Late the following year, the Corps of Engineers announced a lease plan for the Merritt Island citrus groves that seemed much more satisfactory than earlier arrangements. In place of the original five-year lease plan, the Corps offered the original grove owners a lease until 30 June 1968, with an option to renew the lease for an additional five years. Two factors tended to make this option essential for the growers: young trees required more than five years to develop and the high cost of equipment could not be recovered in five years.[76]

The space agency finally took 340 square kilometers by purchase and negotiated with the State of Florida for the use of an additional 225 square kilometers of submerged lands. Much of the latter lay within the Mosquito Lagoon, separated from the ocean by a narrow strip of beach on the east. The property cost $72 171 487.[77] The Space Center invited Brevard County to maintain a public beach north of the launching facilities, to be used whenever activities on the pads did not create a hazard. In 1963 NASA empowered the National Wildlife Service to administer those areas of the Space Center not immediately involved in space launch operations. At the time this covered about 230 square kilometers and formed a safety belt between the launch area and the population centers to the west and northwest. A few years later the manager of the Merritt Island National Wildlife Refuge was to report the identification of more than 150 species of birds. During the winter season the waterfowl population exceeded 400 000. Animals included alligators, wild pigs, and bobcats.[78]

NASA and the Department of the Interior were to finalize the arrangements between KSC and the Refuge some years later. NASA added lands, submerged lands, and waters, increasing the total under the control of the Refuge to 508 square kilometers. By this agreement, the Refuge would administer the citrus groves and lease fishing camps, previously handled by the Corps of Engineers; operate Playalinda Beach at the north end of the Cape; and cooperate with the Brevard Mosquito Control District. NASA provided fire protection and would continue to maintain all major highways, bridges, and traffic signals required for employee and public access to the spaceport and adjacent facilities. NASA could make use of these areas at any time in conjunction with the space program. NASA could terminate the agreement when the space program demanded it, or if the Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife failed to use the premises according to the terms of the agreement. The Bureau, on its part, could withdraw if the nature of the space activities rendered the area unsuitable for wildlife purposes.[79] NASA would have all the land it needed for the foreseeable future, as well as a safety belt that served a second purpose as a wildlife refuge.

Page intentionally left blank

6

LC-39 PLANS TAKE SHAPE

Rapidly Evolving Hardware

In the year following the Debus-Davis study, Huntsville planners kept coming up with a larger Saturn, only to discard it for a still bigger one. Their bigger-rocket designs, coupled with lunar-orbital rendezvous, could drop the Apollo launch rate from 13 Saturns a year to 6, well below what Debus had warned was an economic use for the mobile concept. Critics in and out of NASA began to question the wisdom of the mobile concept, but it rolled on. For one thing, the plan was under way and time and money had been invested in its development. For another, Debus and Petrone were proving effective advocates, stressing the concept's flexibility when declining launch rates undercut its major premise. Finally Congress and the country wanted NASA "to travel first class" if it meant beating Russia to the moon. The Launch Operations Directorate (LOD) men believed their proposals promised first-class travel to the moon and beyond.

Although acceptance of the Debus-Davis Report was a more-or-less green light for the mobile concept, several major questions remained about moving a gigantic rocket over Merritt Island's marshes from assembly building to launch pad. Cost remained a primary consideration. But during the last six months of 1961, LOD's great concern lay in the plethora of rocket designs and rendezvous studies that kept pouring out of Huntsville and Washington. An orderly account of events belies the tentative manner in which the Debus team had to plan launch facilities for problematical rockets flying on undetermined flight paths to the moon.

The Lundin Committee had taken a "quick look" (one week) at the rendezvous mode of accomplishing the manned lunar landing (see page 79). In late June 1961 Associate Administrator Seamans directed Air Force Col. Donald H. Heaton of NASA Headquarters to conduct a more detailed study. Heaton's committee supported the Lundin finding that an earth-orbital rendezvous promised the earliest lunar landing and at less cost than a direct ascent. Its August report recommended the use of a Saturn C-4 with four F-1 engines. The C-4's bigger payload would reduce the number of rendezvous vehicles, with "a higher probability of an earlier successful manned lunar landing than the C-3."[1]

Despite the Heaton Committee's recommendation, General Ostrander's Office of Launch Vehicle Programs urged an early start for the Saturn C-3 program. Seamans was not ready to commit himself, having agreed in July to a NASA-DoD launch vehicle study. Nicholas Golovin, a mathematician who had previously worked on the Mercury project, directed the joint study. Although the group failed to establish a national launch vehicle program, it outlined alternative programs (including developmental flights) for a manned lunar landing:

- ***Lunar-orbit rendezvous.*** 28 Saturn C-1 flights and 38 C-4 flights. First landing possible in October 1967. Cost of program, $7.33 billion.
- ***Earth-orbit rendezvous.*** 32 Saturn C-1 flights and 53 C-4 flights. First landing possible in July 1968. Cost of program, $8.16 billion.
- ***Direct ascent.*** 22 Saturn C-1 flights and 38 flights of a Nova configuration with eight F-1 engines in the first stage, eight J-2 engines in the second stage, and two J-2 engines in the third stage. First landing possible in October 1968. Cost of program, $6.39 billion.[2]

Contemporary with the changing studies in Washington, the Saturn launch vehicle evolved rapidly in Huntsville, going from a C-3 version in June to a C-5 in December. Plans for the C-3 were barely under way when Marshall Space Flight Center initiated studies of a larger C-4. The C-4, incorporating four F-1 engines in the booster and five J-2 engines in the second stage, at first seemed large enough to power a lunar landing mission via either lunar-orbital or earth-orbital rendezvous. As spacecraft weight estimates continued upward, Marshall officials began to question this assumption. Von Braun's proposal to add a fifth F-1 engine, making the C-4 a C-5, was approved in November when Milton Rosen, NASA Director of Launch Vehicles and Propulsion, made another launch vehicle study. Rosen's team spent two weeks in Huntsville matching potential launch vehicles with lunar landing missions. The group's findings reinforced von Braun's argument for a C-5; the C-4's capability for a rendezvous mission was marginal. Since the clustering of the four F-1 engines left a large open space in the C-4's first stage, a fifth engine would strengthen the Saturn design. Rosen pointed out that a fifth engine could be mounted at the junction of two very strong crossbeams that supported the other four engines. This eliminated a potential trouble spot since the junction would have been exposed to excessive exhaust backwash and a serious overheating problem. Marshall engineers estimated that the C-5 would place 108900 kilograms in earth orbit or lift 40200 kilograms to escape velocity. Still short of a direct ascent capability (68000 kilograms to escape velocity), the C-5 provided ample power for a rendezvous mission.[3]

Decisions came rapidly during the next four weeks. On 4 December 1961, Seamans agreed to the Rosen Committee's recommendations. NASA selected the Boeing Company as a possible prime contractor for the first stage on the 15th. The frame (10-meter diameter, 42.7 meters in length) would be manufactured at NASA's Michoud plant just east of New Orleans. At its first meeting on the 21st, the Manned Space Flight Management Council* approved the C-5 configuration of five F-1 engines in the first S-IC stage, five J-2 engines in the second S-II stage, and one J-2 in the third S-IVB stage. The same day NASA Headquarters began negotiations with Douglas Aircraft Company to modify the C-1's S-IV stage for use as the S-IVB. As NASA had indicated in September that North American Aviation would build the S-II stage, the Douglas selection rounded out the team of contractors for the Saturn C-5. Formal announcement that Marshall Space Flight Center would direct C-5 development came in January 1962.[4]

The Space Task Group, NASA's spacecraft organization, went through an equally hectic six months after the lunar-landing decision. STG and McDonnell Aircraft Corporation had been considering advanced Mercury projects since September 1959; proposals included a maneuverable Mercury capsule, extended missions of 14 days, a two-man vehicle, and a rendezvous attempt. In May 1961, Martin Company spokesmen approached NASA officials about the use of the Titan II missile in a post-Mercury program. Further presentations convinced Robert Gilruth, Space Task Group chief, of the Titan II's merits. Engineers prepared a project development plan calling for the two-man Mercury spacecraft and a modified Titan II booster. As a rendezvous capability seemed very important for Apollo, the project included an Agena rendezvous target, boosted into earth orbit by an Atlas launch vehicle. The project won approval in December and was formally christened the Gemini program† the following month.[5]

Work on the Apollo spacecraft also moved forward. NASA Headquarters announced on 9 September 1961 the establishment of a Manned Spacecraft Center at Houston. The center would design, develop, evaluate, and test Apollo spacecraft and train astronauts for space missions. Robert

---

*NASA Headquarters underwent a major reorganization during the fall of 1961. An Office of Manned Space Flight was set up to supervise the Apollo program. Field center directors no longer reported to Headquarters program offices but directly to the Associate Administrator, giving the directors additional power. D. Brainerd Holmes came from RCA to head the Office of Manned Space Flight. One of his first actions was to establish a Management Council to provide overall direction for the Apollo program. MSFC, MSC, and LOD (Debus) were represented, as well as key members of the Manned Space Flight Office. The Council played an important decision-making role in 1962–63. Robert L. Rosholt, *An Administrative History of NASA, 1958–1963*, NASA SP-4101 (Washington, 1966), pp. 274–75.

†See Barton C. Hacker and James M. Grimwood, *On the Shoulders of Titans: A History of Project Gemini,* NASA SP-4203 (Washington: 1977).

Gilruth would head the new organization with his Space Task Group as its nucleus.[6]

The home and organization were new, but not the mission. The Gilruth team had prepared the preliminary guidelines for an advanced manned spacecraft in March 1960. In subsequent months the group had enlisted research assistance from other NASA centers, briefed American industry, and awarded contracts for spacecraft feasibility studies. By mid-1961 Gilruth was ready to invite bids on the prime Apollo spacecraft. The 28 July work statement described three phases of the Apollo program. Manned earth-orbital flights and unmanned reentry flights comprised phase one missions. NASA would qualify spacecraft systems and the heat shield, study human reactions to extended periods in space, conduct experiments related to the lunar mission, and work on flight and ground operational techniques. The second phase involved circumlunar flights to develop the Apollo spacecraft and conduct lunar reconnaissance. Manned lunar landings would come in phase three.[7]

The work statement called for the design and manufacture of a command module and associated ground support equipment. The contractor would also provide test spacecraft for Saturn C-1 developmental vehicles and mockups. A second major assignment involved the integration of the spacecraft modules with each other, with the launch vehicle, and with ground support equipment. During operations the contractor would prepare the spacecraft for flight and monitor its systems. Description of the command and service modules ran more than 20 pages. Major systems of the two modules included guidance and control, vernier propulsion for longitudinal velocity and thrust-vector control, mission propulsion, reaction control, provisions for escape during launch, environmental control, electrical power, communications and instrumentation, and a number of crew-related systems. Although NASA had not decided on the mission mode, the Space Task Group nevertheless included some general plans of a lunar landing module for direct ascent or an earth-orbital rendezvous mission. Twelve companies bid on the contract that would eventually cost NASA over 2.2 billion dollars. In November, NASA announced the selection of North American Aviation for the task.[8] Mission, rocket, and spacecraft were taking form.

The Mobile Launch Plan Comes under Fire

While rocket and spacecraft plans were proceeding, the Martin Marietta Corporation of Baltimore began work on a two-part launch facility study. In part one Martin was to recommend an "optimum concept for facilities to launch Saturn C-3 vehicles at specified rates"; part two involved design of a launch complex based upon the selected concept.[9] The Martin team reported its part one findings orally at Huntsville on 27 September 1961. As in its earlier C-2 study, the Martin Company found the fixed concept superior for a launch rate below 12 Saturns a year and the mobile concept clearly preferable at annual launch rates above 24. The team recommended moving the rocket by canal. The 3350-meter safety distance between assembly building and pad (almost twice that for the C-2) and the C-3's greater weight had multiplied rail costs. Martin placed the cost of one barge launcher-transporter and pad at $8.152 million, while estimating the cost of comparable rail facilities at $21.965 million. Other advantages of the canal system included more room for bigger cargoes (growth potential for the Nova), a turning basin that compared favorably with complicated switching arrangements by rail, and best use of the Cape's marshy terrain. Although acknowledging a lack of data, the team discounted the wind effect on a barge transporter.[10]

At the end of the presentation, von Braun asked the Martin team to interrupt their C-3 study and conduct a quick investigation of launch requirements for a Saturn C-4. Martin's mid-October report contained no major changes. A Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office (LFSEO) study, completed in late October, reached similar conclusions. Assuming an annual launch rate of 30 Saturn C-4s, LFSEO placed the cost of fixed facilities at $350.5 million, of rail $278.2 million, and of barge $259.1 million. The barge savings came entirely from the canal's lower cost. The study noted that "movement of a transporter launcher with vehicle by barge will present some difficult engineering problems [but] preliminary investigation has shown that it is feasible and within current 'state of the art' capability."[11]

As LOD moved ahead with LC-39 planning, some of its members began to have second thoughts. Georg von Tiesenhausen noted in October that "after an initial period of general acceptance, various segments of LOD are now reluctant to go ahead to develop this [mobile] concept." The size of the C-4, the boldness of the concept, and uncertainty about future launch rates contributed to the uneasiness. Von Tiesenhausen did not agree with the critics: "There is no insurmountable problem involved, engineering-wise or operationally, which appears, that cannot readily be solved . . . . This concept is highly flexible, readily expandable, and most economical for launch rates to be expected in the future."[12]

Connell & Associates, engineering consultants on LC-34 and LC-37, did not share this optimism and volunteered criticism in November. Harvey Pierce's eight-page letter to Debus acknowledged certain advantages of the

Rockets that were not built, being moved by methods that were not developed

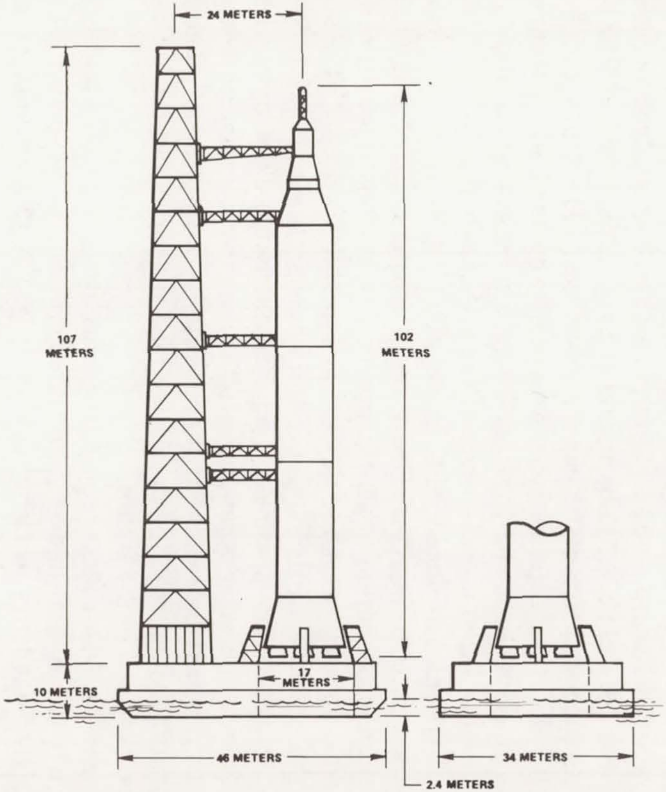

24 METERS
107 METERS
102 METERS
10 METERS
17 METERS
46 METERS
34 METERS
2.4 METERS

Fig. 30. Sketch of Saturn C-4 being transferred by barge, Martin Co. concept, January 1962.

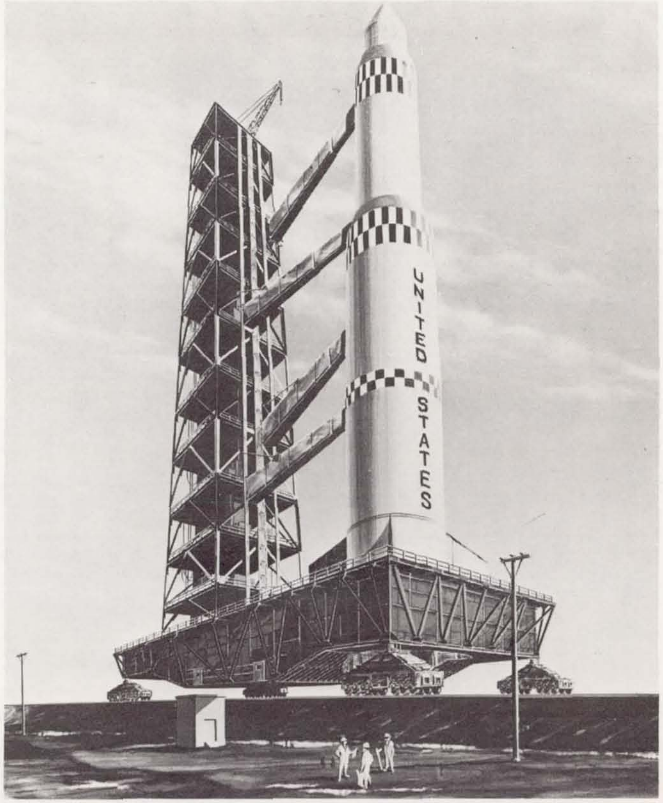

UNITED STATES

Fig. 31. Sketch of Nova being transferred by rail.

mobile concept: more efficient use of land and personnel; only one launch control center; assembly and erection inside a building; and a brief checkout period (one week on the firing pad). The disadvantages, however, were more significant:

> - Pad stay time is estimated at one week. During this entire period the vehicle is unprotected and subject to the elements. Since the weather cannot be predicted accurately for such a period, the vehicle must be designed for stability in line squall winds up to 70 knots . . . . This may comprise a severe penalty in vehicle design.
> - Transporting the erected vehicle over a considerable distance must subject it to vibration which has not previously been encountered.
> - A bending moment due to tilting the very tall vehicle away from true vertical will result from a wheeled transporter traveling up a slope or from a water-borne transporter under high wind loading . . . . The bending load must be considered additive to the wind load, and will add structural weight to the flight vehicle.
> - Tests with cryogenic fluids must be made at the launch pad. If leaks are detected, repairs probably cannot be made without withdrawal to the remote area . . . . There is no reason to assume a lower incidence of these leaks in the future than in the past.
> - This concept places the maximum emphasis on correct first guesses, and the maximum penalty on a wrong guess. The remote assembly-checkout facility, the transporter device, and the route development for the transporter must have the ability to handle all future vehicles, and will soon limit the vehicle design to fit their capabilities. This is an extreme limitation to accept this early in any program.
> - In addition to some immediate decisions on some very difficult criteria predictions, the chances of having a usable facility in the near future are minimized by the difficult problems which are anticipated but unsolved . . . . Considering all factors it appears that the vehicle could easily be ready and available many months, perhaps years, in advance of available launch facilities.

The letter called for a thorough examination, with model studies and wind tunnel tests, of design and construction requirements for the remote assembly building, stability of the rocket in transit, shock and sound over-pressure effects on launcher-transporter equipment, placement of launcher-transporter and flame deflector at pad, transporter propulsion, barge stability, and rail switching. Although the Connell engineers agreed that all technical problems could be resolved with sufficient time and money, they recommended the use of fixed launch facilities for LC-39.[13]

A Trip by Barge or a Trip by Rail?

The Connell letter pointed up the crucial role of the launcher-transporter in LC-39 planning. Its characteristics determined the design criteria of other facilities. The success of the mobile concept rested on the transfer system; the system's development involved some of LOD's most difficult engineering problems. Understandably, the selection of a transporter became a major event in the LC-39 story.

The launcher-transporter fell within the purview of Theodore Poppel's Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office (LFSEO). A Poppel directive on the October C-4 study indicates that the item, while crucial to LC-39, was a small part of the office's workload:

> - Mr. [Chester] Wasileski will start on the propellant systems immediately.
> - Mr. [Donald] Buchanan will start on the launch transporter and the fixed launch sites as soon as possible.
> - Mr. [Robert] Moore's office will supply certain paragraphs and photographs that are generally applicable in this study.
> - Mr. [Julian] Hamilton's outfit will come up with a light coverage of transportation with an illustration or two. Mr. [Georg] von Tiesenhausen will start with some overall layouts.
> - Mr. [R. P.] Dodd will start on the assembly building immediately as to cost and arrangement. Mr. [Lester] Owens will determine blast distances. Mr. [O. K.] Duren will be in charge of the overall coordination and the written material . . . .[14]

Everyone in LFSEO was busy, but perhaps the heaviest workload fell to Donald Buchanan. After four years of Air Force duty in World War II, Buchanan had earned a degree in mechanical engineering at the University of Virginia. He had joined the National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics at Langley Field, Virginia, in 1949, moving on to Redstone Arsenal in 1956. Buchanan's responsibilities as Launcher Systems and Umbilical Tower Design Section Chief included pad arrangement and deflector design. Although Poppel and Lester Owens, Deputy Chief of LFSEO, intentionally left the launcher-transporter selection open to the entire office, Buchanan took the lead in the barge investigations. In April 1962 he assumed responsibility for transporter development.[15]

Cost estimates on a canal system were favorable, but the use of a barge as the launcher-transporter raised a number of engineering questions: How to position the barge and flame deflector at the launch site? What means of propulsion and steering to use? How to ensure a stable platform for the launch vehicle? While Martin Marietta examined these matters in the second part of its C-3 study, LOD stepped up its own inquiry. On 2 November an LOD team inspected the elevating mechanism of a Gulf Coast offshore oil rig. A possible solution to the positioning problem at the launch site involved the use of Texas Tower legs on the barge-transporter. The long tubular legs, actuated by a hydraulic jacking system, would be located at each corner of the barge. While the barge was under way, the legs would be raised until flush with the bottom of the barge. At the launch position, the legs would be lowered to rest firmly on a concrete basin. Then the hydraulic system would raise the barge on the legs to provide sufficient clearance for the flame deflector to float beneath it. However, a Launch Facilities and Support Equipment report opposed the hydraulic jacking system since it would place the launch platform at least 18 meters above ground level. In its place, the report recommended a deeper concrete launch basin with the barge positioned on supports extending outward from the basin walls. A lift-gate (lock) would allow sufficient water to be drained to permit passage of the deflector beneath the launcher. This plan offered a low profile (the launch platform would be only 2.4 meters above ground level), but this advantage would be offset by the increased costs of the lift-gate and deeper basin.[16]

Lacking expertise in barge propulsion and stability, LOD hired a Baltimore naval architect, M. Mack Earle, "to review the static and dynamic stability programs . . . and prepare a model test program." Earle's preliminary report warned that LOD would likely encounter problems with the propulsion system in restricted canals. Early in the new year Earle began arranging for a test program at the David Taylor Model Basin in Washington, D.C.[17]

Martin Marietta Corporation submitted the second part of its C-3 launch facility study on 11 January 1962. The report recommended use of a barge 55 × 41 meters, with 1.8 meters draft. Thirteen kilometers of canal, 61 meters wide and 4.6 meters deep, would service the three-pad complex. Four to six Murray and Tregurtha Harbormaster motors would propel the barge. Rated at 530 horsepower, this large outboard motor was capable of achieving nearly 900 horsepower for limited periods. Estimating 45 pounds of thrust per horsepower, Martin calculated that six Harbormaster units would overcome the drag of a 60-knot wind. Fixed legs, designed by DeLong Corporation and R. G. LeTourneau, Inc. (specialists in offshore oil drilling platforms), would elevate the barge out of the water at the vertical assembly building, the arming tower, and the launch pad.[18]

After NASA chose to develop the Saturn C-5 for the moon mission, little time remained to select a transfer mode. On 23 January, American Machine & Foundry Company presented the results of a comprehensive survey that included railway wheels, pneumatic tires, crawler treads, barge, and special ground effects, and recommended a rail-barge combination possibly using mechanical mules.[19] Debus agreed with their report; he informed Petrone a week later that he tentatively supported a plan "to let the barge weight be carried by water, but use for stabilization and propulsion a rail which carries only partial weight." The LOD Director reviewed transfer modes with Zeiler, Poppel, and O. K. Duren on 30 January, discussion centering on the merits of another launch vehicle transfer study. Although the group postponed an award in hopes that additional suggestions might appear, Debus did not intend to wait long. Summarizing the meeting for Petrone, Debus wrote: "It appears urgent that we have a program for the crucial engineering studies and possibly cost estimates for these studies early next week because a decision to proceed on 39 is imminent."[20]

In this atmosphere, a chance meeting at Huntsville introduced a new transporter to the LC-39 competition. Duren, an Auburn University graduate, had been with von Braun since 1951, most recently as Deputy Chief of the Future Launch Systems Study Office. On 2 February, Duren received a call from Barry Schlenk, a Bucyrus-Erie Company representative. While discussing Titan silo overhead cranes with Thiokol Corporation, Schlenk had overheard a remark about LOD's transport problem. The two men spent the afternoon examining some pictures of Bucyrus-Erie's steam-shovel crawler used in the Kentucky coal fields. The vehicle seemed suited to LOD's needs; its characteristics included a leveling capability to balance a load on uneven terrain. Caught up in Schlenk's enthusiasm, Duren called Albert Zeiler about his find. Zeiler was skeptical, but agreed to look into the matter.[21]

Four days later, LOD laid plans for barge, rail, and crawler studies. The staff concurred in a three-month barge study at David Taylor Model Basin, employing a 1:10 scale model of the barge. Additional tests would be run in a wind tunnel with a 1:60 scale model. A consulting engineer, William G. Griffith, would assist the Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office on another rail study, this one concentrating on dynamic loads and foundation costs. Poppel's group (LFSEO) would follow up the Bucyrus-Erie lead with an inspection of the crawler shovel.[22]

When Donald Buchanan and George Walter arrived in Washington on 20 February, David Taylor Model Basin officials brought some uncomfortable facts to light. LOD's proposed canals were too narrow and would cause serious propulsion and steering problems. The steering problem resulted from the venturi effect. The relative motion of water to barge in the 3-meter space between the canal bank and the barge decreased the pressure on the side of the barge, causing a suction effect. The David Taylor officials recommended a wider canal—and that would raise costs considerably. Then wind-tunnel tests indicated that the drag effect in a 60-knot wind might be

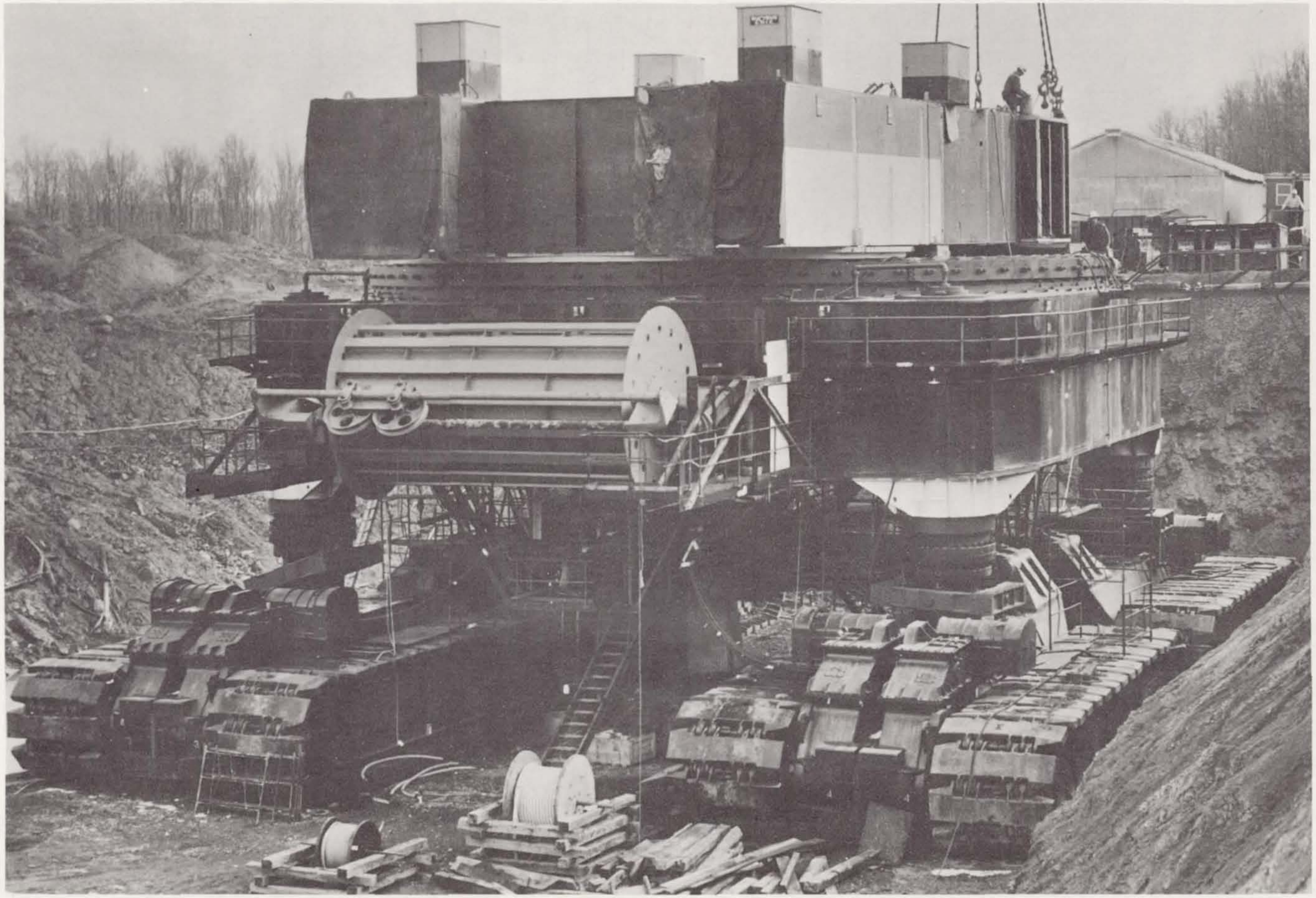


Fig. 32. Bucyrus-Erie's steam-shovel crawler, used for surface mining of coal in Kentucky.

three times the estimated value. Basin tests also revealed that the arrangement of the six Harbormaster motors, three across the bow and three across the stern, reduced motor efficiency. There were several possible solutions: tugboats fore and aft of the barge, air jets placed below the waterline, and spuds (vertical steel pipes) to anchor the barge in heavy winds. These involved new tests and cost projections.[23]

In his rail study William Griffith concentrated on ways to reduce the cost of the roadbed. The continuous concrete beam (2.4 meters deep and 3.5 meters wide) supporting the service structure runway at LC-34 cost more than \$3000 per meter—a prohibitive amount for LC-39's proposed 19 kilometers of rail foundation. Griffith proposed, instead, concrete ties supported by rock ballast on vibro-compacted soil. In a 3 April report, George Walter criticized Griffith's suggestion, arguing that the concrete ties and ballast would not stabilize the track horizontally. Walter opposed Griffith's recommendation of curved tracks. In rounding a curve the transporter's outside trucks would each follow a different route (the transporter would ride on four rails rather than two) and would require a complicated switching arrangement. Negotiating rail curves would also pose a serious problem in synchronizing the transporter's drive units and maintaining a balanced load.[24]

Presented with contradictory reports, LOD asked Connell & Associates to conduct a more detailed study. The findings of the Miami firm supported Walter's position. Curved tracks were judged unacceptable because "the switches required would be fantastically complex . . . . The matter of maintenance of track alignment of the curves is another difficult aspect of this system to which an economical solution is not apparent."[25] The Connell engineers recommended a perpendicular set of railbeds for north-south and east-west travel with switching from one line to another accomplished by one of the Connell team's own inventions: hydraulic equalizer jacks to raise the truck assemblies and a worm or pinion drive sector gear to rotate them. The Connell report questioned the feasibility of Griffith's foundation. Ballast deflection would occur under the heavy horizontal wheel loads, causing track misalignment. Connell recommended a three-layer foundation: compacted fill, a soil-cement subbase, and a reinforced concrete pavement on top. Concrete ties would be keyed transversely to the reinforced pavement. The Connell proposal would reduce the expense of the foundation by over 50%, but even so LC-39's roadbed figured to cost more than \$28 million.[26]

The Crawler Makes Its Debut

On Lincoln's birthday, 1962, an LOD team visited Paradise, Kentucky, to watch a Bucyrus-Erie 2700-metric-ton crawler-shovel in action.

Albert Zeiler's report compared the crawler favorably to LC-34's service structure. The work platform, stabilized by hydraulic cylinders at the four corners, varied no more than one-half degree from level. Nearby, Bucyrus-Erie was constructing for the Peabody Coal Company a larger crawler-shovel which would have a load-bearing capacity in excess of the expected weight of the Saturn C-5 and its support equipment. Although maximum speed for the existing crawler was only 6.1 meters per minute, more speed could be built into the new model. Impressed with the crawler's potential, the LOD representatives asked their hosts to propose a study program for LC-39.[27]

Bucyrus-Erie began such a study one month later. An LOD phone call on 23 March requested preliminary information for Petrone's congressional briefing that afternoon. Thomas Learmont, Bucyrus-Erie's chief design engineer, provided tentative estimates: the crawler, jacks, hydraulic system, and steering mechanisms would cost $3650000, the umbilical tower $1500000, the box structure (launch platform) $800000. The crawler figure reflected the cost of Bucyrus-Erie's new model with few changes. Later Bucyrus-Erie incorporated a redundant power system and a more sensitive leveling mechanism, raising estimates an additional million dollars. Although the crawler's reliability and flexibility were attractive, the cost was a major disadvantage. LC-39 plans called for five launcher-transporters, putting the price of the crawler units at nearly $25 million. In early April, Buchanan suggested separating the launcher from its transporter and building only two crawlers. The proposal would increase total launcher-transporter weight (the separate crawler would require a heavy platform), but the cost savings more than compensated. After Buchanan's idea won approval, LOD supplemented Bucyrus-Erie's contract to include a "separate crawler" investigation.[28]

By May the crawler was scoring the highest marks of the three transfer proposals. On the 10th Poppel, Buchanan, and Duren inspected barge tests at the model basin and reviewed the adverse findings from the wind tunnel. The following day Bucyrus-Erie's final presentation was well received by NASA personnel. The crawler would go 1.6 kilometers per hour under load. Its turning radius was 152 meters. The hydraulic leveling system would keep the platform within 25 centimeters of the horizontal when moving on a 5% grade. The Jacksonville engineering firm of Reynolds, Smith, and Hills reported crawlerway costs per mile of $447000 on high ground and $1200000 across marsh. The latter figure included the cost of removing 6 meters of silt so that a firm roadway could be constructed. The estimate was close to the eventual cost of $7.5 million for ten kilometers of crawlerway. On 15 May, Harvey Pierce summarized Connell's rail study. Although the new railbed appeared sound, it was unproven and twice the cost of a crawlerway. Perhaps more important, the switching arrangements looked like trouble to operations personnel.[29]

The crawler received a further boost from a 1 June Corps of Engineers report. During a three-week study, the Jacksonville office focused on Merritt Island's ability to support the different transporters. Rail fared the worst.

> As a result of the nonhomogeneity of the foundation materials, differential settlement is inevitable along any long embankment. The effect of such settlement would be most detrimental to any system using rails or concrete slabs. Flexible pavements would be less affected and the effect on canal design would be negligible.[30]

A barge transporter would entail high construction costs for a launch basin and docking facilities at the vertical assembly building; the Corps of Engineers estimated $20000000 for the launch basin alone. The crawler presented no serious problems.

The decision to use the crawler came at an LC-39 conference on 12–13 June. Representatives from NASA Headquarters, the Manned Spacecraft Center, Marshall divisions, and private industry joined LOD at the Cape meeting. The launcher-transporter's crucial role placed it first on the agenda. After reviewing LOD's search, Donald Buchanan compared the three major contenders. Although the barge concept offered the best growth potential, there were unresolved design problems with propulsion, steering, platform stability, and placement at the launch pad. Buchanan noted, "If meeting a tight schedule has any bearing on the choice of modes, it would be difficult to assign a low enough value to the barge to illustrate the situation as it now stands."[31] The barge's operational shortcomings included a vulnerability to blast and a slow reaction time (evacuating the rocket in an emergency from the launch pad). While both the rail and crawler systems were within the state of the art, the latter enjoyed advantages of cost and flexibility. Buchanan's crawler recommendation met no serious objections.[32]

Plans for a VAB

The complexity of LC-39 planning dictated formal program management. Debus moved to provide this in the summer of 1961 with the establishment of the Heavy Space Vehicle Systems Office. Rocco Petrone and two assistants constituted the primary working force at the outset. J. P. Claybourne, a Minnesota native and New York University graduate, had handled program management with Petrone in the Saturn Systems Office the previous year. William Clearman, raised in Georgia and educated at Georgia Tech, had served with naval aviation during and after World War II. By early 1962 Petrone's office was providing other LOD offices with program criteria: details such as hook height, service platform levels, umbilical tower service arm heights, and weight loads for the transporter. This involved frequent liaison with MSFC, Houston's Manned Spacecraft Center, and NASA Headquarters.[33]

The vertical assembly building received much of the Heavy Vehicle Office's attention. As Petrone noted in a March 1962 congressional briefing, "the building is our most expensive item. On this item we put forth greatest study."[34] At the time Petrone estimated the VAB would cost $129.5 million of a total of $432 million for the entire complex. The earliest plans for the VAB envisioned a circular assembly building with a turntable to position the transporter. An alternate scheme resembled Martin Marietta's Titan II assembly building design with high bays in line. LOD's October 1961 study placed the high bays back-to-back with the transporter routed down the middle of the VAB. Martin's C-3 study proposed a box-shaped VAB in which six high bays enclosed water channels—transportation by barge was still being considered. There were two unattractive features. An extensive canal system within the VAB would hamper operations and raise the humidity. Negotiating right angle turns into the high bays with the barge would require a floor plan of 204 × 303 meters, nearly 50% larger than the eventual VAB. LOD vetoed the design in January 1962.[35]

At the LC-39 conference 6 February 1962, the Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office agreed to compare open and enclosed VAB designs. Much of the subsequent study was performed by Brown Engineering Company of Huntsville. Ernest Briel directed 20 men investigating two VAB concepts with a barge transfer: one, a fully enclosed box structure with outward-opening bays; the second, an open, in-line structure with silo vehicle enclosures for the launch vehicle. R. P. Dodd supervised the Brown effort; James Reese performed liaison. Brown's reports on 2 April rated the enclosed VAB good for operating characteristics but poor for expansion potential because of canals on three sides and a low bay on the fourth. With the in-line version, the canal would run along the front side, permitting expansion. Low cost was a second advantage; Brown engineers placed a $65 million price tag on the open VAB, $10 million less than the enclosed version. Since a major reason for the remote assembly building was protection from the weather, operations personnel opposed the open concept.[36]

The operations group carried the day at the 13 June LC-39 conference. Gruene led the attack against the open design, arguing that environmental control would be a problem because of the umbilical openings; lightning would be a hazard in an open VAB, particularly if a rocket returned

Drawings of possible assembly buildings for C-5

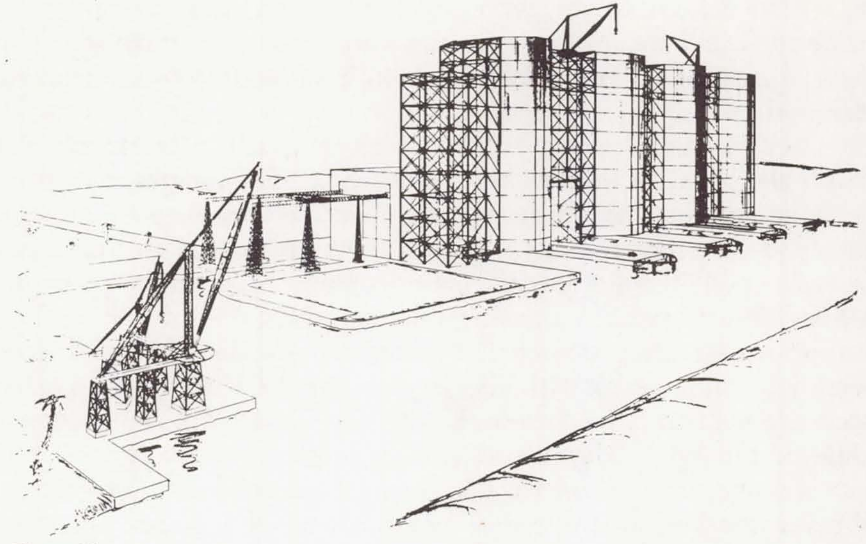


Figure 33

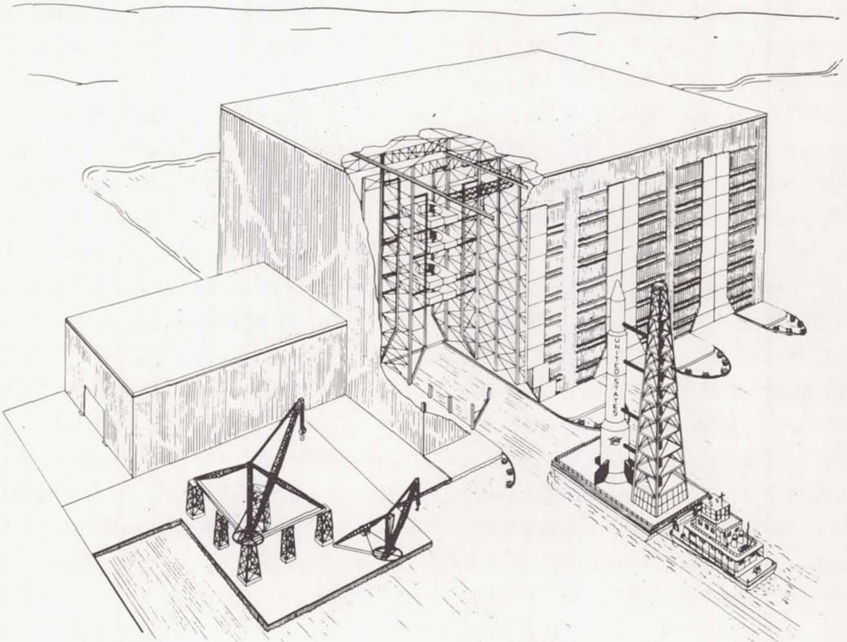

UNITED STATES

Figure 34

Fig. 33. Open version. Fig. 34. Closed version.

from the pad with ordnance aboard; with the silo enclosure open during assembly, high winds could curtail operations; and work at umbilical arm heights would be difficult. The conference agreed to a closed VAB, but no choice was made between an in-line and a box design.[37]

While selection of the crawler simplified VAB planning, the design remained tentative the rest of the summer. At an 18 June meeting, Deese presented a design of six high bays in line and a low bay to the rear, the high bay areas to be constructed in three increments. The low bay, completely air conditioned, would provide checkout areas and aisle space for the upper stages and spacecraft. After erection of the first stage on a launcher-umbilical unit (accomplished by a 250-ton crane at the barge unloading dock), the crawler would carry it into a high bay through a 43-meter-wide door and position the launcher on a set of concrete piers. Mating of the remaining stages would take place in the high bay where five retractable platforms provided access to the rocket. The launch control center and the central instrumentation facility would probably be housed within the VAB, using the roof as an antenna platform. Deese stated that an early definition of requirements was needed for both facilities.[38]

VAB design was again discussed at a 31 July meeting convened by Petrone. Hook height for a 60-ton crane to mate the upper stages was set at 139 meters; the door would extend 3 meters higher. The first of four high bays would be ready for use in January 1965. The launch control center would go either on top of the low bay roof or between the transfer portals that opened to the high bays. Matters were still unsettled at a mid-August briefing for the center director. When LOC engineering presented a VAB plan with four enclosed high bays in line, Debus expressed reservations about the number of bays and the in-line design.[39]

The architectural-engineering consortium URSAM won the contract for detailed VAB criteria in late August 1962 and quickly went to work (see pp. 222–25). On the 30th, URSAM received a set of documents from the Cape that included: "An Evaluation of an Enclosed-in-Line Concept of a C-5 Vertical Assembly Building," prepared by Brown Engineering Company; an evaluation of an open concept for the VAB, also prepared by Brown; NASA organizational charts and schedules; a general site plan of the Cape Canaveral missile test area; a "Geology and Soil Report" made by the Corps of Engineers the previous June; configurations of the C-5; plans of the retraction mechanism for the umbilical tower arms; general instructions; and discussions of the function of the VAB.[40]

By September a Facilities Vertical Assembly Task Group consisting of Arthur J. Carraway, Jack Bing, and Norman Gerstenzang of NASA, and Wesley Allen and Ernest M. Briel of Brown Engineering, was busy defining requirements for URSAM—the general layout of the VAB, the needed shops, general support engineering, and work areas. Some 600 people were expected to work in the VAB, including 100 Pan American maintenance people. A variety of things had to be resolved, from the requirements for a cafeteria to the umbilical arms in the low bays. On 6 September the group worked out methods of obtaining critical and emergency power; the cable requirements from the pad to the VAB, from the launch control center to each high bay, and within each high bay; the power requirements for the launcher umbilical tower; and the launch control center layout.[41]

Four days later an URSAM team arrived at the Cape and, in its first meeting, reached a major decision. It proposed that NASA place the bays in the VAB back-to-back rather than in-line, to gain the following advantages:

- Availability of all four high bays for vehicle erection and assembly without any restrictions.
- Reduction in the number of cranes required from seven to three.
- Elimination of extensive handling of the upper stages on rail-mounted dollies, thus avoiding complex turntable installations and differential settlement problems.
- Simplification of booster and upper-stage transfer and erection procedures.
- Greater adaptability for expansion.[42]

Another consideration, the paramount one for many LOD engineers, was the wind load factor. The huge assembly building would be subjected to tremendous wind pressures and a back-to-back design promised more stability.[43]

The Mobile Launch Concept—Debate and Approval

Debus had little trouble with critics of the mobile concept within LOD. It was a different story outside the launch team. At NASA Headquarters, Milton Rosen questioned both cost and feasibility. In early January 1962, he commissioned a launch facility study by three engineers of the Office of Manned Space Flight. Drawing their information from NASA and aerospace corporation studies, the team concluded that fixed pads were preferable to the mobile concept. The judgment rested on three grounds: the automated checkout equipment and increased reliability of space vehicles would reduce the minimum interval between launches from a fixed pad to one month; the high launch rates, for which the mobile concept was designed, were increasingly unlikely; and the mobile launch concept involved too many risks and engineering uncertainties.[44]

The mobile concept came under more fire in March. On the 6th von Braun notified Debus that an adverse Air Force report had triggered further doubts at NASA Headquarters. Debus stuck to his guns and was supported by Seamans and Holmes. During congressional testimony in early April, Holmes responded to an inquiry regarding the VAB's importance:

> This is an absolute necessity. It is a basic element in our lunar program. If we don't go to this type of vertical assembly, protected from weather, where assembly can take place with integrated checkout equipment for our lunar program, I really think we will end up with the same kind of rather crude facilities we now have for launching, where we assemble them on the pad for 2 or 3 months, where we do not have spares, and it would probably be impossible to use Earth orbital rendezvous.[45]

LOD's opportunity to defend LC-39 came on 23 March when Representative Olin Teague's Manned Space Flight Subcommittee visited the Cape. After describing the mobile concept's advantages in general terms of flexibility and high launch potential, Debus listed seven specific advantages:

- Pad staytime reduced to a week.
- A minimum of equipment exposed to launch area hazards.
- Repetitious testing eliminated by automation.
- Pad unaffected by different vehicle stage arrangements since the transporter-launcher carried the checkout equipment.
- Considerable savings in land costs.
- Minimum construction costs for high launch rates.
- Economic utilization of personnel.

Petrone stressed the last two points. LC-37's $432-million price tag was a bargain compared with the $900-million cost of nine fixed pads for 36 annual launches. If LOD planned facilities for a maximum launch rate of 24 per year, LC-39 still represented a saving of $168 million. One congressman considered Petrone's manpower savings estimates the best argument for LC-39. The complex would employ 2200 men, 1500 fewer than the requirement for nine fixed pads. The annual savings in salaries would amount to $18 million; comparing LC-39 to six fixed pads, Petrone estimated savings of $8 million per year.[46]

The committee questioned the VAB's availability for Nova. Petrone pointed out that Nova dimensions were not firm and postponing LC-39 plans would delay the Saturn C-5 program. The VAB design would allow modification at a later date. Col. Clarence Bidgood, Facilities Chief, stated that flexibility was desirable at three points in the complex: the assembly building, the transporter, and the launch pad. Although LOD was attempting to provide growth potential and a capability for handling solids or liquids, "you might build so much expense into it to get flexibility that it would be very, very uneconomical in the first place." The congressmen were silent on two important matters affecting LC-39: the likelihood of high launch rates and the technical problems of the mobile concept. Perhaps they were unaware of the engineering difficulties that bothered Harvey Pierce and Milton Rosen. They may have feared delay in a pacing item* of the Apollo program. As Teague said, the committee was well disposed toward LOD's project. Their main concern was defending LC-39 before the House Appropriations Committee.[47]

By late May planning on LC-39 was well along; preliminary schedules called for design criteria contracts within three months. Debus moved to secure approval of the mobile concept at the Office of Manned Space Flight Management Council meeting on 29 May 1962. He acknowledged that launch rates were at a break-even point and cost savings no longer a major factor. LC-39, however, offered distinct technical advantages. Milton Rosen accepted Debus's arguments, but thought there should be further study of the disadvantages. Robert Gilruth expressed MSC's concern that LC-39 would not provide servicing of the spacecraft at the pad. Von Braun then interjected a telling point. The fundamental question, the Huntsville director stated, was whether they believed "a space program is here to stay, and will continue to grow." The Council responded with approval of Debus's plan.[48]

Despite the vote of confidence, the issue reappeared at the 22 June Management Council meeting. Rosen warned that LC-39 would be three years in the making and any slippage would delay the launch program. He recommended modifying the complex to allow for on-pad assembly. As a compromise Debus suggested transporting the arming tower to the pad for assembly purposes or spacecraft checkout.† Although Holmes requested more information pending a final decision, the mobile concept was a virtual certainty. Rosen had told Debus on the 15th not to worry about further questioning; Headquarters was going along with LC-39.[49]

---

*The term *pacing item* refers to a facility or equipment that is essential to a program, with little or no margin for delay. During the Apollo program different items earned this distinction. In the spring of 1962, the Mississippi Test Facility (where the C-5's first stage would be test-fired) and LC-39 were pacing items.

†Most members of LOD wanted a stationary arming tower midway between the assembly building and the pad. Ernest Briel's 31 July notes from a Petrone meeting include the statement, "an AT arming tower *NOT* to be used as service structure." Because of weight constraints, the service arms on the launcher-transporter could not provide 360° of access to the spacecraft. MSC's insistence on this capability eventually forced LOD to accept a mobile service structure (see pp. 130, 163).

June 1962 brought other Apollo decisions, including selection of lunar-orbital rendezvous (LOR) for the mission mode. NASA had studied the issue since the late 1960s. At first, either direct flight with a Nova or earth-orbital rendezvous (EOR) with Saturns seemed likely choices; but by May 1962, debate had narrowed to EOR versus LOR. Lunar-orbital enthusiasts at Langley, Houston, and Headquarters stressed the advantage of landing on the moon with a light vehicle specially designed for the mission. MSFC engineers continued to support EOR for practical as well as technical reasons: much of their workload would disappear if EOR was dropped. An impasse seemed likely, until von Braun announced his support for the lunar-orbital mode on 7 June. The decision was brought on by the influence of LOR's technical advantages, assurances that Headquarters would compensate MSFC with new tasks, and concern for the Apollo program. In explaining the about-face to his Huntsville team, von Braun stated: "If we do not make a clear-cut decision on the mode very soon, our chances of accomplishing the first lunar expedition in this decade will fade rapidly."[50] With Houston and Huntsville in agreement, the matter was pretty well settled. The Management Council and Administrator Webb approved LOR within a month. At its 22 June meeting the Management Council also endorsed immediate development of a lunar excursion module and an intermediate rocket, the Saturn IB. The new member of the Saturn family would use an uprated S-I stage (first stage of the Saturn C-1) and the new S-IVB stage for testing the Apollo spacecraft in earth orbit.[51]

The summer's weekly staff reports to Debus reveal the breadth of LC-39 activities. On 5 July Karl Sendler reported on the telemetry studies of the Manned Lunar Landing Program (MLLP) Instrumentation Planning Group. Two weeks later the group organized an eight-man task force to determine LC-39's requirements for weather data. The continuing dispute over LC-39 siting was a frequent topic of Colonel Bidgood's Facilities Office reports. On 5 July Bidgood notified Debus that a site proposal was ready for the MLLP Joint Facilities Planning Group; it called for placing the complex near the ocean. Although the Air Force no longer insisted that NASA place LC-39 north along the Mosquito Lagoon, it wanted the complex 4.5 kilometers inland. Air Force officials believed that location would provide space for additional launch complexes at a later date. The matter dragged on for six more weeks before the Air Force Missile Test Center yielded. Bidgood reported two major achievements on 23 August: Air Force concurrence on siting and initiation of criteria work for LC-39.[52]

The Launch Support Equipment Office began a study of the mobile arming tower in June, following Debus's offer to investigate the matter for the Management Council. Poppel announced the study's completion in his

16 August report: "it is not only feasible but highly recommended since this added flexibility to the C-5 complex can be achieved with little increase in cost." The flexibility concerned the use of the mobile arming tower to erect upper stages at the pad if necessary. The study rejected using the 116-meter tower to erect the booster, since the addition of a huge crane would impose severe structural problems.[53]

LC-39 was the sole topic at a meeting of the Launch Operations Working Group on 18–19 July that brought together 113 representatives from LOD, MSFC, and the launch vehicle contractors: Boeing, North American, Douglas, and General Electric. In Petrone's absence, Phillip Claybourne and William Clearman chaired the sessions. Claybourne's welcoming remarks described the role of the working group panels, teams that were to be organized later in the day to exchange information and accomplish specific tasks. Clearman followed with a general description of LC-39.

Following Donald Buchanan's report on the crawler and launcher-umbilical tower, Chester Wasileski briefed the meeting on propellant systems. Although LC-39 would involve no new propellants, loading requirements would dwarf LC-34 operations. Each pad would need storage for approximately 3 407 000 liters of LOX, 946 000 liters of RP-1, 2 460 000 liters of LH_2, and 946 000 liters of LN_2. Propellant loading rates would be:

S-IC	38 000 liters per minute of	LOX
	7 600	RP-1
S-II	19 000	LOX
	38 000	LH_2
S-IVB	3 800	LOX
	15 200	LH_2

LOC planned to automate propellant loading on all Saturn launch sites; controls in the launch control center would operate through the data link on the launcher. A compression-converter facility near the VAB would provide gases to charge high-pressure spheres on the launch vehicle and to keep certain ground support equipment free of moisture and dust. Wasileski proposed redundant sensors in the loading system and asked the panels for further comment.

Robert Moore and Bradley Downs of the Firing-Equipment Design Group (Launch Support Equipment Office) described the seven arms of the launcher-umbilical tower that would provide personnel access and support electrical cables, propellant lines, and pneumatic lines to the launch vehicle. Prior to the rocket's first motion, five arms would disconnect and begin withdrawal. Arms 4 and 6, providing hydrogen vent ducting and services to the S-II stage and the instrumentation unit, would retract at liftoff. Moore asked the groups responsible for individual stage operations to reexamine their service needs. Lengthy but inconclusive debate followed on a remote reconnect capability for aborted missions.[54]

With this meeting, LC-39 was just about ready to go. After it won final approval, Marvin Redfield, co-author of the NASA Headquarters report that had criticized the mobile concept, congratulated his friend, Rocco Petrone, but insisted the price would far exceed the launch team's estimates. Petrone accepted the challenge, wagering a case of Scotch that costs would not run over $500 million. The bill eventually came to about $500 million despite a significant reduction in LC-39 components, e.g., four high bays instead of six in the VAB. When Petrone insisted he had won the bet, Redfield grudgingly agreed to pay, but only one bottle at a time. On the occasion of the first payment, Petrone, either doubting the fairness of his victory or influenced by the good cheer, absolved Redfield of further payments.[55]

The General Accounting Office was less jovial about the $500 million price tag. A report in 1967 would imply that LC-39 had been a costly mistake, a conclusion that NASA would strenuously oppose (pp. 432–34).

Page intentionally left blank

7

THE LAUNCH DIRECTORATE BECOMES AN OPERATING CENTER

Growing Responsibilities at the Cape

By the time Apollo 11 put Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin on the moon, Apollo field operations were divided among three NASA installations. Marshall Space Flight Center supervised the development of the launch vehicle, the Manned Spacecraft Center in Houston the spacecraft, and Kennedy Space Center assembled, tested, and launched the combination. The actual construction was done by contractors from all over the United States; but generally speaking, management responsibility was divided as described above, with fairly well defined boundaries and a minimum duplication of effort.

This neat packaging was not achieved in a single bound, but was the result of an evolutionary process accompanied by much discussion, some backing and filling, and a few attempts at empire building. A main step in the process was the elevation of the Launch Operations Directorate (LOD), previously part of Marshall, into the Launch Operations Center (LOC) on a par with Marshall. This was a good two years in the doing, during which time Debus had to meet increased responsibilities with limited manpower and authority. Mindful of his difficulties, his superiors at Marshall proposed in the spring of 1961 to expand LOD's organization to include new offices for program control, financial management, purchasing and contracting, construction coordination, and management services. With President Kennedy's message of 25 May 1961, it became obvious that the manned lunar landing program was going to be a very big project and that NASA's launch team at Cape Canaveral would need corresponding status.

General Ostrander requested Debus to develop organizational proposals; he responded on 12 June 1961 with three plans. The first called essentially for the maintenance of the status quo, the second for a launch organization providing administrative support to launch teams from the NASA centers, and the third for an independent Launch Operations Center to serve all of NASA.* All three called for a single point of contact at the Atlantic Missile Range, an in-house capability for monitoring launch operations, and an independent status in master planning, purchasing and contracting, and financial and personnel management. Debus talked over these proposals with von Braun who in turn discussed them with Ostrander.[1]

The three proposals show Debus leaning over backward to avoid any suggestion of officiousness. He was equally convinced, however, that a successful launch program required an experienced team with full powers at the launch site. He set out this thought some six weeks later in a letter to Eberhard Rees, the Marshall Space Flight Center Deputy Director for Research and Development. The letter was occasioned, not by the reorganization proposals, but by a delay in the assembly of the SA-1 booster at Huntsville. Debus agreed to let the work be finished at the Cape, but made it plain that this set no precedent. Writing to Rees, Debus noted that any MSFC division might prefer to send engineers to conduct the related part of the launch operations. Von Braun had tried this at White Sands and found it wanting. With the Redstone, a permanent launch team had been set up as an integral part of the Huntsville organization, and this had worked well the past nine years. Now, given the complexity of the Saturn, it was the only satisfactory approach.

Placing the responsibility for launch checkout with the Huntsville offices that had designed and built the Saturn could only lead to difficulty. If similar arrangements were made with all booster, stage, and payload contractors, the situation would become impossible.[2] Agreeing to the exception for SA-1, Debus insisted that henceforth Huntsville hardware be shipped in as complete form as possible, and after Huntsville's final inspection. At the Cape, "all participants, including contractor personnel, must be supervised and coordinated by one launch agency." Debus stated that LOD would perform any function "that has been or will become a standard requirement at the launch site."[3]

In the meantime, the Deputy Director of Administration at Marshall Space Flight Center, D. M. Morris, recommended to NASA Headquarters that the Launch Operations Directorate have greater authority and stronger support services under its control. Following on this, Harry H. Gorman, Associate Deputy Director for Administration at Huntsville, wrote Seamans at NASA Headquarters on 26 September 1961 recommending greater financial and administrative independence for LOD. Gorman noted that the distance between Huntsville and Cape Canaveral was producing a communications gap, that LOD's dependence on Marshall impaired efficiency, and that the increased work load falling on LOD and other NASA elements at the Atlantic Missile Range dictated a larger role for LOD. Gorman suggested that LOD assume responsibility for services still performed for it by Marshall offices in programming, scheduling, procurement, and contracting; that it increase its personnel in some existing support elements; and that it lease off-base facilities near Cocoa Beach to house such activities as financial management, procurement and contracts, and construction coordination. He urged the immediate hiring of 75 more employees.[4]

---

*While the public has always tended to identify NASA with manned spaceflight, NASA had from its beginning several unmanned projects. These were managed by such centers as Lewis, Langley, and Ames; in some cases, the vehicles were launched from Canaveral. Completely independent of Marshall, such launches complicated matters for LOD.

The day following Gorman's letter, Debus completed a second position paper on "Launch and Spaceflight Operations." He noted "the current expansion of NASA activities, the magnitude and complexity of future space programs, the requirement for rapid overall growth potential and the resulting need for clear lines of responsibility and authority"; and he called for a "competent organization of NASA elements."[5] Debus evaluated two plans in a third proposal on 10 October 1961. The first would put administration and management, general technical and scientific fields, facility planning and construction, checkout and launch, and operational flight control under a single launch organization reporting to NASA Headquarters. The second would leave operational flight control and some aspects of checkout and launch under the individual launching divisions of their parent centers.[6]

Von Braun supported the first alternative: "This study brings the NASA-wide launch operations problem very well in focus," he wrote. "I consider Plan I the superior plan for the accomplishment of NASA's objectives [manned lunar landing in this decade] but its implementation will require a ringing appeal to all centers for NASA-wide team spirit in lieu of parochial interest."[7] Seamans insisted that personnel at Headquarters give major attention to the matter in the next two weeks. Debus was later of the opinion that Seamans initiated the entire discussion.[8]

Von Braun was correct in assuming that raising LOD to the status of a separate center would meet serious objections from vested interests in NASA. Harry Gorman's arguments from the administrative standpoint were not seconded in the engineering divisions. Eberhard Rees, for one, leaned against separation; if it should prove necessary, he preferred the alternate plan, wherein a Launch Operations Center would control administration and management, general technical and scientific fields, and facility planning and construction, with the launching divisions of the various centers still controlling their flight operations and some aspects of checkout and launching. Most of von Braun's staff opposed the separation of the launch team from

Huntsville. There was some feeling that they would be working in the factory, while the Debus launch team in Florida would enjoy the action and the spotlight. Heated debates continued through a cold winter.[9]

The Argument for Independent Status

NASA meanwhile began construction of the Manned Spacecraft Center at Houston in late 1961. This center had its own launch team, first called the Preflight Operations Division, later the Florida Operations Group, with launch responsibility for the current manned space program, Mercury. The entire relationship of LOD with the Manned Spacecraft activities in Houston and Florida needed definition. Would Houston or LOD control Apollo launches? Debus believed "that there would be serious problems if the Manned Spacecraft Center thought the launch group was always being loyal to another Center [Huntsville]. What was needed was a launch Center that could be loyal to any Center." To summarize the case for an independent launch center: the Florida operation had to be on a par with Huntsville and Houston; it had to have direct access to Washington rather than through channels at Huntsville; and it had to be the one NASA point of contact with the Air Force Missile Test Center—if it was going to provide launch facilities for Apollo in an efficient and timely manner.[10]

NASA announced on 7 March 1962 that it would establish the center as an independent installation. Debus continued in charge, reporting to the Director of Manned Space Flight, D. Brainerd Holmes, at NASA Headquarters. Theoretically the new Launch Operations Center (LOC) would serve all NASA vehicles launched from Cape Canaveral and consolidate in a single official all of NASA's operating relationships with the Air Force Commander at the Atlantic Missile Range. NASA replaced Marshall's Launch Operations Directorate with a new Launch Vehicle Operations Division (LVOD) in Alabama. However, Debus would be director of both LOC and the new LVOD and Dr. Hans Gruene would also wear "two hats" as deputy director.[11] The creation of the Launch Vehicle Operations Division under Marshall, but with Debus as director, may seem to reflect a reluctance to grant the Launch Operations Center independent status, but was more likely intended to ensure that the Debus team stayed in charge of the Saturn flight program regardless of its tenure at LOC.

According to John D. Young, NASA Deputy Director of Administration, LVOD was "an interim arrangement to provide additional time to carefully consider to what extent, if any, the electrical, electronic, mechanical, structural, and propulsion technical staffs of the present Launch Operations Directorate of MSFC should be divided between MSFC and LOC."[12] Debus saw the matter in a somewhat different light: "LVOD was strictly a compromise measure to overcome the problem within von Braun's own group. All of his basic contracts were on incentive fees . . ."; the stage contractors "complained and not unjustifiably, 'We pamper stages through here [Huntsville], then give them to a crew at LOC who may louse it up.' " Mistakes made at the Cape could therefore reduce a contractor's payment.[13]

Debus and Marshall's Deputy Director Eberhard Rees, acting for von Braun, signed an interim separation agreement between the Launch Operations Center and the Marshall Space Flight Center on 8 June 1962. Of the 666 persons assigned to launch operations for the fiscal year 1962, 375 went to the Launch Operations Office. Independence Day for the Launch Operations Center was 1 July 1962. This arrangement was to hold until the following year when reorganization plans within both NASA centers transferred the Launch Vehicle Operations Division from Marshall to the LOC on 24 April 1963.[14]

New Captains at the Cape

The Gorman recommendations and burgeoning activity on the Cape sparked an increase in the Debus forces in 1961, well before they became the Launch Operations Center. Lewis Melton, reporting for duty in July 1961, initiated a rapid expansion of LOD's Financial Management Office, which entailed a move to "off-Cape" office space in the cities of Cape Canaveral and Cocoa Beach.[15]

On the recommendation of Maj. Raymond Clark and Richard P. Dodd, Debus requested the assignment of Capt. A. G. Porcher, of the Army Ordnance Missile Center Test Support Office at AMR, to LOD. Debus appointed Porcher LOD liaison officer with the Corps of Engineers for construction matters. Clark served in a similar liaison capacity between LOD and the Air Force. A 1945 West Point graduate, Clark had been with the Missile Firing Laboratory in the mid-1950s and was reassigned to the NASA Test Support Office in July 1960. He served on the test support team that represented both the Air Force Missile Test Center and NASA. The Debus-Davis study brought his skills to the fore. During the next two years he would represent LOD in a series of complicated negotiations with the Air Force.[16]

In January 1962, the Launch Operations Directorate established its own procurement office—a task previously handled under the supervision of

Marshall. Gerald Michaud, the first procurement officer, handled contracts for \$30 000 000 worth of support equipment for launch complex 37. Michaud, like Melton, had to seek off-Cape office space.[17]

The Materials and Equipment Branch of LOD had worked under the supervision of the Technical Materials Branch at Huntsville until the beginning of 1962, when a joint supply operating agreement went into effect. By June 1962 the LOD branch was operating as an independent NASA supply activity.[18]

In this same period, Debus set up the Heavy Space Vehicle Systems Office with Maj. Rocco Petrone as director. Petrone's responsibility for the Saturn C-5 included facilities, operations, and site master planning. In the third area, he co-chaired, with an Atlantic Missile Range representative, the Master Planning Review Board that regulated the development of Merritt Island and ensured that site development met NASA requirements.

The direct supervision of facilities on LC-39 fell to Col. Clarence Bidgood, a West Point graduate with a master of science degree in engineering from Cornell, and a survivor of Bataan and four years in a Japanese prison camp. Described as a "no-foolishness hard worker," Bidgood had packed a variety of experience into his postwar years that included flood control work and construction of U.S. airfields in England. He began working for LOD in November 1961 and took charge of the Facilities Office in February 1962. Bidgood turned his attention in his initial year to three major functions: the acquisition of real estate on Merritt Island and the False Cape; organization of the Facilities Office for the criteria design and construction of LC-39; and the establishment of requirements for LC-39 by the various individuals, firms, panels, and centers involved in Apollo.[19]

The Launch Support Equipment Office under Theodor Poppel and Lester Owens, Deputy Director, retained the design responsibilities for vehicle-associated support equipment. This group remained at Huntsville in order to coordinate the work of designing and launching the vehicles. At von Braun's suggestion, Debus took Poppel's group under his jurisdiction.[20]

In the enlargement of its staff after 1 July 1962, the Launch Operations Center gave priority to individuals who had performed as administrators in similar areas for LOD; and, for other positions of importance, to Marshall personnel with appropriate skills. Associate Director for Administration and Services C. C. Parker, who had served as Management Office Chief at Anniston Ordnance Depot before joining LOD, interviewed the prospective section chiefs and Debus made his final choice from the candidates recommended by Parker.[21]

As a result of internal growth and the acquisition of the LVOD personnel in May, LOC's personnel strength rose almost 400% between July

1962 and July 1963. More offices were forced to seek quarters in the cities of Cape Canaveral and Cocoa Beach. In the case of Procurement and Contracts, the move from military security at the Cape allowed easier access for outside contacts. The location of Public Affairs at Cocoa Beach facilitated relations with Patrick Air Force Base, the contractor offices, and the press.[22]

Most Launch Operations Center personnel remained on the Cape, where LOD had been a tenant. Some NASA elements continued as tenants in Air Force space for several years. In this period many offices had to get by with inadequate facilities, which impaired morale and reduced productivity. George M. Hawkins, chief of Technical Reports and Publications, pointed out that four technical writers worked in an unheated machinery room below the umbilical tower at LC-34. At one time pneumonia had hospitalized one writer and the others had heavy colds. When it came time to install machinery there, they urgently requested assignment to a trailer. Russell Grammer, head of the Quality Assurance Office, established operations in half a trailer at Cape Canaveral with seven employees. When the staff grew to 13 times that size, his force had to expand into other quarters. The Quality Assurance people worked in such widely scattered places as an old restaurant on the North Cape Road, a former Baptist church on the Titusville Road, a residence on Roberts Road, and numerous trailers.[23]

Organizing the Launch Operations Center

Recognizing the magnitude of Apollo, NASA Headquarters in late 1962 and early 1963 relieved the manned spaceflight centers of certain other responsibilities. Management of the Atlas-Centaur and Atlas-Agena was transferred from Marshall to Lewis Research Center. In February NASA released LOC from responsibility for launching these vehicles and gave it to the Goddard Space Flight Center's Field Projects Branch.[24]

As NASA's agent, LOC generally furnished support and services for all launches, manned and unmanned, conducted by the launch divisions from NASA's several centers. But in its chief role as a launch agent for the Office of Manned Space Flight, its principal business during this period was the planning and designing of launch facilities for Apollo. On 10 January 1963 NASA announced that LOC was responsible for overall planning and supervision of the integration, test, checkout, and launch of all Office of Manned Space Flight vehicles at Merritt Island and the Atlantic Missile Range, except the Mercury Project and some elements of the Gemini Project. What the phrase, "all OMSF vehicles," fails to reveal is that the only other authorized manned spaceflight project at the time was Apollo. Almost all of the work at Houston and Marshall in 1963 was devoted to the manned space program. At the Launch Operations Center, most of the planning and the new construction work was also for manned spaceflight, and this was increasingly Apollo.[25]

Indeed, the first task was to organize for the construction effort. The Webb-McNamara Agreement of January 1963 (see p. 105) had helped clear the air by firmly establishing NASA's jurisdiction over Merritt Island. The question of whether LOC was to become a real operating agency or a logistics organization supporting NASA's other launch teams was still unresolved. The Manned Spacecraft Center's Florida Operations, for instance, still received technical direction from Houston. Debus had no place in this chain of command. The transfer of launch responsibility for the Centaur and Agena vehicles from LOC to Goddard Space Flight Center, while a step toward LOC's concentration on Apollo responsibilities, was a step away from centralization of launch operations. The Launch Vehicle Operations Division remained under Huntsville until April. Several areas of overlapping jurisdiction called for resolution. A few section chiefs were certain that they were best qualified to determine their own functions. As Colonel Bidgood said, "Everybody was trying to get a healthy piece of the action."[26]

The publication of basic operating concepts in January 1963 made LOC responsible "for construction of NASA facilities at the Merritt Island or AMR launch site."[27] The LOC Director was empowered to appoint a manager for each project and, in conjunction with other participating agencies, write a project development plan. Debus was also required to prepare a "basic organization structure" for the approval of Headquarters.

Debus submitted the required proposal early in 1963. It called for five principal offices: Plans and Project Management, Instrumentation, Facilities Engineering and Construction, Launch Support Equipment Engineering, and Launch Vehicle Operations.[28] As so often under Debus, the changes in title did not involve changes in personnel. To the five key posts, he assigned men for whom the new responsibilities would be continuations of their earlier tasks—Petrone for Plans and Projects, Sendler for Instrumentation, Bidgood for Construction, Poppel for Launch Support, and Gruene for Launch Vehicle Operations. These staff elements carried out the major functions of management, design, and construction of launch facilities and support equipment for the Apollo program. Other staff elements (public affairs, safety, quality assurance, and test support) dealt largely with institutional matters. NASA Daytona Beach Operations, established on 23 June 1963 to represent NASA at the General Electric plant there, made up another element reporting directly to the Center Director. On 24 April 1963, Deputy Administrator Dryden approved LOC's proposed reorganization—except for the Daytona Beach office, which was approved subsequently.[29]

Under Petrone were two Saturn project offices, one responsible for the early Saturn vehicles, the other for a larger Saturn to come. Both offices were to plan, coordinate, and evaluate launch facilities, equipment, and operations for their respective rockets. Another office was responsible for projects requiring coordination between two or more programs. Other elements of Petrone's staff were responsible for resources management, a reliability program, scheduling, and range support. These responsibilities, especially for resources management and coordination, gave Petrone substantive control over the development of facilities, a control he showed no reluctance to exercise fully. *Spaceport News*, the LOC house organ that began publication in December 1962, described the role that Petrone would play in the new organization in its 1 May 1963 edition. As Assistant Director for Plans and Programs Management, the paper declared, Petrone

> will function as the focal point for the management of all program activities for which LOC has responsibility. In this capacity, he is responsible for the program schedule and for determining that missions and goals are properly established and met. He will formulate and coordinate general policies and procedures for the LOC contractors to follow at the AMR and MILA [Merritt Island Launch Area].[30]

Bidgood organized his division along functional lines, with titles clearly descriptive of responsibilities—a Design and Engineering Branch, Construction Branch, and a Master Planning and Real Estate Office. Most of Bidgood's personnel came from the former Facilities Office, which he had organized several months earlier around a nucleus of R. P. Dodd's Construction Branch, the Cape-based segment of Poppel's former office. He recruited others from such agencies as the Corps of Engineers Ballistic Missile Division in California.[31] Bidgood was shortly to retire from the Army and to relinquish his LOC post to another Corps of Engineers officer, the less outspoken but equally competent Col. Aldo H. Bagnulo.

Poppel organized the four branches of his division along equipment responsibility lines, extending in each case from design through completion of construction. One branch was responsible for launch equipment (primary pneumatic distribution systems, firing equipment, and erection and handling equipment); one for launcher-transporter systems; a third for propellant systems; and a fourth for developing concepts for future launch equipment.

Something more should perhaps be said to differentiate the last two divisions. In terms of specific launch facilities and ground support equipment, Bidgood was responsible for what was commonly, if inadequately, called brick-and-mortar construction: the vehicle assembly building, launch control center, launch pads, and crawlerway. Poppel supervised construction of the launcher-umbilical tower, crawler-transporters, and propellant and high-pressure-gas systems. Later, the arming tower was assigned to Bidgood. With the exception of the arming tower (later modified and redesignated the mobile service structure), Bidgood's area largely involved conventional construction. Poppel's responsibilities were more esoteric; no one could readily formulate plans and specifications in what were new areas of construction. The two divisions also operated differently. Bidgood's division used the Corps of Engineers for all contract work, from design through construction to installation of equipment. Poppel's division depended on commercial procurement and contracting. Although Bidgood and Poppel, like Petrone, reported directly to Debus, and although the organization chart showed no link between divisions, the functional statements in the "LOC Organization Structure" manual assigned responsibility for coordination of launch facilities to Petrone.[32]

The reorganization also clarified the relationship of Launch Vehicle Operations personnel to MSFC and LOC. Although assigned to LOC for operational and administrative matters, they remained under Marshall's technical direction for engineering. The "development operational loop" that had characterized the old MSFC-LOC relationship remained. This loop implemented the propositions that no launch team could be effective unless it participated in the development of a space vehicle from its inception, and that planners had to consider operational factors early in the design of the space vehicle and maintain this awareness throughout the development cycle. In representing Marshall contractors at Merritt Island and the Atlantic Missile Range, the Marshall Director retained authority to modify any responsibilities delegated to LOC, to interpret Marshall contracts for LOC and the contractors, and to direct the contractors with respect to contract implementation, including instances when disagreements might arise between LOC and the Marshall stage contractors.[33]

During these months, LOC spawned a great number of boards, committees, panels, teams, and working groups. In September 1963, C. C. Parker, Assistant Director for Administration, undertook to delineate the spheres and activities of these groups. Six panels dealt with facilities, propellants, electricity, tracking, launching, and firing. Committees handled incentive awards, grievances, suggestions, honors, automatic data processing, and five distinct areas of safety. Boards oversaw property, architect-engineering selection, and project stabilization. The personnel of these groups rarely overlapped, as distinctive disciplines required expertise of a particular nature. A significant team, by way of example, was the LOC MILA Planning Group, appointed by Debus on 6 February 1963 under the chairmanship of Raymond Clark. It looked into unsolved issues in relations with the Air Force Missile

Test Center, recommended divisions of responsibility among various elements of LOC, and established priorities to assure cooperation.[34] The informality of early operations on the Cape was disappearing in the growth of a mighty endeavor.

In the midst of all this organizational activity, one of the most able men to come to the Cape arrived as Deputy Director of the Launch Operations Center in early spring of 1963. Albert F. Siepert had been NASA's Director of Administration since its beginning in 1958. This 47-year-old Midwesterner had played a key role in the basic organization of NASA and in arranging the transfer of the von Braun team from the Army. Previous to his work with NASA, he had won the Health, Education, and Welfare Department's distinguished service award. A fine administrator and a great extemporaneous speaker—he could organize his thoughts in a few moments and speak without hesitation or repetition—he wanted to work in the field and requested a transfer to one of the centers. At LOC, he became responsible for the organization and overall management of center operations and had the further responsibility of maintaining good relations with local communities, the Air Force, the Corps of Engineers, other NASA field centers, and various contractors.[35]

"Grand Fenwick" Overtakes the U.S. and USSR

In spite of the launchings at the Cape, the development of the Launch Operations Center, the agreements between the Air Force and NASA, the preliminaries for the construction of launch complex 39 and the industrial area on Merritt Island, not all was ultraserious. The *Spaceport News* for 20 June 1963 carried this interesting headline: "The Duchy of 'Grand Fenwick' Takes Over the Space Race Lead." The article told of the premiere of a British movie, a space satire called *Mouse on the Moon*, at the Cape Colony Inn on the previous Friday. Distributed by United Artists, the movie was a sequel to the popular *The Mouse That Roared* of several years before.

The Mouse That Roared had centered around the attempt of the Duchy of Grand Fenwick, a mythical principality near the Swiss-French border, to wage an unsuccessful war against the United States in the hope that the United States would pour millions of dollars into the nation for rehabilitation. Surprisingly, the war turned out to be a huge success for the Grand Fenwick Expeditionary Force. It captured a professor at Columbia University, a native of Grand Fenwick, who had invented the "bomb to end all bombs." By threatening to use the bomb on all the major nations of the world, Grand Fenwick brought universal peace.

In the sequel, *Mouse on the Moon*, Grand Fenwick, faced again with a disaster in its main industry, wine-making, requested a half-million-dollar loan from the United States. Instead the United States granted a million dollars to further Grand Fenwick's space program and show America's sincere desire for international cooperation in space. Not to be outdone, Russia gave one of its outmoded Vostoks. The scientists of Grand Fenwick found that the errant wine crop could fuel this rocket. They sent the spacecraft to the moon, beating both the American and Russian teams. The U.S. and USSR spacecraft landed shortly after the Duchy's. In hasty attempts to get back first, both Russians and Americans failed to rise from the lunar surface. As a result, Grand Fenwick's Vostok had to rescue both crews.

The British stars, James Moran Sterling and Margaret Rutherford, came to Cocoa Beach for the world premiere, as did Gordon Cooper and his family, and many of the dignitaries of the Cape area. For a moment the tensions at the spaceport ceased, and the men caught up in the space race enjoyed a good laugh at their own expense.

Mid-1963: A Time of Reappraisal

"The first and the most truly heroic phase of the space age ended in the summer of 1963," wrote Hugo Black, Brian Silcock, and Peter Dunn in *Journey to Tranquility*. "Two years had passed since President Kennedy's commitment to the moon. They were to the public eye, the years of the astronaut; a period when this strange new breed of man was established as something larger than ordinary life, with gallantry and nerve beyond the common experience." This vision stemmed from the novelty of the situation, the ruggedness of some of the characters among the original seven, and partly, too, from the nature of the Mercury program. "Somehow one man in a capsule, alone in the totally unfamiliar void, more easily acquires heroic status than two or three men facing the ordeal together." The last flight of the Mercury series, by Gordon Cooper in May 1963, the authors concluded, "was the last appearance of the astronaut-as-superman."[36]

That summer marked more than the end of Mercury, as people began to realize for the first time what the moon program really meant. Before that, Kennedy's words had mesmerized them. NASA had gone about its work in an atmosphere of public consent and mute congressional approval. It had decided how to go, where to go, and who should go. The general public accepted the basic lines of the gigantic undertaking. Now the very concept of Apollo began to be questioned. When the great debate that Kennedy had asked for two years before finally got under way, scientists began to see that the space program made distorting demands on skilled manpower, economic resources, and human determination. And they began to ask if it was really worth doing. Did we have to beat the Russians? Was this the most important scientific effort we could perform? Was NASA perhaps traveling too fast? The President himself seemed to have his doubts when he began to suggest joint space efforts with the Russians.

The President had not anticipated NASA in this. In March 1963 the Dryden-Blagonravov agreement on space communications and meteorology suggested that cooperation was feasible.[37] In an address to the United Nations General Assembly on 20 September 1963, President Kennedy stated that joint U.S.-USSR efforts in space had merit, including "a joint expedition to the moon." He wondered why the two countries should duplicate research construction and expenditures. He did not propose a cooperative program, but the exploration of the possibility.[38]

On the next day, Congressman Albert Thomas, Chairman of the House Appropriations Subcommittee on Independent Offices, wrote the President to ask if he had changed his position on the need for a strong U.S. space program. The President replied on 23 September that the nation could cooperate in space only from a position of strength and so needed a strong space program.[39]

Scientists began to talk of other priorities, such as the declining water table in the West and the challenge of oceanography. Lloyd Berkner, to be sure, still took a strong stand for Apollo, chiefly concerning himself with the project as a national motivating force. He had been one of the original promoters of the launching of a satellite during the International Geophysical Year. Berkner's grand vision satisfied many on Capitol Hill. But a majority of scientists still seemed to question the entire program. They felt that the President had proposed the lunar landing in a period of panic that had stemmed from the success of Cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin, first man to orbit the earth, and the disaster of the Bay of Pigs just seven days later. In November 1963, *Fortune* magazine summarized the discussion in an article entitled, "Now It's an Agonizing Reappraisal of the Moon Race." The author, Richard Austin Smith, seconded the President's suggestion to the Soviets for international cooperation instead of the "space race," which Smith had originally advocated. Smith discussed three levels of attack on the manned lunar landing program. First, a practical view held that the investment of money and talent in Apollo was out of proportion to foreseeable benefits. Warren Weaver, Vice-President of the Arthur P. Sloan Foundation, had discussed the many alternatives for educational use of the $20 to $40 billion that the moon race was expected to cost. Second, some scientists who were enthusiastic about space exploration feared that Apollo and other man-in-space programs would swallow up the funds that could go to unmanned programs, which they saw as more efficient gatherers of scientific information. Third, a growing number of scientists had reached the conclusion that no appreciable benefits of any sort would come from the Apollo program. Philip Abelson, Director of the Carnegie Institution's Geophysical Laboratory and editor of *Science*, the journal of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, had recently conducted an informal survey and found an overwhelming number of scientists against the manned lunar project. "I think very little in the way of enduring value is going to come out of putting man on the moon—two or three television spectaculars—and that's that," Abelson stated. "If there is no military value—people admit there isn't—and no scientific value—and no economic return, it will mean we would have put in a lot of engineering talent and research and wound up being the laughing stock of the world." After discussing these three objections to the Apollo program, author Smith admitted that the most persistent justification for the moon race was the matter of prestige. He suggested continuing the space program but abandoning the "crash" timetable in favor of one that placed the moon in its perspective as one way-station in the step-by-step development of space. Apollo with a lower priority could provide benefits, while allowing periodic reappraisal.[40]

Kennedy's Last Visit

On 16 November 1963, President Kennedy made a whirlwind visit to Canaveral and Merritt Island, his third visit in 21 months. Administrator Webb, Dr. Debus, and General Davis greeted the President as his Boeing 707 landed. At launch complex 37 he was briefed on the Saturn program. The President then boarded a helicopter with Debus to view Merritt Island, and flew over the coast line to watch a successful Polaris launching from the nuclear submarine *Andrew Jackson*.[41]

The next week the President died by an assassin's bullet in Dallas. The new President, Lyndon B. Johnson, announced he was renaming the Cape Canaveral Auxiliary Air Force Base and NASA Launch Operations Center as the John F. Kennedy Space Center. With the support of Governor Farris Bryant of Florida, the President also changed the name of Cape Canaveral to Cape Kennedy. The next day he followed up his statement with Executive Order No. 11129. In this he did not mention a new name for the Cape, but did join the civilian and military installations under one name, thus causing some confusion. To clarify the matter, Administrator Webb issued a NASA directive changing the name of the Launch Operations Center to the "John

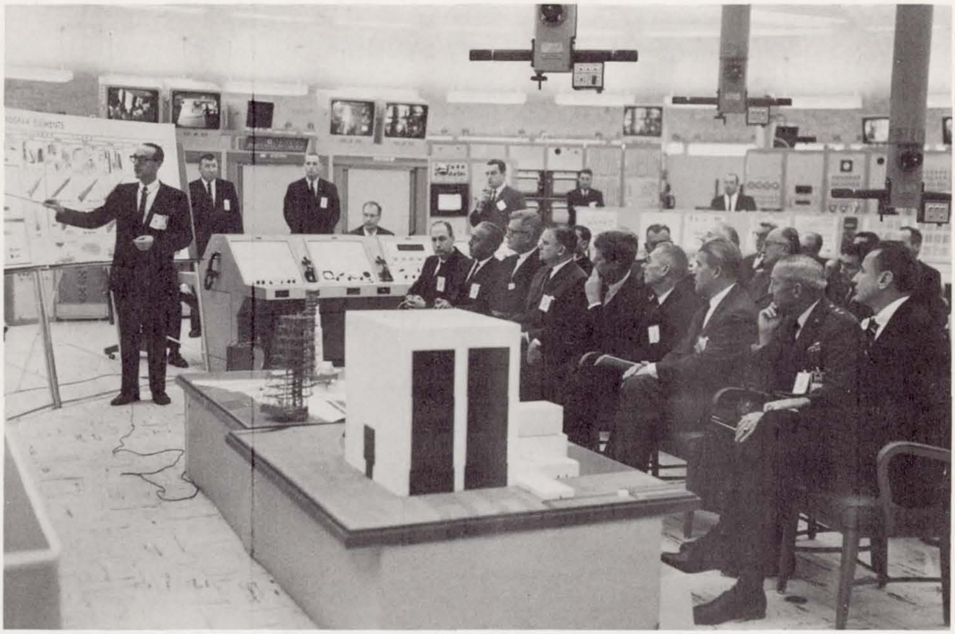


Fig. 35. Dr. George E. Mueller briefing President Kennedy in pad 37 blockhouse, November 1963. Note the periscopes. L to R: George Low, Kurt Debus, Robert C. Seamans, Jr., James E. Webb, Kennedy, Hugh L. Dryden, Wernher von Braun, Maj. Gen. Leighton I. Davis, and Senator George Smathers.

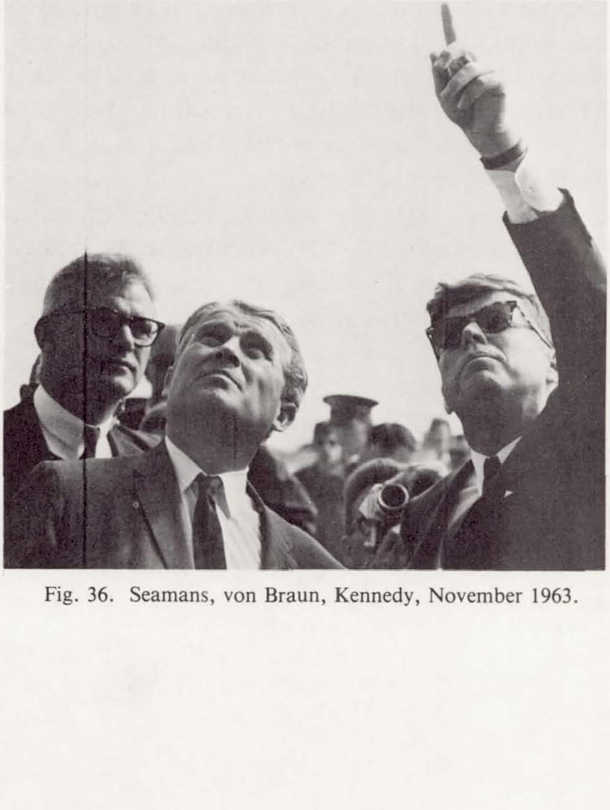


Fig. 36. Seamans, von Braun, Kennedy, November 1963.

F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA,'' and an Air Force general order changed the name of the air base to the ''Cape Kennedy Air Force Station.'' The United States Board of Geographic Names of the Department of the Interior officially accepted the name Cape Kennedy for Cape Canaveral the following year.[42]

People at the Cape seemed to approve the naming of the spaceport as a memorial to President Kennedy. Up to that time, the Launch Operations Center had only the descriptive name. Debus wrote a little later: ''The renaming of our facilities to the John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA, is the result of an Executive Order, but to me it is also fitting recognition to his personal and intense involvement in the National Space Program.''[43] Many in the Brevard area, however, felt that changing the name of Cape Canaveral, one of the oldest place-names in the country, dating back to the earliest days of Spanish exploration, was a mistaken gesture. After a stirring debate in the town council, the city of Cape Canaveral declined to change its name.*

Washington Redraws Management Lines

On 30 October 1963, NASA announced a revision of its Saturn flight program, eliminating manned Saturn I missions and the last 6 of 16 Saturn I vehicles.† NASA discarded the ''building block'' concept and introduced a new philosophy of launch vehicle development. Henceforth the Saturn vehicles would go ''all-up''; that is, developmental flights of Saturn vehicles would fly in their final configuration (without dummy stages).

George E. Mueller, Holmes's replacement as Director of the Office of Manned Space Flight, made the ''all-up'' decision.‡ Mueller came to his new position from a vice-presidency at Space Technology Laboratories. STL provided engineering and technical assistance to the Air Force on its missile programs, including Minuteman, where the all-up concept was first employed. Despite some mishaps—the first attempt to launch a Minuteman from an underground silo at the Cape (30 August 1961) had resulted in a spectacular explosion—Mueller was confident that all-up testing would save NASA many months and millions of dollars on Apollo.[44] At the OMSF

---

*Although efforts to have Congress restore the name ''Canaveral'' to the Cape failed, Governor Reubin Askew signed a bill on 29 May 1973 that returned the name on Florida State maps and documents. On 9 October 1973 the Board of Geographic Names, U.S. Department of the Interior, did likewise for federal usage.

†The Saturn C-1, C-1B, and C-5 were renumbered Saturn I, Saturn IB, and Saturn V in 1963.

‡Pronounced ''Miller.'' Holmes and Webb had clashed over the amount of NASA's funds that Apollo should receive. Holmes wanted to concentrate almost all of NASA's resources on the lunar mission while Webb, supported by Vice President Johnson, preferred a more balanced program that would provide a total space capability including weather, communications, and deep-space satellites. When President Kennedy sided with Webb, Holmes departed in mid-1963.

Management Council Meeting on 29 October 1963, Mueller stressed the need to "minimize 'dead-end' testing [tests involving components or systems that would not fly operationally without major modification] and maximize 'all-up' systems flight tests." Two other aspects of Mueller's all-up concept directly affected the Cape. The OMSF Director wanted *complete* (emphasis is Mueller's) systems delivered at the Cape to minimize KSC's rebuilding of space vehicles. And future schedules would include both delivery dates and launch dates.[45]

Two days after the Saturn announcement, NASA published a major reorganization that combined program and center management by placing the field centers under Headquarters program directors rather than general management. Previously, center directors had received project or mission directives from one or more Headquarters program directors, while direction for general center operations came from Associate Administrator Seamans. Following the 1 November reorganization, NASA gave the responsibility for both overall management of major programs and direction of NASA field installations to three Associate Administrators: Mueller, Raymond Bisplinghoff, and Homer Newell. The three Manned Space Flight Centers—Marshall, Manned Spacecraft, and KSC—would report to Mueller.[46]

KSC realigned its organization on 6 February 1964 to conform with the new NASA structure. At the same time, administrative and technical support functions were separated, in an attempt to strengthen both; and the number of offices reporting directly to Debus was reduced, with more authority and responsibility given to the assistant directors. Henceforth in the Office of Manned Space Flight at NASA Headquarters and in the three Manned Space Flight Centers, the functional breakout in all Apollo Program Management Offices would be: program control—budgeting, scheduling, etc.; systems engineering; testing; operations; and reliability and quality assurance. At KSC Rocco Petrone as Assistant Director for Program Management was also head of the Apollo Program Management Office.[47]

Data Management

On 29 October 1964, the year of the reorganization, in his weekly report to Debus, Petrone stated that his office was preparing a KSC regulation for implementation of the instructions received from Headquarters entitled "Apollo Documentation Instruction NPC [NASA Publication Control] 500-6." This instruction required the following action from each center: identification, review, and approval of all documents required for management of the Apollo program; "an Apollo document index," cataloguing all recurring interorganization documentation used by the Office of Manned Space Flight and the contractors; a "Center Apollo documentation index";

a "documents requirement list," listing all documents required from a contractor—this list would "be negotiated into all major contracts of a half million dollars or over" and would be part of the request for quotation; and a "document requirement description," classifying every item on the "document requirements list," its contents and instructions for preparation.[48]

This instruction, Petrone believed, could provide a strong management tool and eliminate many unnecessary documents. The procedure would classify and catalogue documents and make them readily available to anyone who had immediate need for them. It would force many contractors, especially those who had not previously dealt extensively in government contracts, to clarify in writing the exact nature of their roles in the Apollo program. Throughout the entire program, specific delineation of each phase would bring greater clarity to the respective tasks.

At various times Kennedy Space Center put out Apollo document trees—charts showing the relationship of key documents. On 3 November 1965, for instance, Petrone was to authorize the "KSC Apollo Project Development Plan" under three categories of documents: Apollo Saturn IB Development Operations Plan, Apollo Saturn Program Management and Support Plan, and Apollo Saturn V Development Operations Plan. Within the second category were ten areas of concern to management: program control, configuration management, reliability and quality assurance, vehicle technical support, administrative support, logistics, data management instruction, training, general safety, and instrumentation support. The other two categories had 31 and 44 topics respectively! Typical of those that appeared in both the Saturn I and Saturn V listings were the space-vehicle countdown procedures, the prelaunch checkout plan, and the launch operations plan.[49]

With even its paper work organized, the Debus team had come a long way from the Launch Operations Directorate of 1960 to the John F. Kennedy Space Center of February 1964. Many problems with the Air Force had been resolved, without undue antagonism resulting. Land on Merritt Island had been purchased for the manned lunar landing program, plans laid for launch facilities and an industrial area, and construction had begun. The center had recruited a roster of engineering and administrative personnel and devised a workable organization.

The new organization did not mean an improvement in every respect. It involved the development of a bureaucracy that was incompatible with the informal, personalized approach of the old days on the Cape. Then the engineers had inspected their instruments, worked on them, sometimes built them; they labored with their hands. Now, they monitored contractors.[50] Meetings with department heads and even the Director had been highly informal. Now secretaries scheduled the meetings, each of which required a detailed agenda, and division heads presided with the formality of a college

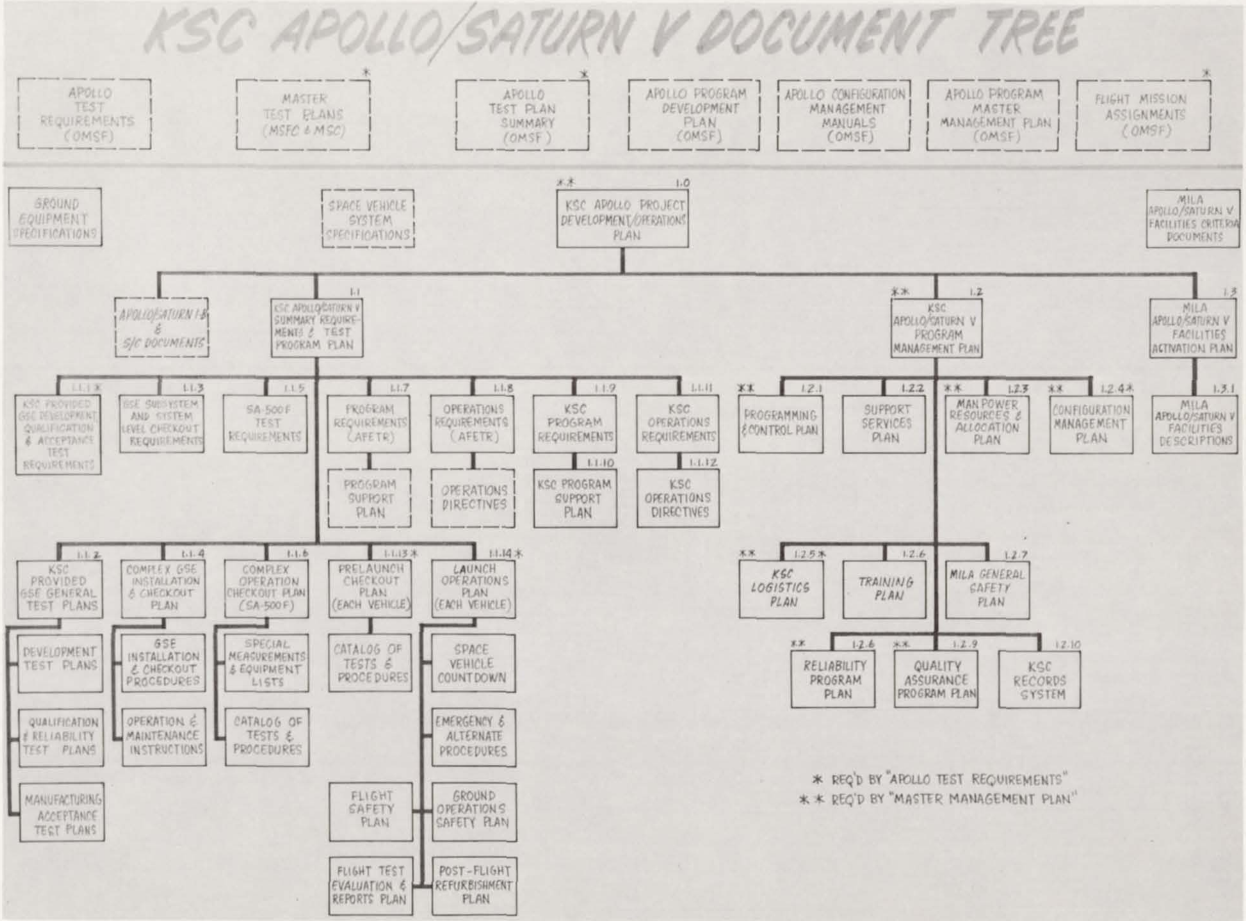

KSC APOLLO/SATURN V DOCUMENT TREE
APOLLO TEST REQUIREMENTS (OMSF)
* MASTER TEST PLANS (MSFC & MSC)
* APOLLO TEST PLAN SUMMARY (OMSF)
APOLLO PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN (OMSF)
APOLLO CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT MANUALS (OMSF)
APOLLO PROGRAM MASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN (OMSF)
* FLIGHT MISSION ASSIGNMENTS (OMSF)
GROUND EQUIPMENT SPECIFICATIONS
SPACE VEHICLE SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS
** 1.0 KSC APOLLO PROJECT DEVELOPMENT/OPERATIONS PLAN
MILA APOLLO/SATURN V FACILITIES CRITERIA DOCUMENTS
APOLLO/SATURN I-B & S/C DOCUMENTS
1.1 KSC APOLLO/SATURN V SUMMARY REQUIREMENTS & TEST PROGRAM PLAN
** 1.2 KSC APOLLO/SATURN V PROGRAM MANAGEMENT PLAN
1.3 MILA APOLLO/SATURN V FACILITIES ACTIVATION PLAN
1.1.1* KSC PROVIDED GSE DEVELOPMENT QUALIFICATION & ACCEPTANCE TEST REQUIREMENTS
1.1.3 GSE SUBSYSTEM AND SYSTEM LEVEL CHECKOUT REQUIREMENTS
1.1.5 SA-500F TEST REQUIREMENTS
1.1.7 PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS (AFETR)
1.1.8 OPERATIONS REQUIREMENTS (AFETR)
1.1.9 KSC PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS
1.1.11 KSC OPERATIONS REQUIREMENTS
PROGRAM SUPPORT PLAN
OPERATIONS DIRECTIVES
1.1.10 KSC PROGRAM SUPPORT PLAN
1.1.12 KSC OPERATIONS DIRECTIVES
** 1.2.1 PROGRAMMING & CONTROL PLAN
1.2.2 SUPPORT SERVICES PLAN
** 1.2.3 MAN POWER RESOURCES & ALLOCATION PLAN
** 1.2.4* CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT PLAN
1.3.1 MILA APOLLO/SATURN V FACILITIES DESCRIPTIONS
1.1.2 KSC PROVIDED GSE GENERAL TEST PLANS
1.1.4 COMPLEX GSE INSTALLATION & CHECKOUT PLAN
1.1.6 COMPLEX OPERATION CHECKOUT PLAN (SA-500F)
1.1.13* PRELAUNCH CHECKOUT PLAN (EACH VEHICLE)
1.1.14* LAUNCH OPERATIONS PLAN (EACH VEHICLE)
DEVELOPMENT TEST PLANS
QUALIFICATION & RELIABILITY TEST PLANS
MANUFACTURING ACCEPTANCE TEST PLANS
GSE INSTALLATION & CHECKOUT PROCEDURES
OPERATION & MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS
SPECIAL MEASUREMENTS & EQUIPMENT LISTS
CATALOG OF TESTS & PROCEDURES
CATALOG OF TESTS & PROCEDURES
SPACE VEHICLE COUNTDOWN
EMERGENCY & ALTERNATE PROCEDURES
FLIGHT SAFETY PLAN
GROUND OPERATIONS SAFETY PLAN
FLIGHT TEST EVALUATION & REPORTS PLAN
POST-FLIGHT REFURBISHMENT PLAN
** 1.2.5* KSC LOGISTICS PLAN
1.2.6 TRAINING PLAN
1.2.7 MILA GENERAL SAFETY PLAN
** 1.2.6 RELIABILITY PROGRAM PLAN
** 1.2.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAM PLAN
1.2.10 KSC RECORDS SYSTEM
* REQ'D BY "APOLLO TEST REQUIREMENTS"
** REQ'D BY "MASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN"

Fig. 37. A document tree for Apollo-Saturn V, December 1964.

dean at a faculty meeting. Because the men who launched rockets were a sentimental crew, there were frequent references to the good old times. But to launch a rocket that would put a man on the moon, they recognized, required an extensive organization.

8

FUNDING THE PROJECT

The Budgetary Process

Always a complicated process for a governmental agency, funding presented new mazes of complexity to the Launch Operations Directorate (LOD) during 1962. The normal budgetary process can be simplified as follows: study of needs for the coming fiscal year (this would ordinarily take place almost 12 months before the start of the fiscal year); presentation to the parent agency, which fits the request into its total proposal; submission to the Bureau of the Budget* for analysis and incorporation into the President's budget request, which is then tendered to Capitol Hill; hearings before congressional committees; discussion and votes within the committees; voting in both houses of Congress; perhaps a joint committee to resolve differences between House and Senate; an authorization act by Congress setting the limit for each item and the total amount; an appropriation act that establishes the actual amount of money the agency will receive; release of funds by the Bureau of the Budget; and, finally, disbursement of funds by the agency to its constituent subdivisions.

This intricate process was further complicated for LOD in 1962. First, the directorate was in process of evolving into an independent center—LOD became the Launch Operations Center (LOC) halfway through 1962 and halfway through this chapter. Second, it had to fend off a flanking attack from the Air Force to retain jurisdiction over the newly acquired land on Merritt Island (see pp. 98–104). Third, it had to plan and budget new facilities and equipment for a still undefined space vehicle to meet the Kennedy deadline of a moon landing "within the decade." And fourth, where it had been dealing in millions of dollars, now it had to request hundreds of millions. While the mobile concept had been accepted, the mode of transport—barge, rail, or crawlerway—had not been determined. In many instances, moreover, LOD had to telescope the work of several years into one, by forecasting the financial implications of a concept from the drawing board to end use.

---

*Office of Management and Budget since 1970.

One should remember, further, that the lunar landing program had not established itself as an unquestioned part of the American scene. It had to be defended continually. "People frequently refer to our program to reach the moon during the 1960s as a national commitment," Lyndon Johnson wrote. "It was not. There was no commitment on succeeding Congresses to supply funds on a continuing basis. The program had to be justified and money appropriated year after year. This support was not always easy to obtain."[1]

The preparation of project documents for budget submissions to Congress began with a statement of anticipated requirements in three categories: construction of facilities, research and development, and administrative operations. The administrative budget was easier to prepare because it changed less from year to year. The construction budget, for building new facilities or modifying existing ones, was the largest of the three for fiscal 1963 and 1964, when some 90% of the moonport construction was funded. Later, when construction neared completion, the research and development and administrative operations accounts rose sharply. This chapter will deal primarily with the budgets for fiscal years 1963 and 1964, and construction of facilities will therefore be the major topic. The LOD staff did most of the work preparing the documents each year, although NASA Headquarters could be counted on to send broad guidance—and frequent proddings.[2]

The budgetary cycle began, usually in the spring, with statements of requirements. This was no easy task since the lunar rocket changed repeatedly, progressing within a year's time from the Saturn C-2 to the C-3, the C-4, and the C-5. No one could foresee all required facilities and ground support equipment during early planning stages, although the facilities were easier to estimate than the support equipment. Such information as was available went to the Budgeting Office, and thence to the Facilities Office. Using the requirements stated by various elements of NASA and contractor firms, the Facilities Office put together the complete project documents.

A project document could cover a single facility or, as in the case of launch complex 39, a group of facilities. NASA policy demanded that each project document contain a complete statement of requirements necessary to begin operations. The document defined the scope of each requirement, including such specific factors as square footage, and justified the requirement and furnished cost estimates. The prescribed format called for five basic paragraphs covering real estate, site preparation, construction, equipment, and design; this was to be supplemented, when appropriate, with siting plans and sketches.[3] Under this procedure, the purchase and improvement of land, as well as the design, construction, and complete equipment of the facility located on it, could be dealt with in one budgetary action. The user, in theory at least, had only to walk up to the door of the completed facility, turn the key, walk in, and begin operations—a procedure that gained the label "turnkey concept."

Normally, the construction of facilities (CoF) budget included only those projects that would cost a quarter of a million dollars or more. Less expensive projects came under either the administrative operations or the research and development budget. The CoF budget funded projects within a given fiscal year—say fiscal 1963 starting 1 July 1962—rather than over several years, but the Directorate could actually spend the money over a longer period. The NASA Administrator had to approve exceptions to this policy, and did so only when the indeterminate nature of a facility rendered estimates on a fully funded basis impractical.[4]

Numerous launch schedules required different contractors and large numbers of individual structures or items of equipment. Not all of these needed to arrive at the same time, nor in the same fiscal year. Some projects had a long lead time. Air conditioning normally had to precede the installation of delicate computer equipment. The scheduling of events was thus a continuous and detailed task.

Planners had the difficult task of estimating costs of new and unprecedented facilities and ground support equipment. No one had built anything like the vertical assembly building or the launcher-umbilical tower (mobile launcher). The result in many instances had to be simply educated guesswork by LOD personnel, contractor engineers, and members of the Army Corps of Engineers who had worked on earlier, smaller projects.

Originally, the Resources Office, under the direction of C. C. Parker, submitted the budgets. But for the manned lunar projects, the governing influence on substantive matters during almost all phases of the programming and budgetary operations in 1962, as well as later, was Rocco Petrone, then chief of the Heavy Vehicle Systems Office. Since Petrone's office had to make sure that facilities and ground support equipment would be ready in time to meet the deadlines, he had an almost proprietary interest in the identification, cost, and justification of requirements.

When assembled into one package, the project documents constituted LOD's fiscal year construction of facilities program. That program was first submitted as a preliminary budget and later, after adjustments, as a final budget. After NASA Headquarters reviewed LOD's program and incorporated it with those from other installations, the total NASA budget went to the Bureau of the Budget, and then to Congress. During committee hearings, representatives from LOD sometimes testified on the requirements and costs specified in the project documents.

After passage of the authorization act, the Launch Operations Directorate usually submitted an updated series of project documents. These balanced the amounts of money authorized against requirements, taking account of changes that had occurred since the submission of the budget. LOD also revised these documents individually whenever changed requirements made adjustment necessary.

Using the information it received from LOD's submissions and relating it to the amount of money authorized by Congress, NASA Headquarters prepared a program that indicated the approximate amount of money it planned to release to LOD. Knowing that, LOD then prepared a Program Operating Plan that set forth its financial procedures and indicated how it proposed to use money within prescribed ceilings. After Congress passed an appropriation act, the Bureau of the Budget apportioned money incrementally and released it to NASA periodically according to phases of development or a time scheme. NASA Headquarters then released money to LOD at intervals for each project. As one official put it, Headquarters "spoon-fed" LOD. It rarely released all the funds appropriated for a project for a specific fiscal year during that year. The periodic method allowed the agency to spread the money as needed over several fiscal years. The process also involved the occasional transfer of funds from one budget line item to another and from one appropriation source to another. Congress placed a limitation on such transfers (usually 5%). NASA Headquarters tended to restrict itself further.[5]

Fiscal 1963

The history of the FY 1963 budget estimates for the construction of launch facilities, begun in late 1960 and continuing well past the beginning of the fiscal year itself, reflects the evolving organization, mission, and operational concepts of the Launch Operations Directorate. The initial estimates predated President Kennedy's announcement of the manned lunar landing program and had their basis in the Saturn C-1 vehicle program. Although these estimates did not include provision for a third Saturn launch complex, LOD suggested that it would need approximately $65 million should the number of launches increase enough to require a third complex. In such case the complex would be a duplicate of LC-37.[6]

In February 1961, NASA Headquarters called for preliminary FY 1963 estimates based on the ten-year plan approved by the Administrator. The LOD portion was to cover only the support services furnished all NASA activities and projects at the Atlantic and Pacific Missile Ranges.[7] The President's 25 May 1961 announcement, however, altered the tempo and direction of planning, as did NASA's subsequent selection of Merritt Island as the site for the manned lunar landing program and the change in plans from the C-2 vehicle to the C-3.[8]

While the Debus-Davis Report of July 1961 (pp. 80, 89) had concerned itself chiefly with the selection of a launch site for Apollo, it proved to be a key document also in fiscal planning. In a series of meetings during the hectic month of July 1961, LOD personnel submitted detailed budgetary figures on their areas of responsibility to Petrone's office. This they were able to do, based on their experience with previous programs. Bertram Greenglass consolidated and qualified the final report; in doing so, he foreshadowed the role he would later play as Petrone's alter ego on program control matters. A 1955 graduate of New York University, Greenglass had begun his association with rocketry at Redstone Arsenal in 1956. His rise from Army Private First Class to a high NASA position by the age of thirty was meteoric.[9] When Petrone moved up to Apollo program management for launch facilities, Greenglass would serve as his comptroller, handling contract management, manpower, and funding.

The decision, announced in August 1961, to acquire new land for the lunar program mandated a revision of the FY 1963 program for construction of facilities. Intensive planning marked the remaining months of 1961. NASA Headquarters applied pressure on LOD, particularly in the form of frequent telephone calls, to produce FY 1963 project documents for budgetary purposes. The Facilities Office, responsible for engineering and construction, prepared the CoF project documents.

While its own planning continued apace during September and October, LOD held frequent meetings with Air Force representatives of the Atlantic Missile Range. Using the Debus-Davis Report as a guide, this joint group developed a range development plan for the lunar program. The plan contained rough cost estimates for support facilities, but did not include requirements for a new Saturn launch complex.

Following these meetings, LOD staff sections held a series of lengthy meetings of their own during November and December. Using the range development plan as a basis, LOD refined the estimates for support facilities and also developed requirements for the advanced Saturn launch complex. Based on the technical data that emerged from both series of meetings, J. F. Burke and C. J. Hall of the Facilities Office developed and evaluated a series of project documents for the FY 1963 CoF program. Bidgood, Parker, and Petrone approved these documents before passing them on to Debus and Huntsville for approval en route to Washington.[10]

On 13 December, LOD gave NASA Headquarters some of the details of its FY 1963 requirements for the advanced Saturn launch complex, based on "the presently known C-3 vehicle," but capable of handling larger vehicles at increased cost. The estimate for the launch complex reached $167 million, exclusive of land acquisition. The proposed complex consisted of three major operating areas: a vertical assembly and checkout area, an intermediate area, and a launch area. Major requirements included a vertical assembly building, a launch control center to be located within the VAB, a transport system, a stationary ordnance arming tower, and two launch pads.[11]

Reorienting itself to the Saturn C-5 program, and considering that NASA had not yet chosen between the three mission modes, LOD in early 1962 redefined its CoF program for the next fiscal year and prepared 14 detailed project documents, with cost estimates and justification for each. All of the facilities and ground support equipment described in the project documents were still in the study or design phase; and much of the technical data furnished in the budget, though based on the best information available at the time, later proved unsatisfactory.

These 14 documents, constituting LOD's total construction of facilities budget for FY 1963, asked for $359 963 000. Eight of these 14 requests, representing 98% of the total, pertained directly to the manned lunar landing program.[12] The largest single item sought $176 550 000 for launch complex 39. LOD stated that it would "provide the necessary capability for launching the Advanced Saturn vehicle."[13] Yet the huge outlay for LC-39 represented only about 40% of the total complex cost, and covered only long-lead-time items that had to be started promptly to meet operation dates.

Subcommittee Hearings at the Cape

NASA's budget went to Congress in February 1962. A month later, the House began hearings. Before the end of March, Congressman Olin E. Teague (D.-Tex.) decided to take his Subcommittee for Manned Space Flight of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics to Florida for on-the-spot hearings on 23 March. Teague wanted to "educate the subcommittee's members" and to "attempt to justify the money that's spent here before Congress."[14] NASA Headquarters and Houston representatives also attended the hearings, along with officers of the Air Force Missile Test Center.

After Debus outlined the Launch Operations Directorate's organization, mission, and operational concepts, Petrone described the FY 1963 funding requirements, together with total facility requirements for the manned lunar landing program. The initial reaction of the subcommittee was that LOD should spread its budget requests over several fiscal years. Some subcommittee members questioned the basis for LOD's budget figures. "You've got a great big ball of money, and it is very easy for someone to come along and cut it, really cut it," one unidentified congressman observed.[15]

The subcommittee members deliberately asked pointed and critical questions to fortify themselves so that they could justify the budget before the appropriations committee later on. In the day-long conference, the subcommittee stressed saving money, and the Directorate emphasized precise scheduling. "I'm sure the Doctor [Debus] feels that we are friendly," Chairman Teague justifiably remarked, for he was one of the most influential friends the space program had in Congress. "We don't want to delay this program one minute. . . . If you can give us your program timing . . . I think we can pave a smooth road to the appropriations committee." But he added, "If we don't take any action, I think the appropriations committee will."[16]

The estimated total cost for LC-39, including FY 1963 and later increments, Petrone told the subcommittee, was $432 million. LOD was trying "to evaluate, not sell," the program. The budget figures were honestly arrived at. "We've got to live with them for years to come," Petrone declared.[17] Program timing was based on schedules that had to be met for the manned lunar landing program and had to be responsive to NASA Headquarters schedules. To the men of LOD, time was critical. To the congressmen, however, the amount of money spent in fiscal 1963 was the critical issue.

Debus explained that the LOD budget was made out against scheduled facility completion dates and launch schedules. These provided a little leeway for some slippage, but on requirements that were pressing, slippage "would hurt very, very much." They wanted launch complex 39 ready by January 1965, Petrone said, since they hoped to launch the first Saturn C-5 in March or April of that year. As an example of facility scheduling, Petrone said that LOD expected the erection of steel for the VAB to begin in March 1963.[18]

The programming of funds tied in so closely to the scheduling of facilities that a slippage in one resulted in a slippage of the other, and the hard fact was that Congress rarely appropriated funds in time for use at the beginning of the fiscal year. In response to a subcommittee question as to when LOD began receiving funds after the fiscal year started, Petrone answered that in the preceding year it had been October. Drawing upon his

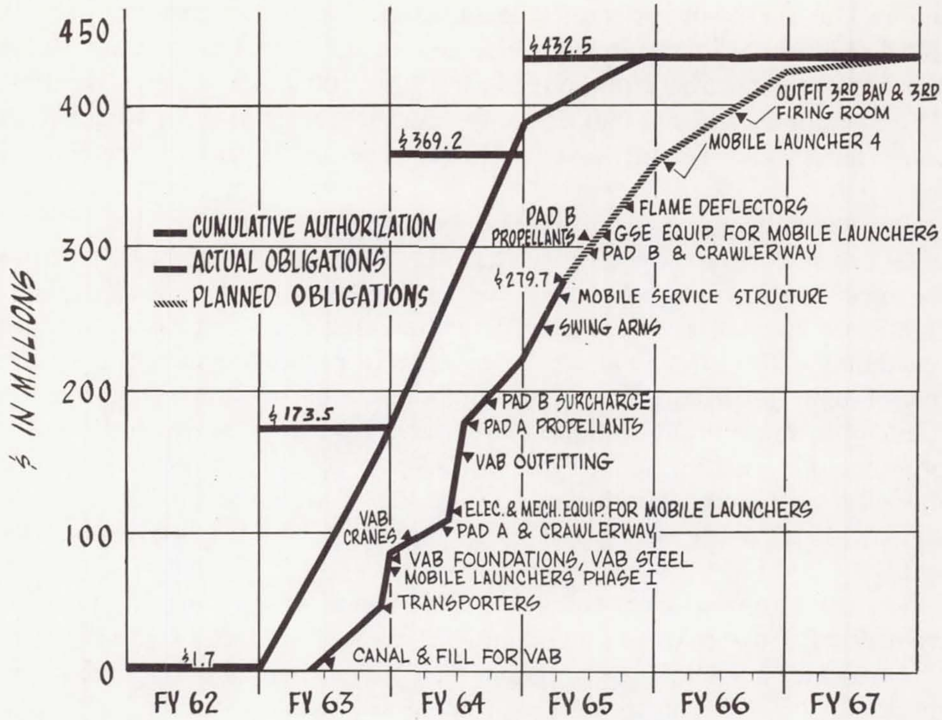


Fig. 38. Cost of launch complex 39, as of November 1964. Authorizations (by Act of Congress) are on the left line. NASA obligations (contracts, purchase orders, etc.) are on the right, with the latter half being predicted.

long experience in construction, Colonel Bidgood added that he had never seen money "hit the market before the first of October." Contingency authority from the Appropriations Committee helped little in new or increased programs, since such authority permitted expenditures only for normal operating costs at constant rates. LOD had to have funds on hand before awarding construction contracts.

The subcommittee asked for a comparison of relative costs between mobile and fixed facilities. As against the $432 million for a mobile complex with four pads and a launch rate of 36 per year, Petrone said, fixed facilities would require nine pads costing $900 million. Additionally, mobile facilities made possible significant savings in manpower costs both in LC-39 and in the industrial area, even with a launch rate of only 24 per year. The biggest savings came in the reduction in the number of supervisors and other personnel at the higher grade levels. Dollar savings in manpower, the subcommittee observed, were the strongest argument for mobile facilities.

Subcommittee members then mentioned the possible impact of new developments, such as the atomic rocket motor, on the design of LC-39 facilities. Rather than sink a lot of money into this complex, might it not be better to wait and see what the future held in the next five years, and thereby save money in FY 1963? Debus explained that one of the basic decisions made early in the planning stages was to base the design on "the state-of-the-art and its most likely development." One of the basic presumptions was the use of liquid propellants. LOD had to be ready by 1965 and could not wait on the possibility of new developments. With the existing state-of-the-art, LOD could be ready in 1965. The subcommittee's view was that no decision should be so binding as to deny LOD flexibility to take advantage of new technology.[19]

In response to a question about the Department of Defense's role in funding the manned lunar landing program support facilities, Debus explained that LOD was limiting its funding to the new Merritt Island area and to LC-34 and LC-37 on the Cape. NASA Headquarters and the Department of Defense would coordinate downrange stations, including ships. LOD was coordinating other support requirements for the Merritt Island area with the officials of the Air Force Missile Test Center. Two of these support items—utility installation in the new area (causeways, roads, water, and power) and launch-phase range instrumentation—although in effect Air Force requirements, were included in LOD's budget. The range instrumentation that LOD would fund, in agreement with AFMTC, extended to a radius of 105 kilometers. NASA Headquarters would fund data acquisition and tracking requirements beyond that distance. So far as cost-sharing for maintenance and operations of the two areas was concerned, LOD was to handle funding on Merritt Island and the Air Force on the Cape.

When Dugald Black of the Manned Spacecraft Center presented facility requirements for checking out and testing the Apollo spacecraft, members of the subcommittee interrupted his presentation several times with questions regarding quality control and the overlap of functions and facilities. The MSC representatives explained that MSC would develop the spacecraft at Houston, but would check and test it at Merritt Island. Just as the Mercury and Gemini programs had overlapped in some instances, so the Gemini program would overlap Apollo. Facilities to support the Apollo and Gemini spacecraft had to be available simultaneously. The scheduling of the operations and checkout building, for example, was extremely tight. It had to be finished early enough to install and inspect equipment before the spacecraft arrived in October or November 1963.[20]

The scope and expense of the checking and testing requirements for the spacecraft led one member of the subcommittee to question the program, at least momentarily. Debus reminded him that "this is a research and development facility and is only slightly operational." This prompted Chairman Teague to observe:

> That doesn't take away the argument that this entire operation is an expensive one. It gets more expensive with the buildings and personnel, and everything swelling in size. Perhaps we are trying to do too much in too much of a hurry. If we are subject to so many changes in so many places so that we are watching every nut and bolt right up to the time we are ready to shoot. . . .[21]

Teague's cautious remark ended the long, productive day.

Progress in Washington

In response to a March 1962 request from NASA Headquarters, LOD reviewed its entire fiscal 1963 program. In May six projects were identified that required an early release of funds to avoid slippage in construction schedules: modifications to launch complex 34, support facilities in the Cape area, Apollo mission support facilities, launch complex 39, advanced Saturn or Nova support facilities, and utility installations in the Merritt Island area. Two months later NASA Headquarters was to issue allotments from fiscal 1962 construction of facilities funds for the final planning and design of these projects.[22]

On 23 May the House voted 343-0 to authorize a NASA budget of $3 671 million for FY 1963 and an additional $71 million for FY 1962. In the Senate, William Proxmire of Wisconsin offered several amendments to the authorization bill. One called for competitive bidding practices to the "maximum practicable extent."* The Senate rejected it by a vote of 23 to 72. He then called for the establishment of a Space Manpower Commission to assess the impact of the lunar landing program on the nation's supply of scientific personnel. The Senate defeated this, 12 to 83. In the end, by voice vote, the Senate authorized a NASA budget of $3 750 million. After the differences between the two houses were resolved, Congress passed the NASA Authorization Act; it totaled $3 744 million. The Launch Operations Center was allowed $328 333 000 for construction of facilities in fiscal year 1963, including $173 550 000 for launch complex 39. The total was $3 000 000 less than the center had requested.[23]

Because the congressional authorization was less than the amount sought by NASA, and because of newly generated requirements, the Office of Manned Space Flight proposed that NASA request a supplemental FY 1963 grant of $70 million for construction of facilities. The supplemental, D. Brainerd Holmes, head of the Office of Manned Space Flight, felt, was the only possible way to hold to existing schedules. To support this proposal, the Launch Operations Center—now an independent field installation with its own budgeting agency—prepared another series of project documents and forwarded them on 8 September 1962 as its FY 1963 CoF Resubmission and Supplemental.[24] These documents reflected new or revised requirements that had come to light since the February budget submittal. In October Associate Administrator Seamans decided not to submit the request.

---

*This would later prove ironic when competitive bidding cost a Wisconsin firm a contract that had seemed to be securely in hand (p. 272).

Updating LC-39 Requirements

As a separate action, LOC submitted to NASA Headquarters the same project document for LC-39 that had been prepared for the "resubmission and supplemental," since it reflected updated requirements and priorities that demanded prompt accommodation. Based on a reevaluation of the scheduled launch rate, the project document provided for a redistribution of funds among line items, but no additional funds, and asked for an early allotment.[25] The updated LC-39 document reduced the number of high bays in the VAB from six to four (but with provisions for subsequent expansion) and changed the arming tower from a stationary to a movable structure. It substituted two crawler-transporters for the two rail-mounted launcher-transporters and introduced requirements for the special roadways needed by the crawlers. Because of the larger size of the Saturn, LOC increased the elevation of the launch pads to 12 meters and the pad diameter from 610 to 915 meters.

Trimming the VAB, after reevaluating the scheduled launch rate, lowered the FY 1963 incremental estimate from $92 882 000 to $75 590 000. The adoption of the crawlerway system reduced the transfer estimate by $3 million; however, making the arming tower movable increased the cost of its prime mover, the crawler-transporter. The figure for each of the three proposed pads almost tripled, going from $5 588 000 to $15 930 000, largely because of higher elevation and increased diameter. The largest addition, $22.8 million, would go for two launcher-umbilical towers, plus steel for a third. The changeover from the rail-mounted integral units to the dual unit (mobile launcher and crawler) accounted for most of the addition.

In submitting this updated project document for LC-39, LOC pointed out, as it had in its budgetary submission, that the FY 1963 funding covered only those facilities required to meet the initial phase of the launch schedule, and that it would request funds to complete LC-39 in subsequent fiscal years. Only the VAB remained from the earlier list. The new list included the crawler roadway, the crawler-transporters, and the launcher-umbilical towers. LC-39 was to provide the necessary capability to launch the Saturn C-5 vehicle and other advanced configurations such as the C-1B.

In summation, then, the updated project document for LC-39 requested FY 1963 funding for portions of the VAB, one launch pad, the crawler roadway from the VAB to one launch pad, two crawler-transporters, two umbilical towers and steel for a third, and a number of minor items. It also included study, design, and initial procurement of checkout and control equipment, flame deflectors, firing accessories, instrumentation and connecting cabling, general support equipment, and design of the arming tower. It did not list a separate figure for the launch control center since designers still planned to place it within the VAB.[26] LOC communicated its plan for the funding of LC-39 facilities with FY 1963 construction of facilities money to NASA Headquarters on 18 September 1962.[27]

A week later, both Houses of Congress approved the NASA appropriation. Public Law 87-741 appropriated \$3.67 billion for FY-63. NASA's actual expenditures during fiscal 1963 were to total \$2.55 billion, less than half what the government spent on agriculture, and \$200 million less than spent on public assistance programs. The NASA figure represented 2.75% of the total national budget expenditures of \$92.6 billion.[28]

Even though the appropriations bill became law on 3 October 1962, the Launch Operations Center could not begin to award contracts until NASA Headquarters allotted the funds. In late October, Debus addressed a rather sharply worded letter to D. Brainerd Holmes, the Director of OMSF, about the delay in the receipt of fiscal 1963 construction of facilities funds at the Launch Operations Center. Debus pointed out that nearly \$10 million in construction had proceeded through design, advertising, bidding, and the selection of contractors, but that contracts could not be awarded until Headquarters released the funds. There appeared to be "insufficient effort at the Washington level," Debus felt, "for the prompt forwarding of funds to LOC after Headquarters received them from the Bureau of the Budget."[29]

The letter had the desired effect. On 6 November, Associate Administrator Seamans officially approved initial funding for construction of facilities at launch complex 39 to the amount of \$22 080 000. On the same day, Frederick L. Dunlap, Chief of Budget Execution at Headquarters, formally transferred funds to the Launch Operations Center. All was not yet well, however. Seamans had approved \$4 780 000 for site development and utility installations; \$11 000 000 for equipment, instrumentation, and support systems (specifically for two transporters); and $6 300 000 (plus $500 000 previously allocated from fiscal 1962) for design and engineering services. The document approved no funds for facility construction and modifications.[30] Finally, on 27 December, a teletype message from Headquarters notified Lewis Melton, Chief of the Launch Operations Center's Financial Management Office, that fiscal 1963 funds allotted for launch complex 39 now totaled $167 850 000.[31]

Thus, as calendar 1962 came to an end, the Launch Operations Center had the money to start construction on launch complex 39. It had already put some of the money to use. A NASA-DoD intragovernmental purchase order on 13 November had provided funds to the Corps of Engineers for site preparation and design and engineering services, including the design of the vertical assembly building.[32]

Changing requirements and priorities for LC-39 made further adjustments necessary in the distribution of money for particular items. Since LOC could carry forward construction of facilities funds to subsequent fiscal years, it continued to update its FY 1963 CoF program, often reprogramming some construction for later fiscal years. Actually, the FY 1963 CoF account was to remain active through calendar 1968. Both the redistribution and reprogramming actions required congressional notification, a much simpler procedure than the lengthy budgetary process. LOC's financial planners worked simultaneously on several fiscal year CoF programs. Between September 1962 and January 1963, LOC transmitted to NASA Headquarters the aborted FY 1963 supplemental, the FY 1964 CoF budget, and preliminary estimates for FY 1965. It was in 1962, in fact, that LOC did most of its budgetary homework to obtain the appropriations needed for the later construction of lunar launch facilities. The shift in emphasis from design to construction would not be apparent until mid-1963.

During this period of intensive budgetary preparation, the Office of Manned Space Flight took a major step toward determining the launch lineup. On 15 October 1962, after two years of considering various proposals, NASA announced its first "official flight schedule" for the Saturn vehicles. The first Saturn C-1B would go up in August 1965, and the first Saturn C-5 in March 1966; the first manned Saturn C-1B in May 1966, and the first manned Saturn C-5 in June 1967. Compared to earlier assumptions, this set back both initial manned launches by about six months. It also set the 1966 launch rate at five Saturn C-1B vehicles (three of them manned) and four developmental launches of the Saturn C-5. For 1967 the launch rate was four Saturn C-1Bs (all manned) and six Saturn C-5s (four manned).[33] "Until further notice," Holmes announced, "these schedules were to be used by

OMSF and the Centers for scheduling and financial planning." Meanwhile, LOC was getting ready to submit its project documents for the FY 1964 budget.

The Fiscal 1964 Program

Preparation of the FY 1964 budget, like that for FY 1963, had begun before the Launch Operations Directorate became an independent installation. During March 1962, NASA Headquarters called for the FY 1964 preliminary budget and in August began issuing guidelines for detailed estimates. In November 1962, two months after forwarding its FY 1963 supplemental request, LOC submitted its CoF project documents for the FY 1964 budget, salvaging some of the requirements stated in the FY 1963 supplemental. The Office of Manned Space Flight programs included 20 individual project documents, some for new requirements. The FY 1964 submittal was based on the 15 October flight schedules.[34]

As in FY 1963, most of the money LOC requested for its FY 1964 CoF programs ($333 130 600) was for the manned lunar landing program. LC-39 alone accounted for $225 967 000, or about two-thirds of the total request, with other Apollo requirements, such as support facilities, LC-34, and LC-37, making up a substantial portion of the remainder. Combined with the previous fiscal year CoF request, the FY 1964 program brought the total request for LC-39 to $339 517 000.

The months of intensive study of the lunar program requirements enabled LOC to state its requirements in considerable detail and, for the first time in an LC-39 project document, to include a description of the mobile concept. Of the eight major facilities for LC-39, FY 1963 construction funds had provided for the basic VAB structure (including an area set aside for the launch control center). In FY 1964 funding, LOC requested funds for outfitting the VAB (including the launch control center), two additional launch pads with associated facilities on complex 39, extension of the crawlerway to the additional pads, three additional launch umbilical towers (less steel for one funded in FY 1963), propellant services, and the mobile arming tower, as well as minor modifications and additions at launch complexes 34 and 37.[35]

Many projected buildings in the Merritt Island industrial area, such as the headquarters building, budgeted for $9 309 000, were simpler to design than the facilities of LC-39. There were exceptions: the central instrumentation facility, which consisted of two buildings—a large structure in the industrial area and an auxiliary structure located about a mile north to avoid radio interference from equipment operating in the primary structure. LOC asked $31 508 000 for these facilities. Almost three-fourths of this would go for equipment, principally for telemetry and tracking.[36]

Another complex of major importance, the technical and support facilities needed by the Manned Space Center for preflight operations with the Apollo spacecraft, presented two big questions: funding and siting. The Manned Spacecraft Center of Houston wanted to include the complex in its budget, but LOC demurred. Originally planned for the Cape area, the two centers agreed on 28 August 1962 to site the facilities in the Merritt Island industrial area. This complex, initially called "Apollo Mission Support Facilities," consisted primarily of six structures: one for operations and checkout, the others for various support systems.[37]

LOC had requested $22 510 000 for them in FY 1963. Plans at that time restricted them to the Apollo spacecraft. During August and September 1962, changes in the Apollo and Gemini schedules and in the choice of spacecraft fuels led to a reevaluation of the need for separate Gemini spacecraft facilities. This resulted in the combining of some Apollo and Gemini requirements.[38] On 15 October 1962 the Manned Spacecraft Center submitted to LOC an estimate of $23 273 983 for these buildings. LOC forwarded the proposal to Headquarters on the same day.[39]

With the submission of its FY 1964 budget on 1 November 1962, the Launch Operations Center had accomplished the basic budgetary tasks for the construction that would be required by the manned lunar landing program.[40]

"What Is It Going to Cost?"

The Manned Space Flight Subcommittee of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics held hearings on the FY 1964 program for the construction of launch facilities in May 1963. Only representatives of NASA Headquarters were present to defend LOC's program. In his formal questioning for the subcommittee, Lt. Col. Harold A. Gould, a technical consultant to the House committee, focused on costs.

"A total of $444 million had already been made available for LC-39 and support facilities," Gould observed. With 40% of LC-39 programmed for fiscal 1963 and 50% of it being programmed for fiscal 1964, Gould asked, "What is the total cost of this complex going to be?"

William E. Lilly, Director of Program Review and Resources Management of NASA's Office of Manned Space Flight, estimated that the total complex would run "very close to a half billion dollars." He then furnished an "exact figure" of $481 576 000. Congressman Emilio Q. Daddario, the subcommittee's acting chairman and long-time watchdog of LOC's budget, disregarded Lilly's "exact figure" and converted the "close to a half billion dollars" statement to "over $500 million," a phrase he used repeatedly in pressing his questions. In 1962, Daddario reminded Lilly, his subcommittee had received an initial estimate closer to $400 million. In January 1963 while at Cape Canaveral, the subcommittee had heard an estimate of $432 million. "Now you give us an estimate of over $500 million," Daddario stated. He wanted to know why the current figure was "over $100 million beyond that originally estimated."[41]

Aided by Capt. John K. Holcomb, NASA's Assistant Director for Launch Operations, Lilly marshalled several answers, including the adoption of the crawler transfer system in lieu of the rail system, an increase in the size of the launch pad and the number of pads required, and NASA's turnkey procurement policy. Daddario saw most of these explanations as being more valid for FY 1963 than for FY 1964 estimates, and brushed them all aside. Lilly offered the further explanation that, in order to be able to present a firm estimate as soon as possible, NASA had stressed the need for advance design funds. Daddario showed little regard for what he called Lilly's "cloudy logic," pointing out the estimate had gone from $432 million to "over $500 million" within a matter of months.

"I can't really give you a definitive answer," Lilly confessed, "of why the difference between $400 million, $432 million, and $500 million." It helped matters little for Lilly to add: "Our estimate, of course, is always based on the best information that is available. I could not say that the $500 million will be the final figure." Holcomb added that as a result of having actual designs and firm design criteria, "now we know pretty much what we are planning to do." But Daddario would not be assuaged and asked whether every starting estimate given to the subcommittee was going to be 25% out of line.

Daddario said that he and other members of the subcommittee expected some changes from original estimates but were less concerned about the amount than the percentage of increase and the embarrassment of having to report this to the full House. Congressman Edward J. Patten suggested that a 12% increase would not be too far out of line, but when costs increased 20–30% "this committee finds itself then in an embarrassing position of explaining this increase to the other members of Congress. I doubt that they will take the explanation you have given us as being a proper one."

As a final thrust, Lilly said that he had some doubts that the $432 million figure given to the subcommittee at Cape Canaveral in January 1963 was the "officially approved estimate" of the Office of Manned Space Flight. Daddario parried by asking why, if a higher figure had been available in January, it "was not given to us at that time."[42]

Only slightly less tenacious was Florida Congressman Edward J. Gurney's questioning regarding the pace of committing and obligating FY 1963 funds.* NASA representatives told the subcommittee that as of 31 March 1963, NASA had committed only $38 million and obligated only $18.9 million for LC-39, out of the FY 1963 budget of $163.5 million. Gurney wanted to know why $217 million was needed for FY 1964 when "you haven't even been able to scratch the surface on last year yet," even though the fiscal year was nearly over.

The basic delay in obligations, Lilly explained, was the time required for design. Once the design was completed, the "big money" would go out for construction. "I think you will find that the money will move much faster from this point on," Lilly assured Gurney. NASA would obligate the remainder of FY 1963 funds for LC-39 by August 1963. NASA had laid out its plans for the obligation of funds month by month, and by the end of FY 1964 only $10 million of the combined FY 1963 and 1964 funds would remain unobligated.[43]

Testimony regarding LC-39 next centered on the number of pads and their cost. Colonel Gould asked Lilly to explain why the FY 1963 figures for LC-39 varied from those shown in the FY 1964 budget. Lilly answered that the revised figures were the result of a more comprehensive analysis of operational requirements and that NASA had adjusted figures for equipment, instrumentation, and support systems after completing engineering studies.[44]

Other information given to the subcommittee on the FY 1964 program indicated that NASA was still thinking of on-pad time in terms of "possibly one week"; that each mobile launcher (which Holcomb aptly described as "partly launch pad and partly umbilical") would cost about $12 million, compared with $1 million for the less complicated umbilical towers used on complexes 34 and 37; that five launchers were required in order to service four bays in the VAB and to provide time for refurbishing after each launch; that the cost for the design and engineering of LC-39 would be roughly $37.6 million; that about 35% of the items in the FY 1964 increment of facilities were under design as of May 1963; that the operational target date for bay 1 and pad 1 in LC-39 was 1 December 1965; that facility construction lead times for FY 1964 were 25 months; and that the estimated cost of the crawler roadway was $982 000 per kilometer, with almost 13 kilometers of roadway required from the VAB to three pads.

At the subcommittee's request, Holcomb explained the implications of an operational capability date of 1 December 1965. It meant, Holcomb

---

*Funds were *committed* when financial management certified that funds were available and would be reserved for a particular purpose. Funds were *obligated* when a contract was signed for specific work to be done. The former was internal to NASA, the latter was legally binding on the agency.

said, that the construction of the first bay and its initial outfitting had to be completed by the end of May. Between May and December, an extensive checkout of the complete facility was to be made. "When we say that we have an operational capability beginning in December, we mean at that point we are able to bring in the first flight article, put it on the [mobile launcher] in the building, and check it out for our first launch in early 1966."[45]

The House hearings made clear that many problems regarding launch facilities for the Apollo program still confronted NASA. Most of the projects for which LOC requested FY 1964 funding, as well as the projects for which LOC had obtained FY 1963 funds, had undergone such drastic revision, when individually updated beginning in late 1962, that a discussion of them in terms of fiscal year budgets became academic. Through reprogramming actions, NASA postponed some of the construction requirements originally proposed for FY 1963; others, proposed for subsequent years, were paid for with FY 1963 funds. As a result, the year in which construction was budgeted often bore little relationship to the year of actual construction. With the passage of time, the budget documents diminished in importance as a barometer of actual construction. Instead, such documents as program operating plans and the periodic reports of the Corps of Engineers became the real indicators of construction.

Extensive criticism of NASA marked the congressional discussion of the FY 1964 budget for the first time since the agency's creation in 1958. Most barbs flew at the moon program, as congressmen argued that the Soviets seemed to have lost interest in a moon race, or that certain contractors were moving too slowly. Many Republicans thought the moon program detracted from more important military objectives in space. A Senate GOP policy committee stated on 10 May: "To allow the Soviet Union to dominate the atmosphere 100 miles above the earth's surface, while we seek to put a man on the moon could be . . . a fatal error." General Eisenhower had, as President, denied the existence of a "space race." Now he stated on 12 June 1963 that "anybody who would spend $40 billion in a race to the moon for national prestige is nuts." At a hearing of the Senate Aeronautical and Space Sciences Committee on 10 June, Dr. Phillip Abelson of the Carnegie Institution repeated the contention of many scientists that manned space exploration had limited scientific value. He thought its alleged importance utterly unrealistic. The rush to get to the moon, Abelson insisted, took scientific resources that the nation might use more wisely on other important objectives, and thus lessened our national security.[46]

In spite of this attack on the lunar program and several attempts to reduce the budget by amendment, the Senate by a voice vote and the House by a vote of 248 to 125 authorized $5.35 billion for NASA on 28 August

1963. During fiscal 1964, NASA was actually to spend $4.17 billion—a billion and a third less than either Agriculture or Health, Education, and Welfare. The NASA expenditure represented only slightly over 4% of the total national budget expenditures.[47]

Between authorization and appropriation, President Kennedy spoke before the United Nations General Assembly and suggested a joint U.S.-Soviet voyage to the moon. In spite of his assurances to Representative Albert Thomas of Texas, the chairman of the subcommittee considering NASA's budget, that to be able to deal from a position of strength the U.S. should continue the space program, not all members of Congress agreed. Senator Fulbright proposed a 10% cut for NASA in view of the needs of education and welfare—but lost. Senator Proxmire sought to strike out a $90 million addition made in committee, and this time won by the margin of 40–39.

As finally approved by both chambers on 10 December 1963, less than three weeks after President Kennedy's assassination, the bill appropriated $5.1 billion to NASA for fiscal 1964 and barred use of funds for joint lunar expeditions with any other country without congressional approval. President Johnson signed the bill on 19 December with reservations about the joint venture proviso. He thought it unnecessary and asserted it would impair our flexibility.

The manned lunar landing program had gotten through its most difficult Washington summer.

Page intentionally left blank

9

APOLLO INTEGRATION

An Integration Role for General Electric?

To Congress, the moon program meant money. To the American people, it was a contest of American skills pitted against the Russians or the mysteries of space. But for NASA, perhaps the biggest challenge was organization.

In retrospect, one of the major reasons for the program's success was the ability of a lieutenant colonel and an aerospace engineer to sit down and work out a solution to a problem that, coupled with a few thousand more solved problems, could put a man on the moon. But someone had to get the lieutenant colonel and the engineer into the same room. This carried over on a far larger scale to the thousands of items of equipment that came together on the launch pad for the moment of truth at countdown. A fitting, designed in Huntsville and manufactured in California, had to connect precisely with a fitting designed in Texas and fabricated in New York. At KSC the ground support and electrical support equipment alone totaled more than 34000 items. Each connection was an interface—eventually the most overworked word on Merritt Island—and keeping track of every interface, bringing together all the parts into a unified whole, was called integration.

Compared to earlier programs, Apollo-Saturn required drastically more coordination. During the 1950s, the Missile Firing Laboratory's contacts were limited to the Eastern Test Range, a few support contractors, and Huntsville. The Apollo program added scores of contractors, labor unions, and government organizations. The new relationships brought conflicts. There were differences of opinion with contractors and struggles for power among the NASA centers—divisive tendencies that were balanced by the unifying urge of the lunar goal.

NASA Headquarters, unable to handle the many integration requirements of Apollo by itself, sought help from an outside source—the General Electric Company. NASA asked GE to do three things: develop checkout equipment for launch operations; assess reliability, which was largely the reduction and analysis of data from various tests; and perform the

CHRYSLER		S-I/S-IB STAGES	SATURN I & IB	MSFC	NASA HDQRS MSF
NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (ROCKETDYNE)		H-1 ENGINE			
DOUGLAS		S-IV STAGE			
PRATT AND WHITNEY		RL-10 ENGINE			
DOUGLAS		S-IVB STAGE			
NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (ROCKETDYNE)		J-2 ENGINE			
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES		INSTRUMENT UNIT			
BENDIX					
RADIO CORPORATION OF AMERICA	COMPUTER	GROUND SUPPORT EQUIPMENT			
GENERAL ELECTRIC	ELECTRICAL CHECKOUT EQUIPMENT				
BOEING	SATURN V LAUNCH VEHICLE INTEGRATION				
BOEING		S-IC STAGE	SATURN V		
NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (ROCKETDYNE)		F-1 ENGINE			
NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (SPACE AND INFORMATION DIV.)		S-II STAGE			
NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (ROCKETDYNE)		J-2 ENGINE			
DOUGLAS		S-IVB STAGE			
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES		INSTRUMENT UNIT			
BENDIX					
GENERAL ELECTRIC	ELECTRICAL CHECKOUT EQUIPMENT	GROUND SUPPORT EQUIPMENT			
RADIO CORPORATION OF AMERICA	COMPUTER				
TELECOMPUTING CORPORATION	STRUCTURE SYSTEMS STUDY		SUPPORTING RESEARCH & TECHNOLOGY		
MIDWEST RESEARCH INSTITUTE	ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL STUDY				
GENERAL ELECTRIC	STABILIZATION CONTROL SYSTEMS STUDY				
REPUBLIC	STRUCTURE SYSTEMS STUDY				
LOCKHEED	STRUCTURE SYSTEMS STUDY				
FAIRCHILD STRATOS CORPORATION	MICROMETEOROID EXPERIMENT				
GENERAL ELECTRIC		MISSISSIPPI TEST OPERATIONS	FACILITES		
BOEING					
AEROJET GENERAL/AETRON					
SVERDRUP AND PARCEL					
PAUL HARDEMAN INC.					
CORPS OF ENGINEERS					
LEAR SIEGLER					
TELECOMPUTING		SLIDELL			
MASON – RUST		MICHOUD			
AERO SPACE LINES		AIR TRANSPORTATION	LOGISTICS		
MECHLIG BARGE LINE		BARGE			
MILITARY TRANSPORT SERVICE		SHIPS			
UNITED STATES AIR FORCE				PARTICIPATING AGENCIES	
UNITED STATES ARMY					
CORPS OF ENGINEERS MAPPING					
ATOMIC ENERGY COMMISSION					
UNITED STATES NAVY					
DEPARTMENT OF STATE					
DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE					
FEDERAL AVIATION AGENCY					
UNITED STATES COAST GUARD					
FEDERAL COMMUNICATION COMMISSION					
UNITED STATES COAST AND GEODETIC SURVEY					
BELLCOMM MANNED SPACEFLIGHT SYSTEM – ENGINEERING					

APOLLO PROGRAM GOVERNMENT – INDUSTRY FUNCTIONAL MATRIX

Fig. 39. The government-industry team behind Apollo.

NASA HDQRS MSF	KSC/MSFC	GOSS		LAUNCH INFORMATION EXCHANGE FACILITY	AMERICAN TELEPHONE & TELEGRAPH
	KSC	LAUNCH COMPLEX 39		LUT	PAUL SMITH CONSTRUCTION-INGALS IRON WORKS
				CRAWLER TRANSPORTER	MARION POWER SHOVEL COMPANY
				VAB	MORRISON-KNUDSON-PERINI-HARDEMAN
					U.S. STEEL
					BLOUNT BROTHERS
				OPERATIONS & CHECKOUT BUILDING	P. HARDEMAN & MORRISON-KNUDSON
				LAUNCH OPERATIONS SUPPORT	CHRYSLER
					CHRYSLER
					RADIO CORPORATION OF AMERICA
					TRANS-WORLD AIRLINES
					LING-TEMCO VOUGHT
					BENDIX
					DOW CHEMICAL
				LAUNCH INSTRUMENTATION	INTERNATIONAL TELEPHONE & TELEGRAPH (FEDERAL ELECTRIC DIVISION)
				LAUNCH CONTROL CENTER	VARIOUS
				COMMUNICATION	MOLECULAR RESEARCH
					NORTHROP
				LIQUID HYDROGEN TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM	UNION CARBIDE LINDE COMPANY
				LIQUID HYDROGEN FACILITY	AIR PRODUCTS AND CHEMICAL
				LAUNCH EQUIPMENT	GENERAL ELECTRIC
	MSC	COMMAND MODULE		COMMAND MODULE	NORTH AMERICAN, SPACE DIVISION
				GUIDANCE AND NAVIGATION	AC SPARK PLUG
					MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY
		SERVICE MODULE		NORTH AMERICAN AVIATION (SPACE AND INFORMATION DIVISION)	
				SPACECRAFT INTEGRATION	NORTH AMERICAN, SPACE DIVISION
		LEM		LEM	GRUMMAN
				GUIDANCE AND NAVIGATION	MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY
					AC SPARK PLUG
		ACE		GENERAL ELECTRIC	
		SPACECRAFT SUPPORT		SPACE SUIT	UAC HAMILTON STANDARD
				PARA GLIDER	NORTH AMERICAN, SPACE DIVISION
				REAL TIME COMPUTER COMPLEX	INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES
				LUNAR LAND TRAINER	BELL AIRCRAFT
				APOLLO CM TRAINER	NORTH AMERICAN, SPACE DIVISION
				LEM TRAINER	GRUMMAN
				SPACE MEDICINE	UNITED STATES AIR FORCE
				RECOVERY FORCE	DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE
		GROUND OPS SUPPORT SYSTEM		INTEGRATED MISSION CONTROL CENTER	PHILCO
				IMCC COMPUTER	INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES
				TERMINAL LANDING	PHILCO
		LITTLE JOE		LAUNCH VEHICLE	GENERAL DYNAMICS
				PROPULSION	AEROJET
	OTHER PARTICIPATING CENTERS	GSFC	GOSS	NETWORK OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE	INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES
				EQUIPMENT	COLLINS RADIO
				MANNED SPACE FLIGHT NETWORK NEAR SPACE INSTRUMENTATION FACILITY	NASA TRACKING SITES
					DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE TRACKING SITES
		JPL		DEEP SPACE INSTRUMENTATION FACILITY	TRACKING SITES
		ARC		PHYSICAL AND LIFE SCIENCES	
		FRC		FREE FLIGHT TRAINER	
		La RC		MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES	
		Le RC		ENGINE DEVELOPMENT	
		WS		EXPERIMENTAL FLIGHTS	

APOLLO PROGRAM GOVERNMENT – INDUSTRY FUNCTIONAL MATRIX (CONT'D)

Fig. 39—Continued

integration role. D. Brainerd Holmes, head of the Office of Manned Space Flight (OMSF), defined that term in congressional testimony:

> General Electric Co.'s job is to . . . study and make sure that there is proper integration. By that I mean that the signals flowing across the various interfaces between pieces of equipment being built at various places in the country, are compatible. This is necessary whether it be electrical signals . . . or whether it be hydraulic flow that goes from a small quarter-inch tubing into a 2-inch pipe, or just a straight mechanical integration.[1]

GE teams at the centers and at stage contractor plants would provide OMSF with the information to coordinate the various pieces of Apollo. Within OMSF, James Sloan, the Director for Integration and Checkout, monitored the contract with GE.*

Opposition to the GE contract appeared almost immediately. Directors of the Marshall Space Flight Center and the Launch Operations Directorate (LOC) believed that GE's proposed mission would infringe on center responsibilities. At Huntsville 10 April 1962, the two set up a common front to restrict GE's role. Stage contractors shared the feeling; North American, Boeing, and Douglas officials were loath to have a competitor supervise their operation. Petrone expressed opposition to the GE management role at a 15 May meeting with GE representatives. The group discussed appropriate and—as Petrone emphasized—*inappropriate* areas of GE activity. The following week OMSF sent Petrone's office a revised work statement more in line with LOD's position. Holmes clarified two important points at the 29 May OMSF Management Council Meeting. GE would work for the centers with Sloan's Integration Office coordinating the effort. GE would not give work directions to stage contractors.[2]

Controversy continued during the summer. Lengthy portions of the July and August Management Council meetings were given over to discussions of GE's proper role vis-à-vis the field contractors and stage contractors. At the Cape the Launch Operations Center (as of 1 July) prepared a list of seven tasks considered suitable for GE. The GE contract was the sole topic of discussion at a two-day meeting in late August. Officials from LOC, Marshall, and the Manned Spacecraft Center at Houston met on the 29th "to ensure that the tasks for GE written by each Center were properly and adequately integrated so as to minimize GE's overall integration role and minimize interference from [NASA] Headquarters.'' The three centers concentrated on checkout problems and agreed that they would not require ''any overall integration guidance from either GE or Headquarters.''[3] Sloan and GE's top Apollo program managers joined the session on the 30th. The latter were dismayed to learn that the centers had rejected GE's checkout concept and had relegated GE to a support role.

---

*Signed on 26 February 1962, the contract eventually totaled more than $615 million, a large portion of which went into checkout equipment at KSC.

NASA officials were in agreement about what GE should not do, but could not formalize a positive statement of the company's role. The issue generated three lengthy discussions at the 21 September Management Council meeting, and Holmes was disappointed at the lack of understanding. After a Cape visit in early November, Walter Lingle, NASA's Deputy Associate Administrator for Industry Affairs, told Holmes that the centers could not work with GE. Debus expressed surprise when Holmes called him about this report. The LOC Director admitted that, while reliability and checkout roles were set, there were still loose ends, and ''there seemed to be an absence of a clear description of what GE is supposed to do.'' At the November Management Council meeting, there were further complaints about GE statements that suggested a management role for the company.[4]

Due to the broad nature of the contract and because it appeared to place the General Electric Company in the position of supervising or directing other NASA contractors, the House Committee on Science and Astronautics gave the GE contract considerable attention during the authorization hearings on the fiscal 1964 budget. In March 1963, the Manned Space Flight Subcommittee conducted hearings at GE's Daytona Beach, Florida, office.[5] NASA was still undecided about GE's role three months later, and the issue, added to Congress's first attack on the Apollo program (p. 170) and the Webb-Holmes dispute (note, p. 148), caused considerable unhappiness. After a visit to the Daytona office in early July, von Braun and Debus thought they had reached a satisfactory arrangement for GE work at Marshall and Merritt Island. However, von Braun notified Debus on the 9th that the plan had apparently fallen through. Joseph Shea, OMSF's Deputy Director for Systems, still wanted GE's assistance in integrating Apollo activities. NASA finally resolved the dispute in August. The centers and stage contractors prevailed; GE would not manage space vehicle development. OMSF would rely on a review board to help control and integrate the Apollo program, using GE as a management consultant and data processor. GE retained the reliability assessment and checkout roles.[6]

Intercenter Panels

The centers had begun coordinating their work on Apollo months before the GE integration role was proposed. In November 1960, the Space Task Group initiated Apollo technical liaison groups. Rapid program advances, following President Kennedy's 25 May 1961 address, prompted closer relations. In October 1961, von Braun and Robert Gilruth established the MSFC-STG (later MSC) Space Vehicle Board to resolve all space vehicle problems such as design, systems, research and development tests, planning, schedules, and operations.[7] Four panels were initially set up to integrate the efforts of Apollo and Saturn working groups. These panels served as "idea-exchange platforms," where centers could discuss their plans before pursuing them in depth. The panels also established a formal level of agreement, a means of obligating each center to a course of action. Over the next two years, the panels provided working-level communication between the centers. Von Braun indicated their importance in a December 1963 letter to George Mueller, Holmes's replacement as chief of Manned Space Flight: "The intercenter panels have proved to be the only effective medium of working out technical problems in detail which cut across Center lines."[8]

A Launch Operations Panel was among the four panels initially established by the Space Vehicle Board. The charter stated that the panel would:

- Ensure the compatibility of the launch vehicle and spacecraft ground support equipment.
- Ensure that adequate space and facilities are available at the launch site for checkout and mating of the launch vehicle and spacecraft.
- Integrate the overall space vehicle countdown and operational plan.
- Define and resolve tracking and data requirements during launch.
- Define and establish the overall ground safety plan for pad operations.
- Review all areas of the space vehicle for compatibility and possible interface problems with launch operations.[9]

Saturn C-5 and Apollo design decisions and the selection of stage contractors crowded the MSFC and MSC calendars during the remainder of 1961, delaying the inauguration of the panels for five months. In early February 1962, the Preflight Operations Division at Houston asked LOD to join in an Apollo coordinating committee patterned after a Mercury group. Petrone's Heavy Space Vehicle Office rejected the suggestion, citing the October agreement between von Braun and Gilruth. Petrone proposed, instead, a Launch Operations Panel meeting to discuss Apollo requirements.

When Petrone repeated his proposal the following month, Preflight Operations acceded to such a meeting on 15 March. The 27 members who attended the first session agreed to set up sub-panels that would exchange technical information at the working level. The panel would consider problems raised by the sub-panels; concur, where appropriate, with sub-panel conclusions or agreements; evaluate unresolved problems; and assign new tasks and deadlines.[10]

Attendance at the second meeting on 20 June 1962 nearly doubled, as representatives from NASA Headquarters, General Electric, and the stage contractors joined the discussion. The group organized seven sub-panels: electrical; facilities and complexes; launch preparations; propellants and gases; firing accessories and mechanical support equipment; trajectories and flight safety; and instrumentation, tracking, and data acquisition. As Petrone reported back to Debus, "It is now possible for *all* operating level personnel in respective areas of responsibility to directly resolve technical problems on an expedited basis in groups of reasonable size."[11] During the following year, the Facilities and Complexes sub-panel met monthly, the others less frequently. Seventy-five NASA and contractor representatives attended the fourth meeting of the full panel 1 August 1963. Although spacecraft requirements were the major topic, the participants also discussed the role of a proposed Panel Review Board.[12]

An OMSF-directed Panel Review Board had emerged from conversations between Wernher von Braun and Joseph Shea in May 1963. Previously, when panel matters required adjudication, the three center directors had met as a review board. Von Braun considered the arrangement unsatisfactory because, in striving for compromise, the directors had sometimes passed up the best solution; OMSF's participation on the board might help correct this. Shea welcomed von Braun's offer. OMSF had found itself exercising little influence over the panels; further, the board could control the proliferation of integration groups. The number of intercenter panels had increased to seven, and there were ten other groups handling OMSF-center interface matters.* Many agreed with Robert Gilruth's complaint, "there are too many meetings."[13] During its first session, held at Cape Canaveral in August, the Panel Review Board abolished two groups, placed several more under existing panels, and created a Documentation Panel to control the growing stacks of paperwork.[14]

---

*The seven intercenter panels were Launch Operations, Mechanical Design Integration, Electrical Systems Integration, Instrumentation and Communications, Flight Mechanics, Crew Safety, and Mission Control Operations. The ten other groups that had sprung up were the Integration Review Board, System Checkout Design Review Board, Reliability Assessment Review Board, Apollo Engineering Documentation Board, Policy Review Board for GE Project Effort, Systems Review Meeting, Communications and Tracking Steering Panel, Communications and Tracking Working Group, Systems Description Steering Committee, and the Apollo Reference Trajectory Working Group. Except for the Launch Operations Panel, the activities of these groups and panels go beyond the limit of this work.

New Contractors with New Roles

The Army Ballistic Missile Agency of the 1950s had represented the arsenal concept of weapons development—a largely self-sufficient government research and development program.* Although Pan American had provided limited support at the Cape, the Missile Firing Laboratory had been a government show. The Launch Operations Directorate, short of manpower at the start of the Saturn I program, resorted to "level of effort" contracts, under which companies such as Hayes International and Chrysler's Space Division supplied skilled technicians for a specified number of man-years. LOD assigned the technicians to particular tasks, directly supervised them, and approved their performance. Such contracts were not universally popular, and the terms *body shop, flesh peddling,* and *meat market* were sometimes used. LOD retained technical responsibility, and civil servants continued to work directly with hardware.[15]

A major change came in mid-1960 when MSFC awarded Douglas Aircraft Corporation a "mission" contract to build the Saturn I's S-IV stage and check it out at the Cape. LOD exercised responsibility for the launch vehicle and supervised the contractor, but Douglas was responsible for accomplishing a clearly defined task. In doing so, the company supervised its own employees. The following year NASA awarded Chrysler a mission contract to build, check out, and test 20 S-I stages for the Saturn I. Chrysler's role was subsequently expanded to include technical support for Saturn I and IB launch operations. The latter involved such things as the environmental control systems, umbilical arms, propellant operations, postlaunch refurbishment of support equipment, logistics, ground electrical networks, and telemetry checkout. On the early launches of the Saturn I block II series, Douglas technicians checked out the upper stage while a Chrysler crew worked alongside KSC engineers on the S-I stage. SA-8 in early 1965 marked the first flight of a Chrysler-built booster with the contractor assuming responsibility for stage checkout. It also marked the end of an era for veterans of the Missile Firing Laboratory. Henceforth, KSC civil servants would no longer operate launch equipment, but would act more like traditional managers.

The transition to mission contracts was not always easy. LOD officials, accustomed to level-of-effort contracts, considered Douglas Aircraft uncooperative. In turn, the California firm, used to the Air Force's

---

*The Air Force in the 1950s represented the opposite position: contractors performing R&D for a government agency. For more detail on this subject, see H. L. Nieburg, *In the Name of Science* (Chicago, 1960); and *Government Operations in Space,* the Thirteenth Report by the Committee on Government Operations, House of Representatives, 89th Cong., 1st sess., House report 445, June 1965.

broad guidelines, resented NASA interference. An early difference of opinion involved the loading of Saturn I propellants. Looking ahead to Saturn V operations, LOD planned remote, automated controls for the Saturn I. Douglas officials accepted the LOD position regarding checkout and main loading operations, but wanted manual control of the S-IV stage's final slow fill. After meetings in March and May of 1961, LOD thought the matter was resolved. However, when Orvil Sparkman visited Douglas's Santa Monica, California, plant in September, he was surprised:

> The Douglas S-IV GSE to be utilized at Sacramento [the contractor's test area] is designed and built with a complete disregard for instructions contained in the three referenced memorandums [minutes of March and May meetings mailed to Douglas as official working documents]. Not only are these panels designed for manual propellant servicing, but no attempt was made by Douglas to incorporate standard nomenclature developed by Douglas and LOD. . . . It is the intention of the contractor to furnish equipment of the same design at AMR.[16]

Douglas officials and Sparkman agreed that the control networks for SA-5 (the first two-stage Saturn I launch) could not be completed until the loading issue was resolved. The dispute was settled in LOD's favor at an October meeting of the Propellant and Gases Panel, but only after Marshall's intervention.

LOC's peculiar relationship with the stage contractors caused difficulties during the next two years. The stage contractors, still working under contracts with Marshall, looked to Huntsville for direction and contract management. The launch team's efforts to monitor contractor operations, suggest equipment modifications, or obtain information on contractor requirements were relayed by the contractor to his home office and from there to Marshall. Douglas officials pointed up the awkwardness of the arrangement during the SA-5 launch preparations when they questioned the launch team's right to reject company work. Douglas officials refused to yield until Col. Lee B. James, Saturn I–IB Project Manager in Huntsville, notified company management that LOC was responsible for the quality of S-IV stage equipment at the Cape.[17]

Relations with Marshall Space Flight Center

The launch team's separation from Marshall in July 1962 did not significantly alter the close ties between the two centers. Debus, believing that interfaces were best managed by locating responsible design elements in close physical proximity, was pleased that the Launch Vehicle Operations Division (LVOD) was both an operating element of LOC and an engineering element of Marshall. He wrote:

> Through this arrangement launch operations requirements are fed back into the design organization and become incorporated in design criteria. For example, the Astrionics Division Electrical Systems Integration Branch of MSFC which is responsible for design of vehicle associated (active) GSE and checkout equipment incorporates into the design the operational requirements obtained from LVO; thus the interfaces are a responsibility of the group.[18]

Theodor Poppel's design group, responsible for much of the launch equipment, remained in Huntsville where it could readily exchange information with launch vehicle engineers. One area of potential strife—the center's relations with contractors—was eliminated in August 1964 when the two centers reaffirmed Marshall's primary responsibility for Saturn vehicle development, but delegated to KSC the responsibility for preparation of support equipment and vehicle checkout. As a result, Hans Gruene's Launch Vehicle Operations team dropped its formal ties with the Huntsville organization. The agreement also gave KSC contract authority to supervise stage and support equipment activities at the Cape.[19] Seven months later Debus and von Braun signed a series of clarifying and implementing instructions, which included the provision that:

> Design of components and equipment to be installed in the complexes at the Cape are responsibilities of each of the three MSF centers [Marshall, Houston, and KSC] resulting from decisions that have already been made and which are continuously coordinated through the workings of Intercenter Panels and the system of Interface Control Documents. The design and construction of facilities in which this equipment will be placed is the responsibility of KSC.[20]

Marshall subsequently stopped contracting for launch checkout, and KSC negotiated its own contracts.

Coordination between KSC and Marshall got a boost in 1964 when their communications lines were organized into the launch information exchange facility (LIEF). Communications had been primitive by modern standards, with LOC personnel commuting between Huntsville and the Cape, and commercial wires carrying the daily message load. With the

Saturn program, the need for a better system became apparent. A huge increase in information flow was expected with the launching of larger vehicles; engineers cited 88 telemetry measurements on the Redstone versus an anticipated 2150 on the Saturn V.[21]

NASA Headquarters approved LIEF in August 1963, and the system met KSC expectations. The new communications network provided the backup support of designers to operations personnel in the analysis of unexpected problems, expedited transmission of additional information on demand, and made available the resources of the development agency throughout the checkout period. LIEF employed the voice, teletype, and facsimile circuits already linking the two centers, and a tape-to-tape transceiving system that carried digital engineering data and launch vehicle computer programs via a NASA automatic fascimile switchboard in New Orleans. More sophisticated equipment was added in time, eventually putting Huntsville displays on the scene for KSC launches.[22]

Relations with the Manned Spacecraft Center

While KSC's relations with Huntsville were relatively good, its early coordination with Houston was another matter. During 1962–1964, KSC officials frequently complained that the Houston center was tardy with its spacecraft-related requirements for the launch facilities. Some KSC officials believed their counterparts were less than frank in their dealings. This feeling gave way slowly as KSC gained an appreciation for Houston problems.

Information from Houston came slowly for two reasons. First, spacecraft design was dragging, and the July 1962 decision to rendezvous in lunar orbit imposed new assignments, including development of the lunar excursion module. The lunar module contract, won by Grumman Aircraft in November 1962, initiated one of Apollo's most difficult projects, which by 1967 threatened to delay the entire program. The addition of a rendezvous and docking capability to the command-service module required two years of extensive study. Configuration work on the two vehicles culminated with the mockup review of North American's block II spacecraft on 30 September 1964. Secondly, the Manned Spacecraft Center did not have enough experienced spokesmen on the intercenter panels. Many of the center's engineers were occupied with the Mercury and Gemini programs. Houston's Apollo team, understaffed for the large tasks it faced, allotted priority to its North American and Grumman relations. A reluctance to share information that might lessen a center's authority also contributed to Apollo's coordination difficulties. All three centers, however, shared in this sin of omission.[23]

In August 1962, LOC had a detailed concept for Saturn V operations but only a general understanding of Apollo spacecraft needs. Early that month Debus, Petrone, and Poppel journeyed to Houston for a discussion of requirements. The two centers agreed that a spacecraft checkout center would be constructed in the Merritt Island industrial area, checkout of the spacecraft at the assembly building and later on the pad would be controlled from the launch control center, and Houston would not need a computer or display console on board the launch umbilical tower.[24]

The disagreement about servicing the spacecraft (first expressed at the Management Council meeting in May 1962—see page 128) continued for several more months. At a Launch Operations sub-panel meeting in October 1962, MSC insisted that pad facilities provide access to the Apollo spacecraft from all sides. Design of the command and service modules was too far along to modify this requirement. The Houston engineers did not care whether LOC built the 360° service capability into the launch umbilical tower's swing arms or made the arming tower mobile. Neither alternative appealed to LOC, but Petrone informed Houston in early November that a mobile arming tower would provide the necessary pad access.[25]

While conceding that matter, LOC won a dispute over the responsibilities for establishing criteria in the industrial area. LOC's concept paper on launch operations stated, "LOC will provide design, contracting, and construction monitoring services for facility construction . . . based on MSC functional and technical requirements." The Florida Operations launch team of the Houston center interpreted this to mean that LOC would provide the services based on "design and specification requirements or criteria developed by MSC." Debus objected to Houston's providing fully developed criteria for the spacecraft facilities and won Holmes's support at a meeting in October 1962. Subsequently, the LOC director and G. Merritt Preston, chief of Florida Operations, agreed that Houston would provide rough criteria while LOC selected the architect-engineering firm and approved the final design.[26]

A bigger problem—one that dragged on for several years—concerned submission of spacecraft data. In October 1962, Petrone wrote Houston's Apollo Project Office that spacecraft requirements were "urgently needed" so that LOC could proceed with the criteria studies for the assembly building, launch pad, and mobile launcher. He restated LOC's needs the following month and frequently thereafter.[27] Unfortunately, the Houston engineers could not ascertain all their spacecraft requirements. In October 1962, they projected a need for one 6-meter console in the firing room of the launch control center. By early 1963, this had grown to thirty-five 48-centimeter racks and two 6-meter consoles. A year later Houston was still uncertain about the checkout equipment for the mission operations room; in February 1964 a Houston representative asked if the Manned Spacecraft Center could simply indicate what spacecraft functions had to be performed and the approximate locations for the test consoles.[28]

Problems in achieving a final design for the command and service modules delayed LOC's design of the mobile service structure well into 1964. By September 1963, the design of the tower was nearly a year behind schedule, and the growing number of spacecraft requirements increased the likelihood of a top-heavy, overweight tower. The contractor, Rust Engineering, undertook a weight reduction program, redesigning the service platforms and modifying the lower structure. Petrone reported in December that Rust had the tower's weight and wind-load factors back within the limits of the initial criteria. Seven months later, the design work completed and construction bids on hand, there were two more changes: a KSC decision to relocate ground servicing equipment at the base of the arming tower, and a late list of cabling requirements from Houston. KSC made the necessary modifications within a month.[29]

Since the lunar module had started late, a delay in its requirements was expected. After the data became available in January 1965, launch engineers modified their facilities to accommodate the third spacecraft module. The changes affected the electrical and fluid systems of the mobile launcher, office space in the assembly building as well as the second level of platform B in the high bays, and platform 3 of the mobile service structure. KSC altered the pad area to provide space for the lunar module's ground support equipment and additional power receptacles.[30]

Range Safety

The question of safety was always paramount at KSC and usually involved much intercenter negotiation, as well as long study sessions with the Air Force. The possibility of the space vehicle colliding with the umbilical tower during launch touched off a study in mid-1962. The LOC group concluded that the Saturn I's proposed emergency detection system would not catch all possible failures in time to signal an abort. If engine number 1 of the first stage failed, attitude and rate mechanisms in the detection system would not sense a rocket drift that could result in a collision with the tower. An initial experiment with backup television coverage (the SA-3 flight of 16 November 1962) was disappointing; flame and dust kept astronaut D. K. Slayton and Marshall's John Williams from seeing the rocket as it climbed by the face of the tower. Petrone concluded from film of the liftoff that ground level visibility would always be sharply limited by blast and flame. He recommended placing a television camera at the top of the umbilical tower to look down between the tower and the vehicle.[31]

The Crew Safety Panel (one of the intercenter panels) took charge of this study in early 1963. LOC's chief representative on the panel, Emil Bertram, examined several proposals for ground support instrumentation including color television, an electronic "beat-beat" system based on the Doppler principle, and the placement of sensing wire on the umbilical tower. The panel finally settled on television and field observers. The launch team had to overcome further problems with the television during the latter Saturn I flights; for example, the intensity of light at liftoff burned holes in the camera's vidicon tube. The panel, satisfied with the coverage by 1965, approved an abort advisory system for LC-34. (With no manned flights scheduled, LC-37 did not require a similar system.) Since the light intensity bleached out colors, the system employed four black-and-white cameras. Two cameras, pointing downward from the 72-meter level of the umbilical tower, covered the space between the tower and the rocket. Three hundred meters away on opposite sides of the launch vehicle, zoom-lensed cameras mounted on 5-meter towers provided a profile of early flight. The four cameras formed part of the complex's operational television network. Telescope sites, located around the perimeter of the complex, supplemented the TV. Gordon Cooper, an influential voice on the Crew Safety Panel, and other astronauts helped man the observation posts. LC-34's operational intercom system gave the posts instant communication with the blockhouse. The coverage proved satisfactory, and a similar arrangement was prepared for LC-39.[32]

While the establishment of the abort advisory system went smoothly, the matter of who held abort authority during the first ten seconds of flight (until tower clearance) proved more troublesome. KSC officials believed the launch operations director was in the best position to command an abort. The astronauts objected, arguing that the launch director might abort the mission at an undesirable moment for them or the spacecraft. Eventually the astronauts won the argument. As information came to the launch director during the first seconds of flight, he would assess the situation. If an abort appeared necessary, the director could trigger the "Abort Light" on the flight panel in the spacecraft. If the "Thrust O.K." light indicated a malfunction or if the astronauts sensed a problem, the crew could manually activate the launch escape system.[33]

Range safety matters caused considerable disagreement between NASA and the Air Force before the issues were ultimately resolved. The Air Force had exercised responsibility for range safety at the Cape since launching the first rocket back in 1950. The basic concern was to prevent an errant rocket from landing in a populated area. Accordingly, when NASA scheduled a mission, the Air Force wanted details on the flight plan: launch azimuth, trajectory, and impact point. Range safety policies required that the launch vehicle have at least one tracking aid and two digital range safety command receivers on each active stage. The receivers had to be compatible with range instrumentation. If a destruct signal was received from the ground, the receivers would cut off the flow of fuel to the engines and then detonate small explosive charges to rupture the propellant tanks. The propellants would then mix and their explosive force be consumed before vehicle impact.[34]

The command receivers were activated prior to liftoff. The range safety officer sat at a group of consoles located in the range control center of the Cape Kennedy Air Force Station. The display had been developed in the 1950s and it remained relatively unchanged during the succeeding 15 years. The consoles received tracking data on the vehicle from the Eastern Test Range tracking system. This information was processed by a digital computer, and the display showed both the present location of the vehicle and its impact point if thrust were terminated.[35]

The plot included a set of lines that followed the planned path of the vehicle. These so-called "destruct" lines indicated the maximum deviation of the impact point from the trajectory that could be allowed without endangering life or property. As long as the impact point remained within the destruct lines, no action was required. Should a failure occur or the destruct lines be crossed, the safety officer first sent an arming signal to the receivers aboard the vehicle. This performed the dual function of initiating thrust termination and preparing the destruct system for activation. After an appropriate built-in delay, a second signal was transmitted. It caused the detonation of the explosives in the propellant dispersion system. Within seconds the vehicle would be transformed into tumbling, burning chunks of scrap.[36]

The Air Force's authority in matters of range safety was reaffirmed in the Webb-McNamara Agreement of 17 January 1963. Essentially, the agreement confirmed the authority of the Air Force to require flight termination and propellant dispersion systems on NASA vehicles as well as those of the military, and this authority extended from liftoff through orbital insertion. The agreement was supplemented by the Air Force Missile Test Center–Launch Operations Center agreement of 5 June 1963, which gave NASA the responsibility for ground safety within the confines of KSC but left flight safety with the Air Force.

LOC acknowledged the Air Force's responsibility for range safety, but in a letter of 10 May 1962, General Davis noted that "there are occasional differences of opinion on what constitutes reasonable safety practices" and asked for Debus's comments on Air Force policy. In his response, Debus hesitated to cite specific disagreements since many rules were undergoing review and change. However, he did list a few areas where NASA and its contractors felt uninformed as to how the Air Force reached its decisions. One area concerned the computation of destruct areas; a second was the amount of trajectory data required on a new program. Debus also questioned the rationale for a dual destruct capability in all powered stages.[37]

This last matter involved KSC in a lengthy debate which found the Manned Spacecraft Center and the Air Force at odds over the latter's insistence on including a destruct system in the Apollo spacecraft. The dispute began in March 1962, when Houston requested a waiver—spacecraft engineers did not want the astronauts carrying a destruct package with them to the moon. The Range Safety Office proposed to restrict Apollo flights severely if the spacecraft did not carry a destruct system. Neither side altered its position in the next twelve months. When the NASA centers and the Eastern Test Range discussed Apollo-Saturn V safety requirements in May 1963, Houston again asked to fly the Apollo spacecraft (including the S-IVB stage) without a destruct capability. Engineers cited the possibilities of an errant signal triggering the systems or of an explosion during docking.[38] The Air Force stood firmly by the requirements of the range safety manual: "Both engine shutdown and destruct capability are required for each stage of the vehicle."[39]

The sparring over the destruct systems soon took on the trappings of international diplomacy. On 9 May Dr. Adolf Knothe, LOC's range safety chief, warned Debus that a crisis could develop. Although no agreement had been worked out by June, Knothe and his assistant, Arthur Moore, began damage probability studies to justify omission of a destruct system. Their calculations indicated that an explosion of the three launch-vehicle stages, triggered by the range safety officer, would also destroy the lunar and service modules with their propellants. (In the meantime the launch escape system would have pulled the astronauts' command module away from the explosion.) Their plan employed a shaped charge on the front end of the S-II stage to explode the S-IVB stage. The results were inconclusive, however, and the Air Force stressed the possibility of a spacecraft falling back onto the Cape. Range officials contended that a spacecraft destruct system would not endanger the mission; NASA could design the system with a jettison capability.* Knothe recommended a detailed destruction probability study by the Lear-Siegler Corporation but saw "no absolutely objective answer to this dilemma."[40]

---

*An abort during the latter phase of the launch sequence (between approximately T + 3 minutes into the flight when the launch escape tower jettisoned and T + 10 minutes when the spacecraft entered orbit) would depend upon the service module propulsion system to separate the command and service modules from the Saturn. As B. Porter Brown, Houston's representative at the Cape, indicated, "the Manned Spacecraft Center will be most reluctant to carry a destruct system that can in any way jeopardize the capability of this module to perform its abort function" ("Apollo Program Information Submission," 23 August 1963). Since the space vehicle would have cleared the Cape before the launch escape tower jettisoned, the Air Force was willing to discard the service module's destruct system at that time.

The Air Force countered LOC's calculations with a July presentation on a liquid explosive, Aerex. Impressed with Aerojet-General Corporation's product, NASA engineers gathered in Houston two weeks later for a North American briefing on a destruct system using the liquid explosive. Afterward, Moore sounded out spacecraft officials. There was still misunderstanding between the two centers in August when Christopher C. Kraft, Jr., chief of Houston's Flight Operations Division, moved to break the impasse. His call for an Apollo Range Safety Committee, modeled on a Gemini group, included AFMTC participation. LOC and MSFC vetoed Air Force representation until NASA had achieved a common front.[41]

At the first meeting of the Range Safety Committee, Knothe reviewed safety problems including the Range requirement for dispersion trajectories on all propelled stages.* The destruct systems on the S-I and S-II stages caused no concern, and Knothe believed that Aerex might prove acceptable for the S-IVB and spacecraft. Houston, however, was sharply divided over the destruct requirements, with the astronauts leading the opposition. The committee put the matter aside until the Manned Spacecraft Center could reach an understanding within its own ranks.[42]

In October, Kraft managed to add Air Force representatives to the Range Safety Committee. In the minutes of the 22 October meeting, he noted: "It was apparent at the meeting that the Range Safety Office is just as concerned that their regulations do not hamper the program as we are that we are not hampered by range safety."[43] Kraft's note foreshadowed the agreement reached with the Eastern Test Range the following month. North American would prepare a destruct system for the service module. The spacecraft could fly early tests without the destruct capability since the service module tanks would contain little fuel. The decision, however, did not bring the matter to a close. Marshall and KSC officials were visibly upset in March 1964 when North American Aviation presented five spacecraft destruct systems, none of which incorporated the designs of the Saturn stage destruct system.† When von Braun and Debus raised the issue at an Apollo Review Board, Mueller, head of Manned Space Flight, asked the KSC chief to seek elimination of the destruct requirements. Over the summer of 1964 KSC officials met with Air Force officers, including Lt. Gen. Leighton I. Davis, who had moved from the Missile Test Center to the command of the National Range Division. KSC stressed among other things the weight penalty. A 120-pound service module destruct system would require nearly 7500 more newtons (1700 pounds) of thrust or a reduction in the weight of the S-IC stage. When Mueller submitted a formal request for waiver in September, General Davis directed the Range to go along.[44]

---

*The dispersion trajectories marked the right of way for space vehicle flight. The boundaries on the flight corridor were formed by permissible lateral and vertical deviations. The deviations were necessary because of inevitable variations from standard—two rockets of the same model would have different thrust because of slight differences in alignment of the engines and in propellant weight. The wind effect was another factor that could never be fully accounted for. By taking into consideration the normal deviations from standard in relation to probability curves, LOD gave the Range Safety Office 99.73% assurance that the launch vehicle, in normal flight, would stay within the corridor. Any deviation outside the boundaries indicated a malfunction and the safety officer destroyed the vehicle.

†MSFC and KSC personnel thought the destruct systems should be standard throughout the space vehicle. They viewed MSC's research for a different destruct arrangement as lack of confidence in the Saturn system.

Summary

Integration matters at KSC required a great deal of attention during the early years of Apollo. KSC officials worked closely with Marshall, Houston, and the stage contractors in shaping the launch facility to Apollo-Saturn dimensions. While an integrating role for General Electric was rejected, intercenter panels provided an effective means of coordination. The increased workload altered KSC's relations with its contractors. The launch center took on the direction of contract work previously performed for Marshall or Houston. In turn contractors assumed more responsibility under mission contracts. The Apollo coordination brought its share of disagreements—witness the dispute over a destruct charge on the command and service modules. By 1965, however, most of the conflicts were resolved. KSC had achieved a good working order between its government team and contractors, and relations with other organizations were reasonably well defined.

10

SATURN I LAUNCHES (1962–1965)

Testing the Booster (SA-2–SA-4)

After the launch of the first Saturn rocket on 27 October 1961, the rest of the research and development schedule went like clockwork. The nine remaining launches of the Saturn I program (April 1962–July 1965) set a record for consistent performance while receiving a minimum of recognition. The launches coincided with America's first successes in manned spaceflight and all eyes were on the astronauts. When one of them was cradled out into space in a Mercury shot, the nation paused to participate by television in the liftoff, flight, and recovery.

While no human passengers lent drama to the Saturn I flights, Saturn team members had much to be proud of. The ten launches proved the clustered booster concept, the hydrogen-propelled upper stage, and the Cape's ground facilities. In 1964, in what was to become a historic collaboration, the Saturn rocket and Apollo vehicle were mated for the first time, with both SA-6 and SA-7 flying an Apollo "boilerplate" model.* The last three Saturn vehicles carried Pegasus, a satellite flown in low earth-orbit to detect meteroids. Although Marshall Space Flight Center engineers introduced new features in every Saturn I launch, the tests came off without a major failure. The confidence gained from these successes was Saturn I's great contribution to the Apollo program.

SA-2 (25 April 1962)

The second Saturn I, vehicle SA-2, arrived at Cape Canaveral on 27 February 1962. Launch preparations took 58 days. Although there were no serious delays, daily status reports revealed many minor problems:

> 19 March. A leak has been detected between the injector and the LOX [liquid oxygen] dome on Engine Position No. 4 . . . . Discussions concerning this matter are being

---

**Boilerplate* means a full-scale model of a flight vehicle flown on research and development missions, without some or all of the internal systems.

held with Rocketdyne and Propulsion and Vehicle Engineering Laboratory personnel.

20 March. Attempts to correct the LOX dome leak, reported yesterday, have failed to remedy the problem. Further discussions are now in progress, to determine whether to buy the "as is" condition or change the engine. A change in the overall schedule will result if the engine has to be changed.

21 March. Discussion between Propulsion and Vehicle Engineering Laboratory, Rocketdyne, and LOD has resulted in a decision to launch without replacement on engine, Position 4.

26 March. Minor difficulties exist in the guidance sub-system; these are under investigation. No interference was noted during the RF [radio frequency] test.

27 March. The service structure was removed from around the vehicle; alignment and RF checks were made and the structure replaced around the vehicle. Minor difficulties were encountered with structure operations.

28 March. Two strain gauges have been found to be damaged (LOX stud and truss member). Attempts will be made to repair the truss member gauge.

30 March. The manhole cover on the top of the S-V-D was found damaged yesterday. A replacement cover has been received from MSFC, which will be installed this afternoon.

6 April. A modification to the fuel density and fuel level sensing lines has been completed.

9 April. Fuel loading test in the manual mode is in progress . . . . During preparations for the fueling test, a leak was detected in the fuel level computer. The computer was removed and sent to the lab for repair . . . . An effort was made to get a spare computer from MSFC. A second computer was sent down by plane Saturday evening [7 April] . . . . It developed that the second computer was not in a sufficient state to be properly calibrated prior to today's operation. Therefore, the primary effort Sunday night was directed toward readying the original computer for the test today.

11 April. LOX tanking test was postponed one day after difficulties developed in the electrical tanking computer

circuit. Attempts are being made to isolate and correct the problem area. The one day delay . . . will not affect the overall schedule. If the test can be satisfactorily performed tomorrow, we will be back on the original schedule by [16 April].

17 April. The fuel loading computer has been repaired and functionally checked satisfactorily.

19 April. A potential problem area exists with respect to three hydraulic systems. If it should be declared by Propulsion and Vehicle Engineering, Astrionics and Quality Laboratories that the three systems must be checked, the launch date [25 April] cannot be met.[1]

Marshall engineers had made one significant change in the SA-2 booster design, placing additional baffles in the propellant tanks to prevent a recurrence of the sloshing experienced in the latter part of the SA-1 flight. The countdown on 25 April went smoothly; the only hold came when a ship strayed into the flight safety zone, 96 kilometers downrange. The successful flight was terminated with a dramatic experiment. When SA-2 reached an altitude of 105 kilometers, launch officials triggered the command destruct button. Project "High Water" released 86000 kilograms of water from the dummy upper stages, giving scientists a view of a large disturbance in the upper regions of the atmosphere. A massive ice cloud rose 56 kilometers higher in a spectacular climax.[2]

SA-3 (16 November 1962)

A tropical storm greeted the SA-3 vehicle's arrival at the Launch Operations Center on 19 September 1962. Three days of rain and high winds delayed erection of the booster, and conditions were still unfavorable when the launch team resumed work on the 21st. Aeronautical Radio Incorporated engineers, hired by NASA to review Saturn operations, reported: "The erection operation was safely performed but is rather hazardous, with technical personnel climbing around on top of the horizontal booster to install hoisting equipment. This operation was performed on the slick plastic covering of the S-I stage in a wind of up to [37 kilometers per hour]." The Aeronautical Radio team considered the preparation prior to stage erection (removing the end ring segments) "a relatively slow, inefficient, and dangerous operation, with a considerable amount of trial and error," and recommended more familiarity with the instruction handbooks. During the eight-week checkout, the Washington, D.C., firm found other shortcomings such as "the use of metallic hammers to urge recalcitrant components into place." The observers noted that proper tools were not always handy, "and expediency sometimes prevailed." They concluded, however, that the "efficiency and dedication" of Hans Gruene's Launch Vehicle Operations Division* was instrumental in the success of the Saturn test.[3]

SA-3 lifted from Cape Canaveral on 16 November 1962. Debus asked von Braun not to invite outside visitors, as the United States armed services were still on alert for the Cuban missile crisis. The rocket incorporated a number of important new features. The first two Saturns had used 281000 kilograms of propellant, about 83% of the booster's capacity. Marshall, wanting information for the new Saturn IB program, flew SA-3 with a full propellant load to test the effects of a lower acceleration and a longer first-stage flight. The flight also tested the retrorockets that would separate the two live stages on SA-5, the first launch of the upcoming block II series. SA-3 flew three other important prototypes: the ST-124 stabilized platform, a pulse code modulated data link, and an ultrahigh-frequency link. The stabilized platform was a vital part of the Saturn guidance and control system, containing gyroscopes and accelerometers that fed error information to the control computers, which provided steering signals to the gimballed engines. The data link's importance lay in its ability to transmit digital data, a vital ingredient in plans for automation of checkout and launch procedures. The ultrahigh-frequency link would be used to transmit measurements, such as vibration data, that could not be handled effectively on lower frequencies.[4]

SA-4 (28 March 1963)

SA-4 set records for the shortest launch checkout (54 days) and the longest countdown holds (120 minutes) of the block I series. At T – 100 minutes on launch day, test conductor Robert Moser called a 20-minute hold while the launch team adjusted the yaw alignment of the ST-90 gyro guidance platform. Readings from a ground theodolite showed that the platform was not properly aligned on the launch azimuth. An operator oriented the Watts theodolite on a geodetic survey line and then turned the head of the instrument to the launch vehicle. The alignment prism in the ST-90 platform reflected a light directed from the theodolite. If the platform was aligned properly, the reflection from the prism appeared in the center of the theodolite's scope. In this case, the problem was with the theodolite and not the gyro platform.

---

*See chap. 7. From 1 July 1962 to 24 April 1963, LVOD was a division of MSFC. Since Debus and Gruene served as Director and Deputy Director of both the Launch Operations Center and LVOD, this was an administrative distinction with little or no bearing on launch activities.

The final hold came at T – 19 minutes as a result of a LOX bubbling test. Andrew Pickett's propulsion group performed the test late in the countdown to verify the flow of helium to the LOX suction ducts of the eight engines. The decreasing temperature of the LOX indicated a proper flow of helium, but the propulsion panel did not register a signal that the LOX bubbling valve was open. Without the signal the terminal sequencer would shut down. Pickett's team, along with Isom Rigell's electrical engineers, improvised a bypass for the valve signal on the sequencer. The propulsion team assured a proper LOX temperature for the Saturn and then initiated the bypass manually as the sequencer brought the vehicle to liftoff.[5]

In SA-4's most important test, officials deliberately shut down the number 5 engine 100 seconds after liftoff. Booster systems rerouted propellants to the seven other engines. Contrary to some predictions, the shutdown engine remained intact and the imbalance of hot gases on the engine compartment heat shield had no ill effect. The SA-4 vehicle simulated all block II protuberances on the dummy second stage, e.g., fairings and vent

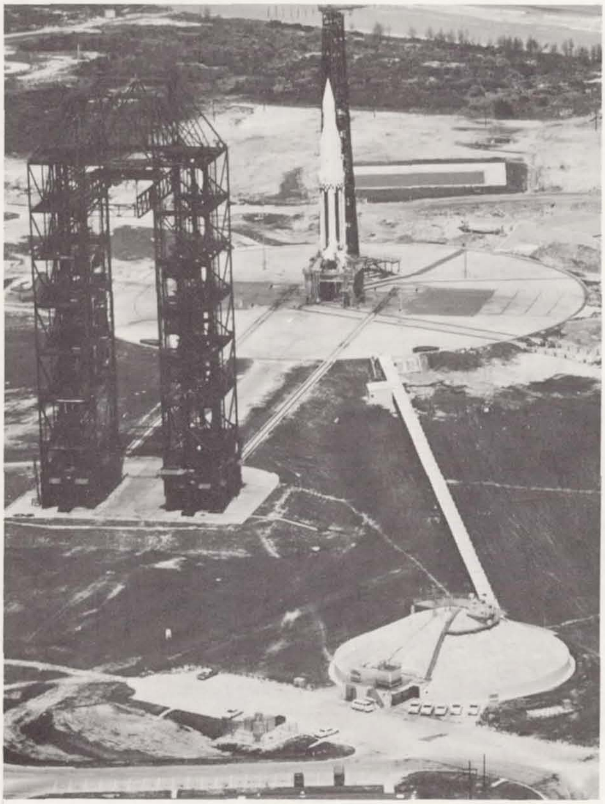


Fig. 40. SA-4 ready for launch from LC-34, March 1963.

ducts, to determine the aerodynamic effects of a live second stage. Block II antenna designs were also flown. The SA-4 vehicle employed a new radar altimeter and two experimental accelerometers for pitch and yaw measurements. After the successful flight, the von Braun team in Huntsville looked confidently toward two-stage missions.[6]

Pad damage from the first four launches did not surpass expectations. Restoration cost an average $200 000 and took one month. LVOD officials were particularly interested in assaying pad damage after the launch of SA-3. One of the mission's goals was to determine the effect on the pad of an increased propellant load with the consequent slow acceleration and longer exposure to rocket exhaust. The damage was comparable to the first two launches. The only effect readily attributable to the slower acceleration was increased damage to the pedestal water deluge system (the torus ring) and a warping of the flame deflector.[7]

The LOX fill mast at the base of the rocket had to be replaced after each launch. The 21-meter cable mast assembly extending up alongside the rocket also crumpled during each of the first two launches. After watching the long aluminum fixture collapse the second time, officials replaced it with an umbilical swing arm. The Huntsville engineers converted a swing arm intended for the SA-5 launch and shipped it to the Cape in early August. At LC-34, Consolidated Steel and Ets-Hokin-Galvin began work on the new umbilical tower two weeks after the SA-2 shot.* The swing arm, mounted in August, suffered very little damage in the SA-3 launch.[8]

A Second Saturn Launch Complex—LC-37

Block I—the first four Saturn launches—had gone up from launch complex 34. With the block II launches (SA-5 through SA-10), the program would move to new facilities at launch complex 37. The second complex had originated with the Hall Committee study of 1959, which found that an explosion would render LC-34 useless for a year (page 30). On 29 January 1960 Debus asked Dr. Eberhard Rees to approve a second Saturn complex. Since LC-37 would serve primarily as insurance for LC-34, no major design

---

*Saturn construction became rather complicated at times. LOD personnel observed that the column splices connecting the new construction to the existing 8-meter base were not consistent with Maurice Connell & Associates design drawings. In a letter to the Corps of Engineers, Debus stated, "Upon investigation, it appears as though the Jacksonville District Office had instituted changes in the original design without the concurrence of LOD, who has the design responsibility." The fabricator of the first phase steel had apparently erred in the column's angle of slope. The Corps solution, using one-inch diameter interference body bolts, was satisfactory; but the construction teams were using one-inch high-tension bolts, which had only two-thirds the necessary strength. Debus requested that the Corps get LOD's approval in future modifications.

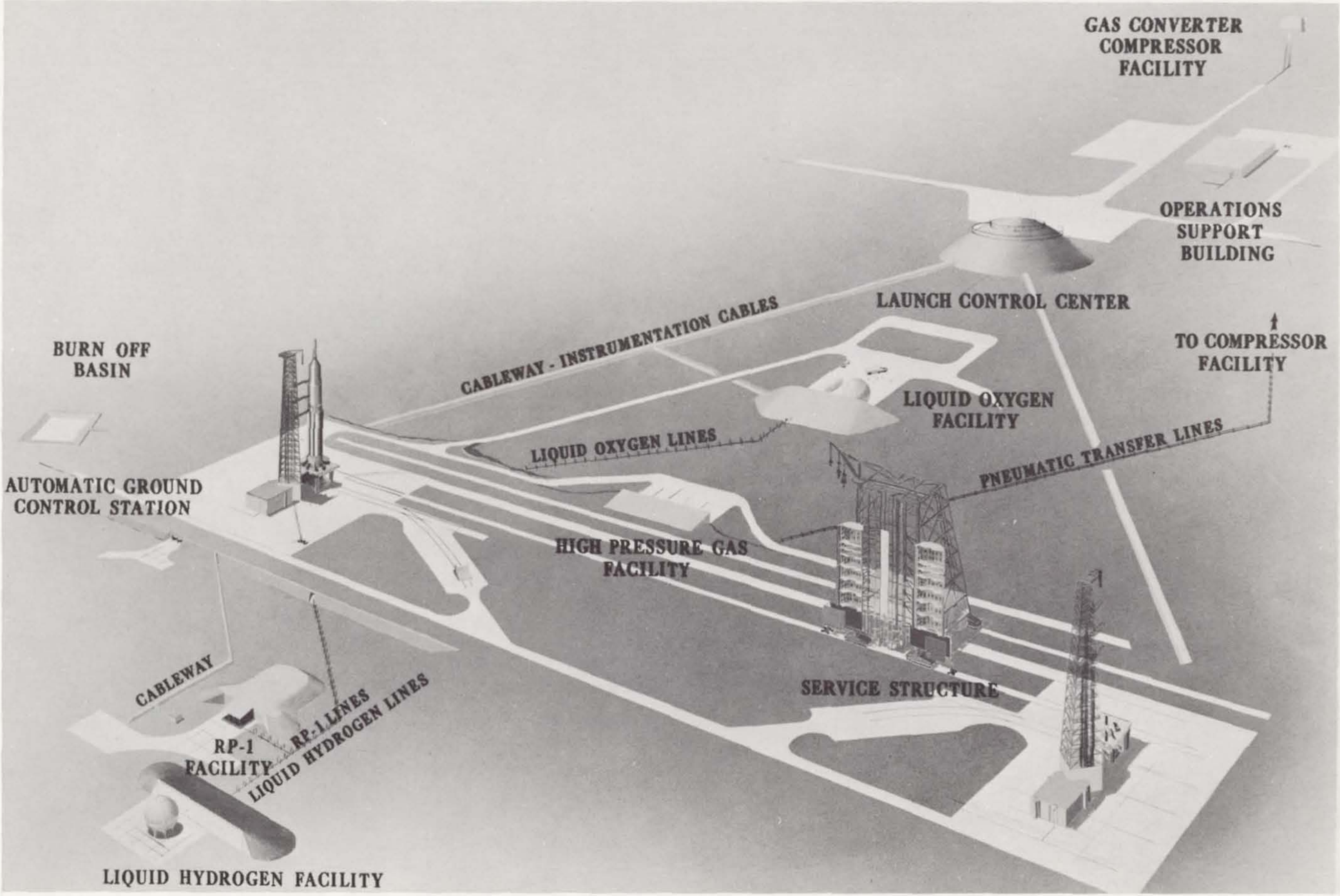

GAS CONVERTER COMPRESSOR FACILITY
OPERATIONS SUPPORT BUILDING
LAUNCH CONTROL CENTER
TO COMPRESSOR FACILITY
CABLEWAY - INSTRUMENTATION CABLES
BURN OFF BASIN
LIQUID OXYGEN FACILITY
LIQUID OXYGEN LINES
PNEUMATIC TRANSFER LINES
AUTOMATIC GROUND CONTROL STATION
HIGH PRESSURE GAS FACILITY
CABLEWAY
RP-1 LINES
LIQUID HYDROGEN LINES
SERVICE STRUCTURE
RP-1 FACILITY
LIQUID HYDROGEN FACILITY

Fig. 41. Proposed launch complex 37.

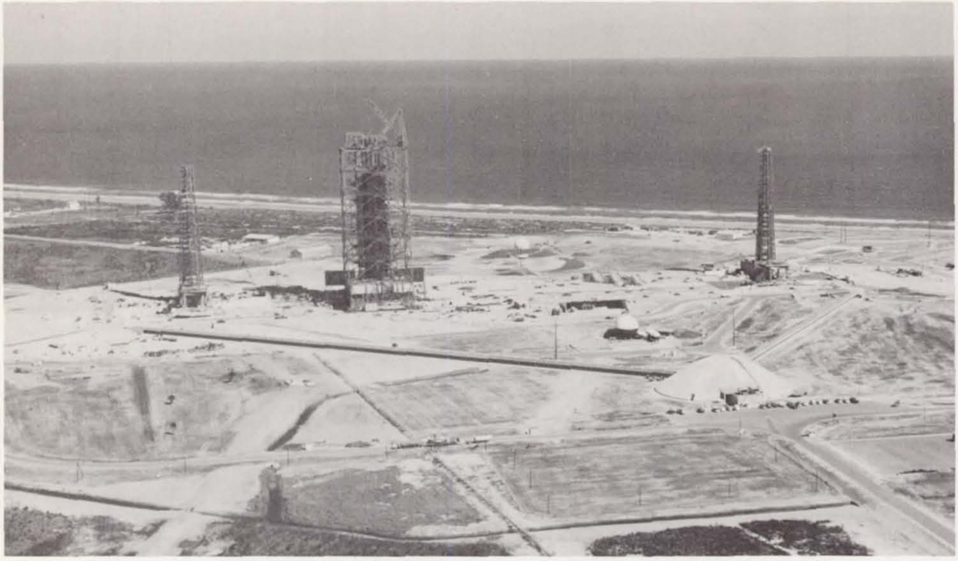


Fig. 42. LC-37 under construction, January 1963.

changes were anticipated. Taking into account the rising costs on complex 34, Debus estimated the price of LC-37 at $20 million (roughly one-third more than LC-34's costs as of January 1960). In his report, Debus warned Rees that LC-37 would likely be sited at the undeveloped north end of Cape Canaveral, 1220 meters north of LC-34 and 425 meters from the Atlantic Ocean. A complex at that location "would require utility capacities of unusually large magnitudes and the cost to Saturn, as the initial [user] could be excessive."[9] In February 1960, representatives from the Missile Firing Laboratory, Army Ballistic Missile Agency, and the Air Force Missile Test Center estimated demands for water, power, roads, communications, and instrumentation at LC-37 and discussed the cost of extending these to the proposed site. Eventually, development for LC-37 included a new electrical power substation and transmission lines, a 3785000-liter water reservoir, and a pumping network, at a price of $2.5 million.[10]

Hoping to have LC-37 ready for backup duty by January 1962, MFL originally set a mid-1960 deadline for criteria on the launcher, umbilical tower, and propellant systems.[11] Debus's decision to put a new service structure on LC-37 dashed these plans. Harvey Pierce, a Connell engineer, had prompted the change. Pierce had played an important role in designing LC-34 and more recently on the Hall Committee. On 26 February Pierce had written Debus about some inherent shortcomings in the inverted U service structure and recommended the formation of a study group.[12]

By mid-April 1960 Albert Zeiler was directing a two-pronged investigation into problems encountered with LC-34's service structure and concepts for a larger one. The latter reflected NASA's decision to build LC-37 for both C-1 and C-2 versions of the Saturn.[13] The service structure committee met periodically over three months to review 21 concepts proposed by NASA officials and private industry. No proposal proved fully satisfactory; attractive features from several were combined in the final recommendation. The committee concentrated on a half-dozen aspects of the service structure design, posing these alternatives:

- Mobile or fixed structure?
- Bridge crane or stiff-leg derrick for hoisting?
- Protection for the launch vehicle from wind loading or absorption of the rocket's wind loads into the service structure?
- Open or closed service platforms?
- Launch stand above or below ground?
- Collapsible or fixed umbilical tower?

The fixed service-structure designs were attractive since they offered economy and good utilization. The committee, however, feared the effects of a pad explosion on a fixed structure. The fixed design also posed a difficult engineering problem. Long cantilevered platforms with elaborate retracting mechanisms were needed to keep the main structural frame outside the rocket's drift cone (the safety allowance for effect of surface wind at launch). At an 11 July meeting in von Braun's office, Marshall officials discussed the effects of wind drift, thrust malalignment, and loss of one engine on the clearance requirement for a service structure or umbilical tower. The participants agreed to a 12-meter clearance between the vehicle's center line and the nearest obstruction at the 91-meter level. About the same time the Zeiler committee opted for a mobile service structure.[14]

The hoisting matter was settled in favor of a stiff-leg derrick mounted on top of the service structure. Although a bridge crane offered more flexibility, its use in the upper reaches of the service structure would obstruct the vertical escape trajectory of a manned payload. In the final design a 40-ton mobile crane positioned at a lower level assisted the 60-ton main hook on the stiff-leg derrick.

The question of wind loads arose because the Saturn was not self-supporting in high winds. One alternative was to design "hard point" connections between the vehicle and service structure platforms. This would require additional structural members on the rocket, increasing its empty weight. It would also add considerable stress to the service platform. The committee chose a design enclosing the launch vehicle in a 76-meter silo of

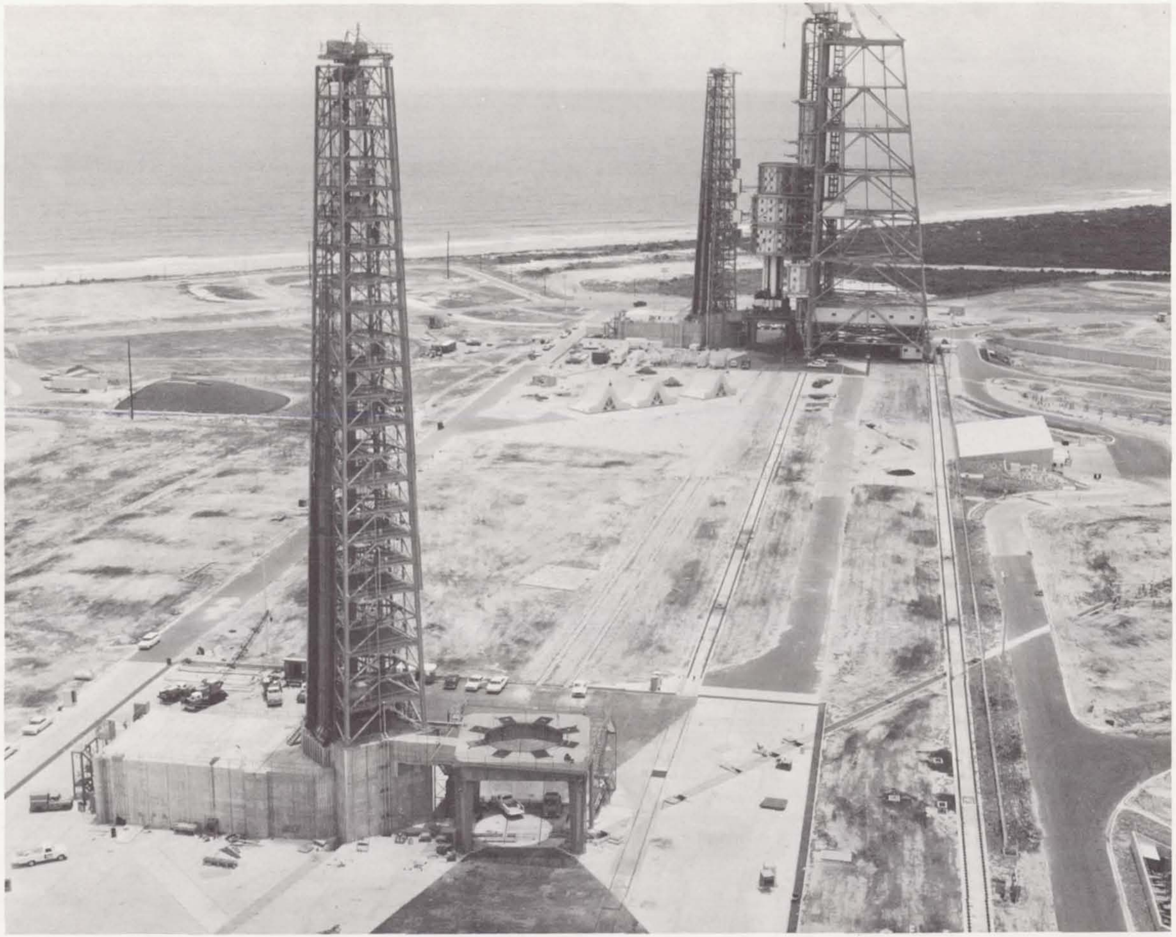


Fig. 43. The LC-37 service structure at pad B.

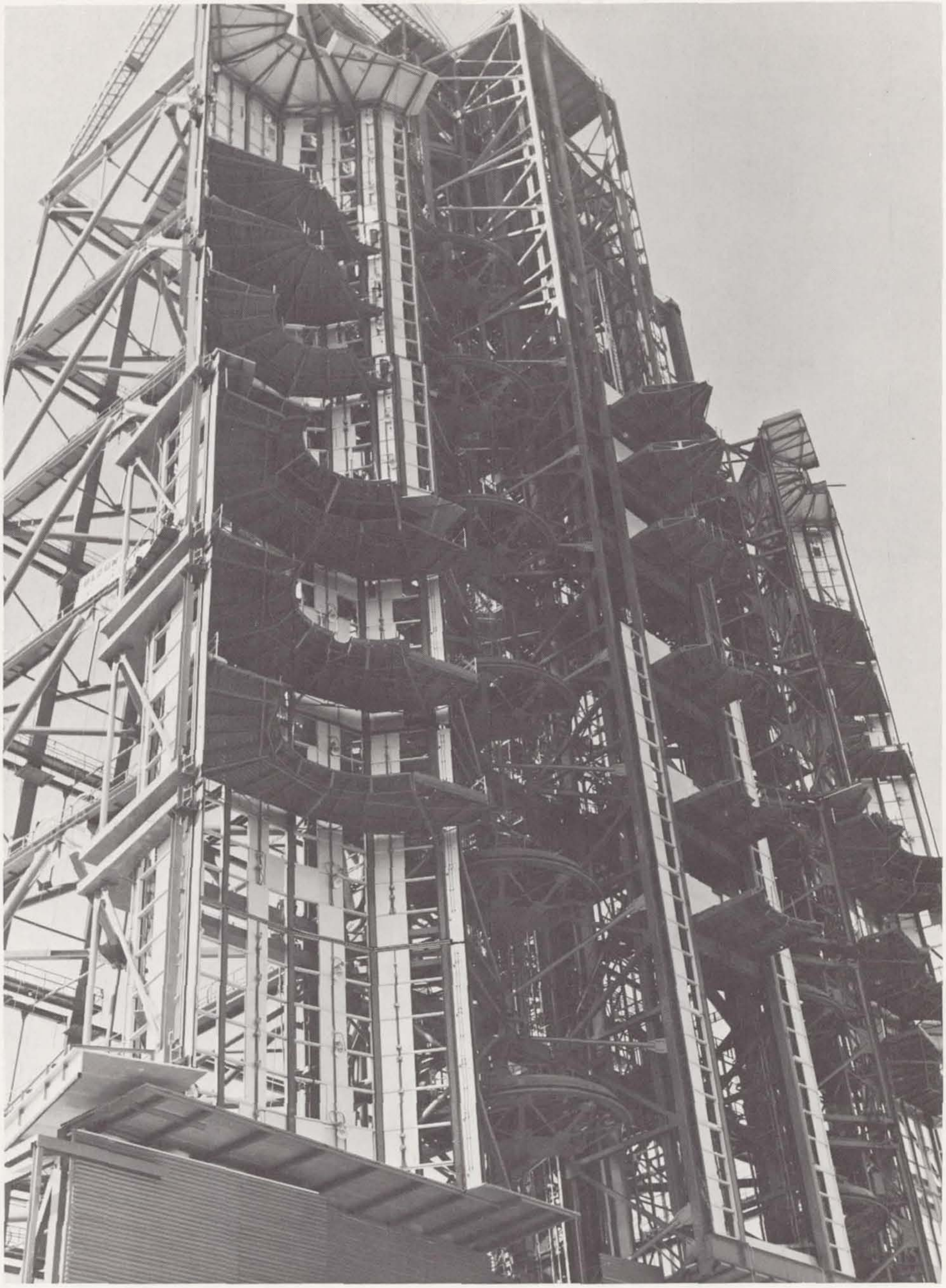


Fig. 44. The LC-37 service structure in the open position, February 1963.

five sections that eliminated wind loads and protected the rocket from flying debris. The silo design also solved the service platform problem. The committee recommended a minimum of ten adjustable work platforms in the structural steel frame silo. Air conditioning would provide the necessary ventilation during propellant loading.

The committee rejected a plan to put the launch stand below ground with the flame diverted into side trenches. Doing so would reduce the height of the service structure, but the higher costs of subsurface facilities, due to Cape Canaveral's high water table, were unacceptable.[15]

In designing the umbilical tower, the major concern was separation of the umbilical connections from the launch vehicle at liftoff. The committee studied jointed, collapsing towers; towers supported by cable catenaries (a curved cable suspended from two poles); and pivotal reclining structures. The size and weight of the Saturn umbilical connections—propellant piping, pneumatic lines, instrumentation circuitry, and electrical power lines—rendered all those concepts impractical. The committee recommended a free-standing umbilical tower, with ties to the service structure for support against high winds. Swing arms, entering the silo enclosure through cutouts in the platform mating edge, would connect the umbilicals to the launch vehicle.[16]

In August 1960 the launch team approached von Braun about adding a second pad to the LC-37 complex. The additional pad would provide a backup for Saturn C-2 launches and reduce launch time by one-third, since it would eliminate the month needed for pad repairs. Von Braun directed Debus to add a second pad on LC-37 if funds could be secured. Before the meeting adjourned, General Ostrander, Office of Launch Vehicle Program Director, arrived. After reviewing the proposal, Ostrander agreed to provide $700 000 for the initial modification work.[17]

Further revision of LC-37 plans occurred in early 1961. In January Debus heard of an Air Force-sponsored study on blast potentials of the Atlas-Centaur rocket. The Arthur D. Little Company findings, Debus informed von Braun, "indicated a problem of considerable magnitude with Saturn complex siting."[18] Since there was little data on liquid hydrogen's explosive characteristics, the calculations were tentative. The Little report, however, reinforced the Hall Committee's conclusions. On 12 January Debus asked Petrone, as Saturn project coordinator, to investigate the explosive potential of liquid hydrogen and determine the cost of extending pad distances beyond 183 meters. The distance between pads was subsequently increased to 365 meters.[19]

Two Florida firms won the LC-37 design contract: Connell and Associates prepared the service structure and umbilical tower designs, while Reynolds, Smith, and Hills handled the subsurface facilities. The architects' design work extended from February to July 1961. During the same period, Gahagan Company dredged thousands of cubic meters of sand from the Banana River onto the LC-37 site. Vibroflot machines began their work at the complex in mid-July. Blount Brothers Construction Company of Montgomery, Alabama, won the pad B construction bid in August 1961 and started work the following month. The project was 45% complete on 30 March 1962, when the Corps of Engineers awarded Blount Brothers a contract to build pad A.[20]

The new construction soon overshadowed the older Saturn facility. LC-37 was nearly three times larger than LC-34. The two umbilical towers rose 82 meters from a 10-meter-square base. Stability of the towers in high winds presented a challenge to the designers. The large number of electrical, propellant, and pneumatic lines running up through the lofty structures gave the tower surface a wind resistance nearly equivalent to a solid wall. At the base of each tower stood a four-story building (one floor was underground) containing a generator room, high-pressure-gas distribution equipment, and a cable distribution center. The building would later house digital computers for the automated checkout.[21] Hydrogen burn ponds were an added feature on LC-37. The gaseous hydrogen boiled off from the LH_2 storage tank and the S-IV stage and flowed several hundred meters through pipes to the burn pond. The LC-37 launch control center, or blockhouse, was similar to LC-34's, but half again as large. By far the most imposing of LC-37's facilities was a 4700-ton, 92-meter-high service structure, containing four elevators, nine fixed platforms, and ten adjustable platforms that allowed access to all sides of the vehicle. The six semicircular enclosures could withstand 200-kilometer-per-hour winds. When completed in 1963, the self-propelled, rail-mounted structure was the largest wheeled vehicle in the world.[22]

Erection of a special assembly building was a third construction project for Saturn I in 1962. Some novel building designs were rejected before deciding on a conventional hangar configuration. The new hangar AF was in the Cape industrial area, a short distance from the Saturn dock. A bridge crane in the hangar's main bay provided a lift capability for the initial upper stage checkout; lean-tos on both sides provided extra office space. The Launch Vehicle Operations Division performed some preliminary checkout work in hangar AF, but half of its big bay was soon given over to Gemini and Apollo spacecraft operations.[23]

The Troubled Launching of SA-5, January 1964

The block II version of Saturn I (SA-5 through SA-10) represented a sizable increase in launch requirements over block I. Additional RF links,

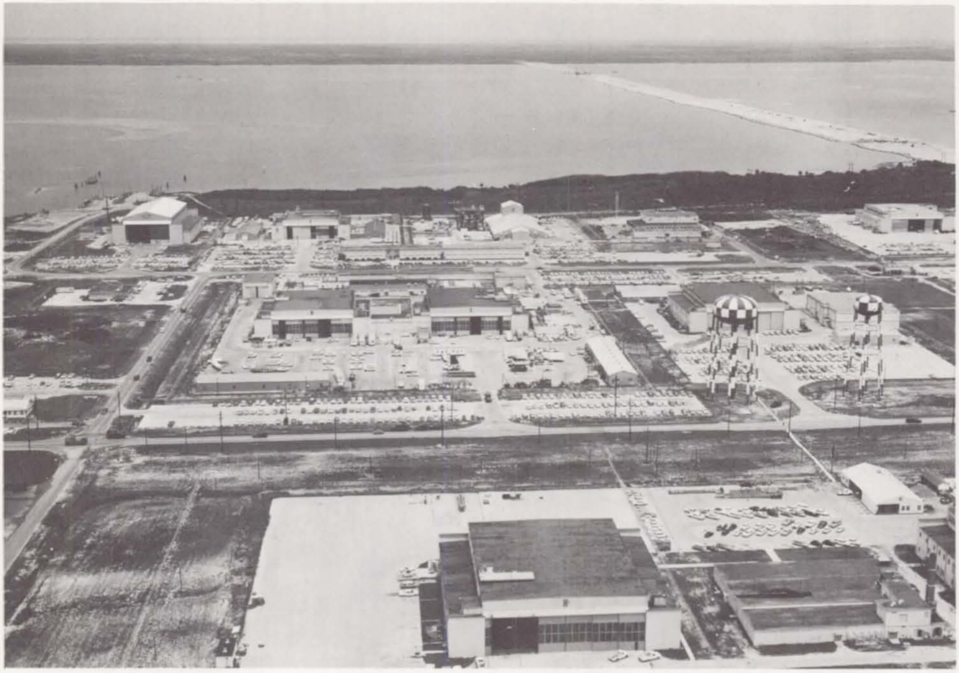


Fig. 45. The industrial area on the Cape. Hangar AF is in the upper left. The causeway (under construction) leads to Merritt Island in the distance.

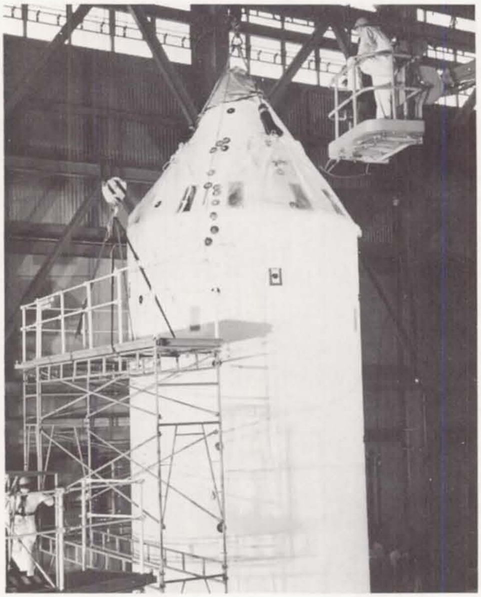


Fig. 46. Mating spacecraft modules inside Hangar AF, March 1964.

calibrations, and systems tests in the two-stage rocket nearly doubled launch checkout time (see table 1).

The greatest change in the block II rocket was the addition of a hydrogen-fueled second stage. Douglas Aircraft Corporation had won the contract for the S-IV stage in April 1960, five months after NASA adopted the Silverstein Committee's recommendation to use liquid hydrogen in the Saturn's upper stages. The 13-meter stage had six Pratt & Whitney RL-10 engines, the same power plant that NASA intended to use in the Centaur rocket. Confidence in the S-IV stage originally stemmed from expectations that Centaur tests would prove the effectiveness of the engine long before SA-5. As things worked out, the first successful Centaur launch came in November 1963, more than two years behind schedule and only two months ahead of the SA-5 launch.

SA-5 differed in other ways from its Saturn predecessors. Engineers had increased the 340500-kilogram capacity of the S-I first stage by more than 31%. Each H-1 engine had been uprated to its intended 836600 newtons, giving that stage its full thrust. Marshall had also attached eight fins to the base of the S-I stage, four stubby fins and four longer ones that extended 2.7 meters from the rocket. These provided additional aerodynamic stability (a decision prompted by possible use in the Dyna Soar program). The guidance and control instruments for both stages flew in an experimental instrumentation unit above the S-IV stage. The payload for SA-5 was a Jupiter nosecone.[24]

The postlaunch celebration for SA-4 was barely over when Hans Gruene's Launch Vehicle Operations team turned its attention to the block II series. The first order of business was fitting LC-37B with a dummy SA-5 vehicle. The dummy stages were erected and mechanical support equipment tests completed by the end of April 1963. In the first two propellant flow tests, the transfer system kept the hydrogen below 20 kelvins (−253° C). Chemical analysis revealed contaminants, but the liquid hydrogen cleared up on the third test, saving the launch team a detailed investigation. There were a number of routine problems such as leaking LOX lines, freezing LOX vent valves, and inoperative gauges. Only one major change was required, a modification of the baffles in the S-I stage LOX tank. There was time for this since the SA-5 launch date had been moved from August to December.[25] After the wet tests were completed in late June, NASA flew the S-IV dummy stage back to California aboard a modified B-377 aircraft.*

Gruene's launch team erected the Saturn booster on 23 August and during the next 30 days performed mechanical system tests, calibrations for

---

*Because of its enlarged fuselage, the plane was popularly known as the "Pregnant Guppy."

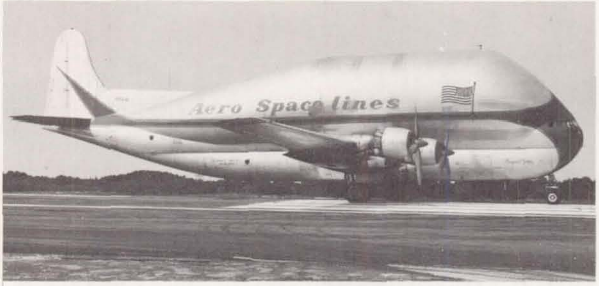


Fig. 47. The Pregnant Guppy, a modified B-377 aircraft used to airlift Saturn stages, July 1963.

the instruments, and telemetry and RF tests. The only serious difficulty was one that apartment dwellers can appreciate—four service structure elevators that were frequently out of order and usually crowded. In the upper levels of the 90-meter-high, open structure, elevator cables were exposed to rain and wind. Maintenance problems were inevitable. In September 1963 the combined load of facilities contractors (outfitting the service structure) and SA-5 launch technicians strained the elevators' capacity. Gruene informed Debus on the 12th that "elevator usage is now critical and may become intolerable when checkout activities require more personnel."[26] Gruene hoped to finish outfitting the service structure after the normal workday to alleviate the problem.

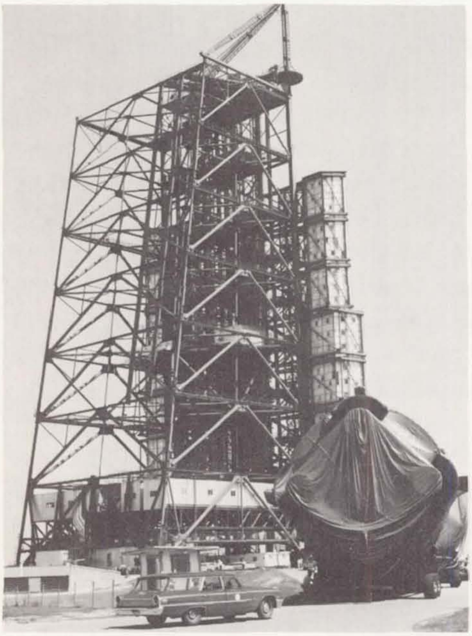


Fig. 48. Transporting the SA-5 first stage to pad 37B.

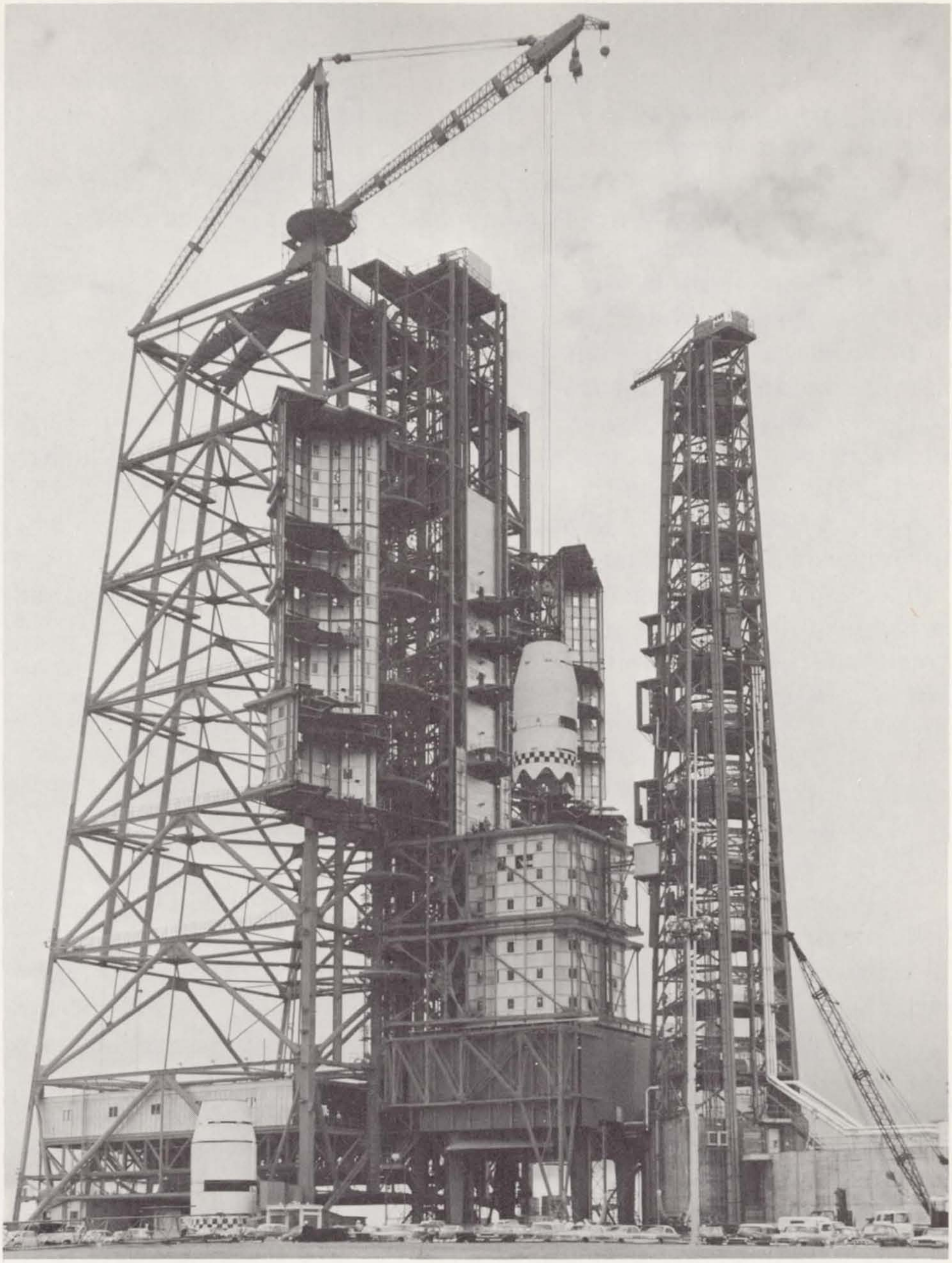


Fig. 49. Erecting SA-5. The live S-IV stage is being lowered into position, replacing the dummy spacer, which is on the ground (left).

In Sacramento, Douglas engineers completed four weeks of post-static checkout of the S-IV on 10 September. The second stage was removed from its test stand, loaded aboard the B-377, and flown to Cape Canaveral. Douglas personnel gave the stage a thorough inspection, including the use of a sound probe to detect debonding of tank insulation. The probe was moved back and forth over the outer surface of the stage, its signal reflecting back from the inner side of the tank skin into the probe's sensing device. An oscilloscope showed both the output signal and the echo. Welds or any other irregularities stood out clearly. Heavy winds and rain that struck the Cape the following week did not halt S-IV activities in hangar AF. However, out on pad 37B the telephones failed, the service structure elevators were temporarily shut down, and the launch team lost three days of work.[27]

Operations reached a hectic pace in mid-October. After the S-IV stage was erected on the 11th, Robert Moser's office revised the launch schedule to give Douglas a week longer for S-IV checkout and modifications and a combined LOX-LH_2 tanking test. Moser maintained the 6 December launch date by compressing the time allowed for launch vehicle tests in November. Even with the extra week, Douglas found the test requirements more than it could handle in a 16-hour day. On 17 October the California firm asked for around-the-clock operations until the propulsion tests were completed. Gruene, hard pressed to support the S-IV stage operations, reluctantly agreed.[28]

The Cracked Sleeves

Although the S-IV erection was the major activity on 11 October, that day's status report also mentioned the discovery of a cracked sleeve on the "S-I engine position #3 hydraulic package, yaw actuator, low pressure return line."[29] The sleeve, a centimeter-long metal cylinder, was an integral part of end-fitting assemblies on hundreds of pneumatic and hydraulic line joints in the first stage. Technicians replaced the sleeve on the 15th and continued the check of the hydraulic actuator. The incident, however, caused concern in Huntsville where Chrysler personnel had reported similar sleeve failures after pressurization tests. A special investigation of S-I engines on the 22d found 12 more cracked sleeves. These sleeves and the affected tubing were replaced during the next two weeks. The cracked sleeves apparently had little to do with the decision in late October to delay the launch another five days. Gruene blamed the delay on contamination in the S-IV engine and time lost for a hurricane alert.[30]

The assassination of President Kennedy slowed operations for three days, but the revised schedule was still being maintained in late November. A cryogenic tanking test on the 26th started well enough. There were only minor problems as the team went through the various phases of S-I LOX loading: the 15% slow fill, the fast fill, topping off, and replenishment. It was evening when liquid hydrogen began to flow to the S-IV stage. Albert Zeiler, arriving at LC-37 to watch the last portion of the test, heard an explosion but could not immediately contact Andrew Pickett, the Chief of the Mechanical and Propulsion Division. Inside the blockhouse, a technician at the periscope saw fire on the pad. Television monitors picked up the flames, but gave only a vague idea of the fire's extent and location. Pickett terminated the hydrogen loading. A visit to the pad revealed the cause of the explosion. Gaseous hydrogen had leaked from a ruptured bellows in the hydrogen vent line that ran from the rocket to the burn pond. The rupture was probably caused by water seeping back into the pipe from the burn pond and then freezing when the cryogenic hydrogen entered the line. The escaping hydrogen had collected beneath the metal plates covering the vent line trench. Purging the vent line with helium quickly extinguished the fire. The launch team then detanked the propellants, leaving damage assessment for the following day.[31] The fire caused Robert Moser to reschedule the cryogenics test for 6 December, put operations on a seven-day week, and predict a one-week delay for the launch.

Although there were problems on the next cryogenic test, launch was still expected before Christmas. On the 10th, however, the launch team detected its fourth cracked sleeve in two days. The discovery of seven more cracked sleeves the following day caused Marshall to postpone the launch for a month despite a successful simulated flight test on the 13th. In the interim the launch team replaced all of the sleeves* in critical pneumatic and hydraulic circuits.[32]

The cracked sleeves were not the last of SA-5's problems. During the simulated flight test, D. C. McMath's RF and telemetry section had experienced radio interference in the 400- to 450-megacycle band. Results of an RF check on 23 December provided no holiday cheer as three of SA-5's four command destruct receivers responded to an Air Force Range signal, 42 megacycles above that used for the Saturn destruct command. Although

---

*The sleeve failure was attributed to a change in specifications and the longer length of SA-5 checkout. SA-5's sleeves had been cast at a different temperature from previous sleeves and one result was the appearance of carbon pockets in the stainless steel cylinders. These carbon pockets reduced the "long-life" factor (measured in seconds of operational life for some rocket hardware). MSFC eventually scrapped 22 000 defective sleeves.

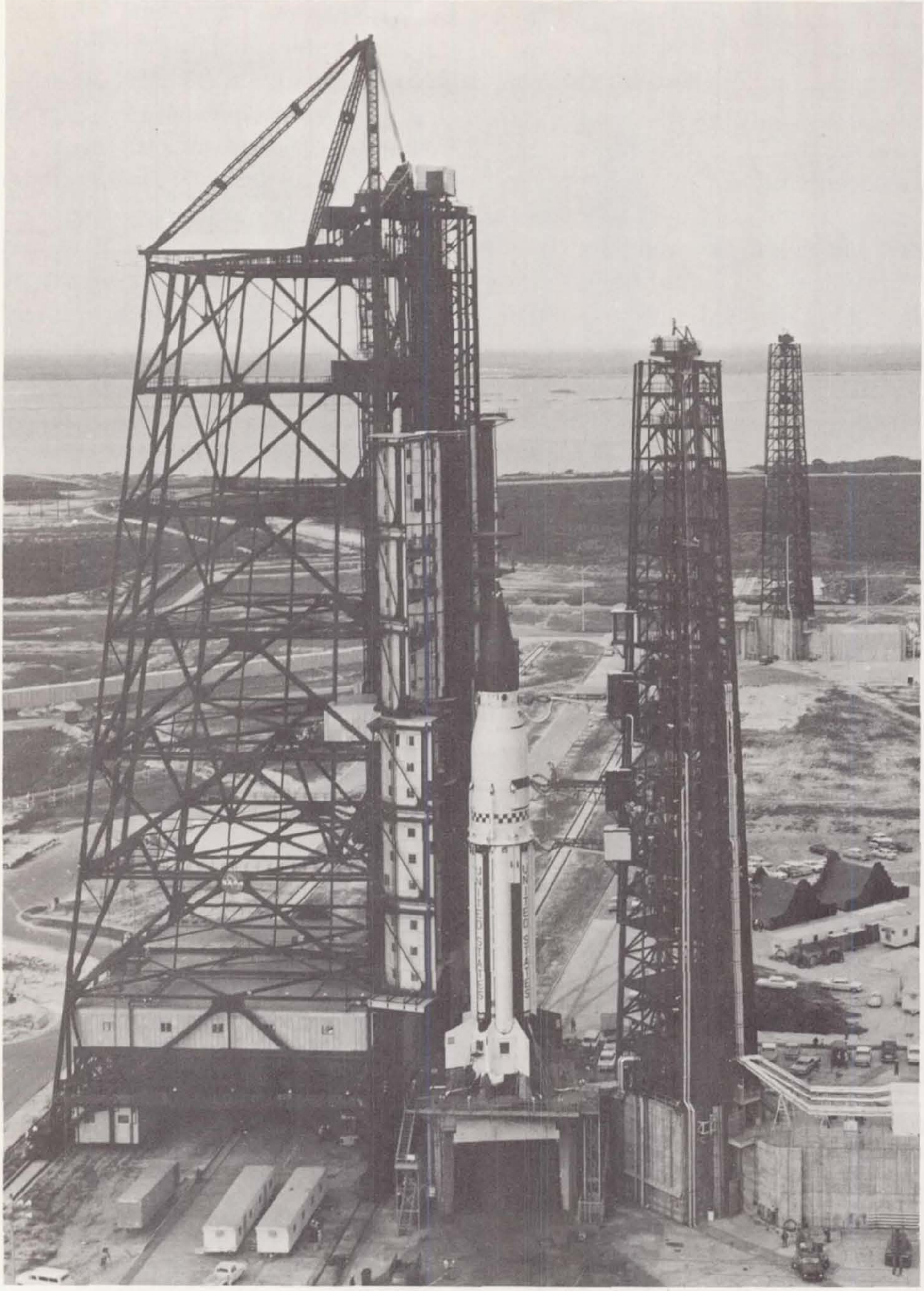


Fig. 50. The service structure moving back from SA-5, November 1963.

McMath was anxious to unscramble the signal-mixing, further testing had to wait two weeks for complete external RF silence. January tests appeared to place the source of signal mixing within the service structure, but when the structure was removed on the 14th, the interference continued. Suspicion next turned to the umbilical tower, and the possibility "that RF signals transmitted from the vehicle are being mixed [there] to produce the interference." The launch was nine days away when the RF section finally ran a satisfactory test on the 18th. Even so, the source of trouble was not definitely identified. Since some team members still considered the UDOP tracking station a possible source of interference, McMath recommended removal of the UDOP power amplifier.[33]

All's Well That Ends Well

The last weekend in January, America's television networks prepared live coverage of the SA-5 shot scheduled for Monday the 27th. An incident on Friday had threatened to postpone the launch: during a static firing test at Sacramento an S-IV stage had exploded, damaging the test stand and support equipment. After evaluating the accident, NASA officials decided the likelihood of an S-IV engine failure was sufficiently low to proceed with the SA-5 launch.[34]

Col. Lee James, Marshall's Saturn I-IB project manager, and Ted Smith, Douglas director of S-IV stage development, were among the 200 who gathered at the LC-37 blockhouse on Sunday evening for the start of the SA-5 countdown. Robert Moser was test supervisor for the operation; KSC's John Twigg and Douglas's John Churchwell served as test conductors for the S-I and S-IV stages. There were three holds during the night: 3 minutes for network checks, a 17-minute hold for battery verification, and a 27-minute hold to change an accelerometer. Shortly after sunrise the launch team discovered a leak in the S-IV main LOX line that took 48 minutes to correct.[35]

The countdown proceeded satisfactorily despite these minor problems. S-I LOX loading began about 8:30 a.m. and went smoothly through the fast fill. When LOX reached the 93% level in the first stage tanks, the propellants team switched to the LOX replenish system (used to ensure a controlled slow flow). Instead of continuing its rise, the S-I stage "mass readout" (the percentage of LOX in the tanks) began to fall. Launch officials quickly realized that the replenish system was not supplying LOX to the S-I stage. Leroy Sherrer, Oxidizer Section chief, first thought a frozen valve might be the cause of the failure. Finding the replenish facility in order, Sherrer's group moved up the LOX line toward the pad. W. C. Rainwater's Ground Support Equipment Section started from the other end of the line, the base of the rocket. In less than an hour, the teams found the blockage—a "blind" flange (plate without an opening) left in the replenish line from a previous pressurization test. Safety precautions and venting problems precluded the immediate removal of the aluminum plate, and Debus reluctantly scrubbed the mission.[36]

A tired Rocco Petrone informed 150 newsmen of the launch postponement. He admitted that failure to remove the flange was a human error, but refused to single out anyone. "It was a routine procedure that we've done many times before. This time we didn't do it. We make mistakes."[37] Debus had an even less pleasant task—explaining the mishap to five members of the House Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, down from Washington for an inspection. The KSC director assured the visiting Congressmen that in future operations the launch team would tag flanges with red flags, as they presently did with all electrical work. In this way any deviation from the operational flight configuration would be flagged and a record kept by test supervisors. Debus rescheduled the launch for Wednesday morning, the 29th.[38]

There was one unplanned interruption in the second countdown, a 73-minute hold due to RF interference on the C-band radar and command destruct frequencies. At 11:25 a.m. SA-5 lifted off into a 37-kilometer-per-hour wind and a heavy sprinkling of clouds. Painted designs on the rocket's skin aided nine unmanned and four manned cameras to track pitch, yaw, and roll movements for the first 1000 meters. Six camera-equipped tracking telescopes, located along the Florida coast and on adjacent Grand Bahama Island, provided higher-altitude photographic coverage. Radars fed information to three computer-operated flight position plotting boards located in blockhouse 37. Another KSC computer, linked for the first time to an Eastern Test Range vehicle impact prediction computer, transmitted real time (very nearly instantaneous) vehicle position data to Marshall, as well as to Goddard Space Flight Center, NASA's communications center in Maryland. Telemetry aboard the SA-5 transmitted 1183 separate measurements back to seven receiving stations in the Cape area; the ground stations relayed this information by radio and hardwire* to data processing machines in hangar D.[39]

**Hardwire* meant any system of electrical wiring over which signals passed, as distinguished from radio transmission.

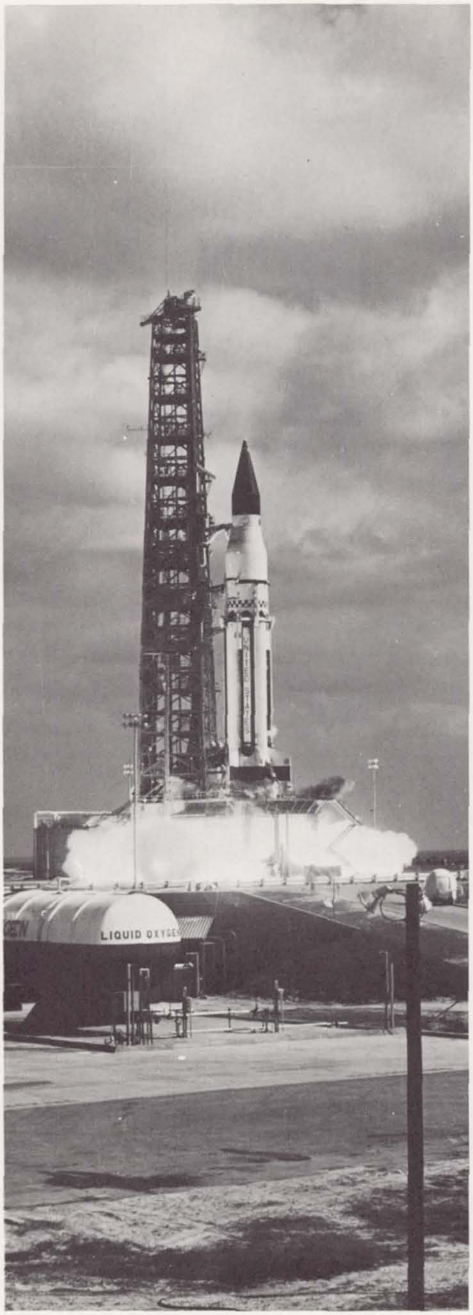

UNITED STATES
LIQUID OXYGE

Fig. 51. The launch of SA-5, 29 January 1964.

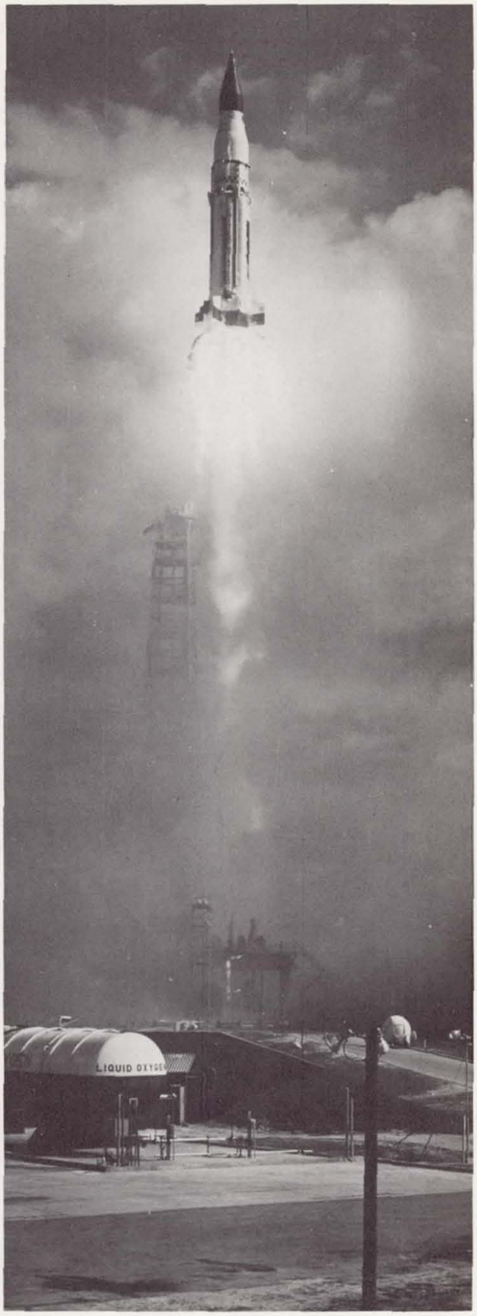

LIQUID OXYGE

Fig. 52. The launch of SA-5, moments later.

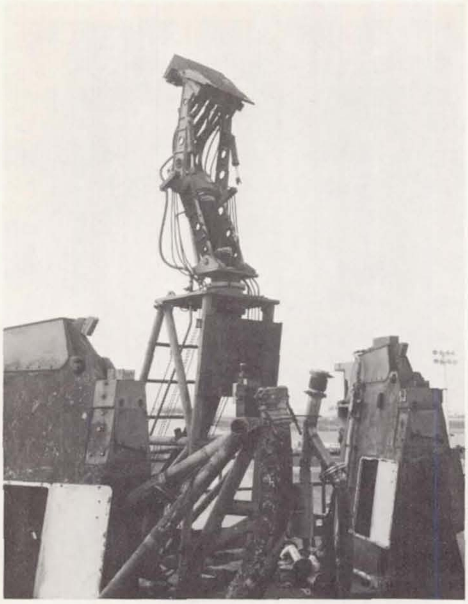


Fig. 53. Damage to pad 37B from the launch of SA-5. The short cable mast (top) carried electrical and pneumatic lines to the first stage. Access plates have been opened in the support arms (lower R and L) to inspect the pneumatic system.

The launch vehicle carried eight movie cameras and a television system to record stage separation and ignition of the S-IV engines. The separation of the two stages began at T + 147.2 seconds, 6 seconds after the first stage inboard engine had shut down and 0.2 second after the outboard engines had cut off. The first action was the firing of small S-IV ullage rockets which forced propellants toward the engines. As booster retrorockets fired to slow the S-I stage, explosive bolts disconnected the two stages. The S-I and eight camera capsules fell into the Atlantic 800 kilometers downrange from Cape Canaveral. The S-IV engines then burned for 8 minutes, placing 16965 kilograms in orbit, the heaviest payload in history.[40]

A nationwide audience viewed the SA-5 launch on television and received a remarkably clear picture of booster engine shutdown at 60000 meters altitude. Immediately following the launch, President Johnson telephoned his congratulations to the launch team in blockhouse 37. He told Wernher von Braun that he hoped his recent gift of a Texas hat would still fit the MSFC director. Von Braun contrasted the day's success with the Explorer I launch six years earlier and praised the Douglas Company for its role in developing the S-IV stage. Although the achievement of earth orbit was not even a secondary goal, Robert Seamans said the mission left "no question" that the United States had surpassed the Soviet Union in "ability to take large payloads into orbit." George Mueller, NASA's Associate Director for Manned Space Flight, described the launch as "the first step to the moon."[41]

The Remaining Block II Launches, SA-6–SA-10

SA-6 (28 May 1964)

Later Saturn I missions brought new requirements and major launch problems, but none of the subsequent operations dragged on like SA-5. Launch preparations for the remaining five Saturns averaged 91 days, 70 days less than the SA-5 operation. An Apollo boilerplate, duplicating the weight and external configuration of the fully equipped spacecraft, flew on the May 1964 launch of SA-6. Boilerplate 13, the payload for SA-6, was one of 30 spacecraft built by North American for preliminary Apollo tests. The Manned Spacecraft Center had already launched several boilerplates at White Sands Proving Grounds to test the spacecraft for land and water impact, parachute recovery, pad aborts, and water egress and flotation. SA-6 demonstrated the spacecraft's structural compatibility with a Saturn launch vehicle.[42]

The checkout of boilerplate 13 had begun in December 1963 when G. Merritt Preston, Director of Houston's Florida Operations, sent George T. Sasseen to North American's Downey, California, plant with a 40-man team. Sasseen's counterpart on the North American staff was project engineer Robert Gore. For two months the NASA–North American team subjected boilerplate 13 to a series of rigorous tests, from assembly line inspections to simulated flights. After the spacecraft was transferred to Florida, there were more tests in hangar AF. By early April the spacecraft team was ready to stack the boilerplate atop the Saturn I vehicle. During the next six weeks, the team resolved problems in the spacecraft cooling systems and in the mechanism for jettisoning the launch escape tower. Much time was spent checking telemetry and the 116 instrumented measurements that recorded structural and thermal responses.[43]

The 20 May launch date was postponed after liquid oxygen damaged a wire mesh screen during a test, causing fuel contamination. Six days later, a countdown proceeded satisfactorily until T – 115 minutes, when a compressor in the environmental control system failed. The air conditioning gone, the temperature in the rocket's guidance system soon exceeded tolerance and the launch was scrubbed.[44]

On 28 May it seemed that Launch Vehicle Operations might postpone the third attempt. Liquid oxygen vapors, vented from the S-IV stage, obscured the line of sight from a ground theodolite to an optical window in the SA-6's instrument unit. Winds blew the vapor away after a 38-minute hold, but adjusting a LOX replenish valve forced another hour's delay. Then in the last minutes of countdown, the sighting problem recurred. This time LOX vapors from an umbilical tower "skid vent" blanketed the optical window. Since stabilized platform alignment control was essential to the launch, the automatic sequencer included this function among its checks. If the theodolite did not have a clear sighting, the sequencer would shut down at T – 3 seconds. Quick action by two launch team members saved the day. With the count stopped at T – 41 seconds, Terry Greenfield, Electrical Systems Branch chief, removed the stabilized platform reference from the sequencer's functions by "jumpering out" several electrical wires. Meanwhile, Milton Chambers, Gyro and Stabilizer Systems chief, improvised a way to maintain the platform in its proper flight azimuth through manual control. The count resumed 75 minutes later. Ironically, the vapors blew away from the optical window during the final 40 seconds of countdown.[45]

SA-7 (18 September 1964)

Since 1954 Redstone, Jupiter, Pershing, and Saturn rockets had employed a 33-pound multichanneled tape recorder, commonly called a "black box," for inflight commands such as inboard engine cutoff, ullage rocket ignition, and fuel pressure valve openings. It was replaced on SA-7 by a computer that could be corrected during flight. SA-7 also marked the close of Saturn I research and development tests. Following the seventh successful launch, NASA officials declared the Saturn I launch vehicle "operational."[46]

SA-7 set two precedents in Kennedy Space Center launch operations. In early July technicians found a cracked LOX dome on engine 6 of the S-I stage. It was the first time the launch team had to replace a Saturn engine. The experience was not novel for long. NASA officials, attributing the cracks to the same "stress corrosion" that had plagued SA-5 sleeves, returned all eight engines to the Rocketdyne plant in Neosho, Missouri. The removal of each 725-kilogram engine took KSC and Chrysler mechanics about ten hours. As the supervisor described it: "We had to disconnect all electrical cables, unhook the hydraulic systems from the outboard engines, and disconnect LOX and fuel suction lines, the turbine exhaust, purge lines, networks and measuring cabling. It was quite a job."[47]

Replacing the engines in the S-I stage set the launch back from late August to mid-September. Hurricanes Cleo and Dora cost another half-week's work. Although Cleo struck the Cape on 28 August with 110-kilometer-per-hour winds, SA-7 was unharmed inside the service structure.* A surprise visit by President Johnson on 15 September coincided with the first countdown demonstration test, an exercise added to the launch

---

*NASA officials estimated that the two hurricanes cost about $250 000 in terms of property damage and manhours for storm preparation and cleanup. Water damage was extensive at the LC-39 construction sites. Hangar AF on the Cape was another casualty; a leaky roof resulted in a lot of soggy artwork and photo-processing gear for Technical Information's Graphics Section.

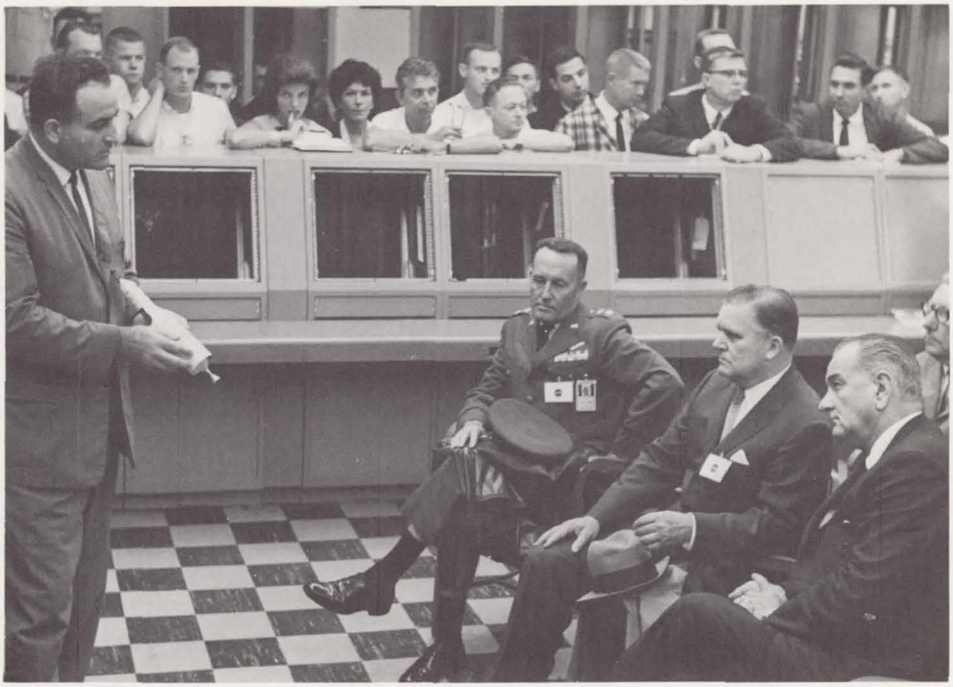


Fig. 54. Rocco Petrone briefing Maj. Gen. Leighton I. Davis, Administrator James Webb, and President Lyndon Johnson in the LC-37 control center, September 1964.

checkout after the blind flange incident on SA-5. Robert Moser's Technical Planning and Scheduling Office had decided to run, as the last test, a full countdown of the fully fueled Saturn (with a mission abort just prior to scheduled umbilical ejection). The test would become a focal point of launch operations in later Saturn missions. Its first performance went smoothly, as did the launch on the 18th.[48]

SA-8, 9, 10 (16 February through 10 July 1965)

Each of the last three Saturn I's carried a Pegasus satellite enclosed within a boilerplate service module. The satellite's function was to determine the incidence and severity of meteoroids in the region where Apollo astronauts would orbit the earth. As Pegasus was not an integral part of the Apollo program, its use raised an administrative question—who would be responsible for launch and inflight control? NASA Headquarters placed Huntsville in charge of configuration changes during launch operations. Debus was assigned mission responsibility through earth-orbital insertion. He then turned over Pegasus direction to a representative from the Headquarters Office of Advanced Research and Technology.[49]

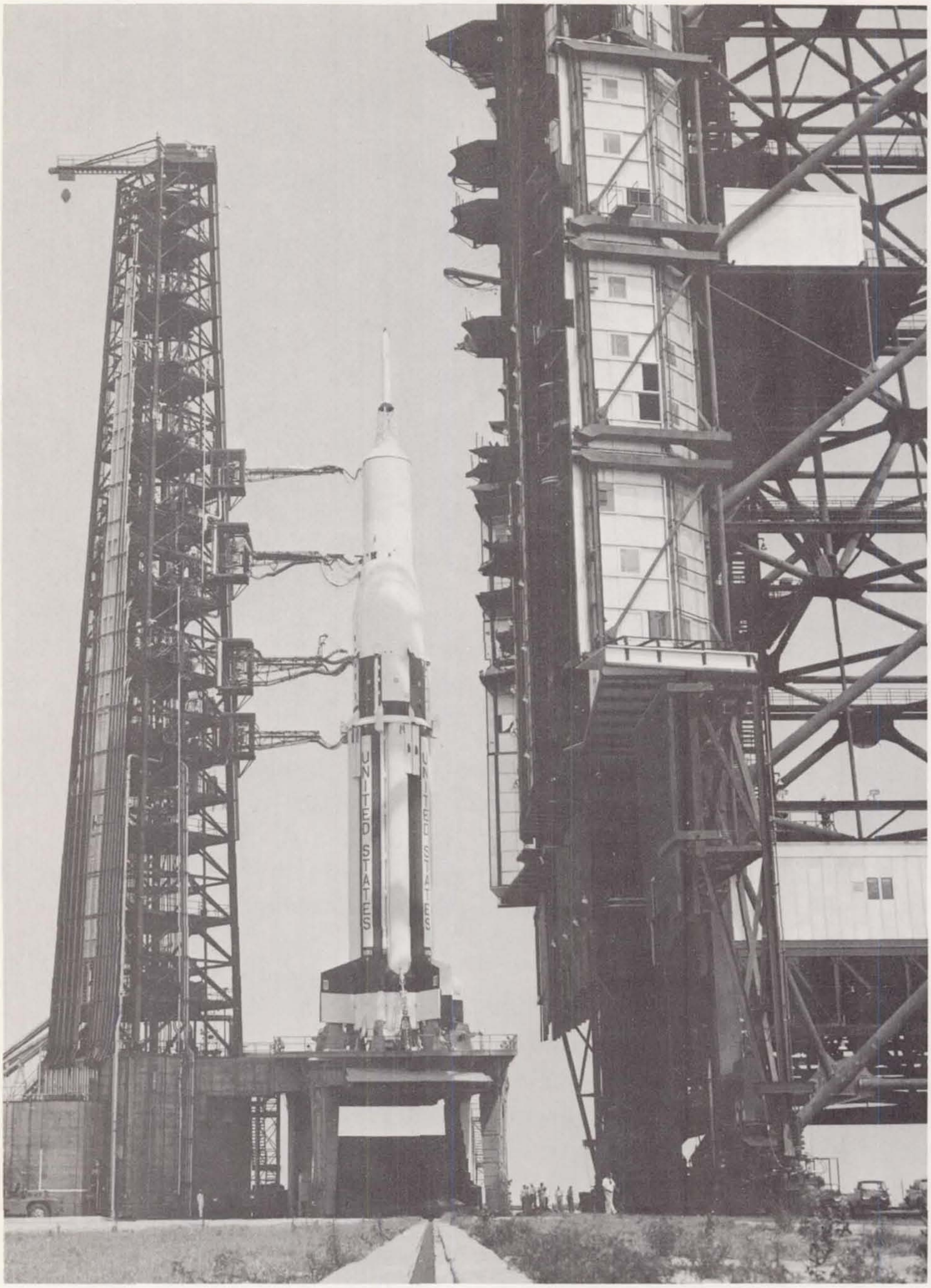

UNITED STATES
UNITED STATES

Fig. 55. Countdown demonstration test of SA-8 on pad 37B, May 1965. The service structure is moving away. The launch escape system (the top-most part of the space vehicle) was flown, but not activated, on this mission.

As the manufacture of the SA-9 booster progressed more rapidly than the SA-8, the next two Saturn shots were fired out of sequence; the SA-9 launch preceded SA-8 by three months. Problems with the Pegasus satellite delayed the erection of SA-9 until late October 1964. Once operations were under way, the launch team experienced little difficulty. SA-9 roared off its launch pedestal on 16 February after two technical holds: one involved the recharge of a battery in the Pegasus; the other came when the Eastern Test Range's flight safety computer suffered a power failure. Pad damage from the rocket exhaust was described as "the lightest of any to date."[50] There was some water damage, however, from a broken torus ring. The ensuing cascade of water flooded the launcher and adjacent electrical support equipment.[51]

Contractor teams dominated LC-37 during launch preparations for SA-8. The operation marked Chrysler Corporation's assumption of responsibility, under broad guidance, for first-stage operations. The company's launch team also participated in overall space vehicle testing. Douglas officials directed S-IV stage checkout, IBM conducted tests on its instrumentation unit, and Bendix Corporation provided ground support. After 86 days of space vehicle checkout, SA-8 launched Apollo boilerplate 26 (with Pegasus 2 inside) on a successful 25 May flight.[52]

The SA-10 operation was conducted in haste. NASA officials had decided to begin LC-37 modifications for the Saturn IB rocket in August. If Kennedy Space Center could not launch the rocket by 31 July, its flight would have to come after the IB series. Under the pressure of this deadline, Chrysler and Douglas undertook 24-hour operations.

The SA-10 countdown proceeded without a technical hold, a near perfect finish to a highly successful series. The NASA-Saturn-contractor team had demonstrated the soundness of the Saturn I rocket and its launch facilities. A confident launch team looked forward to the next challenge: Saturn IB.[53]

Page intentionally left blank

11

GROUND PLANS FOR OUTER-SPACE VENTURES

The Task

By late 1962 NASA had made most of the basic decisions affecting the development of launch facilities and was ready to build the moonport. Contractors would start construction on the main buildings at launch complex 39 and in the industrial area, eight kilometers to the south, as soon as sufficient design information was available, and install equipment as construction proceeded far enough to allow safe access. At the same time, engineers were expanding and modifying the existing facilities at launch complexes 34 and 37 for earth-orbital tests of Apollo spacecraft launched by Saturn IBs.

Designers, meanwhile, were working on the final stages of the Apollo spacecraft. This complicated the design and equipment of facilities at the Launch Operations Center. The basic dimensions, weights, and operating principles of the rocket and spacecraft were known, but questions remained about specific sizes, types, quantities, flow rates, pressures, or even methods of use. Answers to many such questions awaited completion of designs at Huntsville and Houston. Policy makers had to make commitments on the basis of the best information available, knowing that costly and time-consuming changes might well become necessary.

Any large construction project passes through several common stages: selecting and preparing the site, choosing or developing the equipment for use in the operation, planning the external structure, and constructing and equipping the facilities. The pressure of time was such that, during the erection of the Apollo launch facilities, what would ordinarily be consecutive steps were often simultaneous.[1]

By working backwards from the earliest launch date (March 1966) and estimating the time required for vehicle assembly and checkout, the date when the basic launch facilities had to be in operation could be found. Working backwards further and estimating the time required for construction and outfitting yielded the date for the start of construction. Such computations showed, in 1962, that little time remained for development of criteria and detailed design.

The requirements of the manned lunar landing program found the Launch Operations Center facing some new problems, while some old problems were becoming more acute. The new were the size and complexity of the Saturn V vehicle; the need for unprecedented reliability, flexible launch rates, and a short recovery time between launches from the same pad; and the use of the mobile concept. These, in turn, raised old questions about the marshy composition of Merritt Island and the possibility of hurricanes.

Central to LC-39 would be an assembly building, where the Saturn V vehicle would be put together. The Saturn's size was such that the vehicle could not be transported as a unit from its place of construction, but had to be assembled and checked in a vertical attitude near the launch site. The major components were three stages, an instrument unit, and the Apollo spacecraft.

The design of the assembly building had to allow for stacking the 110-meter Apollo-Saturn space vehicle on top of its 14-meter-high movable launch platform. The structure would be taller than any building in Florida. To handle the stages of the vehicle, bridge cranes had to span 45 meters and lift 121 metric tons to a height of 60 meters. The architect-engineers faced complex problems, particularly since the structure had to be capable of withstanding hurricane winds.

To make room for the assembly and checkout of the various stages of three or four vehicles of this size simultaneously required an enormous building. The planners decided to have four high bays or checkout areas, each big enough to handle all stages of the Saturn V and the spacecraft in a stacked position—that is, completely assembled in an upright position ready for launch. The planners could foresee no situation that would require working on more than four rockets at one time; but if requirements changed, they could add more high bays at a later date. Additional low bays would accommodate preliminary work on single stages.

URSAM Makes Its Debut

In August 1962, a Launch Operations Center committee asked the Corps of Engineers to select an architect-engineering firm to complete the criteria for the vertical assembly building, or the VAB as it came to be called. The Corps formed a selection board representing its South Atlantic, Southeastern, North Atlantic, and North Central Divisions, as well as the Jacksonville District Office. The selection board submitted a list of five firms. From these the Chief of Engineers selected a New York combine made up of a quartet of companies—Max Urbahn (architectural); Roberts and Schaefer (structural); Seelye, Stevenson, Value and Knecht (civil, mechanical, and electrical); and Moran, Proctor, Mueser and Rutledge (foundations).[2] From the first name in each of the company names—Urbahn, Roberts, Seelye, and Moran—came a new acronym, URSAM.

The idea for the joint venture emerged in early 1962 when Max Urbahn and Anton Tedesko, of Roberts and Schaefer, discussed the possibility of designing the lunar launch center in Florida. Tedesko had directed the design of launch complex 36, the basic plans for the Minuteman facilities, and facilities at Chanute and Vandenberg Air Force Bases. Urbahn's firm, working in joint ventures with Seelye, Stevenson, Value and Knecht, had designed the intercontinental missile launching station at Presque Isle. Urbahn and Tedesko invited A. Wilson Knecht to join them; and Philip C. Rutledge of Moran, Proctor, Mueser and Rutledge, a firm that had designed foundations for more than forty projects in Florida, became the fourth partner.[3]

By March 1962 the combine had organized as URSAM. Although essential aspects of the Apollo launch facilities were yet to be determined, Urbahn and his associates set out to prove they could do a superior job in designing any concept ultimately selected. During the next five months, URSAM furthered its cause in a series of exploratory discussions at the Cape, Atlanta, Jacksonville, and Huntsville. On 10 August the Corps of Engineers asked the firm for a proposal on VAB design work. If URSAM's presentation appeared satisfactory, the Corps was prepared to offer the combine a criteria contract. Beyond that lay the possibility of the design contract. Shortly after the presentation in Jacksonville, URSAM received word that it had won a $99 000 criteria contract.[4]

In a day-long orientation session held at the Launch Operations Center in late August, 21 persons, representing the Launch Operations Center, URSAM, the Corps of Engineers, and such contractors as Douglas Aircraft, were introduced to the projected building program.[5] Col. Clarence Bidgood of NASA Launch Operations Facilities opened the session with a discussion of the requirements of the VAB. He stressed practicality, insisted that a large portion of the criteria was available, and requested an early decision on the arrangement of the high bays: Should they be back-to-back or in-line? R. P. Dodd, of the LOC Facilities Branch, explained the basic premises of the VAB design. He said that initially the building would have four high bays. No hazardous operations, such as propellant loading or simulated altitude testing, would take place in the building. N. Gerstenzang, also of LOC's Facilities Branch, outlined the format of the criteria book; R. H.

Summarl of Douglas Aircraft discussed upper-stage checkout; and James H. Deese of Facilities Engineering gave a technical report that included wind loads on the VAB and the launch umbilical tower.

Gerstenzang set up a proposed work schedule from 3 September through 20 October and established 1 January 1963 as the date for foundation bids. He insisted that NASA wanted a free interchange of ideas directly with the architect-engineers during the criteria stage, with the Corps of Engineers as observer and monitor to assist in removing bottlenecks. He requested that the first man in Florida be a soils man from Moran, Proctor, Mueser and Rutledge, the foundations company of the URSAM combine.[6]

After winning the criteria contract, URSAM directors hired retired Col. William D. Alexander as project manager to coordinate the work and ensure firm adherence to schedules. Alexander had served as Chief of Facilities Design for the Air Force's Ballistic Missile Program in his last assignment. He took charge of the VAB design project when a 16-man team from URSAM began work at Cape Canaveral on 10 September 1962. The first major decision called for a back-to-back placement of the four bays (see p. 125).

On 17 September representatives of the Manned Spacecraft Center met with URSAM personnel to establish their guidelines for the VAB. They discussed the number of platforms, the size of the crew to work on each level, and the need for a dust-free room, called a white room. Three work levels would probably be needed, with 40 persons at each working level. The power requirements for the command module and the service module would be the same as in LC-34 and LC-37, but the requirements for the lunar excursion module would be double that of the service module. Houston wanted to bring representatives of North American into the discussion so that they would understand the anticipated checkout procedures.[7]

URSAM prepared preliminary draft criteria for the vertical assembly building based upon rough notes, sketches, and abstracts, which included a description of primary and supporting functions of the project, the estimated total number of occupants, functional flow lists of equipment, and the description of utility requirements within and adjacent to the VAB. When URSAM released this draft on 24 September, Bidgood's office immediately solicited comments from all agencies of the Launch Operations Center, as well as related offices at Huntsville.[8]

On 22 October 1962, URSAM submitted a 96-page report of descriptive material and 54 drawings, along with two scale models. Included were estimates of what each component would cost and when the bills would come due. URSAM sent copies to NASA Headquarters, LOC, the Corps of Engineers, Marshall Space Flight Center, and the Manned Spacecraft

Center. During the following month, many individuals of the Launch Operations Center offered criticisms, pointed out problem areas, and recommended changes.[9]

URSAM and the Design Contract

On 4 December the contract to design the vertical assembly building, launch control center, and adjacent permanent facilities was awarded to URSAM for $5 494 000. The New York firm had already begun work on the project and proposed to complete it by 23 September 1963. URSAM put a hundred men of its own staff to work on the VAB design and hired an equal number to supplement their efforts. The team of designers produced 2700 general drawings and a grand total of 18 000 shop detail drawings (one-third of them for the structural steel).[10]

URSAM divided the project into elements that could be designed individually and placed under contract at early dates. This step resulted in seven different contracts for procurement of equipment and for construction. In chronological order they were: first, preparation of the mobile launcher and crawler erection sites and the barge canal terminus so that the first launcher could be ready as soon as the first high bay in the VAB could receive it; second, foundation work for the VAB, including the piling and floor; third, setting up the structural steel frame for the high and low bays of the vertical assembly building; fourth, procurement of transformers and switching gear for the 69 KV substation; fifth, building of two 250-ton and one 175-ton bridge cranes; sixth, construction of the 69 KV substation; seventh, construction of the VAB, LOC, and utilities. The contracts were scheduled to bring the foundation and the structural steel frame well enough along at the time of awarding the last contracts so that the general contractor could proceed in an orderly manner with the work of completing the facility.[11]

Design Problems—VAB

In designing a building that was to have an enclosed volume of 3.6 million cubic meters (almost as much as the Pentagon and the Chicago Merchandise Mart combined) and an area of 32 000 square meters, URSAM faced a challenge. By using a simple box shape, the designers could obtain a strong building at minimum cost. Further, they could eliminate the need for separate cranes for each bay by putting a transfer aisle between the high

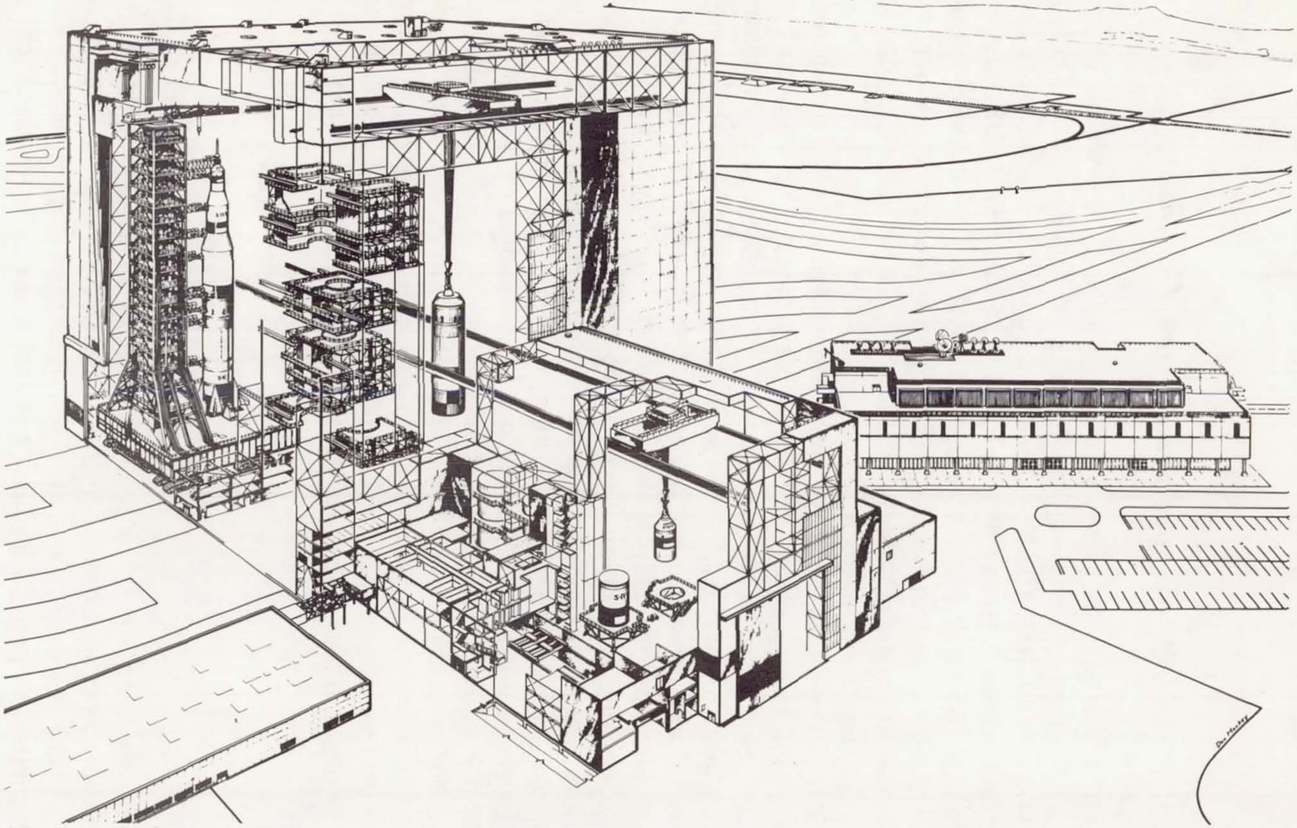


Fig. 56. Cutaway view (1964) of the assembly building (high bays to left, with Saturn V and mobile launcher on a crawler-transporter; individual stages in low bays in center), with the launch control center at right. Note the arrangement of the bridge cranes.

bays. The boxlike layout of the building, 160 meters high, 218 meters long, and 158 meters wide, allowed for an individual door and passageway from each high bay to the crawlerway.[12] According to Anton Tedesko, the following factors influenced the layout and structure: "stiffness against windloads, adaptability to changes, ease of connection with future extensions (planning included provisions for a 50% increase in assembly capacity to accommodate six space vehicles), and above all, adequate working space for those who would assemble and check out the vehicles and an efficient arrangement of that working space."[13]

One of the biggest design problems involved the high windloads that the building would have to withstand. After consulting authorities on wind velocity, URSAM designed the VAB for winds of 200 kilometers per hour. The design had to minimize the building's sidesway, because the work platforms in the high bays were tied into the structure. If the building swayed in high winds, the resulting movement of the platforms might damage a space vehicle. Although the box shape was not the most effective in shedding wind, it kept the sidesway low. The final design held the building's sway to less than 15 centimeters in winds up to 100 kilometers per hour. In higher winds the platforms would be withdrawn from the vehicle.

The designers had to accept certain operational penalties to achieve the required stability at reasonable cost. One of the most apparent was the 58-meter-high framework along the transfer aisle. This framework took 65% of the load from winds blowing parallel to the aisle (north-south), but restricted the passage from the transfer aisle to the high bays. Crane operators would have to lift the first stage up and over the framework to place the booster on a mobile launcher in the high bay.[14]

Since launches from the pad, 4.8 kilometers away, would subject the building to heavy shock waves and acoustical pressures, more than 100 000 square meters of insulated aluminum panels fastened to steel girders would be used to protect the structure on the outside. To create a "sense of airiness in the transfer aisle without admitting a glare or random sunbeams," URSAM recommended a total window surface of 6440 square meters provided by 1.2 by 3.7-meter impact-resistant, translucent plastic panels.[15]

The size of the building and height of the high bay areas presented other unique problems. Three major ones were the design and development of the atmospheric control system, the high-bay doors, and the lifting devices within the building. To provide proper distribution of air inside the building and to prevent condensation, the designers proposed a forced-air ventilation system with blowers at the top of the low bay and exhaust openings at the bottom. Large gravity ventilators in the roof of the high bays would pass sufficient air to replace the entire high bay volume at least once an hour. In order to maintain a comfortable temperature in the office, laboratory, and workshop complex situated within the low bay area, the designers planned a 9000-ton-capacity air conditioning system sufficient to cool 3000 homes.[16] In addition, by using its standby capacity this system would cool the space vehicle and base section of the mobile launcher. Self-contained units would cool individual platform levels in the high-bay section.

The selection of the proper doors to protect the inside of the VAB required much thought. The mobile launcher would enter and leave a high bay through an opening 139 meters high. The opening, shaped like an inverted T, would measure 45 meters wide at the base and 22 meters at the top. The designers settled upon a plan with seven leaves covering the top part of the opening. These leaves, 22 meters wide and 15 meters high, would lift vertically and sequentially to be stacked at the top of the opening. Four motor-driven leaves, among the largest doors ever placed on a building, would slide horizontally to cover the bottom 35 meters of the high bay opening. The eleven leaves weighed from 29 to 66 metric tons; opening them took nearly an hour.[17]

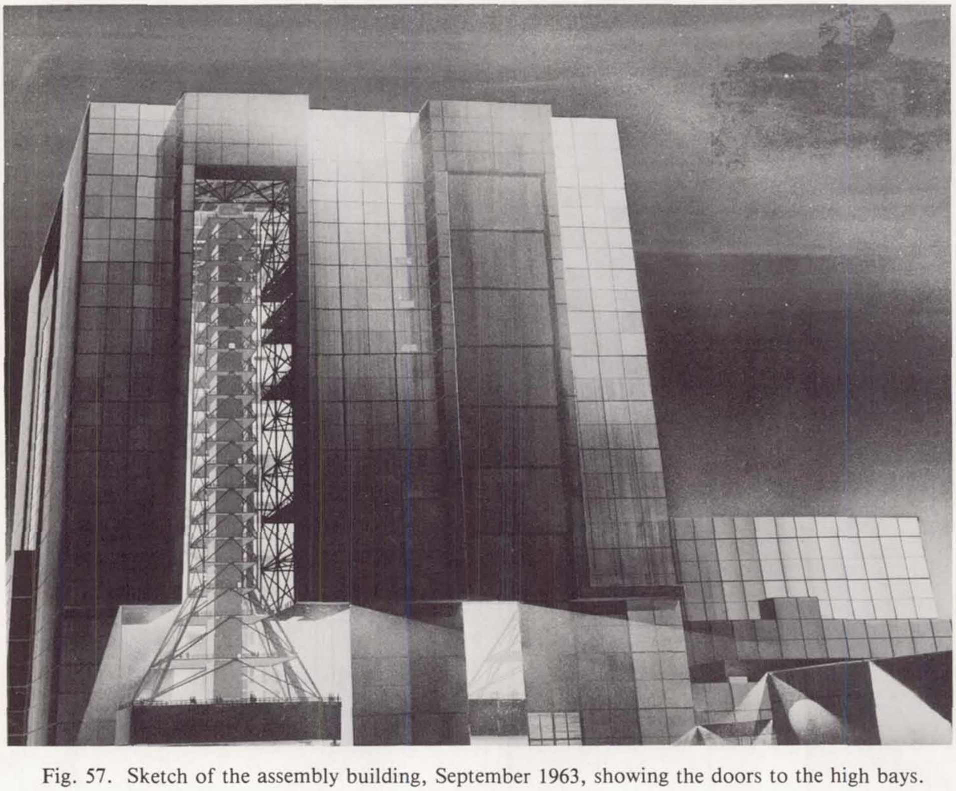


Fig. 57. Sketch of the assembly building, September 1963, showing the doors to the high bays.

Initially there was concern about some of the VAB's lifting devices. Operational requirements called for a 250-ton bridge crane with a hook height of 141 meters that could span a distance of 45 meters. The large crane and its support in the upper reaches of the VAB posed a weight problem for the foundation. As the design progressed, however, this problem disappeared—the foundation and structural strength required for the anticipated windloads provided ample support for the cranes.[18]

Design studies of the building's foundation included wind-tunnel tests of a model and a pile-test program. The latter was initiated under an URSAM subcontract by the C. L. Guild Construction Company in January 1963. Using a sonic hammer, the Guild Company tested the one-meter limestone shelf that lay 36 meters below the surface of Merritt Island and about 12 meters above bedrock. From the results of the wind-tunnel tests and bore samplings, URSAM engineers decided to rest the massive building on a bed of steel pipe piles, each 41 centimeters in diameter. The 4225 pilings, when driven down to bedrock, would total 205 kilometers of steel pipe. In addition the design called for 38 200 cubic meters of concrete as pile caps and floor slab.[19]

During the development of the design, URSAM representatives met regularly with individuals from the Corps of Engineers and the Launch Operations Center. Changes in equipment were frequent, and some of them meant changes in the design of the huge VAB. A change in the dimensions of the mobile launcher, for instance, represented a large—and welcome—weight reduction for the launcher, but also required a major change in the VAB doors.[20] Colonel Alexander urged the URSAM personnel to keep their counterparts in the Corps and the Launch Operations Center acquainted with daily progress and insisted that careful notes be kept on all intergroup discussions. The Facilities Office promised to deliver the final design instruction on 7–8 March 1963. Bidgood wrote: "The design must be frozen at this time to meet the design schedule and the subsequent construction schedule."[21]

Notwithstanding Bidgood's vigorous efforts, modifications of the space vehicle continued to cause problems for the VAB designers. In March, he noted that a recent change had undone 48 sheets of drawings. Shortly thereafter the Manned Spacecraft Center decided to transport the spacecraft in vertical attitude from the operations and checkout building to the VAB, a change that required more height in the low-bay doors. Bidgood refused to adjust the design schedule, stating that "delays in completion of final design as a result of this additional requirement are not acceptable." As late as 27 June, it was discovered that a required platform for S-IC intertank access was omitted from the design. Finally on 3 July 1963, the design agency notified R. P. Dodd, chief of the Design and Engineering Branch, LOC, that no changes or additional requirements could be permitted except as an amendment during the bidding period.[22]

URSAM forged ahead despite all the changes, drawing upon the technical capacity of the four constituent companies as the need arose. When key men had to leave, as three did during the course of the year, replacements were easily recruited. Initially the design chiefs relied on manual calculations for the basic designs, using computers to solve some equations. As their confidence increased, URSAM engineers came to rely more extensively on electronic computations. The task was completed and approved on schedule—23 September 1963.[23]

The original selection of URSAM had not won unanimous approval. When the combine had almost completed its work, a June 1963 article in the *New York Post* criticized the choice on the grounds that the Moran firm had designed the Air Force's $21-million Texas Tower that collapsed off the New Jersey coast in January 1961. In a report to Administrator James Webb on 13 June 1963, R. P. Young, executive officer at NASA Headquarters, discussed the matter at length. He admitted that many deficiencies had shown up in the tower, not all of them related to Moran's design; but in the URSAM combine Moran was working in foundation design, and the firm was "outstanding in that field." Young went on to explore the entire matter of the URSAM contract and the design, which he had discussed at length with Gen. Thomas J. Hayes III, assistant to the Chief of Engineers for NASA Support, who insisted that the Corps had made "a careful and straightforward selection of what they considered the best group of firms to do the job, and they know no reason at this time to believe differently." Hayes also pointed out that the Corps had selected the firm of Strobel and Rengved to make an independent review of structural design; the firm had often worked with the Corps in this capacity before. Hayes admitted the concern engendered by the newspaper article, but noted that a number of competent individuals had reviewed the work and gone away satisfied.[24]

Launch Control Center Design

URSAM also designed the launch control center, which presented far fewer problems than the VAB. The Manned Space Flight Management Council established ground rules for the design of the building in a meeting on 22 June 1962. Originally, the launch control center was to be placed at ground level in the western section of the low bay of the VAB. In October 1962, a suggestion to place it on the roof of the high bay held up the planning. An URSAM estimate that locating the center on the roof of the high

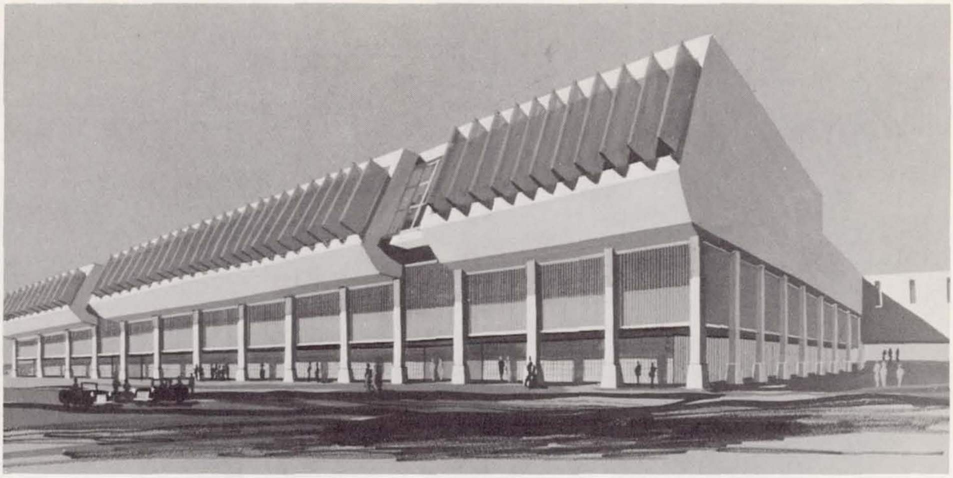


Fig. 58. Sketch of the launch control center, February 1963. The large shutters along the front of the upper floor could be closed quickly, in the event of an emergency.

bay would mean an additional expense of $1 200 000 ended the discussion. The structure was built on the southeastern side of the VAB with a long hallway connecting the two. The original plans called for a steel structure, but the structural engineers recommended concrete as better for acoustical purposes, and the final choice was a 114 × 55-meter, four-story, monolithic, reinforced-concrete building that made extensive use of precast and prestressed elements.[25]

The architects wanted the launch control center to be symbolic. The VAB was to be the factory, and the control center was to be man's window for observing events projecting into the future. The four multilevel firing rooms were rectangular in shape, 28 meters in width and 46 meters in length. Since many checkout requirements were still unknown, the planners emphasized flexibility, eliminating all columns and providing removable floors.[26]

The design of the windows shut off the sounds and pressures of the outside world. Two-centimeter-thick glass windows with adjustable sun visors in special aluminum frames faced the launch area. Infrared lamps outside the windows prevented fogging. The tinted, laminated windows, which covered an area 24 meters long and 7 meters high, filtered out heat and glare, permitting only 28% of the light to enter the room. Transparent glass, separating a viewing section from the rest of the firing room, gave guests a feeling that they were part of the operation. For its efforts on the launch control center, URSAM won the 1965 Architectural Award for the industrial design of the year.[27]

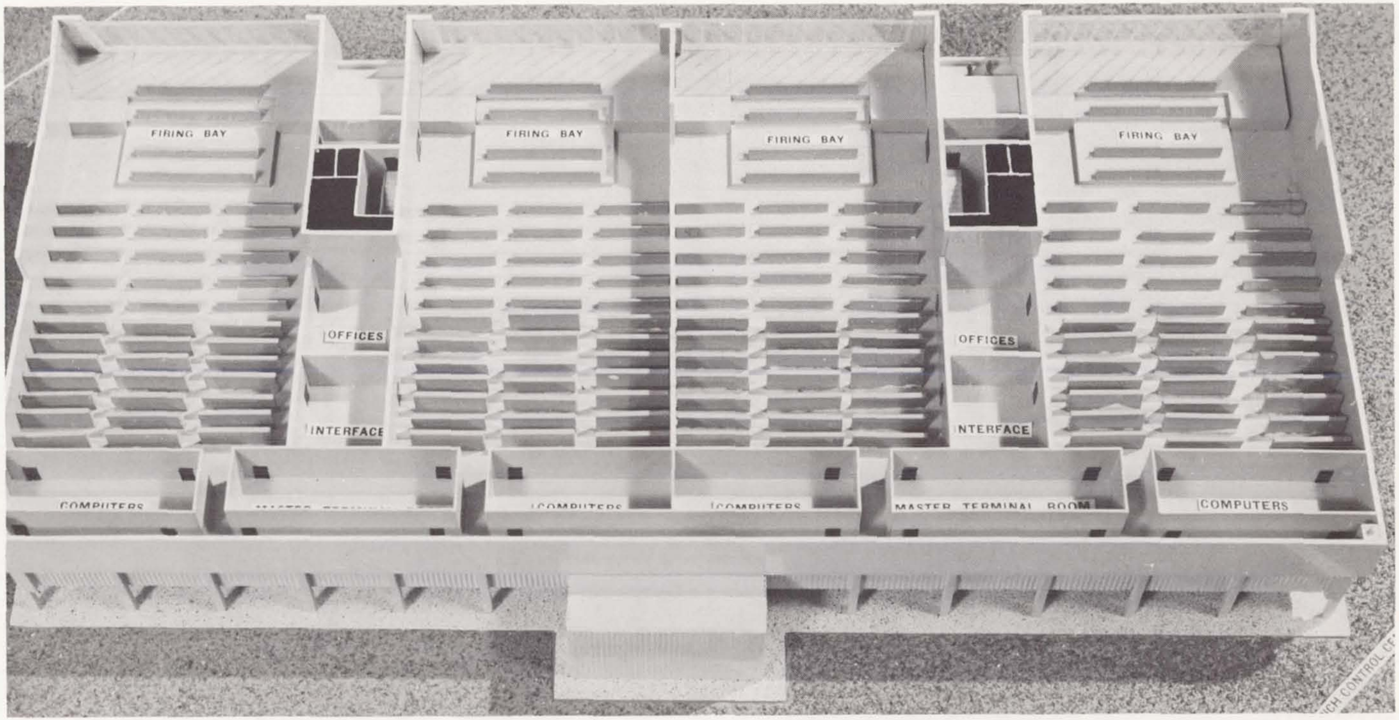

FIRING BAY
FIRING BAY
FIRING BAY
FIRING BAY
OFFICES
OFFICES
INTERFACE
INTERFACE
COMPUTERS
COMPUTERS
COMPUTERS
MASTER TERMINAL ROOM
COMPUTERS

Fig. 59. Model of the proposed launch control center, February 1963.

While URSAM was designing the buildings, LOC engineers were determining what equipment would go inside. The control center's display stations were initially projected at a 13 September 1962 meeting between LOC representatives and Huntsville's Astrionics Division. Display consoles would monitor such things as propulsion, navigation, measuring, ordnance, propellant loading, ground support equipment, and emergency detection. Rack requirements included countdown clock, TV and communications, and discrete recorders. Criteria for the ten consoles located in each firing room for the control, test, and monitoring of the mobile launcher's electrical support equipment were furnished by the Launch Support Equipment Engineering Division. The design and fabrication of the panels were the responsibility of the Astrionics Laboratory at Marshall.[28]

During the following year, the emphasis shifted from a systems-oriented firing room to one organized by flight stage or hardware. Nearly 450 consoles would be operated by representatives from the stage contractors and Radio Corporation of America, General Electric, Saunders, Symetrics, International Telephone and Telegraph, NASA, and the Eastern Test Range. The consoles were arranged to permit the Boeing, North American, and other teams of engineers to sit together in their respective stage groupings. Responsibility for designing the consoles rested primarily with the various companies, but the designs were coordinated by LOC. W. O. Chandler, Jr., Deputy Chief of the Electrical Systems Branch, recalled making at least 25 trips to Houston and other Apollo offices to make certain that design change information for the consoles was current.

Design of the Crawlerway

While men had moved two- and three-story houses often enough—even some from Merritt Island to the mainland of Florida—no one had ever before moved a skyscraper. Yet that is what the mobile concept called for—or at least an Apollo-Saturn vehicle the size of a skyscraper. The problem was compounded by Merritt Island's marshy terrain and high winds. The combined weight of the crawler-transporter carrying the mobile launcher would exceed 7700 tons. No one knew what effect such a load would have upon the subsoil of Merritt Island. C. Q. Stewart of the Mechanical Engineering Division had commented on this problem in a memorandum of 1 August 1962 and suggested exploratory borings. He also spurned any type of rigid surface for the crawlerways as too prone to cracking, and urged instead a topping of gravel or crushed stone.[29]

On 1 February 1963, two months after the signing of the URSAM contract, the Detroit firm of Giffels and Rossetti agreed to design the crawlerway and the pads. Three weeks later 19 individuals representing NASA, the Corps of Engineers, and various contracting firms gathered at the LOC for a crawlerway conference. URSAM proposed building the crawlerway of layers with a total thickness of 1.4 meters, topped by crushed stone and a soft grade of asphalt. The Corps of Engineers agreed to compact sand to a depth of 7.6 meters below the pavement by vibroflotation in the areas adjacent to the VAB.[30]

At another meeting at the Cape on 27 March 1963, representatives of Giffels and Rossetti discussed the crawlerway with representatives of NASA, URSAM, the Corps of Engineers, Marion Power Shovel, and Brown Engineering Company. Donald Buchanan of LOC and one of the Marion representatives objected to the proposed use of an asphalt surface for the crawlerway. They feared that the asphalt would adhere to the treads of the crawler-transporter and cause severe wear of the road surface. The conferees then established two criteria for selecting materials: the surface material should not adhere to the crawler's treads and the coefficient of friction of the materials should not exceed 0.3 under the expected operating temperature range.[31]

During the next few months there were more meetings, one in Jacksonville on 27 June, another in Detroit on 14 August. At the former the Marion Power Shovel representative discussed the limits of friction. The conferees determined that the crawler would break up any type of hard surface, and the best surface would be crushed stone—as Stewart had suggested

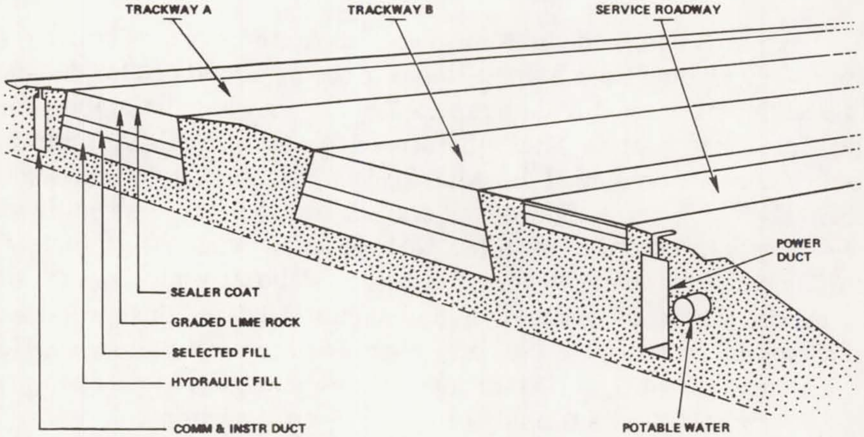


Fig. 60. Typical cross section of crawlerway, as the design took shape in early 1963.

a year before. After the latter meeting, J. B. Bing of the LOC programming office reported that there had been absolutely no coordination between Giffels and Rossetti and URSAM, even though their respective areas of design had an obviously close relationship.[32]

In the fall of 1963, eight representatives from LOC and the Corps of Engineers formed the "Construction Coordination Group for Complex 39"; the group's purpose was to manage the details of construction at the launch complex. The chairman briefed members on the construction status, problems, delivery of materials, and the impact of each change on critical construction schedules and contract costs. The scope of the group's work included scheduling, processing of changes, quality requirements, and funding. The Construction Coordination Group commenced operation immediately and was to continue until the completion of major Corps construction on complex 39.[33]

Flame Deflector and Launch Pads

If any one item virtually dictated the design of the launch pad, it was the flame deflector. This device would send the fiery exhaust of the five first-stage engines along the flame trench. The LOC designers who established criteria for the pads had wanted to keep the Saturn vehicle as close to the ground as possible in order to lessen wind stresses. They settled on a two-way, wedge-type flame deflector similar in design to those used on pads 34 and 37. The deflector, 13 meters in height and 15 meters in width, would weigh 317 tons. Since the water table was close to the surface of the ground, the criteria group wanted the bottom of the flame trench at ground level. The flame deflector and trench determined the height and width of the octagonal shaped launch pad; this in turn set the width of the space between the crawler treads, because the crawler straddled the pad.

During the last week of June and throughout July and August 1962, tests on 1:58 scale-model flame deflectors were conducted by the Test Division and Aeroballistics Division at Huntsville. They found that the launch complex 37 deflector, a copper, water-cooled, ridged model, suffered serious erosion from the concentration of heat and high gas velocities. By March 1964, the preliminary designs for a steel deflector and for a reinforced concrete deflector had been completed. By means of instrument readings and motion pictures, the aerothermodynamic flow characteristics were determined, and the flame deflector and trench designs were refined. In designing the deflectors for launch complex 39 pads, it was necessary to have a replaceable leading edge which eroded but was insulated. Four types of

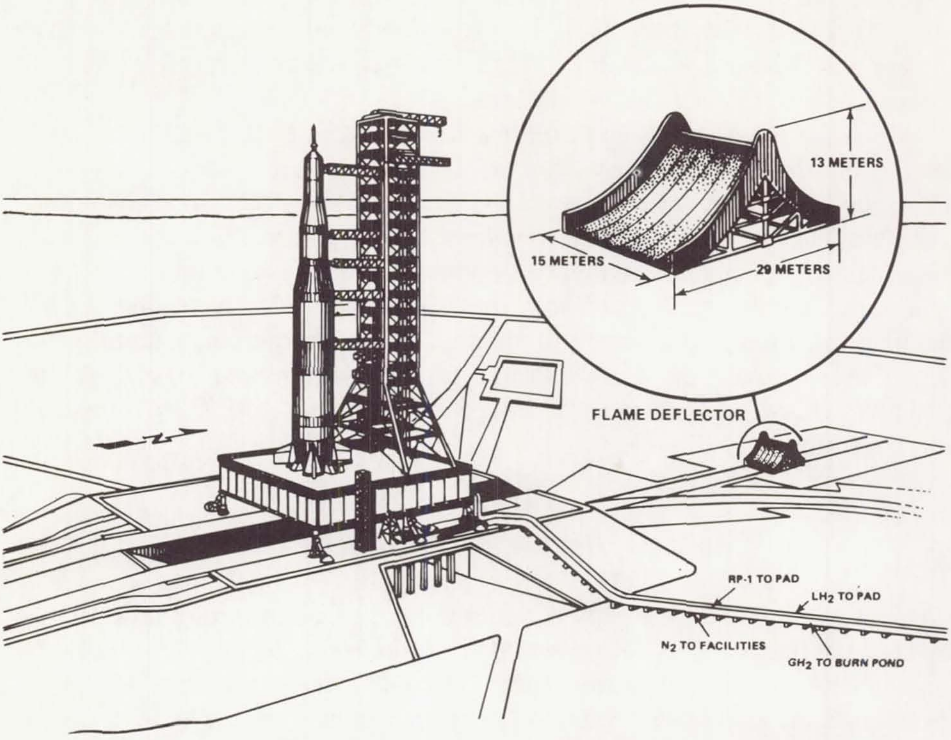


Fig. 61. Sketch of LC-39 pad, with enlargement of the flame deflector, May 1963.

deflector ridges were tested, using information gained in the study of heat-resistant shapes and materials for the Jupiter-C nose cone. When sufficient evidence was gathered, the design of the deflector proceeded with dispatch.[34]

The design of launch pads A and B presented further difficulties, many of which concerned the slab that covered the pads. This hardstand had to support the crawler-transporter and its pressure of 50 tons per square meter. Under a new proposal, a cellular construction, something like orange crates set in two rows, would support and protect the area adjacent to the flame deflector trench and beneath the crawler. The cellular construction, extending the full length of the flame deflector pit on either side, would provide an explosion buffer to the main launch facilities, reduce the pressure on the launch pad foundations, and offer additional space for service items.[35]

The selection of a refractory surface for the walls, floor, and an area outside of the flame trench was exacting. Such a surface had to withstand temperatures of 1922 kelvins and flame velocities four times the speed of sound. Special refractory fire bricks were held to the walls by interlocks, mechanical anchors, and a modified epoxy cement. All concrete surfaces

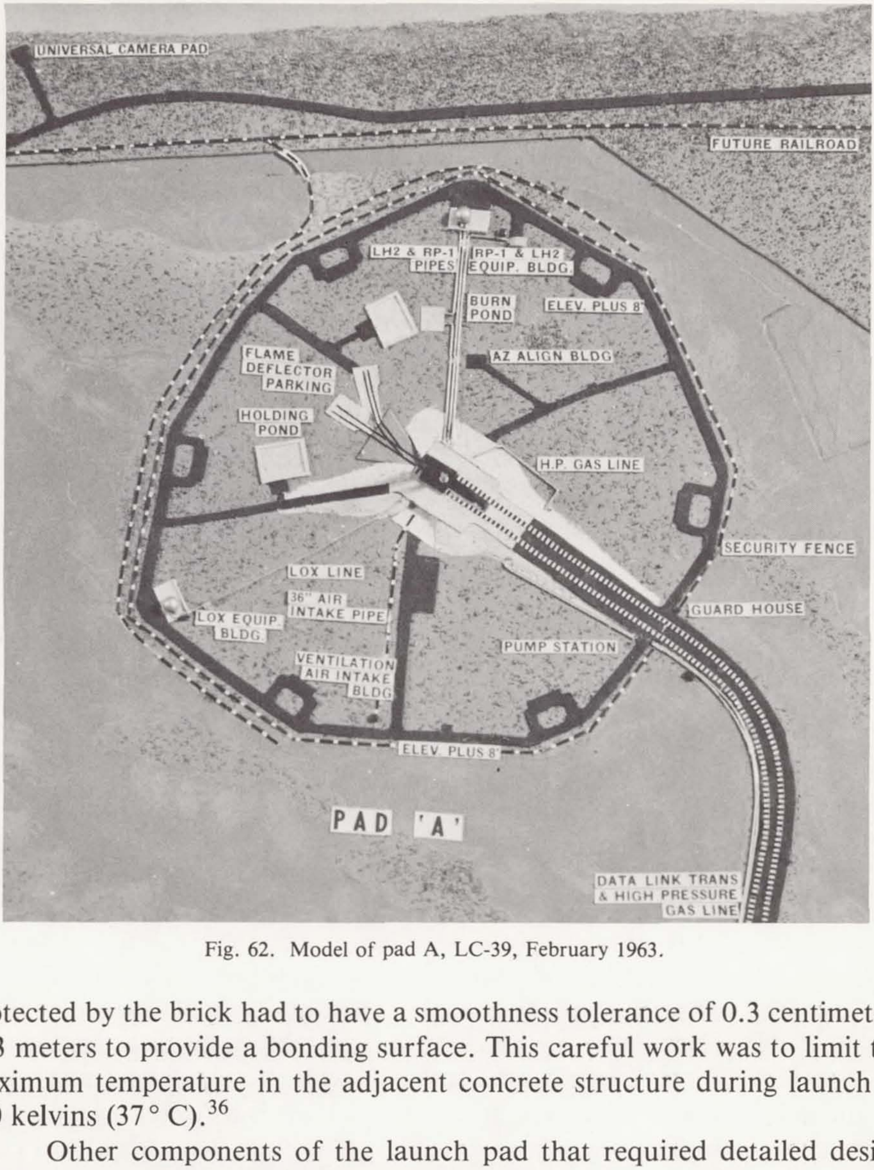

UNIVERSAL CAMERA PAD
FUTURE RAILROAD
LH2 & RP-1 PIPES
RP-1 & LH2 EQUIP. BLDG.
BURN POND
ELEV. PLUS 8'
FLAME DEFLECTOR PARKING
AZ ALIGN BLDG
HOLDING POND
H.P. GAS LINE
SECURITY FENCE
LOX LINE
36" AIR INTAKE PIPE
LOX EQUIP. BLDG.
GUARD HOUSE
PUMP STATION
VENTILATION AIR INTAKE BLDG
ELEV. PLUS 8'
PAD 'A'
DATA LINK TRANS & HIGH PRESSURE GAS LINE

Fig. 62. Model of pad A, LC-39, February 1963.

protected by the brick had to have a smoothness tolerance of 0.3 centimeters in 3 meters to provide a bonding surface. This careful work was to limit the maximum temperature in the adjacent concrete structure during launch to 310 kelvins (37 ° C).[36]

Other components of the launch pad that required detailed design studies included the terminal connection room, the environmental control system, the high-pressure-gas storage facility, and the emergency egress system. The connection room, which contained extensive instrumentation facilities for testing during prelaunch and launch phases, and the environmental control system, which maintained the temperatures of the vehicle and compartments prior to launch, were designed to withstand concentrated pressures at any point. These rooms would protect ground support equipment located at the launch pad from heat, vibration, and shock during launch.[37]

By 1 June 1962, the design concept for the Saturn V propellant loading, high-pressure gases, and associated systems had been established. To use a reliable automated system and eliminate the cost of developing a new one, a modified version of the automatic propellant loading and associated systems used for LC-37 was selected for LC-39. Propellant servicing was controlled from the launch control center. Most of the hardware for the propellant-loading system was located in the terminal connection room at the pad. This room contained separate areas for each propellant and its associated systems. The remote command and display equipment in the control center was connected by an independent digital data transmission link to the hardware at the pad, which in turn was connected to the transporter-launcher and the storage facilities by electrical lines. Consequently, control commands could be initiated from the transporter-launcher, the launch control center, or the terminal connection room at the pad during servicing and checkout.[38]

Plans for the Industrial Area

The site plan for the industrial area, eight kilometers south of the VAB, was prepared by a joint Manned Lunar Landing Program Master Planning Board made up of NASA and Air Force personnel, and its subordinate joint planning committees for facilities, instrumentation, and communications. The committees had to plan and design facilities during a period when much of the equipment that would go into them was still under development. Yet a comparison of two site plans, one prepared in March 1963, the other in October 1965 after a more careful definition of program requirements, reveals few major changes. Most of the facilities remained as originally planned.[39] Some of the credit for this successful planning goes to the Air Force's contractor, the Guided Missile Range Division of Pan American World Airways. Back in December 1962 Pan American had completed a preliminary master plan for Merritt Island. The projection contained three sections: general plans for the launch area, a description of the Merritt Island industrial area, and detailed plans for the launch area. The Joint Facilities Planning Group, one of the several committees the Air Force and NASA set up, organized a task force to assist in preparation, correction, and development of this preliminary master plan. After the Webb-McNamara agreement, NASA used volume III of the Pan American master plan as a basis for its first plan, published in October 1963.[40]

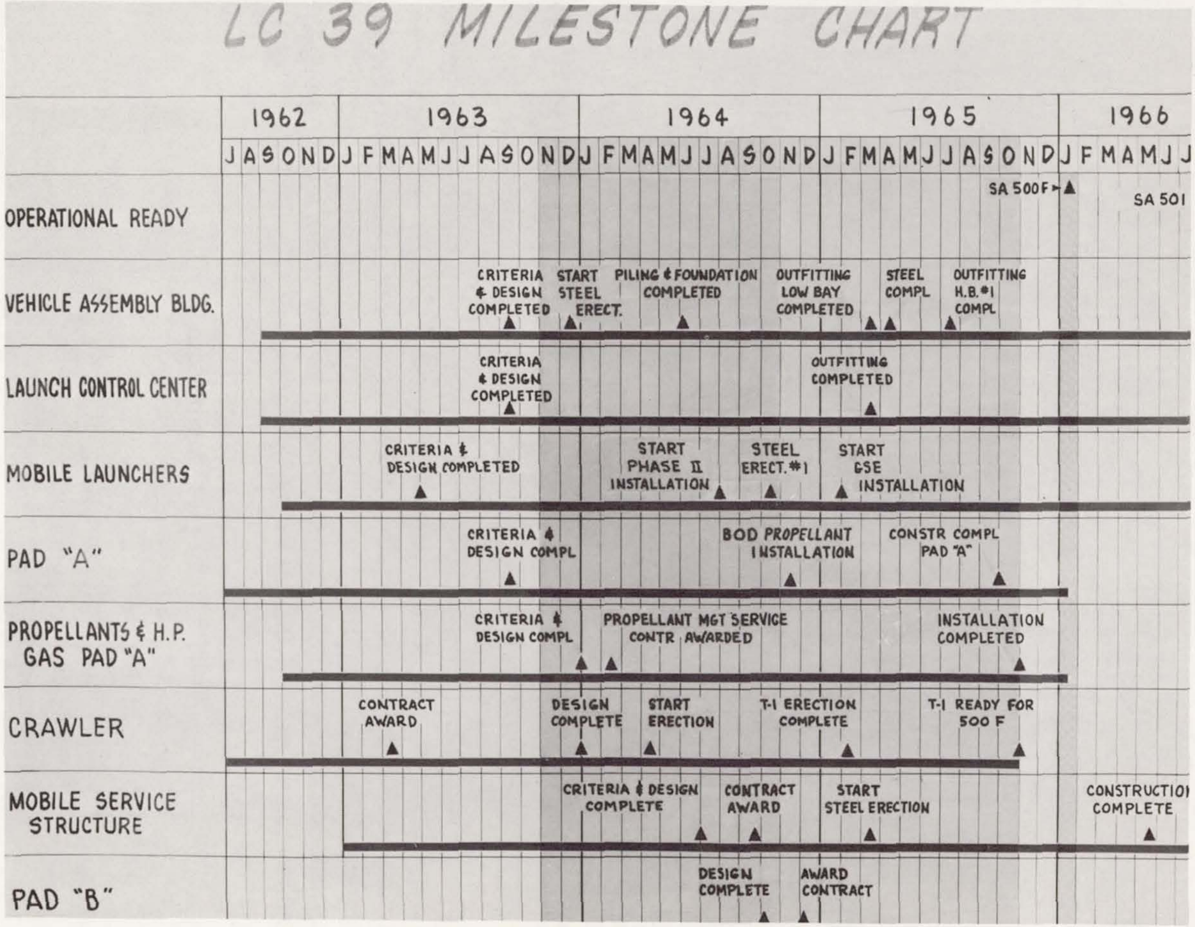


Fig. 63. LC-39 milestone chart, December 1964.

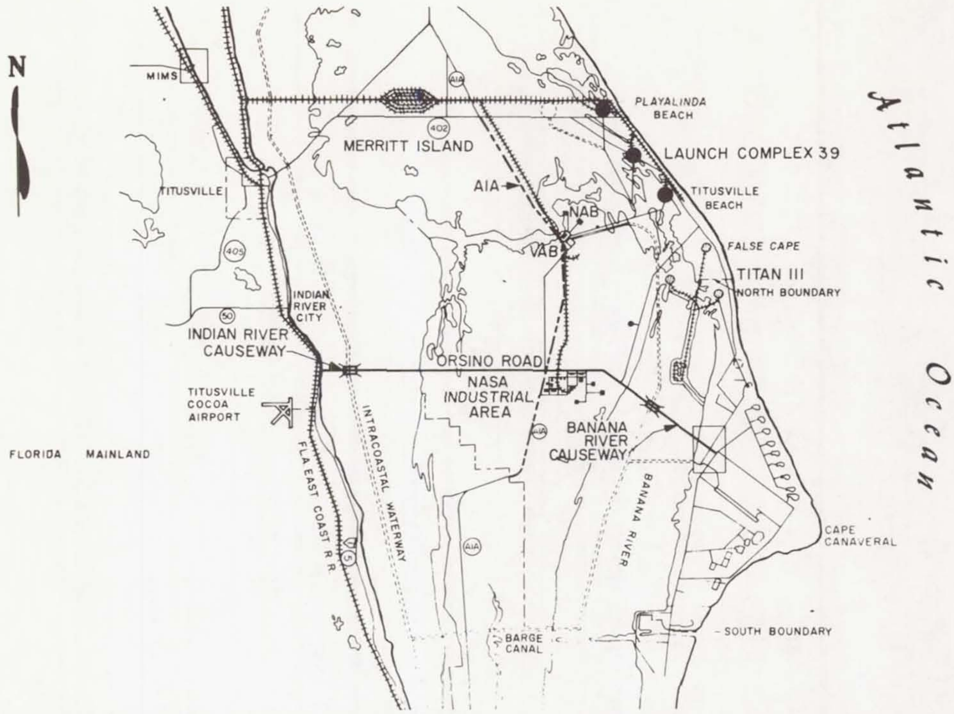

N
MIMS
PLAYALINDA BEACH
LAUNCH COMPLEX 39
TITUSVILLE BEACH
FALSE CAPE
TITAN III
NORTH BOUNDARY
Atlantic Ocean
A1A
402
MERRITT ISLAND
AIA
NAB
VAB
TITUSVILLE
405
50
INDIAN RIVER CITY
INDIAN RIVER CAUSEWAY
ORSINO ROAD
NASA INDUSTRIAL AREA
TITUSVILLE COCOA AIRPORT
FLORIDA MAINLAND
BANANA RIVER CAUSEWAY
INTRACOASTAL WATERWAY
FLA EAST COAST R.R.
5
BANANA RIVER
CAPE CANAVERAL
SOUTH BOUNDARY
BARGE CANAL

Fig. 64. LC-39 and the Merritt Island industrial area, December 1963. The three pads of LC-39, from south to north, were designated A, B, and C; C was never built. The NAB (nuclear assembly building) also was not built. Only two of the three Titan III sites were built.

Spacecraft support facilities took up the eastern half of the industrial area. Although the requirements for these facilities and equipment originated with the Manned Spacecraft Center in Houston or with its Florida Operations launch team, the responsibility for planning, siting, funding, and construction rested with the Launch Operations Center. Included among the Apollo mission support facilities were the following:

- Operations and checkout building
- Supply, shipping, and receiving building
- Weight and balance building
- Ordnance storage facility
- Fluid test complex, consisting of:
    - Hypergolic test building
    - Cryogenic test building
    - Environmental control systems building
    - Support building

The operations and checkout building was as essential to the spacecraft as the vertical assembly building was to the launch vehicle. The operations building would be used for the checkout of all non-hazardous systems in manned spacecraft. It would also provide space for the inspection of the spacecraft modules upon arrival at KSC, and for the mating and final integrated tests of the Apollo before it traveled to the VAB. Accommodations for astronaut preflight activities (living quarters, a technical and briefing area, a crew preparation area, and a bio-medical area) were included in the building. The floor area, 27 900 square meters, was divided into four functional areas: an administrative and engineering office area with an auditorium and cafeteria; a laboratory and checkout area with automated checkout equipment and data reduction and display facilities; a high-bay assembly and test area having a bridge crane hook height of 36 meters and a contiguous low-bay area with a crane hook height of 15 meters; and a service area containing shop space, a tool room, spare parts room, and space for electrical, mechanical, and vacuum equipment. The building was air conditioned and, where operationally necessary, humidity controlled and dust free.

Although it was always intended that the spacecraft modules (and the launch vehicle stages) would arrive at LOC in a flight-ready condition, the mechanics of shipping and the checkout process itself required that certain spacecraft parts be packed separately. Inevitably in the course of testing, some components had to be replaced, and those removed had to be returned to their makers for repair or modification. Also, various items of ground support equipment associated with the checkout and assembly processes were shipped with the spacecraft. The supply, shipping, and receiving building would provide the space for these functions. It was a one-story, L-shaped building of standard construction, with approximately 3720 square meters of floor area that included a machine room, a roofed-over loading dock, shipping and receiving and supply departments with a humidity-controlled storage area, a ground support equipment area, and cleaning, painting, carpentry, maintenance, and plastic shops.

The Planning Board isolated the facilities with hazardous operations in the southeast corner of the industrial area. KSC personnel frequently referred to the area located over a kilometer from the operations and checkout building as the "south 40." The facilities there included the weight and balance building, the ordnance storage building, and the fluid test complex. At the north end of the area was a 300-meter range for testing the rendezvous radar on the lunar module.

After checkout in the operations and checkout building, the spacecraft was to be moved to the weight and balance building, where the launch team would install solid-propellant motors, the launch escape tower, and various pyrotechnic items. After weighing and balancing the assembled spacecraft to determine its center of gravity, technicians would optically align critical components. Here, also, the spacecraft would receive its final servicing prior to departure for the VAB. The building would consist of a high-bay area having an overhead crane with a hook height of 30 meters and two adjacent low-bay areas. A door, of sufficient height and width to accommodate the assembled spacecraft in a vertical position, would take up almost all of one side of the building.

Contained under pressure in the spacecraft were environmental control, hypergolic, and cryogenic systems, all of which used corrosive and highly combustible fluids. Careful handling was obviously required. Because of the hazards in testing, adjusting, and verifying the proper operation of these systems and their component parts, and because the test methods were somewhat similar, the several buildings where these operations would be performed were grouped in the fluid test complex. The test buildings differed in size, but were similar in form. Each contained one or two test cells equipped with high-capacity exhaust systems, a floor system for collecting and diverting spilled fluids, and fire extinguishing systems. Adjacent to the test cells were control rooms designed and constructed to protect test operators from explosions or toxic fumes. An equipment storage room, dressing or locker rooms, and machinery rooms were included in each test building. Nearby was a support building containing offices, shops, and laboratories. It was air conditioned and equipped with a special filtering system to provide clean conditions in the laboratories. Miscellaneous service facilities for the test complex included stations for the parking of mobile fluid transfer tanks, and a dilution system and disposal dump for spilled fluids.

The ordnance storage building, slightly less than 370 square meters in floor area, would provide an environmentally controlled storage area for solid-fuel motors and aligned escape towers. This was designed to prevent any deterioration of explosives that could result in a misfire in space.[41]

Design of the Central Instrumentation Facility

Under the terms of the Webb-McNamara agreement, LOC was given certain instrumentation responsibilities on Merritt Island. Debus assigned these to Karl Sendler, the Director of Information Systems; and FY 1964 construction of facilities budget estimates for launch instrumentation reflected the new management.[42] Subsequent agreements concluded by Debus and the Missile Test Center clarified the instrumentation program and established a Joint Instrumentation Planning Group as the local coordinating body.

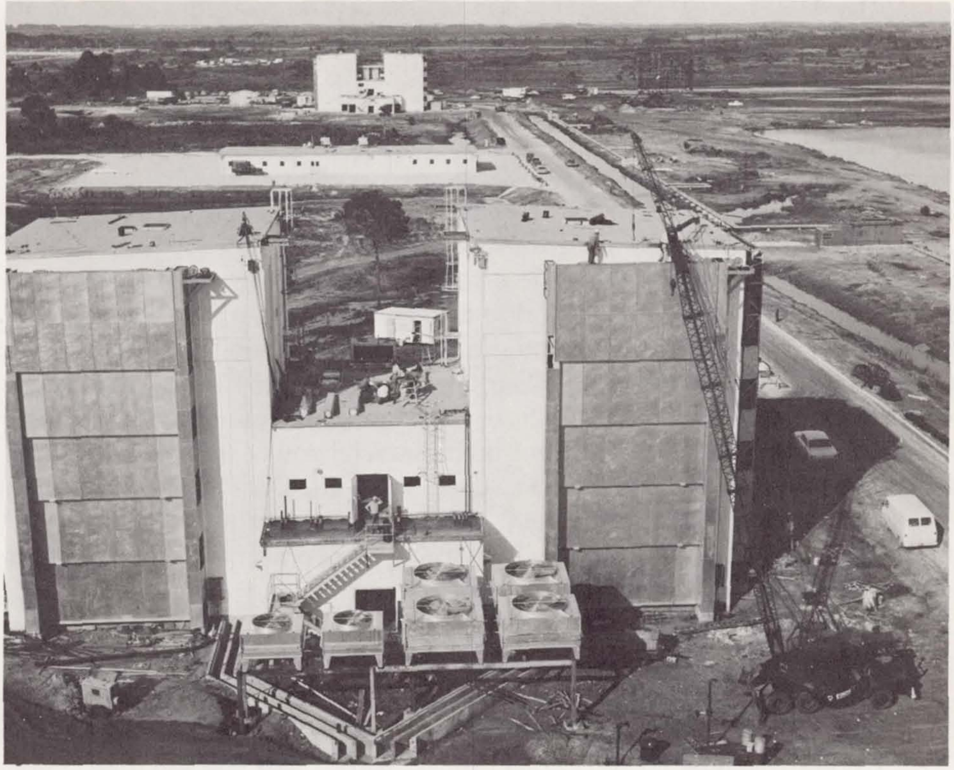


Fig. 65. Hypergolic building, fluid test complex, Merritt Island industrial area, under construction. The large doors were raised in sections, giving access to two large test chambers, which were served by common facilities in the lower, center section. Liquid and gas lines would enter the building in the concrete conduits beneath the fans.

The systems planned for installation in the central instrumentation facility were based upon those developed during Saturn I operations at complexes 34 and 37. The instrumentation systems criteria group held numerous meetings with design and operations personnel to determine what measurements were needed. Experience with LC-34 and LC-37 was of limited value, however, because the distance from LC-39 to the control center was more than 14 times as long. After the criteria had been established, fixed-price contracts were negotiated. The digital acquisition equipment was designed by Scientific Data Systems; the computer was the GE 635. Since the number of on-board measurements for the vehicle had increased from 200 to 3000, it was necessary to procure equipment that produced accurate data in real time. For this type of instrumentation, there was no in-house design, but the specifications were assembled and bids were solicited from industry.[43]

By May 1963 the design criteria for the central instrumentation facility were available. The building—a three-story structure of approximately 12480 square meters just west of the headquarters building—would house computers and other electronic equipment for reduction of telemetry data, analysis, and transmission to other NASA centers. A smaller building, later known as the CIF antenna site, was placed 2.5 kilometers north of the industrial area, to be free of radio-frequency interference and have clear lines of vision to the NASA launch complexes.[44]

The central instrumentation facility reflected the desire of Karl Sendler and his planners to centralize the handling of NASA data and provide housing for general instrumentation activities that served more than one complex. LOC coordinated the planning with the other NASA centers and with the Atlantic Missile Range. It was necessary to ground all metal in the structure and to ground separately the commercial power and the instrumentation power systems. Fluorescent lights were not permitted—they cause electromagnetic interference. When completed, the central instrumentation facility, with disc-shaped antennas adorning the roof, would be the most distinctive building in the industrial area.

Selection of MILA Support Contractors

While the design of LC-39 and the industrial area was still under way, LOC sought contractors who would operate and maintain the Merritt Island facilities. On 22 April 1963 LOC suggested four possibilities to Albert Siepert, NASA's Director of Administration in Washington, who would soon join LOC's management:

- Extension of the current Air Force contract with Pan American Airways to provide services for Merritt Island similar to those being provided for Cape Canaveral's Missile Test Area.
- Employment of a single NASA support contractor to provide all services.
- Employment of several contractors, each to perform a major function under direction of NASA staffs.
- Expansion of the LOC civil service staff.

LOC recommended the third solution, with 12 functional contractors.[45]

Earlier that month, Siepert and Brainerd Holmes had discussed the launch center's need for support services with Robert Seamans, NASA's Associate Administrator. Seamans turned down an Air Force proposal to handle the entire service support through its range contractor, Pan

American. Seamans wanted to spread contracts and did not want to increase civil service hirings. He favored the use of four or five prime contractors.

One week after the LOC staff report, Debus and Siepert met with Holmes in Washington. LOC recommended seven contracts with a separate food service contract handled by the NASA Employees' Exchange. Holmes thought seven contracts were too many for effective management and directed that LOC find a way to compress these into four. He did agree, after some discussion, that the food service could be a separate contract under the Exchange. LOC submitted a revised proposal on 7 May including a request that "LOC be authorized to initiate appropriate action to obtain contractor services . . . , grouped into four prime areas of activity. . . ." Holmes approved it two weeks later.[46]

As a temporary measure, NASA asked the Air Force for limited Merritt Island support services on a reimbursable basis. This was formalized as part of an interim agreement on management responsibilities signed by Dr. Debus and General Davis on 10 May 1963. Two weeks later, NASA Headquarters announced contract plans for more than 20 support functions in the four areas of management, communications, base support, and launch support. The prime contractors would be required to subcontract a substantial portion of the work to small firms.[47]

LOC's procurement office started work on one contract a week before the formal announcement. A request for proposals on the operation and maintenance of the communications system was issued 17 May. Contractor interest was heavy, but a disagreement between LOC and Southern Bell Telephone Company about interconnection points between the internal communication system and the Bell circuits delayed contract negotiations for over a month. Finally Southern Bell agreed to provide normal internal business and administrative telephone service (excepting service in hazardous or operationally critical areas). NASA Headquarters decided that source evaluation boards were necessary. Fourteen companies responded to LOC's second request for proposals. Administrator Webb narrowed the field to three firms, following an evaluation board presentation on 3 October. R.C.A. Service Company won and began work in December, although execution of the cost-plus-award-fee contract was delayed until mid-January 1964.[48]

Procurement action on the other three support contracts proceeded concurrently. A January 1964 cost-plus-incentive-fee contract gave Ling-Temco-Vought responsibility for photographic support, technical information, a field printing plant, and administrative automatic data processing. In February 1964 Trans World Airlines won the contract for supply, general maintenance, and utilities. In April, Bendix Field Engineering Corporation signed a contract for a variety of functions that included propellant services, precision shops, high-pressure-gas converter and compressor operations, cryogenic-equipment cleaning, spacecraft servicing facilities, and the operation of the crawler.[49]

12

FROM DESIGNS TO STRUCTURES

Making Big Sandpiles

Before thousands of skilled craftsmen could begin turning these unique designs into structures, the Launch Operations Center had to prepare the sites, dredge access channels, and fight mosquitoes. The Gahagan Dredging Corporation of Tampa won the contract to clear the land and dredge an access channel to the site of the vertical, or as it was soon to be called, the vehicle assembly building (VAB). The sand, dredged up by the Gahagan crews, was deposited on the projected sites of the VAB, the crawlerway, launch pad 39-C (shortly to be redesignated pad A*), and the causeway over the Banana River.

Gahagan started work on 31 October 1962 by clearing the land in the VAB area. Dredging began a week later. By the time the contract was awarded, Gahagan had three dredges at work and had already moved 20 600 cubic meters of fill. One part of the work involved the clearing of surface growth, ranging from palmetto scrub to orange trees, and the stripping away of undesirable surface material from the construction sites. Specialized equipment helped to speed this job. One device, a palmetto plow, pulled up trees by their roots, shook off the dirt, and piled them for burning. Bulldozers with heavy teeth on the blades knocked down whole rows of trees and brush, pushing them into piles to dry before burning. The bulldozers cleared some 2.5 square kilometers of land in this manner, while other earth-moving equipment removed 89 400 cubic meters of soft sand and muck.[1]

The second, and perhaps larger, part of Gahagan's job was dredging a barge canal 38 meters wide, 3 meters deep, and 20 kilometers long from the original Saturn barge channel in the Banana River to a turning basin near the

---

*At the time of the original siting of launch complex 39, the three projected launch pads were designated in accordance with standard Missile Test Center practice from north to south as pads A, B, and C. In January 1963, to bring the identification system in line with construction and operational use schedules, the pad designations were reversed, the southernmost becoming pad A. Early documentation carries the original designations; the revised designations are used hereafter in the text. C. Bidgood, Chief, Facilities Off., "Reidentification of Launch Complex 39 Launch Pads," 7 Jan. 1963.

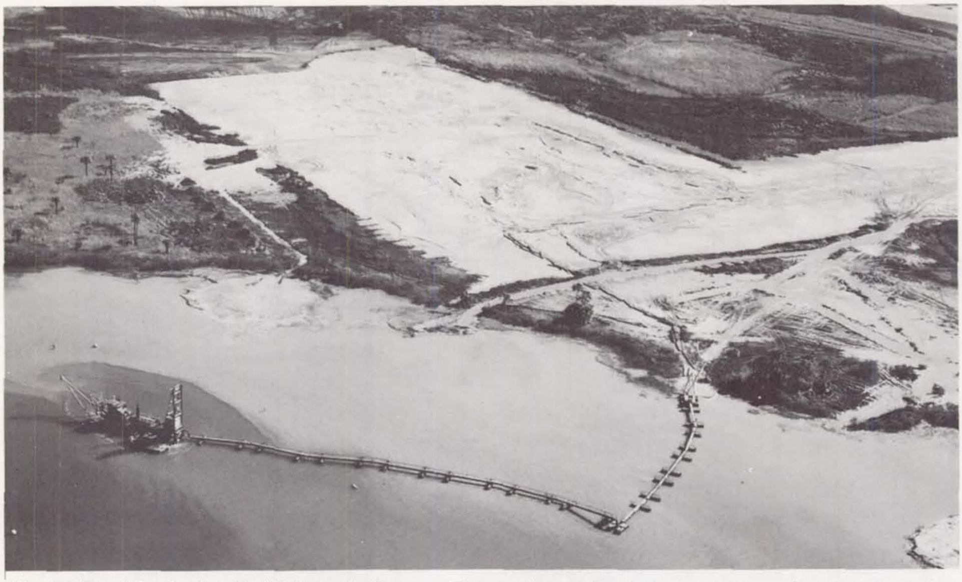


Fig. 66. Dredging hydraulic fill from the Banana River and pumping it onto a construction site, December 1962. The water is draining back into the river above and right of the barge.

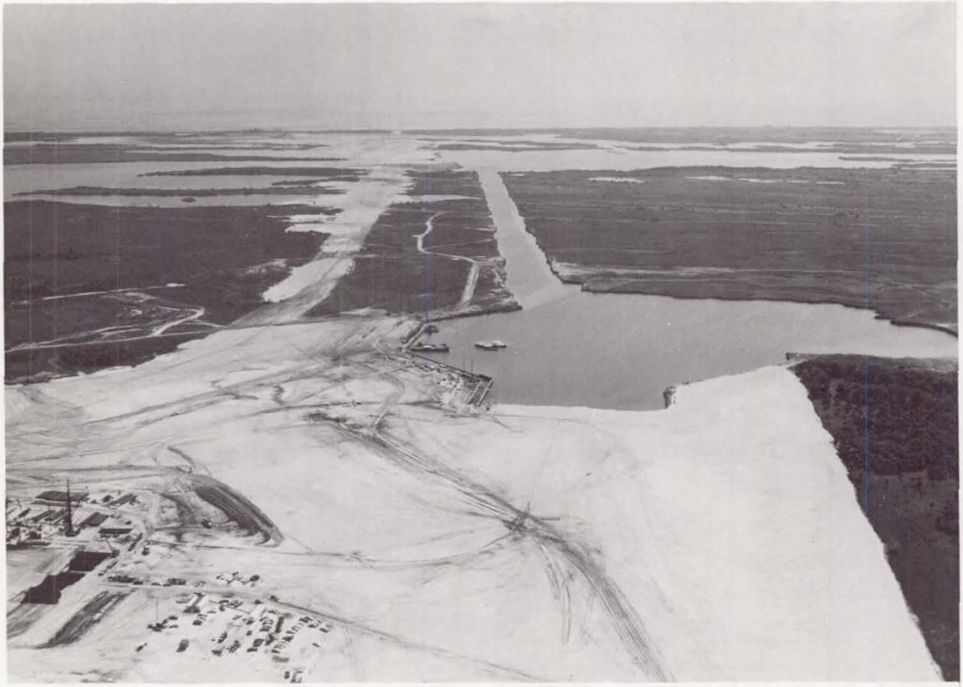


Fig. 67. The barge canal and turning basin, with assembly building site in lower left, August 1963.

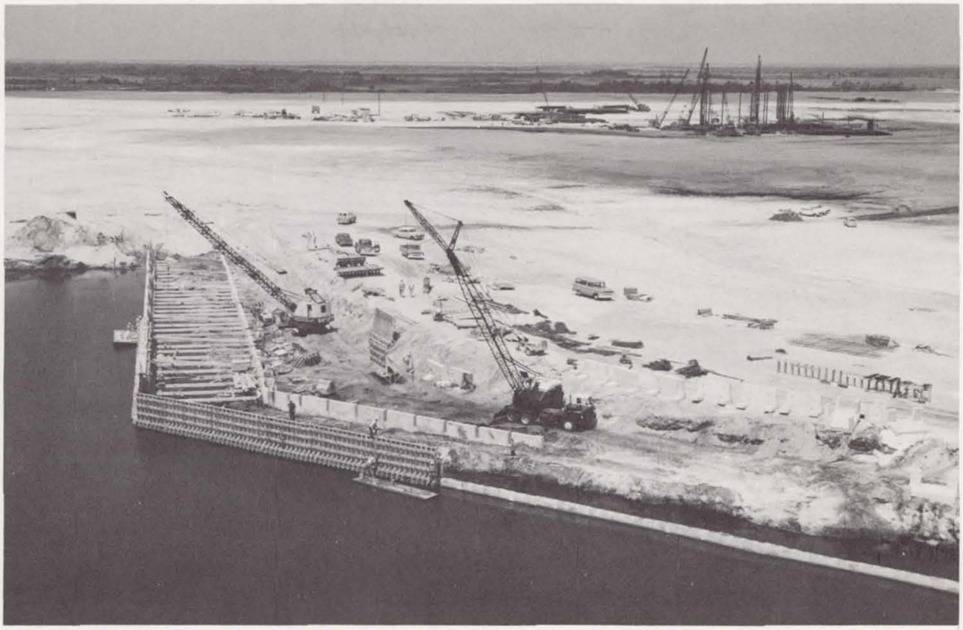


Fig. 68. The wharf under construction at the turning basin, with assembly building site in background, August 1963.

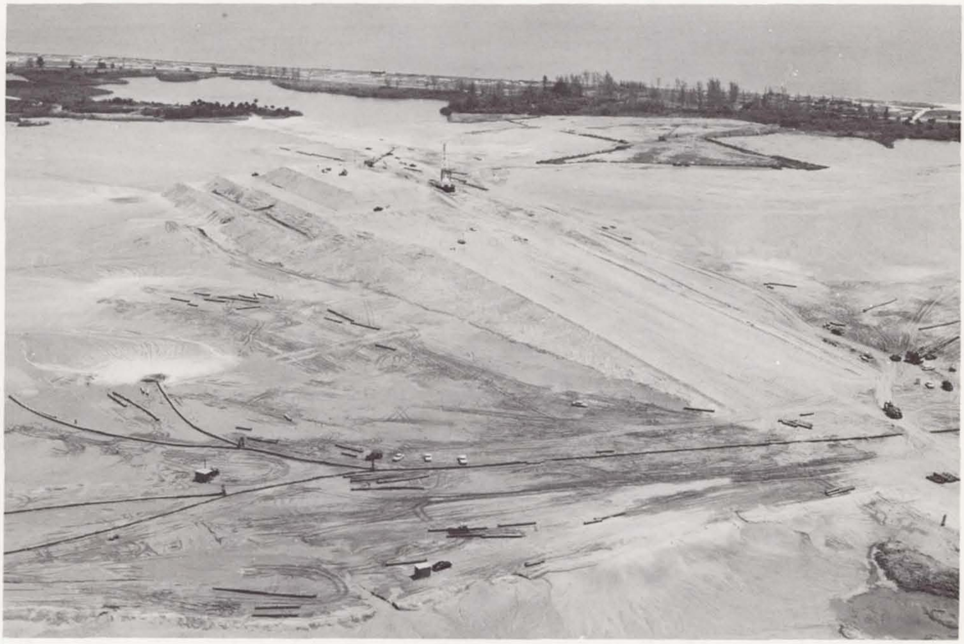


Fig. 69. One of the big sandpiles: hydraulic fill piled on the site of LC-39, pad A, June 1963.

VAB. The canal would serve barges bringing in the first and second stages of the Saturn V. Gahagan dredged a channel to pad A so that barges could deliver material directly to the LC-39 construction site.

During the dredging operations, the powerful hydraulic pumps coughed up 6 876 000 cubic meters of sand and shell for fill. A major portion of it went into the 57-meter-wide, 2-meter-high crawlerway, which would stretch more than 4.8 kilometers from the VAB to pad A.

Out at the pad site, the pumps piled a pyramid of sand and shell 24.4 meters high, one of the highest recorded pumping operations. All the while, draglines, bulldozers, and other earth-moving equipment molded the mound into the approximate shape of the launch pad. Subsequent measurements revealed that this outsized sandpile had settled 1.2 meters and properly compressed the soil beneath. Bulldozers then removed part of the pile to bring the fill to the proper elevation.[2]

A final inspection of the land clearing, channel dredging, and fill in early September 1963 showed that Gahagan had completed all work on the contract. About six months after the completion of the fill for pad A, Gahagan began pumping and piling hydraulic fill for launch pad B and for the causeway from Cape Canaveral to Merritt Island east of the industrial area.[3]

NASA Declares War—On Mosquitoes

The *Spaceport News* had its share of sensational headlines during 1963, especially in May when Astronaut Gordon Cooper took Faith 7 into an earth orbit on a Mercury-Atlas launch vehicle from pad 14. But none quite reached the unique quality of a headline in the 8 August issue: "Peaceful NASA Declares War—On Mosquitoes."[4] It may well have been the most necessary, well-executed, and successful war in American history. For reasons of health and comfort, the mosquito population had to be reduced before workers could begin any sustained outdoor work during the prime mosquito season from April to late October. In the past, epidemics of malaria, yellow fever, and dengue (an infectious fever prevalent in warm climates)—all spread by mosquitoes—had periodically retarded the development of Florida. The discovery and application of successful methods of mosquito control had been one of the factors responsible for the state's rapid development in relatively recent years.

Almost from the outset, the mosquito figured prominently in NASA's operations. LVOD's Deputy Chief of the Mechanical, Structural, and Propulsion Office, Robert Gorman, spoke of the early days: "The mosquitoes were so bad . . . . Everyone wore long shirt sleeves and gloves, even in the summer . . . . In fact, one fellow with sensitive skin really got chewed up. He stayed in Huntsville after that." In recalling the first Redstone launch from the Cape, Gorman remarked: "You couldn't wear a white shirt. The mosquitoes would be so thick they'd turn it black." In an interview two years later, James Finn, who had come to the Joint Long Range Proving Ground in 1951 and joined the original Debus team in May 1954, said that "the mosquitoes were a hazard—but so was the mosquito repellant. . . . If any got on our badges, it rubbed our pictures off."[5]

The problem was at first almost unbelievable to all but former residents of the area. One acre of salt marsh was easily capable of producing 50 000 000 adult mosquitoes within a week after a heavy rainfall. The "landing rate" in bad areas was often more than 500 mosquitoes on a person in one minute. In 1962, two scientists from the Florida Entomological Research Center in Vero Beach collected with hand nets 1.6 kilograms of live mosquitoes in just one hour.

By April 1963, the Subcommittee on Mosquito Control of the Joint Community Impact Coordination Committee (see page 92) agreed upon a cooperative program using the services of the county, state, Air Force Missile Test Center, and the Launch Operations Center. The program sought both temporary and permanent control. At the time, the main breeding grounds of the salt-marsh mosquito included 57.7 square kilometers in northern Brevard County and 4.3 square kilometers in southern Volusia County. Within the Merritt Island Launch Area were also hundreds of acres capable of producing fresh-water mosquitoes.

The temporary control measures consisted of ground and aerial spraying of insecticide. The most effective permanent control on the Merritt Island Launch Area consisted of the construction of dikes to flood breeding areas during the peak summer months. With the flooding of marshes, the minnow population increased and mosquito eggs and larvae declined.

The Brevard County Mosquito Control District also agreed to continue work at the Merritt Island Launch Area. The county provided four draglines, two spray planes, and a helicopter for inspection purposes. The Launch Operations Center and the Air Force Missile Test Center provided two draglines and one bulldozer to accelerate the permanent control work that the county was doing. The Launch Operations Center supplied the insecticide and operated the ground fogging equipment. The State of Florida provided direct financial aid and scientific research. The master plan had originally estimated six years to accomplish reasonable mosquito control in the Merritt Island Launch Area. Fortunately the program moved much faster than that.[6]

Contracting for the VAB and the LCC

Four of the world's most unique buildings were to go up on Merritt Island during the succeeding years, two at one end of launch complex 39, two in the industrial area five miles south. While other structures, such as the more traditionally designed headquarters, were to be known at the center by their full titles, these four shortly became known by acronyms: the vehicle assembly building as the VAB, the launch control center as the LCC, the central instrumentation facility as the CIF, and the operations and checkout building as the O & C building. This last building was also called the manned spacecraft operations building.

The day after his visit to Florida in September 1962, President Kennedy stated at Rice University Stadium in Houston:

> In the last 24 hours, we have seen facilities now being created for the greatest and most complex exploration in man's history. We have felt the ground shake and the air shattered by the testing of a Saturn C-1 booster rocket . . . . We have seen the site where five F-1 rocket engines . . . will be clustered together to make the advanced Saturn missile, assembled in a new building to be built at Cape Canaveral as tall as a 48-story structure, as wide as a city block, and as long as two lengths of this field.[7]

No doubt many of the Rice engineers and students appreciated the remarks of the President. The concept, however, still stretched beyond the imagination of the average American. He could not picture a building so huge that the Rose Bowl or the Yankee Stadium would fit on the roof. Yet this was what URSAM planned for the vehicle assembly building.

During the first half of 1963, the Corps of Engineers was still acquiring land for the spaceport and simultaneously awarding contracts for continued site preparation and utility installations. Dredging operations to provide fill for the VAB, one launch pad, and the Banana River causeway were proceeding on schedule. In the industrial area, ground-breaking ceremonies were held in January on the site of the operations and checkout building, and the Corps of Engineers awarded a contract for the construction of primary utilities to provide for a water distribution system, sewer lines, an electrical system, a central heating plant, streets, and hydraulic fill for the Indian River causeway to connect the industrial area on Merritt Island with the Florida mainland. During this same period, the Launch Operations Center began awarding the first construction contracts for structures in the industrial and LC-39 areas.

The national goal of accomplishing the manned lunar landing "before this decade is out" dramatically affected the entire building program. With a deadline, scheduling became critical. At the beginning of 1963, the Office of Manned Space Flight's "official flight schedule" called for the launch of the first developmental Saturn V in March 1966 and of the first manned Saturn V in June 1967.[8] Meeting these dates was contingent upon the concurrent development of the Saturn V launch vehicle, the Apollo spacecraft, and launch facilities, and more particularly on the timely delivery of flight hardware to the launch center.

Of more immediate concern was the construction of launch facilities and checking them out many months before the first Saturn V launch. The first of December, 1965, was the most important date—the date when the launch complexes had to be ready for use. This in turn required that a number of facilities be ready by May 1965 to provide time for checking out and testing the launch complexes. Working backward from this date, LOC developed, and periodically revised, detailed schedules for completion of the construction and testing of each facility on launch complex 39 and in the industrial area. The demands of this tight schedule influenced construction as much as the development of the launch vehicle and the spacecraft.

On 31 May 1963, the Corps of Engineers advertised for bids on the structural steel and the erection of the VAB framework. On 9 July Col. G. A. Finley, District Engineer of the newly established Canaveral District of the Corps of Engineers, acting as agent for NASA, and officials of the American Bridge Division of U.S. Steel Corporation, Atlanta, signed the largest single contract NASA had yet awarded for work in the Cape area. This contract, in the original amount of $23 534 000, called for furnishing more than 45 000 metric tons of structural steel and the erection of the skeleton framework of the VAB, with completion by 1 December 1964. Workmen were busy at the site the day the contract was signed. The Blount Brothers Corporation of Montgomery, Alabama, signed an $8 000 000 contract on 11 July 1963 to provide the steel and concrete foundations and flooring of the VAB, with completion by 1 May 1964. The Blount firm also started work on the day of the signing.[9]

Laying the Foundations

Providing a firm foundation for construction on sandy soil had been one of the early design problems. Max O. Urbahn, head of one of the four firms in the design consortium, spoke of a second problem: "We were faced with the fascinating possibility that the shape of the building might make it react like an immense box kite; it could blow away in a high wind . . . ."[10] The solution to both problems was to drive thousands of piles, steel pipes 41 centimeters in diameter, through the subsoil until they rested on bedrock. These served to anchor the building as well as to prevent the structure from sinking into the ground.[11]

The building stood only a few feet above sea level and near the ocean. Salt water, saturating the subsoil, reacted with steel piling to create an electrical current. To prevent this electrolytic process from gradually eating away the steel pipe, workmen grounded the piling by welding thick copper wire to each pile and connecting the wires to the steel reinforcing bars in the concrete floor slab. Until this was done, the VAB could lay claim to being the world's largest wet cell battery.[12]

Blount Brothers moved rapidly to assemble pile-driving equipment, steel piling, and workmen at the work site. They drove the first piles on 2 August 1963 and by 15 August had driven 9144 meters of piling in the low bay area. The pipe for the piling came in 16.8-meter lengths, and welders had to join three and sometimes four lengths of pipe together to make up a single pile. To speed the work, Blount Brothers had their workmen weld at night and drive piles, which required better visibility, during the day. At the peak of activity, ten pile drivers were in action. Three of them were new, electrically driven, vibratory drivers that literally jigged the pilings into the ground. When the piles reached the first thin stratum of limestone at about 36 meters, steam- or diesel-driven pile drivers took over and pounded the piles into the bedrock, which ranged from 46 to 52 meters below the sandy surface. Although there were minor delays due to inclement weather—a week of unrelenting high winds and torrential rains brought all construction to a standstill in mid-September—the work on the foundations moved steadily ahead. The last of the piling was down on 3 January 1964, just five months after drivers pointed the first pile into the bedrock.[13]

As the pile drivers moved on, another group of Blount Brothers workmen moved in to erect the forms and place the reinforcing bars for the concrete pile caps and to bond the piles electrically to the reinforcing bars. To an observer in a helicopter, the VAB foundation site began to resemble a huge honeycomb with the concrete pile caps rapidly dividing the area into series of cells or boxes.[14] As soon as the concrete had set in a series of the pile caps, workmen removed the forms and replaced any fill removed in the course of work. Then they poured a layer of crushed aggregate into the boxes and poured the asphalt and concrete floor slab on top of the aggregate. All told, Blount Brothers poured 38 200 cubic meters of concrete for pile caps and floor slab before the foundation was completed in May 1964.

Driving piles for the assembly building

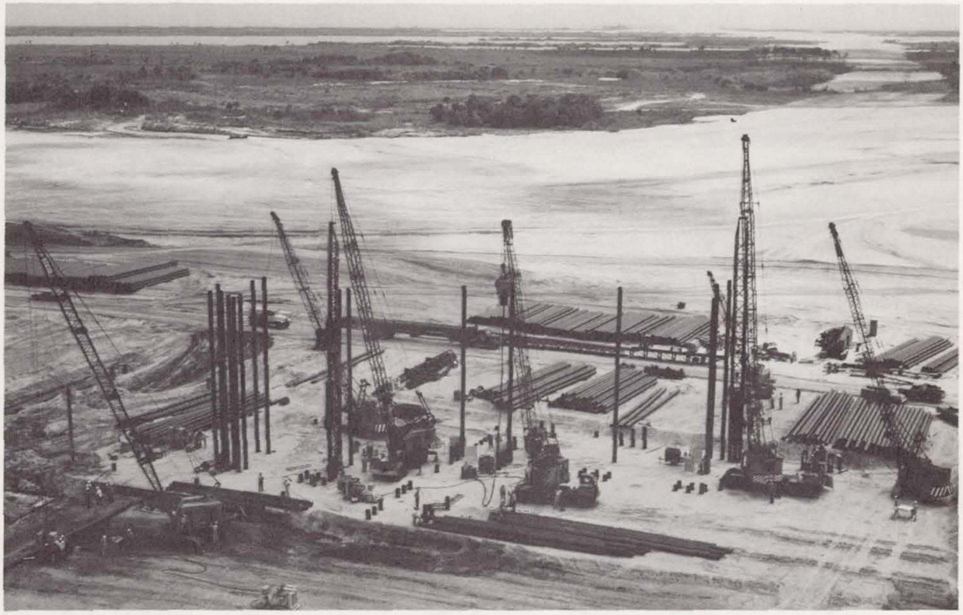


Figure 70

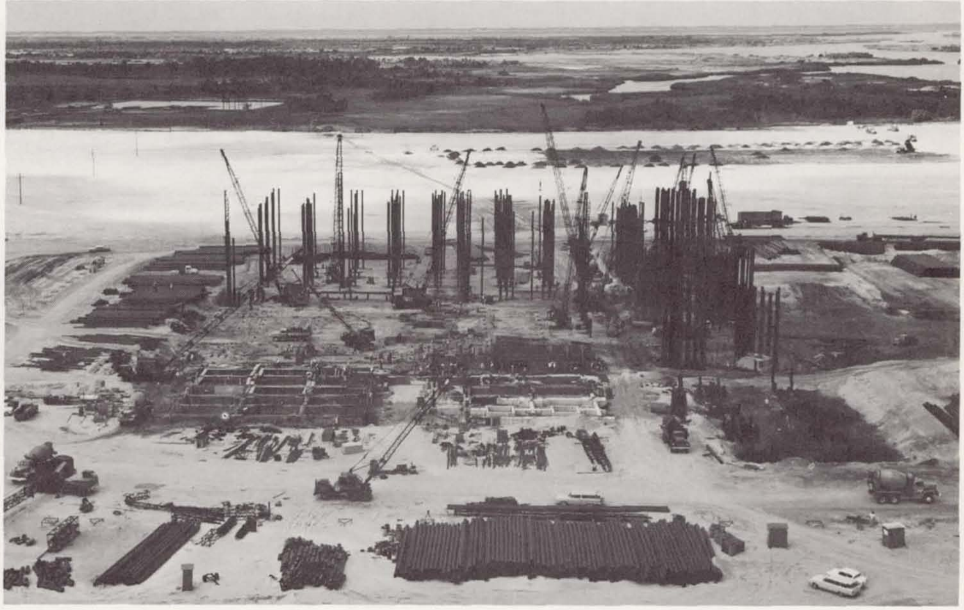


Figure 71

Fig. 70. August 1963. Fig. 71. September 1963.

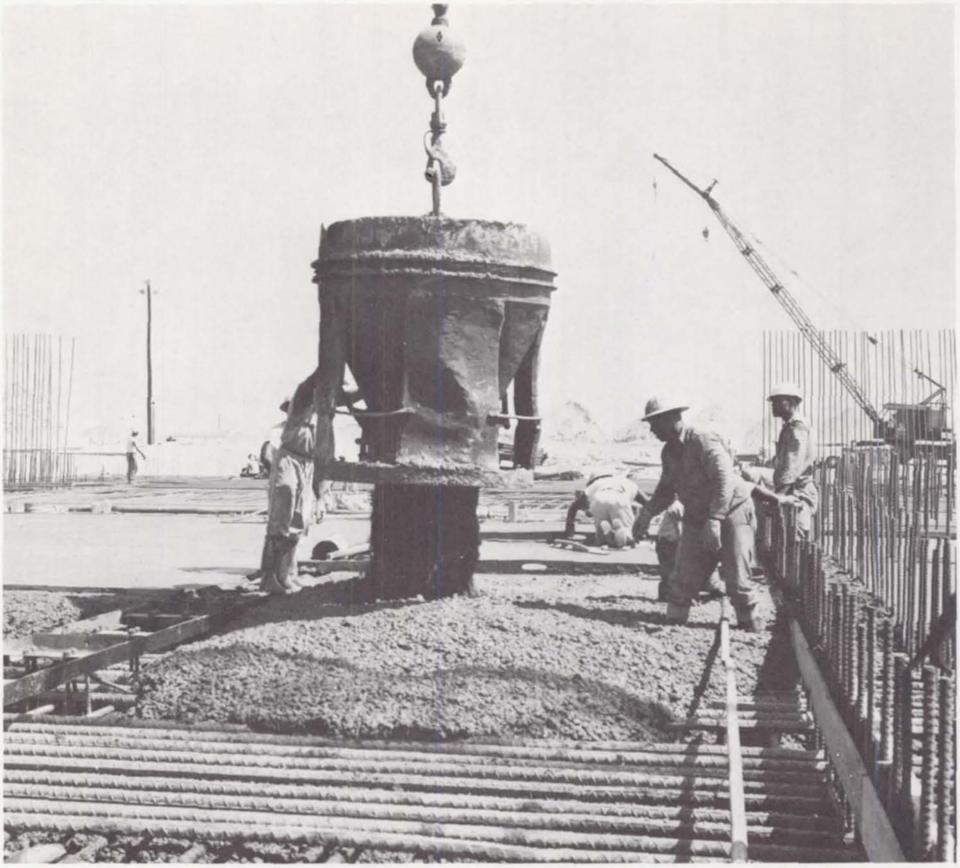


Fig. 72. Pouring the floor of the assembly building, July 1964.

Even before sinking the first pile of the foundation and beginning the steel framework of the VAB, the Corps of Engineers had taken the initial step toward awarding a contract for three large bridge cranes in the VAB.[15] A 175-ton crane with a hook height of about 50 meters would run the length of the building and would traverse both the low bay and high bay areas above the transfer aisle. Two other cranes, with a 250-ton capacity and hook height of approximately 140 meters, would be capable of movement from an assembly bay on the opposite side. Although bridge cranes of this capacity are not unusual in heavy industry, the invitation for bids spelled out unique requirements for precision, smoothness, and control of their vertical and horizontal movement. The cranes would cost about $2 000 000. Colby Cranes Manufacturing Company of Seattle won the contract and agreed to have the cranes ready for final test on 1 September 1965.[16]

Structural Steel and General Construction

While work on the foundations and floor slab of the VAB was progressing rapidly during the latter half of 1963, there was little on-site activity on the part of the structural steel contractor. However, as the American Bridge Division began mobilizing its work force and assembling its equipment on Merritt Island, United States Steel plants throughout the country were fabricating the carbon steel plate and structural shapes required for the building's framework.[17]

On 4 October 1963, the Corps of Engineers advertised for bids on general construction and outfitting in the VAB area. In addition to completion of the VAB (including outfitting only high bays 1 and 3), the work covered general site preparation, roads and utility installations in the area, the construction and outfitting of the VAB utility annex and the launch control center—both good-sized buildings in their own right—and of two other support buildings, one for high-pressure-gas storage and the other for paint and chemical storage. Estimators set the price of the VAB alone at \$52 000 000. The Corps of Engineers scheduled completion for 1 January 1966.[18]

A combine of three South Gate, California, construction-engineering companies—Morrison-Knudsen Company, Inc., Perini Corporation, and Paul Hardeman, Inc.—won the contract on 16 January 1964 with a bid of \$63 366 378.[19] It was not long, however, before the contract grew considerably. On 9 March the South Gate combine assumed administration of the American Bridge Division's contract for structural steel work on the VAB and the Colby Cranes contract for fabrication, installation, and testing the three large bridge cranes, as the latter two companies became subcontractors to the South Gate group. With the absorption of these two earlier contracts, the Morrison-Knudsen, Perini and Hardeman general construction and outfitting contract reached a value of \$88 743 386.[20] Although both American Bridge and Colby continued at their respective jobs until their completion, all VAB area brick-and-mortar construction was now under the direction of a single contractor.

With steel column sections and other structural steel arriving at the job site, erection of the framework began in January 1964 in the low bay area. By this time the original contract date for completing the structural steel (1 December 1964) had given way to a completion date of 7 March 1965. The job was a rather straightforward one although, because of the building's unique requirements, it appeared that the structure was being built wrong-side out. Because of the height of the assembly bay door openings—two on

The assembly building takes shape

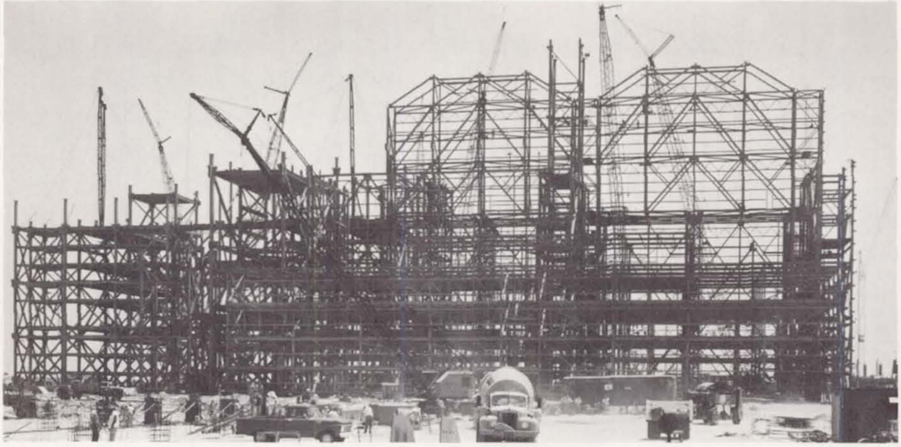


Figure 73

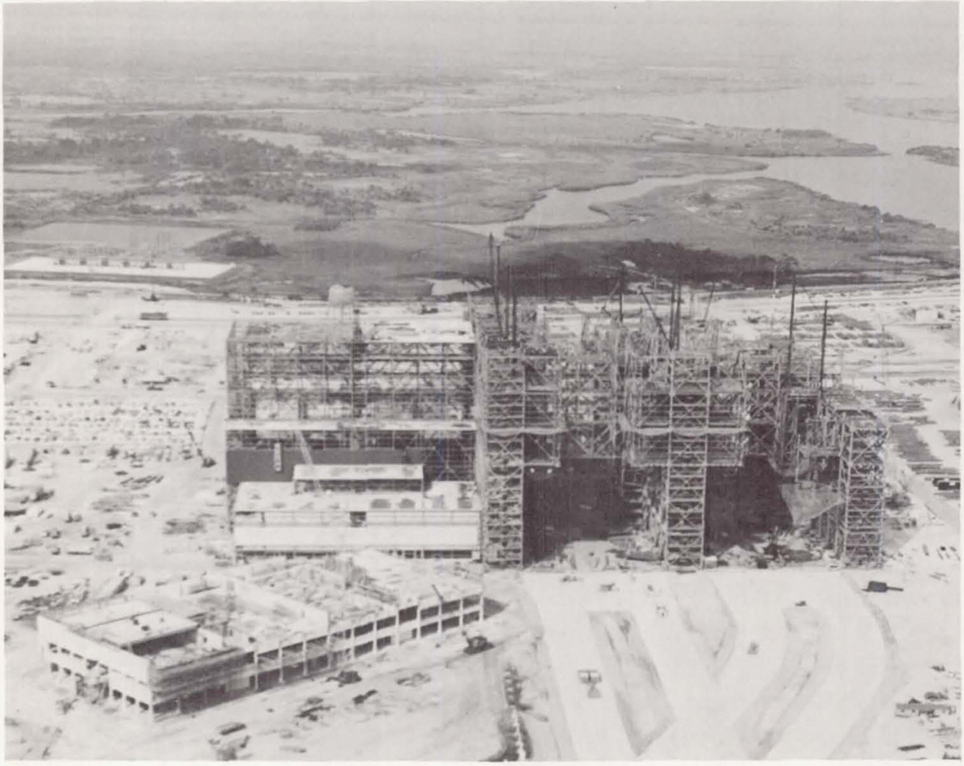


Figure 74

Fig. 73. The low-bay framework, with high bays rising in background, May 1964. Fig. 74. High bays to the right; the launch control center is the separate building on left, September 1964.

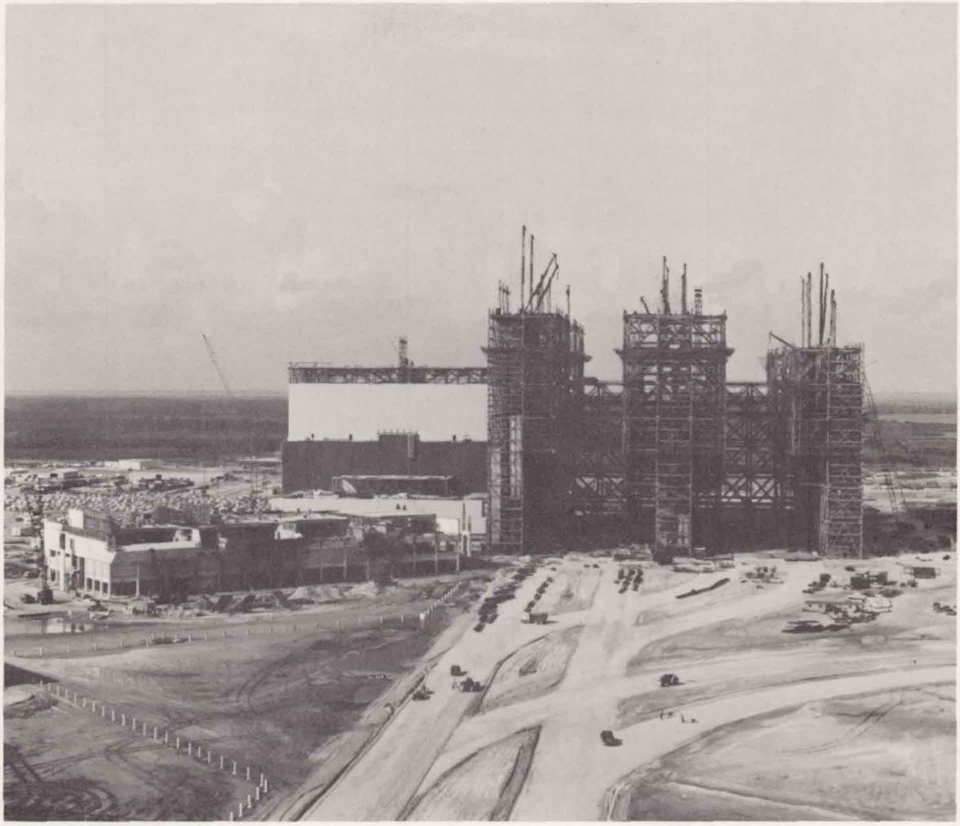


Figure 75

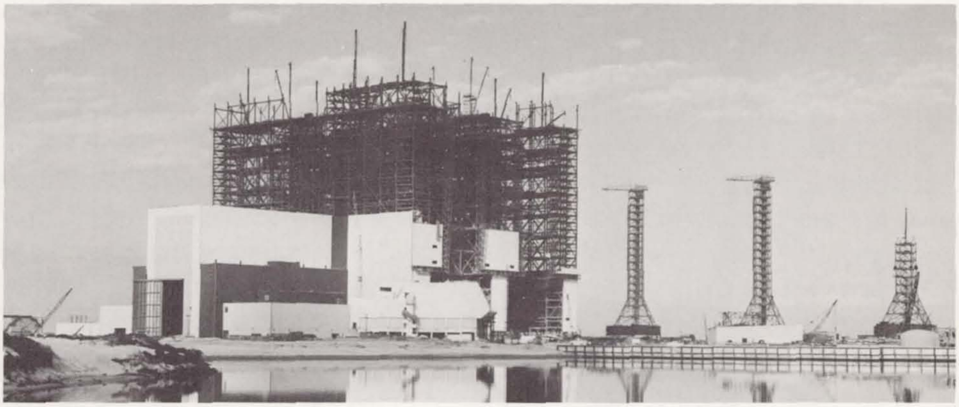


Figure 76

Fig. 75. In this view to the west in October 1964, the openings into the high bays are most distinct. Fig. 76. Mobile launchers are visible to the right; the launch control center, seen end-on in the center, seems to be part of the assembly building. The view is northwest across the turning basin, January 1965.

each side of the building—the horizontal stiffening structure had to be installed on the interior of the building, parallel to the transfer aisle, rather than along the exterior sides.[21]

Less than a month after steel erection began, the general construction contractor, Morrison-Knudsen, Perini and Hardeman, started work in the VAB area. After setting up a temporary office, warehouse, and concrete mixing plant on the job site, the contractors began compacting and stabilizing the crawler erection area, preparing the erection site for one mobile launcher, excavating for the crawlerway base, and excavating for the foundation floor slab of the launch control center. Contractors completed the crawler assembly area by 11 March and the mobile launcher area by 1 June.[22]

Meanwhile, Morrison-Knudsen, Perini and Hardeman had also begun work in February on the high-pressure-gas storage building, the road system in the VAB area, the instrumentation and communication duct banks and tunnels from the launch control center to the crawlerway, and the foundation work for the control center itself. In March work started on the water distribution and storage system, on the sewage plant and sewer system, and on the electrical distribution system. In April construction began on the VAB utility annex, on the paint and chemical storage building, and on the VAB area crawlerways.[23] Thus, by the time the ironworkers of the American Bridge Division had progressed far enough with erection of the VAB framework to allow the Morrison-Knudsen, Perini and Hardeman workmen access to the building, almost all of the other construction in the general area was moving ahead. The combine started work in the northwest corner of the low bay in April.[24]

From this time on, employees of the two contractors worked jointly in the building, with the general construction men following closely behind the ironworkers. Joint occupancy was necessary if the building and related facilities were to be completed on schedule. Since contractors in widely scattered parts of the country worked on different parts of the total job, construction chiefs on Merritt Island had to test components regularly to see if they fitted and worked together. These so-called "fit tests" became important procedures in the early stages of construction. The installing of many pieces of vehicle-related ground support equipment—a necessity for facility checkout—had to await completion of most of the general construction.

The same combine of California construction-engineering companies built the launch control center as part of the VAB contract. URSAM had decided on a distinctively shaped four-story building adjoining the VAB on the southeast and connected with it by an enclosed bridge. The ground floor contained offices, cafeteria, and dispensary, the second floor telemetry and radio equipment. Firing rooms occupied the third floor, and the fourth floor had conference rooms and displays.[25]

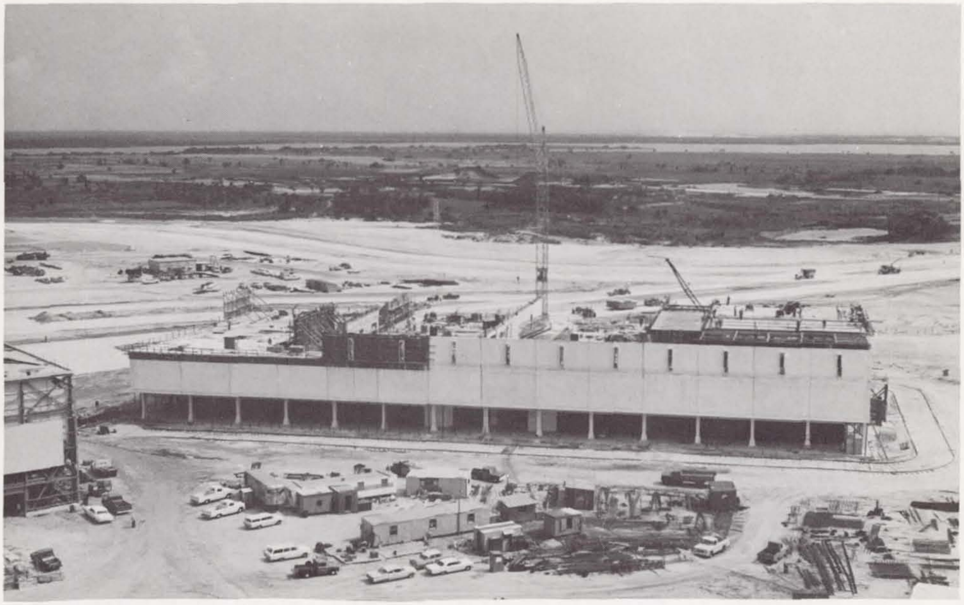


Fig. 77. The launch control center under construction, September 1964. The assembly building shows to the left.

The original plan called for four rectangular firing rooms, 28 by 46 meters; one was never to be equipped. When completed, the firing rooms contained similar equipment set up on four levels. The first level took up over two-thirds of the room and would ultimately contain computers and five rows of 30 consoles each. Two rows of consoles (27 in one, 25 in the other) would fill the second level. The third level would contain the consoles of the Kennedy Space Center Director and other major officials. To the left of these consoles, two diagonal rows of seats with telephones and listening devices, but no control equipment, would provide a close-up view of operations for technical experts not directly involved in the launch. On the top level, a glassed-in triangular room would give visiting dignitaries a like view. They could either watch activities in the firing room or look out the windows at the launch pads. These double-paned windows extended the full width of the rear of the firing room and contained a special heat- and shock-resistant glass. Outside, large vertical louvers, resembling huge venetian blinds, could be closed in a few moments for further protection.

Cleo and Dora Visit the Cape

The nearby passage of hurricanes Cleo in late August and Dora in early September 1964 caused an estimated $35 000 worth of damage, but a

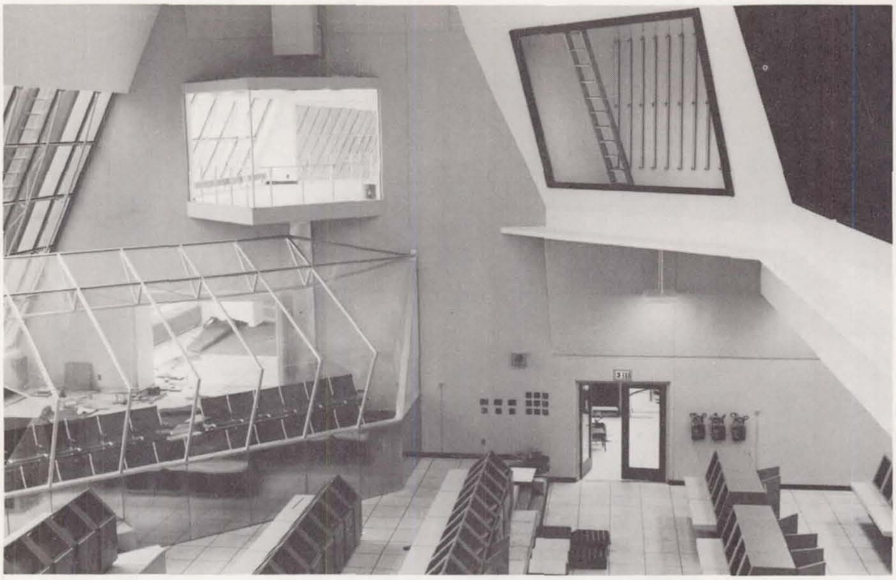


Fig. 78. Firing room 1 under construction, August 1965. The VIP viewing-area is behind the glass wall, left. The windows on the extreme left looked toward the pads. The triangular extension into the room above the VIP area was intended for the most distinguished guests.

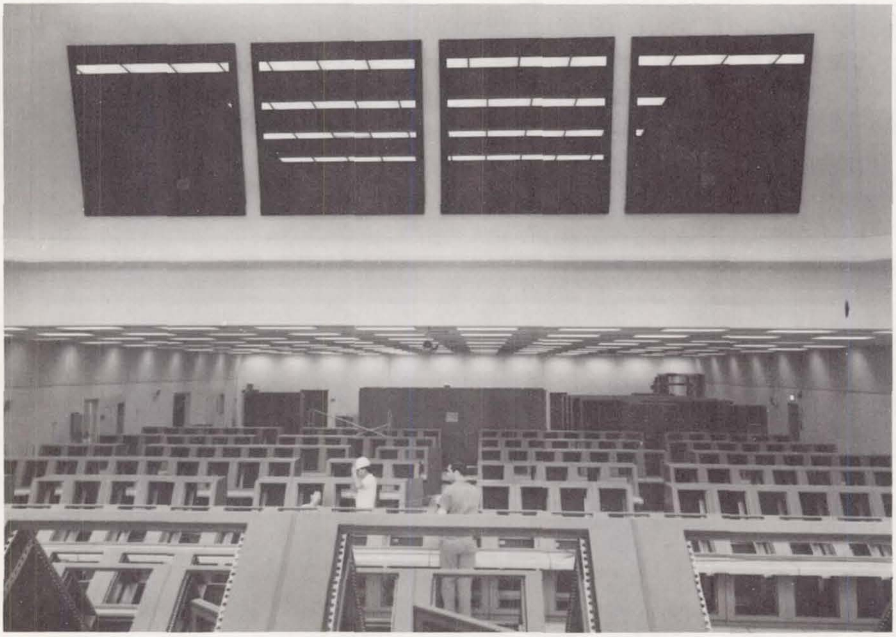


Fig. 79. Firing room 1 ready for equipping, November 1965. The four large overhead screens, here reflecting ceiling lights, would display major milestones in the countdown.

delay of only three days. The editor's "Spotlight" in the 3 September edition of the *Spaceport News* reported the lack of major damage to NASA facilities and dispensed credit widely—from the people who drew up the storm plans to the man who laid the last sandbag in place a few hours before Cleo swept by. That everything went off without a hitch reflected favorably on the advance planning. "It was a team that got the job done," the editor wrote. "Everyone involved directly in securing operations had his work to do, and did it with the minimum of hubbub."[26]

The editor singled out "Hurricane" Jones. A KSC engineer with the Instrumentation Division's acoustic and meteorological section, bachelor Jones had volunteered to ride out the storm in the huge launch control center at complex 37, gathering weather data. From 10 a.m. on Thursday until relief came at 7:30 the next morning, he recorded winds that peaked at 112.6 kilometers per hour. The reluctant hero admitted that he had misgivings during his lonely vigil, even though he had thought the launch control center looked like the safest place in the vicinity.[27]

VAB Nears Completion

At the beginning of October 1964, a survey revealed that the construction force on all contracts at the new Merritt Island spaceport had reached a total of 4300, with about 500 more equipment installers at work. At that time, KSC had 1670 federal employees, 1902 support services contractor employees, and 863 employees of launch vehicle contractors. The Florida Operations Division of the Manned Spacecraft Center (deeply involved in Project Gemini, which would launch its first manned orbital flight the following March, and just becoming concerned with the activation of Apollo spacecraft facilities) had a force of 502 federal employees and 1042 persons in the employ of contractors. Overall employment at Cape Kennedy and Merritt Island was expected to exceed 15 000 by 1 January 1965.[28]

By Christmas of 1964, the ironworkers had erected nearly 38 000 metric tons of structural steel in the VAB, reaching the 128-meter level in all towers. The LCC building was nearing completion, although interior mechanical work and the installation of electrical fixtures continued on all four floors. The VAB utility annex was also nearing completion, with boiler stacks and skylights completed and installation of mechanical and electrical equipment continuing. Workers had finished the high-pressure-gas storage building on 2 October. The rest of the area facilities were all nearing the end of brick-and-mortar construction, although much installation and outfitting remained.[29]

Structural parts for the first of the extensible work platforms in the high bays (five pairs of platforms in each high bay) had arrived at the VAB site. Workmen assembled these platforms outside the VAB because of their size, approximately 18 meters square and up to three stories tall, and then moved them inside for mounting on the framework of the VAB. They would be vertically adjustable. Since they were of cantilever design, they could extend horizontally about 9 meters from the main framework of the building to surround the launch vehicle in the high bay.[30]

As construction and outfitting continued into 1965, the vertical assembly building got a new name but not a new acronym. It was still the VAB, but now officially the *vehicle* assembly building, as of 3 February 1965. The new name, it was felt, would more readily encompass future as well as current programs and would not be tied to the Saturn booster. The Office of Manned Space Flight formally approved the change in September

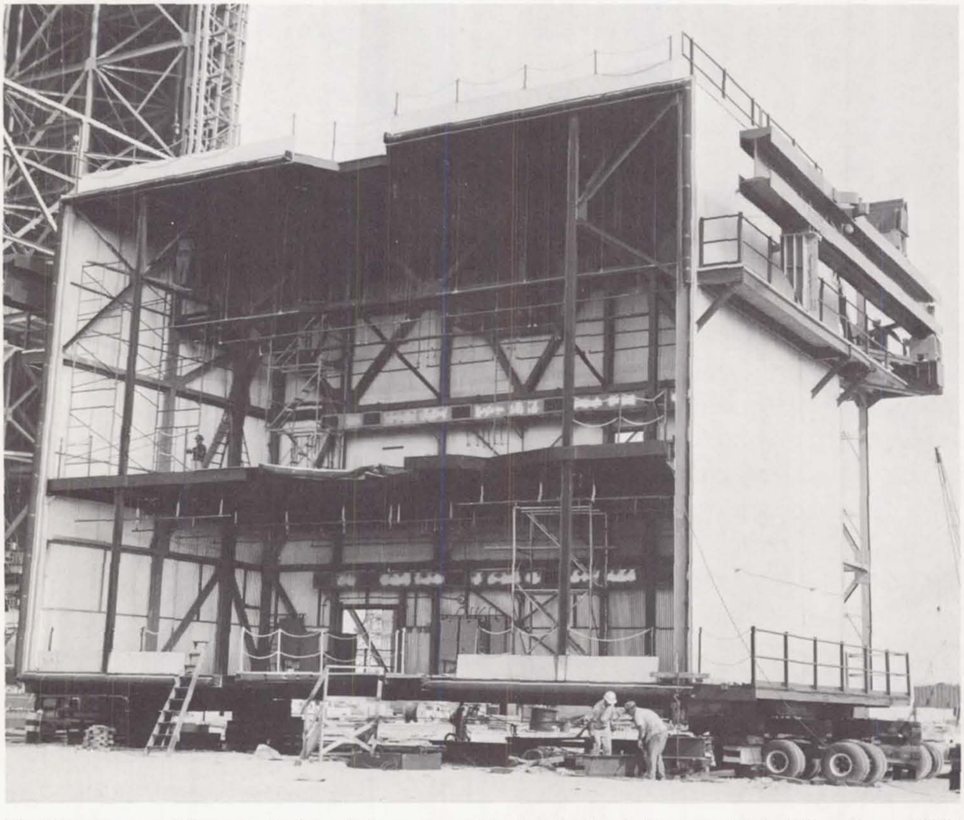


Fig. 80. An extensible work platform being prepared for installation in the assembly building, August 1965.

1965, but individuals at the facility continued to use both names interchangeably.[31]

The Colby Cranes Manufacturing Company had completed shop testing all three bridge cranes in Seattle and had shipped the 175-ton crane to the VAB site. By the end of January 1965, the two 250-ton bridge cranes had followed. They would soon be ready to install. In fact, countless details of the largest building in the world were approaching completion.[32]

Erection of the VAB's structural steel framework reached the top level of 160 meters at the end of March, and preparations began for the traditional topping-out ceremony. A 3600-kilogram, 11.6-meter-long steel I-beam, painted white and bearing the NASA symbol and the insignia of the American Bridge Division of the United States Steel Corporation, stood in front of several of the NASA buildings at KSC during early April to allow NASA and contractor employees to sign their names on it. The signed beam then went under the roof of the VAB over the transfer aisle.[33]

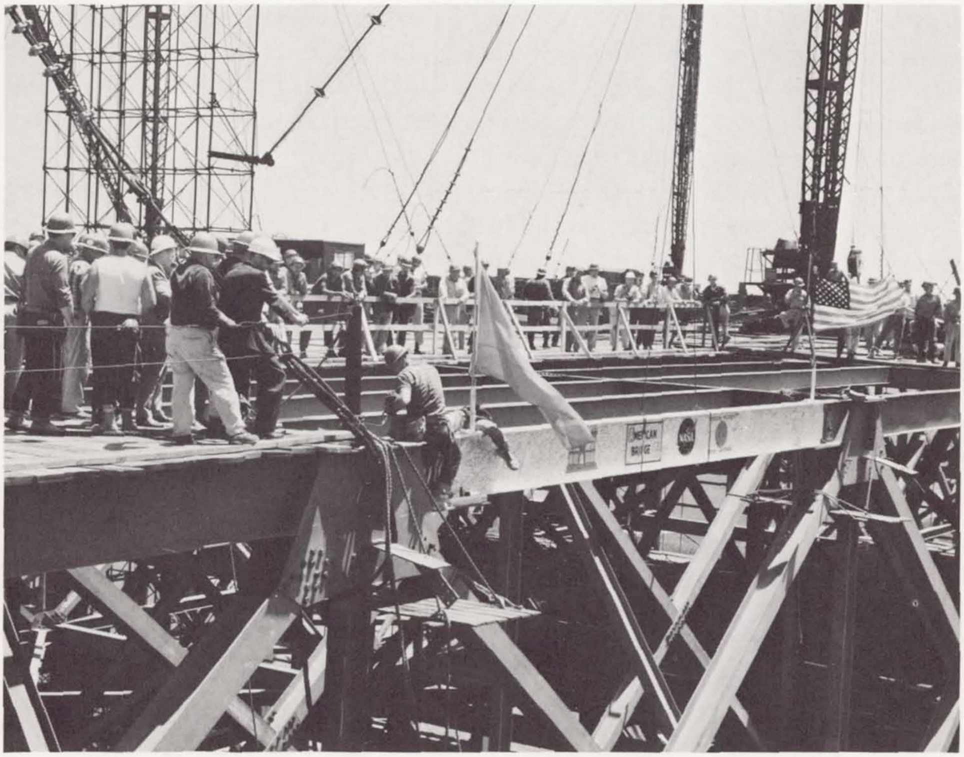


Fig. 81. The topping-out ceremony with the signed beam, April 1965.

Construction in the Industrial Area

While the vehicle assembly building and other facilities moved steadily toward completion at LC-39, the industrial area began to take shape to the south. Preliminary to any actual construction, the Azzarelli Construction Company had completed ground work for the operations and checkout building in early November 1962.[34] Azzarelli had used the surcharging method in preparing the soil by piling sand on the construction site until its weight was approximately equivalent to the weight of the proposed structure. The heavy surcharge compressed the underground layers of clay and coral, squeezing out liquids. The contractors used piling under later parts of the building, as well as for all other buildings on Merritt Island.

On 16 January 1963, the Paul Hardeman and Morrison-Knudsen combine, which would also construct the basic utility systems in the industrial area, signed a contract in the amount of $7 691 624 for the construction of the operations and checkout building. By the end of February, men were clearing the construction site and the right of way to it and removing excess surcharge material.[35] The O & C building was to undergo continuous addition, modification, and alteration during the succeeding five years. Some contractual changes reflected planned phasing of construction over several fiscal years' funding; others, the evolving design of the spacecraft; some were intended to improve the original design of the building.

Early criteria for the building had envisioned flight crew training equipment among the astronaut facilities. Early in 1964, however, the Manned Spacecraft Center's Flight Crew Support Division in Houston decided on a separate building for crew training. To assist in the preparation of the separate structure, it forwarded criteria and sketches of a similar facility located at the Manned Spacecraft Center. Other changes from the initial O & C building design included additions to the administrative and engineering area, to the four-story laboratory and checkout section, and to the assembly and test areas. Three firms in joint contract, Donovan Construction, Power Engineering, and Leslie Miller, Inc., completed these additions.[36]

In September 1964, designers began drawings for a clean room, or white room, for the Gemini program. This was a dust-free room with high quality temperature and humidity controls to prevent contamination of the space vehicle. The air intakes would have special filters. All persons who entered the room would wear clothing resembling surgical uniforms. To be located in the O & C building's assembly and test area, the room was built by S. I. Goldman of Winter Park, Florida.[37]

The O & C building, a multi-storied structure of approximately 17 200 square meters, contained as much flexibility as the Apollo spacecraft that it would test. A high bay, 68.2 meters long and 30.5 meters high, and an adjacent 76.5-meter-long low bay accommodated the three-man Apollo capsule. Two altitude chambers were prominent fixtures in the high bay. In these tanks, each 17 meters high and 10 meters in diameter, KSC engineers would check out the command and service modules and the lunar module. After pumps had evacuated the air from the chambers, the Apollo modules were checked out in a near vacuum. Two airlocks, measuring 2.6 meters in height and width, provided access to each chamber. They also housed the rescue teams. Should a loss of oxygen occur in the spacecraft, the physiological effects on the crewmen would be the same as in space. The rescue teams

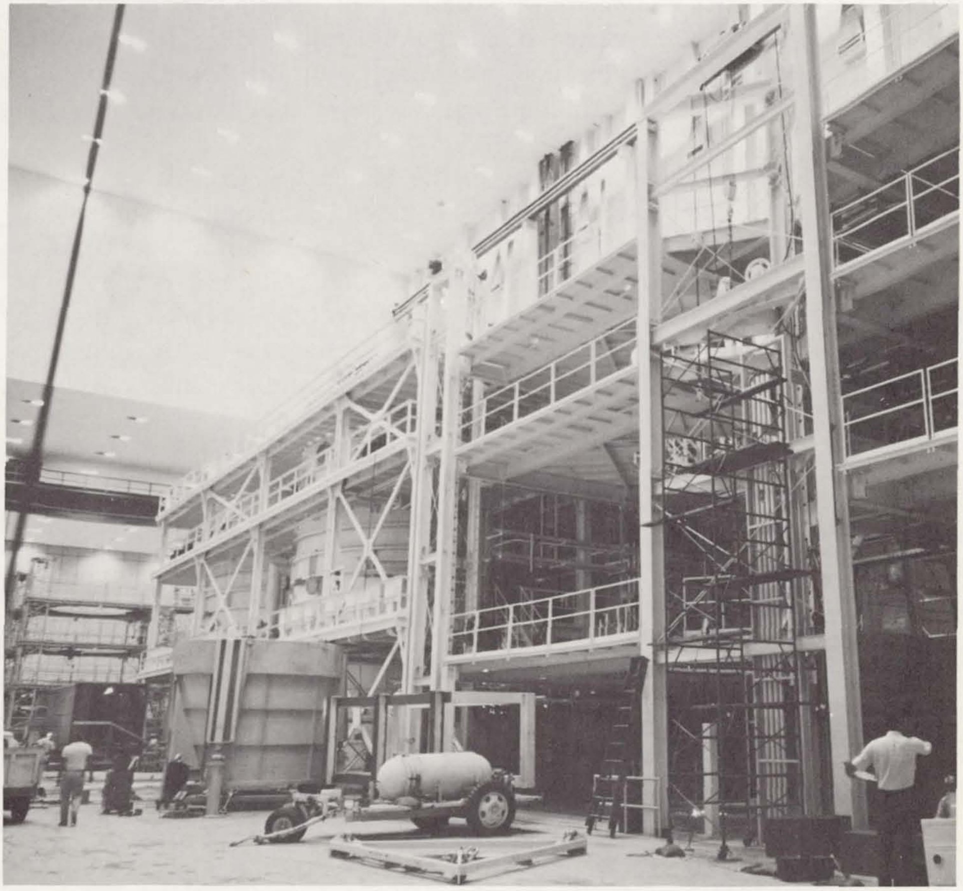


Fig. 82. Interior of operations and checkout building, August 1965. The two partly visible silos at left are altitude chambers.

would have to move fast, after rapidly pressurizing the chamber to a simulated altitude of 7600 meters.[38] After testing, the mated spacecraft components—the command module, the lunar excursion module, and the service module—would be moved from the integrated test area to the VAB in a vertical attitude, ready for stacking on top of the launch vehicle.[39]

The headquarters building, just west of the O & C building and a much less complicated structure, went up in two phases: the central structure, measuring 80 by 72 meters, first, and the east and west wings later. The building stood three stories high, except in the front where a fourth floor contained top administrative offices. The main section of the building extended east and west. The original plan called for four arms stretching to the south. Later on, the east and west additions brought with them two other southward extensions. The Franchi Construction Company of Newton, Massachusetts, which had begun work on the fluid test complex in mid-April 1963, started on the headquarters building in February 1964. On the day that the headquarters building got under way, the Blount Brothers Construction Corporation began the two buildings that comprised the central instrumentation facility.[40]

The Florida Operations team of the Manned Spacecraft Center was the first organization to occupy NASA's new facilities on Merritt Island. Most of the 1270 MSC and contractor employees who moved over from the Cape in September and October 1964 took new offices in the O & C building. Although heavily committed on the Gemini program, representatives of Florida Operations coordinated with contractor personnel and KSC in determining Apollo checkout requirements. By the following year the launch team had formulated a ground operations requirements plan. Some of the requirements, anticipated in early 1963 when the facilities were designed, no longer appeared necessary, e.g., Houston had decided to pack the Apollo parachutes at the factory rather than in Florida. Houston officials were coming to believe that, because of the spacecraft's complexity, it was undesirable to postpone major operations until the prelaunch checkout. As much as possible should be accomplished at the factory. This view would alter considerably the scope of Apollo operations in Florida.[41]

Ceremonies at Completion

With construction nearing completion, Kennedy Space Center celebrated two formal dedications in the spring of 1965. On 14 April, 30 dignitaries came for the topping-out ceremonies at the vehicle assembly building: officials of KSC, the Corps of Engineers, the newly renamed

Eastern Test Range, U.S. Steel, the Morrison-Knudsen, Perini, and Hardeman consortium of contractors, and the design team of Urbahn-Roberts-Seelye-Moran. In a brief address, Debus stated:

> This building is not a monument—it is a tool if you will, capable of accommodating heavy launch vehicles. So if people are impressed by its bigness, they should be mindful that bigness in this case is a factor of the rocket-powered transportation systems necessary to provide the United States with a broad capability to do whatever is the national purpose in outer space . . . .[42]

In a less formal, but equally effective way, Ben Putney summed up the workers' feelings when he quipped: "This is the biggest project we've ever worked on. There just ain't nothing bigger!" American Bridge's senior construction superintendent, John Pendry, said of the VAB: "You can't call it a high-rise building, it's more like building a bridge straight up."

Although workers had topped out the structural steel in the VAB, the work was far from finished. Steven Harris, VAB project manager, noted that one of the biggest tasks was keeping up with evolving equipment as the work went along. He remarked: "The VAB was designed and is being constructed concurrently with the development of the Saturn V vehicle, and any changes made on the vehicle or its support equipment may require changes in the building."[43] At the time he was speaking, designers had already incorporated some 200 changes into the VAB since construction began, the most recent being modification of the extensible platforms as required by the final design of the mobile launcher.

The formal opening of KSC headquarters on 26 May provided another opportunity for ceremonies. Prior to the formalities, a 40-piece Air Force band entertained the guests. Maj. Gen. Vincent G. Huston, Commander of the Air Force Eastern Test Range; Maj. Gen. A. C. Welling, head of the Corps of Engineers, South Atlantic Division; and Col. W. L. Starnes, Canaveral District Engineer, shared the podium with Debus, who thanked the Administration, the Congress, NASA, and the American people for the faith they had placed in the KSC team. Then he handed American and NASA flags to members of the security patrol who raised them to the top of the pole in front of the new headquarters.[44]

At the same time, the people who were going to support, maintain, and operate these facilities and their equipment had begun to move in. By mid-September "Operation Big Move" had brought 7000 of KSC's civil service and contractor employees from scattered sites at Cocoa Beach, the Cape, and Huntsville to Merritt Island, mostly to the industrial area; 4500 more would move to Merritt Island during the following months, mostly into the VAB. During 1965 the civil service personnel at KSC rose from 1180 to more than 2500, chiefly through the addition of the Manned Spacecraft Center's Florida Operations and the Goddard Space Flight Center's Launch Operations Division; the latter specialized in unmanned launches.[45] Even more significant for many than the physical move was the psychological move from the "pads where they had their hands in the operation" to desks where they directed the actions of others.

This description of the spaceport's construction has emphasized the material and the contractual. A later chapter will discuss the intermittent walkouts that made some wonder if the contractors would ever finish. This chapter has dealt little with the human side of the workmen who slaved and sweated and suffered—and in a few instances died as a result of accidents. On 4 June 1964, workers were stacking concrete forms for the third floor deck in the low bay area of the VAB. Apparently, the forms became overloaded and collapsed. Five men fell and were injured, two seriously. A month later, on 2 July 1964, Oscar Simmons, an employee of American Bridge and Iron Company, died in an accidental fall from the 46th level of the VAB. On 3 August 1965, lightning killed Albert J. Treib on pad B of launch complex 39.[46]

To some, construction at KSC was just another job. Others, however, were keenly aware of the contribution they were making to the task of sending the first man to the moon and bringing him back safely.

13

New Devices for New Deeds

The Crawler-Transporter

The four unique structures going up on Merritt Island—the vehicle assembly building, the launch control center, the central instrumentation facility, and the operations and checkout building—had their match for distinctiveness in a group of devices being designed and built at the same time: the crawler-transporter, the mobile launcher, the mobile service structure, and the service arms. These novel mechanisms almost defy verbal description, and the reader should refer frequently to the illustrations in this chapter.

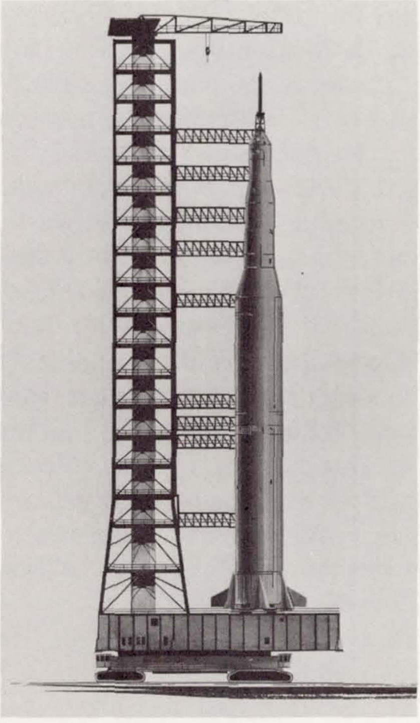


Fig. 83. Sketch of Saturn V and mobile launcher on a crawler-transporter, November 1963.

Something like the crawler-transporters that would eventually move the Apollo-Saturns from the VAB to the launch pads of LC-39 had been used for surface coal mining in Paradise, Kentucky (page 118). These huge vehicles ran on four tank-like treads, much like bulldozer treads in shape, but considerably larger. One of these double-track mechanisms supported the vehicle at each corner. Since Bucyrus-Erie of Milwaukee was the only firm that had built such giant contrivances, the Launch Operations Center (LOC) sent engineers to inspect them in Kentucky and the Bucyrus-Erie plant in Wisconsin.[1] LOC moved toward closing a contract with the Milwaukee firm, as the only company that could build the crawlers in the allotted time. Approval by NASA Headquarters seemed assured.[2]

Negotiations, however, did not prove so simple. A Bucyrus-Erie employee, Barrett Schlenk, had first interested LOC in using the crawler to carry the spaceship from the VAB to the pad. But when it appeared that Bucyrus-Erie would get the contract under sole-source procurement, William C. Dwyer, Vice President of Marion Power Shovel Co. of Ohio, protested to NASA. Brainerd Holmes urged Debus to use competitive bidding. Twenty-two industrial firms sent representatives to a procurement conference, but only two submitted proposals—Marion for 8 million dollars, Bucyrus-Erie for 11 million dollars.[3]

Now Senator William Proxmire (D., Wis.) protested. Webb met with him and other members of Congress to discuss the matter. Previously, Proxmire had tried in vain to amend the NASA Authorization Bill for fiscal 1963 to require competitive bidding to the "maximum possible extent" (page 162); but now he advanced the cause of a Wisconsin firm, even though it had lost out in competitive bidding. He questioned the validity of Marion's estimate of an 8-million-dollar cost for the crawler-transporter. Congressman Henry Reuss (D., Wis.) next urged a fixed-price contract to hold Marion to its estimate. But Webb countered that continual modifications would come during construction and insisted on the cost-plus contract.[4]

A second major factor in Marion's favor, besides its considerably lower bid, was its announced intention of choosing a project manager from its own personnel, thus saving considerable time in building a team.[5] Bucyrus had said it would bring in one from outside. Having received the contract, Marion selected a competent manager, Philip Koehring, not from its own company, but from—of all firms—Bucyrus-Erie. When Marion finally completed the contract two years later, the price had risen above 11 million dollars.

By contract, Marion undertook to assemble the first complete crawler-transporter on Merritt Island by 1 November 1964 and finish road

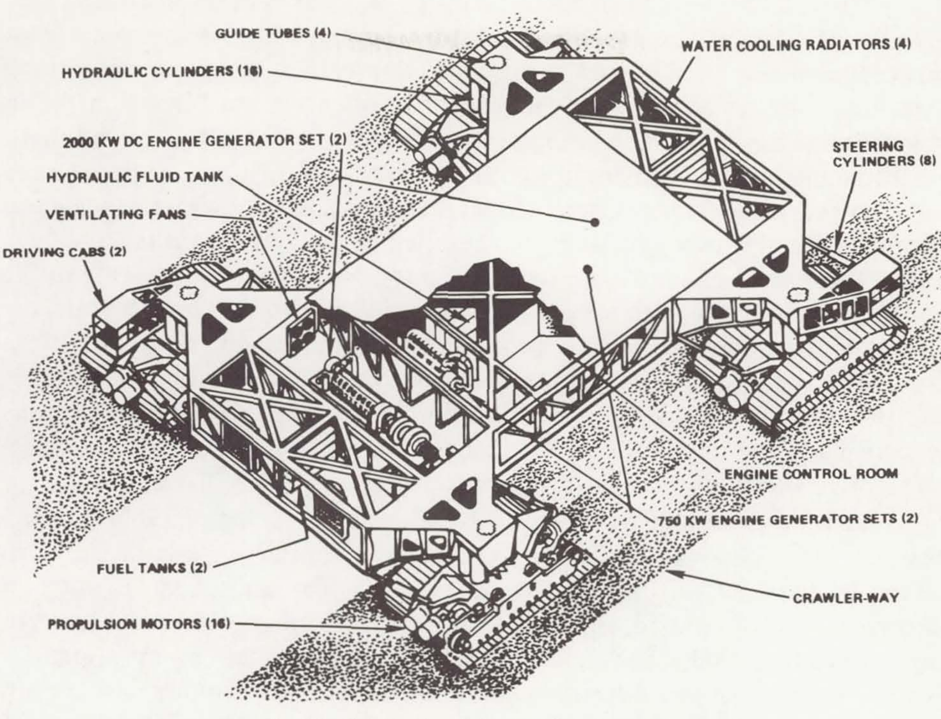

GUIDE TUBES (4)
HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS (16)
2000 KW DC ENGINE GENERATOR SET (2)
HYDRAULIC FLUID TANK
VENTILATING FANS
DRIVING CABS (2)
WATER COOLING RADIATORS (4)
STEERING CYLINDERS (8)
ENGINE CONTROL ROOM
750 KW ENGINE GENERATOR SETS (2)
FUEL TANKS (2)
CRAWLER-WAY
PROPULSION MOTORS (16)

Fig. 84. Schematic of the crawler-transporter.

tests, mating, and modifications by 1 March 1965.[6] By early December 1963, Marion had completed 90% of the design and promised that parts of the vehicle would begin to arrive at the launch area—now the Kennedy Space Center—in March 1964.[7]

In the meantime, Marion had run into trouble with one of its subcontractors, American Machine & Foundry, over the hydraulic system for steering and levelling the crawler.[8] Balancing a 5400-metric-ton load called for precision. The motion of the transporter, the height of the load, variations in the level of the roadway, the wind—all would combine to throw the cargo off balance. Marion hired Bendix Corporation to check the levelling and equalization systems on the crawler. The Bendix study, made by mathematician-inventor Edward Kolesa, criticized the levelling systems as too quick and sensitive in their actions. The difficulties between Marion and its subcontractor were not the direct responsibility of KSC. Nevertheless, KSC sent the Bendix study to General Electric for analysis. The GE experts agreed with Kolesa's calculations.[9] As a result, Marion had to adjust the designs. Among other things, a separate power system, distinct from the diesel engines that powered the treads, was added for load-levelling, jacking, steering, and ventilating.

"Prophetically," said an article in *Aviation Week* sometime later, "NASA early identified the transporter as the one item which would most likely encounter trouble and whose development, therefore, should be started as soon as possible."[10] One set of problems arose from a factor in Marion's background. The company had previously held few government contracts and its management lacked familiarity with the intricate procedures and tests that a government contract entailed. Marion had to hire new men to carry out the new procedures, which resulted in unexpected costs.[11]

Marion was to have the first of the two units ready for testing in the late fall of 1964, although it was to make its initial trip in April 1965. In the meantime, the monster ran into another snag: someone noted that it had no fire alarm system or fire detection devices. With flammable materials and extensive electronics and mechanical equipment aboard, an alarm system was needed when the crawler was not in use.[12] As first designed, the crawler-transporter would carry only dry chemical extinguishers.[13]

After considerable correspondence during the spring of 1965, the Factory Insurance Association of Hartford made a complete study of fire protection on the crawler. Fifteen recommendations for fire safety included an automatic carbon dioxide extinguishing system for the electrical control room, the entire engine room, and the hydraulic equipment compartment; a limited, automatic sprinkler system as backup protection for the carbon dioxide system; an automatic, total-flooding foam system; flexible water connections to the sprinkler and hose systems in the transporter parking area; meticulous housekeeping and cleanliness inside the crawler-transporter; and the use of 100% noncombustible materials in all future construction and modifications to the crawler-transporter.[14] The contractor set about putting in a satisfactory fire prevention system.

When finally assembled, the crawler-transporter would not have won any awards for beauty. From a distance it looked like a steel sandwich held up at the corners by World War I tanks. Each crawler-transporter was larger than a baseball infield and weighed about 2700 metric tons. Two 2750-horsepower diesel engines powered 16 traction motors, which moved the four double-tracked treads. Each tread had 57 "shoes." Each shoe, 0.3 × 2.3 meters, weighed close to 900 kilograms. Quite naturally, a great deal of experiment and readjustment preceded the final success of such treads. Because of their importance and cost, they were nicknamed, "Them Golden Slippers." Many people recalled the next line of that song: "'Golden shoes I'm going to wear, to walk that golden street.'"[15] The crawlerway would be such a street.

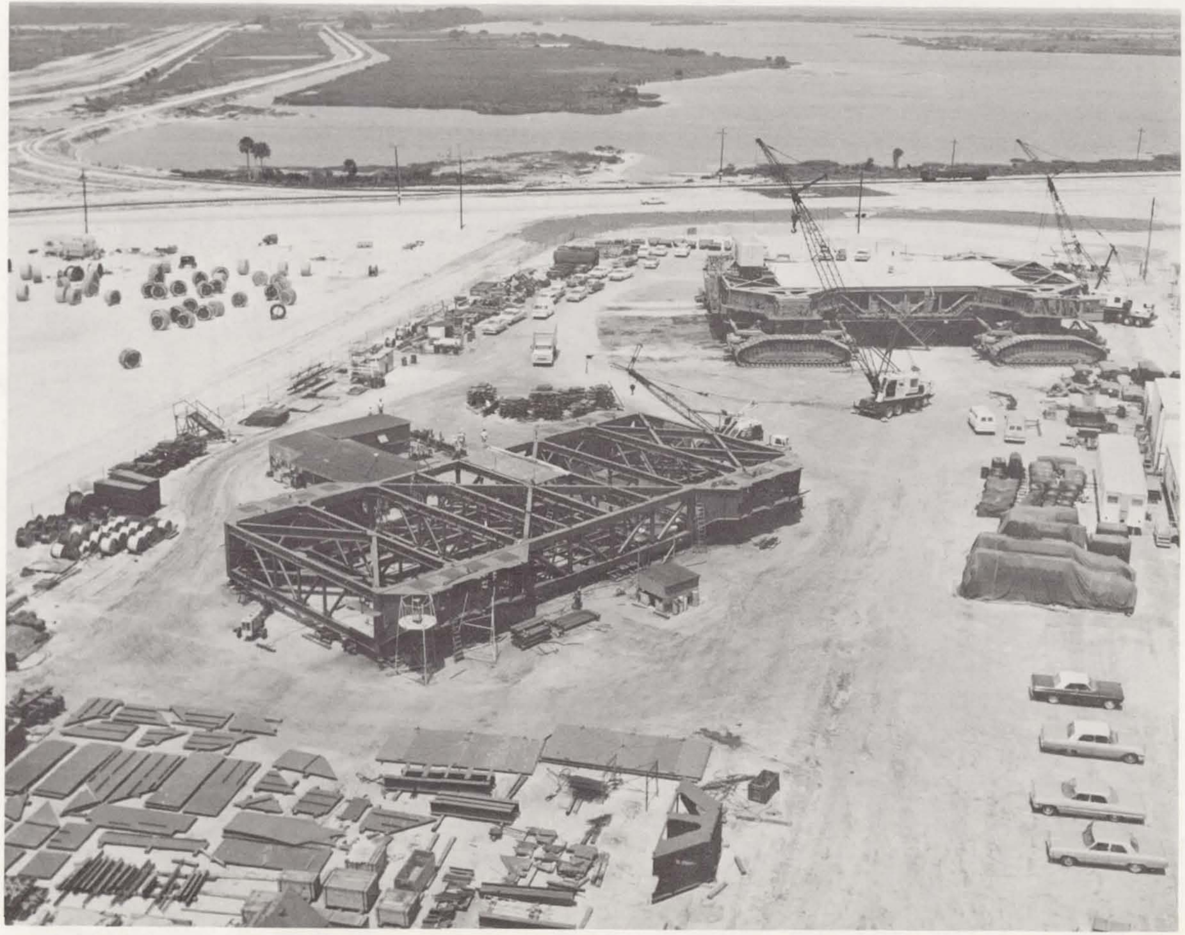


Fig. 85. Crawler-transporters under construction, April 1965.

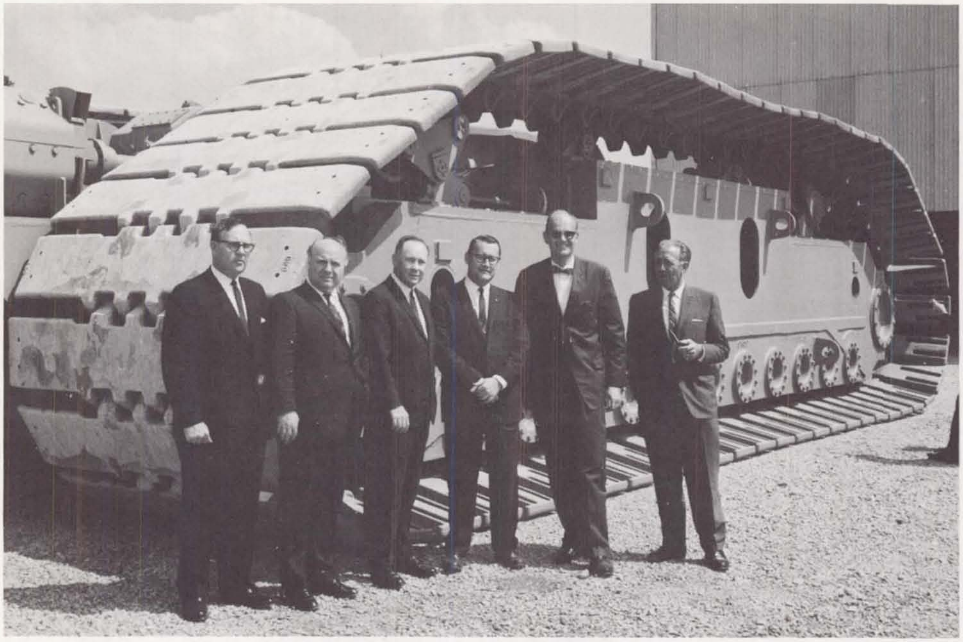


Fig. 86. Richard L. Drollinger, Director of Engineering, Marion Power Shovel Co.; Theodor A. Poppel and Donald D. Buchanan, both of KSC; S. J. Fruin, Executive Vice President, Marion; Phillip Koehring, Project Engineer, Marion; and Kurt H. Debus, KSC, in front of a crawler truck at Marion, Ohio, in July 1964. The group observed the first test of the vehicle.

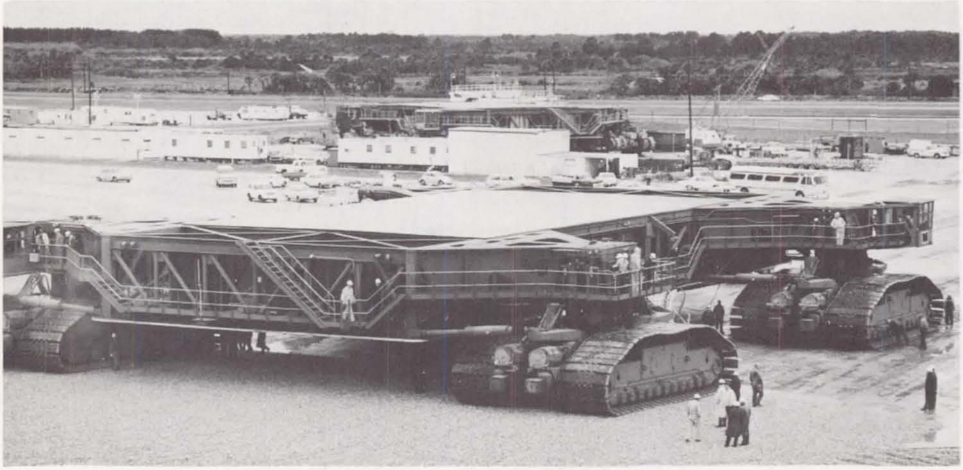


Fig. 87. The first crawler-transporter ready for service, January 1966.

Building a New Kind of Road

For the safe movement of the crawler-transporter, mobile launcher, Saturn V, and Apollo (a load exceeding 8400 metric tons), engineers would have to design a unique roadbed. The completed crawlerway would look something like the many interstate highways under construction throughout the nation in the 1960s. Beyond surface appearance, however, the resemblance ended. The crawlerway would support loads never envisioned for a public road—loads in excess of 58 000 kilograms per square meter.[16]

Gahagan Dredging Company had already begun preliminary site preparation. After excavating softer, unsuitable surface material, Gahagan had pumped nearly 2.3 million cubic meters of hydraulic sand fill into place on the crawlerway route. Vibratory rollers had compacted this fill under the trackways, and then a 90 600 kilogram vehicle proof-rolled them.

Each of the dual trackways, separated by a median strip, would consist of slightly over a meter of selected sub-base material, topped by a meter of graded crushed aggregate, with a blacktop sealer over all. A service road would border the south side of the crawlerway from the VAB to pad A. Underground ducts for communication and instrumentation lines to link the control and assembly areas with the launch pads would parallel the north side of the crawlerway; power line ducts and a pipeline for drinking water would go along the south side. Where any of the ducts or pipes had to pass beneath the crawlerway, the access tunnels had to be capable of withstanding the load conditions. The completed crawlerway would be level with the terrain, 2.3 meters above sea level.

Two firms, the Blount Brothers Construction Company of Montgomery, Alabama, and the M. M. Sundt Construction Company of Tucson, Arizona, acting jointly, agreed to build pad A and the crawlerway for $19 138 000, somewhat under the estimated cost of $20 000 000. Blount-Sundt started work on 19 November 1963. The contract called for the construction of about 5500 meters of crawlerway from the VAB to launch pad A, the elevated pad, several related facilities in the pad area, and the parking site for the tower. Subsequently a high-pressure-gases converter-compressor facility was added to the contract, at a cost of $155 000. The converter-compressor facility was to be complete on 1 May 1964, the arming tower (mobile service structure) parking site by mid-May, the crawlerway ready for test by 1 November, and the overall project by 1 June of the following year. The George A. Fuller Company of Los Angeles signed a contract on 30 November 1964 to construct pad B and extend the crawlerway 2100 meters. Using experience gained by Blount-Sundt, the Fuller personnel were well on their way with their work by the middle of 1965.[17]

Crawlerway under construction

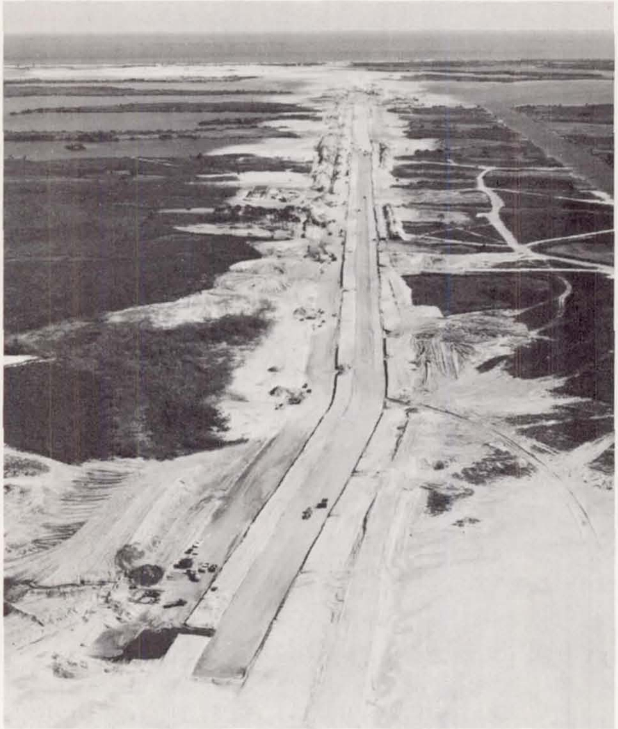


Figure 88

Fig. 88. The terrain was not the best for supporting heavy vehicles (February 1964). Fig. 89. The site of the assembly building is top, center; pad A is off to the right (April 1964). Fig. 90. The communication and instrumentation duct is open in the right foreground (July 1964).

Figure 89

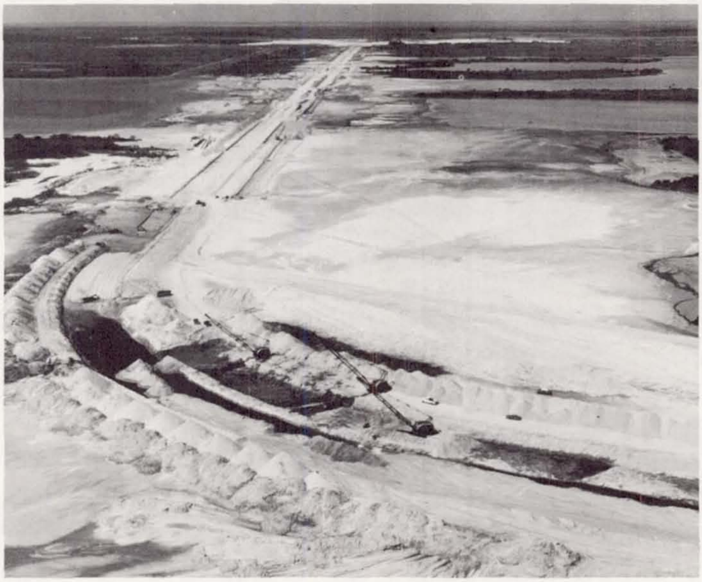


Figure 90

The converter-compressor facility was built just north of the crawlerway, about one-third of the distance from the VAB to pad A. It consisted of a one-story equipment building and a 1 892 000-liter spherical tank for storing liquid nitrogen, together with an access road and paved parking areas. A railroad spur brought tank-car loads of helium and nitrogen to the facility. Its evaporators, compressors, and pumps, in turn, supplied high-pressure gaseous nitrogen and helium to storage and distribution facilities at the VAB and the launch area.

Since plans called for the construction of the mobile service structure on the parking site, this facility would have to support considerable loads. The service structure would weigh 4763 metric tons. When the crawler-transporter moved beneath it, the total load on the parking position would be nearly 7500 metric tons, heavier than the USS *Halsey,* a guided missile frigate. In addition to this, calculations showed that, should wind velocities reach 200 kilometers per hour, the service structure, standing by itself on its four support legs in the parked position, with side struts and hold-down arms for each leg, could exert about 6300 metric tons of force. To withstand these anticipated forces, the parking site had to have a heavily reinforced base.

The Swing-Arm Controversy

The most difficult of all launch mechanisms to describe verbally is the mobile launcher, at times called the launch umbilical tower. It consisted of three main features: a two-story platform 49 meters long by 40 meters wide, on which the launch vehicle stood both on the crawler-transporter during its journey from the VAB to the pad, and on the pad itself, held erect by four hold-down arms; a tower that resembled the Apollo-Saturn in shape and

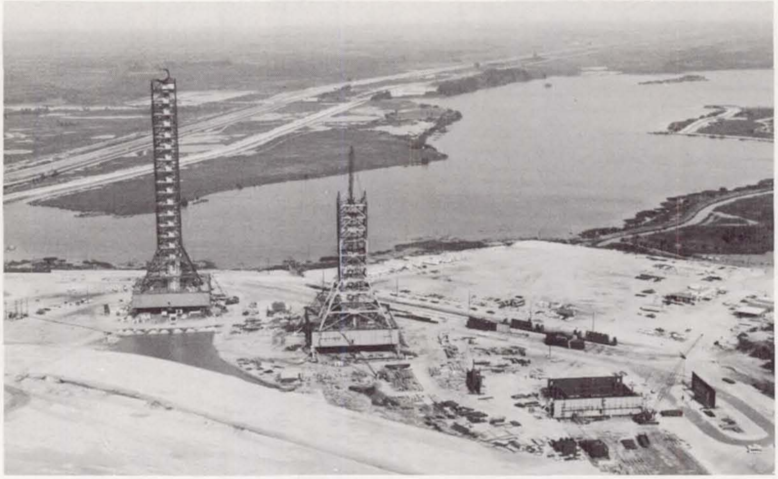


Fig. 91. The three mobile launchers under construction, October 1964.

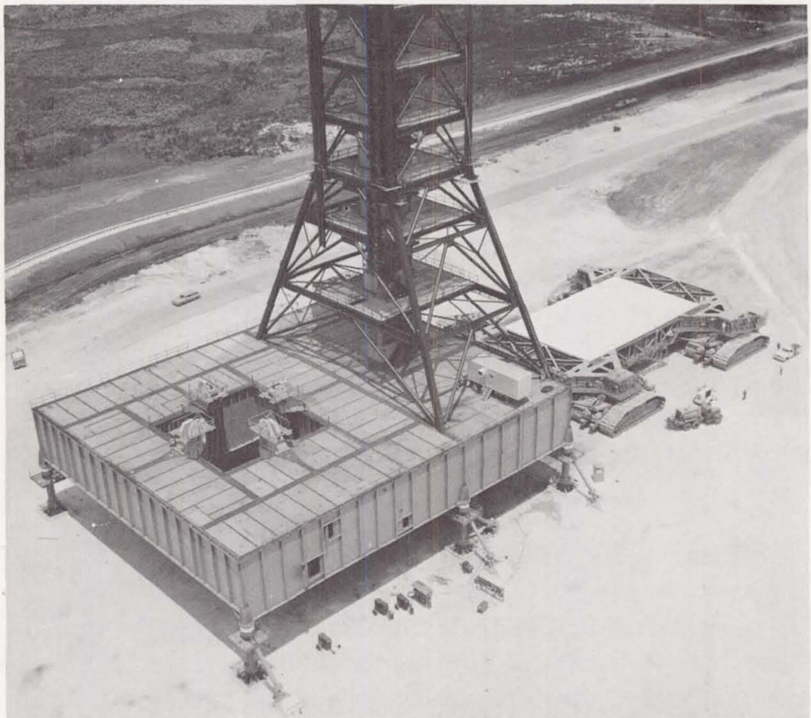


Fig. 92. The mobile launcher: the platform and base of the tower. Note the four hold-down arms around the square opening for the rocket exhaust. The crawler-transporter is moving beneath the mobile launcher, May 1965.

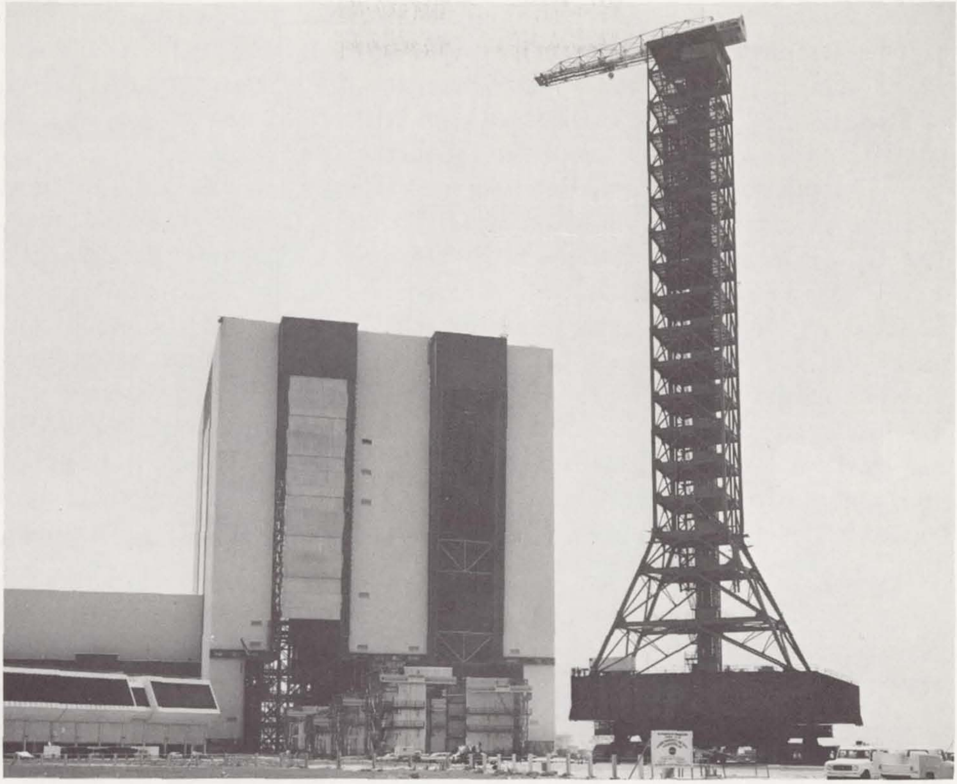


Fig. 93. Mobile launcher on a crawler-transporter in front of the assembly building, July 1965.

size, and stood beside it surmounted by a hammerhead crane; and, attached to the tower, nine swing arms of various sizes that carried electric, propellant, and pneumatic lines to the space vehicle. These swing arms would automatically move away from the vehicle between the time of ignition and liftoff. The two-story launch platform housed computers that were connected to the launch control center. The platform also had a 14-meter square opening in the center for the rocket exhaust. Two high-speed elevators were centrally located in the tower. Besides their ordinary function of bringing personnel and equipment to various levels, they formed part of an emergency egress system.[18]

The Jacksonville-based firm of Reynolds, Smith, and Hills designed the tall mobile launcher that replaced the umbilical towers previously used at the Cape. Ingalls Iron Works of Birmingham, the prime contractor for steel erection, began work on the first launcher in December 1963. Nine months later workers hoisted the last major piece of steel, a 19-ton crane boom, into place on the first mobile launcher. The crews proceeded to outfit the finished tower with ground support equipment and electrical apparatus. They expected to have the giant completed in another 12 months.[19] In February 1965, Ingalls topped out the second tower, and on the afternoon of 1 March of the same year topped out the third (and last) with the hoisting of its huge hammerhead crane to the top of the 136-meter structure.

In planning and building the mobile launcher, the most difficult features were the nine swing arms, or service arms, as they were also called. The Brown Engineering Company of Huntsville, Alabama, designed the service arms in conjunction with Theodor A. Poppel's Launch Support Engineering Division. Brown faced unusual problems: the equipment was novel—no one had built such large access and umbilical devices in combination before; the vehicle for which the swing arms were being designed was developing so fast that the criteria changed continually, even after NASA had let the contract for construction; and the service arms were to be amazingly complex pieces of equipment. By way of example, as many as 24 electric cables, each 50 millimeters in diameter, and about 44 fluid service lines,

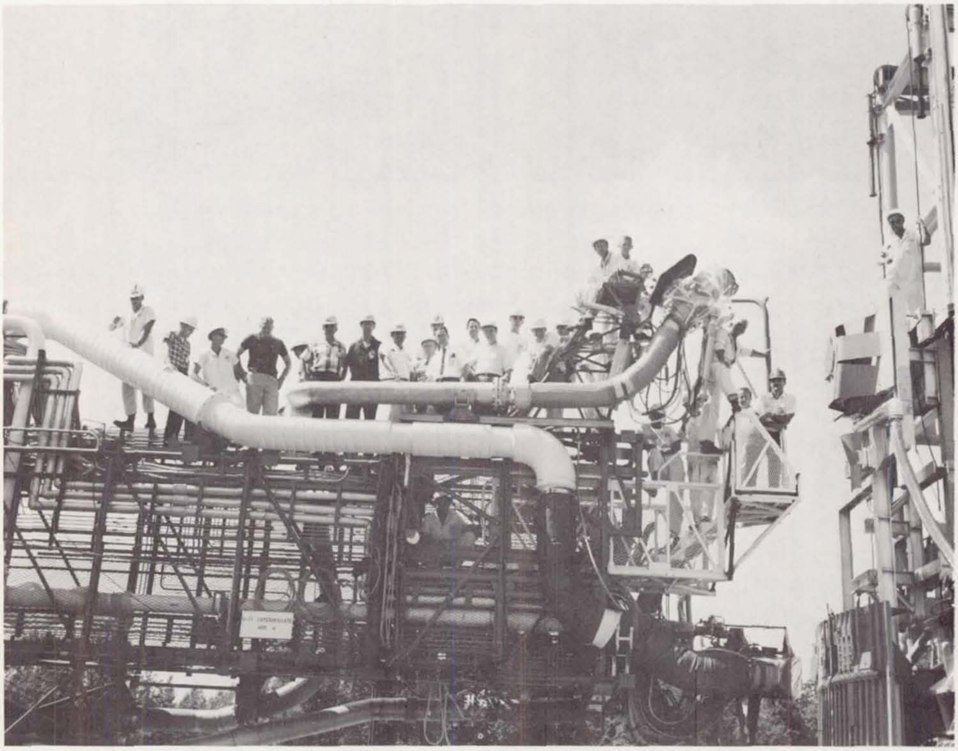


Fig. 94. One of the nine swing (service) arms; when installed, this one would connect to the second stage 43 meters above the base of the rocket.

ranging from 12 to 25 millimeters thick, went into a single umbilical carrier. Each arm would be wide enough for a jeep to drive across—though none ever was to do so. Their length varied with the configuration of the vehicle; they would average over 22 metric tons in weight.[20]

Employing 250 people on the project, Brown Engineering made 5000 drawings and 11 000 pages of specifications, but NASA designers found many unsatisfactory features. The company admitted errors in the drawings—but not in numbers or significance out of proportion to the average error rate for such a complicated enterprise. In retrospect, Cliff Boylston, the design project engineer for Brown at the time, was to agree with individuals at KSC that "one typical arm should have been totally tested before going into production." Boylston concluded that the "design was started before the criteria were set . . . . The developmental effort was not complete before the production started . . . . [In spite of this] we gave the customer the best effort that he could have gotten anywhere in the time, and within the limitations we had on us . . . ."[21]

Boylston was correct in saying that NASA had not developed a prototype of an entire service arm. As early as 30 July 1963, however, William T. Clearman, head of the Apollo-Saturn V Systems Office, had authorized a prototype within the allowable funds and schedules.[22] Before the end of June 1964, NASA had built and tested a partial prototype of arm 6—a typical one that included all critical aspects. Contemporary photographs of the prototype compare favorably with the final version of service arm 6.[23]

When NASA opened bids on the service arms on 31 July 1964, the low bidder was Hayes International Corporation of Birmingham, Alabama. A pre-award service team made an on-site inspection of Hayes. The following day Raymond Clark, in charge of the team, reported: "Past experience with sub-standard quality from Hayes, under previous contracts, along with the results of this survey, may dictate an evaluation of Martin-Baltimore." Debus penned a note on the bottom of this statement: "This is in conflict with what you told me."[24] The service team concluded that Hayes had the personnel to do the job, but needed additional facilities and tools and would have to incorporate into their plans further recommendations of the survey team. It seemed that Hayes had built up a good team in earlier years, but had lost many of its better men during a time it had fewer contracts. On 25 August the Launch Support Equipment Engineering Division expressed serious reservations about Hayes's technical capacity to perform the task. Yet during the previous week, the Division had changed several hundred drawings, which would have strained the capacities of any bidder.[25]

In spite of these misgivings, the contract went to Hayes International on 10 September 1964, with a fixed price of $11 480 113 and a completion date of 26 April 1966.[26] At this time, incidentally, KSC was under pressure from the Office of Manned Space Flight to contract every possible item by fixed price competitive bidding. The fixed price contract, however, soon proved untenable. The details of the service arms were in a state of constant change, and a fixed price contract is valid only for a fixed design. The arms were a new design, more complex and mechanically larger than those used on the Saturn I.[27]

Shortly after Hayes International started work, it "uncovered innumerable discrepancies in the design and bills of material." Hayes notified the KSC Procurement Division that although it had believed it had a complete document package, many drawings were missing or tentative. On 27 October, Procurement delivered to Hayes less than 100 missing drawings. Ultimately, however, drawing changes for all reasons, including research and development, went above 4000.[28]

To alleviate these problems, in late November 1964 the Apollo-Saturn V Test and Systems Engineering Office of KSC's Apollo Program Management Office concurred with the recommendation of Procurement Division's Launch Support Equipment Section to change the contract so as to incorporate revised lists of drawings. These lists would supersede all documentation previously incorporated, including documents attached to the original invitation for bids and subsequent change orders that revised, added, or deleted drawings.[29] In an effort to maintain control over the many changes and revisions, a change review board made up of representatives of the Apollo Program Management Office, Procurement, Quality Assurance, and Launch Support Equipment Engineering began to meet in late September. By early November, the board had promulgated a formal procedure for handling engineering changes in the Hayes contract. Petrone, KSC Apollo Program Manager, approved this procedure on 20 November 1964.[30]

By the time the review board approved complete drawing documentation, another problem surfaced. On 2 December Hayes could not buy 190 items specified in the contract for sole-source procurement. It seems that, in designing the swing arms, Brown engineers had changed specifications on components without the knowledge or approval of the manufacturers of these components. Further, Brown engineers had accepted sales representatives' promises that their respective companies could meet specifications or proposed changes. Some companies, however, did not back their salesmen's promises and refused to deliver. Hayes then took the position that since the items were listed as sole source, the government was required to specify alternate sources. Hayes would do no engineering or expend any effort to supply items from sources other than those specified in the contract. Neither would

Hayes rework substitute items to make them meet specifications unless NASA furnished detailed rework designs, nor would it provide the necessary engineering design to facilitate rework without a contract modification.[31]

The review board evaluated all design changes for their impact on contract time, costs, and delivery schedules. Hayes and KSC revised the contract whenever necessary. In addition KSC in mid-1965 established a Resident Apollo Program Office, headed by Willard L. Halcomb, at the Hayes plant in Birmingham to reduce the time involved in approving decisions. KSC also set up a so-called tiger team, an ad hoc team that went to Birmingham every Monday to review and identify problems in design and production and returned to KSC to report on progress each Friday. In addition Hayes employed the consultant firm of Booz, Allen, and Hamilton to recommend managerial improvements.[32] By late summer of 1965, however, the situation had reached the point that Hayes International management felt it necessary to approach the KSC Procurement Division with a formal recommendation to change the contract from fixed-cost to some form of cost-reimbursable method.

Debus, wishing to have time to assess contract progress objectively following the establishment of the resident program office, waited until early November before replying personally to Hayes's management. In his reply, Debus said:

> There is no doubt in my mind that we both entered into the fixed price contract (NAS10-1751) in good faith. . . . It is indeed unfortunate that it was necessary for a considerable number of design changes to be introduced subsequent to the award of the contract. . . . I am fully aware of your recommendation that the method of contracting should be converted from fixed price to a cost reimbursable type. . . . You have been briefed in detail on the reasons why a conversion is neither feasible nor satisfactory to us since it would, in all probability, generate more complications than it would solve. I do, however, have the utmost confidence that so long as a proper spirit is evidenced by our respective representatives at all levels, then we each will be able to achieve our joint objectives—delivery of the highest quality arms, in an acceptable time frame, at a fair and reasonable price. I trust that you too are now encouraged that continuation on a fixed price basis does not present an unworkable contract relationship.[33]

In spite of Debus's hopes, a subsequent reappraisal converted the contract into a cost-plus arrangement.[34]

It had originally been planned to transport completed service arms from the Hayes plant in Birmingham to the Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville for testing, calibration, and acceptance. When it became clear that such testing would take a great deal of time and the deliveries were already late, NASA decided to have Hayes International deliver untested arms directly to the Kennedy Space Center, for installation on the first mobile launcher. After validation of the overall complex, KSC could then remove the arms and transport them to Marshall for a thorough testing of the service arms themselves. The arms that were not needed at KSC for validating the complex went directly to Marshall.

Eventually the total cost of the contract tripled from the initial $11.5 million. Major mixups had occurred, but none of them was deliberate and, given the press of time, none may have been avoidable. In the end these unprecedented devices performed with astounding reliability and majestic smoothness.[35]

Hold-Down Arms and Tail Service Masts

Four hold-down arms had to secure the Saturn V firmly on the mobile launcher during assembly, transportation to the launch site, and its stay on the launch pad in all kinds of weather. These devices also had to have the strength to hold down the launch vehicle after ignition, until all engines registered full thrust. Then they automatically and simultaneously released the Apollo-Saturn for liftoff. They did not, of course, have to overcome the full power of all the engines; the great weight of the fueled vehicle counteracted much of the thrust. As an indication of the unusual design requirement, James D. Phillips of KSC Launch Support Equipment Engineering Division won the 1965 steel-casting design contest sponsored by the Steel Founders Society of America for the design of the casting forming the base for the hold-down arms.[36] The arms would weigh over 18 metric tons each; the base was to be just under two meters wide, and not quite three meters long. They would stand 3.35 meters high. Nevertheless, in contrast to the huge Saturn vehicle, the hold-down arms seemed much too small to anchor—even momentarily—the huge rocket. On 17 February 1964 the KSC Procurement Division issued a contract to Space Corporation, Dallas, for the manufacture of 16 hold-down arms for the mobile launchers. The cost of the fixed price contract was $676 320, with completion date set for 25 July 1965.[37]

The first hold-down arm arrived at Huntsville on 31 October 1964, and testing began on 20 November. Due to a strike at a subcontractor's

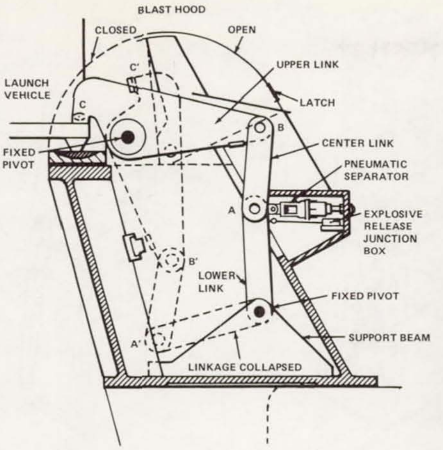

BLAST HOOD
CLOSED
OPEN
C'
UPPER LINK
LAUNCH VEHICLE
C
LATCH
B
CENTER LINK
FIXED PIVOT
PNEUMATIC SEPARATOR
A
EXPLOSIVE RELEASE JUNCTION BOX
B'
LOWER LINK
FIXED PIVOT
SUPPORT BEAM
A'
LINKAGE COLLAPSED

Fig. 95. Schematic of hold-down arm. The leverage produced 350 metric tons of force at C. The solid lines show the arm at work; the dotted lines represent the condition following release of the Saturn, when the linkage has collapsed and the blast hood closed.

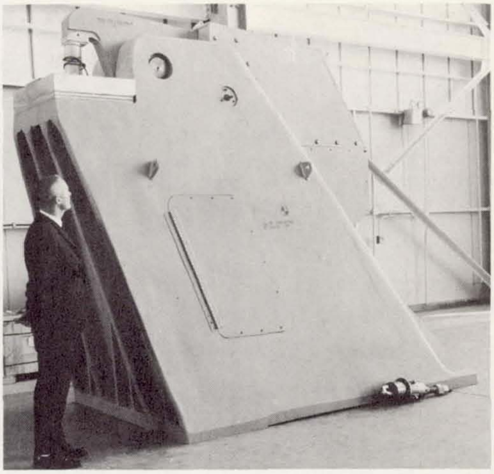


Fig. 96. A hold-down arm ready for installation on a mobile launcher, November 1964.

plant, the second arm, scheduled for delivery on 19 November, came on the 28th. On 17 May 1965, engineers tested the ability of the first hold-down arm to sustain a vertical thrust of 725 747 kilograms. After the successful completion of all other tests on this arm on 25 May, workers installed and aligned an operational set of hold-down arms on launcher 3 at KSC. The other hold-down arms were ready by the end of the year.[38]

In addition to the four hold-down arms, three tail service masts would also stand on the base of each launcher. These provided support for electrical cables, propellant loading lines, hydraulic lines, and pneumatic lines servicing the first (S-IC) stage of the Saturn V. At liftoff a sequencer would hydraulically retract them, swinging them up and away from the Saturn V. A protective hood would fold over the umbilical connections on the end of each mast, protecting the connectors from the rocket engine's exhaust. After constructing and testing a prototype of these devices, the American Machine & Foundry Company of York, Pennsylvania, built the tail service masts.[39]

Launch Pads

The launch pads at complex 39 were more than just raised, hardened areas for the launching of the Saturn V. There would be no permanently

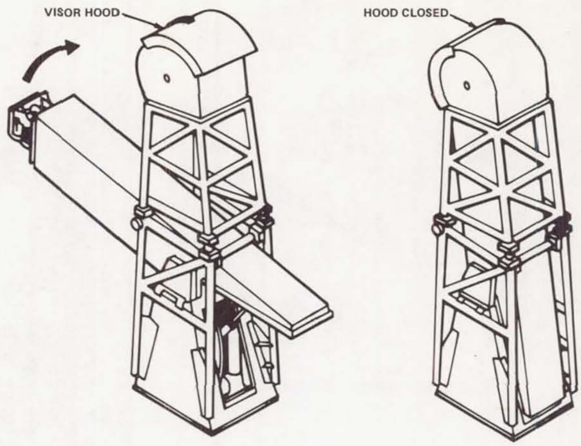


Fig. 97. Tail service mast for delivering propellants and electrical connections to the first stage.

emplaced launch stands, umbilical towers, and service structures as previously associated with a complete launch complex. At LC-39 these structures would be mobile, and the pad had to be of sufficient strength to support their weight and that of the crawler-transporter. But the pad would have many other appurtenances common to its predecessors.

The site of launch pad A, approximately 0.7 square kilometers, was roughly octagonal. A contract with Blount-Sundt called for the construction of the pad proper, roads, camera mounts, utilities, and several other small facilities. The elevated launch pad, which would rise 12 meters above ground level, lay in a north-south direction. This orientation required the crawlerway to make a near right-angle turn before approaching the ramp sloping 5° upward to the top of the pad. A flame trench, level with the surrounding area at its base, 18 meters wide and 137 meters long, would bisect the pad. On each side of this flame trench a cellular structure would support a thick surface, called a hardstand. The crawler-transporter would place the mobile launcher and the Apollo-Saturn vehicle on top of this reinforced slab.

The two-story pad terminal connection room and the single-story environmental control systems room would be within the western side of the pad. The former would house the electronic equipment that would connect communication and digital data link transmission lines from the launch control center to the mobile launcher when it was on the pad. The environmental control systems room would serve as the distribution point for air conditioning and water systems. The high-pressure-gas storage facility, to store and distribute nitrogen and helium gases piped from the converter-compressor facility, would lie beneath the top of the pad on the east side.

Should a hazardous condition arise that allowed safe egress from the spacecraft, the astronauts could cross over to the mobile launcher on a swing arm and then ride one of the high-speed elevators from the 104-meter level to level A, thirty stories down at 183 meters per minute. From there they would slide down an escape tube to a thickly padded rubber deceleration ramp. Steel doors, much like those of a bank vault, allowed access to a blast room, which could withstand an on-the-pad explosion of the entire space vehicle. Those inside could stay alive for at least 24 hours to allow rescue crews time to dig them out. The emergency egress system was part of the pad A contract.[40]

From Arming Tower to Mobile Service Structure

Originally conceived as a stationary arming tower, the mobile service structure went through many design changes before arriving at its final form. The structure, 125 meters high, nearly matched the mobile launcher in height as it stood on the opposite side of the Apollo-Saturn on the launch pad. The tall steel framework included five work platforms—the two lower ones vertically adjustable—that provided access to the space vehicle, and a base that contained several rooms. Shortly before launch, the crawler-transporter would move the mobile service structure along the crawlerway to a safe distance from the pad. The changing operational requirements during the construction of facilities made the mobile service structure one of the last essential facilities at launch complex 39 to get under way.

When the Rust Engineering Company of Birmingham undertook the design of the arming tower in February 1963, it faced a difficult task—designing a structure that would satisfy Apollo requirements but not exceed the load-carrying capability of the crawler. Initial meetings between NASA and Rust engineers concentrated on requirements for installing vehicle ordnance. Discussions on 21 March disclosed a major problem with the installation of linear-shaped charges—charges that would separate the stages during flight and, if necessary, destroy the vehicle. Their placement on the Apollo-Saturn required access from the arming tower at the interstage sections of the S-IC, S-II, and S-IVB, as well as at each stage that required a destruct package. As the tentative tower design with these features exceeded the load capability of the crawler's front end, NASA engineers agreed to see if the shaped charges could be installed in the VAB. The tower would still serve to arm the various destruct charges and install the Saturn's retro and ullage rockets. After reviewing the matter the following week, Gruene supported the use of the VAB; he also recommended a hazards study to confirm

Construction of pad A, LC-39

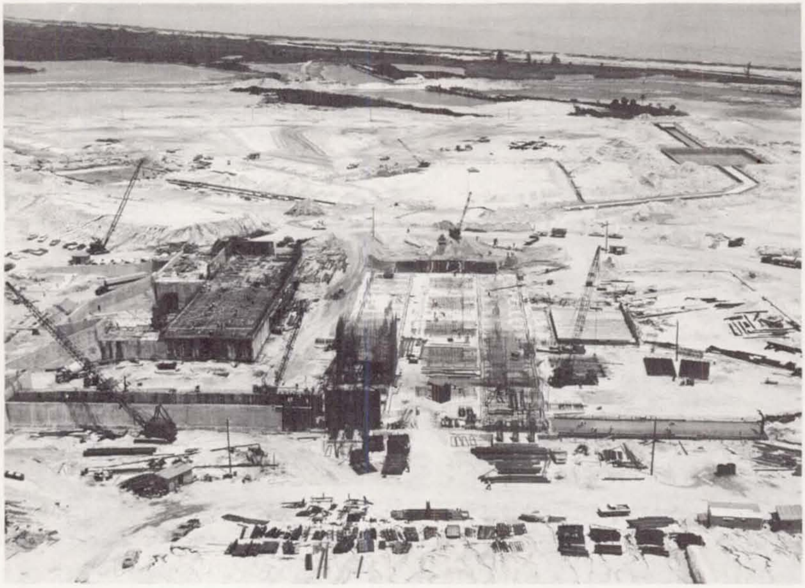


Figure 98

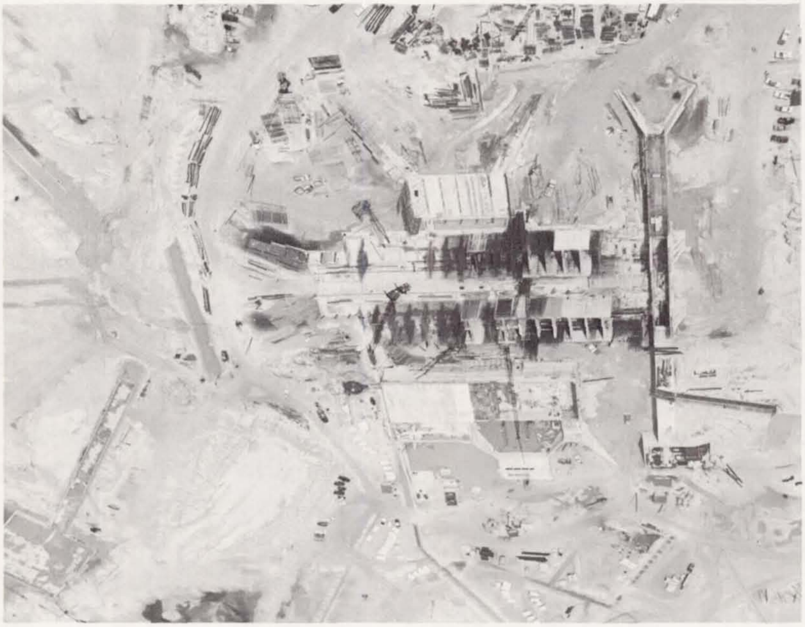


Figure 99

Fig. 98. Looking north, July 1964. The large sandpile has been removed and the first concrete poured. The rectangle (upper right) is the hydrogen burn pond. Fig. 99. The cellular construction of the hardstand, either side of the flame trench, is evident by September. The view is to the west.

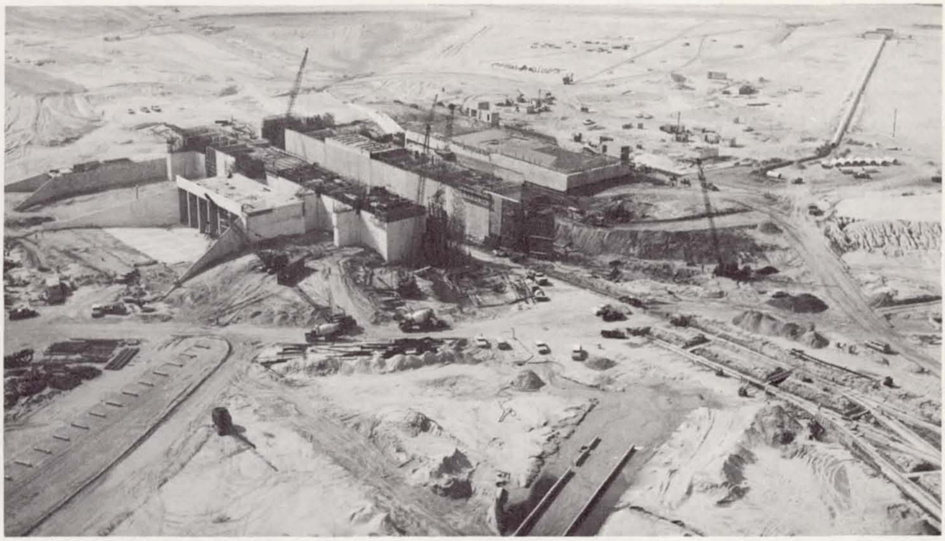


Figure 100

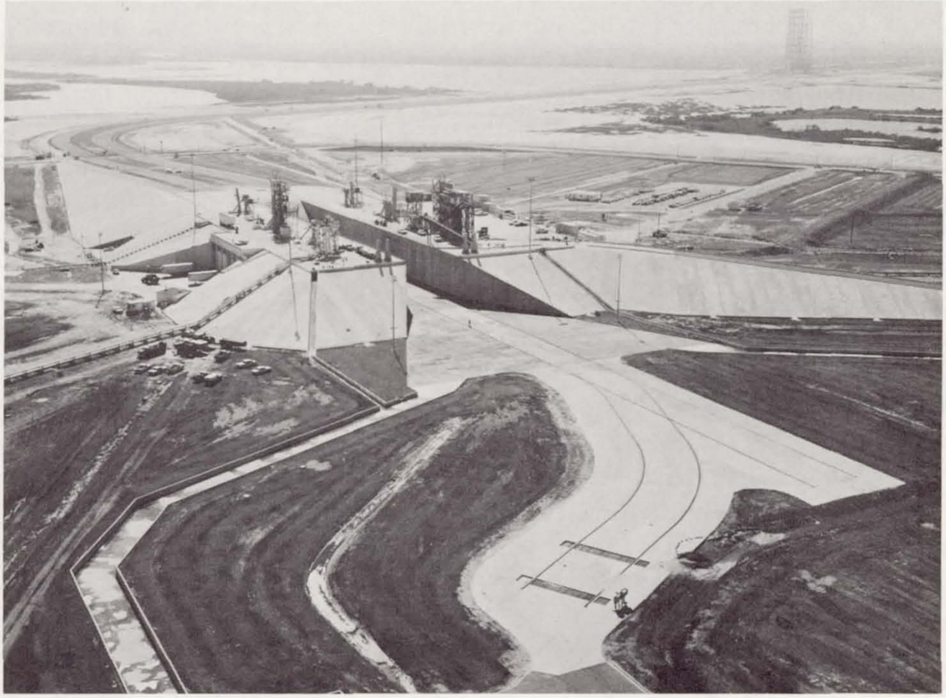


Figure 101

Fig. 100. Looking southwest, November. Most of the concrete has been poured. Fig. 101. Same view two months later; pad 39A essentially complete. The flame deflector would move along the tracks in the foreground. The crawlerway enters the picture in the upper right, passes the service structure (née arming tower) in its parking position, and makes a near-90° turn in the upper left to approach the pad.

the safety of the proposed change. Meanwhile the Rust engineers dropped from their design the requirement to install shaped destruct charges.[41]

Wind loads were a second major concern for the tower's designers. On 28 March representatives of the Marion Power Shovel Company, the Corps of Engineers, LOC, and Rust agreed to design for a maximum wind velocity of 100 kilometers per hour. When resting on its supports at the launch pad, however, the arming tower was to be able to sustain considerably higher winds. NASA officials cancelled the latter requirement two weeks later: in the event of a hurricane, the tower would be removed from the pad area.[42]

Rust Engineering completed the criteria for the mobile arming tower on 1 May and began the design work two days later. At a design review in September, the Corps of Engineers asked Rust for a thorough analysis of the tower's weight and wind-load factors on the crawler. The review showed that the arming tower was overweight. During the next two months, numerous changes were made to bring the weight down to the crawler's capability, but the efforts met with little success.[43]

On 3 December 1963 Debus asked the Corps to reexamine the arming tower. Within three weeks, the Corps submitted the results of several studies. In the first, Strobel and Rengved, consulting engineers, retained the basic Rust configuration but reduced the size of the work platforms and eliminated the air conditioning equipment. In contrast, Rust recommended reaching the weight limit by eliminating one of the five service platforms, one of the three elevators, and the air conditioning. While the Rust proposal got rid of more weight than the Strobel and Rengved study, it also reduced the operational flexibility of the tower. The Corps then asked the two firms for another study, this time a completely new design. Rust's study employed fixed platforms, Strobel and Rengved's movable platforms. Both resulted in overall weight reductions but no significant reduction of wind loads on the crawler.[44]

While the studies were in progress, a KSC decision rendered the work superfluous. At a Huntsville meeting on 10 December, KSC's representative announced a new policy for the installation of ordnance at LC-39. Ullage rockets, retrorockets, the separation charges for the Apollo escape system, and other small ordnance items would be installed in the VAB. Detonators would be installed at the pad after the arming tower had been removed, by technicians using the mobile launcher's swing arms for access. The arming tower, no longer required for ordnance installation, thereby became the mobile service structure.[45]

That change made Rust's job much easier. Despite delays in receipt of spacecraft data from the Manned Spacecraft Center (page 183), Rust completed the redesign work by July 1964. The combine of Morrison-Knudsen,

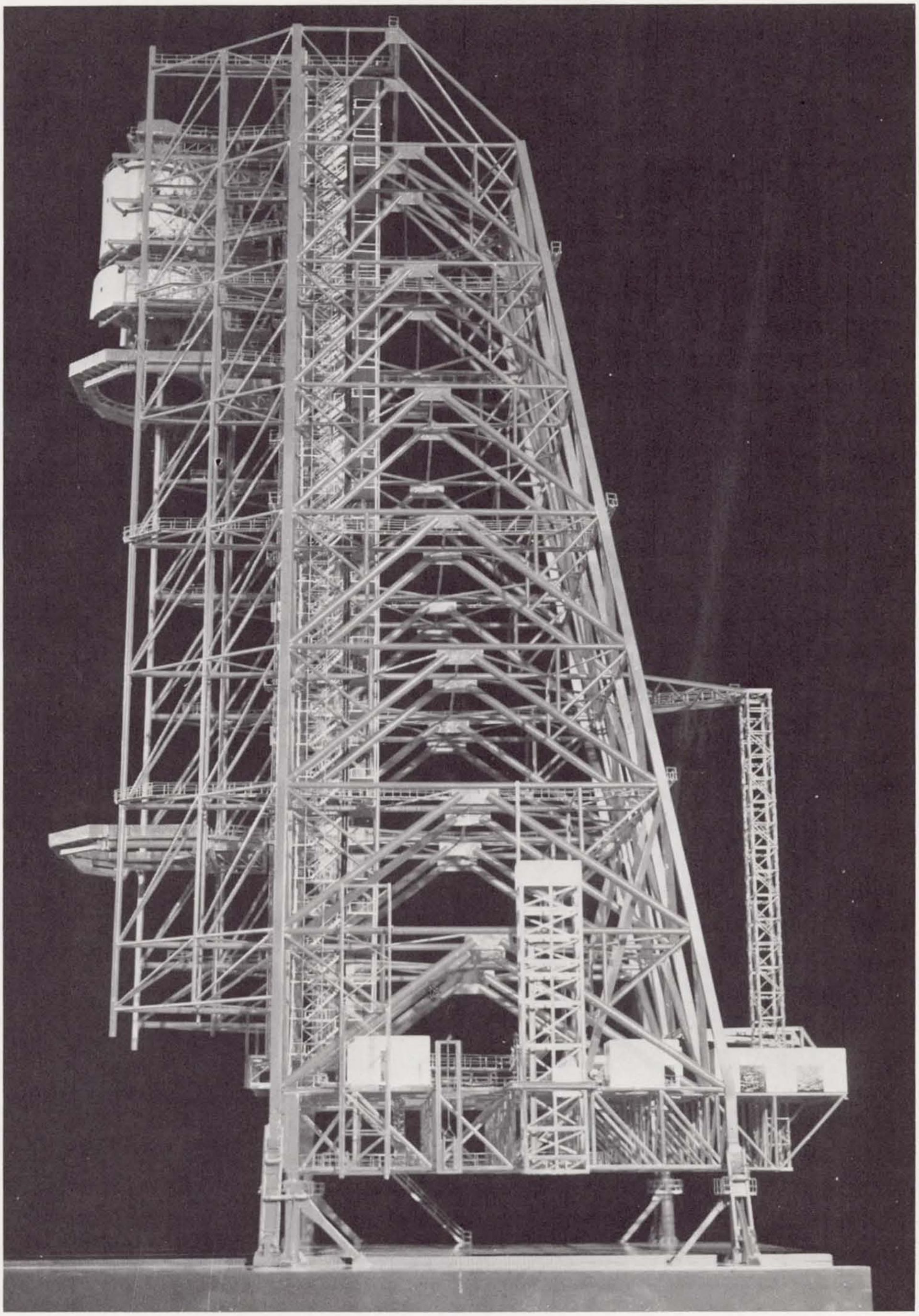


Fig. 102. Model of the service structure, July 1964.

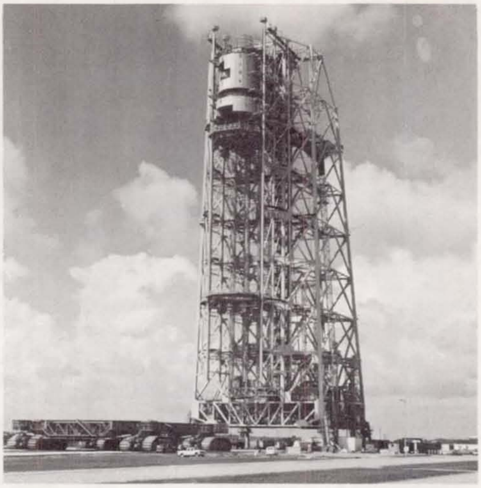


Fig. 103. The crawler-transporter ready to pick up the service structure, August 1966.

Perini and Hardeman won a construction contract on 21 September in the amount of $11 587 000. Steel fabrication started at once, and actual construction got under way on 21 February 1965. Because of the late start, minor labor delays, and the late delivery of material, the framework of the mobile service structure had only reached the 13-meter level by mid-1965. From then on, however, work moved rapidly ahead. By the end of September, steel erection had reached the 68-meter level, and the workers topped out the structure at 122.5 meters on 19 November 1965, only four months late.[46]

Work on the crawlerway progressed steadily, and by the end of 1964 it was 83% complete. The converter-compressor facility was complete, and mechanics were installing equipment. The concrete paving, the supports for the high-pressure-gas lines, the foundation for the mobile service structure at its parking position—all were ready. Interior architectural, electrical, and mechanical work moved forward in the pad terminal connection room, while joint occupancy of the environmental control system room began on 28 December 1964.[47]

At pad A, activities moved ahead of schedule, with the completion of all major concrete work. As the middle of 1965 approached, the launch pad lacked only the paving of aprons and road, the placement of refractory brick, the digging of ditches, and the testing of components and systems.[48]

Lightning Protection for Apollo Launch Operations

KSC officials had been concerned about lightning strikes since the start of the Apollo program. The Cape Canaveral area averaged more than

70 thunderstorms per year, twice the national average. Although there had been little lightning damage to missiles during the 1950s, the height of the Saturn vehicle greatly increased the chances of a strike. Studies made in 1962 pointed up the hazard to LC-39. General Electric engineers predicted that the VAB would receive five lightning strikes per year, the mobile service structure and mobile launcher four strikes per year. The potential for lightning damage had prompted a Marshall-LOC meeting in August 1962. The group recommended contracting with General Electric's High Voltage Laboratory for a lightning protection study and appointed LOC the technical supervisor. In Februry 1963, Petrone set up a committee on lightning protection, under Hayward D. Brewster, to review the GE proposals.[49]

The GE study served as the basis of the committee report submitted to Debus in July 1963, which concentrated on four problems, all during prelaunch operations: protection of the vehicle against a direct strike, the induced effects of a strike, mobile launcher grounding in transit, and corona. The placement of a lightning mast atop the mobile launcher was the straightforward solution to the first problem. Some authorities, however, did not think the traditional "cone of protection" applied to a structure as tall as the mobile launcher.* Electrical engineers also differed as to whether bonding and shielding on the mobile launcher would lower induced voltages to an acceptable level. Unless KSC could protect the launcher from both a direct strike and the secondary induced voltage, some other lightning diverter, such as balloons, would have to be used. GE module tests demonstrated that the cone-of-protection theory did apply to the mobile launcher and that practical measures would protect the vehicle and support equipment circuits from induced voltages. Besides a retractable mast for the launcher,† the committee recommended "general grounding, shielding, and bonding techniques . . . throughout the LC-39 area in order to keep the high voltage imposed by lightning strokes anywhere on the complex to a safe level."[50] An extensive underground counterpoise of rods and interconnecting conductors was eventually built into LC-39. Thousands of ground rods, driven deep enough to achieve a one-ohm resistance, tied together the crawlerway, service structure parking area, perimeter fence, and pad. Similar counterpoises protected cross-country cabling.[51]

GE engineers recommended certain precautionary measures when the mobile launcher was in transit. If a threat of lightning existed, personnel would stay inside the mobile launcher, or at least six meters from the crawler. Insulated ladders would be used for movement on or off the crawler. The committee proposed a backup warning system to alert personnel of approaching storms. The actual grounding of the crawler was simple—it would drag a chain along a conductor buried in the crawlerway.

---

*In the early 1960s experts disagreed about the generation and incidence of lightning and about its behavior and effects. The cone-of-protection theory held that all strokes would terminate on a tall structure in preference to a shorter structure located within the conical volume whose apex was the height of the tallest structure and whose base radius was equal to the apex height. Evidence from lightning strikes on skyscrapers and church steeples indicated the theory applied to the top half of the cone; the disagreement concerned the protection provided to the lower half.

†The mast retracted so that the mobile launcher could get into the VAB.

A bluish electrical discharge, sometimes called St. Elmo's fire, occurs frequently when storm clouds pass over tall structures. GE investigated the possibility of this phenomenon igniting a hydrogen explosion, but found that the corona would likely appear on the top outer edges of the mobile launcher and mobile service structure. This posed no threat, since the S-IVB lines ran 30 meters below the top of the launcher. The hydrogen lines to the Apollo service structure would shield the spacecraft connections during loading. The GE team rated the corona hazard a "negligible risk."[52]

During the next three years, Brewster's committee implemented the safety features on LC-39 while KSC's Instrumentation Division set up a system to collect more data. A GE study of LC-34's and LC-37's needs led to a second set of committee proposals approved by Debus in November 1964. At a September 1965 meeting of the Lightning Protection Committee, R. H. Jones, an Instrumentation Division engineer, reported thirteen measured strikes during the previous year. One bolt had killed a construction worker on LC-39, pad B. Another strike on the Cape side had delayed Gemini II operations at LC-19 by several weeks (the lightning had damaged a number of electrical components in the spacecraft and supporting equipment). E. R. Uhlig of GE's High Voltage Laboratory pointed out the correspondence between the measured incidents and GE's earlier predictions.[53]

When Apollo launch operations began in 1966, KSC applied strict safety rules for lightning protection. All launch personnel evacuated the mobile launcher, mobile service structure, and space vehicle when lightning was detected within five miles of the pad. A half dozen lightning storms delayed operations but never for more than a few hours. KSC relaxed its provisions somewhat in 1970 as experience demonstrated the safety of the mobile launcher and service structure. Thereafter operations on the tall structures, excepting electrical work, continued in the face of an approaching storm.[54]

Flame Deflectors

The last of the major facilities for launch complex 39 to reach the contract stage was the 635-metric-ton flame deflector. It would protect the lower section of the Saturn launch vehicle and the launch stand from high pressures and flame during ignition and liftoff. It would move on rails in the flame trench to a position beneath the Saturn V's massive booster engines. The reflector, shaped like an inverted V, would send the flames down each side of the trench. It would be constructed of structural steel beams and trusses, supporting a steel skin. The skin was covered by 10 centimeters of ceramic material capable of withstanding the direct flame and pressure effects of the Saturn first stage engines. On 5 November 1965, Heyl and Patterson, Inc., signed a contract in the fixed amount of $1 465 075 for the manufacture, installation, and erection of three deflectors.[55] Ultimately there would be a fourth, with one in use and another in reserve at each pad.

Without doubt, the many amazing structures under way on complex 39—the world's largest building, the crawler-transporters, the hold-down arms, the mobile launchers—constituted one of the most awesome building programs in the world. After the American Society of Civil Engineers considered engineering projects from every part of the country in 1966—the Astrodome in Houston, the North California Flood Rehabilitation work, the Trans-Sierra Freeway from Sacramento to the Nevada line, and the hurricane barrier at New Bedford, Massachusetts, among others—it recognized launch complex 39 as the outstanding civil engineering achievement of the year.[56]

Page intentionally left blank

14

SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROBLEMS ON THE SPACE COAST

Labor Problems at the Missile Center

Socio-economic problems went hand in hand with the engineering problems encountered in sending men to the moon. The relocation of a large number of people—many of them from urban centers—to the small towns of Florida's east coast where newcomers were not always welcome, the tenfold increase in population in Brevard County within 20 years, and the construction of many buildings and the assembling of highly complicated machinery in a previously quiet corner of a nonindustrial state brought about dramatic changes in the quality of life.

Many factors complicated the relations of labor, management, and government at the Kennedy Space Center, especially during the construction years, chiefly 1963 through 1965. Disputes of various kinds held up work on the assembly building, on other phases of LC-39 construction, and in the industrial area. The major labor issues will be discussed here.

First, Florida had an open-shop law, called by its supporters a "Right to Work Law." Such laws tend to create a climate of suspicion for union workers and are accompanied by strife between union and nonunion workers. At KSC, the unions were wary of any increase in contracts with nonunion contractors or subcontractors.

Second, Florida was not an industrialized state. In central Florida, the Cape-KSC area was at once the largest industrial center and the area where labor relations most closely paralleled the practices of more industrially developed states. As a result, some labor leaders did not hesitate to use the KSC arrangements as a possible club over contractors in nearby areas. One of the building trades unions, for instance, jockeyed for advantage with an Orlando contractor by using KSC arrangements as a lever.

Third, many contractors failed to enter serious contract negotiations until workers actually went on strike. Most of these strikes were short, and the contractors could have avoided them had they settled with the union one day before the strike, instead of agreeing to union demands after a one-day walkout.

Fourth, jurisdictional disputes caused endless problems. To understand the worker's point of view in this regard, one should remember that the welfare of an entire trade often depended on the protection of certain tasks that came within its jurisdiction. If a trade lost a particular type of work, the union simply found its members unemployed. Further, precedent so influenced jurisdictional assignments that unions zealously and carefully protected their existing areas. Sometimes, however, these jurisdictional disputes went beyond common sense and outraged everyone concerned. Carpenters walked out in a dispute: ironworkers were installing aluminum door frames. Labor leaders on occasion acted in the "public-be-damned" spirit of the 19th century industrial "Robber Barons."

Fifth, certain attitudes of construction workers, such as carpenters and plumbers, differed from those held by industrial workers, such as steelworkers. The more highly centralized industrial unions tended to heed decisions made on a nationwide basis or at national headquarters. The loosely bound construction locals, on the other hand, enjoyed greater autonomy. The construction worker never felt the same loyalty to his employer that the industrial worker felt. His term of employment was relatively short and his job security came from the union hiring hall, not from the company. It did not really matter a great deal to a plumber whether he was putting pipes in a motel, an industrial plant, or a missile site. He had little emotional involvement with the work itself or with the company he worked for at the moment. When he finished a job, he looked to the union for another. The construction worker thus tended to identify himself with his craft and his union, not with his employer or even with a major purpose such as sending a man to the moon.

Many construction workers were transient by background. Accustomed to moving where the work happened to be, oftentimes they did not put down roots. Some men came in for only a few days, sometimes sleeping in their own cars, then moving on. With the increase of work at the Cape and at KSC—the only diversified construction activity in Florida at the time—so many new workers came in with permits from other locals that they swamped the local unions and made their business agents edgy. At one time, for instance, between 600 and 700 electricians worked at KSC with permits from locals outside the region. The building trades thought they saw a lack of consistent policy and felt they had to scrap for everything they could get. These factors often made dealing with construction workers more difficult than dealing with industrial workers, as several officials at Kennedy Space Center were to comment.[1]

Labor troubles at missile sites, especially the Cape, had grown acute even before President Kennedy issued his lunar landing challenge to the nation.

On eight days from 25 April to 5 May 1961, the permanent Subcommittee on Investigations of the Senate Committee on Government Operations had held hearings in Washington. Senator John L. McClellan (D., Ark.) chaired this subcommittee, whose prestigious membership included Senators Ervin, Muskie, Jackson, Mundt, and Curtis. They took testimony from 38 individuals. The witnesses showed that work stoppages and slowdowns were commonplace at missile sites.[2]

The hearing brought to light many abuses including excessive overtime, exorbitant wages, low productivity of workers, improper classification of work, and inefficiency by contractors. The subcommittee criticized both labor and management. Work stoppages resulted in a total loss of 87 374 man-days at Cape Canaveral during a 4½-year period in the late 1950s and early 1960s. Wildcat strikes, slowdowns, and a deliberate policy of low productivity further delayed progress. Workers gouged the taxpayer with unnecessary and exorbitant overtime costs. The international unions did nothing to discipline the locals. Some contractors, operating under a cost-plus-fixed-fee contract, did nothing to stop skyrocketing costs in excessive overtime payments. They overmanned jobs and did not properly supervise.

The subcommittee insisted that the military and civilian officials on construction sites try to rectify unsatisfactory labor conditions. It pointed out that while Congress had passed the Davis-Bacon Act of 1931 to keep construction wages on government contracts consistent with the wages prevailing in a given area, some labor leaders improperly used it as a device for settling jurisdictional disputes. To conclude its findings, the subcommittee pointed out that work conditions at the missile sites improved for a time after the subcommittee began its hearings, then deteriorated.[3]

The Center's Labor Policy

Such was the industrial climate at the Cape shortly before NASA was challenged to send men to the moon. Only four days before President Kennedy gave that call on 21 May 1961, he signed Executive Order 10946, establishing the Missile Sites Labor Commission, with Secretary of Labor Arthur J. Goldberg as chairman. He and three representatives of management were to establish policies and procedures that were intended to improve labor relations within the missile and space industry. Section 2 of the order provided for the establishment of local on-site committees to anticipate problems and to prevent their becoming acute. The Missile Site Labor Relations Committee at KSC included one representative of each of the following: the Defense Department, NASA, building contractors, the Building and Construction

Trades Department of the AFL-CIO, the industrial contractors, the industrial unions, and the Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service.[4]

The work of the committee, coupled with other factors, resulted in a marked decrease in man-days lost at the Cape. The threat of further action by the McClellan Committee weighed heavily. McClellan introduced Senate bill 2361, which would have outlawed strikes and called for compulsory arbitration at strategic defense facilities.[5] One of the most important achievements of the Missile Sites Labor Commission at the Cape stemmed from a series of meetings between representatives of the Department of Defense, NASA, building and construction contractors, and international and local building trades unions. On 20 February 1962, they agreed to the Project Stabilization Agreement that standardized local arrangements between various unions and contractors. Two years later all parties were to accept a slightly revised agreement for three years more.[6]

A major dispute between NASA and certain of the building trades unions concerned the point where construction work ended and installation of equipment began. Further, the Air Force and NASA took different views on this question. Contractors working for the Air Force early reached an understanding with the construction unions and established an unwritten range policy to allow construction trades to install almost all ground support equipment. NASA never really accepted this policy.

Because of the research and development nature of its work, NASA maintained that each missile firing was essentially a laboratory experiment for the purpose of gathering data, testing feasibility of design concepts, operational techniques, and future development; and, therefore, all ground equipment, including launch controls, plumbing, and instrumentation that connected directly with the missile formed an integral part of the missile system. Thus, all such equipment should come under the direct control, from installation to final use, of the NASA missile teams. NASA saw many advantages to this viewpoint. It ensured quality control, increased reliability, reduced cost, and rendered unnecessary elaborate contract specifications for installation of launch facilities. At times, too, KSC saw the advisability of having the firm that built a piece of equipment bring its own workers to Florida to assemble it. The next chapter will discuss this issue with regard to the crawler-transporter—and the union disapproval that resulted. In line with NASA's attitude, and in spite of the Air Force's unwritten policy differing from NASA's, some Air Force missile contractors would have preferred to have their own personnel do the entire job. This had come up in at least one significant case with Convair before the Senate hearing on work stoppages at missile bases.[7]

The Air Force had also drawn up ground rules that allowed the use of nonunion contractors, but never on the same specific job as a union contractor, such as inside the same blockhouse at the same time. The Air Force, further, won an agreement that disallowed picketing on the Cape itself. Although the commanding general readily listened to the complaints of labor leaders, the Air Force rarely intruded in disputes that arose between contractors and their workers.[8]

NASA did not duplicate all these policies. As a result, many unions had one set of rules east of the Banana River and another on the west bank, and the difference showed from time to time. On one occasion, construction unions walked off their jobs, causing a loss of 491 man-days to NASA contracts and 3867 man-days to NASA-financed Corps of Engineers contracts. At the same time, Air Force contracts and Air Force–financed Corps of Engineers contracts of about the same size did not lose a single man-day.[9]

As the Launch Operations Center moved toward the period of construction, its Industrial Relations Office increased in importance. In June 1963, Oliver E. Kearns, who had worked with the Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service in Toledo, and before that had been field examiner with the National Labor Relations Board in Seattle, became Industrial Relations Officer. Later in the year, John Miraglia, who had worked in industrial relations for NASA at the Cape, returned to the Space Center as Industrial Relations Chief, with Kearns as his deputy. In the NASA-wide administrative reorganization of early 1964, Paul Styles became Labor Relations Director, with Miraglia his deputy. With this new office added to his duties at KSC, Miraglia served as trouble-shooter at NASA centers throughout the country.

Miraglia had experience both as a textile worker and a representative of the textile workers' union and had worked with the National Labor Relations Board. He understood that many labor problems were emotional as well as economic and that the first essential was proper communications.[10] He and Kearns would have plenty of opportunity to develop the art of communication and to extend their patience to the limit during 1964, an especially trying year. But all the construction years at Kennedy Space Center would prove exasperating.

A Spring and Summer of Strikes

In early February 1964, KSC signed an agreement with the Florida East Coast Railroad for the operation of a spur line on NASA property. Eleven nonoperating unions, such as telegraphers and maintenance-of-way workers, had been on strike against the railroad for 13 months in an effort to bring their pay up to the national scale as accepted by 190 railroads in 1962. Violence during the strike had caused suspension of passenger traffic. But the Florida East Coast continued to move freight, and during the week before the agreement two trains had been blown up.[11]

NASA Administrator Webb had warned board chairman Edward Ball that a paralyzing strike might endanger the nation's space and security program. Vice President of the railroad W. L. Thornton believed that the unions would not shut down the Cape operations because such action would constitute an illegal secondary boycott. Thornton had refused President Kennedy's recommendation for "final and binding arbitration" the previous year. Thornton did not seem to take seriously the pledge of the almost 12000 spaceport union employees to honor picket lines.[12] The railroad, in fact, had tried to operate a train on NASA property before the agreement. A confrontation with NASA security personnel had prevented unloading of the train.[13]

The nonoperating unions placed pickets at all entrances to the space center and to Cape Kennedy on 10 February, halting construction on the Cape and Merritt Island.[14] The National Labor Relations Board obtained a temporary restraining order from the Federal District Court of Orlando on the grounds that in halting space construction, the pickets violated a ban on secondary boycotts.[15] The unions removed the pickets on 12 February and the workers returned to their jobs, even though the attorney for the union contended that the Florida East Coast came under the purview of the Railway Labor Act, and thus the National Labor Relations Board had no jurisdiction.[16] In his weekly report to Debus, Miraglia correctly assumed that one or two months would elapse before pickets reappeared.[17]

The meetings that followed between Assistant Secretary of Labor James J. Reynolds and the officials of the railroad transcended the local situation at the spur line to KSC. Reynolds suggested that the President's Missile Sites Labor Commission arbitrate the strike—a proceeding that Ball had steadily opposed for 13 months. When President Johnson spoke at Palatka, Florida, later in the month, a blast blew up a Florida East Coast train 25 kilometers away.[18] Ball continued to oppose compulsory arbitration and the dispute dragged on. But wider aspects of the battle did not affect the situation at KSC.

Paul Styles represented NASA at a meeting of the Missile Sites Labor Relations Committee on 20 April 1964. In the previous year, jurisdictional disputes between building trades unions and disagreement over working conditions had caused 33 work stoppages. Styles stressed the need for a new dedication by labor organizations and contractors to adjust jurisdictional disputes without work stoppages. The representatives of the contractors and the union pledged greater efforts to follow the prescribed methods of settling such disputes. Government, labor, and management all felt the meeting successful.[19] Actualities were to betray their hopes.

The Missile Sites Labor Relations Committee held a special meeting to avert picketing of KSC and the Cape by members of Steelworkers Local 6020 of Tampa. This union had been on strike against the Florida Steel Company of Tampa for 12 weeks. KSC used steel from this company, and the union felt that placing pickets at the spaceport would bring the dispute to the attention of the public. KSC prevailed upon the union to postpone action until a committee had studied the situation. The committee suggested that a reduction or possibly total elimination of the use of steel from this company would remove the threat of picketing.[20] This was obviously a case of a union using KSC as a lever to win a strike against a particular firm.

So many work stoppages occurred during the next few months one might well have thought that the building of the space center would stagger on forever. In late May and early June the ironworkers refused to work for the American Bridge Company in the assembly building, alleging unsafe practices; 736 man-days were lost. Since workers left their jobs contrary to the orders of union representatives, the walkout indicated a loss of control by the union. At the same time, 20 pipe-fitters left their jobs on complex 36B in the cable terminal building. When Akwa Construction Company sent several nonunion workers, the carpenters' business agent pulled out the remaining union workers. The firing of 5 men for allegedly drinking and gambling on the job provoked 129 laborers in the assembly building and 29 cement masons in the industrial area to stay off the job beginning 3 June. Conciliation brought about the rehiring of three of the men on the basis of inconclusive evidence and termination slips for milder reasons for the other two, so as not to impair their chances of future employment. Eight laborers and 9 carpenters walked off the job on 1 June at the cable terminal building and at the site of the communications ducts to protest the hiring of 4 nonunion carpenters. Nonunion men then took over.[21] Twenty-five operating engineers left their jobs on 5 June to protest the discharge of one member; 11 man-days were lost. The business agent ordered the men back to work at the direction of the Corps of Engineers.

On the morning of 8 June, Locals 2020 and 717 of the Brotherhood of Maintenance of Ways placed pickets at all entrances to Merritt Island and the Cape at 5 a.m. without giving prior notice. Members of the building trades honored the picket lines, closing down nearly all construction work at KSC and at the Cape. About 4000 of 4500 workers stayed away. The railroad trouble had surfaced again.

At a meeting of the Missile Sites Labor Relations Committee on the following day, Paul Styles admonished the building trades unions for violating the no-strike clause—Article 6 of the Project Stabilization Agreement. The committee insisted that the unions needed more effective leadership and that the contractors had to discipline violators of the agreement. Styles urged the heads of 14 building trades unions to get the men back to work. The union officials responded that the workers had refused to cross the picket lines spontaneously and not under orders from the union leadership.[22]

On the same day (9 June 1964), Styles notified all employees of the Florida East Coast Railroad, its subcontractors, and its suppliers that they had to use one entrance to the Merritt Island area. If unions wanted to picket, they could do so only at the one gate. This decision of the Director of NASA's Office of Labor Relations followed a procedure established at many multiemployer work sites throughout the country and repeatedly upheld by the National Labor Relations Board. At this juncture, Federal District Judge George C. Young ordered the maintenance-of-way unions to cease picketing the railroad at Kennedy Space Center. His temporary injunction would last until the following Monday. Early the following week he extended the injunction until Friday the 19th. In the meantime the National Labor Relations Board issued an opinion that the railroad unions involved, principally the telegraphers and the maintenance-of-way men, fell under its jurisdiction. Judge Young extended the injunction indefinitely.[23]

And the month of June had barely passed the midway point!

Representatives of the unions and contractors who had signed the Project Stabilization Agreement met in Orlando on 18 June to find out if the unions intended to adhere to the no-strike provision. Representatives of NASA and the Department of Defense attended. The meeting failed to produce any change in attitude of union representatives toward the Project Stabilization Agreement. Basically, the locals resented this restriction agreed to by the international unions and tended to ignore it. International unions, in turn, were not insisting on compliance by the locals.[24]

Strikes and work stoppages piled one on top of another with such frequency that Debus penned these words at the bottom of Miraglia's weekly notes: "John: The continuation of the 'little' walkouts precipitated by sometimes unknown causes is *very alarming*. What can be done about it?"[25] Jurisdictional strikes especially galled. At one time several jurisdictional disputes took place simultaneously and were to drag on through much of the summer of 1964. Carpenters walked off the job at the assembly building following a dispute with the contractor, Morrison-Knudsen, Perini, and Hardeman, over the assigning of aluminum door frames to the ironworkers.[26]

In the third week in July, Kearns, who gradually assumed more of Miraglia's duties at KSC, thought it noteworthy to record that no jurisdictional disputes had caused work stoppages during the past week, although three previous disputes were still pending. Now a new area of dispute took center stage. Five plumbers left the operations and checkout building in the industrial area protesting the award of a contract to a nonunion prime contractor who had subcontracted the mechanical work to another nonunion contractor. The strike lasted one day.

Unions began to show concern over the number of contracts that went to open-shop employers. The Brevard Building and Construction Trades Council asked for information on the number of nonunion contractors winning contracts from local government agencies—even though many open-shop contractors did use union workers or subcontracted to firms that had union workers. A cursory check by NASA during late August showed that 94% of the workers on KSC contracts were union men. This represented a rise in nonunion workers from 1.7% in June to 5.8% in August. The percentage of contracts let to nonunion contractors was between 15 and 20%. By dollar volume, however, it was only 5%.[27]

The *Orlando Sentinel* for 8 September 1964 depicted NASA's relations with labor as being in decay. To the Industrial Relations Office at KSC, it appeared that Clifford Baxley, the coordinator of the Brevard Building and Trades Council, had given false information to the newspaper, and Kearns recommended boycotting informal, off-the-record discussions whenever Baxley represented labor. In his report to Debus, Kearns mentioned that Baxley did not have to support all unions and that his conduct completely destroyed the purpose of meetings, particularly when the information Baxley gave to the press was not accurate. On Kearns's report, Debus wrote an emphatic "No!" and underlined the word twice. "We cannot take this attitude," he insisted. "Discuss this with Mr. Siepert."[28]

In line with the insistence of Debus, Kearns wrote the following week:

> NASA will continue to attend these informal labor management meetings if they are resumed. Other Government agencies that have participated in these meetings agree that certain rules be established to retain the trust and confidence the attendees must have towards each other in order to assure the success of such meetings. No date has been set for another meeting.[29]

The long hot summer of 1964 proved frustrating for Miraglia and Kearns; indeed, labor relations were not to improve during the construction period at KSC. One of the most significant strikes came in mid-September 1965, when construction neared its conclusion throughout Merritt Island.

Most other strikes had been purely local, or at most regional, such as the strike against the Florida East Coast Railroad. This one was part of a nationwide walkout of Boeing Company employees. The strike directly affected only about 50 members of the International Association of Machinists and Aerospace Workers on KSC's Saturn program, and about 225 on the Air Force Minuteman program at Cape Kennedy.[30] Revolving around a new contract, it hinged on such issues as the grading of employees, insurance coverage for dependents, and the union shop.

When contract negotiations broke down, the union struck Cape Kennedy and KSC on 16 September 1965. W. J. Usery, regional representative of the machinists, made considerable but fruitless efforts to prevent the walkout of the nonstriking machinists (those who worked for firms other than Boeing). The striking machinists, in general, honored the one-gate picketing procedure that Paul Styles had set down in the railroad strike of the previous year. A large number of construction workers walked off the job for a time in support of the machinists. All the workers from the Marion Power Shovel Co., who had come south to assemble the crawler-transporter, went home.[31]

Boeing would not grant the union shop request. But the negotiations eventually resulted in a new contract that satisfied the international leadership of the union, and the spaceport machinists voted on 4 October to end the 19-day strike.[32]

The Spaceport's Impact on the Local Communities

During the years that Merritt Island changed from citrus groves, sand bars, and swamps to a major launch site, the local communities reflected dramatic growth. The area had no major city like Houston; further, no one community dominated the Cape area as Huntsville did the environs of Marshall. Instead, the newcomers dispersed over a wide area.

A short distance south of Cape Canaveral, Cocoa Beach early assumed a central role in the space program. Many industrial contractors located there. Numerous motels and an excellent beach imparted a holiday atmosphere and made the town popular with tourists. The area's night life centered there. The nation came to identify the space program with Cocoa Beach rather than with other communities in the vicinity. *Time* magazine carried a lurid picture of activities at Cocoa Beach night clubs on weekends and especially at launchings and splashdowns.[33] Cocoa Beach, however, had no television station—there was none in Brevard County. As a result, the cities of Orlando and Daytona Beach influenced the region through their television facilities, even though they were 64 and 80 kilometers distant, respectively.

In 1963 NASA funded three studies of the social and economic development of the area. A regional planning commission looked at roads and water systems, a Florida State University team dealt with community affairs, and a University of Florida research group studied population and economics. The study groups were to finish their reports within two years. The three principal investigators met profitably with NASA's local officials and delegates of NASA headquarters. They further got in touch with representatives of the various Brevard County communities. Florida State University set up an urban research center in the area and published materials developed by the three studies.[34]

Between 1950 and 1960, the population of Brevard County, 106 kilometers long and 32 kilometers wide, had grown faster than any other county in the country—from 23 653 to 111 435—an increase of 371%, in contrast to the 79% increase for the state of Florida and 19% for the entire nation. Most of the people settled in four towns: Titusville, the county seat, in the north, Cocoa in the center, Eau Gallie and Melbourne in the south. Titusville reached only half the population of each of the other three in the 1960 census.[35]

In 1950 Brevard County's 13 schools had an average daily attendance of 4163; by the school year 1963-64 there were 46 schools with an average daily attendance of 39 873. Classrooms grew from 117 to 1473 in the 14-year period.[36]

An infinitesimal percentage of the residents of the four main communities of Brevard County had been born there. Roughly one-fourth of the newcomers came from each of these categories: villages of less than 5000, towns between 5000 and 25 000, cities of 25 000 to 100 000, and cities over 100 000. Industrial firms transferred 13% of the newcomers from plants in other areas; 25% freely accepted Florida jobs with a firm they already worked for; and slightly over 25% sought better economic opportunities by coming to the area on their own to seek employment. Some 35-40% came from southern states other than Florida; close to 20% from other counties of Florida; and 15-20% from both the northwest and the midwest. Thus over half were southerners.[37]

In community involvement, the churches and PTAs led the way. Recreational and hobby clubs grew faster than economic and service-related institutions. Not surprisingly, women tended to involve themselves more in community participation than men. Melbourne, Cocoa, and Cocoa Beach developed active theatre and musical groups, including the Brevard Light

Opera Association in Melbourne and the Brevard Civic Symphony in Cocoa. The Surfside Players at Cocoa Beach presented six plays a year.[38] Recreationally, Titusville suffered in a way the more southerly areas did not. Its nearest beach, the rough but challenging Playalinda, was so close to the new launching pads that it would remain closed during many months each year.

A Florida State University survey showed slight participation of the newcomers in the political activities of the community or even of the nation. While only 23% of the old-timers, for instance, had failed to vote in the 1960 presidential election, 43% of the early migrants and 52% of the most recent arrivals did not go to the polls.[39] Registration requirements naturally influenced voting patterns. The newcomers, in general, willingly lent a hand in such activities as the United Fund; but they did not in any noticeable degree seek political control within the community. The few who did hold office often found older residents suspicious and uncooperative. The main loyalty of the newcomers lay with the space program, with their particular firm, and sometimes with a particular project of that firm, so that many did not feel Brevard County their permanent home, but merely a temporary assignment, as a soldier might look at a tour of duty.

The 1960 census gave Brevard County 111 435 residents. In May 1963, the Florida Power and Light Company estimated the booming population at 156 688. In the estimates for three years after that, the company expected the 72 650 people in southern Brevard County to admit over 52 000 newcomers; the 54 940 in central Brevard to grow to 100 000; and the 25 760 in northern areas at least to double.[40]

A month later (June 1963) Paul Siebeneichen and his staff at KSC's Community Development Office presented more detailed statistics on the population of the county. By that time, 42 new residents were arriving every day. Nine out of 10 homes were single-family units, and each housed an average of 3.4 people—the statistic the Florida Power and Light Company had used the previous month. The number of men approximated the number of women. Three out of every four men over 14 were married. More than one-third of the women over 13 had jobs. The median income per family was $6123—far and away the highest in the state. Consistent with this, the median value of homes was $13 000, compared to the state's average of $11 800.[41]

In May 1964, NASA and the Air Force took a residential survey by questionnaire of more than 28 000 military, civil service, and contractor employees in the area. This study, tabulated by a team from Florida State University, showed that up to that time residents tended to remain where they had located in the late 1950s. South Brevard had 42.1% of the population, with 20.8% on the mainland and 21.3% in the beach areas. Central

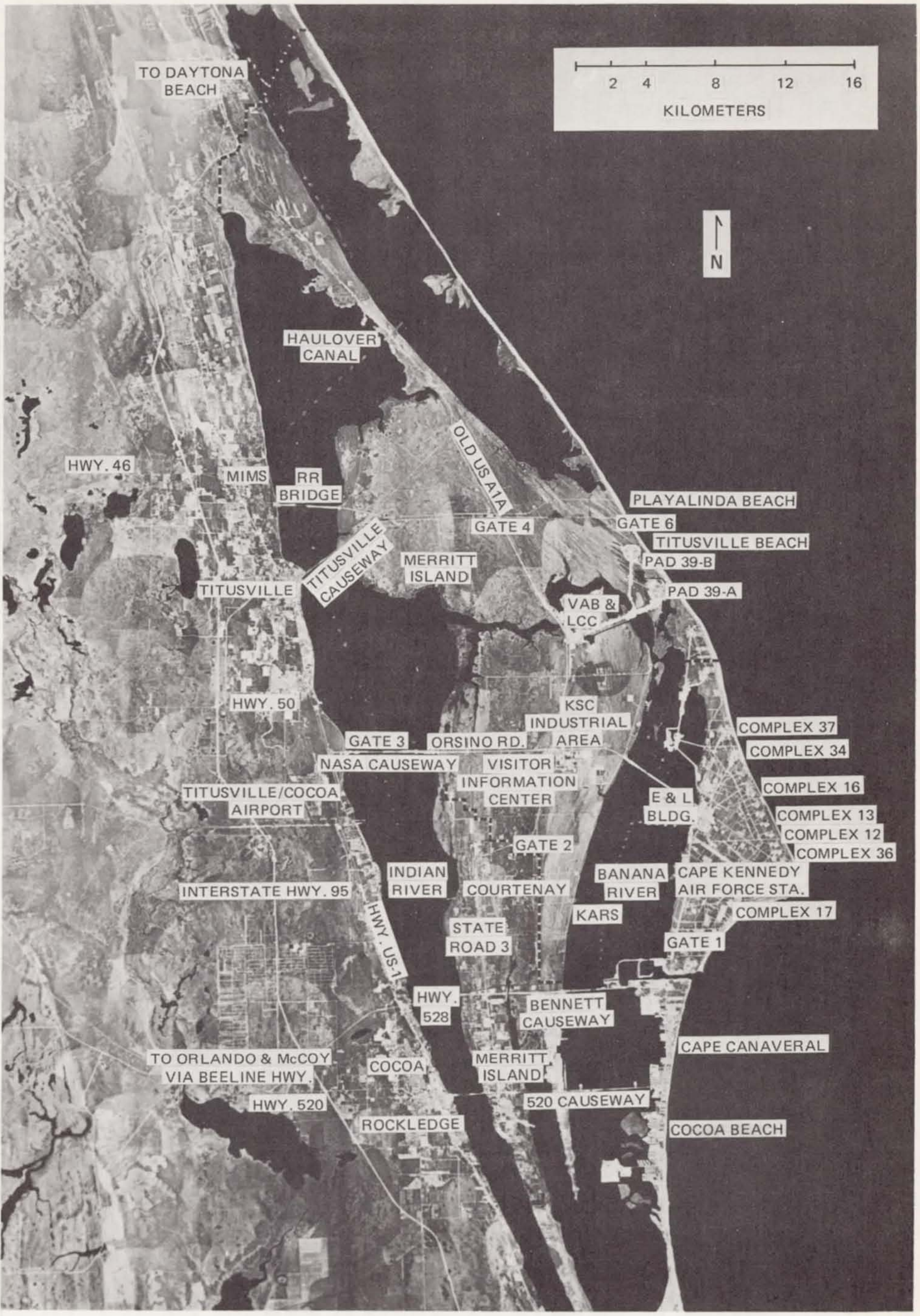

TO DAYTONA BEACH
2 4 8 12 16
KILOMETERS
N
HAULOVER CANAL
OLD US A1A
HWY. 46
MIMS
RR BRIDGE
PLAYALINDA BEACH
GATE 4
GATE 6
TITUSVILLE BEACH
TITUSVILLE CAUSEWAY
MERRITT ISLAND
PAD 39-B
TITUSVILLE
PAD 39-A
VAB & LCC
HWY. 50
KSC INDUSTRIAL AREA
COMPLEX 37
GATE 3
ORSINO RD.
COMPLEX 34
NASA CAUSEWAY
VISITOR INFORMATION CENTER
TITUSVILLE/COCOA AIRPORT
COMPLEX 16
E & L BLDG.
COMPLEX 13
COMPLEX 12
GATE 2
COMPLEX 36
INDIAN RIVER
BANANA RIVER
CAPE KENNEDY AIR FORCE STA.
INTERSTATE HWY. 95
COURTENAY
KARS
COMPLEX 17
HWY. US-1
STATE ROAD 3
GATE 1
HWY. 528
BENNETT CAUSEWAY
CAPE CANAVERAL
TO ORLANDO & McCOY VIA BEELINE HWY.
COCOA
MERRITT ISLAND
HWY. 520
520 CAUSEWAY
ROCKLEDGE
COCOA BEACH

Fig. 104. Aerial mosaic of Cape Canaveral and vicinity, April 1967.

Brevard had 40.4%, with 12.7% on the mainland, 15.6% on the north beach area, and 12.1% on Merritt Island. North Brevard (the general area of Titusville) had 12.4%. Orange County had 2.4%; Volusia 1.6%.[42]

As the population of the area continued to grow, the automobile remained the only significant means of local transportation. Two roads that figured prominently in KSC plans were the north-south Merritt Island road (U.S. A1A) and the Orsino Road, an east-west street that deadended near the Indian River. The industrial area was southeast of the junction of these two roads. KSC improved the Merritt Island road as the main north-south artery within NASA property. A four-lane divided highway extended from 1.7 kilometers south of the industrial area to the Titusville Beach road, about 8 kilometers north of the assembly building. Studies by the Joint Community Impact–Coordinating Committee, which antedated the Regional Planning Commission, gave no indication of the tremendous growth ahead for the residential area on Merritt Island, about 16 kilometers south of the KSC industrial area.[43] As a result, the State of Florida did not widen the two-lane road (Florida Highway 3) that ran south from the KSC area through Courtenay to the Bennett toll road (Highway 528). After 1964, four FHA-backed apartment complexes were to spur extensive residential growth in that area of Merritt Island. As a result, Florida Highway 3 became a bottleneck during peak traffic hours.

East-west traffic was never to present a problem. The four-lane divided highway (the old Orsino road), a few blocks north of the industrial area, ran east a kilometer, then turned southeastward to a two-lane causeway over the Banana River to the Air Force Missile Test Center industrial area on the Cape; there it connected with the four-lane traffic artery to the Cocoa Beach area and south. The building of a five-kilometer long, four-lane causeway across the Indian River to the west connected the Orsino road with U.S. Highway 1 on the mainland a few kilometers south of Titusville. Originally intended as a limited-access road for KSC-badged personnel only, this road became a public highway a few years later with the opening of the Visitors Information Center several kilometers west of the KSC industrial area. On the west, beyond U.S. Highway 1 on the mainland, state road-builders were ultimately to continue the east-west road as a four-lane divided highway just north of Ti-Co Airport to its junction with Florida 50 near the intersection of Interstate 95. Thus traffic could move rapidly west from the industrial area across the Indian River and on to Titusville to the north, Cocoa, Rockledge, Eau Gallie, and Melbourne to the south, and the suburbs of Orlando to the west.

While the national government took steps during this period to increase the opportunities for employment of members of minority races, aerospace employers had few openings for blacks. Black engineers were few.

Black applicants in other categories of work often lacked the necessary background, training, or union membership. Thus while the white community multiplied, the black population of Brevard County remained the same, declining noticeably as a percentage—from 25% in 1950 to 11% in 1960.[44]

KSC and many contractors tried to improve the situation. An Equal Employment Opportunity meeting of 21 April 1964, with most contractors represented, planned a program to draw on the local black population rather than recruit from outside sources. The meeting set up two committees: one for job development and employment, the other for education and youth incentive. There was an obvious need to develop jobs suitable to available blacks, and to include in the local high school curriculum such courses as shorthand, typing, and the like. A month later NASA representatives attended a luncheon meeting sponsored by the contractors' Equal Employment Opportunity committee. That organization set up a program for employing local black teachers during summer vacation to give them first-hand knowledge of the academic skills necessary for employment at the space center, so that they could better counsel their students. Principals of three local black high schools, a representative of the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People, and an Air Force Equal Employment Opportunity coordinator attended this meeting.[45]

Harry W. Smith, Chief of KSC's Recruitment and Placement Branch, attended a meeting on 30 March 1965 of Governor Claude Kirk of Florida, his cabinet, and black leaders of the State. Smith participated at the request of the black leaders and explained KSC's Equal Employment Opportunity Program. The black leaders commented favorably on the program and hoped that the State government would adopt at least a part of it.[46]

In order to give wives and children a better understanding of the activities of their husbands and fathers, Kennedy Space Center's Protocol Office began to hold Saturday tours of Merritt Island and launch complexes 34 and 39. The Air Force had begun such a program in 1963 and KSC followed in the summer of 1964. On each of the first two Saturday trips, more than 200 wives and children made the trip.[47]

By late 1964 other visitors besides the families of employees wanted to see the growing wonders of Merritt Island. As a result, on the first Sunday of 1965, KSC began a Sunday tour. Guards handed out brochures and a letter of welcome from Director Debus as the cars passed through the gate. More than 1900 visitors came the first Sunday, some from as far away as Nebraska and Ontario. As the Sunday tours grew more popular, KSC laid plans for a permanent Visitors Information Center. In late June 1965, a group of architects met with Debus and other KSC officials to discuss design possibilities, while the National Park Service estimated the potential visitor attendance by 1967 to be in the millions.[48]

Familial and Personal Tensions

The move of Hans Gruene's launch vehicle team and Theodor Poppel's design group in 1964 and 1965 brought about 1000 families from Alabama to Brevard County. Except for 40 Boeing families, newly arrived in Alabama, most had lived for some time in the Huntsville area. In spite of the best efforts of the Community Impact Committee to provide information about Florida's east coast, relocation proved difficult for many of the newcomers. The families settling in the Titusville area found no large shopping center closer than Orlando. Titusville had only one small department store. Sears and Penney's would arrive three years later, in response to the rapid population growth.[49]

To provide a place where all could come together on occasion for relaxation, a group of employees developed a recreation area five kilometers east of Highway 3 on KSC, halfway between headquarters and the residential area farther south on Merritt Island. Situated on the west bank of the Banana River, with 762 meters of shore line and a boat basin, the tract, one kilometer square, boasted a setting of live oak, palm, persimmon, and pine trees, and provided playgrounds, picnic areas, and a swimming area.[50] The Spaceport Travel Club also organized a year-round series of trips that specialized in Caribbean cruises and air journeys to Europe, Hawaii, and the Orient. In spite of these efforts, the KSC employees remained segmentized, close to their own division or contractor, united only in the purpose of sending men to the moon and bringing them back.

Mobility was a major factor in the lives of many on the Apollo project. Military men had grown accustomed to it and accepted it as part of their lives. Engineers who worked for a particular contractor expected a change of residence when a contract was completed. Some saw the east coast of Florida as only a temporary home and did not sell their residences near the Douglas or Boeing central plant. Others viewed it as their permanent home and intended to find permanent employment when their work at KSC ended. Still others lived in constant uncertainty—a factor that influenced their entire family life.

These tensions made family life difficult in many ways. Articles in the local newspapers and national magazines regularly carried features on the domestic strain in the space communities. As *Time* magazine was to state:

> The technicians who assemble and service the rockets have chosen a tense career, and it has taken its toll on their personalities, their marriages and their community. . . . The rhythms of life at Cape Kennedy are set not so much by the clock or the

> seasons as by the irregular flights of the missiles. Bouts of furious activity and 14-hour days may be followed by periods of idleness.[51]

The *Time* article saw some difficulties stemming directly from the nature, training, and background of the engineering profession. Many engineers were perfectionist males, surrounded all day by scientific precision, who could not brook the sight of an unwashed coffee cup in the sink on their return home. Many carried their work home with them, spending the evening hours not with their families but in reading technical material. Intelligent, but not liberally educated, their interests focused primarily on the technical world.

Debus told an interviewer:

> There is so much tension, so much anxiety in putting men into space. Yes, we've lost men because of family problems. When a man is so dedicated that the NASA program becomes his personal life, it takes much time away from wife and children. We need a great many understanding wives here . . . in the end we usually have to tell them their husbands will be working even harder next year.
>
> Such exposure to stress is rare elsewhere. We live with it constantly. In fact, it is so much with us that we are studying it—how it is affecting our hearts, our nerves, our functions, our aging processes. We don't know yet.[52]

Putting men into space caused grave family problems. But readjusting to the decline in employment that followed was to cause even greater problems, especially to children. A prominent pediatrician of the region, Dr. Ronald C. Erbs of Titusville, noted a high incidence of ulcers in children, especially during the last half of the Apollo program. "Before coming to this area," he stated, "I did not see ulcers in children, except for rare examples."

> It is my opinion that the life generated by the Space Program was basically unhealthy for the families of space personnel. . . . With the decline of the Space Program, these highly trained men became very insecure regarding their futures. It is extremely difficult to keep the emotions of work away from the emotions of the family, hence increased family tensions. These tensions then were felt by the children, and since the problems were not usually discussed, the children had no outlet for these emotions, leading to the development of ulcers.[53]

Dr. Erbs had recommendations for future space programs, but they came too late for Apollo.

One compensating social attitude was the almost total lack of snobbishness among the space workers in the neighboring communities. No doubt it stemmed partially from most of them being newcomers trying to set up homes on Florida's east coast. A major contributing factor was the sense of the importance of each member of the Apollo team to the success of the mission. The most brilliant design engineer knew that the man who bolted on the hatch hinges did an important piece of work. All saw the unheralded contributions of countless persons around them. This appreciation of the worth of the individual carried over into the communities beyond KSC. One technician asked: "Where else in America would my closest friends be two men who make twice as much money as I do?"[54]

15

PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER: LC-39 SITE ACTIVATION

The Site Activation Board

In 1965 KSC officials prepared to put it all together at LC-39. After two years of construction, and midway through President Kennedy's decade of challenge, Kennedy Space Center approached a milestone known in NASA parlance as "site activation." Two parts of the task were complete: the brick and mortar construction of the facilities, including installation of the utility systems for power, water, heating, and air conditioning; and the electrical and mechanical outfitting such as propellant piping and intercommunications systems. Now came the installation, assembly, and testing of ground support equipment. Earlier chapters have dealt with the first two phases. The third phase in some ways constituted Apollo's greatest challenge. Hundreds of contractors sent nearly 40000 pieces of ground support equipment to the Cape for installation at LC-39. On Merritt Island, KSC's Apollo Program Office had to integrate the activities of more than two dozen major contractors. Engineering and administrative interfaces numbered in the thousands. At NASA Headquarters, Gen. Samuel Phillips, a veteran of the Minuteman site activation program, and his boss, George Mueller, doubted that KSC would have LC-39 ready in time for Saturn V.[1]

Rocco Petrone took the first step toward site activation in September 1964 by appointing Lt. Col. Donald R. Scheller "Staff Assistant for Activation Planning." Scheller, a B-17 pilot in World War II, had just completed four years with the Atlas Missile Project Office. An October 1964 memo from William Clearman's Saturn V Test and Systems Engineering Office listed the responsibilities of Scheller's new position. He was to analyze:

- Construction schedules of facilities under the cognizance of the Corps of Engineers.
- Delivery schedules of all ground support equipment to be installed on complex 39 regardless of the source of the equipment.

- Tests to be performed on the facilities by contractors prior to release to KSC as well as the tests on utilities, subsystems, and systems to be performed after these facilities are accepted by KSC.
- Tests that are to be performed under the direction of KSC personnel after ground support equipment is installed.[2]

Drawing upon the support of KSC's various design and support elements, Scheller was to develop a work schedule for site activation. His plans would become the management tools to accomplish the task efficiently. After KSC began implementing the site activation plans, Scheller would prepare facilities description documents for LC-39.

Although Clearman was projecting no mean task, he underestimated the job. Scheller took several months to review the situation before organizing a Site Activation Board in March 1965. At the board's first meeting, he outlined his plans to 40 NASA and contractor representatives. The Site Activation Board, under the aegis of the Apollo Program Office, would work at the management level of KSC and the stage contractors; subordinate groups would handle daily site activation problems. The board was not to usurp other organizations' responsibilities.

Scheller's subordinates presented a performance evaluation and review technique (PERT) for the LC-39 activation. PERT schedules would provide three levels of control. At the A level, PERT would focus on the major control milestones for the Saturn V program, e.g., the first facility checkout of the Saturn V test vehicle, SA-500-F. B networks would track each major element required to support the key milestones, e.g., firing room 1 for 500-F. Level C networks, providing a further breakdown of B-level networks, would follow the progress of all subsystems within each major facility, e.g., the propellants loading panel in firing room 1. The Schedules Office, supporting the board, would maintain the A and B levels, while NASA line organizations and stage contractors prepared the C networks.[3]

The PERT networks brought order to LC-39 site activation. PERT defined each task, performer, and deadline in a descending and expanding level of detail. The top or A network also served as the site activation master schedule, establishing major milestones. This master schedule, prepared by Scheller's office, was divided into segments or "flows." Flow 1 charted the activation of the minimum facilities and equipment necessary for the checkout and launch of the first Apollo-Saturn V vehicle, AS-501. A preliminary objective was the arrival and erection of the facilities checkout vehicle, SA-500-F, which would be used for testing and validation of launch facilities and operating procedures. Flow 1 listed as minimum facility requirements:

- Mobile launcher 1
- Crawler-transporter 1

- High bay 1 in the assembly building
- Firing room 1 in the launch control center
- Mobile service structure
- Launch pad A
- Propellants and high-pressure gas facilities
- Related mechanical equipment, electrical-electronic support equipment, and other ground support equipment.

Flow 2 charted the activation of additional facilities to support AS-502, including launcher 2, high bay 3, firing room 2, and related ground support equipment. Flow 3, originally intended for AS-503, tracked the activation of pad B and related facilities such as the crawlerway. A fourth flow covered the remaining LC-39 facilities.[4]

B and C networks supported each of the flows. The B networks eventually listed over 7400 events, e.g., completion dates for equipment installation. These events covered all facilities and some major components within the facilities. The C networks, largely a contractor responsibility, listed 40 000 activities in sequence and set the dates by which one contractor would have to complete a job to make way for the next operation. A numbering system facilitated the transposition of data between C and B levels, matching as many as 15 C-level activities with their B counterparts.

Following the PERT description, the Site Activation Board discussed a second management tool, the equipment records system. NASA was compiling in Huntsville a list of 40 000 pieces of ground support equipment, the data coming from the engineering divisions of the three spaceflight centers. The lists provided: a name and number; an estimated-on-dock date, the expected delivery date at KSC; and a required-on-dock date, when KSC needed the item for installation. The board intended to use the equipment records system as the communications medium between KSC users and equipment suppliers. Representatives of the Facilities Engineering and Construction Division reported on the current status of key construction milestones, including rack and console installation. All agencies were asked to review the construction status in terms of their organizational needs for access, and to report any problems to the Site Activation Board. Scheller requested comments on the board charter and PERT networks within a week and an early submission of level C data.[5]

Under its charter, the board was responsible for ensuring that all facilities and support equipment comprising the Apollo–Saturn V operational launch base were "constructed, outfitted, installed, interconnected, and tested" in preparation for subsequent operations. This included equipment modifications during site activation. KSC division chiefs quickly expressed concern about these broad powers. In his comments Dr. Hans Gruene asked:

"Will decisions of the Board be made at the discretion of the chairman or by some other method? . . . Can a decision be appealed by the director of an operating unit [such as the Assistant Director for Launch Vehicle Operations] to the Director of Plans, Programs, and Resources [Petrone]?"[6] Col. Aldo Bagnulo, acting Assistant Director for Engineering and Development, not wanting the board to assume any of his responsibilities for facility development, said: "The recent emphasis on performing work through normal procedures rather than by committee action should be followed."[7] Raymond Clark, Support Operations Chief, raised the same sensitive issue: "Additional clarification is needed as to the depth of management control anticipated by the Site Activation Board."[8] Despite these objections, Petrone had his way; when the board began operations, it enjoyed a wide-ranging authority.

The preparation of PERT schedules monopolized the board's attention for several months. The fashioning of the detailed C-level networks proved time-consuming, and when submitted, data from the contractors forced revisions in the B networks. KSC also had trouble bringing the equipment records system under its control. By August 1965, however, both that system and PERT were computerized and operational. Early that month Scheller initiated biweekly board meetings.[9] In early October the board moved to new quarters in firing room 4 of the launch control center. Even desks and telephones were in short supply, but KSC got on with the installations, and the following month the board had work space, conference areas, and a management information display and analysis room. The display brought home the immensity of the board's task. Magnetic devices on a 21 × 5-meter metal wall revealed the status of each PERT chart and told the story of site activation. Tiered seats accommodated 90 people with standing room for another 50. Four rear-projection screens, above the metal wall, provided simultaneous or selective viewing of activation data. Apollo officials could view level A networks, milestone event charts, and major problem summaries on two rear-lighted display areas located to the right and left of the four screens. As activation moved into high gear, the display room was used to brief visiting dignitaries on program goals and progress. Level C networks had an area of their own behind the huge display wall. The Site Activation Board laid out the 40000 events of the C networks on 418 square meters of metal wall space. A Boeing team, responsible for updating the network, worked at nearby desks. Offices and a graphics section occupied the rear section of the firing room.[10]

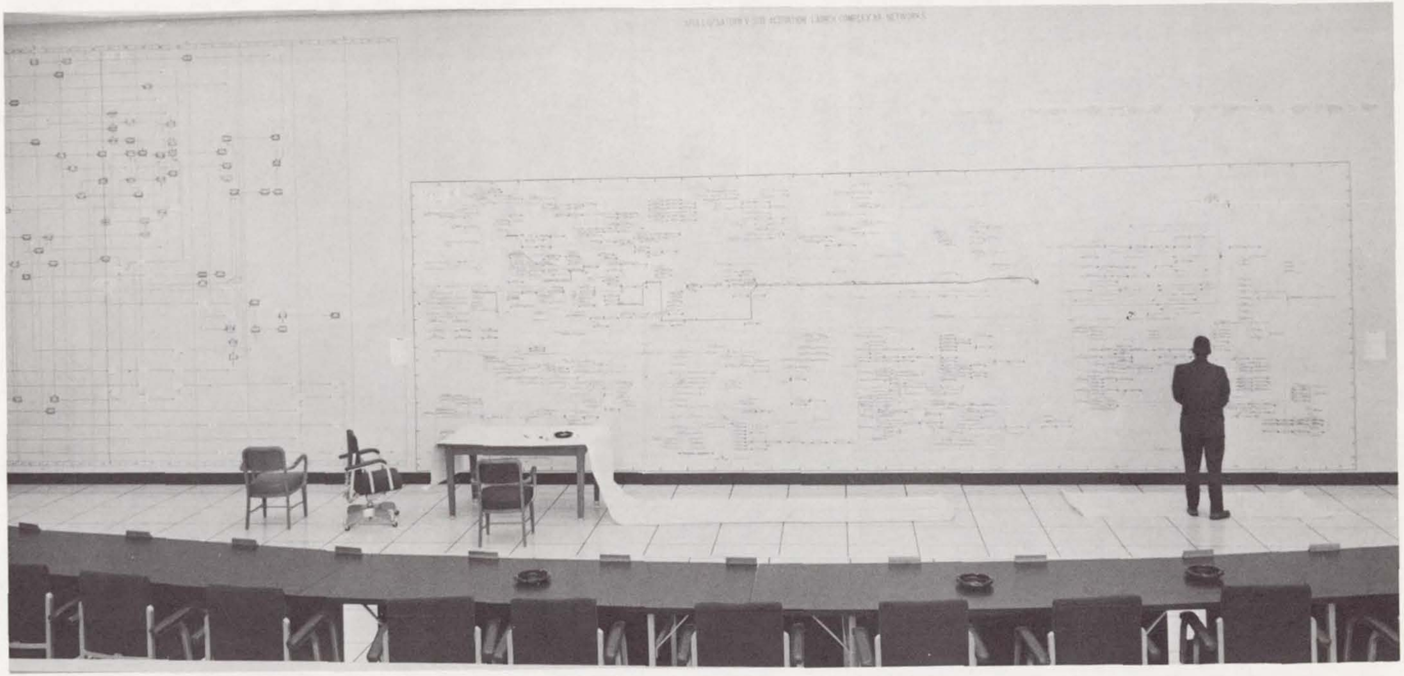


Fig. 105. Site activation schedules displayed in firing room 4 of the launch control center, January 1966.

Site Activation Working Groups

During its first months, the Site Activation Board functioned more as a working group than a management team, but in September Scheller activated several subordinate groups. Lt. Col. Richard C. Hall took command of the Site Activation Working Group, set up to resolve technical interface problems and devise methods of accomplishing new requirements within a given facility. At its first meeting in December, Hall introduced a typical problem. The Communications Service Branch had not received telephone requirements for firing room 1 from the operating organizations. Hall asked the group to submit all requirements at least 60 days prior to the "need date" (the date on which an item was required). The following month Hall's group assumed formal responsibility for daily site activation matters.[11]

James Fulton, Launch Vehicle Branch chief in Clearman's office, recruited Donald Simmons to handle LC-39's electrical cable problems. Simmons's experience on Atlas served him well as the first chief of the Cable Working Group. The group's mission in September 1965 involved preparation of a cable accounting system, the Site Activation Board's third essential management tool. This tracking system kept tally on more than 60000 cables including all connectors by part number, the length of cable, cable makeup, procurement action and date, the agency furnishing the cable, the need date as assessed from the PERT schedules, "from and to" locations, and the installation contractor. Communication and instrumentation from the launch control center to pad B alone required nearly 160 kilometers of cable. KSC let a $2 million contract for the job in October 1965; the work included the installation of 142 kilometers of coaxial, video, telephone, and instrumentation cables plus terminal equipment. The group managed network configuration through computer printouts and network diagrams, with a General Electric team in Huntsville preparing the cable interconnect drawings.[12]

A contractor and two working groups played important logistical roles in site activation. The Boeing Company, primary integration contractor on the Minuteman program, gathered, processed, and reported data for the Site Activation Board. While much of Boeing's effort involved the PERT schedules, its management systems staff at the Cape effected major improvements in the equipment records system. During the fall of 1965, few engineers relied on the system. When someone needed information about ground support equipment, he normally went to the designer. In early December the equipment records system lacked nearly 33% of its essential data; 79% of the support equipment did not correlate with a PERT activity. Boeing initiated a four-month search and classification program that reduced the respective figures to 5% and 7% and made the equipment records system an effective tool.[13]

The Equipment Tracking Group benefited from the resulting improvements. This group resolved differences between the estimated-on-dock and required-on-dock dates and tracked all items until installation and final testing. The group reflected Colonel Scheller's belief in management by exception, concentrating on items that failed to meet schedule dates or arrived in the wrong configuration. When this happened, team members scrambled to devise acceptable "work-around" measures.[14]

Interface Control Documentation

Interface control documentation, an essential activity during site activation, was another responsibility of KSC's Apollo Program Office. Apollo configuration control dated from February 1963, when the manned spaceflight centers had agreed to consolidate and store interface control documents. During the next several years, Apollo-Saturn subpanels placed hundreds of such documents in a Huntsville repository. Through the interface control documents, Apollo managers made sure that thousands of items, built in many different places, would fit and work together. The documents provided design requirements and criteria for hardware and software interfaces, describing the parameters and constraints under which the interfacing items functioned. The information in the documents varied and might include physical and functional design details and operational and procedural requirements. Where an interface involved two NASA centers, a level A document applied—for example, the interface between a command module (Houston responsibility) and the mobile service structure (KSC responsibility). Level B documents pertained to intra-center interfaces such as the S-IVB–Instrument Unit interface covered by Marshall's Saturn ICD, 13M06307 (October 1965). When changes affected performance, cost, or schedule accomplishment, the centers prepared interface revision notes.[15]

Although the Panel Review Board (established in August 1963) gave NASA Headquarters limited control over configuration decisions, General Phillips provided the centers with detailed directions in his May 1964 *Apollo Configuration Management Manual*. The manual, patterned after Air Force procedures, included a requirement for Configuration Control Boards at each center. KSC had difficulty fitting Phillips's management scheme onto a program already under way. In September 1965 however, Petrone announced plans to implement it. Maj. Andrew Reis's Configuration Management Office would "interpret the requirements of [the manual] and define the degree of flexibility necessary to integrate KSC operations consistent with the requirements of Configuration Management."[16] Petrone's directive also established a series of Configuration Control Boards, or change boards as they were usually called. Edward Mathews chaired the Saturn IB board; William Clearman, the Saturn V board; and Hugh McCoy, the spacecraft board.[17]

Apollo-Saturn subpanels continued to prepare interface control documents and notes. When inter-center panel representatives reached technical agreement on an interface requirement, the proposal would go to an appropriate change board. The board would circulate a "request for impact" through KSC to ensure that the proposed document had no adverse impact on any center function. Other details solicited by the change board included the cost of modifications and the "need dates" of operations and maintenance groups. The Configuration Management Office served as a secretariat for the change boards. When a proposal proved acceptable, the board would notify the other centers to implement the document.[18]

Since unapproved interface control documents left open the possibility of an unsatisfactory interface, program offices made strenuous efforts to coordinate their work. Nevertheless a backlog of "open" documents had developed by 1968 that gave NASA officials much concern. A Boeing investigation in May 1968 found two weaknesses in KSC's program: the documents contained extraneous material that made inter-center coordination difficult, and the complicated processing wasted time. KSC's program office overhauled its procedures during the next six months and closed out all control documents before the first manned launch of an Apollo-Saturn in October 1968.[19]

500-F—A Dress Rehearsal

The Site Activation Board focused its attention in the fall of 1965 on the 500-F test—a dress rehearsal for the new Saturn V rocket and launch complex 39. Plans for the 500-F test vehicle dated back to early 1962 when LOD engineers were still studying the use of barges to move the giant Saturn V to its launch pad. As the facilities checkout vehicle, 500-F would test the mating of the stages in the assembly building, the fit of the service platforms, the launcher-transporter operation, the propellant loading system, and the test connections to the mobile launcher and support equipment. Each dummy stage would duplicate the flight configuration, ordnance, and umbilical connections of its live counterpart. Although inert, the retrograde rockets, ullage rockets, and shaped charges would have the dimensions of the live ordnance. This allowed the launch team to practice ordnance installation. Facility checkout would culminate with a "wet test" to verify the storage and transfer of the propellants. The wet test would involve hundreds of components: pneumatic valves, liquid sensors, time delay relays, pressure switches, circuit breakers, pumps, motors, fans, vaporizers, vents, and the burn pond. The launch team scheduled the delivery of the 500-F stages at the Cape nine months before the first Saturn V flight. The Office of Manned Space Flight translated this into a tentative July 1965 test date.[20]

This was not to be. When George Mueller revised the Apollo schedule in November 1963, erection of the SA 500-F stages on the mobile launcher slipped back to 1 February 1966. Marshall would deliver an S-IVB-F stage (used in the Saturn IB checkout of LC-34) in May 1965, and the S-IC-F and S-II-F stages in January 1966. General Phillips announced the Apollo launch schedule in February 1965, as follows:

January 1966:	AS-201, first Saturn IB launch, from LC-34
February:	Start of 500-F test, checkout of LC-39
October:	AS-204, first manned Saturn IB, from LC-34
January 1967:	AS-501, first Saturn V launch, from LC-39

Although planners were dubious about meeting the AS-501 launch date, two more Saturn V launches were scheduled for 1967. From the start of the 500-F test, KSC would have nearly a year to prepare for the first Saturn V launch.[21]

There was little margin for error. In December 1964, Dr. Arthur Rudolph, Saturn V Program Manager in Huntsville, asked KSC to agree to a delay in delivery dates for the 500-F and AS-501 launch vehicles. After reviewing the schedules for equipment installation and checkout, the 500-F test, and AS-501, Petrone replied that there was no room for delay. KSC had already eliminated the detailed receiving inspection for the 500-F and 501 vehicles. Although Marshall's contract with Douglas omitted the digital data acquisition system test for 500-F propellant loading, KSC would not waive this check. The schedule did include several weeks of learning time, primarily in crawler operations with a space vehicle aboard the mobile launcher. Petrone, however, considered the 500-F schedule "optimistic since it does not allow time for resolution of major difficulties which may occur."[22]

The Crawler-Transporters Begin to Crawl

Events were to reveal a little slack in the LC-39 activation schedule, just enough to recover from a near disaster. The crawler was the prima donna of the Site Activation Board drama of 1965. This gargantuan tractor, designed to carry the 36-story Apollo-Saturn V space vehicle from the vehicle assembly building to the launch pad, caught the public eye; no other facility, excepting the assembly building, got like publicity. Perhaps on account of the public interest, the crawler engendered a series of labor and political disputes, as well as mechanical problems, that nearly disrupted the site activation schedule.

The Marion Power Shovel Company built the two crawlers in Ohio and then took them apart for shipment to the Cape. Under its contract, Marion intended to reassemble the crawlers on Merritt Island with an Ohio work crew, members of the AFL-CIO United Steelworkers. The Brevard (County) Florida Building and Construction Trades Council, citing the Davis-Bacon Act, insisted that on-site construction fell under its jurisdiction. The local unions won a Department of Labor decision in August 1964, but agreed to a compromise that let the Marion crew remain on the job. Although the labor dispute simmered throughout the winter, W. J. Usery and the Missile Site Labor Commission managed to avert a major shutdown. On the basis of the labor difficulties, Marion won a delay in the crawler testing date from November 1964 to late January 1965.[23]

The crawler moved under its own power for the first time on 23 January. NASA officials observed that "the initial crawler-transporter was not in a state of complete assembly ready for joint testing" and forwarded a list of deficiencies to Marion.[24] Additional runs in April tested the propulsion and steering systems. On the 28th Gunther Lehman of Marion drove the crawler about 900 meters at a speed of 1.1 kilometers per hour; this was a "press day" ride with Debus, Petrone, and other KSC and Marion Power executives aboard. The hydraulic jacking and leveling system was ready for testing on 22 June when the crawler picked up its first load, a mobile launcher. Although the test was labeled a success, the launch team noted high hydraulic pressures when the crawler trucks scuffed on the crawlerway during turns. The treads also chewed up large portions of the macadam surface.[25]

For Want of a Bearing

On 24 July the crawler moved a launch umbilical tower about 1.6 kilometers to test the crawler on two short stretches of road, one surfaced with washed gravel ("Alabama River rock") and the other with crushed granite. Preliminary data on steering forces, acceleration, vibration, and strain pointed to the gravel as the better surface. While the crawler was making its run, members of the launch team found pieces of bronze and steel on the crawlerway—the significance of which was not immediately recognized. The transporter was left out on the crawlerway over the weekend because of problems with the steering hydraulic system. On the 27th more metal fragments were discovered and a thorough search disclosed pieces of bearing races, rollers, and retainers from the crawler's traction-support roller assembly. After the transporter was returned to its parking site, a check of the roller assemblies revealed that 14 of the 176 tapered roller bearings were damaged. KSC engineers attributed the failure primarily to thrust loads encountered during steering; the anti-friction support bearings, about the size of a can of orange juice concentrate, were underdesigned for loads exerted during turns. For want of a bearing, the crawler was grounded indefinitely. And for want of a crawler the site activation schedule and the entire Apollo program would be seriously delayed.[26]

A reexamination of Marion's design calculation indicated some other significant facts. The designers had assumed an equal load distribution on all traction support rollers; perfect thrust distribution over the entire bearing, i.e., an axial thrust equivalent to the radial load; and a coefficient of sliding friction of 0.4 (meaning it would take four million pounds of force to move a ten-million-pound object). During the early crawler runs, KSC engineers discovered an unequal load distribution on the traction support rollers. At times as many as four of the eleven rollers on one truck were bearing no load. The thrust, or side load, proved greater than expected. Finally, the crawler tests revealed that the estimated coefficient of sliding friction was far below the actual resistance experienced on the crawlerway. At a crawlerway conference on 27 June 1963, NASA engineers had insisted on a minimum design coefficient of 0.6. In the first runs on the crawlerway's macadam surface, the coefficient reached nearly 1.0.[27]

Troubles with the crawler had not been unforeseen. Prior to the roller bearing crisis, M. E. Haworth, Jr., chief of the KSC Procurement Division, upbraided Marion for making difficulties about the tests:

> KSC has tolerated innumerable delays in the assembly, tests and checkout operations of CT-1. These delays are to the definite detriment of Apollo facilities readiness and Marion's position as to the testing operations, will, if carried out, likely cause even further delays which will have a definite and substantial dollar impact on other projects directly and indirectly connected to the crawler transporter concept. The failure of Marion to fulfill its delivery obligations is in itself costing the government substantial sums which were not contemplated.[28]

On 14 October 1965 Haworth wrote Marion, expressing grave concern over the inactivity at the erection site consequent on a new labor dispute (the unions stayed off the job for nearly six weeks). The roof fell in on both NASA and Marion when the bearing story reached the press and television. Walter Cronkite told his evening newscast audience that the crawler was sitting on wooden blocks under the hot Florida sun, with a top Washington official stating privately that it might never work. The press and Cronkite revived the controversy over the award of the contract to Marion. Politics, they hinted, was involved; and in any case the low-bid procedure might prove penny wise and pound foolish.[29]

NASA and Marion could answer that the design and construction of a land vehicle expected to carry 8000 metric tons was without precedent. Its very size, as the Corps of Engineers had pointed out, ruled out preconstruction tests of the coefficient of friction in its moving components. A more pertinent answer was to develop a new bearing, a hydraulically lubricated sleeve bearing made of Bearium B-10. KSC selected the bronze alloy after testing a half-dozen materials at Huntsville. The new design provided separate bearings for axial thrust and radial loads. KSC retained in the design the original supporting shafts that housed the bearings. Although the sleeve bearings would not reduce the amount of friction, they would eliminate the possibility of a sudden, catastrophic failure. Periodic inspection could determine the rate of wear and need for replacement. The disadvantages of the sleeve bearings—lubrication difficulties, the inability to predetermine useful life, and a need for more propulsive power because of increased friction—were acceptable. Fortunately, while the crawler design had underestimated friction, there was a considerable reserve of power. At KSC and Marion, engineers designed a new bearing system. A parallel effort modified the crawler's steering hydraulic system, almost doubling the operating pressure. At KSC, the burden of the bearing crisis fell principally on Donald Buchanan's shoulders. In Marion, Ohio, Phillip Koehring directed the redesign.[30]

Marion reinstalled the support roller shafts in early December. A prototype of the sleeve bearing arrived on the 14th. After cooling it in dry ice and alcohol, the assembly crew placed the bearing in its housing. The fit proved satisfactory, and the remaining bearings were installed by mid-January. On 28 January 1966, the crawler transported a mobile launcher approximately 1.6 kilometers to the assembly building. Bearing measurements indicated an acceptable heat factor. Fortunately, KSC had initiated the crawler contract early enough to allow for both labor disputes and redesign of the bearing.[31]

"Negative Slack" in "Critical Paths"

The nerve center for site activation lay in John Potate's scheduling office. Potate, a young engineer from Georgia Tech, had previously worked on site activation for LC-34 and LC-37 and brought that experience to his new

The bearing problem

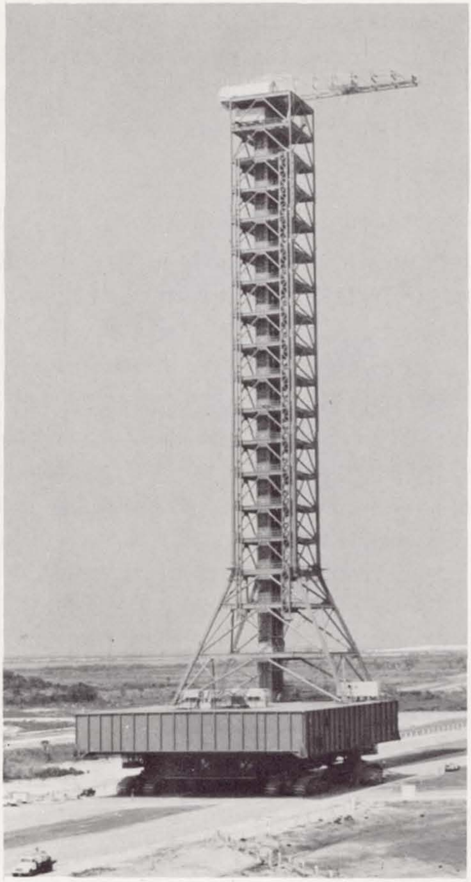


Figure 106

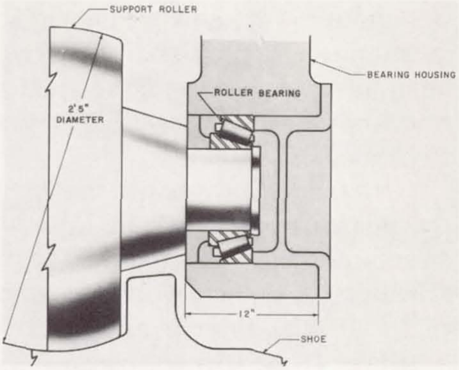

SUPPORT ROLLER
BEARING HOUSING
ROLLER BEARING
2'5" DIAMETER
12"
SHOE

Figure 107

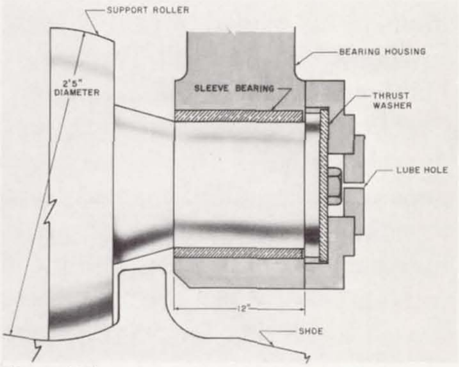

SUPPORT ROLLER
BEARING HOUSING
SLEEVE BEARING
THRUST WASHER
LUBE HOLE
2'5" DIAMETER
12"
SHOE

Figure 108

Fig. 106. Crawler carrying a mobile launcher 24 July 1965, the day the bearing trouble was discovered. Fig. 107. The original design, which failed in early tests of the crawler. Fig. 108. The sleeve bearing, which solved the problem.

and much bigger assignment. Supported by a Boeing team, Potate put the B PERT network to use. The scheduling office had little control over the A networks; the Apollo Program Offices at NASA Headquarters and KSC set the key milestone dates. The line organization level-C networks provided valuable data, but were too detailed for quick program evaluation. KSC officials, in large part, based their program decisions on the B networks—the level where Potate reconciled C-level capabilities with A-level deadlines. Potate relied heavily on PERT to identify problems. A computer, after processing all available network data, printed out "critical paths," which traced the controlling chain of events leading to a goal. For each critical path, the computer sheet also indicated the "negative slack." That curious term indicated how far a facility's development lagged behind its readiness date; or, put another way, how far behind schedule the Site Activation Board was in meeting a particular goal. The critical paths, consolidated into the PERT analysis reports, became the focal point of board meetings. Potate and the board examined the negative slack in each critical path and searched for ways to eliminate it.[32]

Some critical paths showed more than a year's negative slack when the board started work in August 1965. One involved the mobile service structure, under construction for only six months and nearly a year behind schedule. Since there would be no spacecraft tests during the initial checkout of LC-39, the absence of the service structure would not affect the 500-F schedule. If the service structure continued to lag, however, it would delay the AS-501 mission, the first Saturn V launch. At the board meeting on 5 August, the engineering directorate reported new efforts to speed up development of the service structure. A Marshall representative acknowledged that the electrical support equipment was a week behind schedule. At the moment LC-34 had priority, but the LC-39 electrical equipment dates would somehow be improved. The Corps of Engineers disclosed that the assembly building's first high bay would not be ready for use by its scheduled date, 1 October, without accelerated funding. Since the October date impinged directly on 500-F, the board agreed to spur construction. In one piece of good news, Bagnulo's engineering representative announced a "work-around" schedule for the mobile launcher's swing arms. Hayes International of Birmingham would proceed with the late delivery of the first set of service arms to Huntsville. When checkout there had been completed, the arms would be moved to Florida for 500-F. Where there was insufficient time for testing, Hayes would ship the corresponding arms from the second set to KSC. After the latter had satisfied 500-F needs, KSC would exchange them with Marshall for the first set, which would have been tested by then.[33]

Although KSC managed to occupy portions of the first high bay (floors 1-7) on 1 October, the status of other facilities continued unsatisfactory. The construction firm of Morrison-Knudson-Hardeman expected to complete structural steel work on the mobile service structure in late November. This would leave eight months for the installation of ground support equipment, spacecraft piping, and instrumentation and communication cables. At the board meeting on 28 October, John Potate reported 40 weeks of negative slack in the service structure. KSC could eliminate 75% of the lag by performing some necessary modifications during the installation phase. The remainder involved the installation and testing of spacecraft checkout equipment. Potate asked the North American representative to determine

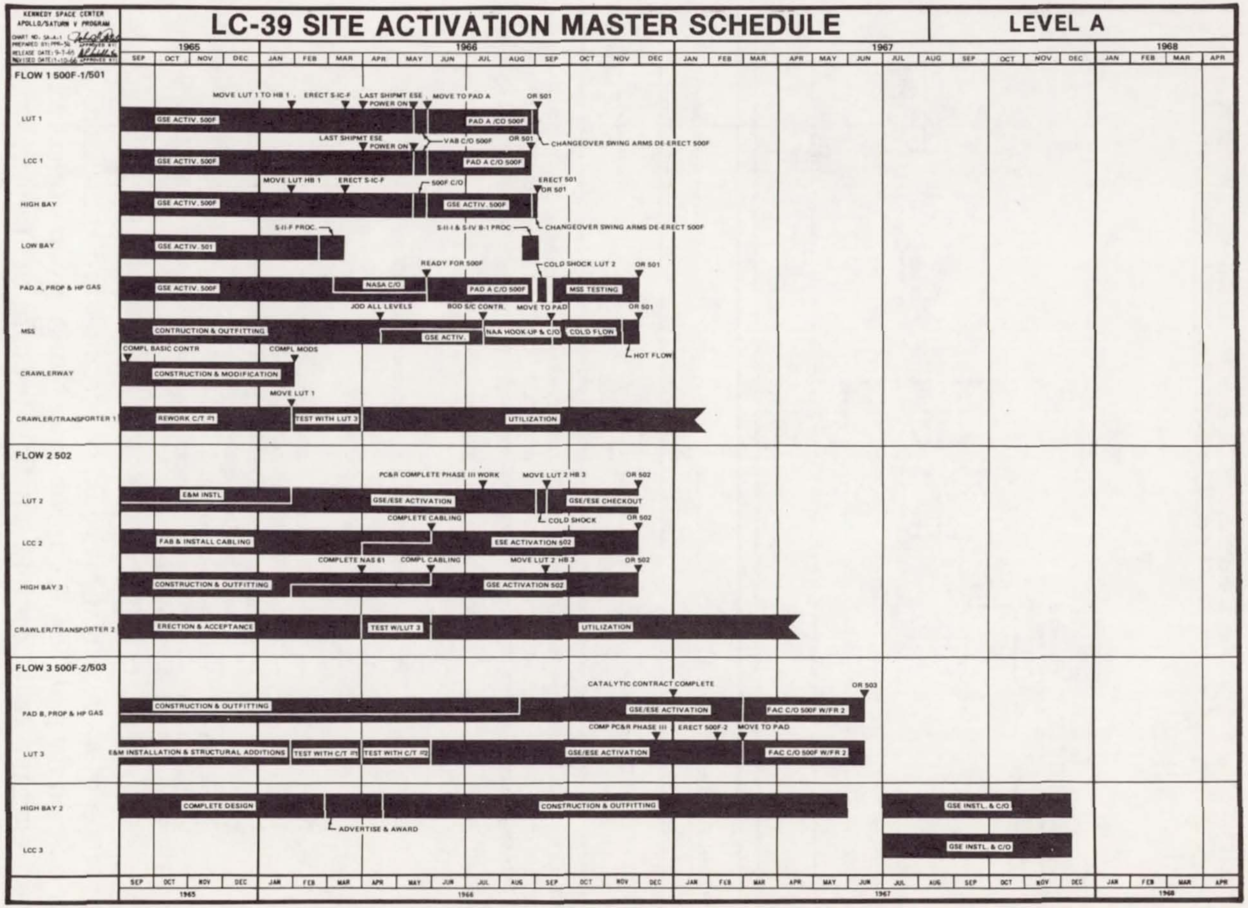


Fig. 109. LC-39 site activation master schedule, level A, 10 January 1966. The level B chart for approximately the same date is shown in fig. 105.

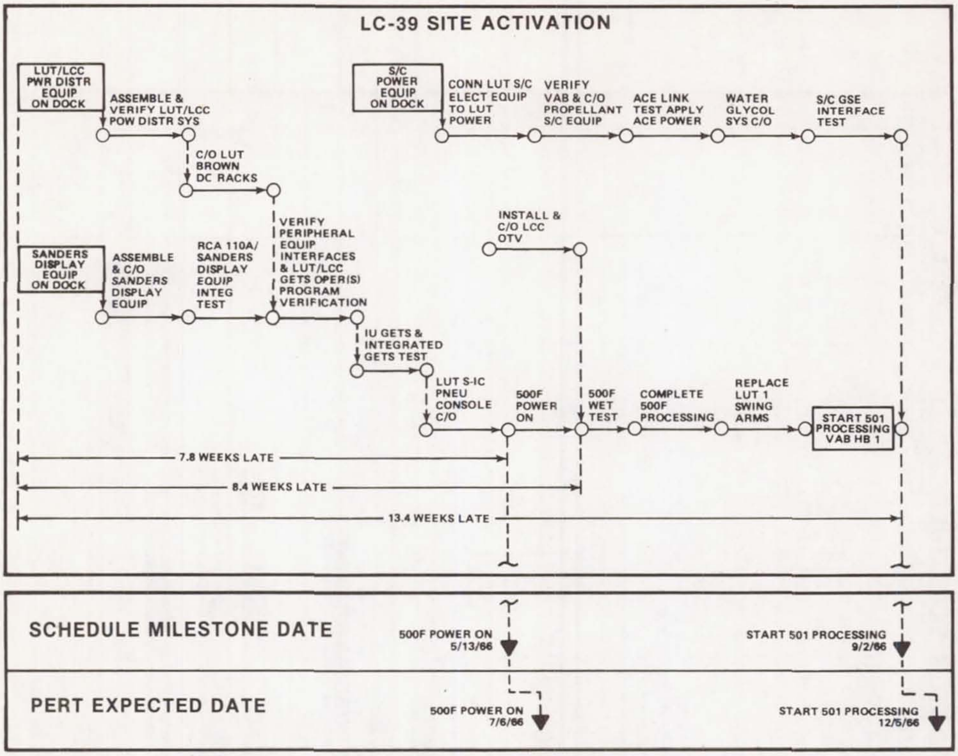

LC-39 SITE ACTIVATION
LUT/LCC PWR DISTR EQUIP ON DOCK
ASSEMBLE & VERIFY LUT/LCC POW DISTR SYS
C/O LUT BROWN DC RACKS
SANDERS DISPLAY EQUIP ON DOCK
ASSEMBLE & C/O SANDERS DISPLAY EQUIP
RCA 110A/ SANDERS DISPLAY EQUIP INTEG TEST
VERIFY PERIPHERAL EQUIP INTERFACES & LUT/LCC GETS OPER(S) PROGRAM VERIFICATION
IU GETS & INTEGRATED GETS TEST
LUT S-IC PNEU CONSOLE C/O
S/C POWER EQUIP ON DOCK
CONN LUT S/C ELECT EQUIP TO LUT POWER
VERIFY VAB & C/O PROPELLANT S/C EQUIP
ACE LINK TEST APPLY ACE POWER
WATER GLYCOL SYS C/O
S/C GSE INTERFACE TEST
INSTALL & C/O LCC OTV
500F POWER ON
500F WET TEST
COMPLETE 500F PROCESSING
REPLACE LUT 1 SWING ARMS
START 501 PROCESSING VAB HB 1
7.8 WEEKS LATE
8.4 WEEKS LATE
13.4 WEEKS LATE
SCHEDULE MILESTONE DATE
500F POWER ON 5/13/66
START 501 PROCESSING 9/2/66
PERT EXPECTED DATE
500F POWER ON 7/6/66
START 501 PROCESSING 12/5/66

Fig. 110. Critical path summary for site activation, 20 January 1966. The sequence of events in the upper part of the chart is distilled to answer the key question on the bottom line: When will LC-39 be ready to use? Table 6 summarizes the slippage in a number of events related to site activation as of the same date.

Legend:	ACE	— Apollo checkout equipment
	C/O	— Checkout
	DC	— Display console
	500F	— Facilities checkout vehicle, a dummy Saturn V
	GETS	— Ground equipment test set
	GSE	— Ground support equipment
	HB	— High bay
	IU	— Instrument unit, a major component of the Saturn
	LCC	— Launch control center
	LUT	— Launcher umbilical tower, part of the mobile launcher
	OTV	— Operational television
	RCA 110A	— The major computer used in checkout and launch
	Sanders display	— A firing room system that displayed data from the LCC computers
	S/C	— Spacecraft
	VAB	— Vertical (later, vehicle) assembly building

what portion of his requirements could be accomplished at the erection site rather than on the pad. Scheller appointed a NASA group to consider ways of shortening the cold flow and hot flow tests. In the former, engineers validated the spacecraft hypergolic systems with nontoxic freon, testing pumps, umbilical lines, and pressure valves; the latter test employed the toxic hypergolics used in flight.[34]

Huntsville's electronic support equipment continued to lag behind schedule, and in early November Marshall announced that it would miss the 7 February 1966 deadline for final deliveries by three months. Petrone protested to General Phillips:

> This results in a completely erroneous representation of activation constraints and precludes accurate status assessment and realistic planning. In order to use the KSC LC-39 PERT system effectively, and obtain credibility in the eyes of the users, I must reflect true status of MSFC [electronic support equipment] into the networks.[35]

He asked to revise the PERT charts in line with MSFC's May date. Although 500-F erection did not require the electrical support equipment, subsequent tests would use it. Petrone sought a new erection date of 15 April 1966.

Phillips's response set a deadline of 15 April for the delivery of the electrical support equipment and the erection of the test vehicle. On 7 December Petrone explained to Phillips how the new stacking date would affect operations. Of the nine swing arms, only seven would be installed by 15 April. While Marshall would have qualified only three of the seven, KSC would use substitutes from the second set. The launch team would install the service module and command module arms after 500-F erection and before its transfer to pad A. Petrone noted that the mid-April date allowed sufficient time to accomplish modifications to the assembly building and resolve mobile launcher-vehicle assembly building interface problems. The new date also placed some constraints on KSC. Assuming arrival of the AS-501 vehicle stages in early September 1966, the 500-F tests would require six-day, two-shift operations to prevent overlap with launch preparations for the first Saturn V. Even with the accelerated schedule, KSC faced the unpleasant task of installing qualified swing arms concurrently with AS-501 erection. Phillips accepted the mid-April schedule with the understanding that KSC would try to advance the date.[36]

While Petrone's office shuffled dates, rumors of another problem disturbed KSC leaders. Workers on pad A believed the foundation was sinking. The charge was serious; excessive settling might damage pipes that serviced the pad from nearby facilities. At three successive meetings Colonel Scheller pressed Steven Harris, the Engineering Division's site activation chief, for a detailed status report. In mid-November 1965, Colonel Bagnulo responded with reports to Debus and Petrone. There was minor, nonuniform settlement at the pad, but this lay within tolerance. After the Gahagan Dredging Company had removed some 24 meters of surcharge from the pad area in mid-1963, the soil had risen about 10 centimeters. This rebound, which represented the soil's elastic action, was expected to be the limit of any resettlement after pad construction. Measurements in July 1964, after pouring the 3.4 meters of concrete mat, indicated a maximum settlement of 9 centimeters. Settlement at the sides of the pad varied as much as a half centimeter. As recent measurements by the Corps of Engineers showed little change, the Engineering Division concluded that the launch pad was attaining a stable condition.[37]

Petrone's office advanced the activation schedule early in the new year as Marshall accelerated the flow of electrical support equipment to LC-39. At the 6 January meeting of the Site Activation Board, Scheller asked all organizations to consider the feasibility of moving the mobile launcher into high bay 1 on 28 January and beginning 500-F erection on 15 March. The discussion pointed up some confusion on the date for mating the crawler and mobile service structure. While the service structure contract indicated mid-July, the Launch Vehicle Operations Division preferred to delay it until completion of the 500-F tests on 1 September. Scheller indicated that the board would resolve the matter after consulting with Launch Vehicle Operations and Spacecraft Operations.[38]

The crawler brought mobile launcher 1 into the assembly building on 28 January, meeting the first major milestone of flow 1 (table 6). In the four months since the occupation of high bay 1, the stage contractors had outfitted their respective service platforms and the adjacent rooms.[39]

The Apollo team had no time to celebrate its accomplishment; PERT analysis showed considerable negative slack toward the next major milestones. Potential delays existed in the delivery and installation of service arms and electronic equipment from Huntsville, the installation and checkout of the operational TV system in the launch control center, and the delivery of spacecraft checkout equipment for the mobile launcher and mobile service structure. At the Site Activation Board meeting on 3 February, Potate noted

TABLE 6. SLIPPAGES IN LC-39 SITE ACTIVATION, 20 JANUARY 1966

Event	Flow 1 milestones (Apollo Program Office)	PERT dates (PERT analysis report)
Move LUT 1 to VAB	28 Jan. 1966	28 Jan. 1966
Start 500-F erection	15 March	8 April
500-F power turned on	13 May	6 July
500-F roll out from VAB to pad A	26 May	20 July
Pad A wet test	24 June	23 Aug.
501 operationally ready	2 Sept.	5 Dec.
501 at pad A	1 Dec.	6 March 1967

that PERT dates for erecting the 500-F were three weeks behind the scheduled milestone; the PERT dates for power-on and the pad A wet test lagged eight weeks. The 500-F delays in turn set back the ready dates for the first Saturn V launch. Although North American Aviation expected to be at least 13 weeks late in delivering the first S-II stage, General Phillips's office continued to list the AS-501 mission in January 1967. If the site activation team did not want the blame for holding up that launch, the PERT dates would have to be improved.[40]

Potate's review did not include KSC's newest emergency. When a subcontractor declared bankruptcy in December, American Machine and Foundry Company found itself without cables for its tail service masts. The delivery date for the masts was only four months away and the company still faced difficulties with hood fabrication, tube bending and flaring, and cleaning facilities for the mast lines. Furthermore, contract losses were rumored to exceed $500 000. At a meeting on 1 February 1966, American Machine and Foundry refused to accept new delivery dates since it had outstanding time and cost claims against 24 NASA change orders. KSC responded quickly, removing the cleaning requirement from the contract and dispatching technicians to the York, Pennsylvania, plant. In mid-February Bendix accepted responsibility for completing the cables. A NASA report from the York plant, however, painted a bleak picture. Contract losses on the tail service masts were disheartening. A recent Navy bomb contract offered large profits and the company, understandably, was concentrating on this project. According to the NASA observers, the company was also hiding behind the cable problem "assuming that a subcontractor would require weeks to produce them so they did not proceed with the production, cleaning, and assembly of tubing and components."[41]

KSC's concern apparently impressed American Machine and Foundry management, because the company voluntarily changed to two 12-hour shifts and a seven-day work week. In return NASA reconsidered American Machine's claim of additional costs. Despite the settlement, it seemed unlikely that the York plant could deliver the masts in time for 500-F's power-on date in May. KSC improved the likelihood through several work-around agreements. The center installed certain equipment at Merritt Island rather than at Huntsville, postponed line cleaning until after the power-on exercise on 13 May, and deleted the installation of vehicle electrical cables from the American Machine and Foundry contract. Gruene's group accomplished the latter task at KSC after the tail service masts had been mated to the mobile launcher. The shortcuts allowed the launch team to install the three masts by mid-April.[42]

Six service arms for the Saturn arrived by mid-March. In the transfer aisle of the assembly building, Pacific Crane and Rigging crews mounted two hinges to each swing arm. The hinges, 1.2 meters high and 2.1 meters wide, required careful alignment so that the arms would hang and retract properly on the mobile launcher. When this task had been completed, the 250-ton crane lifted each arm into high bay 1 where an eight-man rigging team secured the appendage to the launcher. The operation was expected to take 16 hours, but late deliveries forced the riggers to speed up their work. On 12 March, three days before the first stage was erected, they hung arms 1, 2, and 5. Mounting the sixth arm, 61 meters above the mobile launcher base, was a particularly impressive job, with riggers leaning from the top of the hinge to secure bolts in the tower. After the arms were hung, Pacific Crane ironworkers (craft unionists) routed the umbilical lines from the tower consoles to the swing-arm interface plate. Pipefitters and electricians (industrial unionists), employed by the stage contractors, then took over, routing the umbilical lines along the service arm to the launch vehicle.[43]

The rigging teams, supervised by KSC's Richard Hahn, faced another difficult task when the last swing arm for the Saturn arrived from Birmingham on 15 April. Four days later KSC mounted the arm, carefully working it into the narrow space between the tower, the 500-F vehicle, and the two

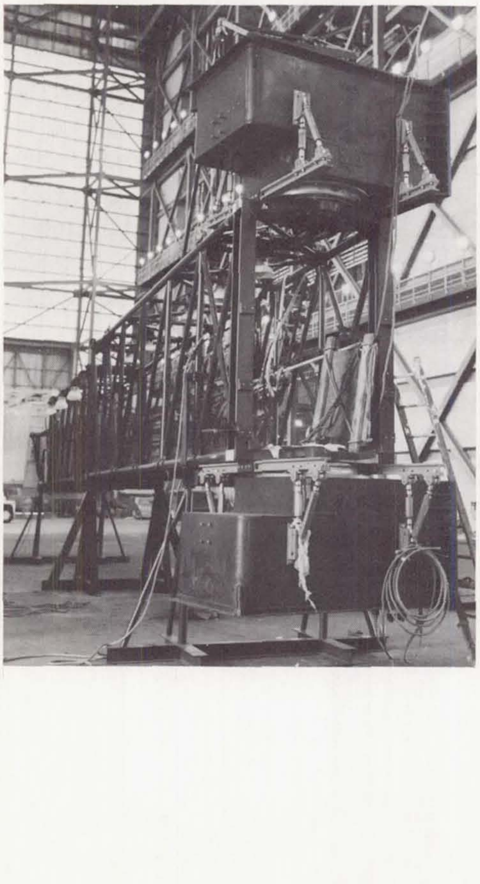


Fig. 111. Service arm 9 (the top one) on the floor of the assembly building, being prepared for mounting, May 1966. The hinge end is in the foreground. Service arms 1 through 7 supported the Saturn launch vehicle; arm 8 serviced the spacecraft while arm 9 provided access to the command module.

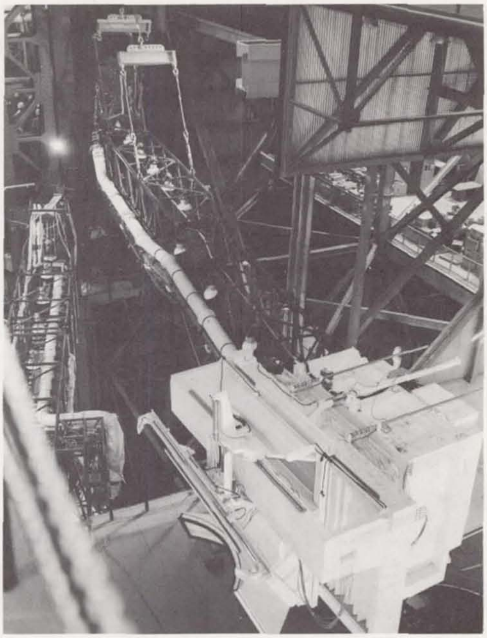


Fig. 112. Service arm 9 being mounted on the mobile launcher (rear, left). The white end of the arm would be swung into position against the Apollo command module. Below and left, arm 8 has already been installed.

adjacent arms. The late delivery threatened to delay the start of the power-on exercise, a little more than three weeks away. Potate solved the problem by rescheduling Boeing and North American activities in conjunction with the swing arm work of Pacific Crane and Rigging. In a rare spirit of cooperation, industrial union and craft union members labored alongside nonunion workers and civil servants to eliminate two weeks of negative slack. The last swing arm was ready on 8 May.[44]

500-F Up and Out

KSC passed its second major hurdle in March, erecting the 500-F launch vehicle in high bay 1. Crane operators began practice runs in February, using a 9.5-meter spherical water container. Stanley Smith, Bendix senior engineer for the crane and hoist group, simulated the different weights of the Saturn stages by varying the amount of water. On 15 March the 250-ton crane lifted the 500-F first stage from the transfer aisle to a vertical attitude and up 59 meters. After moving the S-IC-F stage through the opening in the bay trusswork, the crane operators lowered it gently to the platform of the mobile launcher. The second stage, S-II-F, followed the same route on the 25th, when it was mated with the first stage. The third stage and instrumentation unit joined the stack before the end of the month. Concurrent exercises out on pad A tested the interfaces between mobile launcher 3 and the pad. The final test pumped 1 135 000 liters of water through the deluge system on the launcher.[45]

The site activation schedule allowed three weeks in April for GETS (Ground Equipment Test Set) tests. The exercises, a long standing Marshall policy, verified Saturn V ground support equipment before its initial hookup with the launch vehicle, in this case the 500-F test vehicle. The checkout also acquainted stage-contractor crews with the equipment. Problems with the Brown Discrete Control System and the Sanders Saturn V Operational Display System threatened to delay the start of the GETS tests on 8 April. The Brown equipment, located in the launch control center, controlled the flow of signals into and out of the RCA 110 computer in the launch control center. The Sanders system in the firing room ran a series of consoles that displayed data from the control center computers for operational use. KSC technicians had the display systems working by 1 April.

The first week of GETS tests featured power and network checks of all electrical support equipment. The following week's tests of ground equipment included measuring and radio frequency, pneumatic systems, propellants, and the emergency detection system. The third week KSC conducted tests of the digital data acquisition system, camera control, and leak detection and purge panels. Although the contractors ran two-shift operations, shortcomings, particularly with the RCA 110 computer, forced a fourth week of individual stage tests. Integrated GETS tests followed during the week of 2 May.[46]

In mid-April the Site Activation Board added another to its list of major problems: the installation of electrical and pneumatic lines on mobile launcher 1. Late deliveries and last-minute modifications from Huntsville and Houston threw the Pacific Crane and Rigging crews behind schedule. Despite 14-hour shifts, seven days a week, the crews made little headway. A "tiger team," composed of members from KSC's Engineering Division, the stage contractors, and Pacific Crane and Rigging, supervised the rush work. As the power-on date of 13 May approached, pipefitters abandoned their practice of turning over complete pneumatic systems to operations personnel. They began working line-by-line to meet specific 500-F milestones. As late as 3 August, 39 electrical cables and 232 pneumatic lines remained to be installed. Temporary fittings and work-arounds, however, prevented any major delay in test dates.[47]

500-F rolled out from the assembly building on 25 May 1966, five years to the day after President Kennedy's challenge. Despite the attendance of many Apollo program dignitaries, the Saturn vehicle stole the show. Like the Trojan horse of old, the first glimpse of the emerging Saturn vehicle was awesome. The crawler experienced little difficulty carrying its 5700-metric-ton load to pad A. During portions of the trip, the transporter operated at full speed—1.6 kilometers per hour. The Saturn vehicle reached the top of the pad at dusk and was secured two hours later. Understandably, the success was a joyful occasion for KSC and the entire Apollo team. The operation proved the soundness of the mobile concept.[48]

Less than two weeks later, that concept received an unscheduled test under emergency conditions. In early June hurricane Alma skirted Florida's east coast. Debus put the mobile concept through its paces. At 1:00 p.m. on 8 June, he ordered 500-F back to the assembly building. Within three hours, the launch team had disconnected the mobile launcher from its moorings. Wind gusts over 80 kilometers per hour spurred the efforts. The crawler began the return trip at 5:33, taking one hour to descend the 392-meter sloping ramp. Sheets of rain and 96-kilometer-per-hour gusts accompanied the crawler team on the straightaway as they urged their ponderous vehicle to its top speed. The crew reached the assembly building at 11:43 p.m. and had the mobile launcher secure on its mounts one hour later.[49]

Lack of Oxygen Slows Apollo

For the first time KSC missed a major milestone in June when the Site Activation Board postponed the start of the wet test for 500-F. A series of events including hurricane Alma had slowed the Wyle Company's cleaning of LOX lines. When Quality Division inspected Wyle's cleaning of the cross-country LOX lines, a powdery residue was found in the pipes. The cleaning compound, when mixed with the local water supply, had formed a precipitate. KSC prepared new specifications for the job, directing Wyle to flush the residue from the lines with an acid solution. LOX lines on the mobile launcher, contaminated during welding operations, also required recleaning. At a board meeting on 23 June, Scheller asked Roger Enlow to expedite contractual arrangements with Spellman Engineering, the company responsible for the LOX lines on the mobile launcher. Despite Enlow's efforts, the cleaning lagged further behind schedule. On 1 July, Gruene and Scheller agreed that the wet tests could not start for another four weeks.[50]

KSC's program office may have underestimated the problem of keeping the cryogenic lines clean. In laying miles of pipe, workmen inevitably left debris behind. On one inspection half of a grinding wheel, broken pliers, and

AS-500F, the facilities checkout dummy vehicle, 25 May 1966

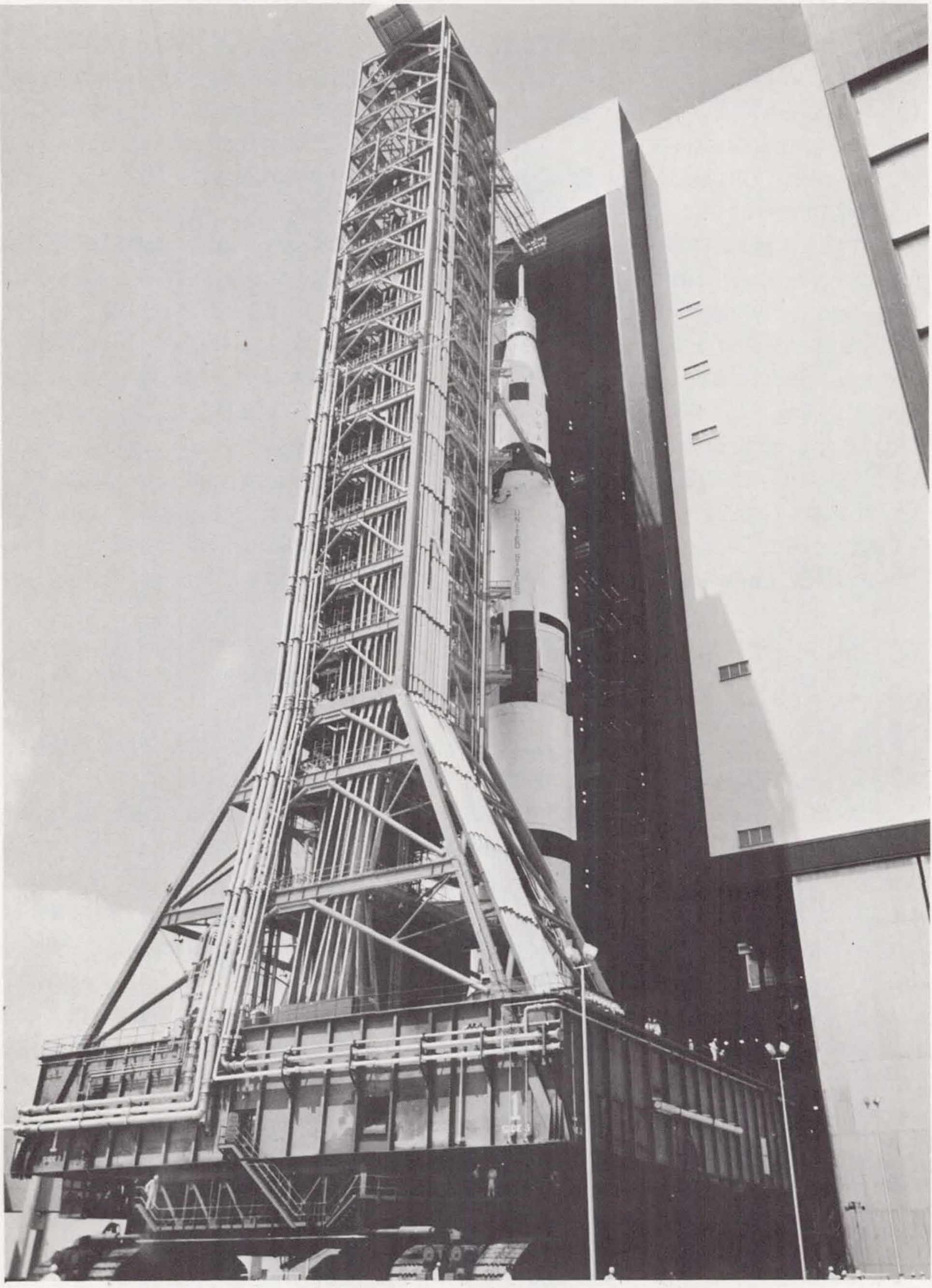


Fig. 113. AS-500F emerging from the assembly building, as seen from the ground.

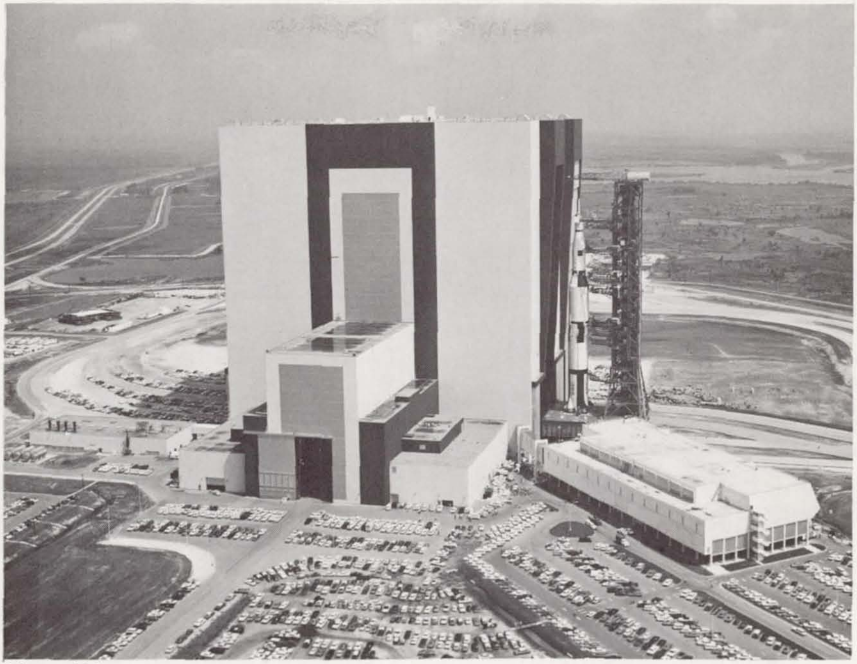


Figure 114

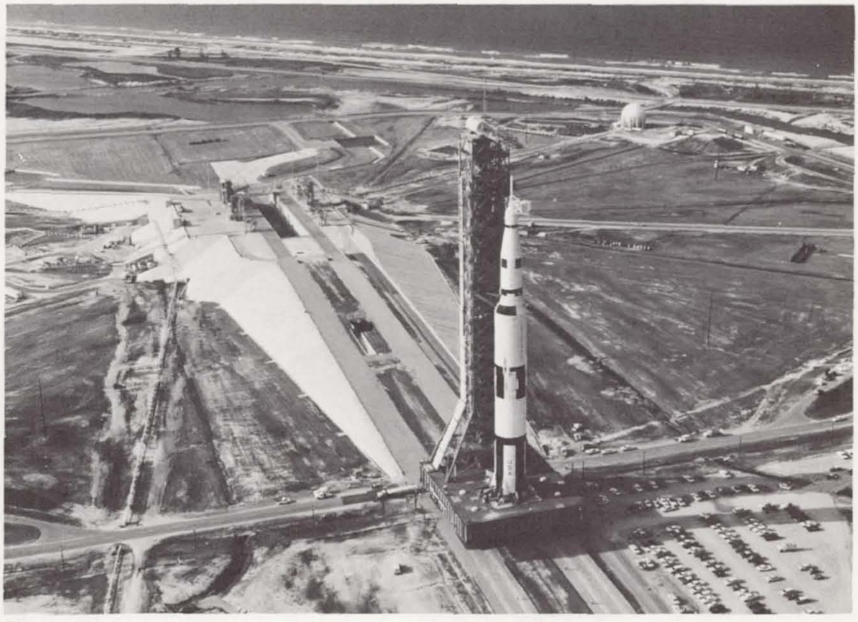


Figure 115

Fig. 114. As seen from the air. Fig. 115. Starting up the incline to the pad.

a glove were found in a LOX line. The use of invar for the inner pipe of the vacuum-jacketed lines further complicated matters. Invar, a steel alloy containing 36% nickel, had a very low coefficient of expansion, making it ideal for a cryogenic line; but it also rusted easily. During fabrication and installation, NASA inspectors had to watch for minute particles of dirt or moisture that might cause corrosion. When contamination was suspected, inspectors employed bore-sighting equipment to evaluate the potential corrosion. A decision did not come easily; inspectors spent a couple of weeks trying to determine if the LOX lines on the mobile launcher were rusting or were simply discolored.[51]

At the 7 July meeting of the Site Activation Board, Scheller announced the Apollo Program Office's plan to delay the first Saturn V mission one month. Problems with the S-II test stage at the Mississippi Test Facility had prompted General Phillips's decision. Although the directive appeared to lessen the urgency of the activation schedule, Scheller insisted that the board strive to meet the old 501 erection date. Marshall was constructing a dummy spacer as a temporary substitute for the S-II stage, and KSC would probably erect the AS-501 with the spacer to check the instrument unit.[52]

During the delay caused in cleaning the LOX lines, the board scheduled the crawler's first lift of the mobile service structure for 20 July. Mobile

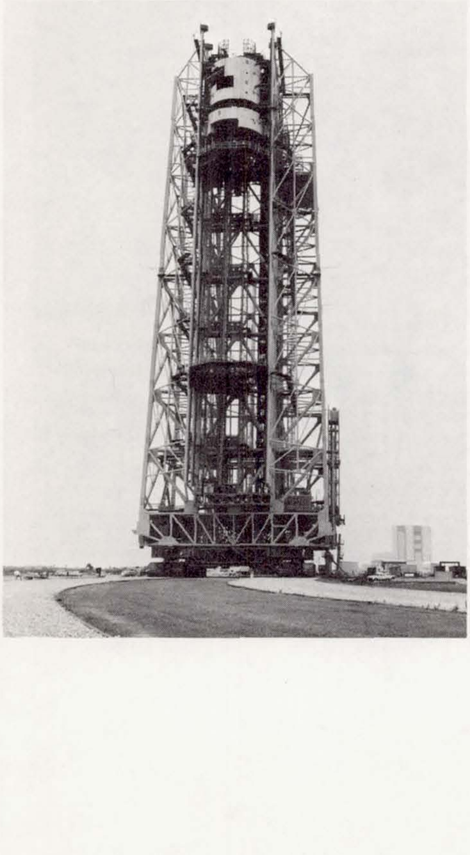


Fig. 116. The crawler carrying the service structure to the pad, 21 October 1966. The assembly building is in the background, right.

launcher 1, with 500-F aboard, was back at pad A where the crawler had transported it after hurricane Alma's departure. The Bendix crawler crew spent two days in preliminary runs on the crawlerway and pad ramp and then carried the mobile service structure to the top of pad A for compatibility tests. Interest centered on the fit of the structure's five clamshells around the Saturn. Launch officials also tested the service structure's water deluge system.[53]

The RP-1 fuel system was tested in mid-July by pumping 760 000 liters of kerosene from storage tanks to 500-F. As LOX line cleaning problems persisted, the Site Activation Board reduced the number of wet tests from twelve to eight and finally to five. Spellman Corporation completed its work on the mobile launcher LOX lines in early August, and KSC rescheduled the S-IC-F LOX loading for the 15th, when failure of both LOX replenishment pumps forced a cancellation. When the launch team tried again on the 19th, it ran into much bigger trouble.[54]

Technicians in the launch control center began pressurizing the LOX storage vessel at 1:15 p.m. Simultaneously they opened the pneumatically operated pump suction valve, located in front of the 90° elbow on the 46-centimeter suction line. This allowed a flow of LOX to cool down the 37 854-liter-per-minute pumps. What happened during the next two seconds kept several investigation boards busy for days. The gas caught in the 4.6 meters of piping between the storage vessel trap and the valve flowed out as

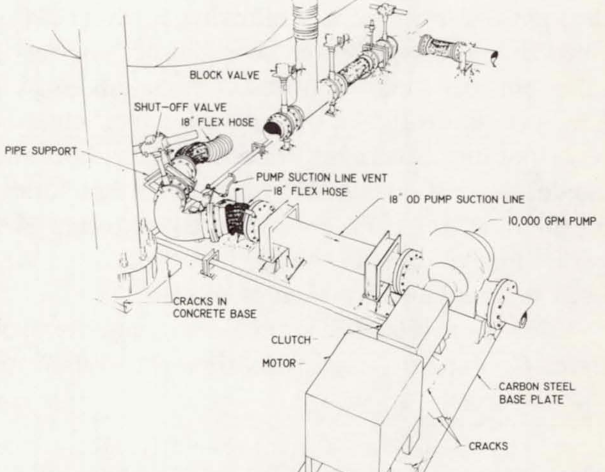

BLOCK VALVE
SHUT-OFF VALVE
18" FLEX HOSE
PIPE SUPPORT
PUMP SUCTION LINE VENT
18" FLEX HOSE
18" OD PUMP SUCTION LINE
10,000 GPM PUMP
CRACKS IN CONCRETE BASE
CLUTCH
MOTOR
CARBON STEEL BASE PLATE
CRACKS

Fig. 117. Diagram of the big LOX spill, 19 August 1966. A 46-cm (18-in) flexible hose beneath the storage sphere ruptured between the block valve and the shut-off valve.

the valve began to open (the valve was timed to open fully in ten seconds and had an eccentric pivot to aid in closing against upstream pressure). The rapid evacuation of the gas increased the velocity of the LOX flowing down from the sphere. The butterfly valve was only about 20% open when the LOX hit it with a water-hammer effect. As the liquid column backed up in the restricted passage, the pressure closed the valve disc back on its eccentric pivot. The corrugated bellows in front of the valve ruptured. A Boeing console operator in the control center secured the LOX system shortly after the accident, but he could only shut off the valves downstream from the rupture. A Boeing team at the storage vessel attempted to shut the block valve above the break manually, but the men were soon driven back by freezing LOX vapors billowing over the area. Within an hour, more than 2 700 000 liters of LOX poured out.*

The sudden decompression caused the tank's inner sphere to buckle. The outer shell retained its shape, but the collapse of a corrugated bellows, connected to the tank's relief valve, indicated that a part of the inner sphere had caved inward. When technicians removed the perlite insulation between the two tanks, they found a depression in one quadrant of the inner tank. Some of the 9.5-millimeter stainless steel plates were bent 90° from their normal curvature. While KSC officials were not sure how long repairs would take, NASA headquarters announced that the accident would delay the AS-501 launch by 45 days.[55]

KSC faced two problems: repair of the LOX storage vessel and redesign of the system to prevent a recurrence. After draining the remaining 303 000 liters of LOX, the launch team used fans to circulate warm air through the inner tank. Following conferences with the manufacturer, KSC filled the tank with water. The stainless steel popped back into place at 0.4 kilograms per square centimeter (6 psi) and held its shape at higher pressures. KSC officials watched the operation over closed-circuit TV. While the water was draining, two engineers boarded a rubber raft to take a closer look from inside. Several days later, when engineers conducted a dye penetration test on the inner tank, no cracks were discovered. Technicians then replaced the perlite insulation between the inner and outer tanks. All damaged equipment had been replaced by 14 September.

Meanwhile, KSC and Boeing engineers, with advice from consultant Peter C. Vander Arend, modified the system to fill the LOX line from the

---

*The closed-circuit TV proved its worth during this accident. When Debus heard about the rupture, he rushed to the pad area, only to find the view obscured by the LOX vapor. When he returned to the headquarters building, the conference room screen had good pictures. A more detailed account of the accident and subsequent repairs appears in W. I. Moore and R. J. Arnold, "Failure of Apollo Saturn V Liquid Oxygen Loading System," *Advances in Cryogenic Engineering*, vol. 13.

storage vessel to the pneumatically operated valve gradually, prior to chilling the pump. KSC replaced the flex hose where the break had occurred with hard pipe and substituted a pneumatic valve for the manual block valve.[56] The new circulation and precooling system was installed by mid-September, and the second loading of LOX into S-IC-F went off without incident on 20 September. The remaining tests followed in rapid succession. With all of the AS-501 stages at the Cape (the S-II spacer in place of the live second stage), KSC officials were anxious to get on with the real show. 500-F came down in mid-October, ending seven months of valuable service.[57]

Management by Embarrassment

Although the Site Activation Board continued operations for another 20 months, it had made its major contribution to the Apollo program. The KSC team had successfully met its most difficult schedule, the activation of facilities for 500-F. Although some hectic days lay ahead, they involved the spacecraft rather than ground facilities. In July 1966, Rocco Petrone moved over from program management to launch operations. With him went much of the responsibility for site activation. From the beginning, program office representatives and launch operations personnel had argued over who should direct site activation. By the end of 500-F, the responsibility was shifting to Launch Operations and the Engineering Division.

Scheller, backed by Petrone, had won the opening rounds. At the time, the knowledge that the Site Activation Board had done its job was limited to KSC. Many outside observers did not believe that an American would be first on the moon. The Soviet Union had won the race to launch a multimanned spacecraft, sending Voskhod 1 aloft with three cosmonauts on 12 October 1964. The Russians conducted a second successful flight four days before the launch of America's first manned Gemini. Gus Grissom and John Young's three-orbit flight on 23 March 1965 went well, but earlier that month an Atlas-Centaur had exploded on the pad, causing over $2 million in damages. *Aviation Week and Space Technology* editor Robert Hotz commented after the successful Voskhod 2 flight: "Each Soviet manned space flight makes it clearer that the Russians are widening their lead over the U.S. in this vital area. It also makes it clear that the many billions the American people have poured willingly into our national space program for the purpose of wresting this leadership from the Soviets are not going to achieve that goal under present management."[58]

The activities described in this chapter helped render that judgment premature. One aspect of KSC management remains to be noted: the Site

Activation Board developed a keen sense of competition. A "hit parade board," prominently installed in the display room of the Activation Control Center, listed the ten most critical problems and the organization responsible for each activity. Unlike television's Lucky Strike Hit Parade Board of older days, no one wanted this recognition. Civil servants, as well as contractors, were frequently embarrassed at the biweekly meetings. Hard feelings were inevitable, but the program's goal helped pull organizations together. North American, a company that took as much criticism as anyone, reflected the spirit of fellowship in a going-away present to Rocco Petrone several years later. A common practice at board meetings (and also at later Apollo Launch Operations Committee meetings) had been to ask if anyone had constraints—situations that would hold up a schedule. North American officials presented Petrone a model of a Saturn V with the second stage missing. The sign on the space vehicle read, "Rocco, S-II is ready for roll except for one constraint." The constraint: no S-II.[59]

16

AUTOMATING LAUNCH OPERATIONS

A participant in the U.S. space program likened the Apollo-Saturn to the ancient Tower of Babel. The moon rocket might have duplicated the chaos that marked that earlier dream. In a manual checkout of the Apollo-Saturn's many systems, hundreds of technicians would have swarmed on and around the space vehicle. Their reports flowing into a central control room would have indeed been a babel. Automated checkout equipment avoided this confusion. The Saturn ground computer checkout system tested 2700 Saturn functions and its computers monitored 150 000 signals per minute. Acceptance checkout equipment accomplished a similar task for the Apollo spacecraft. Wernher von Braun, after the first successful flight of an Apollo-Saturn V, credited success "to our automatic checkout procedure."[1] The story of Apollo is a study in automation.

Origins of Saturn Automated Checkout

Although automation has no precise meaning that is generally accepted in technical circles, there was considerable automation—however defined—in the missile programs of the 1950s. Engineers employed pressure gauges, temperature gauges, frequency detectors, and other devices to passively sequence a series of events. Using relay logic, if event A occurred, then event B took place, and so on. Interlocking circuitry and relay logic allowed ground support equipment to control portions of a countdown (for the SA-1 countdown, see pp. 60–62). In this chapter, the term *automation* will imply the use of digital computers and associated equipment.

In checking out the first Saturns, hundreds of control room switches sent signals over electrical lines to test points on the rocket. The launch vehicle responses, returning over the same wires or radio telemetry links, registered on strip charts and meters. The launch team then evaluated the test data. Automation began to change this procedure when, in 1960, Marshall engineers decided to design a test capability for Saturn's digital guidance computer (its maiden flight would come on SA-5). The first, tentative steps were to parallel, not replace, manual checkout. Quality Division representatives sought a flexible program that could be expanded to include other tests as automation proved itself.[2]

In early September Debus asked to have the Launch Operations Directorate participate in automated checkout discussions. Before the end of the year two computer systems were under study at Marshall. The Reliability Assurance Laboratory was testing a Packard Bell 250 for factory acceptance checkout while the Guidance and Control Division and the Quality Division investigated the use of an RCA 110 for launch tests. The RCA 110 was among the first priority-interrupt computers on the market. This feature provided for the division of the computer program into several sections, each one having an assigned priority level. The priority interrupt allowed an engineer to switch immediately from one test to another during operations. On the RCA 110 there were eight available levels and the computer could switch to a higher priority test in 100 microseconds. As the early use of the 110 indicated trouble-free operations, it became the workhorse of the Saturn checkout at the Cape.[3]

Marshall's first automation plan, published in September 1961, asked the question: "Why automation?" The advantages were speed and accuracy. The author, Ludie Richard, noted that man is a poor test conductor. He cannot run thousands of tests with uniform precision, and he frequently fails to observe the results. Machines ensure standardized testing and an accurate recording of the responses. Further, an automated operation required only a fraction of the time used in a manual procedure. The time savings would permit more testing, an important factor to operations personnel, particularly just prior to launch. With automation Marshall could duplicate the exact conditions under which a failure had occurred. Data would be available at the point of failure to aid in trouble-shooting and fault isolation. Richard also listed some disadvantages. Automated checkout procedures would complicate the Saturn, although the problem could be minimized by designing the automated test system into the vehicle. Another drawback was a lack of user confidence in the system. Richard attributed this to poor planning, either in training the users or in faulty machine language. A long-range problem involved the operators' possible loss of familiarity with the launch vehicle. Automation might work so well that its users would lose their "feel" of the rocket, with a corresponding drop in their ability to meet a crisis.[4]

Richard's automation plan proposed to phase the RCA 110 into Cape operations with the SA-5 launch from LC-37. The blockhouse computer would parallel the launch complex circuitry so that operations could proceed manually if necessary. At first the RCA 110 would check the digital flight computer and monitor other electrical systems. It was hoped that by SA-111 (the first Saturn I flight after the ten R&D launches) equipment reliability and user confidence would permit a fully automated launch.[5]

Planning for automation accelerated during the following months as Marshall moved from the C-2 to the C-5 version of the advanced Saturn. The Saturn V's size and LC-39's greater distance—4.8 kilometers—from launch control center to pad precluded a manual checkout. On 1 October 1961, von Braun established an Automation Board at Marshall to automate the Saturn V checkout. Thereafter, design of a computer checkout system paralleled launch vehicle development.[6]

Saturn I-IB Computer Complex

The development of the RCA 110 hardware for Saturn I tests proceeded at Huntsville under the direction of the Astrionics Laboratory with the collaboration of the electrical network group. Richard Jenke's automation team at KSC furnished operational requirements and participated in a number of design decisions. Some agreements between developer and future user came slowly. The two groups discussed the matter of control panel switches for months; the uncertainty centered on the desired status of the various test devices when the operations switched from a computer program to manual control. Eventually the two groups decided to treat each test device separately and modify the RCA 110 programs when experience dictated a change. About the same time the automation group approved a three-position switch for the Saturn IB control panel. During IB operations all signals, manual as well as automatic, would process through the computer. In the three-position switch, OFF manually terminated a function, such as opening a valve; ON manually initiated a function; and AUTO placed the computer in control for automatic testing. Experience with SA-5 demonstrated the need to prevent the computer from sending any command signals while it monitored the operation. The automation group added a discrete inhibit switch on SA-6 for the remaining Saturn I launches.[7]

The Cape played a larger role in the development of computer programs, called *software*. Marshall recognized the launch team's need to prepare its own tests and allowed KSC to manipulate "Boss," the 110's executive control program. Jenke's group, assisted by RCA, IBM, and Chrysler personnel, combined the 20 manual routines of the guidance computer checkout into four test sequences. While the performance of the RCA 110 on SA-5 left a few skeptics unconvinced, launch officials labeled the computer a success. On the following launch (SA-6) Jenke added a test sequence for automatic azimuth laying. The launch team added a cathode ray tube console (a television screen that displayed alpha-numeric characters received from the computer) for SA-7. The RCA 110 increased its monitoring role during the last three Saturn I launches, the Pegasus series.[8]

During the Saturn I program, automation moved forward at a slow, deliberate pace; at any time the launch team could have reverted to a manual operation. By the time of the first Saturn IB launch in February 1966, however, KSC was firmly committed to automated testing. While a completely automated checkout was still a long way off, the RCA 110A computer (a 110 with increased memory) was "on line" for the first IB operation. All test transmissions then went through the computer; if it failed, the entire checkout would stop. On-line status represented the decision to use the Saturn IB missions as a testbed for Saturn V automation.

Two RCA 110As—a "master" computer in the LC-34 blockhouse and a "slave" computer in the automatic ground control station—provided the brains for the Saturn checkout system. A high-speed data link, a coaxial cable running through the LC-34 cableway, connected the two computers. Engineers could initiate launch vehicle tests from display consoles or from programs stored within the master RCA 110A. In either case the computer in the launch control center digitized commands for transmission to the ground control station. The slave computer, housed beneath the umbilical tower, interfaced with the launch vehicle, issuing commands and receiving responses. Both computers were also tied into the spacecraft checkout system.[9]

In its design, the digital data acquisition system was typical of the digital systems employed at KSC. Sections, or modules, within each computer performed specific functions. The stage module had three distinct elements, each dedicated to one of the launch vehicle elements. Aboard the Saturn IB, three digital data transmitters (for the two stages and the instrument unit) multiplexed the pulse code modulated data, giving each signal a specific time slot on its channel. This data, reflecting the condition of the launch vehicle, was transmitted to ground receiving stations over coaxial cable or radio. The receiver decommutated, i.e., divided the data into its constituent parts, and then conditioned the signals for transmission. Another part of the digital data system, a high-speed memory core, stored the data for use by the 110A computers.[10]

A digital events evaluator determined whether or not a return signal indicated a change in the launch vehicle's status. After receiving data from the slave computer, the evaluator compared this signal with pre-programmed information in its memory or with a previous scan of the same function. The event was then time-tagged for identification and the results either printed for display or stored for retrieval by the master RCA 110A at a later date. The evaluator logged every event within approximately two milliseconds, providing real-time—virtually immediate—printouts of event changes.[11]

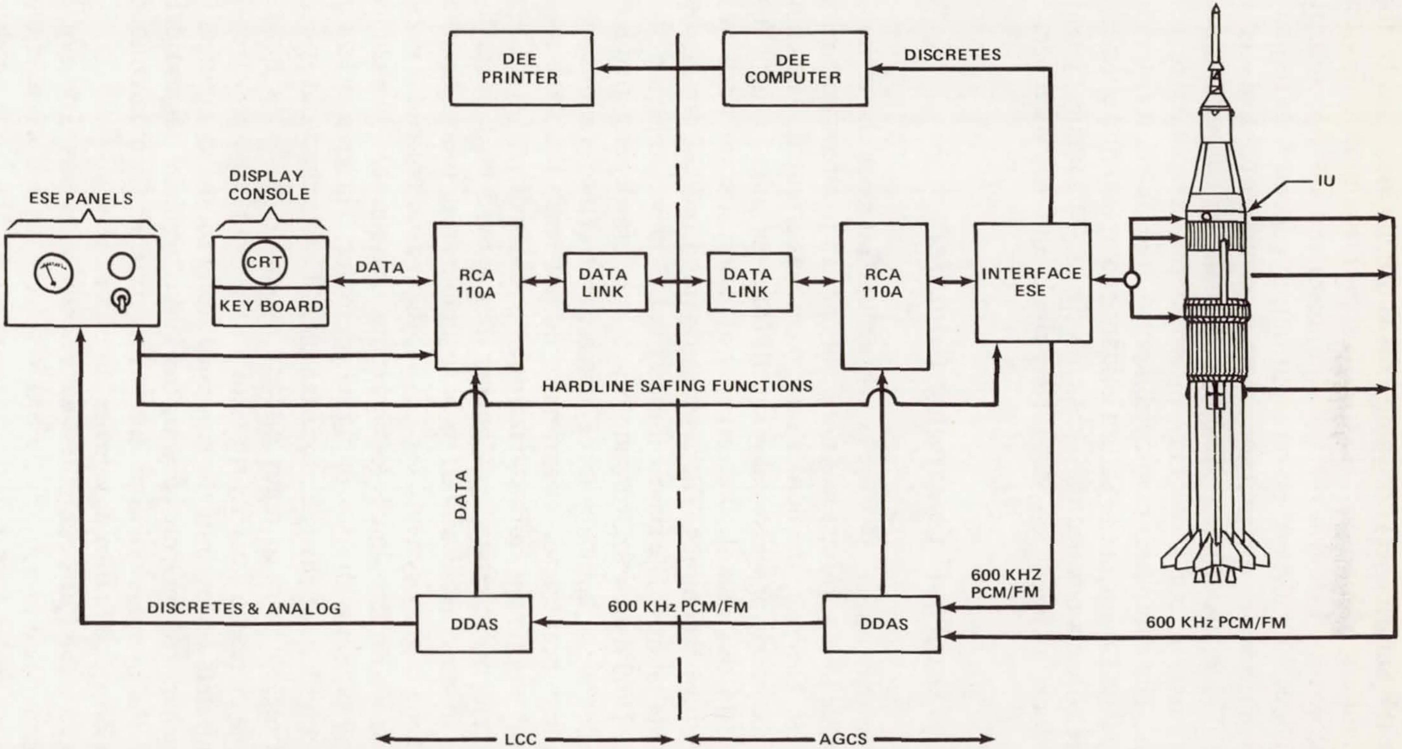

DEE PRINTER
DEE COMPUTER
DISCRETES
IU
ESE PANELS
DISPLAY CONSOLE
CRT
KEY BOARD
DATA
RCA 110A
DATA LINK
DATA LINK
RCA 110A
INTERFACE ESE
HARDLINE SAFING FUNCTIONS
DATA
600 KHZ PCM/FM
DISCRETES & ANALOG
DDAS
600 KHz PCM/FM
DDAS
600 KHz PCM/FM
LCC
AGCS

Fig. 118. LC-34/37 computer system schematic. From B. E. Duran, "Saturn I/IB Launch Vehicle Operational Status and Experience," pamphlet 680739, Aeronautic and Space Engineering and Manufacturing Convention, Los Angeles, 7–11 October 1968. Courtesy of the Society of Automotive Engineers, Warrendale, PA.

Although the Saturn checkout complex was usually identified by the RCA 110A computers, the related electrical support equipment was the larger part of the system. Included was test equipment and a complex distribution system. The RCA 110As relied on input-output address lines to place test equipment in a receive or transmit condition, set sequence control relays, select analog or digital signal lines, drive digital-to-analog converters, and issue warnings. Input-output sense lines informed the computers of test equipment status. The computers employed input-output buffer registers to handle the heavy data flow with the Saturn guidance computer and telemetry system. Hardwire connections tied the 110As in with LC-34's timing system: the countdown clock, a Greenwich Mean Time clock, and interval timers.[12]

Saturn V Computer Complex

Dual computers on LC-34 were largely redundant since the distance from launch vehicle to blockhouse was not great enough to attenuate analog signals. On LC-39, however, the dual arrangement was essential. The computer could not accurately process analog signals from the launch vehicle five kilometers away. In this regard, the earlier installation was intended as a testbed for the Saturn V complex. There were also important differences between the two installations. The slave computer in LC-39 was housed on the mobile launcher. Dual data links, running beneath the crawlerway, tied it to the 110A computer in the launch control center. Saturn IB operations were delayed occasionally because test engineers could not reach the slave computer's peripheral equipment during hazardous pad activities. On LC-39, magnetic tapes and other related equipment were moved back from the mobile launcher to the control center, to be available at all times. Another change involved the display systems. At LC-34, the master computer in the blockhouse processed display signals to the various consoles. LC-39 included a Sanders display system with its own digital computer. The greater size of the Saturn V dictated other changes; for example, LC-39's checkout system could issue and receive twice as many discrete signals. Perhaps the biggest difference was the increased capacity for testing. In effect there were three of everything: computers for each of the equipped firing rooms, computers in the mobile launchers for interfacing with the launch vehicles, digital data systems, and all the peripheral equipment. As a result, KSC could conduct automated tests on three Saturn V vehicles simultaneously.

As on LC-34, the 110A computers were central elements. The mobile launcher's computer tied in with the Saturn V vehicle, its peripheral equipment (line printer, card reader-punch, magnetic tapes), the launch control center computer via the data link, and the range clock system. Commands to the launch vehicle went through a discrete output system which employed triple-modular redundancy to minimize errors. Approximately 2000 test responses returned from the Saturn V. A remote control capability in the control center allowed engineers to continue Saturn tests in the event of a computer breakdown on the mobile launcher. The RCA 110As in the control center had even more interfaces; their data channels controlled signals to and from peripheral equipment, control consoles, the dual data links to the pad, digital data systems of the launch vehicle, computer display systems, the spacecraft computer system, and the countdown clock system.[13]

The control center was the focal point of Saturn checkout. While the original design included four firing rooms, only three were fully equipped. The various control consoles and display devices were physically grouped by stages or function. Management officials, including the launch director, test supervisor, and test conductors, occupied the first three rows. Within each stage area, test personnel were organized according to functional subsystems. Thus, in the instrument unit area were consoles for the emergency detection system, networks, guidance, stabilization, flight control, and measuring and telemetry. During prelaunch testing, approximately 400 people occupied stations in the firing room. A lesser number manned a backup control room. The test supervisor and conductors directed the operation by means of test procedures, countdown clock readouts, and an intercommunication system.[14]

Although equipment in a firing room varied with launch vehicle requirements, about 400 consoles were employed. Of these, approximately 100 were cathode ray tube displays. Four large overhead screens provided an additional means of displaying information. Presentations on the 2 × 3-meter translucent screens normally paralleled the test procedures, but the sequence could be altered to display data on a particular launch problem. Information from various sources appeared on the screen—telemetered data, closed-circuit and commercial television, slides, and viewgraphs. The data kept NASA managers and test conductors abreast of the vehicle status.[15]

An important addition to firing room equipment came after the start of Saturn V operations. While systems engineers could monitor vehicle outputs, the RCA 110A lacked the means to provide full coverage of launch vehicle measurements. Saturn engineers added an alert monitor capability to the launch vehicle display system. The equipment was first tried out in the backup firing room. In 1970 it became an integral part of the control center's display equipment. The alert monitor system—ten dual sets of cathode ray tube displays tied in with the digital data acquisition system—automatically indicated when certain measurements were out of tolerance.[16]

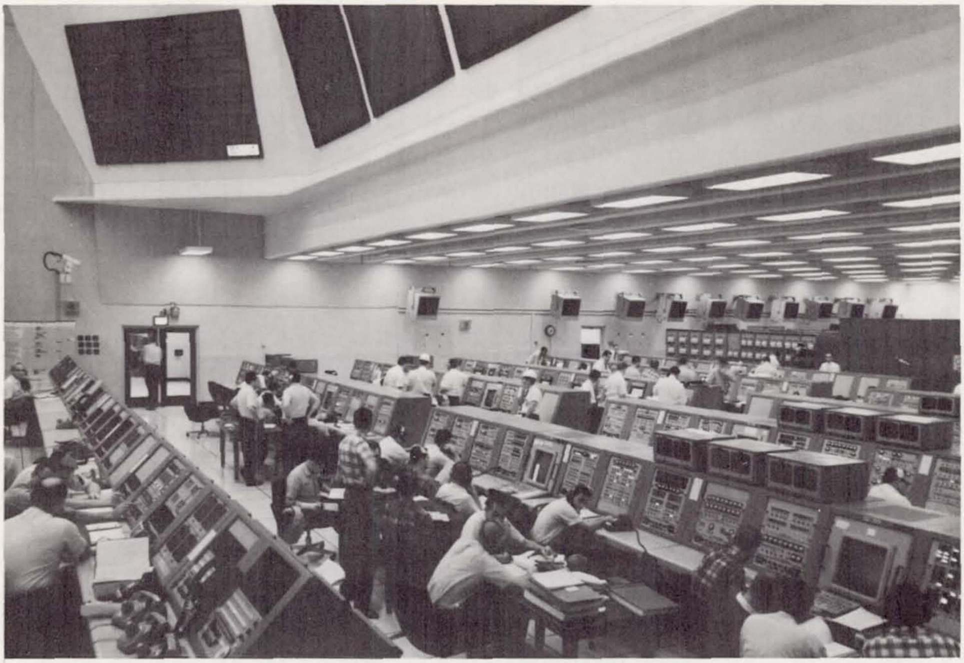


Fig. 119. An operation under way in the launch control center, firing room 1, March 1967.

The Transition to Automation

With the RCA 110A computers on line for the first Saturn IB mission, Hans Gruene's Launch Vehicle Operations team found itself totally dependent on computers and computer programs. They were not dependent, however, on automation. Having approached the idea of automated testing with reservations, they insisted that the Saturn design provide for manual testing as well as automation. Hence, LC-34's complex provided a dual capability. Test engineers could proceed in the traditional manner—initiating commands from switchboards and checking the results on meters, strip recorders, and cathode ray tube displays. In this mode, testing would remain essentially manual, with the computer complex serving as an expensive data link. Or the launch team could convert the manual test procedures into computer programs for interpretation and execution by the 110As. During the early IB missions, manual procedures predominated. Besides the inevitable resistance to change, systems engineers had trouble converting their test procedures into machine language. Development of a special computer test language alleviated the latter problem, while Gruene's leadership prevailed over personal inertia. By the end of Apollo, most launch vehicle tests were fully automated programs.[17]

Saturn ground computers employed two types of programs: operating system and test. As the name implied, the operating system program was the computer's basic software. It operated continuously, seeking alternate paths when a failure was detected. Manual testing of the Saturn vehicle was accomplished through this program. Test and monitor programs provided the means to automate the checkout process; they were the system engineer's primary software tool. Test programs could be prepared in machine language, using the full capability of the computer's logic, or in Atoll (Acceptance Test Or Launch Language), a form of engineer's shorthand. Once prepared, the test programs performed a number of important tasks: sequencing required events during a test, evaluating system responses, monitoring, displaying anomalies, and tying together a series of programs. A test program could preselect the operation sequence, change the limits of tested values, and intervene during the operation. On the later Apollo missions, test programs accomplished much of the routine checkout. Engineers would initiate programs through console keyboards and react when problems arose. Many of the tests would start on their own—the launch team having programmed the computer to call up test programs at a certain time in the countdown or when another test was successfully completed. While test programs were the key to automated checkout, maintenance and post-test processing programs played an important role. Maintenance programs tested the interfaces between RCA 110As and related equipment. With the post-test processing programs, engineers converted raw data into usable printouts.[18]

Changing test procedures into computer programs may well have been the highest hurdle in Saturn automation. Early Saturn I automation rested largely with IBM, Huntsville's contractor for computer software. From KSC requirements, IBM programmers and system analysts prepared machine-language programs. The Automation Office provided the coordination between Saturn test engineers and IBM computer experts. Unfortunately, it was not simply a matter of converting a few lines from English into a computer program. KSC's manual procedures did not spell out every detail; many contingency actions depended upon an engineer's intimate knowledge of a system. Inevitably, misunderstandings arose. Some KSC systems engineers viewed the process as a one-way street: IBM programmers were gaining a knowledge of Saturn hardware while KSC engineers learned little about automation. Furthermore, as Saturn automation grew, requirements for IBM support increased. Clearly, KSC needed some way to simplify the conversion from test procedure to computer program—a route that would bypass machine language.[19]

The solution was Atoll, a computer language under development at Huntsville's Quality Laboratory. By 1965 the Astrionics Laboratory and

IBM were incorporating Atoll into IB plans. KSC's automation team helped define launch site requirements for the new software system. The AS-201 mission in February 1966 used only a half-dozen Atoll procedures, but subsequent launches showed increasing numbers as KSC engineers converted from manual procedures to computer programs. There were 21 Atoll programs on AS-501, 43 on AS-506 (Apollo 11), and 105 by the Apollo 14 launch in early 1971. Atoll proved particularly valuable for Saturn systems that changed from one mission to the next. While modifications to machine language procedures required approval from Marshall, KSC's Automation Office controlled Atoll. Changes could therefore be approved quickly at the launch center. More importantly, Atoll involved the test engineers directly and its use was instrumental in their acceptance of computerized checkout.[20]

Automating Telemetry Operations

The move from the Redstone to the Saturn era brought a pressing need to automate data reduction.* The Saturn I's telemetry, the primary source of postflight test data, represented a three-fold increase over previous rockets and the Saturn V would be an even greater jump (see table 1). The increase posed a problem of space. Continued reliance on analog strip charts would have forced Saturn V engineers to review thousands of feet of chart after each launch. Time was a second consideration. In September 1961 Fridtjof Speer, chairman of Marshall's Saturn System Evaluation Working Group, expressed concern about possible delays in the delivery of postflight data. Although LOD had agreed to submit telemetry data within 12 hours, Speer wanted backup blockhouse records (strip charts and event recorders) within 24 hours. He asked Debus to "exploit every possible course of action to satisfy this requirement."[21]

A month after Speer's letter, Dr. Rudolf Bruns's data reduction team pioneered the use of computers in Saturn I launch operations. Digital computers offered two advantages. During a launch the computer could record incoming telemetry data on a magnetic tape and subsequently process compact printouts in a relatively short time. The computer, supported by peripheral equipment such as cathode ray tube consoles, could display critical information in real time.[22]

**Data reduction* means the transformation of observed values into useful, ordered, or simplified information. With telemetry it could involve transferring an analog electrical signal onto a brush recording or eliminating unnecessary portions of a message (e.g., the address), restructuring the data, and directing it to various users.

The Flight Instrumentation Planning and Analysis Group set up a Burroughs 205 computer alongside the telemetry station in hangar D prior to the SA-1 launch. A tarpaper shack housed the computer—a far cry from facilities the team would enjoy in a few years. Despite its primitive surroundings, the 205 provided guidance data and some measurement reduction in real time. A General Electric computer replaced the Burroughs machine on SA-3; the GE computer's solid state circuitry and core memory provided a faster sampling of Saturn telemetry.[23]

During the last hours of the SA-3 countdown, the launch team periodically tested telemetry transmitters and the data reduction computer. The team "dumped" the telemetry data from the GE computer at several predetermined times, taking a quick look at the printout to see if the measurements were within calibration. At T − 30 minutes the computer began processing data from the Saturn's ten commutators. The GE 225 took approximately ten seconds to complete one sample of the Saturn's ten telemetry links; most of that time was taken up by the telemetry station switching device, switching from one commutator to the next. As the 225 printer could not match the computer's calculating speed, the real-time printout listed only the out-of-tolerance values. The GE 225 processed telemetry data until the signal faded a few minutes after launch. During postlaunch activities, the telemetry station rewound its analog tapes and played them back for the computer. The digital magnetic tape data, produced by the playback, were then converted in another computer process to specific engineering units (e.g., degrees Celsius), which were displayed on a printout or a Stromberg-Carlson 4020 plotter.[24]

Efficient data reduction depended on parallel advances in the telemetry station's digitizing system, the equipment that converted the Saturn's analog telemetry into a digital message for the GE computer. The earliest digitizer employed one analog-to-digital converter and one synchronizer. Each of the ten commutators on SA-3 fed its measurements (27 each for the low-speed commutators and 216 for the high-speed commutator) into a subcarrier oscillator. The oscillators sent the signals out over the launch vehicle's six telemetry transmitters as a pulse-amplitude-modulated wave. The receiver in the ground telemetry station removed the subcarrier and directed it to one of three discriminators where it was demodulated. The analog-to-digital converter changed each signal voltage from a magnitude to a pulse. A 0.6-second delay in synchronizing the converter's switch from one commutator to another limited the digitizer's output to the GE 225. Due to the switching delay, the computer received approximately one measurement of every 120 that came from the Saturn's high-speed commutator.[25]

Work on a faster digitizing system began in mid-1962. An analog-to-digital converter was added for each vehicle commutator; a parallel programmer-addresser generated a 12-bit address word to identify the data. A digital scanner, essentially an electronic 16-position switch, scanned the outputs of the data channels (convertor and addressor), transferring new data to a core memory. The memory stored each measurement according to its digital address and provided the computer with random access to any data. Although the telemetry team experienced problems interfacing the scanner and core memory, the specifications were ready by November.[26]

The telemetry scanning and digitizing system was added to a GE 235 computer for the block II series of the Saturn I program. The GE computer, given immediate access to all data through the digital scanner and core memory, recorded data in real time on a magnetic tape. Since the 235's printing lagged behind its computations, real-time display was still limited. The 235's other functions included: separating data by program (S-I, S-IV, instrumentation unit, and spacecraft) and measurement, converting measurements to engineering units, arranging data for use on the 4020 plotter, and comparing engineering units versus time on printouts and 4020 plots (microfilm or hard-copy graphs). Within two hours of the SA-7 launch, all the 4020 plots had been processed. The total data reduction program was completed eight hours later.[27]

Measuring techniques needed to be improved to keep up with the advances in digitizing and telemetry reduction. Automation of measurements during checkout of the Saturn vehicle was begun in March 1962, using an IBM card system. Punched cards, placed in a card reader, selected the appropriate channel (and relay if calibration was necessary). The card reader compared the signal returning from the launch vehicle's measuring device with data prepunched on the card and gave a "go, no-go" evaluation.* Following experimentation during a checkout on LC-34, the system was installed in LC-37's measuring station for the block II launches.[28]

As the automation plans gained momentum, Debus expressed concern about their impact on LOC's relations with the Air Force. On 21 February 1962 Debus penned a brief note to Gruene's weekly report:

> Hans: One day we have to start an analysis of what this entire automatic checkout with computers will mean in our countdown-and-test interfaces with the range! For instance: timing, on-off commanded to the Range, TM [telemetry] receiving . . . and a

---

*A *go, no-go* indication told the operator whether a device was functioning properly, without indicating how far out of tolerance it might be or what was wrong.

> host of other interactions. . . . Does it still make sense to plan a "joint" TM station. . . ?[29]

After Debus and General Davis discussed some of LOC's scheduling problems in May, Air Force and NASA officials held a series of meetings that summer, some as the Joint Instrumentation Planning Group, others in informal sessions. Their work led to the development of a new telemetry station and the central instrumentation facility.[30]

Automatic Checkout for the Spacecraft

Automated checkout of the Apollo spacecraft had its origins at Cape Canaveral in 1961. Preflight Operations Division engineers, members of the Space Task Group, realized that Mercury launch methods would not satisfy Apollo requirements. The Mercury preflight tests resembled an aircraft checkout. One test team worked from a command post near the spacecraft while a second group monitored the test results at a remote station. During the checkout hundreds of wires ran through the open hatch into the cockpit, leaving barely enough room for an astronaut or a test engineer. There were other limitations. During the prelaunch operations, the spacecraft would likely move several times, and each move required disconnecting and reconnecting the various test lines. As the checkout grew more complicated, the test conductor found it increasingly difficult to coordinate activities at the spacecraft and monitoring station. Less than 100 telemetered measurements in Mercury had occupied the Instrumentation Branch. The 2000 measurements projected by Apollo feasibility studies made some form of automated checkout inevitable.[31]

Following a September 1961 briefing on Apollo, G. Merritt Preston, Preflight Operations Division's chief, asked his staff to consider the proposed spacecraft's impact on launch operations. Jacob Moser and his Flight and Ground Instrumentation chiefs, Walter Parsons and Harold Johnson, responded with an automation proposal, and Preston gave the project a green light. Mercury operations limited progress during the next two months, but with further urging from Preston, the instrumentation team formalized a presentation in December. Two young engineers, Thomas Walton and Gary Woods, joined in this early conceptual work. For their efforts the five subsequently won a patent on the checkout system. The group's pre-Christmas briefing favorably impressed the staff. A Marshall delegation displayed less enthusiasm but failed to halt the project.[32]

The automation team began the new year with a search for available equipment. Since money was scarce, only off-the-shelf hardware could be used. Walton and Woods scoured American factories, finding all the necessary components except a digital command system. At the same time Preston secured the support of Robert Gilruth and Walter Williams, the Director and Associate Director for NASA's Manned Spaceflight Center. In February the team conducted a series of formal briefings for NASA's manned spaceflight organizations and for supporting contractors. The road show, complete with a projector and more than 500 slides, drew a mixed response. Headquarters officials questioned some of the team's technical assumptions (e.g., James Sloan, OMSF's Deputy Director for Integration and Checkout, doubted that the software planned for the system could be perfected). The principal user, North American, perhaps hoping to develop a checkout system itself, was particularly critical of the concept. Despite the numerous objections, acceptance checkout equipment (ACE)* was approved by mid-1962.[33]

While gaining support within NASA was, perhaps, the most difficult hurdle, the design also involved some challenges. The spacecraft had not yet been clearly defined when the group began work on a report in February 1962. Woods concentrated on the system's uplink. As the name implies, the uplink carried commands from operator consoles to the spacecraft via coaxial cable or radio. Woods demonstrated the feasibility of his uplink in June, using 32 kilometers of cable stretched from a Patrick Air Force Base command post to the Cape. Meanwhile Walton pursued the problems of the downlink, the portion of the checkout system that brought encoded signals from the spacecraft, through a decommutator and computer, to display devices. Johnson focused on another part of the downlink, the analog display recorders.[34]

In July the acceptance checkout equipment team began procuring equipment for an experimental station at the Cape. Gemini officials helped fund the laboratory in hopes that the system might benefit their program. The Instrumentation Branch activated the station in September; its original equipment consisted of a small computer, an alphanumeric display device, a decommutation system, and the manual uplink prototype. A downlink prototype was put in operation the following month. By April 1963 the team was working two digital computers in a non-synchronized mode, exchanging data through a shared memory base. Gordon Cooper's 22 revolutions around the world in May 1963 marked another milestone for the station. The experimental equipment provided real-time support of preflight checkout and inflight operations for the last Mercury mission. The station's computers displayed

---

*ACE was initially SPACE, Spacecraft Prelaunch Automatic Checkout Equipment. Cape officials changed the title to Prelaunch Automatic Checkout Equipment for Spacecraft, PACE-S/C only to find that PACE was already a legal name. They then dropped the Prelaunch and changed the Automatic to Acceptance.

Faith 7's telemetry data on screens and high-speed line printers. The laboratory was fast becoming one of the tourist attractions at Cape Canaveral; during their visits to the Cape, new astronauts spent a half-day in the station.[35]

The General Electric Company entered the ACE story in November 1962. GE's Apollo roles, as delineated by NASA management, included the development of "overall system checkout equipment" (pp. 173–76). Since ACE would test North American's command and service modules and Grumman's lunar module, the checkout system fell within GE's area of responsibility. At first GE provided engineering support. Within three months Leroy Foster had 20 engineers working on equipment specifications. The decision at NASA Headquarters to have GE produce the Apollo checkout stations (as a modification to its existing contract) touched off ten months of proposals and counterproposals. The main dispute between GE and Cape officials centered on the issue of government-furnished equipment. The Preflight Operations Division intended to provide GE most of the components, buying parts already developed by other companies. GE, understandably, thought it could improve on some of the equipment. At a stormy July session in Daytona, Jack Records, GE's number two man at the Apollo plant, and Dr. Lyndell Saline questioned the suitability of Control Data Corporation's 160G computer. When Preston asked for proof of the computer's inadequacy, however, the GE executives withdrew their charge.[36]

Negotiations with General Electric were complicated by officials at NASA Headquarters; Joseph Shea, OMSF's Deputy Director for Systems, supported GE. In September 1963, he called the ACE team to Washington for a showdown on the spacecraft checkout. Shea and his Bellcomm* advisors attacked ACE on several grounds, including insufficient memory and interrupt capability. Cape officials refuted the criticisms point by point. Before the end of the day Shea had given up his opposition to ACE.[37]

After settling the issue of government-furnished equipment, GE and the Florida Operations group (the new name for Houston's launch team at the Cape) moved swiftly to meet the September 1964 deadline for the first operational ACE station. At the Cape, Douglas Black's team conducted a series of critical interface tests at the experimental station in the first half of 1964. By June the first computer programs had been verified. GE shipped components for the first station to Downey, California, in July. Within 60 days North American was using the station to check out Apollo 009, the spacecraft that would fly on AS-201. GE installed 13 more ACE stations: 2

---

*Bellcomm, Inc., was a subsidiary corporation of AT&T, organized to assist OMSF's Systems Office in the overall integration of Apollo. The work resembled that being done by GE, but was at a higher level and on a much smaller scale.

at Downey; 3 at Grumman's Bethpage, New York, plant; 2 in Houston; and 6 at the Cape. KSC's first station became operational in March 1965.[38]

Spacecraft Checkout

ACE's first major test at KSC came with the checkout of Apollo 009 (AS-201 mission) in late 1965. The spacecraft team directed the checkout from a control room in the operations and checkout building. Engineers from Spacecraft Operations and North American, working in pairs, tested the nine functional systems: communications, instrumentation, service propulsion and reaction control, stabilization and control, guidance and navigation, power and sequence, fuel cell and cryogenics, aeromedical and astronaut communications, and environmental control. Commands were initiated at the test consoles, e.g., an engineer might test the freon level in the command module's environmental control system. His signal went to the command computer for conversion to a binary instruction. The digital message traveled a complicated electrical path to the spacecraft, where it triggered a sensor in the command module. The sensor noted the condition of the freon and transmitted an appropriate response. Data acquisition equipment routed the signal back to a display computer, which processed the message for presentation on the same test console whence the command had come seconds earlier. Command and display computers and much of the data acquisition and recording equipment were located in an ACE computer room.[39]

Three different groups of sensors obtained data concerning the Apollo spacecraft: ground service equipment, carry-on equipment that was removed prior to flight, and sensors built into the spacecraft. Coaxial cable and radio connected the various sensors to the control rooms in the operations and checkout building. There, data traveled through one of three different paths. The most important, from the standpoint of real-time display, was the display computer. Its functions included: comparing machine words to determine whether data fell within predetermined limits, converting data into engineering units (such as heat rise in degrees per second), and generating signals that would produce alphanumeric displays on consoles. The display system was impressive but not foolproof. An engineer recalls that on its first day of operation, the console welcomed them: "GOOD MORING." ACE had failed its first spelling test.[40]

During lunar missions, four control rooms would be used for spacecraft checkout: primary and backup rooms for the command and service modules and another pair for the lunar module. Each room had 20 master consoles and additional slave consoles. The latter displayed the same data

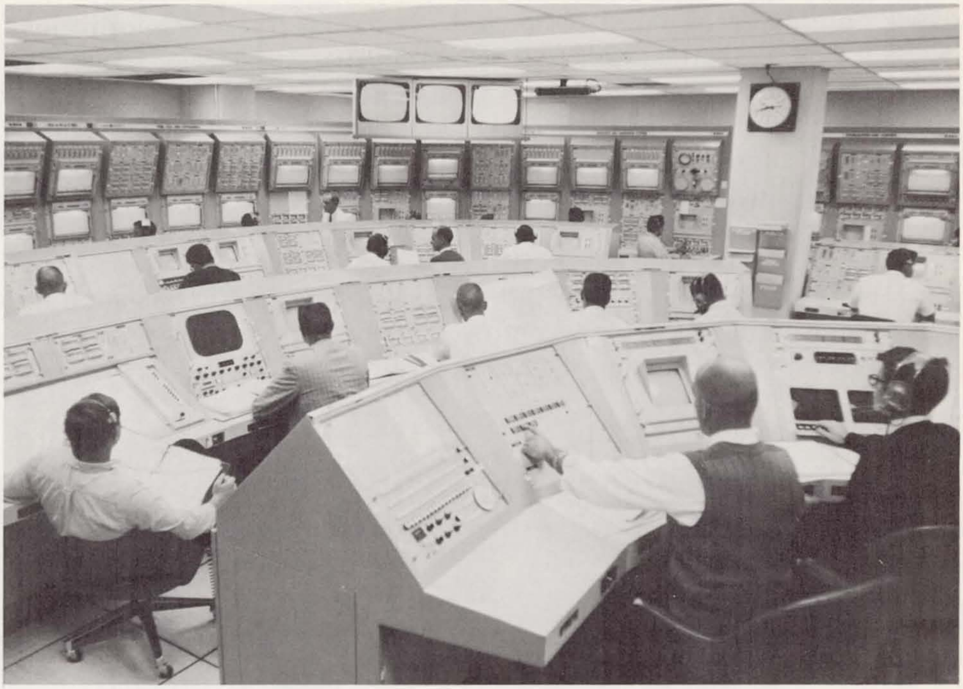


Fig. 120. An operation under way in the automatic checkout equipment (ACE) control room, February 1967.

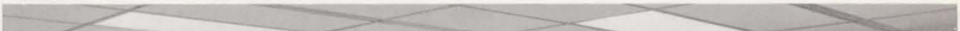


Fig. 121. Automatic checkout equipment room, February 1967.

shown on a master, but did not provide the means to select information. Nine TV monitors carried pictures from portable cameras located around the spacecraft. The overhead monitors were part of an operational TV network that carried spacecraft and launch vehicle pictures to the launch control center and central instrumentation facility, as well as the operations and checkout building. Although the equipment had a similar appearance, configurations differed, depending on the requirements of particular systems. During checkout, between 40 and 50 men occupied each of the primary control rooms. In the backup rooms, the consoles were kept in operation but usually were not manned. Each control room was supported by a computer room with its uplink and downlink equipment.[41]

17

LAUNCHING THE SATURN IB

The Apollo program made another major advance toward its goal in 1966 with three successful launches of the Saturn IB. The IB had been added to the program in 1962 as a means of conducting early manned Apollo missions in earth orbit. The IB launch vehicle was a hybrid, combining the Saturn I's booster with the S-IVB stage that would fly as the third stage on the moon rocket. Three research and development flights were scheduled for 1966; two would check out the Apollo-Saturn IB configuration while a third tested the liquid-hydrogen propellant system in the S-IVB stage. A fourth Saturn IB launch, scheduled toward the end of 1966, would put the first Apollo crew into space. The launches posed a challenge for KSC. In the midst of a major site activation—LC-39—the launch team faced a new operation. There was a new launch vehicle stage and, with the RCA 110A computers, a new checkout system. Before completing the missions, the launch team would experience some of the most frustrating moments in the entire Apollo program.

Remodeling LC-34 for Bigger Things

First sign of the Saturn IB series at the Cape was NASA's rebuilding of the LC-34 facilities. The complex had last been used to launch SA-4 in March 1963. During the rest of the year, LC-34 was earmarked for back-up service during the Saturn I, block II series. Contractors had completed a gas storage building and begun work on liquid-hydrogen facilities. Mueller's revised launch schedule of 1 November 1963 had prompted Debus to recommend cancellation of further Saturn I work at the complex. NASA then began the task of readying LC-34 for the launching of AS-201, first of the Saturn IBs.[1]

The old LC-34 service structure was almost completely rebuilt. Previously open to the winds, it was now equipped with hurricane gates and four weather-tight silo enclosures. Anchor piers were strengthened to hold the service structure in place over the pad. The modifications also included eight vertically adjustable service platforms and new traveling hoist machinery. On the umbilical tower, the swing arms were rebuilt to meet the new rocket's dimensions; testing was completed in June 1965. Astronauts would board the command module through a new arm at the 67-meter level. The addition included a white room to control the temperature and cleanliness inside the module. While AS-201 would be an unmanned flight, the launch complex would be man-rated in almost every particular.[2]

The change from the Saturn I to the IB meant larger fuel requirements, for the upper stage a 130% increase. Major alterations were made in LC-34's propellant facilities. The RP-1 main storage tanks were reinsulated and the liquid-hydrogen system was enlarged. A new tanking control system loaded propellants to prescribed levels and maintained those levels until liftoff. Pneumatic requirements involved modification of the high-pressure gaseous nitrogen and helium installations and construction of a gaseous hydrogen system.[3]

Colonel Bagnulo reported on 5 August 1965 that, "after a full measure of blood, sweat, and tears," the basic modifications to the service structure were essentially complete. The initial contract cost had risen from $3.5 million to $5.3 million, partly because of changes to the design, but more from the additional overtime required to keep the work near the original schedule. Minor work continued almost up to launch time; the last change requirements were released on 4 January 1966.[4]

LC-34 Wet Tests

The erection of the S-IB stage and the dummy stages for the S-IVB and instrument unit marked the start of LC-34 facility tests on 18 August 1965. Although the mating went well, the launch team soon fell behind schedule. Hans Gruene reported a four-day lag the following week, attributing most of the delay to faulty electrical support equipment from Huntsville. He listed among the shortcomings missing connectors, cables improperly marked, and schematics that did not reflect engineering changes already accomplished.[5] Similar problems threatened in early September to postpone the start of tests on the ground equipment test sets. More than 250 power cables had not arrived. About 100 GE cables were of the wrong length. Gruene also singled out computer problems, an area that would plague Launch Vehicle Operations throughout the 201 mission. The shortage of spares was also critical. A power supply failure on the 26th had necessitated the air delivery of a new component from California. Computer breakdowns during the test of the ground equipment test sets could cause a day-for-day slip in the schedule.

Delays in Marshall's breadboard* testing of the RCA 110A operating program could also impact the checkout.[6]

The wet test in September disclosed some problems in LC-34's new propellants system. Hydrogen did not flow from its storage tank during the first H_2 "cold shock" test. When no mechanical block could be found in the valves, lines, or filter, the obstruction was blamed on frozen nitrogen. The gas had leaked into the hydrogen system through a hand valve during the nitrogen pressurization test. The launch team also had trouble loading the S-IVB auxiliary propulsion system.† The surprisingly slow flow rate of the hypergolic oxidizer, coupled with a thunderstorm, left no time for the flow test of the fuel. As Launch Vehicle Operations planned to remove the dummy stage the following day, the second half of the hypergolic loading was postponed until after the erection of the live stage.[7]

Another highlight of the facilities test was the replacement of an S-IB fuel tank. The tank had been damaged during a load test, and repressurization left numerous wrinkles in its skin. Although a Chrysler crew subjected the tank to above-normal pressures without mishap, Marshall representatives wanted a replacement. The new fuel tank arrived from Michoud, Louisiana, on 24 September and was installed in eight hours on the 29th. This delayed erection of the S-IVB stage by two days, but numerous breakdowns in the RCA 110A computer had already thrown the tests 12 days behind schedule.[8]

The Apollo-Saturn IB Space Vehicle

The LC-34 modifications were designed to accommodate a 68.2-meter Apollo-Saturn (AS-201), which could count as many "firsts" as any of the Saturns. Its upper stage (S-IVB) would be the first to use a hydrogen-burning J-2 engine (900 000 newtons or 200 000 pounds of thrust); it had a new instrument unit, nerve center for guidance and control; it was the first to carry a live (though unmanned) Apollo command module, powered by a service module, the engine of which was intended to start and restart in space. Perhaps most important, and certainly most troublesome, was the first installation of an on-line, automated checkout system. These innovations were

---

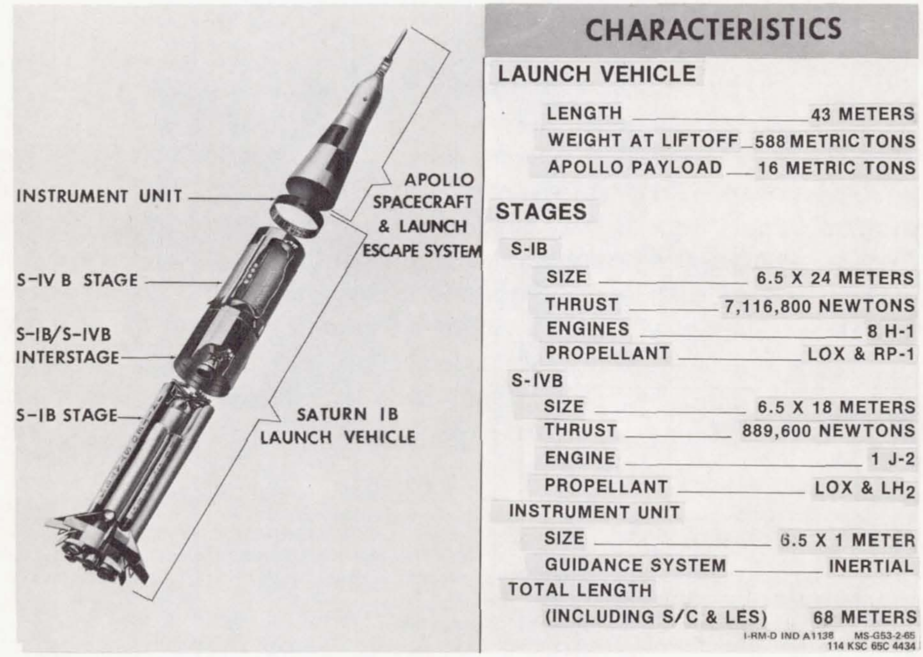
**Breadboard* means an assembly of circuits or parts used to prove the feasibility of a device or system. Huntsville used breadboards as a design tool (those for Saturn circuitry occupied a half-dozen large rooms). The breadboards were kept in the same configuration as the vehicle and ground support equipment. When a problem arose, Huntsville engineers verified any proposed solution on the breadboard before KSC applied it to the flight equipment.

†The auxiliary propulsion system provided attitude control for the S-IVB stage and payload during the coast phases of flight.

the cause of many delays in the launch program—and justification for the delays, as well: what was worked out successfully for AS-201 would be available for Saturn V.[9]

The first piece of AS-201 to arrive at the Cape was Chrysler Corporation's S-IB stage. It arrived from the Michoud Assembly Facility aboard the barge *Promise* 14 August 1965. It was the first Saturn to enter the Banana River and KSC through the Canaveral locks. The new S-IB was basically the S-I stage, redesigned to reduce weight and increase thrust. The empty weight was 42 048 kilograms, some 11% lighter than the S-I. North American Aviation had improved the operation of the eight H-1 engines so that the stage produced 7 200 000 newtons (1 600 000 pounds of thrust), some 6% greater than the S-I. The stage would reach an altitude of 60 kilometers in 2.5 minutes of flight.[10]

The S-IVB second stage went through its acceptance test at the Douglas Aircraft Company's Sacramento Test Center on 8 August and made its first appearance at the Cape on 1 October. While the Cape had welcomed an old friend back in the S-IB, the S-IVB was a newcomer. And an important newcomer: not only would it serve as second stage in AS-201, but it would also be the third stage in the all-important Saturn V. Its single J-2 engine (by



CHARACTERISTICS

LAUNCH VEHICLE	
LENGTH	43 METERS
WEIGHT AT LIFTOFF	588 METRIC TONS
APOLLO PAYLOAD	16 METRIC TONS
STAGES	
S-IB	
SIZE	6.5 X 24 METERS
THRUST	7,116,800 NEWTONS
ENGINES	8 H-1
PROPELLANT	LOX & RP-1
S-IVB	
SIZE	6.5 X 18 METERS
THRUST	889,600 NEWTONS
ENGINE	1 J-2
PROPELLANT	LOX & LH_2
INSTRUMENT UNIT	
SIZE	6.5 X 1 METER
GUIDANCE SYSTEM	INERTIAL
TOTAL LENGTH (INCLUDING S/C & LES)	68 METERS

I-RM-D IND A1138 MS-G53-2-65 114 KSC 65C 4434

Fig. 122. Schematic of Saturn IB, with characteristics.

North American Rocketdyne Division), burning 7.5 minutes, could put it into earth orbit (though not on AS-201); as the Saturn V third stage, it would put Apollo into translunar trajectory.

Spacecraft components arrived at the Cape in late October, the command module on 25 October and the service module two days later. The base of the service module housed the spacecraft's main propulsion unit, a single engine that used a half-and-half mixture of unsymmetrical-dimethylhydrazine and nitrogen tetroxide to achieve 97 400 newtons (21 900 pounds of thrust). It would be ignited twice on the AS-201 flight, once for three minutes and again for ten seconds. Beneath it was the vehicle's only big piece of boilerplate, the lunar module adapter joining the service module and the S-IVB instrument unit. On AS-201 it consisted of aluminum alloy bracing; in future flights it would house the lunar excursion module.[11]

The Troubled Checkout of AS-201

By late September Merritt Preston's Launch Operations staff and Rocco Petrone's Programs Division had set the 201 launch for late January. That schedule assumed the spacecraft would arrive at the Cape on 9 October. Mueller refused, at first, to approve KSC's recommended date. He hoped for an earlier launch, perhaps in late December. Although Petrone promised to continue looking for possible shortcuts, delays in the spacecraft delivery precluded a 1965 launch.[12]

The Douglas crew erected the S-IVB stage on 1 October and completed the initial checkout of the ground equipment test sets shortly thereafter. KSC received some bad news on the 7th: the RCA 110A computer in the breadboard at Huntsville would not be operational for another ten days. Since it would take two weeks beyond that to check out the computer's program, the 110A executive routine would not reach the Cape before 1 November. Without the executive routine to test the computer's internal systems, the 110A could not apply power to the launch vehicle. On the 15th John Twigg, chief test conductor for the Saturn IB, reported that pad operations were virtually at a standstill. Representatives from Huntsville helped devise a temporary computer program, and the launch team finally applied power to the S-IB stage on 22 October. By the end of the month, KSC had begun limited testing with an uncertified program tape. Meanwhile the instrument unit arrived and underwent inspection at hangar AF. IBM engineers corrected several deficiencies, but an environmental control system coolant pump continued to give the launch team trouble after the instrument unit was stacked above the S-IVB stage on 25 October.[13]

S-IVB stage for AS-201

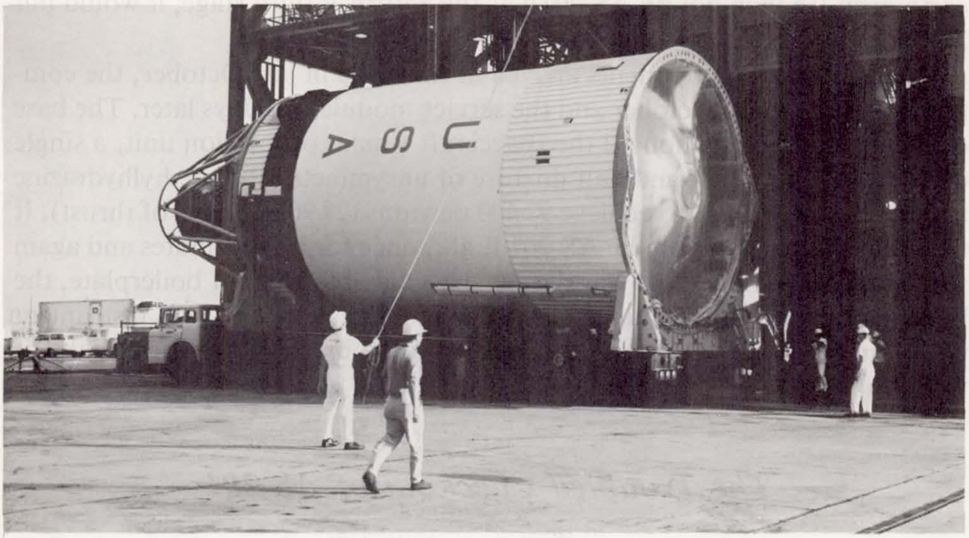
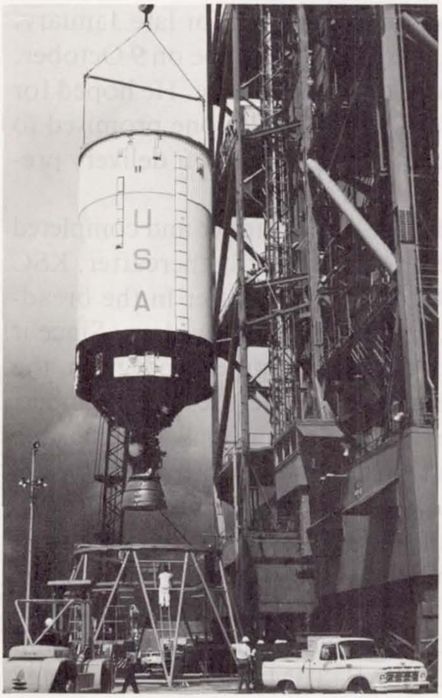


Figure 123



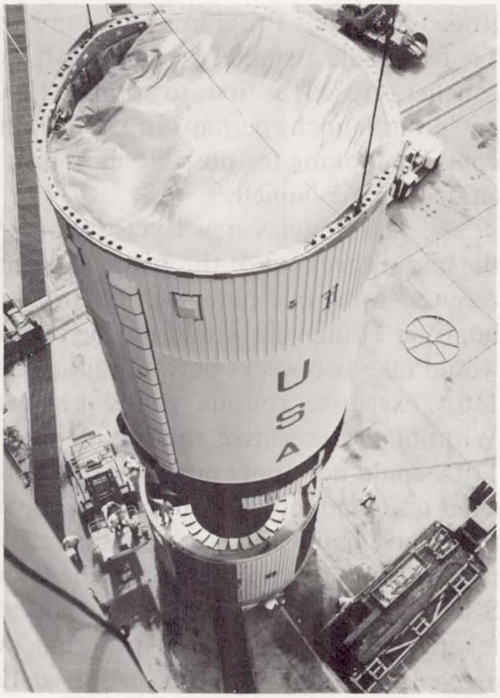


Figure 124

Figure 125

Figs. 123–125. The second stage for AS-201 arriving at pad 34, 1 October 1965; the stage hoisted; and eased into place.

After arrival of the major modules of spacecraft 009 in late October, the command module went to the hypergolic building for environmental control system servicing and electrical power checks. North American technicians moved the service module out to pad 16 for an electrical systems check. At the operations and checkout building, other workmen installed measuring instruments in the boilerplate lunar module adapter. Although the service module passed leak and functional tests, the 9 November static firing was postponed ten days. A dirty filter in a ground oxidizer system caused much of the delay. On the 18th Preston notified Debus that the late static firing and an accumulation of spacecraft modifications might cause a two-week slip in the launch schedule.[14]

The Saturn ground computer system continued to cause grief. On 10 November John Twigg reported:

> The RCA 110A computer developed problems increasing in number with time of operations. It was detected that some

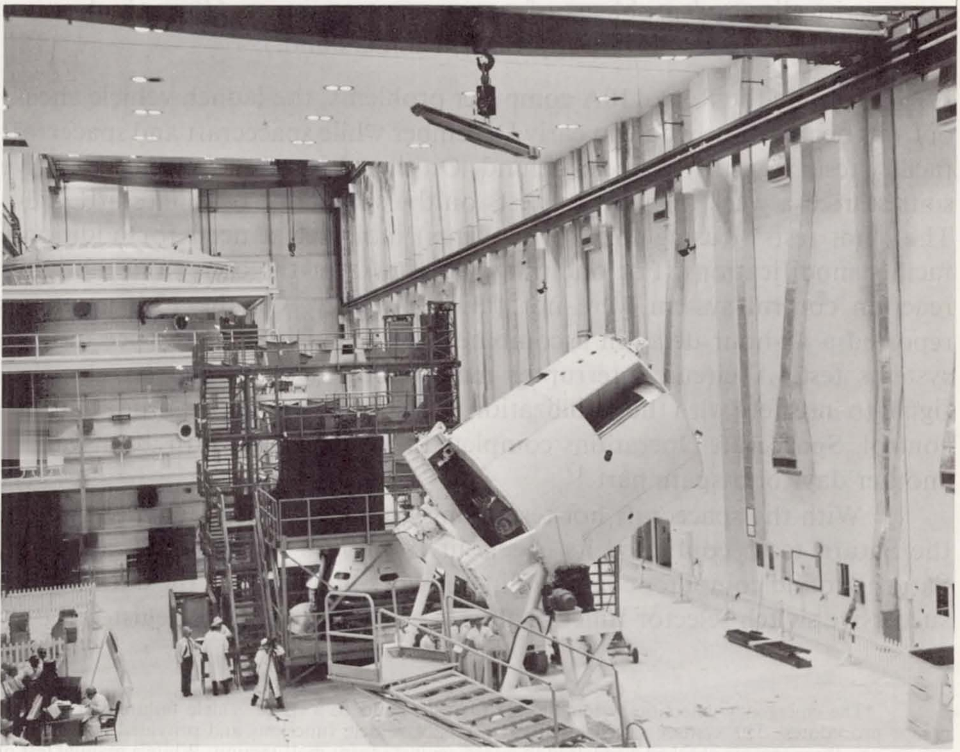


Fig. 126. The service module for AS-201 in the operations and checkout building, November 1965.

> capacitors which normally breathe in open air developed problems when under protective coating. Most of these cards [electrical printed-circuit boards] in the blockhouse computer which developed these problems first were exchanged. At the same time, it was decided to exchange identical cards in the pad computer as soon as they become available.[15]

Two weeks later Twigg announced the failure of the first computer-run tests, a switch selector functional test and the emergency detection system test.* Isom Rigell's report of 3 December said of the computer:

> We have experienced a number of high-speed memory parity errors in the last few days. No solution has been found to date. December 2d, we have experienced some problems with random discretes to the S-IV-B stage and also apparently random outputs of the computer operating the switch selector. Investigation of this problem is under way at this time. I would like to discuss with you the feasibility to obtain the services of an outside expert (preferably some University instructor) to assess the criticality and problems of our computer system. (Army had good success with this approach, I understand.)[16]

Despite the RCA 110A computer problems, the launch vehicle checkout was nearly on schedule in early December while spacecraft and spacecraft facility tests lagged two weeks behind. On the 13th technicians in protective suits started a week of hypergol tests on the spacecraft feed lines at LC-34. The "hot tests" (using toxic propellants) indicated a need for additional facility modifications. For one thing, the tanks of the command module's reaction control system were not filling properly. On the 15th engineers reported a 48-hour delay in a combined command module–service module systems test. A circuit interrupter malfunction had allowed an electrical signal to interfere with the stabilization and control system's attitude and rate control. Spacecraft Operations completed the test on the 17th after waiting another day for a spare part.[17]

With the spacecraft hot tests tying up pad 34 during daylight hours, the Saturn team continued its checkout from 7:00 p.m. to 3:00 a.m. The Saturn ground computer complex did not work any better in the dark. In five successive switch selector functional tests, the checkout team registered only a partial success. On the 15th Gruene's team traced a bad interface between the digital data acquisition system and the 110A computer to a defective printed-circuit board. After further investigations disclosed five more faulty circuit boards, Launch Vehicle Operations began a survey of all boards.* By Christmas the Saturn IB checkout had fallen 16 days behind schedule. Matters were even worse with Apollo; the spacecraft showed a 20-day slip. A January launch for AS-201 appeared highly unlikely.[18]

---

*The emergency detection system alerted the astronauts to a space vehicle failure and initiated escape procedures. The system sensed hundreds of space vehicle functions and provided triple redundancy, i.e., three sensors checked a function to guard against sensor malfunction. While a manual test of this system took 12–14 hours, an automated checkout ran about 20 minutes.

North American technicians enjoyed a one-day Christmas holiday. Sunday, the 26th, found a spacecraft team at pad 34 erecting the Apollo on top of the launch vehicle. After mounting the launch escape system, workmen linked the spacecraft with the pad facilities, checked the service module's umbilical arm fit and the white room's interface with the command module. On 5 January the spacecraft began a series of electrical tests with a launch vehicle simulator. Launch vehicle operations, during the same period, included tests of the electrical bridge wire and emergency detection system, a sequence malfunction test, and a LOX simulate and malfunction test (checking the electrical portion of the LOX system).[19]

A new 201 schedule, published 12 January, moved the launch date back to the week of 6 February.[20] The delay was not sufficient, however, as problems continued to plague the operation. Weekly reports on computer failures ran five to six pages long. Launch officials began to wonder if they would ever get through the mission. Norman Carlson, Saturn IB Test Conductor, recalled:

> It [the computer] and we had many hours of grief. You know I really predicted that we would never launch AS-201 by using the computer. It was that bad. We would power up in the morning, and sometimes we were lucky if we got two hours of testing in the whole day. It was up and down all the time.[21]

Some of the 110A idiosyncrasies are amusing in retrospect. On one occasion, an engineer noticed that the computer was repeating a program it had run several hours before. A memory drum had reversed itself and was feeding information back into the computer, which accepted the memory data as new commands. Early in the launch operations, the computers kept going out of action at midnight (Greenwich time). The computers, unable to make the transition from 2400 to 0001, ''turned into a pumpkin.''[22]

---

*KSC engineers had coated the circuit boards for protection from the Cape's salt air. During computer operations, heat built up under the coating and cracked some solder joints. Thereafter a wire would open intermittently during operations. The boards were sent back to RCA's California plant after the 201 mission for modification; the ''fix'' was to place a stress relief eyelet around the wire.

Computer problems with ACE and the 110A caused 13 hours of hold time during the plugs-in (umbilicals connected) test on 24 January. After similar difficulties on the plugs-out overall test, Launch Operations Manager Paul Donnelly scheduled another run for 1 February. The repeat was a success and NASA announced a launch date of 22 February. The countdown demonstration test lasted four days (3–6 February). The launch vehicle team followed a script prepared back in October:

Phase 1. Ordnance installation and S-IVB propulsion checks.
Phase 2. Battery installation, power transfer test, and guidance and control checkout.
Phase 3. Command checks and propellant loading.

Workmen hurriedly corrected a number of deficiencies found during the propellant loading and rescheduled the last 22 hours for 8–9 February. Following the flight readiness test on the 12th, North American technicians began loading hypergols aboard the Apollo for a 23 February launch.[23]

In mid-February General Phillips, Apollo Program Director, asked KSC to review the shortcomings of the automated checkout. Phillips hoped to use Marshall's breadboard more effectively in the next Saturn IB checkout.[24] KSC's response listed 15 general recommendations (and more than 50 specific corrections). One problem area involved configuration differences between the breadboard and LC-34, e.g., the Cape's telemetry interrupter for the S-IVB stage was apparently quite different from its counterpart at Huntsville. This illustrated a bigger problem: engineering orders accomplished at one site were overlooked at the other. Since the breadboard had not duplicated all of 34's automation, Marshall was unable to assist with certain problems. KSC recommended that Huntsville have more duplication in the breadboard and a capability to respond faster for emergency tests. The launch team accepted much of the blame for the long delays in initializing and reinitializing the computer—which meant the practice of loading the executive routine (in the form of magnetic tapes) into the computer at the start of a work day. Frequently, a failure in the computer hardware would scramble the operating program and force a technician to reinitialize the 110As. The launch team believed the problem would diminish as operators gained confidence in the computers. The report scored the lack of reliable up-to-date documentation (e.g., unit schematics) and concluded:

> Possibly the most significant single problem area during AS-201, from complex activation through launch, was the never-ending struggle to obtain Engineering Orders to work changes in Electrical Support Equipment. Very few of the changes in Complex

34 ESE were subject to any level of technical arbitration. Delays and difficulties were primarily simple matters of overcoming the system inertia.[25]

Launch veterans, in retrospect, have singled out another factor as the biggest challenge on AS-201: the psychological problems of persuading engineers to accept automation. Paul Donnelly recalled that electrical systems personnel were generally receptive since "to check out a computer, the easiest thing to do is use another computer."[26] Convincing the mechanical engineers was another matter. Saturn engineers had little faith that a computer program tape would actuate a hydraulic valve at the proper moment; balky computers compounded the problem. In Hans Gruene's words:

> It was the hardest thing to do to convince engineers who are used to manual operations that the black box out there, which he cannot fully understand, does a job for him and he will not see the little green lights any longer but the box will do the checking for him. I think this convincing of the engineers was the most complicated task in automation.[27]

The 201 Launch

AS-201 finally went down in Cape annals as the "scrub and de-scrub" launch. After their many weeks of problem after problem, delay after delay, the launch team began the countdown at midnight, 20 February. Bad weather imposed three holds, two for 24 hours each; and terminal countdown did not get underway until 5:15 p.m., 25 February. It was held at T – 266 minutes in the early morning hours of 26 February on account of an Apollo access arm problem. A faulty helium regulator took up the remaining 30 minutes of scheduled hold time. At 35 seconds before liftoff, a nitrogen regulator commenced a high flow purge of the S-IB stage's LOX dome and thrust chamber fuel injector.* The reading on the stage's high-pressure nitrogen spheres, normally at 211 kilograms/square centimeter, fell rapidly. At T – 4 seconds the pressure dropped below 199 and the automatic sensor stopped the count.[28]

After some discussion, the launch team decided that the purge of the booster's LOX dome and thrust chamber fuel injector was using most of the nitrogen flow from the ground supply, in effect starving the high-pressure spheres. A technician increased the flow by resetting the pressure on the equipment supplying the nitrogen. At T – 5 minutes, although the nitrogen sphere on the S-IB stage read a satisfactory 203.2 kg/sq cm, Marshall and Chrysler stage engineers requested another hold. Their calculations indicated that, if the low readings on the nitrogen spheres were caused by excessive purge flow or leakage, the existing pressure might not prove sufficient to maintain the minimum needed to pressurize engine gear boxes, actuate LOX and fuel lines, and purge the LOX seal area of the engine turbopumps through stage burnout. The stage engineers recommended eliminating the calorimeter purges. These instruments on the base heat shield measured heat radiation from the stage engines. No serious problems in this area were anticipated and the measurement had no influence on the flight, so the purge was expendable. The operation, however, would take longer than the launch window allowed, and the mission was scrubbed.[29] But a few members of the launch team refused to quit. Gruene reported later:

---

*See p. 53 for a discussion of this operation.

> A few of my people, including [A. J.] Pickett and [L. E.] Fannin, had an idea that if they could just run one test and convince the [Marshall] people this test was valid, . . . we could still launch the vehicle. We ran the test, de-scrubbed and launched—all in the same day.[30]

The test involved a simulated liftoff and 150-second flight. The simulation demonstrated that 203.2 kg/sq cm of nitrogen in the high-pressure spheres at liftoff would provide adequate pressure in the spheres at burnout.* Hurried calculations by stage engineers supported KSC's findings, and Marshall engineers then agreed to resume the count at 10:57 a.m.[31]

The trouble-plagued AS-201 lifted its 585 metric tons off the pad 15 minutes later. During the 39-minute trip down the Eastern Test Range, the S-IVB stage and the main propulsion engine in the service module increased the Apollo's velocity to nearly 29000 kilometers per hour, a speed greater than manned Apollos would face at reentry. The command module splashed down east of Ascension Island where Navy forces recovered it.[32] With the flight a success, KSC released a general sigh of relief. Carlson said later: "We had struggled so long and so hard. . . . We were all glad to see it go."[33]

The pad suffered substantial damage from flame and vibration at launch. Three seconds after liftoff, high voltage fuses in the pad area substation vibrated loose from their holders and blew a 300-ampere fuse in the industrial power feeder. LC-34 and other Cape facilities were powerless for an hour. One casualty was the launcher water deluge system. Its failure accounted for much of the fire damage on the pad and nearby structures. The power failure also short-circuited the Eastern Test Range's impact computer B, used by Houston to make an abort decision. Computer B tried to transfer to the alternate power system and failed; the back-up computer came on for six seconds and then quit. As a result, Range Safety could not determine vehicle abort impact points during the first five minutes of flight and Mission Control (Houston) operated without trajectory data.[34]

---

*Telemetered flight data confirmed that the residual pressure at S-IB cutoff exactly equalled the prediction.

A Reorganization

During the latter launches of the Saturn I program, contractors began to assume responsibility for mission operations—responsibility that civil servants had previously exercised. The transition, completed during the Saturn IB launches, proved a difficult one for many government employees. Many did not want to manage other men, preferring instead to apply their engineering skills directly to the hardware. Veterans of the Debus team recall the change in their status as one of the significant events in the Apollo launch program. Aside from the personal impact, the molding together of the various contractor teams under government management ranks as one of the great accomplishments at KSC.

The problems brought on by the changing role of contractor and civil servant gave impetus to a center reorganization in early 1966. On 17 January Debus told his senior staff that the Office of Manned Space Flight, while voicing the highest praise for KSC's launch operations to date, was concerned about its readiness to handle the upcoming Apollo-Saturn launch preparations. The ensuing study of the management structure was conducted by a KSC task force headed by Deputy Director Albert Siepert, assisted by John Young from NASA Headquarters. General Medaris, former commander of the Army Ballistic Missile Agency, contributed an independent study for the launch center. The study groups concentrated on two problem areas that affected Apollo: the need to clarify and separate the duties of Apollo program management from other center-wide activities, and the liaison of the center with its contractors.[35]

Following the review and evaluation, Debus sent to Headquarters formal proposals to realign KSC's administrative organization. A major change involved the creation of two deputy director posts. The Deputy Director, Operations, would be responsible for engineering matters and technical operations. The Deputy Director, Management, would handle relations with contractors, other government agencies, and the community, and direct the development of management concepts and policies. Two new departments were added. Most of KSC's design functions were centralized under a Director of Design Engineering. He would be responsible for monitoring and issuing technical directions to design support contractors, hardware contractors, and the Corps of Engineers. The other new department, Installation Support, would take over housekeeping services: plant maintenance, supply transportation, documentation security, safety, and quality surveillance. In both cases, the new departments concentrated functions that had previously been scattered among several elements of the launch center.[36]

Debus proposed an important change in the launch operations organization to provide strong and clear direction during the performance of preflight and launch operations. Test management, as a discrete function, was set up at the top Launch Operations level, with counterparts at the Launch Vehicle and Spacecraft Operations directorates. These offices would plan and direct launch operations, with a specific individual in charge of each mission. The test manager would be just that—a *manager*, not merely a *coordinator* as had generally been the case in the past. In this capacity, he would be responsible for the mission hardware from the time of its arrival at the center to the launch. Engineers in various operational areas would be assigned to assist the test manager when required. These specialists, however, would not have authority to give formal instructions to the contractors performing the work; they were to provide only informal technical guidance. Formal instructions could come only from the test manager.

The reorganization altered the civil servant–contractor relationship in several important ways. The Director of Design Engineering assumed responsibility for all KSC hardware development contracts, construction and modification contracts, as well as the design engineering support contracts. Lines for reporting were streamlined so that other major contractors reported to a single KSC element. The changes established a specific chain of command for each launch and helped the government provide the contractors with formal direction, informal instruction, and a better evaluation of performance. Administrator Webb signed the new KSC organizational chart on 27 April and the changes were phased in through the remainder of the year.[37]

More Launches of the Saturn IB

When spacecraft problems in the spring of 1966 delayed the preparation of Apollo module 011, AS-203 became the second Saturn IB flight. The AS-203 carried no spacecraft; its primary purpose was to test the dynamics of liquid hydrogen in the weightlessness of space. On a lunar mission, the S-IVB stage would orbit the earth one and one-half times and then restart its J-2 engine to propel Apollo toward the moon. Marshall engineers wondered whether the ten tons of liquid hydrogen would settle to one part of the fuel tanks or slosh violently about. The S-IVB stage of the AS-203 was equipped with 83 special measuring devices and two television cameras to study the chilldown of the J-2 engine (the preliminary cooling of the propellant systems with small amounts of cryogenic hydrogen). The mission also tested IBM's new instrument unit. AS-203 was launched from pad 37B, which had been modified extensively since the SA-10 launch the previous summer.[38]

Chrysler technicians erected the S-IB booster on 19 April. On subsequent days the S-IVB stage, the instrument unit, and the nose cone joined the stack. The checkout soon bogged down in another epidemic of computer ills. Most of the blame was laid to cracked solder joints in the printed-circuit boards, the same defect that had troubled AS-201. By 24 May technicians had exchanged 2000 printed boards and planned to remove 6000 more. Other portions of the Saturn checkout proceeded on schedule. On 27 May Albert Joralan reported that S-IB measuring calibration was 70% complete; the calibration of the S-IVB and instrument unit stood at 60 and 87%.[39]

The month of June saw an unusual spectacle at the Cape—three Saturns looking skyward, and menaced briefly by a hurricane. Saturn 500F stood on LC-39, AS-202 on LC-34, and AS-203 on LC-37. The simultaneous operations taxed KSC's propellant reserves, but essential needs were met.[40]

The AS-203 launch, originally scheduled for 30 June, was delayed by an Explorer launch and minor problems. It was almost scrubbed when one of the television cameras failed, but on 5 July the rocket achieved a virtually perfect orbital insertion. The remaining television camera operated perfectly, and apparently answered any questions about S-IVB's readiness to serve as the Saturn V third stage. In September Douglas Aircraft announced that the S-IVB stage had no serious unsolved technical problems.[41]

Computer problems also characterized the AS-202 operations at LC-34. Printed-circuit boards continued to frustrate Gruene's Launch Vehicle Operations Division and, after the AS-203 launch, KSC transferred all of LC-37's printed-circuit boards to LC-34. The change reduced the downtime of the RCA 110As considerably. Despite the launch vehicle team's misfortunes, NASA spokesmen cited spacecraft delays in postponing the AS-202 launch until after the 203 mission. Late deliveries of equipment and engineering orders plagued spacecraft operations. The patching of the ACE system (rerouting the electrical lines to various pieces of test equipment) was particularly troublesome. The spacecraft team found, to their sorrow, that Apollo 011 did not duplicate the 009 modules. The spacecraft team corrected most of the problems in three months and erected Apollo 011 on 2 July 1966. The countdown demonstration test began on the 29th and ran for one week. During that period, KSC also conducted two spacecraft emergency egress tests. The launch team completed the flight readiness test on 16 August.[42] Alfred O'Hara, chief of the Saturn I-IB Operations Office, reported that all

Saturn tests had been completed satisfactorily. Richard Proffitt, spacecraft test conductor, described the Apollo checkout as "a good clean test and we feel that we are 100 per cent ready."[43]

AS-202 lifted off on 25 August. A communications problem between Mission Control in Houston and a tracking ship in the Atlantic had caused the only significant delay in the countdown. In the final minutes, however, the launch team barely outraced hurricane Faith; the tropical storm shut down the Antigua tracking station 45 minutes after launch. AS-202's 93-minute suborbital flight covered 33 000 kilometers. Although the spacecraft splashed down 370 kilometers short of its target in the Pacific Ocean, the mission was judged a success. A design certification review board, meeting in September, declared that Apollo–Saturn IB could now be used for manned flight.[44]

The Apollo–Saturn IB launches of 1966 represented important gains for NASA's launch team. LC-34 and LC-37, testbeds for automated checkout, were found wanting. In the 20 months between AS-201 and AS-501, KSC corrected the major automation problems. Without these trial and error advances, AS-501, the toughest launch in Apollo's history, would have been far more difficult.

18

THE FIRE THAT SEARED THE SPACEPORT

The thirteenth Saturn flight (the third Saturn IB) on 25 August 1966 was the thirteenth success. It fulfilled all major mission objectives. For the first manned mission NASA had selected two veterans and one rookie. Command Pilot Virgil Ivan Grissom had flown Mercury's Liberty Bell 7, America's second suborbital flight, in July 1961, and Molly Brown, the first manned Gemini, in March 1965. Edward White had become the first American to walk in space while on the fourth Gemini flight, three months later. Flying with these two would be the youngest American ever chosen to go into space, Roger B. Chaffee, 31 years of age.

NASA gave Grissom the option of an open-ended mission. The astronauts could stay in orbit up to 14 days, depending on how well things went. The purpose of their flight was to check out the launch operations, ground tracking and control facilities, and the performance of the Apollo-Saturn. Grissom was determined to keep 204 up the full 14 days if at all possible.

North American Aviation constructed the Apollo command and service modules. The spacecraft, 11 meters long and weighing about 27 metric tons when fully fueled, was considerably larger and more sophisticated than earlier space vehicles, with a maze of controls, gauges, dials, switches, lights, and toggles above the couches. Unlike the outward-opening hatches of the McDonnell-built spacecraft for Mercury and Gemini flights, the Apollo

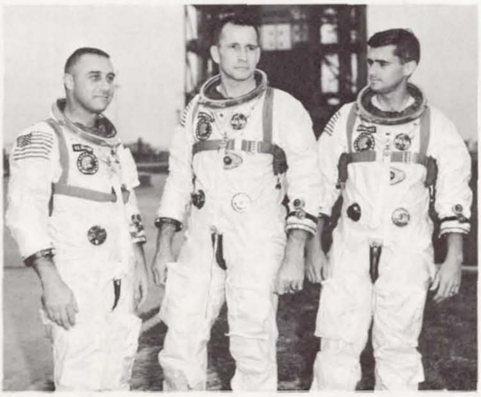


Fig. 127. The crew of AS-204: Grissom, White, and Chaffee.

hatches opened inward. They required a minimum of ninety seconds for opening under routine conditions.[1]

Predictions of Trouble

Many men, including Grissom, had presumed that serious accidents would occur in the testing of new spacecraft. A variety of things could go wrong. But most who admitted in the back of their minds that accidents might occur, expected them somewhere off in space.

Some individuals had misgivings about particular aspects of the spacecraft. Dr. Emmanuel Roth of the Lovelace Foundation for Medical Education and Research, for instance, prepared for NASA in 1964 a four-part series on "The Selection of Space-Cabin Atmospheres." He surveyed and summarized all the literature available at the time. He warned that combustible items, including natural fabrics and most synthetics, would burn violently in the pure oxygen atmosphere of the command module. Even allegedly flame-proof materials would burn. He warned against the use of combustibles in the vehicle.[2]

In 1964 Dr. Frank J. Hendel, a staff scientist with Apollo Space Sciences and Systems at North American and the author of numerous articles and a textbook, contributed an article on "Gaseous Environment during Space Missions" to the *Journal of Spacecraft and Rockets*, a publication of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics. "Pure oxygen at five pounds per square inch of pressure," he wrote, "presents a fire hazard which is especially great on the launching pad. . . . Even a small fire creates toxic products of combustion; no fire-fighting methods have yet been developed that can cope with a fire in pure oxygen."[3]

Further, oxygen fires had occurred often enough to give safety experts cause for extra-careful procedures: at Brooks Air Force Base and at the Navy's Equipment Diving Unit at Washington, D.C., in 1965; and at the Airesearch Facility in Torrance, California, in 1964, 1965, and 1966.[4]

One man saw danger on earth, from hazards other than fire. In November 1965, the American Society for Testing and Materials held a symposium in Seattle on the operation of manned space chambers. The papers gave great attention to the length of time spent in the chambers, to decompression problems, and to safety programs. The Society published the proceedings under the title of *Factors in the Operation of Manned Space Chambers* (Philadelphia, 1966). In reviewing this publication, Ronald G. Newswald concluded: "With reliability figures and flight schedules as they are, the odds are that the first casualty in space will occur on the ground."[5]

Since Newswald was a contributing editor of *Space/Aeronautics*, it may well be that he contributed the section entitled "Men in Space Chambers: Guidelines Are Missing" in the "Aerospace Perspective" section *of that magazine during the same month that his review appeared in Science Journal*. The editorial reflects the ideas and the wording of his review. The "Guidelines" writer began: "The odds are that the first spaceflight casualty due to environmental exposure will occur not in space, but on the ground." He saw no real formulation of scientific procedures involving safety—such as automatic termination of a chamber run in the event of abnormal conditions. "By now," he stated, "NASA and other involved agencies are well aware that a regularly updated, progressive set of recommended practices—engineering, medical and procedural—for repressurization schedules and atmospheres, medical monitoring, safety rescue and so on, would be welcome in the community."[6]

Gen. Samuel Phillips, Apollo Program Director, had misgivings about the performance of North American Aviation, the builder of the spacecraft, as early as the fall of 1965. He had taken a task force to Downey, California, to go over the management of the Saturn-II stage and command-service module programs. The task force included Marshall's Eberhard Rees and the Apollo Spacecraft Program Manager, Joseph Shea; they had many discussions with the officials of North American. On 19 December 1965, Phillips wrote to John Leland Atwood, the President of North American Aviation, enclosing a "NASA Review Team Report," which later came to be called the "Phillips Report."[7] The visit of the task force was not an unusual NASA procedure, but the analysis was more intensive than earlier ones.

In the introduction, the purpose was clearly stated: "The Review was conducted as a result of the continual failure of NAA to achieve the progress required to support the objective of the Apollo program."[8] The review included an examination of the corporate organization and its relationship to the Space Division, which was responsible for both the S-II stage and the command-service module, and an examination of North American Aviation's activities at Kennedy Space Center and the Mississippi Test Facility. The former area belongs more properly to the relations of North American Aviation with NASA Headquarters, but the latter directly affected activities at Kennedy Space Center.

Despite the elimination of some troublesome components and escalations in costs, both the S-II stage and the spacecraft were behind schedule. The team found serious technical difficulties remaining with the insulation and welding on stage II and in stress corrosion and failure of oxidizer tanks on the command-service module. The "Report" pointed out that NAA's inability to meet deadlines had caused rescheduling of the total Apollo program and, with reference to the command-service module, "there is little confidence that NAA will meet its schedule and performance commitments."[9]

Phillips and his task force returned to Downey for a follow-up week in mid-April 1966. He did not amend the original conclusions, but he told President Atwood that North American was moving in the right direction.[10]

The astronauts themselves suggested many changes in the block I spacecraft design. In April 1967, Donald K. Slayton was to tell the Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics that the astronauts had recommended 45 improvements, including a new hatch. North American had acted on 39 of these recommendations. They were introducing the other six into later spacecraft. "Most of these," Slayton testified, "were of a relatively minor nature."[11] The only major change for later spacecraft was to have been a new hatch. And the astronauts had recommended this not so much for safety as for ease in getting out for space-walks and at the end of flights.[12]

The Spacecraft Comes to KSC

In July and August 1966, NASA officials conducted a customer acceptance readiness review at North American Aviation's Downey plant, issued a certificate of worthiness, and authorized spacecraft 012 to be shipped to the Kennedy Space Center. The certificate listed incomplete work: North American Aviation had not finished 113 significant engineering orders at the time of delivery.[13]

The command module arrived at KSC on 26 August and went to the pyrotechnic installation building for a weight and balance demonstration.[14] With the completion of the thrust vector alignment on 29 August, the test team moved the command module to the altitude chamber in the operations and checkout building and began mating the command and service modules. Minor problems with the service module had already showed up, and considerable difficulties with the new mating hardware caused delays.

On 7 September NASA released a checkout schedule. By 14 September, while the Saturn launch vehicle moved on schedule, the Apollo spacecraft already lagged four days behind. On the same day, a combined systems test was begun. Discrepancy reports numbered 80 on 16 September and had risen to 152 within six days. One of the major problems was a short in the radio command system. In the meantime, the test team had installed all but one of the flight panels.

At Headquarters during this time, a board chaired by the Associate Administrator for Manned Space Flight, Dr. George Mueller, and made up of OMSF center directors, conducted a detailed review of the spacecraft. On 7 October this board certified the design as "flightworthy, pending satisfactory resolution of listed open items."[15]

The simulated altitude run, originally scheduled for 26 September, had gradually slipped back in schedule. It was run on 11 October, but plans for an unmanned altitude run on 12 October, a flight crew altitude run on 14 October, and a backup crew run on 15 October also slipped. So did the projected dates of mechanical mating of the spacecraft with the launch vehicle and the launch itself.

The unmanned altitude chamber run finished satisfactorily on 15 October. The first manned run in the altitude test chamber, on 18 October, experienced trouble after reaching a simulated altitude of 4000 meters because of the failure of a transistor in one of the inverters. With the replacement of the inverter, the system functioned satisfactorily. The prime crew of Grissom, White, and Chaffee repeated the 16-hour run the next day with only one major problem developing in the oxygen cabin supply regulator. This problem caused a delay of the second manned run with the backup crew scheduled for 21 October. Continued trouble with the new oxygen regulator caused the indefinite suspension of the second manned test before the end of October. By this time it had become clear that the spacecraft needed a new environmental control unit. Technicians removed the old unit on 1 November.

Meanwhile, at North American Aviation's Downey plant a propellant tank had ruptured in the service module of spacecraft 017. This provoked a special test of the propellant tanks on the 012 service module at KSC. In order to conduct this testing in parallel with further checking of the command module, the test team removed the command module from the altitude chamber.[16] Later they removed the fuel tanks from the service module in the chamber. After pressure-integrity tests, they replaced the tanks and returned the command module to the chamber.[17] The test team installed and fit-checked the new environmental control unit on 8 November and hooked up the interface lines two days later. But this did not completely solve the difficulties. Problems in the glycol cooling system surfaced toward the end of November and on 5 December forced a removal of the second environmental control unit.

The Apollo Review Board was to say of this glycol leakage several months later,

> water/glycol coming into contact with electrical connectors can cause corrosion of these connectors. Dried water/glycol on wiring insulation leaves a residue which is electrically conductive and combustible. Of the six recorded instances where

> water/glycol spillage or leakage occurred (a total of 90 ounces leaked or spilled is noted in the records) the records indicate that this resulted in wetting of conductors and wiring on only one occasion. There is no evidence which indicates that damage resulted to the conductors or that faults were produced on connectors due to water/glycol.[18]

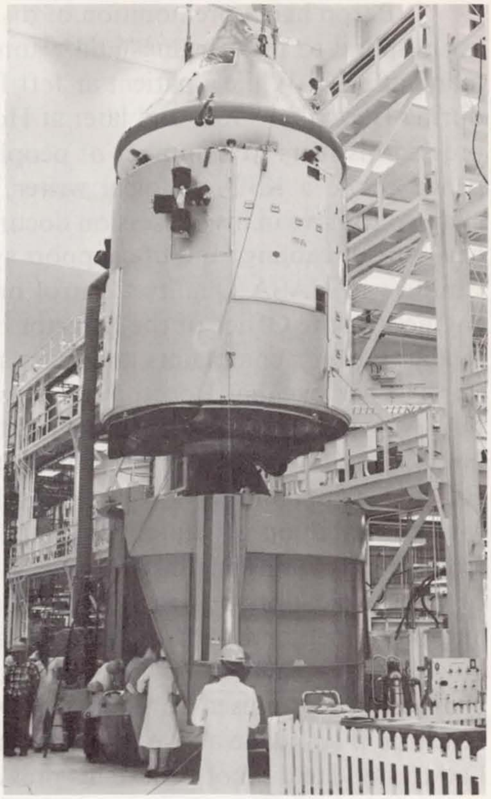
The difficulties in the materials that already had arrived at KSC and the endless changes that came in from North American Aviation—623 distinct engineering orders—presented major problems for the NASA-NAA test teams. As many workmen as could possibly function inside the command module continually swarmed into it to replace defective equipment or make the changes that NAA suggested and Houston approved. The astronauts came and went, sometimes concerned with major and sometimes with minor matters on the spacecraft.[19]

These difficulties at KSC and concurrent problems at Mission Control Center, Houston, forced two revisions to the schedule, one on 17 November, the next on 9 December. The test team kept up with or moved ahead of the latter schedule during the ensuing weeks. The third environmental control unit arrived for installation on 16 December.

The test teams had been working on a 24-hour basis since the arrival of the spacecraft at Kennedy, taking off only on Christmas and New Year's Day. On 28 December, while conducting an unmanned altitude run, the test team located a radio frequency communications problem and referred it to ground support technicians for correction. On 30 December a new backup crew of Schirra, Eisele, and Cunningham (McDivitt's original backup crew had received a new assignment) successfully completed a manned altitude run.[20] Six major problems on the spacecraft surfaced, one in very-high-frequency radio communications; but a review board was to give a favorable appraisal not long afterward: "This final manned test in the altitude chamber was very successful with all spacecraft systems functioning normally. At the post-test debriefing the backup flight crew expressed their satisfaction with the condition and performance of the spacecraft."[21]

By 5 January the mating of the spacecraft to the lunar module adapter and the ordnance installation were proceeding six days ahead of schedule. The following day the spacecraft was moved from the operations and checkout building to LC-34. KSC advanced the electrical mating and the emergency detection system tests to 18 January, and these were completed that day. The daily status report for 20 January 1967 reported that no significant problems occurred during the plugs-in overall test. A repeat of the test on 25 January took 24 hours. A problem in the automatic checkout equipment link-up caused the delay. Further, the instrument unit did not record

Fig. 128. Mating the AS-204 spacecraft modules in the operations and checkout building, 4 January 1967.



simulated liftoff—a duplication of an earlier deficiency. The schedule called for a plugs-out test at 3:00 p.m. on 26 January, a test in which the vehicle would rely on internal power. NASA did not rate the plugs-out test as "hazardous," reserving that label for tests involving fueled vehicles, hypergolic propellants, cryogenic systems, high-pressure tanks, live pyrotechnics, or altitude chamber tests.[22]

The Hunches of Tom Baron

All the tests and modifications in the spacecraft did not go far enough or fast enough in the view of one North American employee, Thomas R. Baron of Mims, Florida. Baron's story has significance for two reasons. His attitude reflected the unidentified worries of many who did not express them until too late. Also, the reaction of KSC managers indicated a determination to check every lead that might uncover an unsafe condition. The local press at the time gave ample but one-sided coverage of the Baron story.

Baron had a premonition of disaster. He believed his company would not respond to his warnings and wanted to get his message to the top command at KSC. While a patient at Jeff Parrish Hospital in Titusville, Florida, during December 1966, and later at Holiday Hospital in Orlando, Baron expressed his fears to a number of people. His roommate at Jeff Parrish happened to be a KSC technical writer, Michael Mogilevsky.[23] After Baron claimed to have in his possession documentary evidence of deficiencies in the heat shield, cabling, and life support systems, Mogilevsky went to see Frank Childers in NASA Quality Control on 16 December. Childers called in an engineer of the Office of the Director of Quality Assurance, and Mogilevsky related Baron's complaints and fears again.[24]

That evening Rocco Petrone asked John M. Brooks, the Chief of NASA's Regional Inspections Office, to locate and interview Baron. Brooks interviewed Baron twice and briefed Debus, Albert Siepert, and Petrone on Baron's complaints: poor workmanship, failure to maintain cleanliness, faulty installation of equipment, improper testing, unauthorized deviations from specifications and instructions, disregard for rules and regulations, lack of communication between Quality Control and engineering organizations and personnel, and poor personnel practices.

Baron claimed to possess notebooks that would substantiate his charges. He promised to cooperate with KSC and with North American Aviation if someone above his immediate supervisor would listen to what he had to say. He did not believe his previous complaints had ever gone beyond that supervisor. He asked to be allowed to talk to John Hansel, Chief of Quality Control for North American. Baron's complaints were against North American, not KSC. He believed that the center needed additional personnel to enforce compliance with procedures in the Apollo program. Brooks later reported: "Baron was assured that an appropriate level of NAA management would be in touch with him in the next day or two."[25]

On 22 December 1966, Petrone and Wiley E. Williams, Test and Operations Management Office, Directorate for Spacecraft Operations, received a briefing on Baron's complaints. The two men recognized that these were primarily North American Aviation in-house problems and that the company should inquire into Baron's complaints and advise KSC officials of the results. NAA officials W. S. Ford, James L. Pearce, and John L. Hansel met with Petrone that same day. They arranged to talk with Baron the following day.[26]

Since Baron had confidence in Hansel, who was an expert in Quality Control, Hansel's testimony is especially valuable. Baron had lots of complaints but, Hansel insisted, no real proof of major deficiencies, either in the papers Baron had in his possession or in the report that Baron wrote (and

Hansel was to read) a short time later. Lastly, Hansel stated, Baron was not working in a critical area at that time.[27]

North American informed Petrone of the interview by 4 January, but sent no written report to Petrone's office.[28] On 5 January a North American spokesman told newsmen that the company was terminating Baron's services.[29] Since his clearance at the space center had been withdrawn, Baron phoned John Brooks, the NASA inspector, on 24 January and invited him to his home. Brooks accepted the invitation, and Baron gave him a 57-page report for duplication and use. Brooks duplicated it and returned the original to Baron on 25 January.[30] Brooks assured Baron that KSC and NAA had looked into his allegations and taken corrective action where necessary.

Petrone received a mimeographed copy of Baron's report on 26 January. John Wasik of the Titusville *Star Advocate* telephoned Brooks to ask about KSC's interest in Baron's information. Wasik indicated that he was going to seek an interview with Petrone. On the following morning, Gordon Harris, head of the Public Affairs Office at KSC, heard that Wasik had spent approximately one and one-half hours with Zack Strickland, of the North American Aviation Public Relations Information Office, going over the Baron report.[31]

That same day Hansel, North American's head of Quality Control—the man Baron had hoped his report would reach—told Wasik that Baron was one of the most conscientious quality control men he ever had working for him and that his work was always good. "If anything," Hansel related in the presence of Strickland, "Baron was too much of a perfectionist. He couldn't bend and allow deviations from test procedures—and anyone knows that when you're working in a field like this, there is constant change and improvement. The test procedures written in an office often don't fit when they are actually applied. Baron couldn't understand this." Wasik also stated: "Hansel readily agreed that Baron's alleged discrepancies were, for the most part, true."[32] What Wasik did not say was that none of the discrepancies, true though they were, was serious enough to cause a disaster.

Hansel was not alone in his misgivings about Baron. Hansel did not know of Frank Childers's report nor had he ever talked to Childers about Baron. Childers, too, had doubts about the man's reliability. Even though he had sympathetically reported to NASA officials the fears of the North American employee, Childers admitted that Baron, who signed himself T. R. Baron, had the nickname "D. R. (Discrepancy Report) Baron."[33] R. E. Reyes, an engineer in KSC's Preflight Operations Branch, said Baron filed so many negative charges that, had KSC heeded them all, NASA would not have had a man on the moon until the year 2069.[34] To confirm the opinions of these men, Baron himself admitted before a congressional investigating committee a short time later that he had turned in so many negative reports that his department ran out of the proper forms. Further—in confirmation of Hansel's view of Baron's report—Baron based his testimony on hearsay, not on any personal records in his possession.[35] Baron's forebodings were to prove correct, but not for any reason he could document.*

Both NASA and North American Aviation, a historian must conclude, gave far more serious consideration to Baron's complaints than a casual perusal of newspapers during the succeeding weeks, or even close reading of such books as *Mission to the Moon*, would indicate.[36]

Disaster at Pad 34

While top administrators were checking out the fears of Tom Baron, two NASA men, Clarence Chauvin and R. E. Reyes, and two North American Project Engineers, Bruce Haight and Chuck Hannon, met on the morning of 26 January at launch complex 34 to review the general spacecraft readiness and configuration for one of the last major previews, the plugs-out test. The craft looked ready.[37]

That same night the prime and backup crews studied mission plans. The next day a simulated countdown would start shortly before liftoff and then the test would carry through several hours of flight time. There would be no fuel in the Saturn. Grissom, White, and Chaffee would don their full spacesuits and enter the Apollo, breathing pure oxygen to approximate orbital conditions as closely as possible. After simulated liftoff, the spacecraft center in Houston would monitor the performance of the astronauts. The plugs-out test did not rate a hazardous classification; the spacecraft had successfully operated in the test chamber for a greater period of time than it would on the pad.[38]

The astronauts entered the Apollo at 1:00 p.m., Friday, 27 January 1967. Problems immediately arose. NASA Spacecraft Test Conductor Clarence Chauvin later described them: "The first problem that we encountered was when Gus Grissom ingressed into the spacecraft and hooked up to his oxygen supply from the spacecraft. Essentially, his first words were that there was a strange odor in the suit loop. He described it as a 'sour smell'

---

*The Chairman of the House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight, Congressman Olin Teague of Texas, said in thanking Baron for his testimony: "What you have done has caused North American to search their procedures." House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident*, 1: 499.

somewhat like buttermilk.'' The crew stopped to take a sample of the suit loop, and after discussion with Grissom decided to continue the test.

The next problem was a high oxygen flow indication which periodically triggered the master alarm. The men discussed this matter with environmental control systems personnel, who believed the high flow resulted from movements of the crew. The matter was not really resolved.

A third serious problem arose in communications. At first, faulty communications seemed to exist solely between Command Pilot Grissom and the control room. The crew made adjustments. Later, the difficulty extended to include communications between the operations and checkout building and the blockhouse at complex 34. ''The overall communications problem was so bad at times,'' Chauvin testified, ''that we could not even understand what the crew was saying.''[39] William H. Schick, Assistant Test Supervisor in the blockhouse at complex 34, reported in at 4:30 p.m. and monitored the spacecraft checkout procedure for the Deputy of Launch Operations. He sat at the test supervisor's console and logged the events, including various problems in communications.[40] To complicate matters further, no one person controlled the trouble-shooting of the communications problem.[41] This failure in communication forced a hold of the countdown at 5:40 p.m. By 6:31 the test conductors were about ready to pick up the count when ground instruments showed an unexplained rise in the oxygen flow into the spacesuits. One of the crew, presumably Grissom, moved slightly.

Four seconds later, an astronaut, probably Chaffee, announced almost casually over the intercom: ''Fire. I smell fire.'' Two seconds later, Astronaut White's voice was more insistent: ''Fire in the cockpit.''

In the blockhouse, engineers and technicians looked up from their consoles to the television monitors trained at the spacecraft. To their horror, they saw flames licking furiously inside Apollo, and smoke blurred their pictures. Men who had gone through Mercury and Gemini tests and launches without a major hitch stood momentarily stunned at the turn of events. Their eyes saw what was happening, but their minds refused to believe. Finally a near hysterical shout filled the air: ''There's a fire in the spacecraft!''

Procedures for emergency escape called for a minimum of 90 seconds. But in practice the crew had never accomplished the routines in the minimum time. Grissom had to lower White's headrest so White could reach above and behind his left shoulder to actuate a ratchet-type device that would release the first of a series of latches. According to one source, White had actually made part of a full turn with the ratchet before he was overcome by smoke. In the meantime, Chaffee had carried out his duties by switching the power and then turning up the cabin lights as an aid to vision. Outside the white room that totally surrounded the spacecraft, Donald O. Babbitt of North

American Aviation ordered emergency procedures to rescue the astronauts. Technicians started toward the white room. Then the command module ruptured.[42]

Witnesses differed as to how fast everything happened. Gary W. Propst, an RCA technician at the communication control racks in area D on the first floor at launch complex 34, testified four days later that three minutes elapsed between the first shout of "Fire" and the filling of the white room with smoke. Other observers had gathered around his monitor and discussed why the astronauts did not blow the hatch and why no one entered the white room. One of these men, A. R. Caswell, testified on 2 February, two days after Propst. In answer to a question about the time between the first sign of fire and activity outside the spacecraft in the white room, he said: "It appeared to be quite a long period of time, perhaps three or four minutes. . . ."[43]

The men on the launch tower told a different story. Bruce W. Davis, a systems technician with North American Aviation who was on level A8 of the service structure at the time of the fire, reported an almost instantaneous spread of the fire from the moment of first warning. "I heard someone say, 'There is a fire in the cockpit.' I turned around and after about one second I saw flames within the two open access panels in the command module near the umbilical." Jessie L. Owens, North American Systems Engineer, stood near the pad leader's desk when someone shouted: "Fire." He heard what sounded like the cabin relief valve opening and high velocity gas escaping. "Immediately this gas burst into flames somewhat like lighting an acetylene torch," he said. "I turned to go to the white room at the above-noted instant, but was met by a flame wall."[44]

Spacecraft technicians ran toward the sealed Apollo, but before they could reach it, the command module ruptured. Flame and thick black clouds of smoke billowed out, filling the room. Now a new danger arose. Many feared that the fire might set off the launch escape system atop Apollo. This, in turn, could ignite the entire service structure. Instinct told the men to get out while they could. Many did so, but others tried to rescue the astronauts.

Approximately 90 seconds after the first report of fire, pad leader Donald Babbitt reported over a headset from the swing arm that his men had begun attempts to open the hatch. Thus the panel that investigated the fire concluded that only one minute elapsed between the first warning of the fire and the rescue attempt. Babbitt's personal recollection of his reporting over the headset did not make it clear that he had already been in the white room, as the panel seemed to conclude.[45] Be that as it may, for more than five minutes, Babbitt and his North American Aviation crew of James D. Gleaves,

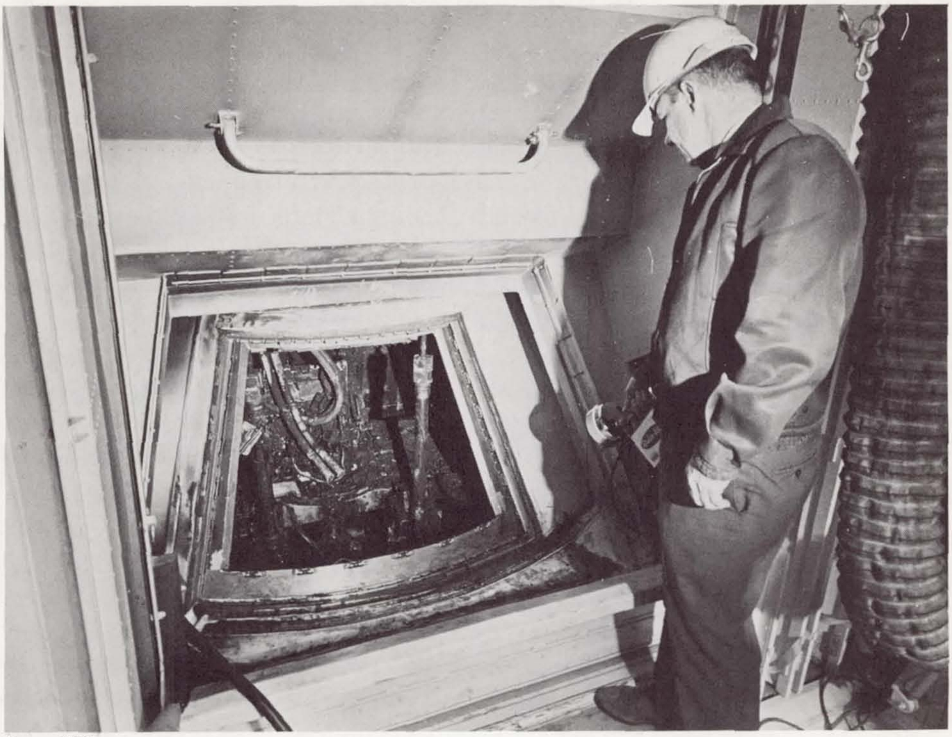


Figure 129

Figure 130

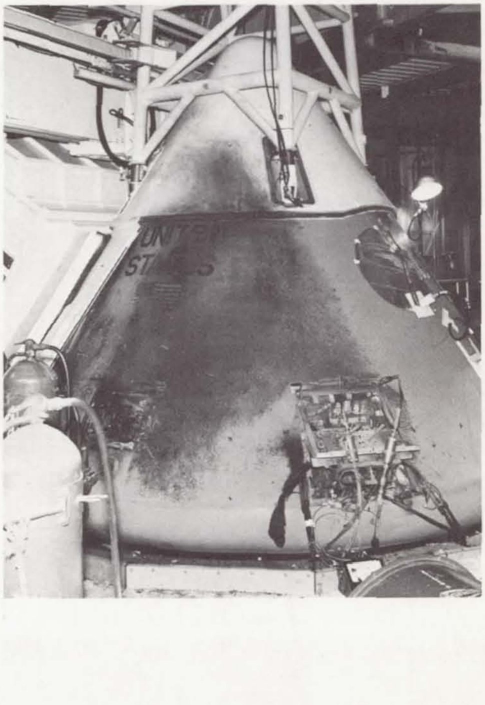


Fig. 129. The interior of the AS-204 spacecraft after the fire: Dale Carothers, Spacecraft *Operations Directorate, in the white room,* looking through the open hatch. Fig. 130. Exterior of AS-204, with the white room to the left.

Jerry W. Hawkins, Steven B. Clemmons, and L. D. Reece, and NASA's Henry H. Rodgers, Jr., struggled to open the hatch. The intense heat and dense smoke drove one after another back, but finally they succeeded. Unfortunately, it was too late. The astronauts were dead. Firemen arrived within three minutes of the hatch opening, doctors soon thereafter. A medical board was to determine that the astronauts died of carbon monoxide asphyxsia, with thermal burns as contributing causes. The board could not say how much of the burns came after the three had died. Fire had destroyed 70% of Grissom's spacesuit, 25% of White's, and 15% of Chaffee's.[46] Doctors treated 27 men for smoke inhalation. Two were hospitalized.

Rumors of disaster spread in driblets through the area. Men who had worked on the day shift returned to see if they could be of help. Crewmen removed the three charred bodies well after midnight.[47]

The sudden deaths of the three astronauts caused international grief and widespread questioning of the space program. Momentarily the whole manned lunar program stood in suspense. Writing in *Newsweek*, Walter Lippman immediately deplored what he called the pride-spurred rush of the program.[48] The Washington *Sunday Star* spoke of soaring costs and claimed that "know-who" had more to do than "know-how" in the choice of North American over Martin Marietta as prime contractor for the spacecraft.[49] A long-time critic of the space program, Senator William J. Fulbright of Arkansas, Chairman of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, placed the "root cause of the tragedy" in "the inflexible, but meaningless, goal of putting an American on the moon by 1970" and called for a "full reappraisal of the space program." The distinguished scientist Dr. James A. Van Allen, discoverer of radiation belts in space, charged that NASA was "losing its soul." It had become "a huge engineering, technological and operational agency with less and less devotion to the true spirit of exploration and to the advancement of basic knowledge."[50] A lead editorial in the *New York Times* spoke of the incompetence and negligence that became apparent as the full story of disaster came to light, but put the central blame on "the technically senseless" and "highly dangerous" dedication to the meaningless timetable of putting a man on the moon by 1970.[51] An article in the American Institute of Chemical Engineers *Journal* had the long-anticipated title: "NASA's in the Cold, Cold Ground."[52] But President Johnson held firm to the predetermined goal and communicated his confidence to NASA.[53]

The Review Board

After removal of the bodies, NASA impounded everything at launch complex 34. On 3 February, NASA Administrator Webb set up a review board to investigate the matter thoroughly. Except for one Air Force officer and an explosives expert from the Bureau of Mines, both specialists in safety, all the members of the board came from NASA.* North American Aviation had a man on the board for one day. At least George Jeffs, NAA's chief Apollo engineer, thought he was on the board. After consultation with Shea and Gilruth of the Manned Space Flight Center, North American officials recommended him as one who could contribute more than any other NAA officer. Jeffs flew to the Cape and sat in on several meetings until, as Jeffs was to report later to the House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight, "I was told that I was no longer a member of the Board." The representative of the review board who dismissed Jeffs gave no reason for the dismissal.[54] Thus all members of the board were government employees, a fact that was to cause NASA considerable criticism from Congress.

Debus asked all KSC and contractor employees for complete cooperation with the review board. He called their attention to the Apollo Mission Failure Contingency Plan of 13 May 1966 that prohibited all government and contractor employees from discussing technical aspects of the accident with anyone other than a member of the board. All press information would go through the Public Affairs Office. In scheduled public addresses, speakers might discuss other aspects of the space program but "should courteously but absolutely refuse to speculate at this time on anything connected with the Apollo 204 investigation or with factors that might be related, directly or indirectly, to the accident."[55] Debus's action muted at KSC the wild rumors that had prevailed in east Florida and spread throughout the country after the fire.[56]

Under authorization from the review board, ground crews carefully removed the debris on the crew couches inside the command module on 3 February. They recorded the type and location of the material removed. Then they laid a plywood shelf across the three interlocked seats so that combustion specialists could enter the command module and examine the cabin more thoroughly. On the following day they removed the plywood and the three seats. Two days after that, they suspended a plastic false floor inside the command module so that investigators could continue to examine the

---

*The NASA members were: the chairman, Dr. Floyd L. Thompson, Dir., Langley Research Center; Astronaut Frank Borman, Manned Spacecraft Center; Dr. Maxime A. Faget, Dir., Engineering and Development, MSC; E. Barton Geer, Assoc. Chief, Flight Vehicles and Systems Div., Langley; George C. White, Jr., Dir. of Reliability and Quality, Apollo Program Off.; and John J. Williams, Dir., Spacecraft Operations, Kennedy. The non-NASA members were Dr. Robert W. Van Dolah, Research Dir., Explosive Research Center, Bureau of Mines, Dept. of the Interior; and Col. Charles F. Strange, Chief of Missiles and Space Safety Div., Off. of the Air Force Inspector General, Norton AFB, CA. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board*, p. 5. The only non-government person on the original board, Dr. Frank Long of Cornell Univ., a member of the President's Scientific Advisory Committee, soon resigned because of the press of other activities and was replaced by Van Dolah. *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 13 Feb. 1967, p. 33.

command module interior without aggravating the condition of the lower part of the cabin.[57]

Engineers at the Manned Spacecraft Center duplicated conditions of Apollo 204 without crewmen in the capsule. They reconstructed events as studies at KSC brought them to light. The investigation on pad 34 showed that the fire started in or near one of the wire bundles to the left and just in front of Grissom's seat on the left side of the cabin—a spot visible to Chaffee. The fire was probably invisible for about five or six seconds until Chaffee sounded the alarm. "From then on," a *Time* writer stated, "the pattern and the intensity of the test fire followed, almost to a second, the pattern and intensity of the fire aboard Apollo 204."[58]

The members of the review board sifted every ash in the command module, photographed every angle, checked every wire, and questioned in exhausting detail almost everyone who had the remotest knowledge of events related to the fire. They carefully dismantled and inspected every component in the cockpit.[59]

In submitting its formal report to Administrator Webb on 5 April 1967, the board summarized its findings: "The fire in Apollo 204 was most probably brought about by some minor malfunction or failure of equipment or wire insulation. This failure, which most likely will never be positively identified, initiated a sequence of events that culminated in the conflagration."*[60]

To the KSC Safety Office, the next finding of the Review Board seemed to be the key to the entire report: "Those organizations responsible for the planning, conduct and safety of this test failed to identify it as being hazardous."[61] Since NASA had not considered the test hazardous, KSC had not instituted those procedures that normally would have accompanied such a test.[62]

The Review Board had other severe criticism:

> Deficiencies existed in Command Module design, workmanship and quality control. . . .
>
> The Command Module contained many types and classes of combustible material in areas contiguous to possible ignition sources. . . . The rapid spread of fire caused an increase in

---

*The review board ignored and a congressional committee later vehemently rejected the hypothesis of Dr. John McCarthy, NAA Division Director of Research, Engineering, and Test, that Grissom accidentally scuffed the insulation of a wire in moving about the spacecraft. (*Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident*, 1: 202, 263.) In the same congressional investigation, Col. Frank Borman, the first astronaut to enter the burnt-out spacecraft, testified: "We found no evidence to support the thesis that Gus, or any of the crew members kicked the wire that ignited the flammables." This theory that a scuffed wire caused the spark that led to the fire still has wide currency at Kennedy Space Center. Men differ, however, on the cause of the scuff.

> pressure and temperature which resulted in rupture of the Command Module and creation of a toxic atmosphere. . . . Due to internal pressure, the Command Module inner hatch could not be opened prior to rupture of Command Module. . . . The overall communications system was unsatisfactory. . . . Problems of program management and relationships between Centers and with the contractor have led in some cases to insufficient response to changing program requirements. . . . Emergency fire, rescue and medical teams were not in attendance. . . . The Command Module Environmental Control System design provides a pure oxygen atmosphere. . . . This atmosphere presents severe fire hazards.[63]

A last recommendation went beyond hazards: "Every effort must be made to insure the maximum clarification and understanding of the responsibilities of all the organizations involved, the objective being a fully coordinated and efficient program."[64]

The review board recommended that NASA continue its program and get to the moon and back before the end of 1969. Safety, however, was to be a prime consideration, outranking the target date. The board urged, finally, that NASA keep the appropriate congressional committees informed on significant problems arising in its programs.

Astronaut Frank Borman, a member of the board, summed up the fact that everyone had taken safety in ground testing for granted. The crewmen, he stated, had the right not to enter the spacecraft if they thought it was unsafe. However, "none of us," Borman insisted, "gave any serious consideration to a fire in the spacecraft."[65]

The board members sharply criticized the fact that the astronauts had no quick means of escape and recommended a redesigned hatch that could be opened in two to three seconds instead of a minute and a half. They proposed a number of other changes in the design of both the spacecraft and the pad and recommended revised practices and procedures for emergencies. Many of these, incidentally, KSC already had in its plans for "hazardous" operations.[66]

One of the most amazing facts to come out in the testimony of so many at KSC was the complicated process of communications. A contractor employee would confer with his NASA counterpart, who would in turn get in touch with his supervisor, who would in turn report to someone else in the chain of command. It must have seemed to the review board easier for a man on the pad to get through to the White House than to reach a local authority in time of an emergency.[67]

Congress Investigates

When the review board began its investigation in February, the Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences held a few hearings but confined its queries to major NASA officials.[68] When the Apollo 204 Review Board turned in its report to Administrator Webb, the Senate Committee enlarged the scope of its survey; and the House Committee on Science and Astronautics, more particularly the Subcommittee on NASA Oversight, went into action.

Congress had wider concerns, however, than the mechanics of the fire that had occupied so much of the review board's time. Both houses, and especially two legislators from Illinois, freshman Senator Charles Percy and Representative Donald Rumsfeld, showed great interest in the composition of the review board, especially its lack of non-government investigators.[69] Members of Congress questioned the board's omission of any analysis of the possibility of weakness in the managerial structure that might have allowed conditions to approach the point of disaster. Senator Edward Brooke of Massachusetts wondered about the extensive involvement of North American Aviation and its capacity to handle such a huge percentage of the Apollo contracts.[70] To the surprise of both NASA and NAA officials, members of both the Senate and House committees were to take a growing interest in the report of the Phillips review team of December 1965. This probing was to lead to some embarrassing moments for Mueller of NASA and Atwood of North American Aviation.[71] But these aspects of the hearings belong more properly to the NASA Headquarters history.

Questioning of Debus by two members of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics at a hearing in Washington on the evening of 12 April bears directly on the KSC story. Congressman John Wydler of New York asked Debus to clarify his secrecy directive, which Wydler believed had caused some misunderstanding. Debus read his initial directive of 3 February, which asked for total cooperation with the board and squelched other discussion of the disaster; and then his second announcement of 11 April, after the review board had submitted its report, which removed all restraints.[72] Wydler seemed satisfied.

When Congressman James Fulton of Pennsylvania asked Debus a few minutes later if he would like to make a short statement for the record, Debus came out candidly:

> As director of the installation I share the responsibility for this tragic accident and I have given it much thought. It is for

> me very difficult to find out why we did not think deeply enough or were not inventive enough to identify this as a very hazardous test.
>
> I have searched in my past for safety criteria that we developed in the early days of guided missile work and I must say that there are some that are subject to intuitive thinking and forward assessment. Some are made by practical experience and involved not only astronauts but the hundreds of people on the pads. . . .
>
> It is very deplorable but it was the known condition which started from Commander Shepard's flight . . . from then on we developed a tradition that . . . considered the possibility of a fire but we had no concept of the possible viciousness of this fire and its speed.
>
> We never knew that the conflagration would go that fast through the spacecraft so that no rescue would essentially help. This was not known. This is the essential cause of the tragedy. Had we known, we would have prepared with as adequate support as humanly possible for egress.[73]

Congressman Fulton congratulated Debus on his statement. "This is why we have confidence in NASA. We have been with you on many successes. We have been with you on previous failures, not so tragic. . . . The Air Force had five consecutive failures and this committee still backed them and said go ahead." By looking at matters openly and seeking better procedures, Fulton felt that NASA was making progress.[74]

The House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight, under the chairmanship of Olin Teague of Texas, held hearings at the Kennedy Space Center on 21 April. When the investigation opened, it soon became clear—as the review board had already learned—that any emergency procedures at the space center would be extremely complicated matters involving conferences between NASA and contractor counterparts, and even in certain instances with representatives of the Air Force safety section. Beyond this the most noteworthy event of the hearing was the recommendation of Congressman Daddario that the members commend the brave men on the pad* who had tried to save the astronauts.[75]

---

*Six spacecraft technicians who had risked their lives to save the astronauts received the National Medal for Exceptional Bravery on 24 October 1967. They were Henry H. Rodgers, Jr., of NASA, and Donald O. Babbitt, James D. Gleaves, Jerry W. Hawkins, Steven B. Clemmons, and L. D. Reece, all of North American Aviation. Taylor, *Liftoff*, p. 267.

While the Senate committee in Washington spent a great deal of time on the Phillips report, and embarrassed NASA and NAA officials with questions about the document, the committee finally had to agree with the testimony that "the findings of the Phillips task force had no effect on the accident, did not lead to the accident, and were not related to the accident."[76] On the positive side, the committee learned from President Atwood that North American Aviation had made substantial changes in its management. The firm had placed William B. Bergen, former president of Martin-Marietta, in charge of its Space Division; obtained the full-time services of Bastian Hello and hired as consultant G. T. Wiley, both former Martin officials; and transferred one of its own officers, P. R. Vogt, from the Rocketdyne Division to the Space Division. Atwood testified that North American would probably make other changes.[77] In the end, the Senate committee recommended that NASA move forward to achieve its goal within the prescribed time, but reaffirmed the review board's insistence that safety take precedence over target dates, and reminded NASA to keep appropriate congressional committees informed of any significant problems that might arise in its program.[78]

Reaction at KSC

During the ensuing months, NASA took many steps to prevent future disasters. It gave top priority to a redesigned hatch, a single-hinged door that swung outward with only one-half pound of force. An astronaut could unlatch the door in three seconds. The hatch had a push-pull unlatching handle, a window for visibility in flight, a plunger handle inside the command module to unlatch a segment of the protective cover, a pull loop that permitted someone outside to unlatch the protective cover, and a counterbalance that would hold the door open.[79] NASA revised flight schedules. An unmanned Saturn V would go up in late 1967, but the manned flight of the backup crew for the Grissom team—Schirra, Eisele, and Cunningham—would not be ready before the following May or June.[80] In the choice of materials for space suits, NASA settled on a new flame-proof material called "Beta Cloth" instead of nylon. Within the spacecraft, technicians covered exposed wires and plumbing to preclude inadvertent contact, redesigned wire bundles and harness routings, and increased fire protection.

Initially, NASA administrators said they would stay with oxygen as the atmosphere in the spacecraft. But after a year and a half of testing, NASA was to settle on a formula of 60% oxygen and 40% nitrogen. NASA provided a spacecraft mockup at KSC for training the rescue and the operational teams. At complex 34 technicians put a fan in the white room to ventilate any possible smoke. They added water hoses and fire extinguishers and an escape slide wire. Astronauts and workers could ride down this wire during emergencies, reaching the ground from a height of over 60 meters in seconds.[81]

NASA safety officers were instructed to report directly to the center director. At Kennedy this procedure had been the practice for some time. A Headquarters decision also extended the responsibilities of the Flight Safety Office at Kennedy. Test conductors and all others intimately involved with the development of the spacecraft and its performance sent every change in procedure to the Flight Safety Office for approval.[82]

The fire had a significant impact on KSC's relations with the spacecraft contractors. When KSC had absorbed Houston's Florida Operations team in December 1964, the launch center was supposed to have assumed direction of the spacecraft contractors at the Cape. The North American and Grumman teams at KSC, however, had continued to look to their home offices, and indirectly to Houston, for guidance. This ended in the aftermath of LC-34's tragedy. With the support of NASA Headquarters, KSC took firm control of all spacecraft activities at the launch center.

The Boeing–TIE Contract

To strengthen program management further, NASA entered into a contract with the Boeing Company to assist and support the NASA Apollo organization in the performance of specific technical integration and evaluation functions. NASA retained responsibility for final technical decisions.[83] This Boeing-TIE contract, as it came to be called at KSC, proved the most controversial of all post-fire precautions. Many in middle or lower echelons at KSC criticized it. They looked upon it as a public relations scheme to convince Congress of NASA's sincere effort to promote safety.

Even NASA Headquarters found it difficult to explain to a congressional subcommittee either the expenditure of $73 million in one year on the contract, or that it had hired a firm to inspect work which that firm itself performed. As a matter of fact one segment of the Boeing firm—that working under the TIE contract—had to check on another, the one that worked on the first stage of Saturn V. Mueller explained to the committee that "the Boeing selection for the TIE contract . . . was based upon the fact that this was an extension of the work [Boeing personnel] were already doing in terms of integrating the Saturn V launch vehicle."[84]

When a member of the committee staff called Mueller's attention to the fact that Boeing had problems with its own specific share of the total effort, Mueller's defense of the contract rested on the old adage that "nothing succeeds like success." He felt that if the total program succeeded, the nation would no longer question specific aspects and expenditures.[85]

Boeing sent 771 people to KSC, one-sixth of the total it brought onto NASA installations under the TIE contract. In such a speedy expansion, the quality of performance was spotty. The "TIE-ers" were to find it difficult to get data from other contractors, as well as from NASA personnel. The men at KSC felt they had the personnel to do themselves what the TIE-ers were attempting to do.

The TIE statement of work at KSC carried a technical description of twelve distinct task areas: program integration, engineering evaluation, program control, interface and configuration management, safety, test, design certification reviews, flight readiness reviews, logistics, mission analysis, Apollo Space System Engineering Team, and program assurance.[86]

Many KSC personnel felt that the TIE contract was too much like the General Electric contract they had fought a few years before. In this they forgot that the earlier contract had been a permanent one, which would have given GE access to its competitors' files, and thus involved a conflict of interest. The Boeing–TIE contract had a specific purpose and a time limit. NASA made the arrangement on an annual basis. Further, those who criticized the number of Boeing personnel forgot that one could not assess the size of the problem until he investigated it.

The TIE personnel located and defined delays in the progress of equipment to the Kennedy Space Center. They spotted deficiencies in equipment. They discovered erroneous color coding of lines, for instance, that might have caused a disaster. The insulation of pipes had obscured the color and men had improperly tagged the sources of propellants and gases. When tests at KSC proved changes of equipment necessary, the TIE personnel expedited these changes. They set down time schedules for necessary adjustments. They eliminated extraneous material from the interface control documents. But it remains difficult to assess the exact contribution of the TIE contract.[87]

Far more important than the efforts of the 771 Boeing–TIE personnel, or any specific recommendation of the review board (except perhaps that calling for a new hatch design), the most significant difference at Kennedy Space Center was a larger awareness of how easily things could go wrong. For a long time no test or launch would be thought of as a foregone success.

Most important of all, in spite of the disaster, the President, the Congress, the nation, and NASA itself determined that the moon landing program would go on with the hope of coming as close to President Kennedy's target date as possible.

19

Apollo 4: The Trial Run

The Significance of AS-501

The problems of the spacecraft threatened, but did not extinguish, the hopes of reaching the moon within the decade. Much depended on the outcome of the first Saturn V mission. If the largest launch vehicle and launch complex yet built both performed satisfactorily, the Apollo program could still meet its schedule.

A successful mission would achieve several significant goals. It would mark: the first launch from launch complex 39, the first flight of the integrated Apollo–Saturn V space vehicle, the initial trials of the first (S-IC) and second (S-II) stages of the Saturn V launch vehicle, the first shutdown and restart in space of the third stage (S-IVB) engine, and the first demonstration of the Apollo spacecraft's ability to reenter the earth's atmosphere at the speeds and temperatures it would reach on return from a mission to the moon. Many other benefits would accrue if the unmanned earth-orbital mission succeeded. The adequacy of ground tracking, telemetry, and communications operations at stations around the world could be evaluated. The launch vehicle stages and spacecraft modules would carry additional research and development instrumentation to measure the performance of their internal components. A total of 4098 in-flight measurements—about ⅔ of them for the launch vehicle, ⅓ for the spacecraft—were scheduled.[1]

The results of this mission would confirm or deny the validity of a major management decision made in the fall of 1963—the use of all-up flight testing. Designed to result in an overall time saving, all-up testing meant that all launch vehicle stages and spacecraft modules (essentially in their final configuration) would be tested together on each flight. Previous practice had favored a gradual buildup of subsystems, systems, stages, and modules in successive flight tests.[2] Based in part on the unqualified successes of the first four Saturn I missions, but made before any Apollo spacecraft had flown, the eggs-in-one-basket decision involved a calculated risk. Success in all-up testing was the quickest way to accomplish a manned lunar landing. On the other hand, failure of the first Saturn V mission would be a major catastrophe.

For KSC the first flight of the Apollo-Saturn V had a narrower, but more important, objective than that of the total mission. For the first time the facilities, equipment, procedures, and checkout crews would be put to the test. The 500-F facility checkout tests had instilled a certain degree of confidence (while revealing much that remained to be done), but this would be "the real thing." This time, every action would lead toward those moments when the first-stage engines would ignite, the hold-down arms on the launcher platform would retract, and the Apollo-Saturn V vehicle would be committed to flight. In the process of receiving, assembling, testing, and launching this first Apollo-Saturn V, KSC civil service managers and the launch vehicle, spacecraft, and launch support contractor crews would be learning to work together as a unit. It would prove a difficult task for all concerned—and not without its rough moments—but, in the end, a well-functioning launch team would be the reward.

The Parts of AS-501

The first of the Apollo-Saturn V space vehicles had received its official designation in April 1965 when Maj. Gen. Samuel C. Phillips, Apollo Program Director, announced: "Apollo flight missions to be flown on Saturn IB and Saturn V will be designated as Apollo/Saturn followed by the number of the launch vehicle assigned to the flight mission (i.e., Apollo/Saturn 201, Apollo/Saturn 202, etc., and Apollo/Saturn 501, Apollo/Saturn 502, etc.)."[3] The AS-501 space vehicle consisted of Saturn V launch vehicle number 501 and Apollo spacecraft number 017. The launch vehicle had three stages and an instrument unit. The spacecraft included a spacecraft lunar module adapter, a lunar module, a service module, a command module, and a launch escape system.

Components of the AS-501's first stage (S-IC) were constructed by the Boeing Company at Michoud, Louisiana, and assembled at the Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville, Alabama. The S-IC stage consisted of a structural framework to which the engines were attached, an RP-1 (kerosene) fuel tank, a LOX (liquid oxygen) tank, an intertank structure separating the fuel and LOX tanks, and a forward skirt that connected to the second stage. The five Rocketdyne F-1 engines would develop a total of 33.4 million newtons (7 500 000 pounds of thrust) at liftoff. The center engine was fixed in position, but the others were mounted on gimbals to provide attitude control and steering for the vehicle. Two hydraulic actuators swiveled each engine in response to signals from the flight control computer located in the instrument unit. In less than 3 minutes of powered flight, the first stage engines would consume almost 2000 metric tons of propellants. Eight small solid-propellant retrorockets were attached to the framework to slow the first stage after engine shutdown, guaranteeing separation of the first and second stages.

The second stage (S-II), built by North American Aviation, Inc., Canoga Park, California, consisted of an aft interstage, an aft skirt and framework to which the engines were attached, integral LOX and liquid hydrogen (LH_2) tanks with a single common bulkhead, and a forward skirt. The five Rocketdyne J-2 engines were arranged similarly to those of the first stages, with the center engine fixed and the four outer engines gimbaled by hydraulic actuators in response to signals from the instrument unit. The aft interstage, which surrounded the rocket engines, was the means of attaching the second stage to the first stage; it also supported the weight of the second and third stages and the spacecraft. In flight when the first and second stages separated and the second stage engines ignited, the aft interstage was jettisoned. During the second stage's 6 minutes of powered flight, the five J-2 engines would consume about 425 metric tons of propellants while developing nearly 4.5 million newtons (one million pounds of thrust).

The third stage (S-IVB) of the launch vehicle was built by Douglas Aircraft Company. It consisted of the aft interstage, an aft skirt, a thrust structure to which the single J-2 engine was attached, a LOX tank and an LH_2 tank, and a forward skirt. Because the third stage was smaller in diameter than the first and second stages, the aft interstage tapered from a diameter of 10 meters at its base to 6.6 meters where it joined the aft skirt. The single Rocketdyne J-2 engine would develop 889 600 newtons (200 000 pounds of thrust) and was capable of being shut down in space, and then reignited. Hydraulic actuators gimbaled the engine, in response to signals from the instrument unit, to provide pitch and yaw control during powered flight. Two self-contained auxiliary propulsion system modules, mounted 180 degrees apart on the aft skirt, would provide roll control during powered flight, and pitch, yaw, and roll control while the J-2 engine was shut down. During the approximately 7½ minutes of third-stage powered flight (including first and second burns), about 105 metric tons of propellants would be consumed.

IBM's instrument unit (S-IU), atop the third stage, was 6.6 meters in diameter, slightly less than one meter in height, and weighed about 10 metric tons. The unit consisted of segments of honeycomb material sandwiched between inner and outer skins and looked like a narrow collar or ring that had been slipped part way down the vehicle. Mounted on the inner skin were 16

The components of Saturn V

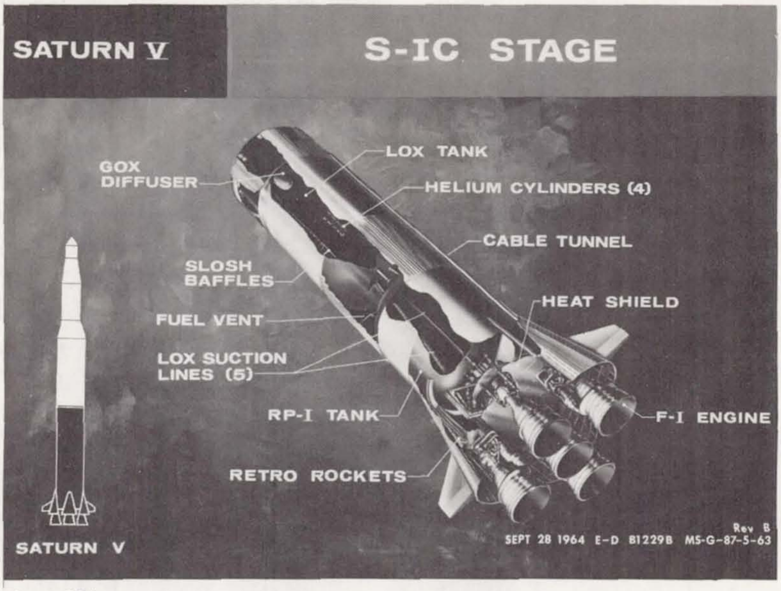

SATURN V
S-IC STAGE
GOX DIFFUSER
LOX TANK
HELIUM CYLINDERS (4)
CABLE TUNNEL
SLOSH BAFFLES
HEAT SHIELD
FUEL VENT
LOX SUCTION LINES (5)
RP-I TANK
F-I ENGINE
RETRO ROCKETS
SATURN V
Rev B
SEPT 28 1964 E-D 81229B MS-G-87-5-63

Figure 131

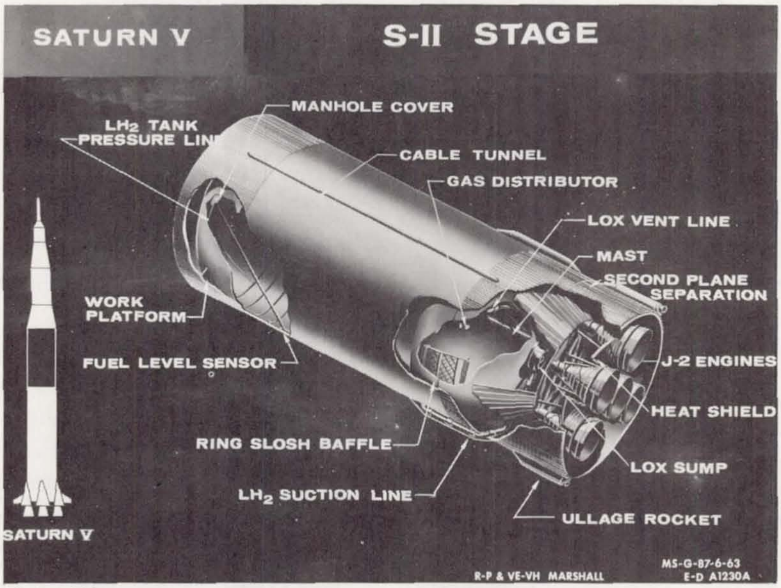

SATURN V
S-II STAGE
MANHOLE COVER
LH2 TANK PRESSURE LIN
CABLE TUNNEL
GAS DISTRIBUTOR
LOX VENT LINE
MAST
SECOND PLANE SEPARATION
WORK PLATFORM
FUEL LEVEL SENSOR
J-2 ENGINES
HEAT SHIELD
RING SLOSH BAFFLE
LOX SUMP
LH2 SUCTION LINE
ULLAGE ROCKET
ATURN V
R-P & VE-VH MARSHALL
MS-G-87-6-63
E-D A1230A

Figure 132

Fig. 131. The first stage, S-IC. GOX stands for gaseous oxygen, LOX for liquid oxygen; RP-1 was a rocket propellant similar to kerosene. Fig. 132. The second stage, S-II. LH_2 means liquid hydrogen.

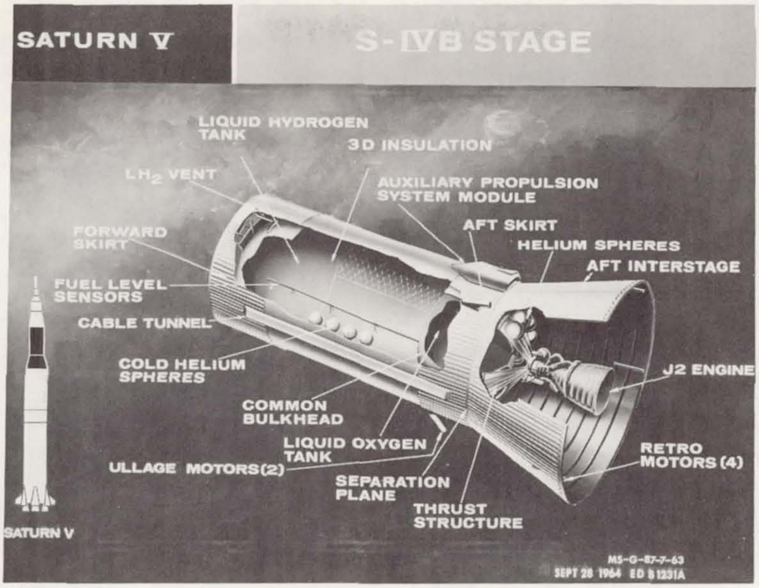

SATURN V
S-IVB STAGE
LIQUID HYDROGEN TANK
3 D INSULATION
LH$_2$ VENT
AUXILIARY PROPULSION SYSTEM MODULE
FORWARD SKIRT
AFT SKIRT
HELIUM SPHERES
AFT INTERSTAGE
FUEL LEVEL SENSORS
CABLE TUNNEL
COLD HELIUM SPHERES
J2 ENGINE
COMMON BULKHEAD
LIQUID OXYGEN TANK
ULLAGE MOTORS(2)
RETRO MOTORS (4)
SEPARATION PLANE
THRUST STRUCTURE
SATURN V
MS-G-87-7-63
SEPT 28 1964 ED B 1231A

Figure 133

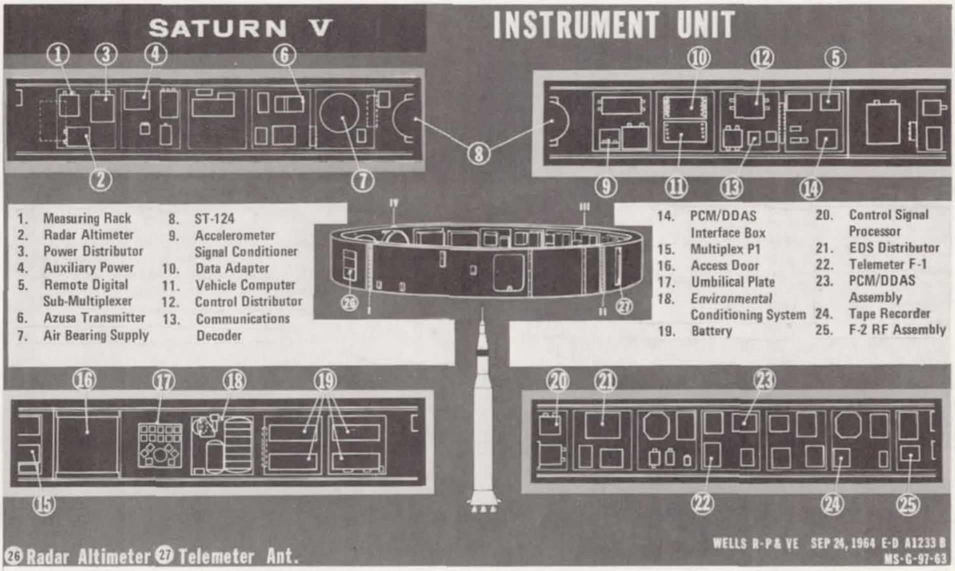

SATURN V
INSTRUMENT UNIT
① ③ ④ ⑥
⑩ ⑫ ⑤
⑧
② ⑦
⑨ ⑪ ⑬ ⑭
IV
III
1. Measuring Rack
2. Radar Altimeter
3. Power Distributor
4. Auxiliary Power
5. Remote Digital Sub-Multiplexer
6. Azusa Transmitter
7. Air Bearing Supply
8. ST-124
9. Accelerometer Signal Conditioner
10. Data Adapter
11. Vehicle Computer
12. Control Distributor
13. Communications Decoder
14. PCM/DDAS Interface Box
15. Multiplex P1
16. Access Door
17. Umbilical Plate
18. Environmental Conditioning System
19. Battery
20. Control Signal Processor
21. EDS Distributor
22. Telemeter F-1
23. PCM/DDAS Assembly
24. Tape Recorder
25. F-2 RF Assembly
㉖ ㉗
II
I
⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲
⑳ ㉑ ㉓
⑮
㉒ ㉔ ㉕
㉖ Radar Altimeter ㉗ Telemeter Ant.
WELLS R-P& VE SEP 24, 1964 E-D A1233 B
MS-G-97-63

Figure 134

Fig. 133. The third stage, S-IVB. Fig. 134. Schematic of the instrument unit, which was shaped like a ring or collar and placed around the upper end of the propellant tankage in what would otherwise have been wasted space.

cold plates, each 76 centimeters square. Coolant fluid circulated through these plates to dissipate heat generated by the operation of the guidance and control, instrumentation, and electrical power and distribution equipment installed on them. By attaching the equipment to the skin, space was left in the center for the domed bulkhead of the third-stage liquid-hydrogen tank, which extended into the instrument unit, and for the landing gear of the lunar module to be included on later missions.[4]

The flight plan called for the Saturn V to place the spacecraft and third stage into a circular orbit. After completing two orbits, the third stage would ignite a second time. Separating from the third stage, the spacecraft would rise to an apogee of approximately 18 500 kilometers by firing its service propulsion system engine. A second firing during descent from apogee would boost the command module's reentry velocity to 11 075 meters per second or 40 234 kilometers per hour. Protected by its heat shield, the command module would reenter the atmosphere and return to earth northwest of Hawaii.

Delay after Delay after Delay

Apollo 4 was not ill-starred. In fact, it eventually went into space trailing a sizable cloud of glory. But no mission was so plagued by vexatious delay, due in part to the teething troubles of a new rocket and new stages, especially the S-II; in part, to the aftermath of the fire; and in part, to the all-up procedure which put a premium on prelaunch preparations. The delays were not unproductive. Many involved the learning of lessons that, once mastered, were needed in succeeding Saturn V launches. Some serious problems did not delay the launch. For example, early in the checkout LC-39's LOX line ruptured, threatening to hold up operations for several weeks (pp. 343–44). The line was repaired, and could have been repaired two or three times over, while other and more serious problems were being solved.

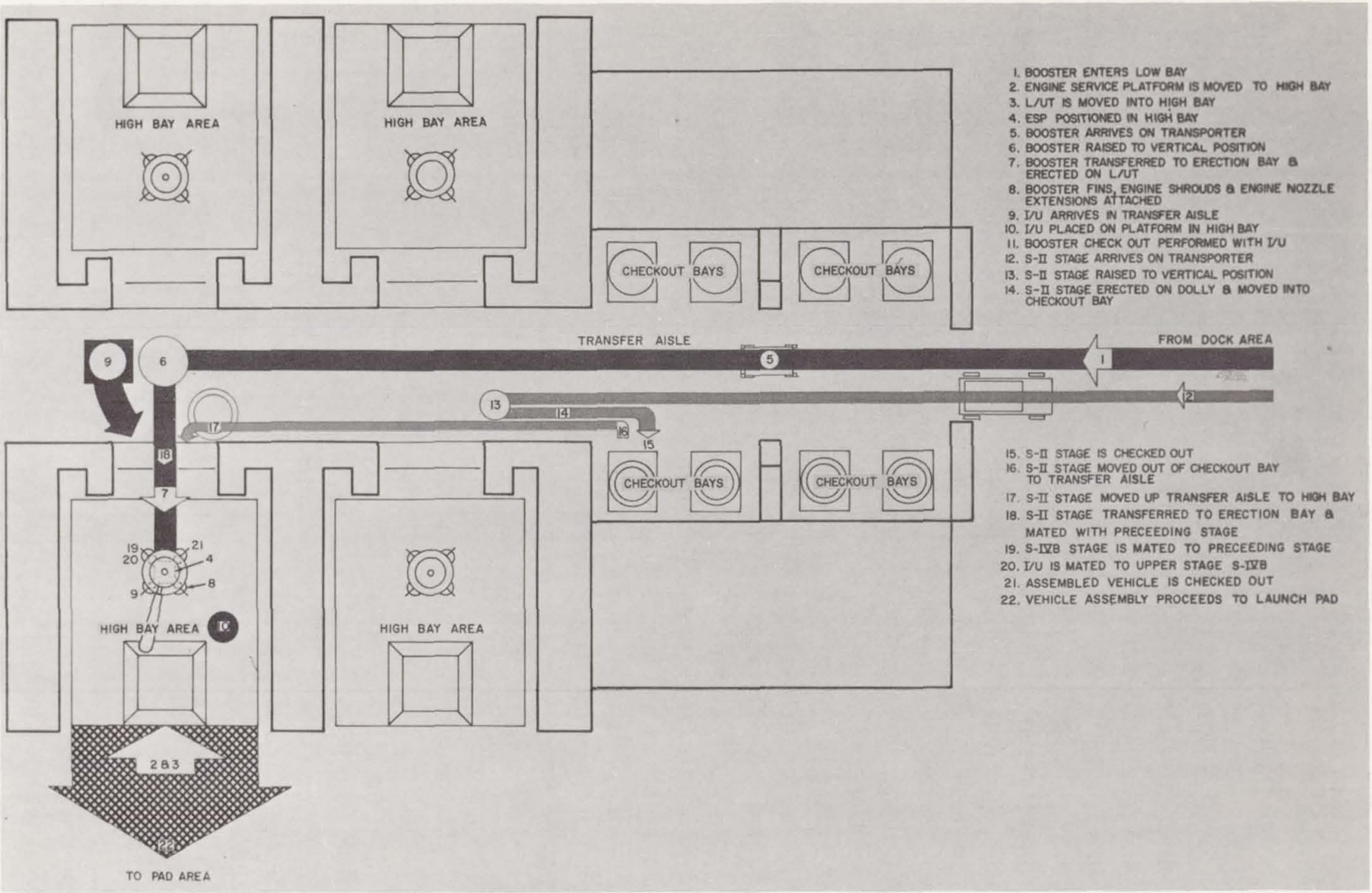
In mid-1966 General Phillips hoped to launch the first Saturn V early the following year. Few Apollo officials were very confident about the target date. The S-II second stage had become the pacing item in the program. Development problems had already delayed its delivery at KSC from July to October 1966. On 13 August the S-II reached the Mississippi Test Facility, only to be held up again when technicians found cracks. The discovery delayed the acceptance firings and forced Phillips to reschedule the arrival of the S-II stage at KSC for mid-November. That month the Apollo Program Office issued a revised schedule calling for delivery of the S-II stage at KSC on 9 January, with launch three months later. Meantime, checkout of the

501 vehicle proceeded without S-II. In its place the launch team employed a spacer, referred to as the "spool" because of its shape—a cylinder that flared out at both ends. With the spacer the launch team could stack the stages and begin checkout in the assembly building. The spool also gave KSC the opportunity to test handling equipment for the second stage.[5]

The third stage (S-IVB) was the first major component of Apollo 4 to be delivered at KSC. It arrived from Sacramento aboard the Guppy aircraft on 14 August 1966 and went immediately into a low bay of the assembly building for inspection and checkout. The following week the spacer and instrument unit arrived. On 12 September, as Peter Conrad and Richard Gordon prepared to blast off in Gemini 11, the barge *Poseidon* sailed into the Banana River with the first stage. Boeing gave it a lengthy checkout in the transfer aisle of the high bay before erecting the booster on 27 October. During the following week, technicians stacked the remaining launch vehicle stages, using the spool for the absent S-II. There were a few problems—the checkout of the swing arms took an extra two days and a cooling unit for the instrument unit sprang a leak—but the launch team, still counting on the mid-November delivery date for the S-II, hoped to roll the complete vehicle out to pad A by 13 January 1967.[6]

By late November the Apollo Program Office had moved the S-II's arrival back to January, and the launch back to April. Since spacecraft 017 would not arrive for another three weeks, KSC erected the facilities verification model of Apollo on 28 November. This allowed North American to check out some of its spacecraft support equipment. The first week in December the memory core in a digital events evaluator failed after intermittent troubles; cracked solder joints were blamed. A hurried repair put the computer back on line.[7]

The command-service module arrived at KSC on Christmas Eve and was mated to the launch vehicle on 12 January 1967. That tardy prima donna, the S-II stage, finally appeared on 21 January. Tank inspection, insulation, and engine work were in progress by the 23d. Test crews found damaged connectors on three recirculation pumps and set about investigating the extent of the rework that would be necessary. While inspecting the liquid hydrogen tank on the second stage, the North American team found 22 cracked gussets. These triangular metal braces, used to support the horizontal ribs of the stage framework, had to be replaced. Plans to move the second stage into a low bay checkout cell on the 29th were temporarily set aside because of a late shipment of the aft interstage (the cylindrical aluminum structure that formed the structural interface between the first and second stages). The interstage arrived on 31 January, and by the end of the next day the stage was in a low bay cell with work platforms around it.[8]


HIGH BAY AREA
HIGH BAY AREA
CHECKOUT BAYS
CHECKOUT BAYS
TRANSFER AISLE
FROM DOCK AREA
1
2
5
6
9
13
14
15
16
17
18
7
19
20
21
4
8
9
10
CHECKOUT BAYS
CHECKOUT BAYS
HIGH BAY AREA
HIGH BAY AREA
283
22
TO PAD AREA

1. BOOSTER ENTERS LOW BAY
2. ENGINE SERVICE PLATFORM IS MOVED TO HIGH BAY
3. L/UT IS MOVED INTO HIGH BAY
4. ESP POSITIONED IN HIGH BAY
5. BOOSTER ARRIVES ON TRANSPORTER
6. BOOSTER RAISED TO VERTICAL POSITION
7. BOOSTER TRANSFERRED TO ERECTION BAY & ERECTED ON L/UT
8. BOOSTER FINS, ENGINE SHROUDS & ENGINE NOZZLE EXTENSIONS ATTACHED
9. I/U ARRIVES IN TRANSFER AISLE
10. I/U PLACED ON PLATFORM IN HIGH BAY
11. BOOSTER CHECK OUT PERFORMED WITH I/U
12. S-II STAGE ARRIVES ON TRANSPORTER
13. S-II STAGE RAISED TO VERTICAL POSITION
14. S-II STAGE ERECTED ON DOLLY & MOVED INTO CHECKOUT BAY
15. S-II STAGE IS CHECKED OUT
16. S-II STAGE MOVED OUT OF CHECKOUT BAY TO TRANSFER AISLE
17. S-II STAGE MOVED UP TRANSFER AISLE TO HIGH BAY
18. S-II STAGE TRANSFERRED TO ERECTION BAY & MATED WITH PRECEEDING STAGE
19. S-IVB STAGE IS MATED TO PRECEEDING STAGE
20. I/U IS MATED TO UPPER STAGE S-IVB
21. ASSEMBLED VEHICLE IS CHECKED OUT
22. VEHICLE ASSEMBLY PROCEEDS TO LAUNCH PAD

Fig. 135. Flow chart for assembling a Saturn V.

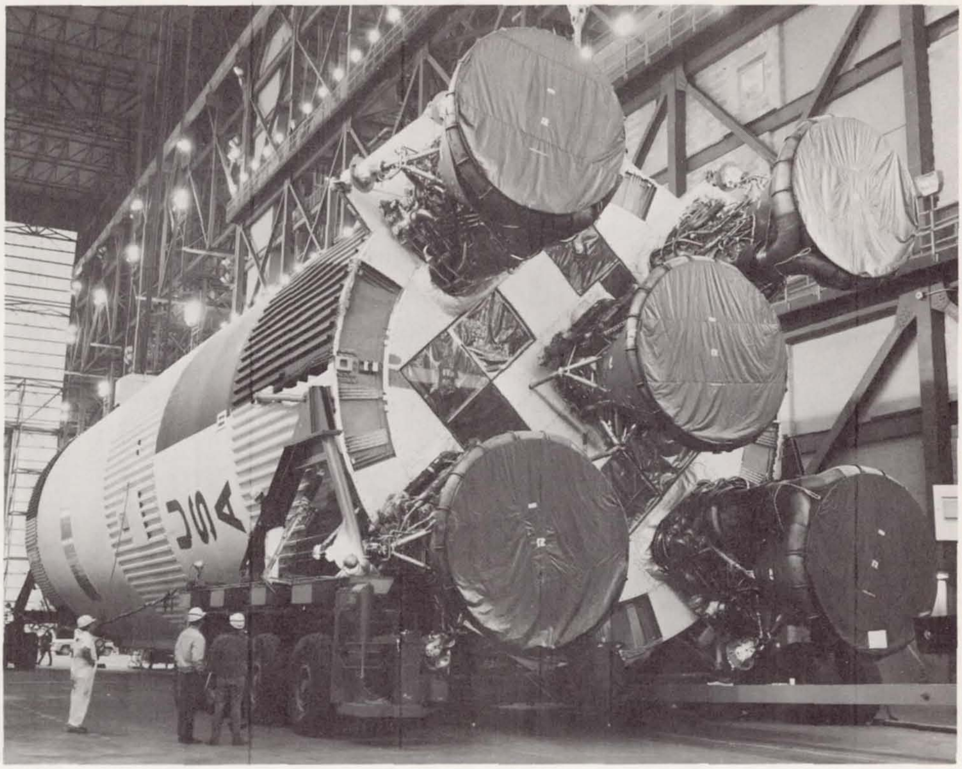


Fig. 136. An S-IC stage in the assembly building.

Despite the delay with the S-II stage, KSC officials expected to meet the new launch date in May. The fire on 27 January placed all schedules in question. Although Apollo 4 was an unmanned mission, NASA officials wanted to give command-module 017 a close examination. On 14 February, a week before the S-II could be inserted into a fully assembled vehicle, the spacecraft was removed from the stack and taken to the operations and checkout building. When inspection disclosed a number of wiring errors, KSC's Operations Office cancelled the restacking of the spacecraft. By 1 March electrical engineers had discovered so many wiring discrepancies that the test team stopped their repair work, pending a thorough investigation of all spacecraft wiring. Within two weeks the North American and NASA quality control teams recorded 1407 discrepancies. While North American repaired about half of these on the spot, modifications, repair work, and validations continued into June. During the break technicians performed pressure tests on service module systems at pad 16. It would be mid-June, with the wiring modifications for the command module finally completed, before North American could remate the spacecraft and take it back to the assembly building.[9]

As the extent of the wiring problems was not immediately recognized, the launch vehicle team forged ahead to recoup the time lost on the S-II stage. In mid-February Boeing's airframe handling and ordnance group removed the instrument unit and spacer from the 501 stack and on the 23d erected the S-II. The operation involved incredibly close tolerances. To qualify crane handlers, Stanley Smith, Bendix senior engineer of the crane and hoist group, stated, "We give them a technical examination and then check their reflexes and response to commands in training sessions." During a mating, an operator and an electrician boarded the crane and another man helped guide movements from the floor by communicating with the operator via a walkie-talkie. Smith set a high goal for his team: "We strive to train our men to the point where they could conceivably lower the crane hook on top of an egg without breaking the shell."[10]

After a stage was properly aligned on the Saturn stack, a crew of one engineer, two quality control inspectors, one chief mechanic, and eight assistants took eight hours to complete the mating. Three 30-centimeter pins on the second stage fitted into brackets located 120° apart on the periphery of the first stage. Then the mechanics inserted 216 one-centimeter, high-strength fasteners into matching holes around the perimeter where the two stages joined. The team torqued the fasteners in a staggered sequence to secure the bolts evenly and ensure a uniform distribution of stress. The mating of the second and third stages was conducted in much the same manner.[11] The 501 was now set up except for the missing CSM.

The lengthy delays with the flight hardware aided the Site Activation Board in its efforts to get LC-39 ready for its first launch. The board's first flow (pp. 318–19) included firing room 1, mobile launcher 1, high bay 1, and the other facilities required for the support of Apollo 4—1280 activities altogether. During the first quarter of 1967, PERT charts showed less than 1% of these activities behind schedule. The decision in mid-April to modify the LOX system on launcher 1 and pad A put five weeks of negative slack into the site activation schedule. The modifications were made necessary by excessive pressure in the LOX system. KSC engineers added an automatic bleed system, relief valve supports, and a block valve that prevented purging through the drain line. As continued vehicle problems further delayed the rollout, the five weeks of negative slack disappeared.[12]

On 24 May the S-II stage was in trouble again. NASA announced it would be dismantled for inspection, consequent on the discovery of hairline cracks in the propellant tank weld seams on another S-II at the factory in California. The additional checks were not expected to delay the flight of 501 "more than a week or so." By mid-June the inspection, which included extensive x-ray and dye penetrant tests, was completed and the stage returned to the stack. On 20 June, the command-service module was mechanically mated to the Saturn V, and 501 was—at last—a fully assembled space vehicle. A revised schedule on 21 July set rollout for mid-August. On 26 August 1967, the big rocket emerged from the high bay slightly more than a year after its first components had arrived at KSC, and a good six months after its originally scheduled launch date. It had been a year of delay and frustration, and the end was not yet.[13]

The Tests

While KSC officials were fighting the seemingly endless delays with the S-II stage and command module wiring, the launch team was putting Apollo 4 through the tests that would verify its flight readiness. The 456 tests in the Apollo 4 catalog fell into nine categories: electrical networks (90); measuring, fire detection, etc. (49); telemetry (27); RF and tracking (21); gyroscopes, navigation, control, and ground operations computers (86); mechanical and propulsion (146); combined systems (9); launch support equipment (13); and space vehicle (15).[14]

Saturn V tests, like those of the Saturn I and IB, progressed from component and subsystems tests, through systems, to combined systems or integrated tests. Hans Gruene's launch vehicle operations team began by checking out the various pieces of support equipment in the low and high bays. The "ESE qualification test, low bay" was a typical procedure. As the initial KSC checkout of the low bay's electrical support equipment, the test verified the performance of panels, consoles, cables, and the digital data acquisition system—all the electrical equipment that would be used to test the upper stages of the Saturn.[15]

After checkout of all the support equipment, the launch vehicle teams began testing components and subsystems within the separate stages. The checkout of the first stage was performed on the mobile launcher in a high bay, while the upper stages were tested in the low bay cells. Technicians tested valves, electrical networks, radio frequencies, measuring instruments—all the items that made up the various systems within the stages. For example, North American conducted a "pressure transducer, potentiometer type systems test" that verified the performance of the S-II's pressure transducers. (The Saturn's transducers converted such things as temperature and pressure to electrical signals.) Before conducting the test, North American checked out the second stage's digital data acquisition

Stacking the space vehicle

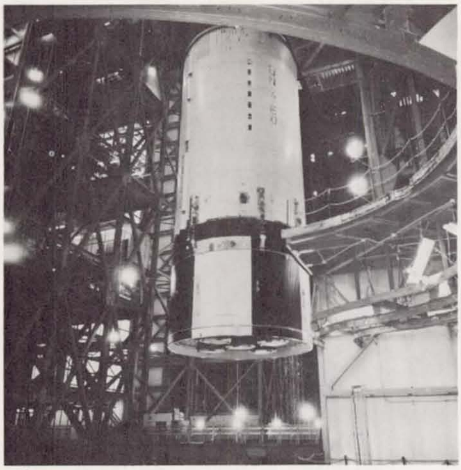


Figure 137A

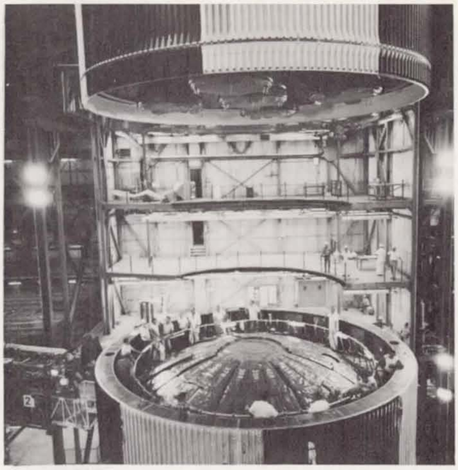


Figure 137B

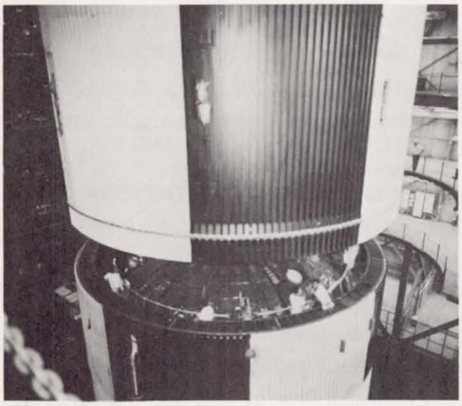


Figure 137C

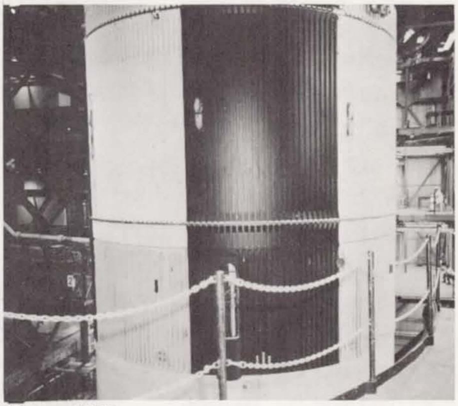


Figure 137D

Figs. 137–140. The piece-by-piece buildup of the space vehicle in the assembly building. Figs. 137A–D. The S-II is placed on top of the S-IC. Fig. 138. The S-IVB goes on the S-II. On following pages: Fig. 139. In the upper reaches of the assembly building, the instrument unit is added to the stack. In the foreground, a swing arm is in use. Fig. 140. The last major piece is the Apollo spacecraft, which rests on the instrument unit. An extensible work platform has been moved up to the vehicle at the S-IVB level.

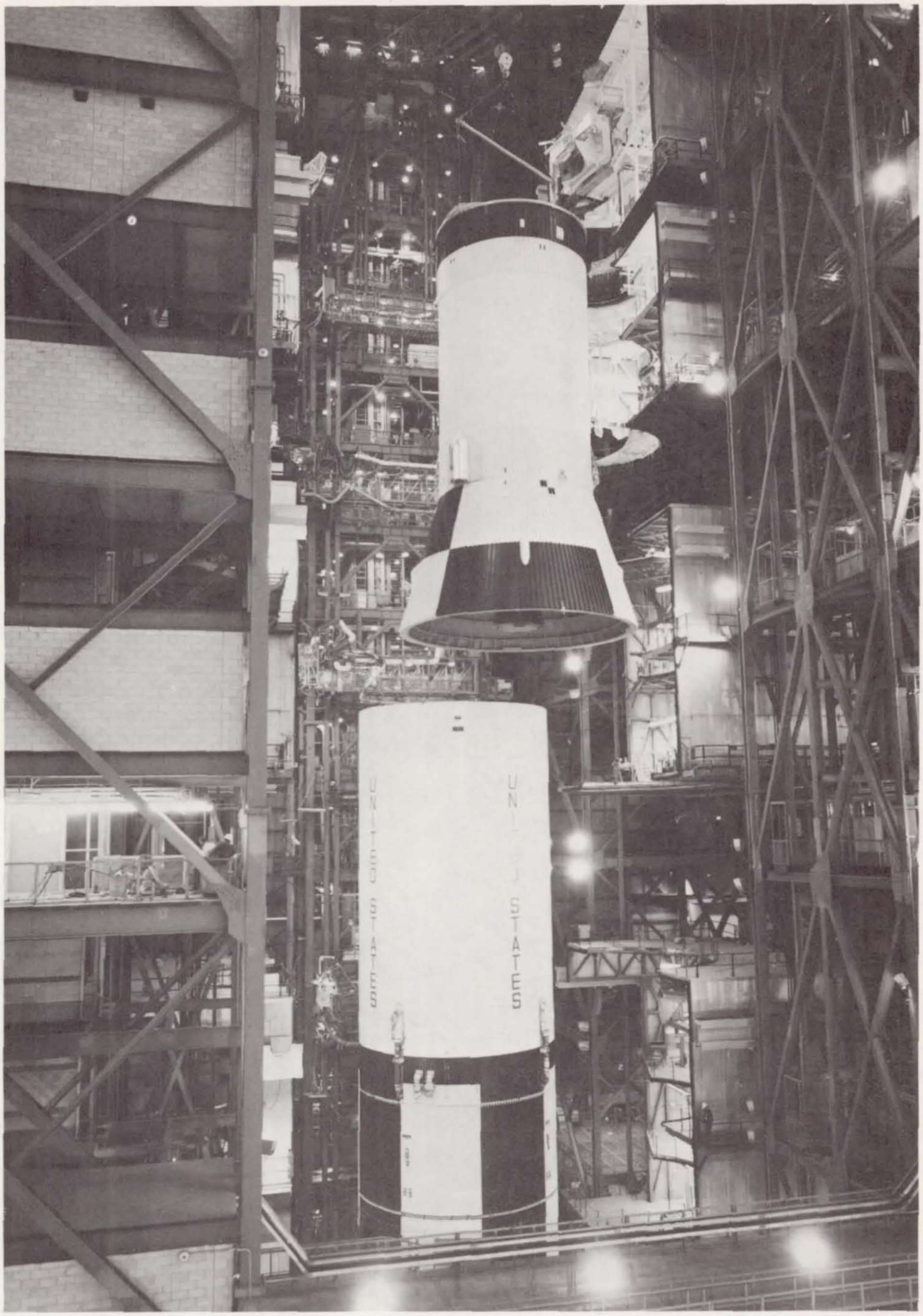

UNITED STATES
UNITED STATES

Figure 138

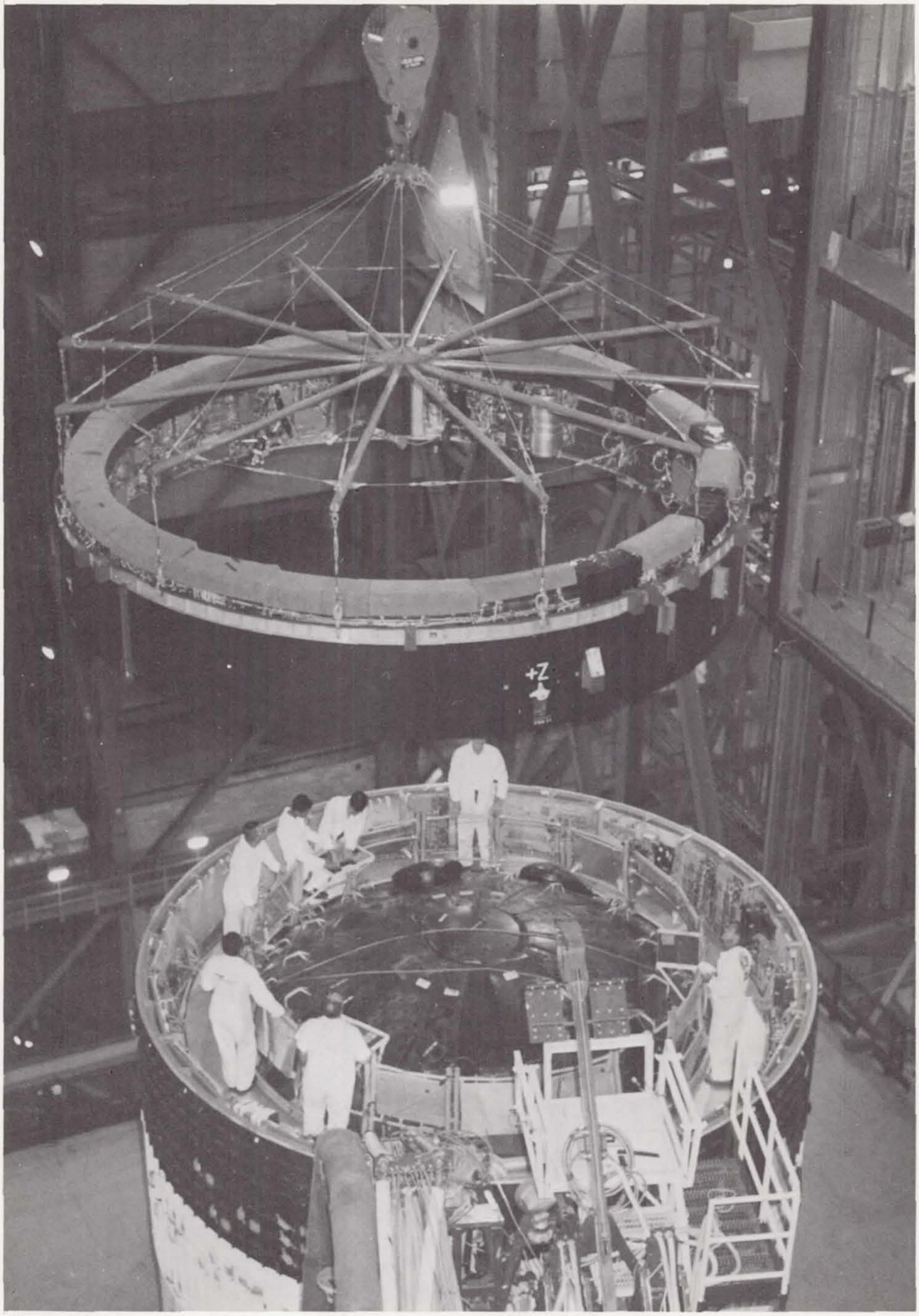


Figure 139

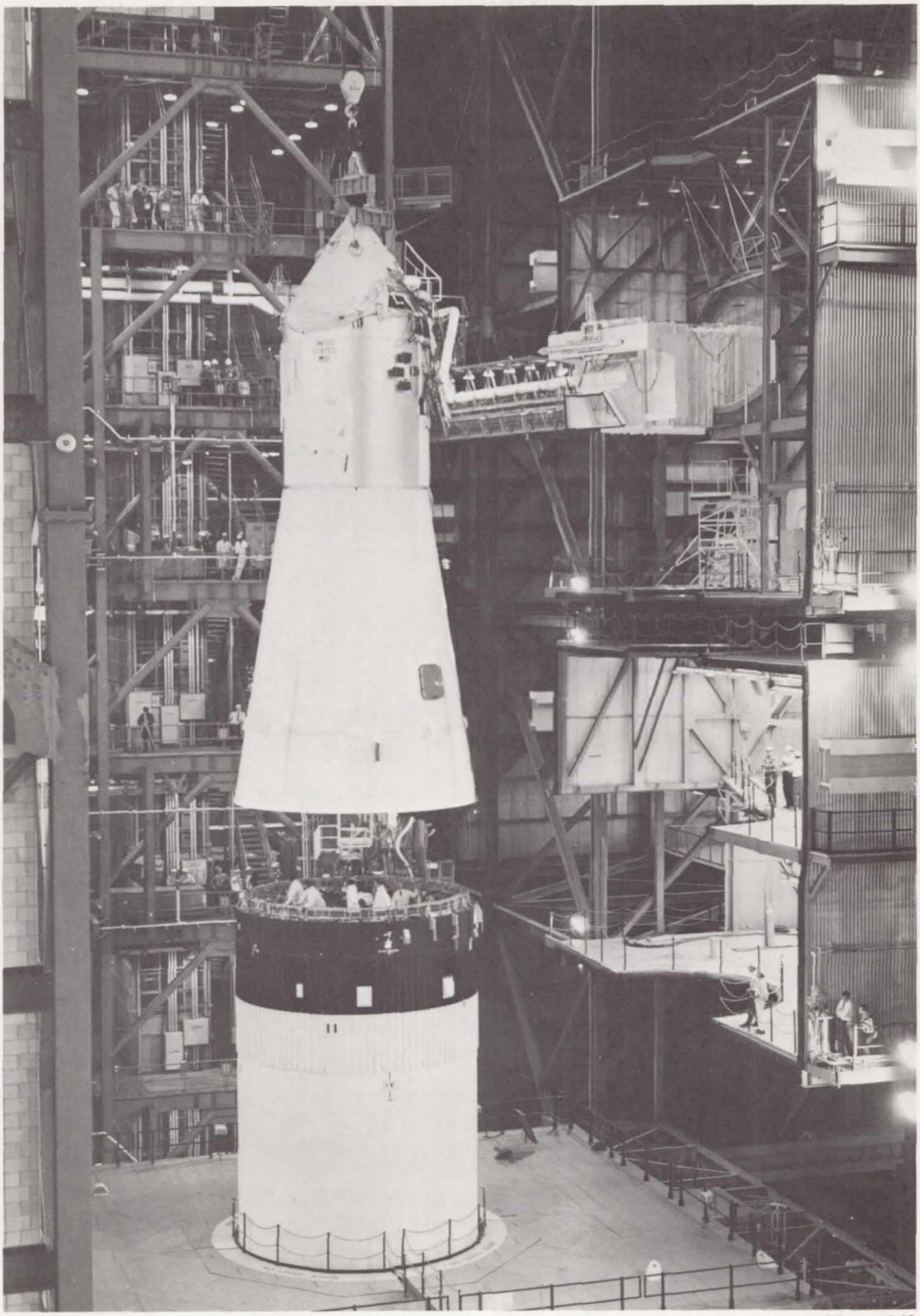


Figure 140

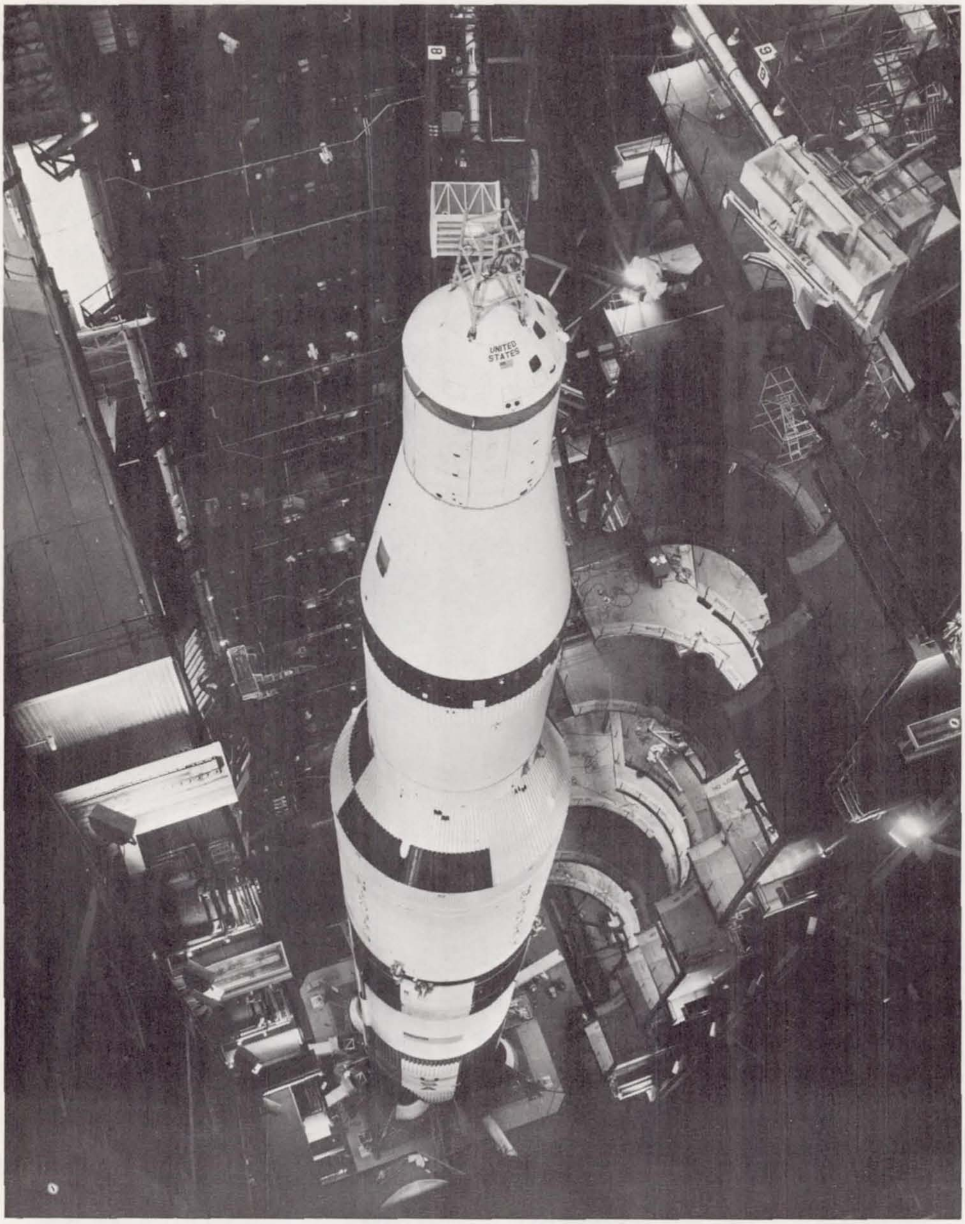


Fig. 141. The view from the top of AS-501, with the work platforms retracted, May 1967. Access arms 8 and 9 are visible at the top. The top-most piece—the launch escape rocket—has not been installed.

system and the connections to the assembly building's measurement calibration station. Then, with stage instrumentation power on, readings were taken on each pressure transducer.[16]

The erection of the launch vehicle in the high bay marked the first major milestone in KSC's operations and prompted a series of tests such as the "S-IC-S-II electrical mate." Three men, working eight hours, checked out the electrical interface between the two stages. Another stage test in the high bay was the "umbilical interconnect verification test, S-IVB flight stage." Through a series of measurements, a Douglas crew verified the proper plug fit and electrical continuity between power sources on the swing arm and the S-IVB networks.[17]

The weeks after erection were spent in system and subsystem testing and in modifying the Saturn rocket. One day of Saturn activities illustrates the extent of the launch vehicle operation:

- Leak and functional test of the first stage nitrogen control pressure and purge system
- Checkout of the engine-bearing coolant valve
- Retest of the earlier engine-cutoff modification
- Engine leak checks
- Instrumentation system checkout
- Range safety receiver and decoder checks
- Guidance and control test
- S-IVB auxiliary propulsion system relay functional tests.[18]

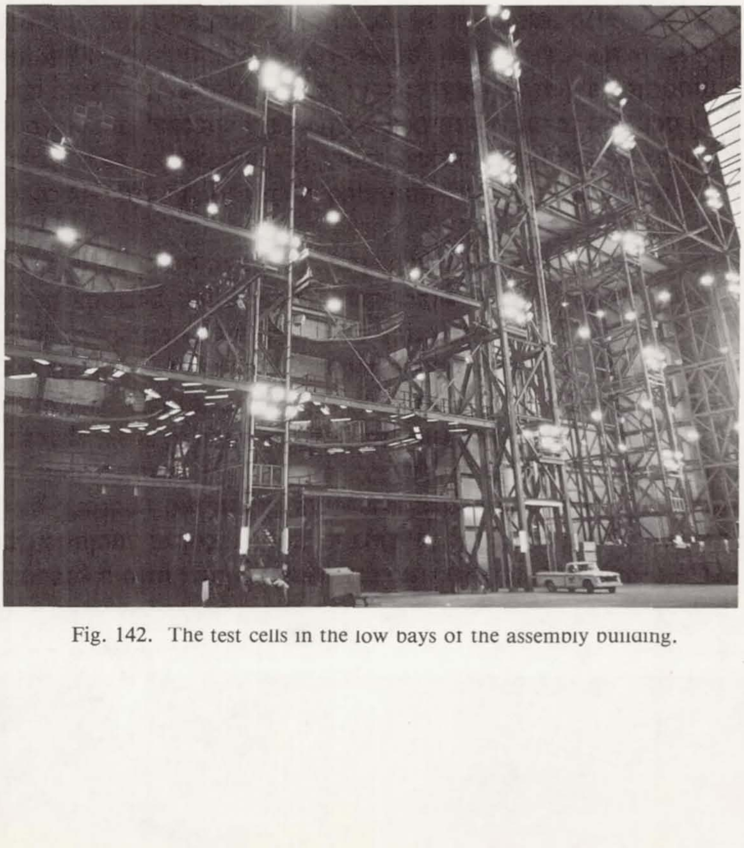


Fig. 142. The test cells in the low bays of the assembly building.

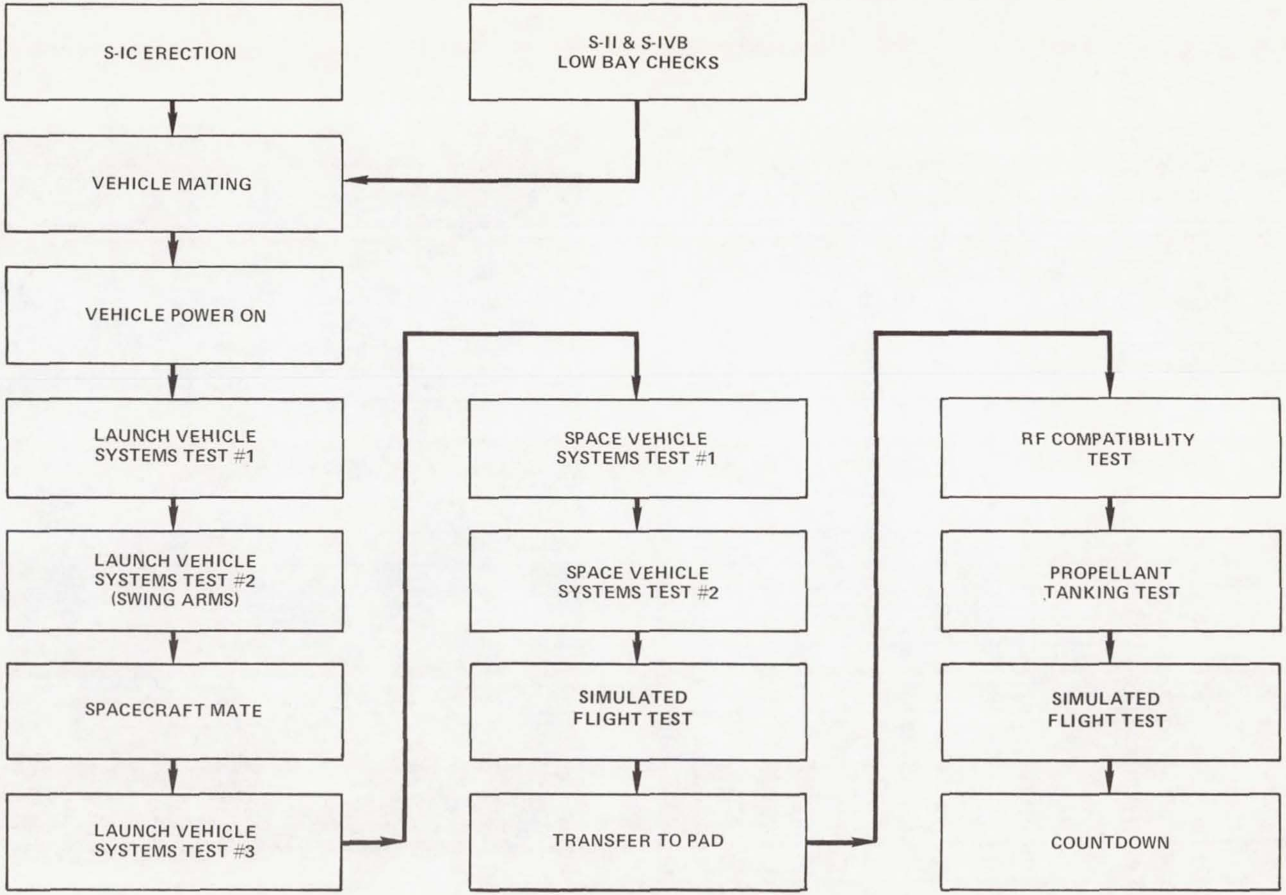

S-IC ERECTION
S-II & S-IVB LOW BAY CHECKS
VEHICLE MATING
VEHICLE POWER ON
LAUNCH VEHICLE SYSTEMS TEST #1
LAUNCH VEHICLE SYSTEMS TEST #2 (SWING ARMS)
SPACECRAFT MATE
LAUNCH VEHICLE SYSTEMS TEST #3
SPACE VEHICLE SYSTEMS TEST #1
SPACE VEHICLE SYSTEMS TEST #2
SIMULATED FLIGHT TEST
TRANSFER TO PAD
RF COMPATIBILITY TEST
PROPELLANT TANKING TEST
SIMULATED FLIGHT TEST
COUNTDOWN

Fig. 143. Milestones in checking out the Saturn V.

When the various subsystems and systems procedures were completed satisfactorily, the launch team moved on to the Saturn's integrated system tests.

The combined or integrated systems procedures tested vehicle functions involving several systems in one or more stages. These included the operation of the range safety command receivers and the Saturn's destruct systems, the electrical interfaces of the combined vehicle, and the transfer from external to internal power. The flight sequence test took the launch vehicle past liftoff to exercise the switch selectors that keyed the flight systems. The emergency detection system test checked out the launch vehicle's response to an abort situation. Since this system was one of the most intricate in the space vehicle, its test was one of the few automated for the Apollo 4 operation. The test employed an Apollo simulator and consisted of five parts: engine out, excessive rate (attitude), rate gyro, verification of the command module indicator, and a test of the vehicle's abort logic plan.

The integrated tests on the launch vehicle culminated with the sequence malfunction procedures and the swing-arm tests. The former was actually a series of ten tests that ran a day or more. They verified the compatibility and operation of the launch vehicle and electrical support equipment in case of a malfunction and cutoff in the last seconds of the terminal count. For example, in test 5 the launch team would simulate a malfunction in the service arms just prior to their swinging clear of the vehicles. The test would determine whether the vehicle could shut down properly. The swing arm overall test verified the operation of all Saturn and ground support equipment systems during a normal firing sequence and on into flight. The test included the actual release of the hold-down arms, umbilical ejection, and the withdrawal of the swing arms and the tail service masts. Following the simulated liftoff, the flight computer directed the various switch selectors in the Saturn stages through the operation. The exercise terminated with the engine cutoff of the S-IVB stage and the issuance of propellant dispersion system commands.[19]

After the spacecraft joined the stack, integrated testing continued. Several tests, such as the emergency detection system procedure, covered familiar ground but now involved a complete space vehicle. The space vehicle overall tests 1 and 2 climaxed the test operations in the assembly building. Overall test 1, popularly known as "plugs in," tested the electrical systems and some of the mechanical systems of the Apollo-Saturn, along with pertinent ground support equipment and range facilities, during a simulated normal liftoff and flight. The Saturn went through an internal power check while the spacecraft's environmental control and navigation systems were

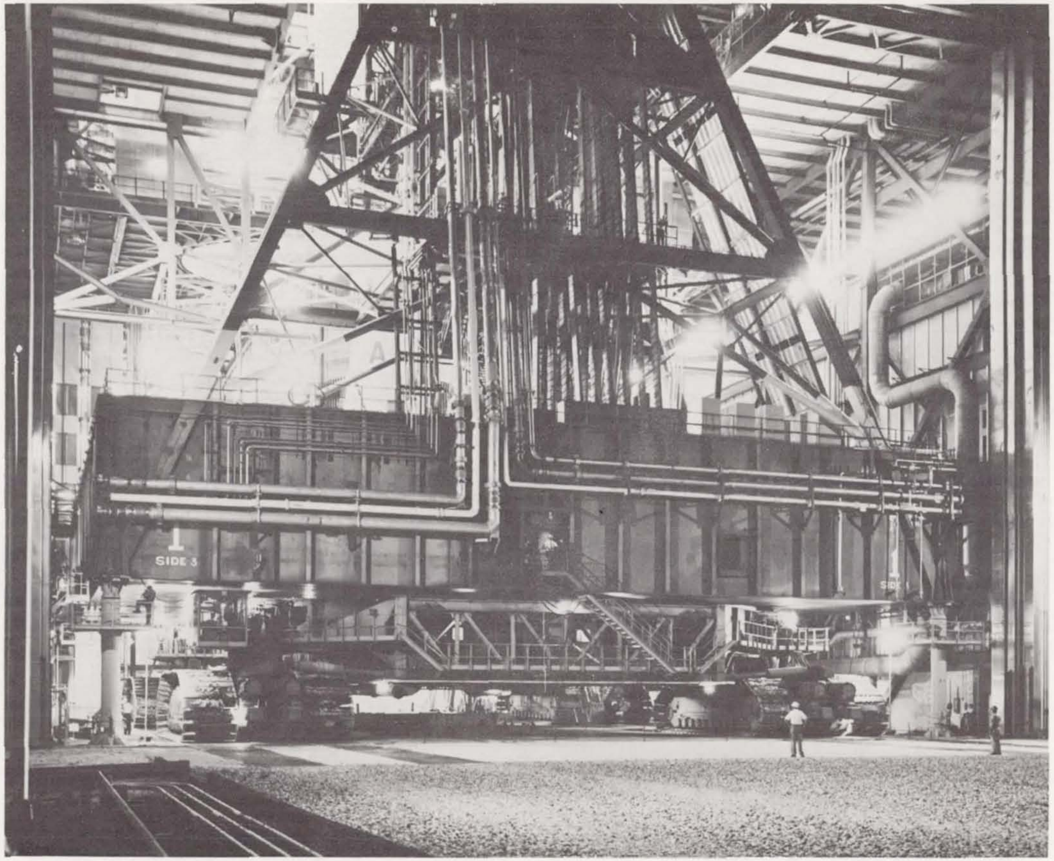


Fig. 144. Preparing to move to the pad: the crawler-transporter under the mobile launcher and AS-501, the base of which is largely hidden by the plumbing on the launcher.

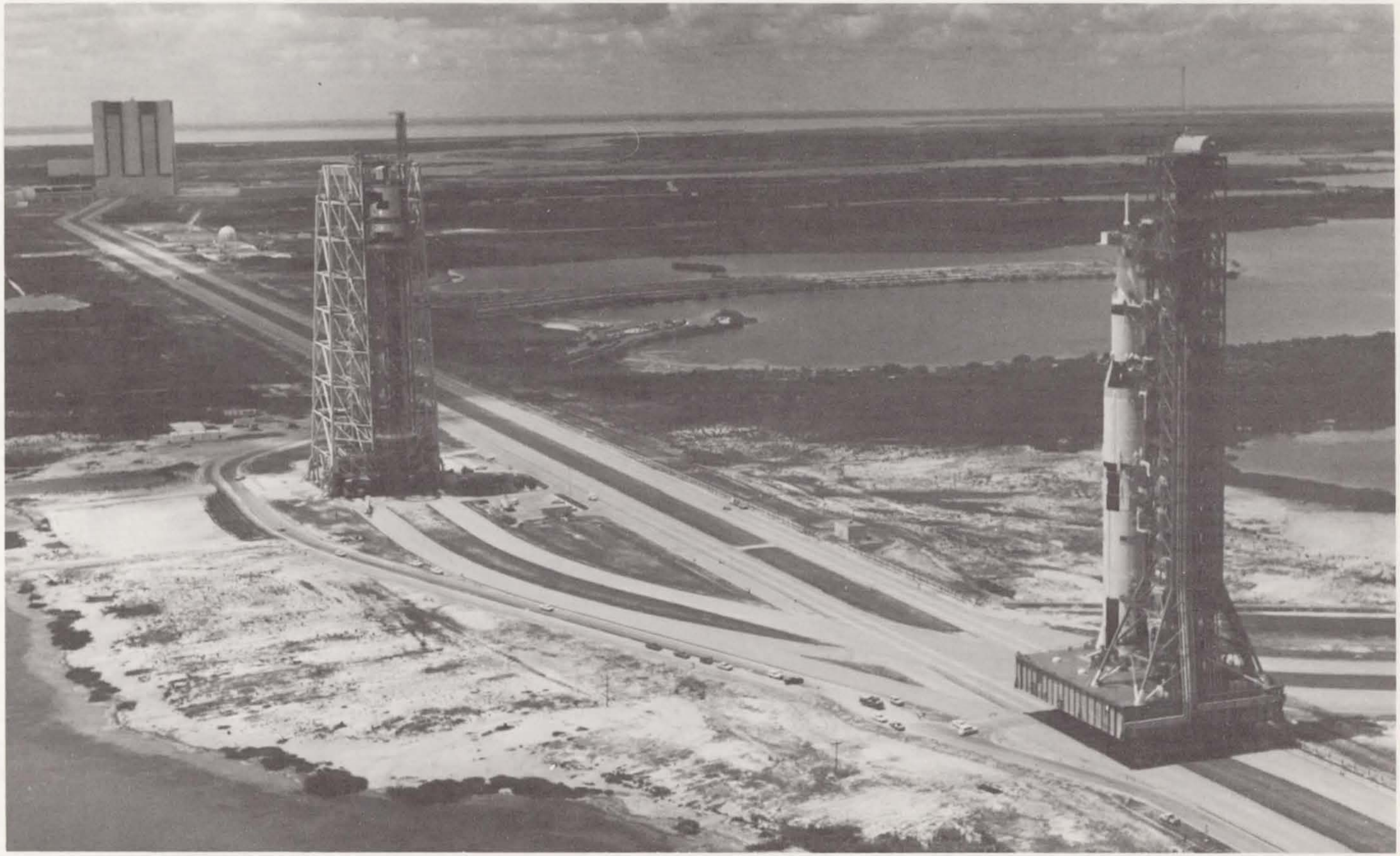


Fig. 145. AS-501 en route from the assembly building, left, to the pad, off right, having passed the mobile service structure in its parking position, 26 August 1967.

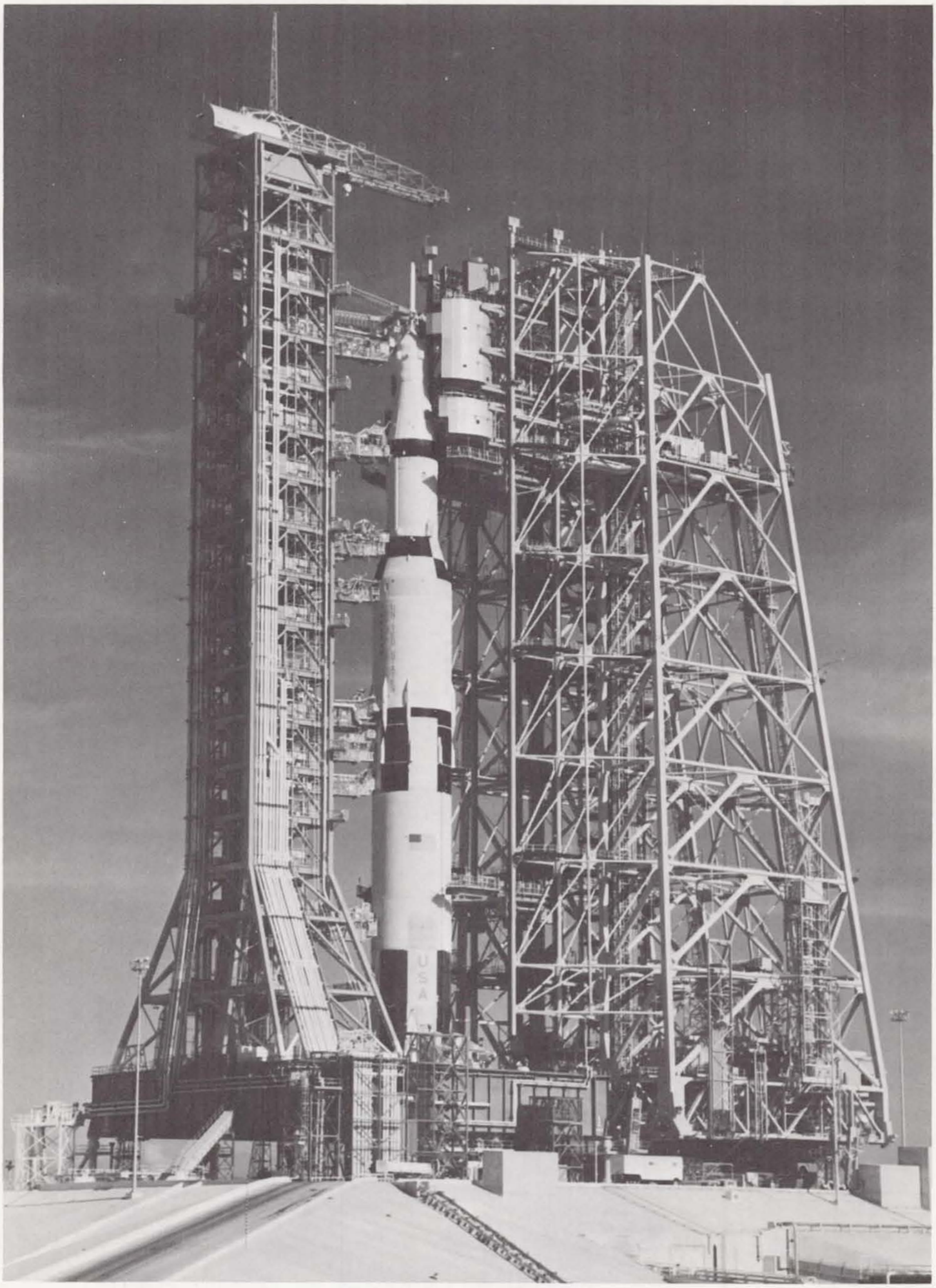


Fig. 146. AS-501 being tested on launch pad 39A, August 1967. The mobile service structure is on the right; the access arms are extended from the mobile launcher, left.

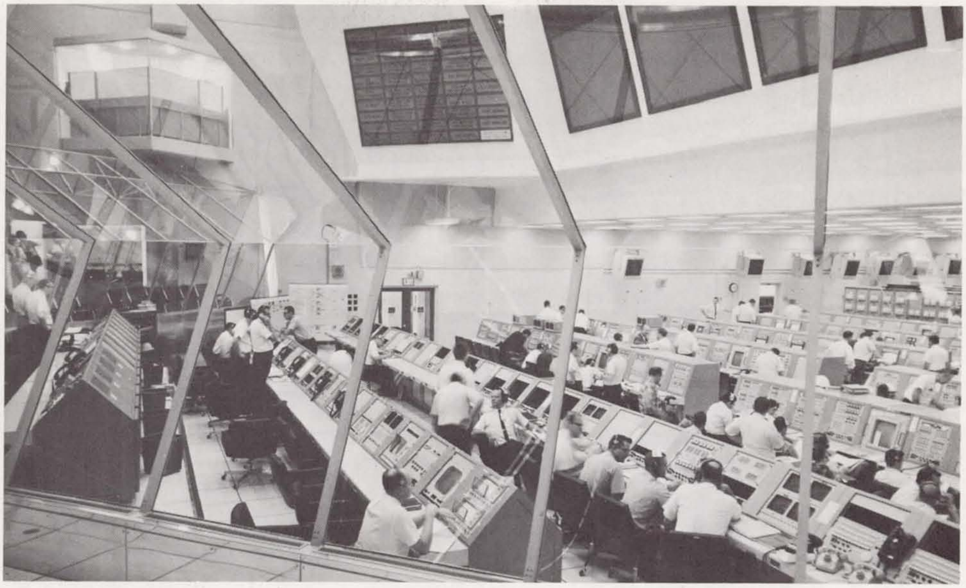


Fig. 147. A firing room in the launch control center; testing of AS-501 is in progress.

checked out. After liftoff, the test simulated stage cutoffs as they would occur in normal flight. Overall test 2, the plugs-out test, came several days later. By actually releasing the hold-down arms and the umbilical plugs, this test verified that there was no electrical interference during the umbilical disconnect. In both tests the Saturn telemetering channels operated "closed loop" over lines back to the central instrumentation facility. The spacecraft operated its radio equipment "open-loop" to the Eastern Test Range and operation and checkout building. At the close of the plugs-out test, KSC and Marshall compared data on the Saturn's operation with similar data collected during the swing arm and plugs-in tests.[20]

After the rollout to the pad, integrated tests, such as the "space vehicle power-on check," verified the interface between the space vehicle and the pad facilities. The power-on test involved the ACE and RCA 110A automated checkout systems and the mobile launcher (pp. 359–62). A radio frequency compatibility test ensured that the pyrotechnic circuitry on the spacecraft would not be triggered by radio signals. This test was conducted in two stages, first with the mobile service structure around the Apollo, and then back at its parking site. The launch team ran another malfunction test at the pad and yet another check of the emergency detection system.[21]

The flight readiness test represented one of the last major milestones. The test verified the proper operation of the space vehicle and associated ground support equipment before and after liftoff in a normal countdown, following terminal procedures as closely as possible. For this test the launch team brought the Apollo-Saturn as near as possible to its flight configuration. A minimum amount of test equipment was employed. Electrical circuits that could inadvertently damage the space vehicle were by-passed. The test conductor first ran the space vehicle through a simulated terminal count ending in a pad abort. A second run put it through tower clearance and ended with a service propulsion system abort and an earth landing for the spacecraft. After a second recycling of the count, the space vehicle flew a successful mission.[22]

Propellant loading tests came next, followed by the countdown demonstration test. While the flight readiness test focused on the space vehicle and its systems, countdown demonstration was intended to test the performance of the launch team and the ground support equipment. The objectives were to:

- Demonstrate the time phasing of the normal sequences necessary to prepare the space vehicle for launch;
- Verify that the space vehicle and support equipment were in a satisfactory status for launch as if launch were imminent, thus demonstrating the countdown procedure adequacy; and
- Verify propellant system integrity by loading the cryogenics.[23]

Like an actual 6-day countdown, the test was divided into a precount and a countdown. Spacecraft operations during the precount included powering up and testing the Apollo systems; servicing the liquid (water), gas (helium and nitrogen), and cryogenic (LOX and LH_2) tanks; and installing pyrotechnic simulators. Two of the last actions were to stow spacecraft provisions and equipment and activate the service module's fuel cells. At the same time the launch vehicle team turned on the Saturn's power, tested electrical circuits, and installed batteries and ordnance items. Usually a hold would come at the end of the precount. These open periods provided the launch team a needed break, as well as time to make unscheduled corrections on the space vehicle.

At the beginning of the simulated countdown, the spacecraft team completed all work requiring access from the mobile service structure and removed it. Then the team continued with radio checks, the closeout of the command module, a hatch leak check, and a power transfer check. The launch vehicle team performed power-on and guidance system checks, loaded cryogenics, and tested the range safety command and other radio frequencies. Finally, with the ignition systems blocked to prevent an accidental launch, the terminal sequencer took the count to T – 8.9 seconds where the test ended.[24]

The time required to prepare for a launch varied considerably during the Apollo program. As the trial run of the Saturn V and LC-39, everyone expected troubles with AS-501. On subsequent missions, however, the checkout took longer than KSC officials expected. A major reason was the condition of the flight hardware. NASA started with the premise that stages would arrive at KSC in a nearly flight-ready condition. The prelaunch checkout would require no more than four to six weeks in the assembly building and one week on the pad. Events proved otherwise. The launch vehicle and spacecraft contractors, beset by problems, delivered stages and modules that required extensive modifications. These changes contributed in large measure to the extended launch operations.[25]

KSC did not achieve a standard or routine for launch operations until the Apollo 9–11 missions, each of which required over five months. The receiving, inspection, and preliminary checkout ran four to six weeks for the S-II and S-IVB stages, one to two weeks for the S-IC and the instrument unit. After the launch vehicle was erected, subsystems tests took another month. Seven to ten days of integrated tests on the Saturn were followed by the erection of the spacecraft. A month more of tests in the assembly building culminated with the space vehicle overall test 1 (plugs in). Out on the pad, three weeks of tests preceded the flight readiness test. Propellant loading tests followed two weeks later. Several days thereafter KSC began the week-long countdown demonstration test that immediately preceded launch.[26]

More Delays for AS-501

Despite all the trials KSC had gone through with AS-501 by September, more were ahead. On 31 August the launch operations office issued a new schedule with the countdown demonstration test to begin 20 September. In less than a week the schedule was broken. When Boeing had to replace the hydraulic engine actuators on the first stage, Petrone's office rescheduled the test for 25 September. A major milestone, the space vehicle malfunction overall test, was scrubbed on the 12th because of rain and high winds. The test team concluded the exercise the following day, but lightning slowed down operations on the 14th. For later flights the sequence would be flight readiness test, countdown demonstration test, countdown and launch. For the first flight of the Saturn V, however, the test directors wanted to have the flight readiness test as close to the launch date as possible and scheduled it after the demonstration test. KSC officials were not at all sure how well the new launch complex would perform. Events would justify their concern.[27]

The six-day countdown test started on the evening of 27 September. By 2 October the launch team was two days behind schedule. Following a hold, the test went smoothly from T – 18 to T – 13 hours, when computer problems forced another delay. The count reached T – 45 minutes on 4 October when a computer, monitoring the propellant loading operation, failed. As a result 1 900 000 liters of kerosene and liquid oxygen had to be removed from the S-IC stage. The count, set back to T – 13 hours, was resumed on 9 October. More computer problems and a faulty regulator on the helium gas system marred operations that day. By the time the count reached T – 5 hours, the launch team was exhausted. Petrone called a two-day recess. Shortly after the test resumed on 11 October, a problem appeared with a battery heater on the S-II stage. As the battery could not be repaired or replaced quickly, another day's work was cancelled. KSC finally completed the test on 13 October, after 17 frustrating days.[28]

As Paul Donnelly later noted: "In spite of the many problems encountered in the test, the crew had received an education that money couldn't buy."[29] The launch date for Apollo 4 was postponed, pending the outcome of the test. After it was completed, few at KSC seriously believed that 501 could be launched on the new date of 7 November. Phillips acknowledged that "this is a target date. We are in a very complex learning process and we are going to take all the time we need on this first launch."[30] The growing concern of higher NASA management expressed itself at the flight readiness review on 19 October. The purpose of this meeting was to assess the readiness of the overall mission in general and the S-II in particular. Because it was unmanned, Apollo 4 was cleared for launch assuming the satisfactory completion of the remaining tests and modifications.[31]

The Launch of Apollo 4

KSC began an abbreviated countdown (56½ hours) on 6 November 1967 pointing toward a 9 November launch. The propellant loading was a feat in itself; the propellant systems pumped 89 trailer-truck loads of LOX, 28 trailer loads of liquid hydrogen, and 27 rail cars of kerosene aboard Apollo 4. The day before the launch, representatives from the groups supporting the mission met at KSC for an informal review. The meeting gave Apollo 4 a "go" for launch, contingent on the resolution of a few minor problems.[32]

To recognize individuals who had performed in an exemplary manner on the manned spaceflight program, KSC invited Apollo contractors to select employees to visit the launch center for the liftoff. On 8 November, 43 of these "Manned Flight Awareness" honorees were guests of the center for a tour of facilities, a social evening that included a visit with six astronauts, and a view of the launch the next morning.

On the morning of 9 November, cars clogged the access roads as visitors filled every available spot. The countdown continued to its climax, when the five engines ignited. The small but astonishingly strong hold-down arms held back the giant ship for a few seconds. Suddenly the 36-story vehicle seemed to stand for an instant above the launch umbilical tower, and then it moved skyward with increasing speed. The bleachers at the press site shook, their light fixtures bounced, a flock of ducks changed course without breaking their V formation. Men shouted in triumph.

If distinguished guests in the stands to the northwest of the assembly building, the press corps, and the thousands of other visitors felt a sense of triumph, it paled before the feelings of the experts at their consoles in the launch control center. KSC's last official act was Launch Operations Manager Paul Donnelly's statement: "The vehicle has cleared the tower." At that moment, responsibility left KSC's hands. The Manned Space Flight team at Houston might refer back to Kennedy on specific problems for unmanned flights like Apollo 4, but in flights with men on board, corrections would come from the astronauts.

Wernher von Braun spoke of the mission as "an expert launching all the way through, from lift-off exactly on time to performance of every single stage." General Phillips said:

> I was tremendously impressed with the smooth teamwork that this combined government/multi-industry team put together. It was smooth, it was professional, it was confident. It was perfect in every respect. It was a powerful operation. You could almost feel the will with which it was being carried out. Apollo is on the way to the moon.[33]

During the course of the following week, George E. Mueller, NASA's Associate Administrator for Manned Space Flight, put the success of Apollo 4 in focus. Noting the space age was ten years old, he said that the voyage of Apollo 4 dramatically increased the confidence of people across the nation and showed the maturing of a management structure that could administer the largest single research and development program ever undertaken in the Western world. He discussed the crucial flights of the lunar module coming in the near future and predicted that it would be possible for astronauts to land on the moon about the middle of 1969.[34]

Press, VIPs, Tourists, Dependents

Elaborate plans for the reception of guests paid off both at the launch of Apollo 4 and at the 13 subsequent Apollo launches. Five days before the launch, the Office of Public Affairs had opened a news center on the 10th floor of the Cape Royal Building in Cocoa Beach. The news center issued badges to representatives of industry and the news media, including TV technicians, for access to the space center. Bus tours of the entire center were conducted twice daily for reporters and photographers. Starting twelve hours before launch time, three NASA buses operated a shuttle service every half hour between the Cape Royal and the LC-39 press site. The last bus departed one hour before launch time, but by then most media personnel were in their seats on a "first-come, first-served" basis. Southern Bell installed 360 telephones at the press site, with the news organizations paying individually for service. A mobile food service unit supplied hot snacks.[35]

The news center held status briefings on the mission twice daily preceding the launch. The day before the launch, there were two press briefings at launch complex 39, followed by a tour of pad A. The afternoon mission briefing took place at the news center itself. John W. King, chief of the Public Information Branch, provided countdown commentary, starting five hours before liftoff. Loudspeakers carried this commentary to the press site at LC-39, the VIP site on the opposite side of the vehicle assembly building, the visitors information center, the KSC news center, all cafeterias throughout KSC, and the main buildings in the industrial area. The Manned Space Center in Houston took over the commentary after liftoff.

The Cape Royal auditorium was available to contractors for presentations at times not in conflict with NASA requirements. Contractors' representatives could schedule such events in advance with the approval of the KSC news center manager. The contractors also had space for displays and a liaison desk for their public relations representatives.

At least equally important, but more complicated than preparations for representatives of the media and the contractors, was the task of caring for the dignitaries who would descend on the area as long as viewing an Apollo launch would be a socially and politically prestigious event. NASA Headquarters had its own list of invitees, as did the three centers (Kennedy, Marshall, and Houston). Naturally many names were duplicated on the lists. The centers settled the overlapping among themselves, and each center director invited his guests personally. The distinguished visitors viewed the launch from uncovered bleachers northwest of the assembly building, which could accommodate 1000 guests.

Protocol representatives from NASA Headquarters, KSC, Marshall, and the Air Force Eastern Test Range set up a joint protocol center at the Sheraton Cape Colony Inn in Cocoa Beach, five days before liftoff. With the usual foresight, KSC had a contingency plan that did not have to be used on Apollo 4. In case of postponement or delay of a launch, the guests automatically had a valid invitation for the rescheduled time. In the meantime, the Protocol Office would provide further tours of the Kennedy Space Center until launch. NASA and contractor employees at KSC could view the Apollo 4 mission from a convenient area near their place of duty. Their dependents watched from Avenue E in the industrial area, south of the Apollo training facility. The Security Office provided badges, car passes, and instructions five days before the launch. Some contractors and range organizations chartered buses to bring dependents to the viewing site. Throughout all viewing areas, KSC provided emergency first aid and ambulance service. Security handled parking of vehicles and controlled traffic with an ease that was to grow with each launch.[36]

KSC Learns about Government Accounting

While KSC was wrestling with the protracted checkout of Apollo 4, its top management had to divert considerable attention to a U.S. General Accounting Office (GAO) audit that had started two years before and now reached a climax. Back in the spring of 1965, while KSC was still in the process of readying launch complex 39, the GAO began an audit of the contract for a second crawler-transporter. It wanted written studies substantiating the need for two vehicles. Close to five months after beginning its audit, the GAO informed KSC Director Debus that the evidence had "thus far eluded" it.[37] Debus replied on 15 October 1965 that such documentation did not exist—a surprising fact in view of the detailed documentation of almost every activity at the Cape. Debus pointed out that a second crawler was critical to the unit's performance because of the possibility of a breakdown, and that NASA had informed Congress and the Bureau of the Budget of its plans to purchase two transporters.[38]

Six months later, on 14 April 1966, the GAO notified Debus of its plans to examine other duplicate facilities on LC-39. Stanley Dyal, the auditor-in-charge, met with KSC officials and toured LC-39. On 6 July the GAO asked Debus about the decision to construct mobile facilities for six launches a year, in view of NASA and contractor studies that showed the mobile concept to be more economical only above a rate of 12–18 launches a year. Since NASA Headquarters had made the decisions the GAO questioned, Debus referred the letter to Washington. On 16 August 1966, Associate Administrator Mueller replied to the GAO, pointing to the presidential declaration on space of 1961 and the desire for sufficient flexibility to meet future needs, and adding that complete documentation of all studies, analyses, and conferences was not available.[39]

After a visit to KSC in late August 1966, the Associate Director of the GAO, Clerio P. Pin, decided to send Dyal from the Atlanta office to review what studies were available. For two months, Dyal read the extensive documentation pertaining to alternate methods of developing launch complex 39. When he departed on 28 October, Dyal stated that the GAO office in Washington would handle further inquiries at NASA Headquarters.[40]

Upon completion of the audit in June 1967, the GAO sent a 39-page draft report of its findings to NASA Administrator Webb, requesting comments and inviting discussion. A week later, NASA Headquarters transmitted the report to KSC for comments. Even though preparations were under way for the first flight of the Saturn V and the first operational use of LC-39's mobile facilities, KSC undertook an intensive month-long analysis of the validity of the GAO statements. Background documents relating to early decisions were researched and cost figures were reviewed. Almost every office involved in any way with launch complex 39 participated in the analysis. The GAO report was based on records at NASA Headquarters and KSC, as well as numerous industry and in-house studies made between 1961 and 1967. The report also indicated a shift from the initially announced purview of the audit—the concern about duplicate facilities—to focus on launch complex 39 and an analysis of whether or not NASA had "adequately considered the relative operational and cost merits of both mobile and conventional launch facilities." It accused NASA of failing to keep Congress informed on important matters and of using obsolete data in supporting its budget proposals.[41]

In preparing a response to the GAO report, Debus wrote NASA Headquarters on 19 July 1967 that the GAO had worked from inaccurate assumptions and arrived at erroneous conclusions. In the report, computed savings were based on outdated analyses. Debus asserted that KSC had kept Congress informed on all major issues, and that members of Congress had concurred with KSC's rejection of conventional launch facilities in favor of the mobile concept. At a meeting between representatives of NASA and GAO on 8 September 1967, NASA agreed to hold its response in abeyance until the GAO was able to review new documents.[42]

Queries continued to come in, and during October threatened to disrupt some KSC operations. NASA Headquarters asked KSC to comment on a statement that would be submitted to GAO the following month. Admiral R. O. Middleton, KSC's Apollo Program Manager, said that some of the key personnel who were being called on to answer the GAO queries were working overtime in preparation for the Apollo 4 mission. He recommended that KSC make no response until two or three weeks after the launch. KSC acceded to the request, however, completing a reply one week before the Apollo 4 launch. Headquarters used some of the comments and added many of its own in a communication to GAO two months later. In a letter of 24 January 1968 accompanying NASA's response, Harold B. Finger, Associate Administrator for Organization and Management, pointed out that the Apollo 4 flight had tested Saturn V–Apollo launch complex 39 and demonstrated that the United States now had a capability to launch large rockets. The choice of the lunar orbital rendezvous, the stress on ground tests in lieu of flight tests, and the successful flights of the Saturns had greatly reduced the number of launches anticipated at the time launch complex 39 had been planned.[43]

On 27 March 1968, after almost three years of reviewing the mobile concept facilities at LC-39, the GAO informed NASA that it planned no further investigations. Although this meant that it would not submit the report to Congress, the GAO offered NASA some precautionary advice. The review of some of KSC's planning studies convinced the auditors that fixed facilities could have been constructed at a saving of $55 million for a launch rate of 12 or less per year. The GAO would continue to make "reviews of this nature" in view of NASA's large expenditures. It suggested that NASA document all major decisions in a manner that would show clearly the basis for the actions at the time of the decision, and that NASA make all related files available at the start of future reviews. Finally, the GAO expressed hope for better communications with NASA.[44]

Although the audit diverted much effort to actions that contributed little if anything to the accomplishment of the manned lunar landing, it was not unproductive. By re-emphasizing the need for thorough documentation to support management decisions, the audit increased awareness that, in spite of the pressure of KSC's mission, the center had to remain responsive to periodic audit by the "government's financial watchdog" and had to manage its records toward this end. NASA Headquarters, on its part, hoped that the GAO had become more aware that NASA based its decisions on significant technical factors, in addition to management and cost aspects. NASA also hoped that GAO's constructive suggestions might help prevent such time-consuming, expensive reviews in the future.[45]

The GAO had questioned NASA's judgment on administrative decisions such as the evaluation of costs, technical decisions dealing with operational effectiveness, and communications between NASA and Congress. The complaints arose chiefly from the GAO's reliance on early planning documents, while NASA had used an evolving series of planning studies that kept pace with new developments. In other words, the GAO saw the early planning studies as an end product, whereas NASA saw them as the first step in a process. Also GAO had the advantage of hindsight. The decisions concerning the mobile concept had been made in the light of contemporary knowledge, at a time when experts were calling for upwards of 50 launches a year.

NASA's reply clearly indicated that it viewed the manned lunar landing program as an embarkation point, not a terminus. It cited 1963 statements to Congress by James E. Webb wherein the Administrator asked for a position of preeminence in space, and the more explicit one by D. Brainerd Holmes that called for "landing on other astronomical bodies."[46] The National Aeronautics and Space Act of 1958 lent support to this interpretation. The GAO, on its part, drew a distinction between what the government had authorized and what NASA planned or anticipated. In the broad sense, the GAO had zeroed in on the time-honored practice of government organizations trying to expand beyond immediate authorizations. A rigid adherence to authorized programs without thinking of the future might well have placed NASA in a strait jacket. It would have forced NASA to revert to the abandoned practice of constructing a special facility for each type of launch vehicle, something that members of Congress had hoped to prevent. It would also have restricted the speculation and experimentation necessary for progress.

KSC came out unscathed, except as regards its documentation of management decisions. This was paradoxical in view of KSC's extraordinary devotion to technical documentation. One could argue, as Harold Finger did, that a new organization must give priority to accomplishing its mission and defer paper work to a later date. But this could hardly satisfy the GAO, which by one means or another habitually reminded government organizations that the appropriation of funds is a beginning and not an end, and that they must one day answer for the use of those funds.

20

MAN ON APOLLO

Two More Trial Flights—Apollo 5 and 6

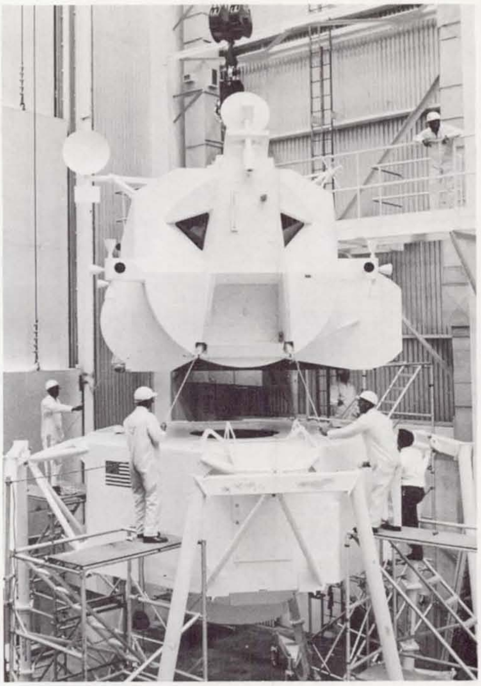
With the success of Apollo 4, NASA had recovered much of the ground lost the previous January. An ambitious schedule was set up for the new year. The last of the Surveyors, the unmanned spacecraft that were photographing the lunar surface and analyzing the lunar soil, would go up 7 January 1968 from Cape Kennedy. The same month the unmanned Apollo 5 would be launched from LC-37 on a Saturn IB to test the lunar module. Two months later NASA would launch the second unmanned Saturn V, Apollo 6, on what was intended to be its final qualification flight. If both missions proved successful Gen. Samuel C. Phillips, Apollo Program Director, planned to advance the manned Apollo 7, a Saturn IB mission, to July or August. Assuming Saturn V was man-rated by then, Apollo 8 in October would have astronauts on the giant rocket for the first time. Should either Apollo 5 or 6 fail to meet its objectives, alternate plans provided for an additional lunar module test on a Saturn IB or a third unmanned Saturn V mission.[1]

The lunar module stood center stage on the Apollo 5 mission. The flight would verify operation of the subsystems of the lunar module, conduct the first firings in space of the ascent and descent stages, and test the capability of the ascent stage to fire while still attached to the descent stage—a procedure that would eventually be used on the lunar surface. Test engineers would monitor the lunar module's performance for six hours in near-earth orbit.

General Phillips's office originally planned to launch the first lunar module aboard Apollo-Saturn 206 in April 1967. Anticipating six months of checkout on the lunar module, Debus had requested a delivery date of September 1966. Development took longer than expected, however, and delivery slipped from month to month. The lunar module's arrival was still uncertain in January 1967 when KSC erected AS-206 on pad 37. In March AS-206 was taken down and replaced with AS-204, the launch vehicle from the ill-fated Apollo 1 mission.[2]

Lunar module 1 finally arrived on 23 June 1967. In the meantime NASA and Grumman engineers had built a plywood mockup on LC-37 to be

Fig. 148. Working with a mockup of the lunar module, September 1966. The ascent and descent stages are being mated.



used for facilities verification. For a simulation of the cable hookup, they bought hundreds of feet of garden hose at a hardware store and routed the garden hose "cables" down from the complex interfaces through the spacecraft lunar adapter. Since the first model did not carry all the extensive electrical systems of later lunar modules, checkout mainly concerned the propulsion system.[3]

The summer and fall were filled with problems. Both the lunar module and its ground support equipment required extensive modifications. The week of 13 August was typical: engineers replaced helium regulators and the water glycol accumulators on the ascent stage, corrected four deficiencies in the spacecraft acceptance checkout system, contended with leaks in the support equipment, and located the source of contamination in the gaseous nitrogen facility. On the 18th, the test office reported a "significant misalignment" at the juncture of the fuel inlet elbows and the spacecraft's propellant line. The elbows, built to the specifications of the original engine, did not fit the new engine, which had a slightly different configuration. Grumman fabricated new elbows and had them at KSC within three days.

The lunar module was mated to the launch vehicle on 19 November 1967. Without the command-service module, the vehicle stood 52 meters high. A protective covering that would detach in orbit shielded the 14400-

kilogram lunar module and its adapter. The flight readiness test on 22 December came off satisfactorily. Preparations for the countdown demonstration test started on 15 January 1968. Following simulated liftoff on the 19th, the launch team began the actual countdown.[4]

Early in the month, Petrone had announced that Apollo 5 would be launched no earlier than 18 January. The indefinite date allowed for unforeseen problems with the lunar module, which lived up to expectations: problems in loading the hypergolic propellants delayed the terminal countdown until the 22d. At T – 2.5 hours, Test Supervisor Donald Phillips called a hold because of failures in the power supply and ground computer systems. These were corrected in time to launch the vehicle before dark. The S-IVB engine shut down ten minutes into flight and Apollo 5 went into orbit ten seconds later. The Saturn had performed entirely according to plan. The lunar module did likewise until a few seconds after the first ignition of the descent propulsion engine. The engine started as planned, but when the velocity did not build up at the predicted rate, the guidance system automatically shut down the engine. Experts analyzed the problem and recommended an alternate mission plan. The flight operations team carried this out successfully. As a result, Apollo 5 accomplished all its primary objectives.[5]

Apollo 6—A "Less Than Perfect" Mission

Besides its primary function as a flight-test vehicle, Apollo 6 (AS-502) served as a milestone in the site activation of LC-39. The Site Activation Board's second flow required that high bay 3, mobile launcher 2, and firing room 2 be in operation for the second Saturn V launch. Delays in the arrival of flight hardware and setbacks to the Apollo 4 schedule helped the board meet its schedule in time for Apollo 6. In April 1967, Boeing officials estimated that modifications on the swing arms, hold-down arms, and the tail service masts would require another 12 000 manhours. The mid-July date for the completion of this work was seven weeks behind schedule and threatened to delay a mid-August rollout. As events would eventually unfold, Apollo 6 did not reach pad A until February 1968, several months after the swing arm work was completed.[6]

The S-IC first stage arrived at KSC on 13 March 1967, and erection of the booster on mobile launcher 2 came four days later. Since the delivery of the S-II stage was another two months off, the Boeing crew substituted the S-II spacer again. The S-IVB stage and the instrument unit followed on the same day. The launch vehicle team quickly discovered that the high bay's environmental control system could not support the checkout. Portable high capacity air conditioners, used originally to protect Pegasus spacecraft on LC-37, were pressed into service. Even so, the humidity approached the maximum allowable for certain pieces of ground support equipment.[7]

During the month of April, a number of tests on Apollo 6 were postponed because of Apollo 4 support requirements, illuminating one of the limitations of the mobile concept in its early days. Although the facilities could physically accommodate two vehicles at the same time, their checkout could not proceed without the removal of men and equipment from one vehicle for temporary use on the other.

The S-II stage arrived on 24 May. It was mated with the interstage and moved to a low bay the next day. Further delays in the launch vehicle tests forced a postponement of several procedures including the launch vehicle overall test 1 (plugs in). Although propellant dispersion and power transfer tests were completed by the end of the month, the plugs-in test did not get under way until 13 June. The restacking of Apollo 4 in mid-June delayed the movement of the S-II to a horizontal position in the transfer aisle, and threatened the latter's erection date of 7 July. By the end of June, a new schedule for Apollo 6 was in hand, based upon the arrival of the command and service modules on 29 September.[8]

Apollo 6 operations in July and August continued to be marked by frequent delays. Several postponements were caused by hardware problems such as a request from Marshall that the launch team x-ray all liquid-hydrogen lines on the S-II stage. Vehicle tests were interrupted by the Apollo 4's plugs-in test on 1 August and again by ordnance installation on AS-501 during the week of the 14th. By September rescheduling had become a way of life for the checkout team.[9]

Another revised schedule in mid-September placed Apollo 6's countdown demonstration test in late January. Within a week the validation of swing arm 1 was four days behind schedule. Work on the service arms halted altogether on 26 September when most of the Apollo 6 crew was detailed to work on problems on mobile launcher 1. Support for Apollo 4 continued on an "as required" basis. Although the tests of the service arms for mobile launcher 2 fell three weeks behind schedule, this was not critical, because the delivery of the spacecraft was also postponed—this time by two months.[10]

With Apollo 4 launched and the spacecraft for Apollo 6 on hand, operations picked up. The swing arm tests were finally completed on 11 December, a day after the command and service modules joined the Saturn stack. During the remainder of the month, the launch team contended with a variety of problems: late flight control computers and flight program tapes, faulty memory in the RCA 110A interface unit, and glycol spilled on the outer surface of the spacecraft and S-IVB stage. The troubles of another plugs-in test on 21 December were typical: failure of a printed-circuit board in a digital events evaluator, a false fire alarm in the assembly building, failure of the emergency detection system test program, and a faulty battery that put an early end to the test.[11]

Problems with flight hardware continued to consume much time. During the plugs-out test on 28 December, the launch team had a premature cutoff of engine 5 in the S-II stage. An investigation indicated that the culprit was the engine control actuator. On 5 January 1968, North American began a three-day operation to replace the actuator. Just as this was being completed, a crack was discovered in the weld of a 2.5-centimeter LOX fill and drain purge line that paralleled a similar line inside the second stage. By the time the replacement line was cleaned and installed, the S-II crew had lost another three days. Unfortunately, the problems of the S-II stage on Apollo 6 were not limited to the checkout; they were precursors of malfunctions that would occur in flight.[12]

The space vehicle electrical mate, emergency detection system check, and overall test 1 were run during two days in mid-January, and the space vehicle swing arm overall test was completed on 29 January. As the launch crew reextended the swing arms after the test, the retract latch mechanism on arm 1 failed and the first stage took a blow. A gimbal joint in the support system was damaged, but the dent in the launch vehicle proved superficial.

Apollo 6 was transferred to the pad on 6 February. Under cloudy skies the crawler with its load paused briefly just outside the assembly building for the erection of the communications antenna and lightning rods on the mobile launcher. Winds and rain hit the area, and the crawler stopped when the storm disrupted communications with the launch control center. After two hours, with contact restored, the control center gave orders to proceed. The four double-track trucks moved ahead in the driving rain. A rainbow formed above the glistening height of Apollo 6 shortly before the crawler reached the foot of the pad. Two diesel engines began leveling the platform as the transporter negotiated the incline to the top of the pad. The sun had sunk behind a low bank of clouds, and the rocket inched up the pad in semidarkness. By the time the crawler reached the top of the pad shortly after 7:00 p.m., the clouds had scudded away, the winds had died down, and the stars glistened in a rain-washed sky. The mobile service structure could not be moved to the pad for two days because of high winds.[13]

The flight readiness test for Apollo 6 was completed early on the morning of 8 March. Three days later the flight readiness review was held at KSC. The meeting included representatives of all the major supporting elements for the mission. Apollo 6 was cleared for flight subject to the satisfactory completion of space vehicle testing and the closeout of action items identified by the review. The launch was set for 28 March. The next week the hypergolic loading team ran into some minor problems, and the stabilized platform in the instrument unit was replaced. The latter meant an extra 18 hours to reestablish the guidance system's integrity. The launch was changed twice again, first to 1 April, then 3 April.[14]

Preparations for the countdown demonstration test ended 23 March, and the precount began on schedule at 1:00 p.m. on the following day. The test was completed within a week. The launch countdown was picked up on 3 April at 1:00 a.m., the T – 8 hour mark. There were no unscheduled holds. At the mission director's informal review held at KSC on 3 April, Apollo 6 received a "go" for launch the next day. Launch day dawned warm and humid with scattered clouds. The prelaunch countdown and liftoff, in the words of Rocco Petrone, "followed the script"; but the script included one cliff-hanger, again in the S-II stage. During the countdown demonstration test, four propellant pump discharge temperatures had been a few degrees above redline values at the engine inlets. This threatened to convert the liquid hydrogen and oxygen into gases before reaching the injector. If this happened, Petrone told a prelaunch press conference, the pumps could malfunction and upset the ratio of fuel to oxidizer. After the test, steps had been taken to improve the insulation, and the LOX redline was raised two degrees to 98 kelvins (– 175 °C). Whether these changes would correct the condition would not be known until the countdown went into automatic sequence a little more than three minutes before liftoff. If the temperatures exceeded the new redline, the sequencer would be halted at T – 22 seconds. As it developed, the launch readings were within the new tolerances.[15]

Two Engines Out but Still Running

After liftoff Apollo 6 ran into a sea of troubles. In the closing seconds of the first stage burn, the vehicle went through 30 seconds of severe longitudinal oscillation—the pogo effect, it was called, because the space vehicle vibrated up and down like a child's pogo stick. As George Mueller later explained in a congressional hearing:

> Pogo arises fundamentally because you have thrust fluctuations in the engines. Those are normal characteristics of engines. All engines have what you might call noise in their output because the combustion is not quite uniform, so you have this fluctuation in thrust of the first stage as a normal characteristic of all engine burning.
>
> Now, in turn, the engine is fed through a pipe that takes the fuel out of the tanks and feeds it into the engine. That pipe's

> length is something like an organ pipe so it has a certain resonant frequency of its own and it really turns out that it will oscillate just like an organ pipe does.
>
> The structure of the vehicle is much like a tuning fork, so if you strike it right, it will oscillate up and down longitudinally. In a gross sense it is the interaction between the various frequencies that causes the vehicle to oscillate.[16]

The pogo effect had not been significant on Apollo 4. On Apollo 6 it started about 30 seconds after maximum dynamic pressure or "Max Q"—between 110 and 140 seconds after liftoff—and produced unacceptable g loads in the spacecraft.

Simultaneously, the spacecraft lunar module adapter was experiencing trouble. Made of bonded aluminum honeycomb, the adapter not only housed the lunar module but connected the command-service module to the Saturn launch vehicle. At T + 133 seconds, sizable pieces of the outer surface, more than 3 square meters, flaked off. Telemetry data and airborne cameras verified the damage. Nevertheless, the adapter performed its function without impairment of the overall mission.[17]

More was to come. Despite the pogo effect, the first stage completed its task and the S-II took over. At T + 206 and T + 319 seconds, the performance of engine 2 fluctuated. At T + 412 seconds, the engine shut down. Engine 3 cut off about two seconds later. The control system kept the vehicle stable for the remainder of the burn, 427 seconds or about 58 seconds longer than normal. This resulted in a deviation from the S-II flight pattern, and the third stage had to burn 29 seconds longer.[18]

In a postlaunch press statement, Phillips acknowledged, "there's no question that it's less than a perfect mission." However, he took comfort in a "major unplanned accomplishment"—the ability of the second stage to lose two engines and still consume its propellants through the remaining engines.[19] At the launch site Mueller described the mission as "a good job all around, an excellent launch, and, in balance, a successful mission . . . and we have learned a great deal . . . with the Apollo 6 mission."[20] The flight had tested altitude control, the navigation and guidance systems in conjunction with the service module engine, and the command module's heat shield. In spite of all difficulties, Apollo 6 had gone into orbit. Nonetheless, Mueller admitted later that Apollo 6 "will have to be defined as a failure."[21] The Apollo team set out to find what had gone wrong and why.

A week after the launch, Marshall issued an initial report. In relation to the malfunction of the J-2 engines, there was some speculation that the wires that carried cutoff commands to them had been interchanged. Although the basic source of the difficulties in the second stage had not yet been determined, this at least appeared to explain the premature cutoff. Later the trouble was identified as ruptures in small-diameter fuel lines that fed the engine igniters. The lines were redesigned to eliminate the flexible bellows section where the break occurred; the fix was then verified by tests at the Arnold Engineering Development Center.[22]

Coordinated plans for the resolution of the Apollo 6 anomalies, presented to the Apollo Program Director in a teleconference 2 May, included the fixes related to pogo. Prior to the launch of the first Saturn V, the longitudinal stability of the vehicle had been analyzed extensively. The results indicated that any pogo effect could be suppressed by detuning the natural frequencies of the propellant feed system and the vehicle structure. NASA had ruled that any modifications to existing hardware must be minimized. Now, from a screening process in which many solutions were considered, the corrective action emerged—it involved filling a series of cavities with helium gas. This required little change in hardware, but effectively changed the Saturn's resonant frequency. On 15 May a review of the oscillation problem determined that the fixes could be verified in an acceptance firing about mid-July. A final decision would be made at a planned August delta design certification review* for AS-503 (Apollo 8). All aspects of the problem were reviewed in June during a day-long teleconference among the Apollo Program Director and his staff, Marshall, Houston, KSC, and contractors. Tests and analyses had demonstrated that the modifications to 503 and subsequent vehicles had dampened the oscillations. The second of the major mechanical obstacles to man-rating had been successfully overcome.[23]

At the Manned Spacecraft Center, work on the spacecraft lunar module adapter's structural failure was concentrated in two areas: launch vehicle oscillation and spacecraft structures. No provision had been made to vent the honeycomb cells between the inner and outer surfaces of the adapter during launch. Pressures induced by aerodynamic heating of trapped air and free water in the cells could have ripped loose some of the adapter surface during the flight of the first stage. During the summer, North American engineers in Tulsa studied the effects of pressure on unbonded sections of the honeycomb panels. Dynamic tests at Houston verified a mathematical model of the spacecraft. At KSC the adapters for the Apollo 7 and 8 missions were inspected. Minor areas of unbonding were found and corrected. To equalize internal

---

*The delta design certification review was a programmatic review of all hardware changes in the Apollo-Saturn since the previous mission. With KSC engineers replacing many items of hardware on the space vehicle, these conferences served an important function. The name came from the widespread practice of using the Greek letter *delta* to stand for *difference*, hence by extension, *change*.

and external pressures during boost, holes were drilled through the adapter surface; and to reduce thermally induced stresses, a layer of thin cork was applied to all areas that had not been previously covered. The additional inspection at KSC and these two modifications were approved for subsequent missions, and as of late September no further changes were anticipated. It was generally agreed that the failure of the adapter had not been directly related to the pogo effect.[24]

NASA's efforts to resolve the Apollo 6 problems satisfied the Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, which in late April reported that NASA had analyzed the abnormalities of the flight, identified them with dispatch, and undertaken corrective action.

Apollo Astronauts at KSC

Before the end of February 1968, 18 Apollo astronauts had gone through exercises in the flight crew training building at Kennedy Space Center. This included both prime and backup crews for the first two manned Apollo missions. They used the mission simulators and the emergency egress trainer and were schooled on functional and operational aspects of the spacecraft.[25]

The saga of the astronaut as a superman had begun and ended with the first seven astronauts, not from their doing, but because the public demanded a space legend. With the Apollo program, it became clear that the astronauts were exceptional men, but human. Even though selection policies tended to produce a type, the crews included diverse personalities. Some were informal and convivial, some serious and tending toward the scientific in outlook, some difficult to deal with, others easy of access. Some astronauts were extremely courteous to the ground crew, totally cooperative; others were not. Some challenged the test teams to softball games or went fishing with them, while others remained aloof. But while the men on the pad knew this, the nation as a whole and the world at large saw a different picture—a group of all-Americans who, if not supermen, had "nary a failing among 'em."

In an article in the *Columbia Journalism Review* a few years later, Robert Sherrod attributed this stereotype to an unfortunate contract that *Life* magazine had made to tell portions of the astronauts' stories.[26] Sherrod told of a visit with a team of astronauts. He found them freely available. One cooked steaks for the *Life* crew. Another told of his Lincoln-like rise from obscurity. A third made flapjacks for his son's Cub Scout pack. "These three astronauts . . . went sailing together," Sherrod wrote, "though they didn't really like each other very much. . . . It took some time for the truth to sink in: these famous young men were doing handsprings for *Life* because they were being paid for it. . . . My story never came off, except as a picture story; the astronauts came out, as usual, deodorized, plasticized, and homogenized, without anybody quite intending it that way.''[27]

In actuality they were distinct and interesting human beings, and, at times, major problems for the men who had to deal with them.[28] One of the heroic astronauts, for instance, was extremely rough in his language with the men on the ground—so much so that one of his most respected colleagues called a meeting of the ground crew to apologize for the man's conduct. One member of the launch team thought the tantrums deliberately contrived for two purposes: to get maximum efficiency out of the ground crew and to release personal tension. He said: ''I would trust that astronaut to function perfectly in any tense situation. There is nothing I feel he couldn't do.'' The majority, however, agreed with their pad partner who remarked after listening to a recording of one outburst: ''I hope they burn that tape.''

The veteran astronauts were able to get one of their favorite pad men of Mercury and Gemini days, Gunter Wendt, transferred to Apollo. Gunter, a former Luftwaffe flight engineer, had emigrated to Missouri, where his father lived, after World War II. He had worked as a mechanic until he gained his citizenship papers and then joined McDonnell Aircraft Corporation. Sent to Florida, he had served on every spacecraft close-out crew from the launch of the monkey ''Ham.''[29] Wendt had a commanding way, a heavy accent, and a wiry frame—all of which brought him the nickname among the astronauts of ''Der Fuehrer of the Pad.''[30] The entire country was to hear his name in a few weeks. When Gunter looked in the window to make his final check of the Apollo 7 spacecraft, Wally Schirra quipped: ''The next face you will see on your television screen is that of Gunter Wendt.'' Gunter retorted: ''The next face you fellows better see is that of a frogman—or you're in trouble.'' Shortly after liftoff, Schirra asked Eisele what he saw out the window of the spacecraft. Eisele recalled the incident on the pad. As he looked out the window at endless space, he imitated Gunter's accent with words that went out to the television and radio audience: ''I vunder vere Gunter vendt.'' This was to become the title of a chapter in a book of reminiscences by astronauts and their wives a few years later.[31]

Long before he ''vundered vere Gunter vendt,'' Donn Eisele and his fellow crewmen of Apollo 7, Walter Schirra and Walter Cunningham, had gone through almost endless practice flights in the Apollo command module and lunar module simulators in the flight crew training building. Houston provided the management and operational personnel and KSC the facility support. After a series of lectures, the astronauts entered the simulators to practice all types of docking and rendezvous maneuvers, mission plans, malfunctions, and other situations that the pre-programmed computers threw at them. Gradually simulator work took precedence over briefings, and the astronauts concentrated on specific procedures for rendezvous and reentry.[32]

Each simulator consisted of an instructor's station, crew station, computer complex, and projectors to simulate stages of a flight. Engineers served as instructors, instruments keeping them informed at all times of what the pilot was doing. Through the windows, infinity optics equipment duplicated the scenery of space. The main components of a typical visual display for each window of the simulator included a 71-centimeter fiber-plastic celestial sphere embedded with 966 ball bearings of various sizes to represent the stars from the first through the fifth magnitudes, a mission-effects projector to provide earth and lunar scenes, and a rendezvous and docking projector which functioned as a realistic target during maneuvers.[33]

Two years later, when simulated moon landings had become commonplace for the astronauts and the simulator crews, they invited important guests to participate. Surprises were occasionally arranged for special guests. When French President Georges Pompidou moved the module toward the moon, he found the Eiffel Tower in the Sea of Tranquility. Another time, Chancellor Willy Brandt of the Federal Republic of West Germany landed the simulator on a Volkswagen symbol.[34]

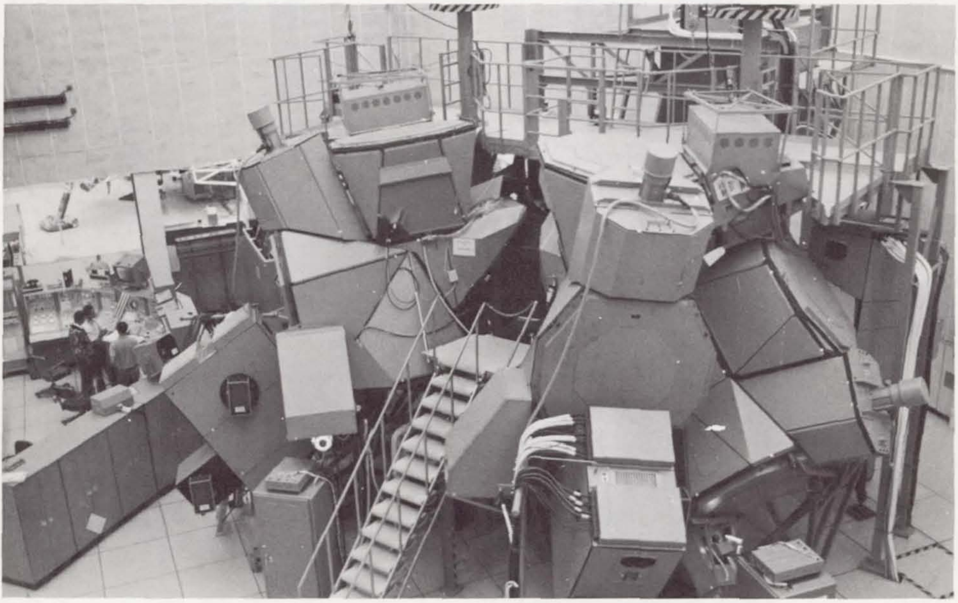


Fig. 149. Spacecraft simulator in the flight-crew training building.

While the astronauts continued their repetitious exercises in the simulators, crews prepared two altitude chambers in the manned spacecraft operations building, adjacent to the flight crew training building, to test the Apollo spacecraft before its first manned flight. One chamber would serve the command and service modules, the other the lunar module. The program called for manned sea-level tests of the command-service module with astronauts on board, an unmanned altitude test, and two manned altitude tests, one with Schirra's prime crew and one with the backup crew of Thomas Stafford, John Young, and Eugene Cernan. These tests were principally designed to prove the machines at very low pressures. Mercury and Gemini flights had already demonstrated man's capabilities.

During the final 90 days prior to their flight, the astronauts lived on a relatively permanent basis in crew headquarters on the fourth floor of the manned spacecraft operations building. From here, they could "big brother" their flight hardware as each system went through its tests. The quarters

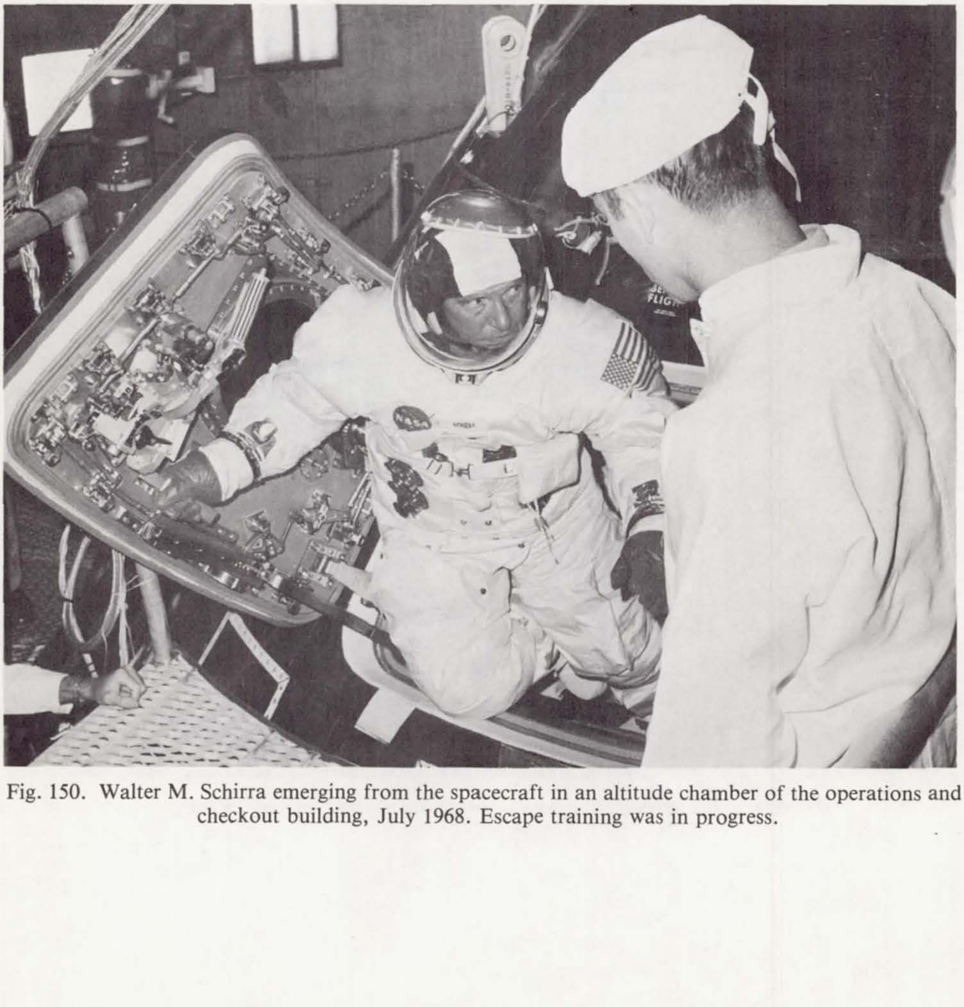


Fig. 150. Walter M. Schirra emerging from the spacecraft in an altitude chamber of the operations and checkout building, July 1968. Escape training was in progress.

consisted of three 3-man apartments, a small gymnasium, a lounge, and a kitchen, as well as a small but fully equipped medical clinic.

Apollo 7 Operations

Apollo 7, the first manned mission, was also the last Saturn IB flight in the Apollo program. Originally scheduled for late 1966, the launch had been delayed about 20 months by the fire and its repercussions. In mid-1967 while NASA was scrambling to recover from the disaster, the mission was tentatively set for March 1968. On the eve of AS-501, the Apollo Program Office scheduled the mission for October 1968. If the lunar module test on Apollo 5 went well, Phillips planned to proceed to the first manned flight in July 1968. Apollo 5 had accomplished its objectives, but because of extensive modifications, the command and service modules for Apollo 7 arrived at KSC more than two months late—on 30 May, three weeks after the launch vehicle had been erected on LC-34. In his operations schedule of 3 June, Petrone planned to stack the spacecraft on 19 July and launch in mid-September.[35]

Despite the best intentions, North American could not meet Petrone's schedule. The new block II command module was substantially different from the earlier model; there had been nearly 1800 changes to systems and procedures since the fire. The unmanned altitude run, scheduled for 1 July, was not completed until the 23d. The following week the astronauts made the manned altitude runs. The prime crew of Schirra, Eisele, and Cunningham spent more than nine hours in the spacecraft on 26 July, most of the time at a simulated altitude of 68 900 meters. They performed many assigned tasks to test their ability to work in their pressurized spacesuits. Technicians first purged the cabin, using a mixture of 65% oxygen and 35% nitrogen. Then the test team "dumped" the cabin's atmosphere, the astronauts relying on their spacesuits as the pressure dropped to nearly zero. After about an hour's work in near-vacuum conditions, the cabin was repressurized to 0.4 kilograms/square centimeter (5 psi) of pure oxygen—the normal atmosphere used in orbit. Three days later, the backup crew of Stafford, Young, and Cernan spent eight hours in the spacecraft at a simulated 61 000 meters altitude.[36]

While launch team and astronauts tested the command-service module, other KSC engineers tried out a slidewire that would serve as an alternate route of escape from the 65-meter level of LC-34's service structure. The 360-meter wire, designed by Chrysler, increased the options open to the astronauts and launch crew. If the hazard were a fire at the base of the service structure or any immediate threat, the slidewire offered a better means of

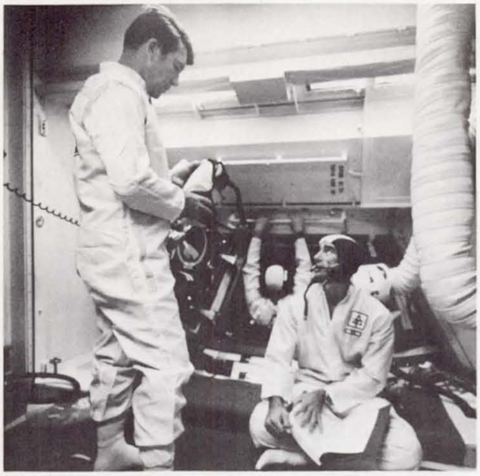


Fig. 151. The Apollo 7 flight crew (Schirra, left; Donn F. Eisele, entering the spacecraft in the background; and Walter Cunningham) during a test in September 1968. They are in the white room atop launch complex 34.

escape than the high-speed elevators. Inside the spacecraft, of course, the astronauts could employ the launch escape system. On 16 August after a successful dummy run, the engineer in charge strapped his harness to the slide mechanism and rode safely to the ground. The next test, a mass exit of dummies, revealed some problems. With a strong wind behind them, the 89-kilogram dummies sailed down the wire faster than expected; two overshot the embankment. The mass exit was tried again two weeks later, using a different brake setting on the slide mechanism. Five dummies and then five men rode the slidewire safely to the ground. The system was ready for Apollo 7.[37]

Petrone revised the Apollo 7 schedule on 1 August, laying out the remaining milestones at an Apollo Launch Operations meeting:

• Space vehicle erection	10 August
• Space vehicle electrical mate	28 August
• Plugs-in test	30 August
• Countdown demonstration test	11 September
• Flight readiness test	24 September
• Final countdown	7 October

There were no serious delays during the last ten weeks of the operations. The flight crew's presence gave the mission extra meaning for many members of the launch vehicle team who had not launched an astronaut since the Mercury-Redstone days. The countdown began at 2:34 p.m. on 10 October 1968 with the launch scheduled for 11:00 the following morning. After a smooth countdown, with only one brief unscheduled hold, the Saturn IB lifted off.[38]

Apollo 7 went into a circular orbit about 242 kilometers in altitude. The spacecraft, consisting of command and service modules, but no lunar module, separated from the Saturn's second stage nearly three hours after liftoff. The crew practiced docking maneuvers by bringing their spacecraft to within a few feet of a target circle painted on the S-IVB stage. In 11 days the crew demonstrated that three men could live and operate in the Apollo spacecraft for the period of time needed to get to the moon and back. The astronauts appeared to millions around the world via seven live television transmissions from "The Lovely Apollo Room High Atop Everything."

Splashdown was close to home. At 7:11 a.m. on 22 October, less than 30 seconds off the scheduled time, the astronauts hit the squally Atlantic south of Bermuda. The command module tipped over after the splashdown, but inflation devices soon righted it. Helicopters from the prime recovery carrier *Essex* brought the bearded trio onboard for medical assessment. They returned to Kennedy Space Center for further debriefing.[39]

"The Apollo 7," von Braun stated flatly, "performed . . . as nearly perfect as one can rightfully expect a development flight to be."[40] The Director of NASA's Apollo Program Office, General Phillips, agreed. "Apollo 7 goes in my book as a perfect mission," he stated. "Our official count is that we have accomplished 101 per cent of our intended objectives."[41]

Apollo 7 evoked more lines from budding poets than most previous launches from the Cape, as well as three memorable letters from youngsters. One small boy volunteered to "ride on a space ship to Mars," and listed three outstanding qualifications he had: he weighed only 27 kilograms, he was very observant, and he would not marry any of the women up there because he was "not fond of girls of any kind or shape." Another asked if he could train for interplanetary space travel, stating: "I have a very high eye cue and am smart." A 14-year old commented, "I would like to congratulate you on your progress. As I see it, you have only two problems remaining to conquer space—how to get there and how to get back."[42] No one at KSC disagreed!

Apollo 8 Launch Operations—Early Uncertainties

When AS-503—the third Saturn V—was erected on 20 December 1967, it had been scheduled for the unmanned launch of a boilerplate Apollo in May 1968. By late January the launch team had stacked the remaining stages on mobile launcher 1. Despite the success of Apollo 4, the flight hardware still carried considerable research instrumentation. As the Apollo 6 mission neared, KSC hastened to complete the integrated testing of AS-503 in the assembly building. Admiral B. O. Middleton, KSC's Apollo Program Manager, had informed Phillips that, if Apollo 6 failed and another unmanned

Saturn V were needed, AS-503 could roll out to the pad within ten days. Final preparations for the move were held pending analysis of the Apollo 6 flight test data and the decision whether AS-503 would be manned or not. KSC's chance to demonstrate the relative speed and economy of the mobile concept disappeared in the ripples created by pogo.[43]

Despite the disappointment of the Apollo 6 flight, NASA was reasonably confident in its analysis of the Saturn V problems. On 23 April, Mueller recommended a revised Apollo schedule to Administrator Webb, including provisions to man Apollo 8. The next day in a press briefing at NASA Headquarters, Phillips stated that, in spite of the problems, Apollo 6 had been a safe mission. He supported Mueller's recommendation by advocating that NASA prepare for a manned flight late in 1968 on the third Saturn V with the option to revert to an unmanned mission if corrections did not meet the requirements felt necessary to ensure crew safety.[44]

The revised schedule was approved by the Administrator on 26 April in a note endorsing the planning, design, fabrication, development, and proof-testing necessary for a manned AS-503. The Administrator did not, however, authorize such a mission at that time. The decision would come later and would be subject to several restrictions. Specifically, manning the mission was contingent upon the resolution of the Apollo 6 problems and the results of the Apollo 7 (AS-205) flight.[45]

KSC work schedules reflected the ambivalence of the Apollo 8 mission. If the vehicle was to have the unmanned boilerplate aboard with a lunar module test vehicle, the launch date would be 10 July. Allowances for a slippage to 15 October were built in for testing the fixes. If 503 was to be manned, it would fly CSM-103 and LM-3 no earlier than 20 November. As the manned alternative took precedence, KSC moved quickly to meet its demands. One requirement was an additional cryogenic proof pressure test for the S-II stage at the Mississippi Test Facility. By 30 April the launch team had taken the Saturn V apart and put the S-II aboard a barge. At Mississippi Test Facility the second stage, in addition to cryogenic testing, underwent modifications to the spark igniters. The J-2 engine of the third stage received the same modifications at KSC. Phillips hoped to increase the chances of meeting a manned launch in November by spreading out the necessary modifications among the various centers.[46]

In early May a problem in the first stage added to KSC's hardware difficulties. On 7 May, during a leak check on the turbopump of an engine on the first stage of AS-503, about 0.6 liter leaked from the main fuel seal in a period of 10 minutes. After evaluation, a decision to change the engine was made. The new engine was shipped on 20 May and arrived at KSC the following day. It took the remainder of the month to install and check out the replacement.[47]

By the middle of June, all approved modifications to the stages and the ground support equipment at KSC were in work. Several expected modifications, however, had not yet been approved or received. Consequently, KSC officials had some doubts that the planning schedule could be maintained. One anticipated change was the modification to suppress pogo in the first stage. Although KSC had not received approval for the modification, the work had to be done and it would probably delay the internal power tests on the stage. On 13 June the RCA computers in firing room 1 and in mobile launcher 1 malfunctioned. They, too, were undergoing modifications. The troubles were isolated to two printed-circuit cards and an open circuit in the mobile launcher's computer.[48]

After two Saturn V missions, operations at LC-39 were still not what might have been hoped. As one participant later observed about the period after Apollo 6: "Few working here on a daily basis really thought we were going to be able to make it by 1969. Everything took too long." This observation was directed largely at the Apollo spacecraft.[49] The same mood was evident at a closed meeting held at Grumman Aircraft and Engineering Corporation in July 1968. At that time, Phillips noted that "the lunar landing next year is within our grasp, but we don't have a hold of it because of the [contractors' disregard of planned delivery dates]." Mueller noted that "the rate of changes in the [lunar module] was three times that of the Apollo command module, whose rate of changes, in turn, was four times that of the Saturn V rocket. . . . The changes placed added burden on [KSC] technicians who should be concentrating on launching operations, not on vehicle modifications."[50]

By the summer of 1968, problems at Apollo factories were stretching KSC's workload beyond its capabilities. Furthermore, the preparation of lunar module 3 for the Apollo 8 mission was only the second mission for the Grumman team, and its inexperience showed. Charles Mathews, former Gemini program director, expressed concern about launch operations after a two-day visit to KSC. "The amount of rework [on LM-3] necessary at KSC was more than should be required in Florida." While acknowledging the overload, Mathews criticized Grumman engineers for reacting too slowly. They in turn complained about a lack of support from Bethpage. Mathews believed that neither North American nor Grumman had sufficient knowledge of manufacturing requirements. He recommended that both contractors appoint spacecraft managers to direct operations from factory to launch—"someone with as much authority within the Cape organization as he has at the factory."[51]

In mid-July Debus addressed the problem of KSC's handling three Apollo–Saturn V missions concurrently. A letter to Mueller noted an apparent misunderstanding between headquarters staff members and KSC.

Debus pointed out that, prior to the issuance of Apollo Program Directive 4H in November 1967, no schedule had shown more than two Saturn V vehicles at KSC simultaneously. Since then, he continued, discussions with Phillips had indicated that KSC should be able to process three vehicles concurrently. Funding constraints, however, had hampered efforts to enlarge the stage contractors' operations team.[52]

In a reply to Debus the following month, Phillips stated that the schedule was not, in fact, being met by KSC. To carry out the flights that were programed for the next year, KSC had to be able to process three vehicles concurrently. Phillips emphasized the efficient use of available resources and authorized KSC to provide crews for some phases of work on three vehicles simultaneously.[53]

Lunar Module Problems and Another Change of Mission

The uncertainty about the Apollo 8 mission, temporarily relieved by the progress on Apollo 6's deficiencies, reappeared in June when KSC began testing lunar module 3. Although it was to have arrived in flight-ready condition, KSC soon found out otherwise. The ascent and descent stages were delivered separately during the early part of June. Several leaks appeared during early tests of the ascent stage; one of them required a redesign and valve change. Early in July, a damaged flight connector in the rendezvous radar of the spacecraft caused a delay in its final installation. A week after this, there was a meeting at KSC of Houston, Grumman, and KSC officials to resolve the modification requirements. KSC estimated that it would take four days to complete the approved modifications prior to altitude chamber operations. An additional three to four days might be required if other pending modifications were approved. While work proceeded around the clock, engineers began a combined systems test for the spacecraft on 17 July. Problems with the radar, guidance, and communications systems delayed completion of the test for three days.[54]

During July, KSC was also investigating an electromagnetic interference problem in which the rendezvous radar locked onto the telemetry signal. Filters sent from the Grumman plant did not correct the problem. Attempts to tune the coaxial connection between the radar dish and the electronics package lessened the interference with the telemetry system, but resulted in a new interference with the abort guidance system. On 2 August when the spacecraft internal systems were activated, electromagnetic interference increased and further investigation began. As George M. Low later recalled, it was about this time that a circumlunar mission without a lunar module first

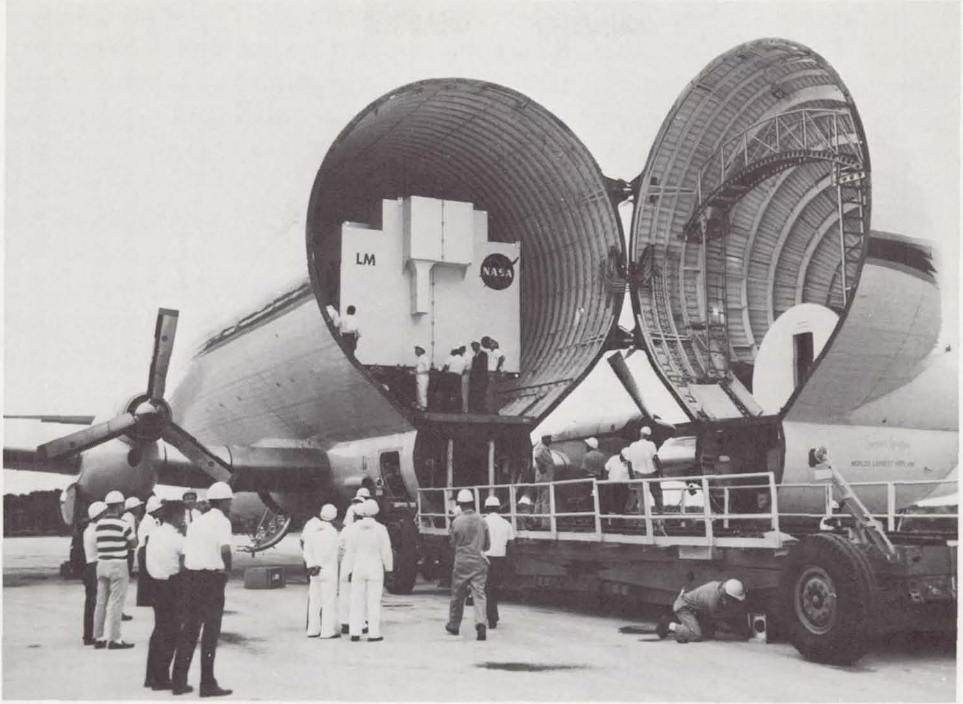


Fig. 152. A lunar module arriving at KSC aboard the Super Guppy, June 1967.

appeared as a real possibility. Difficulties encountered at KSC were having their impact on decision-making at headquarters.[55]

The S-II second stage had gone immediately to the low-bay transfer aisle after its return on 27 June. Between 1 and 11 July, the augmented spark igniters in the five engines were changed. When the second stage was erected on 24 July, the third stage was still undergoing modification. Forecasts that the instrument unit's flight control computer would not arrive on time threatened the schedule. Between delays in the delivery of launch vehicle hardware and difficulties with the lunar module rendezvous radar, the period of late July and early August was critical. Without a firm decision from headquarters, KSC could not move effectively, and difficulties at KSC tended to preclude firm decisions.[56]

At a Management Council Review in Houston, 6–7 August, Low presented the details of the lunar module problems and asked the Houston mission director, Christopher C. Kraft, to look into the feasibility of a lunar orbit mission without a lunar module. Low noted that the KSC work schedule was currently headed for a January 1969 launch and that insistence upon the use of lunar module 3 could result in a delay of up to two months. At a second meeting on 9 August, Kraft reported that the lunar orbit mission was feasible. Debus indicated that KSC could support such a launch as early as 1 December. Only two items remained open: the location of a suitable substitute for the lunar module and the approval of the Administrator, who was overseas at the time. Within three days after the meeting, the command and service modules for Apollo 8 had arrived at KSC.

At a meeting in Washington on 14 August, NASA substituted a test article for the lunar module. Since the circumlunar mission depended on KSC's ability to support a 6 December launch, Debus was asked to assess the launch team's chances. The KSC director replied that he had no technical reservations. Although Mueller expressed a reluctance to decide before Apollo 7 results were evaluated, he conceded the necessity of doing so. The overall review of the circumlunar mission plan resulted in an informal "go." KSC's response was immediate and positive: the following day, the spacecraft facility verification vehicle was erected on the instrument unit.

Administrator Webb agreed on 17 August to man Apollo 8 for an earth-orbital mission, but postponed the decision on a circumlunar mission until after the Apollo 7 flight. The launch of Apollo 8 was set for 6 December. On 19 August, General Phillips announced the earth-orbit mission to the press in Washington. He ascribed the change to the problems with the lunar module, then six weeks behind schedule.[57] To expedite prelaunch operations for Apollo 8, Phillips relieved KSC of much of the burden for hardware modification. The appropriate development centers were given the responsibility with the understanding that only changes necessary for crew safety would be accomplished.[58]

In mid-September KSC completed the first ten parts of the launch vehicle malfunction test satisfactorily; part 11 was scrubbed because of a failure in the RCA 110A computer. A modification of the computer in the launch control center delayed the plugs-out test until 18 September. At this point the spacecraft was approximately 5 days behind the 10 September schedule.[59]

NASA conducted a delta design certification review on 19 September by means of a teleconference. Since Boeing had not yet completed the testing and analytical work associated with pogo, Phillips asked MSFC to recommend a date in November for the final review of the Saturn V. Two days after the spacecraft was added to the launch vehicle stack, Apollo 8 rolled out to the pad on 9 October.[60] During the remainder of the month, the launch team conducted a series of space vehicle tests. The flight crew participated in several, such as verifying the performance of the command, control, video, and optical systems in support of the abort advisory system. They were also active in emergency egress training. Unlike earlier programs in America's manned space effort, the crew did not spend a great amount of time with the actual flight vehicle.[61]

The Apollo 7 mission ended with splashdown on 22 October. Six days later, NASA outlined the steps that would lead to a final decision on the next manned Apollo during the week of 11 November. Dr. Thomas O. Paine, acting Administrator, said: "The final decision on whether to send Apollo 8 around the moon will be made after a thorough assessment of the total risks involved and the total gains to be realized in this next step toward a manned lunar landing. We will fly the most advanced mission for which we are fully prepared that does not unduly risk the safety of the crew."[62] On 12 November NASA made its decision public—Apollo 8 would fly a lunar-orbital mission beginning 21 December.[63]

Launch Countdown for Men on Saturn V

Problems with the Sanders display unit (see page 338) in the firing room forced a postponement of the flight readiness test on 15 November. The second attempt on the 19th proved successful. The presence of a crew led to some alterations in the launch procedures. The commander could call a "hold" if he felt it necessary, or he could initiate an inflight abort. Weather restrictions for the launch were supplemented to meet the danger of impacting on land after a pad abort. The presence of a thunderstorm cell within 20 miles of the pad could force crew egress, and under no circumstances could a launch take place during or through a thunderstorm. These contingencies were the province of the flight director (who took control of the flight once the vehicle had cleared the tower of the mobile launcher), the launch operations manager, and the test supervisor.[64]

The countdown demonstration test for AS-503 began early on 5 December. The spacecraft slipped approximately 14 hours behind schedule because of problems in the astronaut communications and cryogenic systems. On 8 December the wet test progressed to T – 9 hours when a problem in a data transmission system caused several hours delay. Later in the day an error in the memory of a digital events evaluator and a malfunction in a helium regulator terminated operations. The launch team resumed the following morning after the problems were resolved. A defective heat exchanger in the third stage's ground support equipment halted operations at T – 2.5 hours. Once again the test conductor recycled the test clock to begin at T – 9 hours the morning of the 10th. After completing the test by mid-afternoon, the launch team concluded the demonstration test with a dry run the following day. Problems with the astronaut communication system and ground support equipment were grim reminders of the 204 disaster.[65]

The launch countdown for Apollo 8 began at 7:00 p.m. on 15 December and headed for a launch on the 21st. The following day, a three-hour physical examination found the crew in good health. Both the men and the machine appeared ready.[66]

Apollo 8—A Christmas Gift

Activation of the fuel cells and the loading of cryogenics heralded the final count on the night of 19-20 December. The added tension of a manned launch began to show. Debus expressed the general mood on the afternoon of the 19th: "To go to the moon is symbolic of man's leaving earth, the opening of a vast new frontier. If we hadn't gained confidence in what we're doing, it would be an unendurable stress."[67] According to Paul C. Donnelly of the Test Operations Office, the astronauts "do not make it more difficult. They make it easier, because people respond better; everyone does a little better than he did when they were unmanned."[68] When night came, huge searchlights made Apollo 8 visible for miles. Poised on its pad, ready for man's first trip to the moon, it was a Christmas scene of rare beauty. Before dawn of the 21st, the sightseers already clogged the roads. The air was chilly, the dark sky filled with stars. Buses brought newsmen through the gates, and helicopters carried VIPs above the traffic. The distant Atlantic was the pale blue of predawn. With the morning light, Apollo 8 held everyone's gaze. People stopped their nervous prelaunch chatter, and stood in front of their cars. Radios announced "T – 30 minutes and counting." Astronauts Frank Borman, James Lovell, and William Anders had long before taken their cramped, temporarily supine positions. On ignition, a jet of steam shot from the pad below the Saturn. The crowd gasped. Then great flames spurted. Clouds of smoke billowed up on either side of the giant, completely hiding its base. From the midst of this fiery mass, Apollo 8 rose, slowly at first, as if unsure it could really lift free.

Suddenly the noise rolled across the three intervening miles, and vibrations struck the VIP and press bleachers. Flocks of ducks, herons, and small birds rose frantically from the marshes and filled the sky; and then came the most memorable noise of all, a triumphant cheer. A cloud blurred the view. Something fell out of the cloud, cartwheeling toward the blue ocean—the first stage had cut off. The giant second stage reappeared above the cloud, a bright star, diminishing second by second, until it faded from sight. People again turned their attention to their radios, listening attentively until the news came that Apollo 8 was in earth orbit.

Apollo 8 will be remembered for its demonstration of a great advance in space technology, for the incredible perfection that men and machines achieved throughout the mission, and for its television exploits. By television, people saw the earth from a distance of 313 800 kilometers. They saw the moon's surface from a distance of 96.5 kilometers and watched the earth rise over the lunar horizon. The astronauts described the dark Sea of Tranquility—an area designated as a landing site for a later Apollo mission. The television cameras measured the long shadows of the sunrise on the moon.

Then followed on Christmas Eve one of mankind's most memorable moments. "In the beginning God created the Heaven and the Earth." The voice was that of Anders, the words were from Genesis. "And the Earth was without form and void and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters and God said, 'Let there be light,' and God saw the light and that it was good, and God divided the light from the darkness."

Lovell continued, "And God called the light day, and the darkness he called night. And the evening and the morning were the first day. And God said, 'Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters. And let it divide the waters from the waters.' And God made firmament, and divided the waters which were above the firmament. And it was so. And God called the firmament Heaven. And evening and morning were the second day."

Borman read on, "And God said, 'Let the waters under the Heavens be gathered together in one place. And the dry land appear.' And it was so. And God called the dry land Earth. And the gathering together of the waters he called seas. And God saw that it was good." Borman paused, and spoke more personally, "and from the crew of Apollo 8, we close with good night, good luck, a Merry Christmas and God bless all of you—all of you on the good Earth."[69]

On Christmas Day in the morning, Borman reignited the Apollo engine to break free of lunar gravity. Mission Control Center soon announced that Apollo 8 was on course, on time, at the correct speed. It landed in the Pacific shortly before midnight on 27 December.

The men of Apollo 8 had many firsts to their credit: they were the first to navigate the space between earth and moon, the first to experience the gravity of a body other than earth, the first to show live television transmission of the full earth disk, the first to exceed speeds of 38 625 kilometers per hour, the first to view the moon close-up with the naked eye, and they had set a distance-from-earth record for manned flight of approximately 359 000 kilometers. Somewhere in the list, but with a high priority at KSC and throughout the world of NASA and its contractors, they were the first men to ride the Saturn V.[70]

During the outward flight and to a lesser extent on the return, Borman suffered some form of sickness that appeared to be related to sleeping pills and led to a feeling of nausea. As there had been a slight epidemic of influenza at Kennedy Space Center, there was some concern that the astronauts might be suffering from this illness, as had the Apollo 7 crew members. Fortunately this proved false, and the crew completed the mission in good physical shape.

The official objectives of the mission went beyond flying ten orbits around the moon and included navigating the command-service module, communicating with earth, making corrections in mid-course, determining food needs, and controlling temperatures inside the spacecraft. In addition, engineers had tested in detail the systems and procedures directly related to lunar landings and other operations in the vicinity of the moon.

NASA planned this mission, like all others, on a step-by-step "commit point" basis. This allowed Mission Control to decide whether to continue the mission, return the craft to earth, or change to an alternative mission before each major maneuver, depending upon the condition of the Apollo and its crew. Thus, Control could have returned the spacecraft to earth direct by way of an elongated, elliptical path in space, in effect still an earth orbit, instead of entering lunar orbit. The flight was a faultless demonstration of the command and service modules, particularly the restart capability of the main service module engine on which the return journey depended. Besides television, the crew carried cameras loaded with color film. These yielded dramatic pictures of the earth viewed from the vicinity of the moon and color photographs of the moon's surface.

The Apollo 8 mission also highlighted KSC's tremendous achievement in the managerial task of assembling the equipment, controlling the ground support facilities, and achieving a liftoff within 1/6 of a second of the time scheduled months before. In the technical debriefing of the Apollo 8 astronauts at the Manned Spacecraft Center in Houston on 2 January 1969, Borman, Lovell, and Anders had little to suggest for improvement of preflight procedures at KSC. Their only recommendation was for a later date for the emergency egress test at the pad.[71] Other recommendations dealt with in-flight procedures of immediate concern to the experts at the Manned Spacecraft Center, not KSC. NASA granted awards to 12 key spaceport officials for their contribution to the Apollo 8 launch. Among those honored was George F. Page, Chief of the Spacecraft Operations Division. The recognition pleased the spacecraft team, several of whom spoke about Page as "one of the unsung heros, an outstanding intermediate management man. He applies the pressure that makes others perform."[72]

In briefing the Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight on 28 February, Debus said of the flight:

> The impact of Apollo 8, in my opinion, is something that defies quantitative measurement. Following the launch of Apollo 8, the Kennedy Space Center received over 5000 telegrams, phone calls, and letters from all over the world. This was by far the greatest volume of messages . . . following a launch. A similar theme ran through all of these communications. For Americans, it was one of intense pride in their country and its achievements. From friends all over the world—and letters came from 28 countries—it was one of pride in the human race and a feeling of gratitude to America. These letters came from men, women, the elderly, the young, the black, the yellow, the Christian, the Jew, the Moslem, the Heads of State, the laborer, the engineer and the underprivileged. Apollo 8 had some specific significance for everyone. This reaction certainly must be evaluated in terms of world prestige, technological accomplishments, and power.[73]

Page intentionally left blank

21

SUCCESS

The Launch Complex Becomes "Operational"

The achievements of Apollo 8 obscured some of the limitations of that flight. Most important from KSC's point of view, Apollo 8 was not a complete moon-landing vehicle. A test article had done duty for the real lunar module. In the launch vehicle, the S-II stage had carried extra insulation, and research and development instrumentation had been flown on all stages. Final confirmation of the LC-39 launch procedure would have to wait on a fully operational Apollo-Saturn. Apollo 9 (AS-504) would bring the space vehicle much closer to operational status. It would be the first test of the mated command-service and lunar modules. The 10-day mission in earth orbit would check out combined spacecraft operations and run the lunar module through a series of solo flights.[1] Some viewed the mission as a relatively mundane exercise in earth orbit except for the checkout of the lunar module's docking capabilities; but in General Phillips's words, Apollo 9 was "certainly one of the most vital missions that we've had in our mission sequence [and the risks] a little greater than the risks which we knowingly accepted in committing the Apollo 8 mission."[2] Moreover, Apollo 9 was to become the standard for processing subsequent Apollos through KSC.

Early schedules had listed Apollo 9 as the first manned Saturn V mission after three unmanned development flights. In the letter of 19 August 1968, which removed the lunar module from the Apollo 8 configuration, the Apollo 9 mission was redefined as a test of the lunar module in earth orbit. The crew slated for a later flight—James McDivitt, David Scott, and Russell Schweickart—was moved up to Apollo 9, and launch date was set for late February 1969.[3]

Launch operations began in May 1968 with the arrival of the S-II stage—first on hand this time after holding up three previous Saturn V missions. In August the North American team began modifying the S-II stage, not without complaint that Huntsville and the home office were not providing adequate direction. This dereliction, the daily status report for 28 August warned, might once again delay the high-bay testing of the S-II.

X-ray reports in mid-September gave the forward skirt splices a clean bill. At the same time the team made extensive changes in the propellant utilization and instrumentation systems to accommodate the S-II's new engines, which had been uprated to nearly one million newtons (230000 pounds of thrust). Thanks to its early arrival and the team effort, the S-II stayed close to schedule. The third stage S-IVB arrived 12 September, followed in late September by the instrument unit, flight control computer, and S-IC first stage with its pogo modification. After inspection in the transfer aisle, the first stage was erected on 1 October; stacking of the entire vehicle was completed on 7 October. Erecting launch vehicles was becoming routine. Testing of the Saturn systems progressed according to plan during October, and faulty accumulators on two swing arms were replaced without delaying the schedule.[4]

Early in November a problem developed that involved both the vehicle and the ground support equipment. During the S-IC fuel prepressurization leak and functional test, a significant amount of RP-1 was spilled in the mobile launcher. Pressure in the Saturn fuel tank had forced fluid from the engine supply and return lines into a hydraulic pumping unit reservoir. The back pressure caused an overflow. An additional failure of a check valve on the gaseous nitrogen purge line allowed RP-1 fuel to back up into the electrical system of the hydraulic pumping unit. Accumulators from launcher 3 were borrowed for use on launcher 2. This type of problem illustrates the close interrelation of the rocket and ground support equipment. In effect, they formed a single unit, and malfunctions in one frequently caused damage to the other.[5]

The boilerplate spacecraft was removed from the stack on 2 December and the flight spacecraft replaced it the following day. At this point, the countdown demonstration test and launch countdown for Apollo 8 halted the testing of Apollo 9. The preliminary flight program tapes for the launch vehicle arrived at KSC on 20 December and the electrical mate of the space vehicle was finished six days later. After a plugs-in test in the assembly building on the 27th, ordnance installation was completed on New Year's Eve. The processing of Apollo 9 was on the schedule set in September and the space vehicle was ready for the trip to the pad. Despite problems, both vehicle and launch complex schedules had been maintained in a way hitherto unknown for Saturn V. Experience was beginning to show results.[6]

The Slowest Part of the Trip

Apollo 9, like every Apollo–Saturn V, started its epochal journey with the trip from the assembly building to launch pad 39. Eventually astronauts would travel at speeds in excess of 40000 kilometers per hour, but 1.1 was about as fast as the crawler crew dared move the transporter with the Apollo-Saturn on its mobile launcher—an unwieldy 5715 metric tons rising 137.5 meters above the ground. "You can't imagine the difference between .7 and .9 miles per hour with this weight," one of the hydraulic engineers said. "At .7 the ride is very smooth, at .8 the vibrations may be noticeable but tolerable, and at .9 it might be difficult."[7]

Fred Renaud, a crewman on the crawler, had called it a "Texas tractor" in conversation with Representative Robert Price of Texas.[8] But a local newspaper was to refer to it as "one of the strongest, slowest, biggest, strangest, and noisiest land vehicles ever devised by man." With pardonable exaggeration, the newspaper spoke of the 5.6-kilometer trip as "nearly as important as the 500000 miles [870000 kilometers] to and from the moon."[9]

Each transporter had two cabs containing the usual controls found in an automobile: an accelerator, foot and parking brakes, speedometer, air conditioner, adjustable seat, and windshield wiper, plus radio for two-way communications. While the accelerator on the family car controls a single engine rated at around 250 horsepower, the crawler's accelerator controlled 16 motors with a capacity of more than 6000 horsepower. But starting a car, even on a winter morning, was easy compared to getting the crawler-transporter ready to move. It took an hour and a half for the crew of 14 to warm up the six diesel engines, energize several dozen electrical circuits, start up three hydraulic systems, one pneumatic system, a fuel system, and two lubricating systems, and make a series of checks called for by the 39-page "Start-Up Procedure Manual."

Handling such a monster required a cool head, extreme patience, and much teamwork, especially while loading and unloading at either end of the trip. Inside the assembly building, the crew had to steer the transporter with the aid of gauges, guidelines, and the judgement of technicians stationed at strategic points with walkie-talkie radios; and to bring it to within 5 centimeters of a set of pedestals ranging across the 45.7-meter width of the mobile launcher, so that the load could be firmly bolted down.

"When a man stands next to the crawler, the crawler looks big," Bruce Dunmeyer, supervisor of the transporter team, said, "but when you see the crawler under the mobile launcher, the crawler looks incapable of lifting such a big load." Spectators, and sometimes the crewmen themselves, were to feel that at any moment spacecraft and launcher could tip over and crash to the ground.

Renaud described a typical run down the level part of the crawlerway:

> This part of the move is not particularly hard . . . the main concern is just staying on the road, and if you have to stop quickly,

> don't lean on the brake. The small jolts and jerks down here are sledge hammers at the top. One of the hazards is you tend to over-control the machine because it takes things so long to happen. You come up to a curve, put in a steering signal, and about 25 minutes later you come out of the curve. The tendency is to put all the steering on at once."[10]

The transporter had a crew of as many as 30, most of them with walkie-talkie radios, to monitor the last stage of the trip, the 365-meter incline with a grade of about 5%. The control room engineers and the head engineer supervised the critical task of keeping the Apollo-Saturn on an even keel while ascending the grade. This meant an endless chain of orders to systems of the transporter, including the cab engineers. William Clemens, one of the control engineers, felt that negotiating the grade was easier on the way up because there was so much excess power. But coming down, the driver could not allow the crawler to move too fast. "She wants to free wheel and coast," he stated, "and if you overspeed too far the diesel engines will shut off—which spells trouble! You must keep the speed under control."[11]

In Supervisor Bruce Dunmeyer's view, connecting the mobile service structure to the Saturn V at the pad was the trickiest and most delicate maneuver of all. The service structure towered 122.5 meters above the ground and provided access platforms for final checking of the Apollo spacecraft and the booster stages. "You have only a few inches of clearance when you are mating the structure to the pad," said one of the hydraulic engineer chiefs. "There are clamshelled doors that hinge and close around the bird, and if you run into it, there will be no shot. It is as simple as that."[12] Just before launching, the crawler-transporter would take the mobile service structure back to its parking area. The crawler crew's work represented hours of extreme tension between days of routine. In spite of this, the original crew was to see little turnover, with only two men leaving over the years.

The Launch of Apollo 9

Apollo 9 took seven hours to travel to pad A on 3 January 1969. The next three days were devoted to moving the mobile service structure to the pad. This included mating the mobile launcher to the pad, hookup and checkout of the data link and RCA 110A computer, final validation of swing arm 9, an integration test for the environmental control system, and moving the mobile service structure. On 6 January vehicle power was applied, two days later the Q-ball* was installed.[13]

The Manned Space Flight Management Council, which consisted of the major figures in the NASA manned spaceflight program from all the centers, met at KSC early in February. The meeting was followed by the flight readiness review for Apollo 9. At the time, the space vehicle was going through hypergolic loading, RP-1 loading (for the S-IC stage), and the main fuel valve leak test. During the electromechanical test of the service arms, oxidizer fumes were detected externally at the S-IVB aft interstage area. Examination revealed a vapor leak in the LOX system. The problem was solved by a decision to plug the leak detection port and to launch in that configuration.[14]

The countdown demonstration test began early on the morning of 12 February at T – 130 hours. As a practical matter, this test was the start of the countdown for the lunar module. System and subsystem checks as well as full servicing and close-out of much of that spacecraft left little to be done beyond loading the crew equipment. Crew participation during the "dry" demonstration test required only activation of systems needed to support the spacecraft-crew interface. Swing arm 9 retracted to its park position at the proper time, but instead of remaining retracted, the arm moved back to the command module. Activation of the fuel cells was simulated, since they were not required for crew support. The test was completed successfully on the morning of 19 February. Tests of the RF telemetry systems of the space vehicle and the return of the mobile service structure to the pad marked the beginning of the precount preparations for the launch itself.[15]

The countdown for Apollo 9 began the following week, aiming toward a launch on 28 February. While matters went smoothly for the launch team, the flight crew developed colds. The day before launch, at T – 16 hours, NASA officials postponed the mission until 3 March. KSC recycled the countdown to T – 45 hours so that the spacecraft team could replace the supercritical helium in the lunar module. The liquid oxygen and liquid hydrogen tanks required only a topping-off. For the launch vehicle team the delay meant charging a new set of flight batteries to install on 1 March. The principal effect of the flight crew's "malfunction" was to give the KSC team its first lengthy respite in a Saturn V countdown. The machine had proven more reliable than the men.[16]

---

*A 16-kilogram, cone-shaped instrument 36 centimeters high, the Q-ball was located above the Launch Escape System on top of the Saturn rocket. Unequal pressures on the four holes of the Q-ball indicated a change in trajectory.

At 11:00 a.m. on 3 March 1969, Apollo 9 lifted off on its flight into earth orbit. With an almost flawless performance, the Saturn V emerged as a proven piece of space hardware. Launch damage to the ground support equipment was slight compared to prior launches. During the countdown there had been no significant failures or anomalies in the ground system. As the first Apollo-Saturn V space vehicle in full lunar mission configuration, Apollo 9 demonstrated not only its own capabilities, but those of the ground facilities as well. The first comprehensive test of the vehicle, the complex, and the philosophy was a very satisfying success.[17]

The Contractors Receive Their Due

During a visit by the Teague Subcommittee on 28 February 1969, the congressmen inquired into KSC relations with the contractors who were now playing so large a role in launch operations. With its lunar module atop Apollo 9, Grumman Aircraft and Engineering Corporation had joined the list of major contributors at KSC. The Boeing Company was supervising ground support equipment for all stages of the Saturn launch vehicle, a task involving design and logistics engineering for 17 launch support systems. In addition, Boeing had the S-IC stage and technical integration and evaluation of the total program. North American, besides the tricky job of developing the S-II, was building rocket engines for all three stages at its Rocketdyne Division, as well as constructing the spacecraft.* McDonnell-Douglas was building the third stage at its Huntington Beach plant. IBM, with over 900 employees at KSC, had a dual role in launch operations: the installation and flight readiness checkout of the IBM-built Saturn instrument unit and maintenance of the Saturn ground computer complex, the hub of the semiautomated system that had been designed and built by RCA. This was not the only instance of a computer company operating products built by a rival firm. General Electric was sharing in the operation of Honeywell-produced computers.

Congressman Teague and his committee members directed most of their questions to basic principles of the KSC-contractor relationship. Deputy Director of Management Albert Siepert answered for KSC. The congressmen wanted to know why KSC had not developed an in-house work force instead of contracting the work out. The answer was that since Apollo employment had rapidly risen to 300 000, then dropped back to 153 000 in

---

*North American merged with Rockwell Standard Corporation on 22 September 1967 to become North American Rockwell, later renamed Rockwell International.

18 months, any attempt to handle such a short-term buildup with government employees would have disrupted the civil service. Committee members also asked why contractors were using KSC space and facilities instead of maintaining their own. Siepert explained this avoided duplication. KSC could wrap up the services needed by all the major contractors and handle them in a single service contract. Examples (not cited by Siepert): the Wackenhut Detective Agency's security contract and LTV Aerospace Corporation's contracts for audio-visuals, graphics, library, data management, and publications.

Siepert made the contractor representatives happy with his forthright answer to one question: Were contractors better informed than KSC personnel? He said that a contractor, who had designed and manufactured a piece of equipment, was the best authority on how it should perform. This warmed the hearts of some contractor employees who felt their NASA counterparts had been wanting in such appreciation.[18]

Even KSC's paperwork was testifying to the steady elimination of rough spots, technical and organizational. The first three Saturn V vehicles had been accompanied by a veritable mountain of printed documents that dealt with almost every conceivable topic and contingency within the purview of KSC. As each mission unfolded, numerous revisions in these materials took place before the launch itself: the final document not infrequently varied considerably from its predecessors on the same mission and topic. A change in this pattern began with the Apollo 9 mission. From September 1968 onward, the documents relating to any given mission (or to Apollo missions in general) became increasingly uniform. In this respect, the paper system was an outward manifestation of the increasingly "operational" character of both the vehicle and the facilities. The mobile concept had demonstrated its feasibility with the first Apollo–Saturn V mission, and the results showed up in the paperwork after AS-504.[19]

The test and checkout requirements document provides a good index of the operational complexities involved in the launch operations. Issued for each mission, this manual delineated the path of the vehicle through KSC facilities. As the program developed, the test and checkout requirements were modified. Examples of such changes were the elimination of the plugs-out overall tests and the rescheduling of the flight readiness test to precede the countdown demonstration.[20]

By the time of Apollo 9 an increase in the number of automated programs devoted to test and checkout was also apparent. The first two Saturn V missions had used 21 Atoll programs (pp. 355–56). A sharp increase had occurred on the AS-503 checkout, and this was countered by a drop in the use of programs written in the more difficult machine language. With Apollo

9, the total number of automated programs increased to 78, of which 36 were written in Atoll. Although this growth did not end with Apollo 9, it was clear that Atoll had proved its utility as a checkout tool. It made possible the launching of progressively more complicated missions from LC-39.[21]

Changes in the Telemetry System

The success of the Saturn V flights depended in large part on the performance of the telemetry system. A characteristic of all spacecraft programs, telemetry transmitted prelaunch and flight performance data from the vehicle to ground stations. From the start of the planning for Apollo, NASA realized that many more varied and sophisticated demands would likely be placed on the system. The development of launch operations at KSC was, in part, conditioned by those demands (pp. 356-58).

For prelaunch operations, the ability of the launch vehicle to check itself out was limited by requirements for ground support. A digital computer in the Saturn V instrument unit was primarily intended for guidance and navigation. It had triple redundancy throughout, except in memory and power sources, and its self-check capability was limited primarily to flight. Support for prelaunch operations came from the digital data acquisition system located in each stage. Tailored to the specific needs of its stage, this system transmitted data either through the data link or by means of pulse-code-modulated radio transmissions. The radio link could be used either on the ground or in flight.[22]

The Saturn V launch vehicle had 22 telemetry links carrying more than 3500 instrumentation measurements during flight. In prelaunch checkout each link and instrumentation channel was tested to assure operation within specified tolerances. Since the vehicle instrumentation system was used to acquire data during tests on other vehicle systems (such as pneumatics and control), frequent prelaunch checks of the instrumentation were required.[23]

The S-IC contained six very-high-frequency links, including the single-sideband-frequency-modulated telemetry system, one of the Saturn V components that had evolved throughout the launch vehicle development program. Because data during staging might be concealed or lost due to the effects of the engine exhaust, a tape recorder was included in the stage to collect that information, which was subsequently recovered by playback over radio. Range-rate data for the tracking of the vehicle was provided by the offset doppler transponder in the stage. Two other telemetry links used ultra-high-frequency receivers for range safety purposes. If the safety officer on the Cape issued a destruct command to these receivers, they would trigger the explosive network.[24]

The second stage had systems similar to those on the S-IC, but had one less single-sideband link. The S-IVB (third stage) carried no tracking transponders; otherwise, its telemetry equipment was identical to that of the first stage. The instrument unit carried an offset doppler, an Azusa (or Mistram) transponder, two C-band beacons, and a command and communication system. It had no range safety receivers.[25]

Long before the first Saturn V flew, the configuration of the vehicle allowed the use of either the Mistram or Azusa tracking systems, but not both at once. To reduce the complexity of the system, Phillips in 1965 directed that Azusa be used on future Saturn flights. Real-time support at the Cape would be required at least through the AS-503 mission. Experience in tracking early Saturn vehicles indicated a need for only one beacon, and some viewed even that as possibly unnecessary. It was later confirmed that the Saturn V was large enough to reflect enough radar energy to be visible on ground indicators to the limits of safety responsibility. Though a beacon might not be required for tracking purposes, range safety personnel considered it desirable.[26]

To receive telemetry from its vehicles, NASA maintained three ground networks. One of these, the Manned Space Flight Network, was under the operational control of Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, Maryland, during Apollo missions. In order to operate effectively for the lunar landing program, the system had to be able to control the spacecraft (both the command and lunar modules) at lunar distances. While the equipment had been adequate for earth-orbit missions, the greater distances, as well as the complexity of Apollo, led to the introduction of the unified S-band system.[27]

The term *S-band* derived from the period of the Second World War when letters were used to designate bands of frequencies. The band selected for Apollo lay between 1550 and 5200 megahertz. For use with its unmanned space probes, the Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL) had developed equipment that operated on these frequencies. A useful feature of the JPL equipment was the combination of several radio functions into a single transmission from only one transmitter to a given receiver. For Apollo, these functions included tracking and ranging; command, voice and television communications; and measurement telemetry. The versatility of the system was inherent in its structure.[28]

For the lunar mission the unified S-band offered the twin advantages of simplicity and versatility. The line-of-sight signal lost little of its strength when it passed through the atmosphere, and transceiver and power supply equipment could be relatively small. In providing direct communications between the spacecraft and ground stations, the unified S-band worked equally well in near-earth operations or circling the moon.

Apollo's tracking system required close, continuous communication among the major centers and the Manned Space Flight Network. This was accomplished by means of digital data, teletype, and voice links which were the responsibility of the NASA communications system centered at Goddard. A combination of land lines, undersea cables, high frequency radio, and satellites linked more than 100 locations throughout the world. For Apollo, the system had to be augmented. Major switching centers ensured maximum sharing of circuits, while giving Houston priority for real-time data during Apollo missions.[29]

During Apollo operations, the three manned spaceflight centers were connected outside the Goddard system by two links—the launch information exchange facility and the Apollo launch data system. Operated by Marshall during launch operations, the former was primarily an information transfer link between Huntsville and KSC with connections to Houston. It carried real-time telemetered data, closed-circuit television, facsimile, classified typewriter, voice, and countdown information. The Apollo launch data system was the primary information link from KSC to Houston. It had four independent subsystems that handled telemetry, television, countdown and status data, and launch trajectory data during prelaunch and launch operations. By using the Apollo launch data system, personnel in Houston could conduct closed-loop tests of the spacecraft while it was at KSC. During powered flight, the system transmitted trajectory data from the impact predictor for the information of the flight director at Houston.[30]

The Apollo program significantly increased the tracking and data acquisition requirements for KSC and the Air Force Eastern Test Range. To ensure uniformity, the Office of Tracking and Data Acquisition, NASA Headquarters, was designated in August 1964 the "single point of contact" with the Department of Defense for such coordination. Although heavily involved in the development of the unified S-band system for Apollo operations, the Jet Propulsion Laboratory and Goddard were directed to support the planning and operations.[31] The agreement that resulted between NASA and the Defense Department emphasized colocation of KSC and Air Force Range facilities whenever possible "to achieve a maximum of mutual assistance, to avoid unwarranted duplication, and to realize economies where practical and consistent with mission requirements . . . ."[32] To support Apollo, range facilities needed considerable modernization. During 1965 about 85% of the existing Air Force tracking equipment was modified. Over three years, the cost exceeded $50 000 000, including the updating of telemetry stations downrange as well as at the Cape.[33]

The entire Apollo tracking and data acquisition network, including ships, planes, and unified S-band ground stations, was integrated with the Manned Space Flight Network between November 1966 and June 1968. The AS-202 mission in August 1966 provided the first test under actual operating conditions. By the launch of Apollo 9 the new system was operational at stations in Texas, Mexico, Ascension Island, the Canary Islands, Bermuda, Spain, Hawaii, Australia, Wales, and California.[34]

There was no major change in tracking and data acquisition comparable to the introduction of the mobile concept. The primary alteration in tracking was the increasing sophistication of the hardware.[35] From early Saturn I missions through Apollo 9, development of hardware had tended to proceed steadily, dependent largely upon launch vehicle requirements. At the same time, less and less direct control over telemetry was allowed to KSC. In this respect, the attempt of NASA to spread the R&D among several centers had led to an unexpected constraint upon launch operations at LC-39. In the end, the Saturn V was measured and tracked by a telemetry system largely outside the control of KSC.

At Long Last

The liftoff of Apollo 10 on 18 May 1969 would mark KSC's fourth manned Apollo launch in the short space of seven months. The mobile concept was proving its efficiency. Before Apollo 8 moved out of the vehicle assembly building on 9 October 1968, the crews had already stacked AS-504 for Apollo 9. Before Apollo 9 was subsequently moved out, crews had stacked AS-505 for the Apollo 10 flight. Apollo 10 rolled out on 11 March to pad B, the more distant of the two pads on LC-39. This would prove the only use of pad B for an Apollo mission and the only use of firing room 3.

On the flight of Apollo 9, McDivitt, Scott, and Schweickart had checked out the lunar module in flight and docking maneuvers with the command-service module. On Apollo 10, the crew of Thomas Stafford, John Young, and Eugene Cernan took the spacecraft to the vicinity of the moon where the lunar module closed to within 16 kilometers of the surface before redocking with the orbiting command module. At long last, KSC was set for the Apollo 11 mission that would put men—Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin, Jr.—on the moon while Michael Collins waited for them in the command module.

Apollo 11 stages had been arriving at KSC since the beginning of the year, the second stage undergoing rigorous inspection on account of a stormy barge voyage from California via the Panama Canal. During March

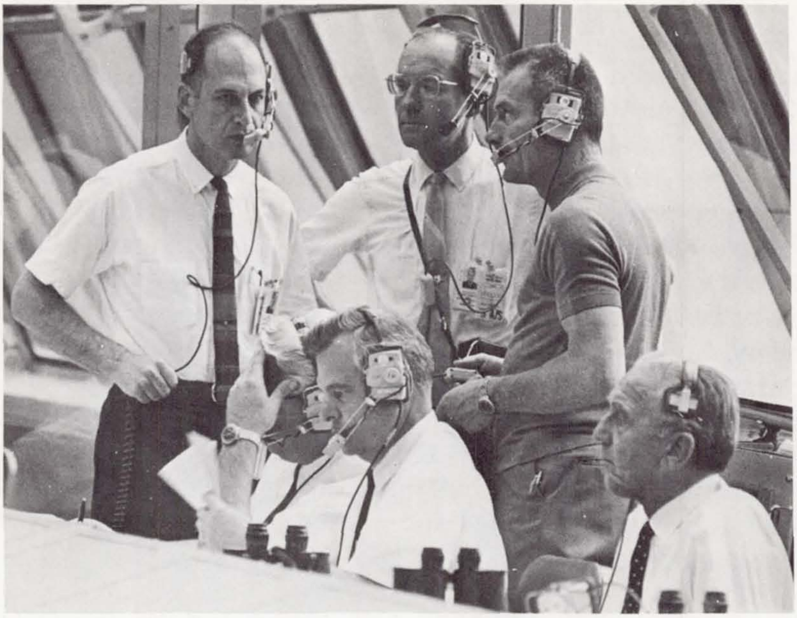


Fig. 153. Apollo officials in the launch control center during the countdown for Apollo 10. From left, standing: George M. Low, Apollo Spacecraft Program Manager; Lt. Gen. Sam Phillips, Apollo Program Director; and Donald Slayton, Flight Crew Operations Director, MSC. Seated, John Williams, Spacecraft Operations Director; Walter Kapryan, Launch Operations Deputy Director; and Kurt Debus, KSC Director.

the prime and backup crews participated in the spacecraft tests, with mid-April bringing the docking tests in the altitude chambers. During a checkout of the lunar module descent stage, technicians discovered faulty actuators in the machinery that would push out the legs of the lunar module for the moon landing. The repair area was inaccessible to men of average build, and Grumman scoured its rosters for two qualified technicians who were "very slim." The two men—William Dispenette and Charles Tanner—squirmed into the narrow space and replaced the actuators.[36]

The lunar module on Apollo 11 differed in several respects from that on Apollo 10. A very-high-frequency antenna would facilitate communications with the astronauts during their extravehicular activity on the moon's surface. The lunar module would also have a lighter-weight ascent engine, increased thermal protection on the landing gear, and a packet of scientific experiments. The only change in the command-service module was the removal of a blanket of insulation from the forward hatch. On the launch vehicle, the first stage was stripped of its research and development instrumentation. Insulation was improved on the second stage, and slight

Testing the Apollo 11 spacecraft in the operations and checkout building

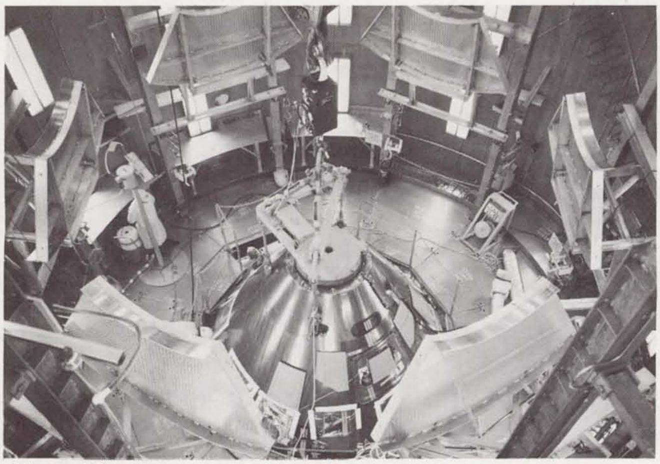


Figure 154

Fig. 154. The command and service modules in an altitude chamber. Segments of a workstand, used to work near the top of the spacecraft, have been lifted and pulled back against the circular walls of the chamber. Fig. 155. Testing the landing gear of the lunar module. Fig. 156. Mating the command and service modules with the spacecraft-lunar module adapter, April 1969.

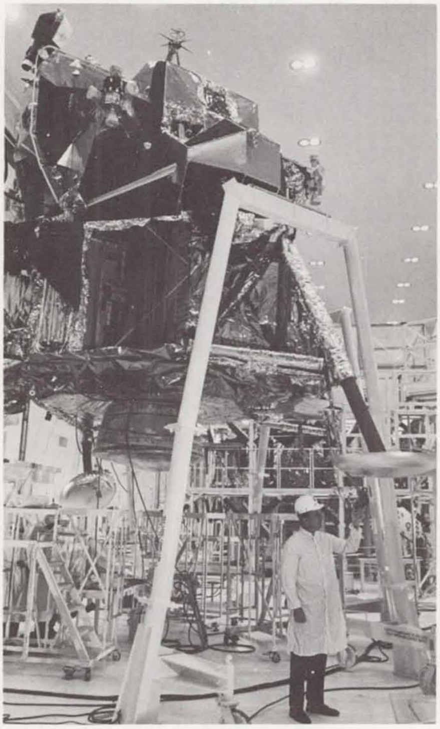


Figure 155

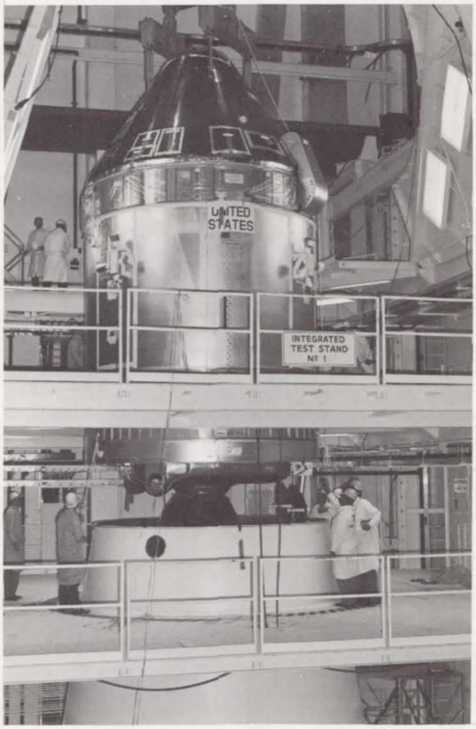


Figure 156

changes were made in the connections between the third stage and the instrument unit.[37]

The crawler-transporter picked up the 5443-metric-ton assembly and started for pad A at 12:30 p.m. on 20 May while Apollo 10 was still on its way to the moon. The countdown demonstration test got underway 27 June with vehicle and spacecraft fueled, powered up, and counted down for simulated launch on 2 July. On the following day, with the fuel tanks drained, Armstrong, Collins, and Aldrin participated in a dry test.[38]

Meanwhile, KSC was preparing for the hundreds of thousands of people who wanted to see the men off to the moon. Special guests, members of the press, and dependents of Apollo team members would number close to 20000. Some 700000 people were expected to watch the liftoff, possibly the largest crowd to witness a single event in the history of the world. The anticipated traffic jam prompted KSC to arrange for helicopters to fly in key personnel, should they be otherwise unable to reach their work. Guests included Vice President and Mrs. Spiro Agnew, former President and Mrs. Lyndon Johnson, Army Chief of Staff General William Westmoreland, four cabinet members, 33 senators, 200 congressmen, 14 governors, and 56 ambassadors. Close to 3500 accredited members of the news media were occupying the press site. Over two-thirds were American; 55 other countries, including three Iron Curtain nations, sent representatives, with Japan's 118 leading the way. All western European countries except Portugal were represented, and all western hemisphere nations except Paraguay.[39]

Brilliant lights illuminated the launch area and Apollo 11 during the night of 15 July. The crawler-transporter carried the mobile service structure to its parking area a mile away. In the early hours of 16 July, the tanks of the second and third stages were filled with liquid hydrogen. More than 450 people occupied the 14 rows of display and control consoles in firing room 1. Sixty-eight NASA and contractor supervisors occupied four rows; seated at the top, nearest the sloping windows that looked out toward the launch pads, were the KSC chiefs, the Saturn V program manager for Marshall, and the Apollo program manager for the Manned Spacecraft Center. One hundred and forty Boeing engineers occupied consoles linked to the Saturn IC stage and mechanical ground support equipment. North American Rockwell had 60 engineers at consoles connected with the S-II stage, while 45 McDonnell-Douglas engineers monitored the S-IVB stage. Ninety IBM engineers manned three rows of consoles hooked up to the instrument unit, IBM stabilization and guidance systems, and flight control. About 8 kilometers to the south two automatic checkout stations in the operations and checkout building monitored the spacecraft.[40]

The fueling of the launch vehicle was completed more than three hours before liftoff. Then the closeout crew of six men under the direction of Gunter Wendt and Spacecraft Test Conductor Clarence Chauvin returned to the pad. They opened the hatch and made final cabin preparations. The backup command pilot, Fred Haise, Jr., entered the spacecraft at 3 hours and 10 minutes before liftoff. With the assistance of Haise and a suit technician, Neil Armstrong entered Apollo at 6:54 a.m. Michael Collins joined him five minutes later in the right couch, and Edwin Aldrin climbed into the center seat. The closeout crew shut the side hatch, pressurized the cabin to check for leaks, and purged it. At two hours before liftoff Houston participated in a final checkout of the spacecraft systems. At one hour before liftoff, the closeout crew left the pad. Almost a kilometer to the west, protected by a sand bunker, 14 rescue personnel stood watch. Equipped with armored personnel carriers and wearing flame protective gear, they could move to the pad quickly if the astronauts needed help.[41]

To make the occasion more memorable, the day was ushered in by a beautiful dawn. A few fleecy clouds scarcely cut the warm sun. The slight wind cheered the assemblage. As the moments ticked off, loud speakers reported that everything was moving according to schedule.

The countdown became automatic at 3 minutes, 20 seconds, when the sequencer took over. Ignition commenced at 8.9 seconds with a wisp of white

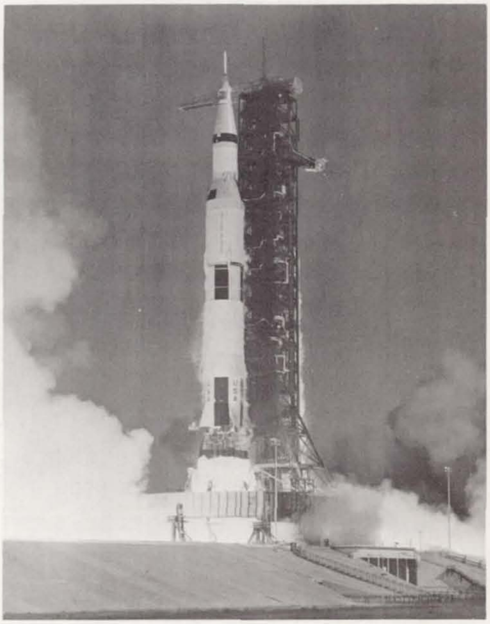


Fig. 157. The departure of Apollo 11.

smoke indicating that the first engine would soon come to life. All five engines built up full thrust with an awesome roar. For a moment Apollo 11 seemed to stand still; then at 9:32 a.m. on 16 July 1969, the moon rocket rose slowly and majestically. A voice broke the tension: "The vehicle has cleared the pad." Apollo 11 had gone beyond KSC's control and the men in firing room 1 turned for a moment from their consoles to view the rocket rising over the Atlantic.

Many people moved away from the viewing sites as soon as the vehicle disappeared from view. Others stood silently, or chatted quietly, or sat on the grass if they were not among the privileged visitors in the stands. Exhaustion held some—others simply did not want to fight the traffic. A cameraman asked how the launch looked. He had not seen it, because he had been busy photographing the reactions of the VIPs.

"Eagle Has Landed"

Cleared to proceed to the moon, the astronauts fired the S-IVB engine again, increasing their velocity to 38 400 kilometers per hour. On 20 July, Sunday in the United States, Armstrong and Aldrin occupied and powered up the lunar module, Eagle, and deployed its landing legs. The two craft separated at 1:46 p.m. (KSC time). Collins fired the command module rockets to move about three kilometers away. Flying feet first, face down, Armstrong and Aldrin fired Eagle's descent engine at 3:08 p.m. Forty minutes later, as the command module emerged from behind the moon, Collins reported: "Everything is going just swimmingly." The two astronauts guided the Eagle into elliptical orbit. Armstrong throttled the engine at 4:05 p.m. to slow its descent.

As the moonscape came into clearer view, Armstrong saw they were approaching a crater almost as large as a football field. He took over manual control and steered toward a less formidable site. At Mission Control physicians noted his heart beat had increased from a normal 77 to 156. While Armstrong manipulated the control, Aldrin called out altitude readings: "750 feet, coming down at 23° . . . 700 feet, 21 down . . . 400 feet, down at nine. . . . Got the shadow out there . . . 75 feet, things looking good . . . lights on . . . picking up some dust . . . 30 feet, 2½ down . . . faint shadow . . . four forward . . . drifting to the right a little . . . contact light . . . O.K. Engine stop." As the probes beneath three of Eagle's four footpads touched the surface, a light flashed on the instrument panel. The world heard Armstrong's quiet message: "Houston. Tranquility Base here. Eagle has landed."[42]

Later the crew explained that at some distance from the surface, fine dust had blown up around the spacecraft and obscured their vision. They felt no sensation at the moment of landing, and set to work telling people on earth what they could see from Eagle's windows. At 6 p.m. Armstrong recommended that the walk on the moon should begin about 9 p.m., earlier than originally planned. Later than he proposed, but still five hours ahead of schedule, Armstrong opened the hatch and squeezed through it at 10:39 p.m. He wore 38 kilograms of equipment on his back, containing the portable life support and communications systems. On the moon, the weight amounted to only 6.3 kilograms. Wriggling through the hatch, Armstrong cautiously proceeded down the nine-step ladder. He paused at the second step to pull a ring to deploy a television camera, mounted to follow his movements as he climbed down. At 10:56 p.m. he planted his left foot on the moon. Then the words that were to take their place among the great phrases of history: "That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind."[43]

At 1:54 p.m. 21 July, after 22 hours on the lunar surface, Aldrin fired the ascent stage engine. It functioned perfectly. They docked with the command module at 5:35 p.m. Collins touched off the main engine at 12:55 a.m. 22 July, while on the back side of the moon, and the astronauts headed for home. Because of stormy seas, they adjusted their course to a new landing area 434 kilometers from the original site. They splashed down in the Pacific at 12:50 p.m. 24 July. President Nixon greeted them on the aircraft carrier *Hornet*.[44]

The Apollo program had achieved its objective five months and ten days before the end of the decade.

One of the most perceptive writers of our time, Anne Morrow Lindbergh, probed the deeper meanings of these amazing engineering accomplishments. In *Earthshine*, she spoke of the "new sense of awe and mystery in the face of the vast marvels of the solar system," and the feeling of modesty before the laws of the universe that counterbalanced man's pride in his tremendous achievements. Many had remarked that mankind would never again look on the moon in the same way. She thought it more significant that people would never again look at earth in the same way. We would have a new sense of its richness and beauty. She concluded: "Man had to free himself from earth to perceive both its diminutive place in the solar system and its inestimable value as a life-fostering planet."[45]

Page intentionally left blank

22

A SLOWER PACE: APOLLO 12–14

With the arrival of Apollo 12's spacecraft in late March 1969, four months before the first moon landing, Kennedy Space Center again had three Apollos in the operational flow. On 30 April Grumman mated the lunar module ascent and descent stages, while North American readied the command-service module for a cabin leak test in the altitude chamber. Launch vehicle stacking awaited the arrival of the S-IC first stage, which arrived from Michoud on 3 May and was placed on mobile launcher 2 four days later. Operations on Apollo 12 halted for two days while ordnance was installed in Apollo 11. The remaining Saturn stages were erected on the 22d. At the operations and checkout building, a number of hardware problems delayed operations by a week. Although the Launch Operations office postponed until 30 June the transfer of the spacecraft to the vehicle assembly building, the launch team continued under a tight schedule. If Apollo 11 failed, KSC faced a possible September launch for Apollo 12.[1]

Testing went well during the next six weeks and the space vehicle stack was complete by 1 July. The successful lunar landing later that month relaxed the pace. After the splashdown on the 24th, General Phillips announced a 14 November launch of Apollo 12 to the moon's Ocean of Storms. Among the mission goals, NASA hoped to improve its landing techniques and secure low-orbit photographs of sites for further exploration. During extra-vehicular periods, the astronauts would gather lunar samples and deploy the first Apollo lunar surface experiments package.[2]

With the accomplishment of Apollo's primary objective, a number of key program officials decided to move elsewhere. In August 1969 Phillips left his position as Apollo Program Director to command the USAF Space and Missile Systems Organization. Rocco Petrone moved up from KSC to fill the vacancy in the Office of Manned Space Flight. The following month Rear Admiral Roderick O. Middleton vacated the Apollo Program Manager's Office at KSC to assume command of Cruiser-Destroyer Flotilla 12. In December Dr. George Mueller resigned as NASA's Associate Administrator for Manned Space Flight and was replaced by Dale Myers, an executive from North American Rockwell. That same month Albert Siepert announced his retirement from KSC.[3]

Petrone's departure from KSC brought Walter J. Kapryan to the post of Director of Launch Operations. A native of Flint, Michigan, and a graduate of Wayne State University, Kapryan had served as a B-29 flight engineer in World War II. In 1947 he had entered the field of hydrodynamic research at Langley Research Center in Virginia. When NASA absorbed Langley, Kapryan became a member of the Space Task Group. He came to the Cape in 1960 as a project engineer for Mercury-Redstone, worked for a time in Houston, and then headed Houston's Gemini Program Office in Florida. Kapryan came to Apollo in late 1966, first as Assistant Apollo Spacecraft Program Manager and then as Petrone's deputy. Although less imposing physically and less assertive in manner than Petrone, Kapryan enjoyed wide respect within Apollo program ranks. Middleton's successor, Edward R. Mathews, was a veteran of the Missile Firing Laboratory. As Chief of the Saturn IB Systems Office, Mathews had played an important role in LC-34 and 37 modifications. He had served as Deputy Apollo Program Manager since September 1967. Siepert's duties as Deputy Director for Center Management were taken on by Miles Ross when the latter became Deputy Center Director in June 1970. Fortunately there was little turnover during the remainder of the program.[4]

Apollo 12 rolled out in the early daylight of 8 September. The prime crew for the mission—Commander Charles Conrad, Command Module Pilot Richard Gordon, and Lunar Module Pilot Alan Bean—joined hundreds of other spectators. During September and October, the checkout proceeded in routine fashion. In the local jargon, it was a nominal operation. The countdown demonstration test ended on 29 October without incident, although rain and high winds stormed through the complex at simulated liftoff.[5]

The launch team started precount procedures one week before launch day. The 70 hours of activities moved along smoothly until Wednesday, 12 November. That morning technicians began filling the service module's liquid hydrogen tanks, which fed gaseous hydrogen to the spacecraft's fuel cells. There the hydrogen mixed with oxygen to provide electrical power and drinking water. Within minutes the North American test team knew it had a problem: one tank was not chilling down. When the team stopped the hydrogen flow, the fuel level dropped off rapidly. A crew member, looking through a panel window, detected frost on the tank. It was found that a leak in the outer shell had destroyed the vacuum insulation. Less than 40 hours remained on the countdown clock, and the problem was a new one for the North American crew at Merritt Island. After consulting with the Manned Spacecraft Center, John Williams, Spacecraft Operation Director, decided to replace the faulty tank with its corresponding unit from Apollo 13. Judging from experience at Downey, there was ample time for the operation. If the replacement could not be accomplished within the remaining hold time, KSC would delay the launch one month. The exchange involved removing an access panel and the cryogenic service lines leading through the panel, disconnecting a series of cryogenic feed lines and electrical connections between the tank and the hydrogen subsystem shelf, exchanging tanks, and refastening all the parts. The North American crew worked deliberately since spacecraft power was on, but still managed to complete the work within 24 hours. Meanwhile Launch Operations rescheduled the spacecraft cryogenic loading for Thursday morning at T-17 hours.[6]

The launch team had planned one other major change in the countdown—the installation of the fuel capsule that would provide power for the package of experiments to be left on the lunar surface. The experimental instruments received power from a small (45 centimeters high, 40 centimeters in diameter) atomic generator. The 3.8 kilograms of plutonium 238 that fueled the generator rode to the moon inside a graphite cask. Understandably, the plutonium was one of the last items placed aboard.[7]

Lightning Strikes

Scattered rain showers, forerunners of a cold front, marked the approach of Apollo 12's launch day. A broad band of clouds and precipitation, punctuated by numerous thunderstorms, moved into central Florida on Thursday afternoon. By nightfall, the thunderstorms ended and the rain slackened. The next morning, radar displays of precipitation echoes placed the cold front about 80 miles north of the Cape. Despite the weather, large crowds were on hand to watch the liftoff. President and Mrs. Nixon headed the list of 3000 guests, marking the first and only appearance of a Chief Executive at an Apollo launch. Other names on the VIP list included Vice President Agnew, Henry Kissinger, Roy Disney, Jr. (of Walt Disney Productions), Arnold Palmer, and James Stewart.[8]

As the space vehicle underwent final preparations, the approaching cold front pushed large banks of clouds toward the Cape. Cold rain drenched the spectators. Up in the command module, Yankee Clipper, Commander Conrad noticed water leaking between the boost protective cover and the spacecraft. He later recalled:

> I could see water on my two windows—window 1 and 2. We experienced varying amounts passing across these windows, dependent on how heavily it was raining. These [rain and wind] were the only things noted up to liftoff.[9]

With a half hour to go, Merritt Island was experiencing peak winds of 14 knots, light rain showers, broken clouds at 240 meters, and overcast skies at 3000 meters. But the ceiling exceeded the minimum requirement of 150 meters, and the ground winds were within limits. The Apollo design permitted launch during rain. The possibility of lightning concerned Launch Operations Director Kapryan, however, and he considered a hold. As he explained at the postlaunch briefing:

> We were within our minimums. . . . The only consideration as far as launching under what apparently are adverse conditions—they are really twofold. Number 1, we would not launch into a thundercloud; number 2, we would not launch when we had lightning in the system. There was some concern. We had very unpredictable weather predictions. The weather was deteriorating. . . .[10]

A weather report from the Eastern Test Range helped Kapryan make up his mind. An Air Force plane reported only mild turbulence and no indication of lightning within 32 kilometers of LC-39. Air Force 1, bringing the President to the launch, experienced no turbulence while flying through the front. Astronauts Slayton and Stafford told Kapryan the weather was satisfactory. The launch operations director also had to weigh a "now or scrub" situation: the liquid oxygen replenish pump had failed at T-1 hour and 22 minutes, and everything depended on a backup pump. With the launch rules and available evidence giving him an affirmative, Kapryan opted for an 11:22 a.m. launch.*[11]

Apollo 12 lifted off on schedule. Thirty-six seconds later, as the space vehicle reached 2000 meters, spectators observed two parallel streaks of lightning flash toward the launch pad. The Yankee Clipper experienced a power failure. As Conrad later recalled:

> I was aware of a white light. I knew that we were in the clouds; and although I was watching the gauges I was aware of a white light. The next thing I noted was that I heard the master alarm ringing in my ears and I glanced over to the caution and warning panel and it was a sight to behold.[12]

The spacecraft sustained a second lightning discharge 16 seconds later at an altitude of 4400 meters. Conrad reported to Mission Control: "We just lost the [stabilizing] platform, gang: I don't know what happened here; we had everything in the world drop out.''[13] Fortunately, the spacecraft automatically switched to a backup power source, and the astronauts soon restored primary power.

---

*After the launch some newspapers suggested that President Nixon's presence influenced Kapryan's decision. The launch director denied it.

That Apollo 12 had been hit by lightning was a matter of dispute for some time. At the postlaunch briefing, one hour after liftoff, reporters asked Stafford, Apollo 10 commander, and Kapryan about reports of lightning. Stafford dismissed the reports as only speculation. Kapryan said, ''I think we're pretty certain that it was not lightning. If the vehicle had been struck by lightning the damage would have been quite severe rather than a momentary dropout.'' When reporters pressed the matter, Stafford and Kapryan responded that NASA had quite a few people watching after liftoff and no one reported a sighting. Subsequently, the lightning reports from numerous viewers were substantiated by space vehicle data and KSC cameras.[14]

President Nixon chose not to mention the incident in his postlaunch remarks at the launch control center. He commented on the ''great experience and awe'' of an Apollo launch. He repeated the remarks made to him by astronauts ''that those on the ground, the engineers, and the technicians, and the scientists, and all of those who work in the program, that they are really the heart of this great, successful experience for the American people and for all the people of the world.''[15] Nixon promised to keep the United States first in space.

After the unnerving lightning incident, the mission moved smoothly. Apollo 12 went into earth orbit 11 minutes and 43 seconds after liftoff. By 2:15 p.m., it had accelerated to 38 000 kilometers an hour and was headed for the moon. There was a significant change in the trajectory. Three earlier Apollos flew a course that permitted looping the moon and returning to earth if the spacecraft failed to attain lunar orbit. Apollo 12, by a midcourse maneuver, entered a trajectory that did not allow free return. This was necessary to reach the desired landing site.

On 19 November 1969, Conrad and Bean landed in the Ocean of Storms, within 180 meters of the unmanned Surveyor 3 that had been there for two years. The two astronauts spent 7 hours and 45 minutes on the lunar surface, setting up scientific instruments, collecting pieces from the Surveyor, gathering materials, and photographing the landing craft, the Surveyor, and other objects of interest. They lifted off on the morning of 20 November and splashed down in the South Pacific on 24 November.[16]

With plans afoot for a world tour, the crew first returned to KSC on 17 December for a reunion with the launch team. Debus led them into the transfer aisle of the vehicle assembly building as a Navy band played ''Anchors Aweigh'' and 8000 members of the government-industry team applauded. He complimented the crew on leaving as commanders and returning as U.S. Navy captains.

"The crew didn't consider the flight over until we got back here," Conrad said. "We forgive the weather man for his job, but had we to do it again, I'd launch exactly under the same conditions." Gordon pointed out that

> the real guts of these flights, after their formative, opening stages, are really put together here. The hardware is brought here, it's mated here in the VAB, and a great amount of testing is done. But more importantly, the crew is here most of the months before launch. And this is really the way it ought to be. This is really our home.[17]

The astronauts received enlarged color photographs of the Apollo 12 liftoff, plus a stone from the crawlerway over which their vehicle began its journey. Then they walked through cheering crowds along the transfer aisle, exchanging handshakes and signing autographs. They lunched with the KSC Management Council and contractor managers where they regaled the party with some lighthearted comments about their achievement. The astronauts were presented with such trinkets as whiskbrooms to remove lunar dust, tiny parasols to ward off the intense sunlight on the moon, and joke books to while away the time on lunar journeys. It was a happy family reunion.[18]

Whys and Wherefores of Lightning

The strike on Apollo 12 led to another study of lightning protection, this one focusing on the atmospheric conditions that might threaten a launch. At a meeting of the American Geophysical Union in December 1969, experts discussed the incident and offered NASA some observations. The scientists generally agreed that Apollo 12 triggered the lightning discharges. There were no other signs of lightning or thunder for six hours before and six hours after the launch. However, readings on electrical field meters in the Cape area indicated disturbed weather conditions. Apparently Apollo 12 had entered an electrical cloud and distorted the field sufficiently for breakdown to occur. The 110-meter space vehicle and its 500-meter ionized exhaust plume then formed an excellent conductor. The space vehicle had probably triggered a lightning stroke from an electrified cloud incapable of producing lightning on its own. Although the launch vehicle's design incorporated safeguards against electrical discharges, lightning could damage components in the spacecraft such as solid-state electronic devices. The Apollo 12 experience prompted NASA officials to reexamine the space vehicle and the weather criteria for a launch.[19]

The lightning investigation team opposed any modifications to the spacecraft. They recommended, instead, further launch restrictions to reduce the possibility of touching off another lightning strike. The new "severe weather restrictions" appeared in the launch rules for Apollo 13. The space vehicle would not be launched if the nominal flight path would carry the vehicle within 8 kilometers of a thunderstorm, through cold-front or squall-line clouds, or through cumulus clouds with tops at 3050 meters or higher.[20] The additional weather limitations would have a moderate effect on winter and spring launchings; in those seasons, high winds would more often cause delays. On a February afternoon, the probability of delay would increase from 10% to 18% with the new restrictions. In the summer, the probability of a scrub would jump from 3% to 18%. Despite the new rules, the odds for acceptable weather were still better than nine out of ten for most three-hour launch windows.[21]

Apollo 13 Launch Operations

The launch vehicle and spacecraft for the Apollo 13 mission arrived at KSC in June 1969. Following the Apollo 11 success, NASA set a March 1970 launch date for Apollo 13. More planning time was added in January, moving the launch to 11 April. Prelaunch operations went smoothly through the fall and winter months. The work in high bay 1 marked its last use for Apollo; subsequently the area would be used for Skylab operations. The Bendix crawler team transferred the space vehicle to pad A on 15 December. The flight readiness test, scheduled before the January program change, was run on 29 January as a "confidence test" and rerun on 26 February. After four days of hypergolic load tests in mid-March, the launch team began the countdown demonstration test on the 18th.[22]

A strange accident punctuated the last day of the test. Early on 25 March, Graydon Corn's propellants crew started the chill-down of the LOX pumping system. The operation required a 760-liter-per-minute flow to the replenishing pumps (which could handle five times that rate) and a lesser amount through a bleed line that had been added to the LOX system after the 500-F spill in August 1966 (pp. 343–44). During the 40 minutes of precooling, the launch team emptied 39 000 liters of LOX into a drainage ditch outside the perimeter fence. Normally ocean breezes dissipated the oxygen fog. On the morning of the 25th, however, there was no wind and a pronounced temperature inversion. A dense fog built up in the drainage ditch; at a culvert where the road to the slide wire bunker crossed the ditch, the invisible oxygen overflowed onto the bank. At 6:00 a.m. the closeout crew and safety personnel left the LOX storage area. First-stage loading could begin after a three-minute chill-down of the 38 000-liter-per-minute main pumps. A security team completed its job of clearing the pad area and proceeded in three cars to the perimeter gate southwest of the LOX sphere. The driver of the first car, Patrolman Nolan Watson, drove through the gate and parked. As he walked back to Earl Paige's car, an order over the radio directed the team to clear the slide wire bunker area. Paige turned his ignition on and heard a loud pop. Soon flames sprang up from beneath the hood. Watson ran back to his car, only to find it also on fire. About the same time, the third car burst into flames. The three guards quickly ran for cover. A fire and rescue crew arrived in five minutes but took no action until the oxygen cloud dissipated. It was nearly 7:00 a.m. before the fire was under control, leaving three burnt hulks and a shaken crew.

Debus called for an immediate investigation. The preliminary report, rendered a week later, blamed the accident on the enriched oxygen atmosphere. Spontaneous ignition resulting from the engine heat, combustibles (oil and grease on the engine covers and gas around the carburetors) and the oxygen vapor cloud caused two of the fires, the third apparently starting when the driver turned the ignition switch. The report criticized the practice of dumping large quantities of cryogenics and termed the resulting vapor a hazard. Recommendations included immediate studies of the drainage system leading from the LOX storage area and its dump reservoir, of entry and exit routes at pad 39 A, and of KSC's safety training course. The major change brought about by the accident was to extend the LOX drainage pipes beyond the perimeter ditch to a marshy area farther from the pad.[23]

Another anomaly during the demonstration test appeared insignificant at the time; in fact, it was the beginning of what was to prove Apollo's most nerve-wracking hours. On 24 March the North American launch crew finished loading the cryogenics into the service module. Tank testing had gone smoothly and nothing about the loading operation presaged troubles ahead. The first sign came when the launch crew partially emptied the two liquid oxygen tanks. While the first tank performed normally, emptying half of its contents, the second tank released only 8% of its LOX. The crew prepared an interim discrepancy report and postponed further action until the end of the demonstration test.

The spacecraft team resumed detanking operations on the 27th, after discussing the matter with Houston, Downey, and Beech Aircraft Corporation. The problem centered on a possible leak between the fill line and the quantity probe because of a loose fit in the sleeves and tube. A second failure of the detanking procedure strengthened this view. After additional attempts at higher pressures proved unsuccessful, the KSC team decided to "boil off" the remaining LOX. The tank heaters, energized by 65 volts of direct current, were turned on; 90 minutes later the tank fans were also activated. The solution proved to be a slow one. After 6 hours the quantity of LOX in the tank still stood at 35%. The team continued to run the heaters and began pressurizing the tank for a few minutes and then venting the fill line. After two more hours of alternately heating and venting, the tank emptied.

Apollo officials faced a difficult decision. Replacement of the oxygen shelf in the service module would take two days and posed the possibility of damaging other equipment. If the problem were a loose fill tube, the shortcoming would not threaten the mission. The LOX tank would still supply the fuel cells properly and any electrical short at the capacitance gauge would be insignificant. After further discussions with Washington, Houston, and Downey, KSC undertook a partial fill on the 30th. Both tanks reached the 20% level without any trouble, but emptying the second tank again required heating and pressure cycling. Apollo technical and management personnel weighed the possible hazards of flying with a loose fill tube against the problems of shelf replacement. The decision was to keep the defective tank.[24]

A second cryogenic tank problem received more publicity in the closing days of the prelaunch operations. Liquid helium from a tank in the lunar module was used to assure a steady flow of propellants to the descent engine. The tank's design allowed for a slow increase of pressure as the helium warmed, but during the countdown demonstration, pressure in the tank began rising too fast. If a faulty vacuum allowed heat to build up too rapidly, the increased pressure would blow the tank's burst disk and prevent a lunar landing. Over the first weekend in April, newspapers reported the helium tank as a serious problem. A test conducted on Monday the 6th, however, indicated that the "heat rate loss was well within parameters and acceptable for launch."[25]

Apollo operations continued to attract famous people from around the world. In early March, French President and Mme. Pompidou spent a day at the center. The following week, 50 members of the U.S. Congress and the Canadian Parliament got a close view of Apollo 13; 60 German and Japanese astronomers visited Merritt Island on 9 March, after viewing a solar eclipse in north Florida. Later that month the British astronomer, Sir Bernard Lovell, and his wife were guests. The VIP list for the 11 April launch included Willy Brandt, Chancellor of West Germany, Vice President Agnew, and Secretary of State William Rogers.[26]

A Case of Measles

Three notables in residence—the crew of commander James Lovell, command module pilot Thomas K. Mattingly, and lunar module pilot Fred Haise—kept busy in the simulators and altitude chambers. While Lovell and Haise trained for two moon walks, Mattingly studied his photographic assignments which included the moon, sun, and other astronomical subjects. Training went smoothly, the hectic pace of previous launches seemingly a thing of the past. The situation changed dramatically, however, when NASA's Medical Director, Dr. Charles A. Berry, reported on 6 April that the prime crew had been exposed to measles. Backup lunar module pilot Charles Duke had a case of german measles (rubella) and Jeffrey Lovell, the commander's son, was down with the red measles (rubeola). Although the three astronauts were in good physical condition, blood samples were taken to determine their immunity. Initial tests showed satisfactory antibody levels in all three astronauts, but a recheck cast doubts on Mattingly's condition. Further tests indicated that Mattingly had no immunity and would likely experience the illness about the middle of the lunar mission.

At a press briefing on 8 April, Dr. Berry indicated that he would recommend against Mattingly's flying. NASA's preventive medicine program was questioned and Berry acknowledged the need to re-examine the subject. Previously crews had been restricted to essential contact during the last 21 days of prelaunch operations. This still included many people—training personnel, workers at the crew quarters, even younger members of the immediate families. The astronauts' schedule kept them in KSC's crew quarters much of the last three weeks, but risks were inevitable. Berry noted that some loopholes in the isolation program were necessary; others might be eliminated. He mentioned the likelihood of more antibody testing and immunization, even for such unlikely adult diseases as measles.[27]

Mattingly's health posed a difficult decision for NASA. Duke's illness ruled out the substitution of the alternate crew. Delaying the launch a month would lessen confidence in the space vehicle and add $800 000 in costs. Another alternative was to replace Mattingly with his backup, John Swigert. The longer time between missions had permitted extensive simulator training with the backup crew. Although a late substitution for the other two crew members was out of the question, the command module pilot was more on his own. A last-minute switch might work. Thursday morning, 9 April, a new crew of Lovell, Haise, and Swigert entered the flight crew simulators.[28]

The Flight Crew Operations Branch concentrated on situations that required rapid teamwork. First they tested the crew's ability to handle various abort situations. Then the crew practiced the mission's critical maneuvers: the translunar injection, transposition and docking, lunar orbital insertion, descent orbit insertion, rendezvous and docking, and transearth injection. Mechanical failures were cranked into each of the maneuvers, forcing Swigert to make corrections. One situation required a decision and response within two seconds.[29] The major concern was communications between crew members. As Riley McCafferty, branch chief, put it:

> From the standpoint of putting these three guys together and these three guys accepting each other and these three guys establishing confidence in each other, that wasn't our concern. Our concern was, did we have the proper communication, so when Jack Swigert said, "that's good," did they really know what "good" meant to Swigert versus what "good" meant to Mattingly?[30]

The Flight Crew Operations Branch had striven for compatibility in training the prime and backup crews. With Apollo 13 came the first fruits of their labor. By Friday afternoon Deke Slayton and Riley McCafferty were convinced that Swigert could work with his new crew mates.

More important, Lovell was satisfied with the new arrangement. Paine, after discussing the matter with Lovell, Slayton, and other Apollo officials, gave the mission a go-ahead at KSC's prelaunch press conference Friday afternoon. Paine told reporters there was never any question about Swigert's ability as a command module pilot: "Jack literally wrote the book on the malfunctions and how to overcome them." NASA's concern had been whether the astronauts could work together effectively, and the 12 hours of intensive tests had removed all doubts. Slayton praised the crew training group: "They got the equipment on the line for the last 36 hours in A number 1 shape, came up with a beautiful plan, and we in fact did it. I guess we were all surprised also that the crew did integrate as well as they did." A reporter asked whether the change had caused extra crew fatigue. Slayton noted that the tests had not exceeded the normal work schedule. If the crew had not been ready by Friday noon, NASA was prepared to postpone the launch.[31]

A Fragile Lifeboat

The Apollo 13 countdown proceeded without a major incident, and liftoff came at 2:13 p.m. on 11 April. When the S-II stage's center engine shut down 132 seconds early, an extra 34-second burn from each of the four outboard engines made up most of the difference. An additional nine-second burn of the S-IVB stage brought the vehicle to within 0.4 meters/second of the planned velocity and left sufficient fuel to boost the space vehicle out of the earth's gravitational field.[32] Aside from the S-II problem, the first two days of the mission went according to plan. The crew started the third day in space by inspecting the lunar module. Lovell and Haise read a supercritical helium pressure well under the danger line. Fifty-five hours into the mission the crew began a television transmission from the command module, Odyssey. Fred Haise demonstrated movement through the tunnel into the lunar module, Aquarius, and remarked: "There's a little bit of an orientation change that, even though I'd been through it once, in the water tank, is still pretty unusual. I find myself now standing with my head on the floor, when I get down into the LM." For the next half hour the crew described their temporary quarters in a space version of "Person to Person." The television interview ended on a light note as Lovell showed off a floating tape recorder. Musical selections included "Aquarius" from "Hair" and the theme from "2001, A Space Odyssey."[33]

The good cheer came to a sudden end a few minutes later when the warning system indicated low pressure in hydrogen tank 1. Mission control asked the crew to turn on the cryogenic fans and heaters. Ninety seconds after the fans started up, Mission Control lost all telemetry for two seconds. The crew heard a loud "bang" and observed a low voltage condition on d.c. main bus B.* Swigert reported, "Okay, Houston. Hey, we've got a problem here."[34] The full extent of the problem, however, was not immediately apparent. Voltage on main bus B recovered momentarily. The quantity gauge for oxygen tank 2 fluctuated and then returned to an off-scale high reading. Repeated firings of the attitude control thrusters on the service module added to the confusion. According to a later NASA report the thrusters were probably firing to overcome the effects of venting oxygen and a blown panel. Within minutes, the electrical output from fuel cells 1 and 3 dropped to zero. At first the mission controllers focused on the electrical systems, postulating a possible disconnect between the fuel cells and their respective buses. Upon realizing that the fuel cells were not working, mission control directed an emergency powerdown of the command module. With indications of a pressure loss in oxygen tank 1, Houston directed a switch in electrical power to obtain a reading from the number 2 tank's instrumentation. The tank was empty. The reading substantiated a crew report that the spacecraft was venting something into space. As the pressure in oxygen tank 1 continued to drop, Lovell's crew abandoned the mission and sought refuge in the lunar module.

---

*An electrical bus is a conductor that serves as a common connection for several circuits.

A subsequent investigation pieced together the probable sequence of events. Apparently the start of the fans in oxygen tank 2 caused an electrical short circuit. Damaged Teflon insulation around the fan motor wires caught fire. Although the Teflon burned slowly, increasing heat and pressure soon ruptured the tank. The escaping oxygen either ignited with combustibles in the oxygen shelf compartment or blew an access panel off by itself. The panel struck the spacecraft high-gain antenna, disrupting telemetry signals momentarily. The pressure in oxygen tank 1 began dropping immediately after the telemetry loss. Apparently the same force that blew off the panel also damaged tank 1. The sudden and possibly violent failure of tank 2 may have broken a line to tank 1 or caused a valve to leak.[35]

The plight of the astronauts reawakened world interest in the Apollo program. Television carried the drama to millions. Foreign countries offered their services for a recovery outside the intended Pacific splashdown area. At the manned spaceflight centers, concern was matched by a determination to return the astronauts safely. Two major activities dominated the remainder of the mission: planning and conducting the propulsion maneuvers with the lunar module so as to bring the spacecraft back to earth, and managing the vital resources—oxygen, water, electricity, and the canisters of lithium hydroxide used to remove carbon dioxide from the cabin atmosphere. Open communications lines between KSC and mission control at Houston carried advice and test requirements. The two centers simulated the various maneuvers and conservation measures before directions were given to the flight crew. A team under Charles Mars, lunar module project engineer, devised a means of recharging the command-service module's re-entry batteries from the lunar module's electrical system. Another KSC recommendation turned off the radar heaters to save electricity. North American and Grumman engineers at KSC helped devise ways to transfer water from the portable life support systems into the lunar module's water coolant system. One of the biggest problems was the removal of carbon dioxide from the crowded Aquarius. KSC engineers, again duplicating activities at Houston, rigged a system that carried the CO_2-rich air from the lunar module, through a hose, into the command-service module's lithium hydroxide canisters. Over in KSC's flight crew training building, the Houston team simulated in advance the various situations to be encountered by the astronauts.[36]

Apollo 13 looped around the moon on 14 April 1970. While the lunar module barely provided room to turn around, the crew preferred its narrow confines to the chilly 11°C of the powerless command module. Respect for Aquarius increased as its systems continued to function well past their two-day mission expectancy.[37] Splashdown came in the South Pacific on 17 April.

While the dramatic rescue earned plaudits for the entire Apollo team, the mission had failed. Paine took steps to determine the cause of the accident as the astronauts were returning to earth; on the 17th he announced the appointment of an Apollo 13 review board under the leadership of Langley Research Center's Director, Edgar M. Cortright. The board conducted an intensive investigation during the next six weeks and the positive reception of its report contrasted sharply with the earlier Apollo fire investigation. The board concluded "that the accident was not the result of a chance malfunction in a statistical sense, but rather from an unusual combination of mistakes, coupled with a somewhat deficient and unforgiving design."[38]

Oxygen tank 2—the one that first ruptured—had undergone acceptance tests at the Beech Aircraft Corporation factory in 1967. The tank was installed in SM-106 (Apollo 10) and later removed for modifications. During the operation, the oxygen shelf was jarred and fell some 5 centimeters. North American officials analyzed the incident and concluded that there was no damage. The review board found the likelihood of tank damage from the incident "rather low," but listed the accident as a possible cause of the loose-fitting fill tube. The oxygen shelf was retested after the modifications, but no cryogenics were used. As the components worked satisfactorily, the shelf was installed in SM-109 (Apollo 13) on 22 November 1968.

Unfortunately, when the tank arrived at KSC in June 1969, it had an even more serious shortcoming. The two protective thermostatic switches on its heater were built to 1962 specifications for 28-volt d.c. power. In 1965 North American had issued a revised specification—the heaters would operate on 65 volts for tank pressurization. Beech did not change the thermostatic switches, and both North American and NASA documentation reviews overlooked the error. Subsequent qualification and acceptance tests did not require complete switch cycling, and so they too failed to reveal the incompatibility. During tank pressurization the 28-volt switches could accommodate the 65 volts from KSC's ground support equipment because the thermostats remained cool and closed. However, if the tank temperature rose considerably, as it did for the first time during KSC's special detanking, the 28-volt thermostatic switches would fail. When the switches started to open at their upper limit of 300 kelvins (27°C) on 27 March, the current in the ground equipment welded them permanently closed. The review board estimated that, after the switches failed, temperatures in the tank reached 811 kelvins (538°C) in spots during the eight hours of detanking. The intense heat would have severely damaged the Teflon insulation on the fan motor wires.

As the board indicated, the special detanking on 27 March 1970 did not violate KSC procedures. However, the launch team could have detected

The Apollo 13 accident

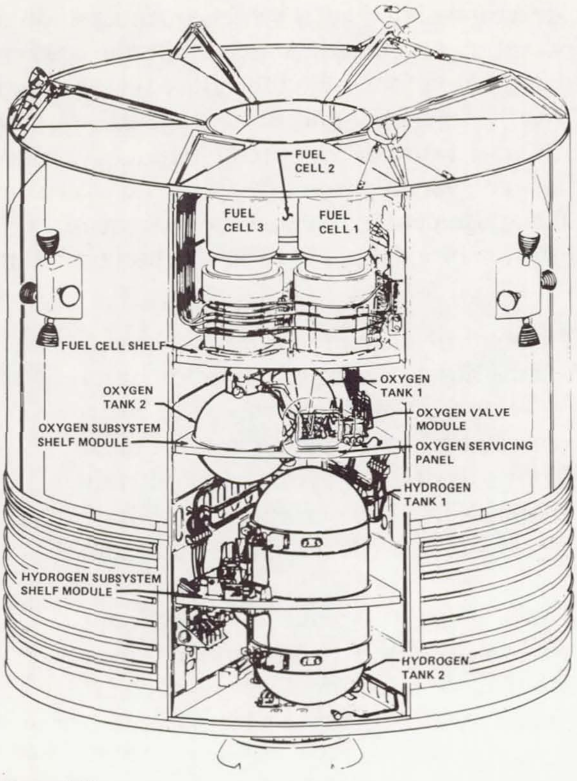

FUEL CELL 2
FUEL CELL 3
FUEL CELL 1
FUEL CELL SHELF
OXYGEN TANK 2
OXYGEN SUBSYSTEM SHELF MODULE
OXYGEN TANK 1
OXYGEN VALVE MODULE
OXYGEN SERVICING PANEL
HYDROGEN TANK 1
HYDROGEN SUBSYSTEM SHELF MODULE
HYDROGEN TANK 2

Fig. 158. Cutaway of the fuel cells and cryogenic tanks in bay 4 of the service module, Apollo 13. Fig. 159. The hydrogen tank shelf, with an oxygen sphere, upper left. Fig. 160. Schematic of the oxygen tank.

Figure 158

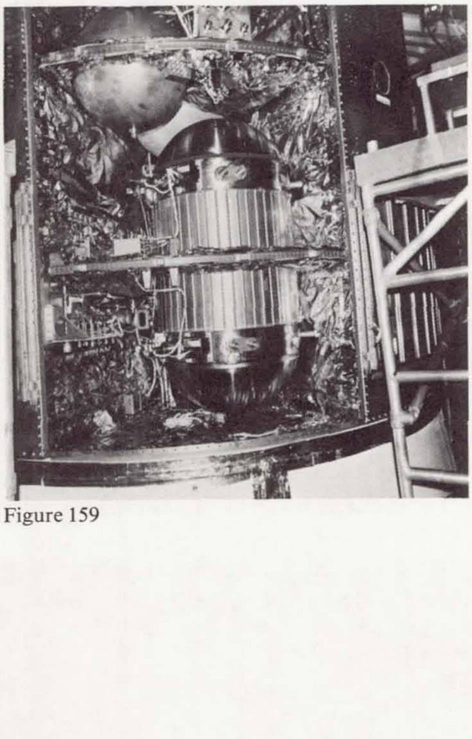


Figure 159

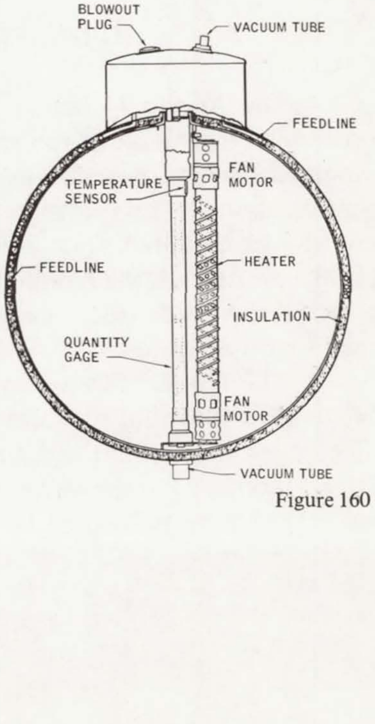

BLOWOUT PLUG
VACUUM TUBE
FEEDLINE
FAN MOTOR
TEMPERATURE SENSOR
FEEDLINE
HEATER
INSULATION
QUANTITY GAGE
FAN MOTOR
VACUUM TUBE

Figure 160

the failure of the thermostatic switches to open by observing heater current readings on the control panel. The tank temperatures indicated that the heaters had reached their temperature limit and a switch opening should follow. There was also an apparent communications gap while the oxygen tank problem was under debate. Attention focused on the loose fill tube, and many individuals at Houston, North American, and Beech were unaware of the extended heater operations. Those aware of the special detanking procedure failed to consider the damage that might result from the excessive heating and did not alert Apollo management to the possible consequences.[39]

The board summed up the lesson of Apollo 13 in the preface to its report:

> The total Apollo system of ground complexes, launch vehicle, and spacecraft constitutes the most ambitious and demanding engineering development ever undertaken by man. For these missions to succeed, both men and equipment must perform to near perfection. That this system has already resulted in two successful lunar surface explorations is a tribute to those men and women who conceived, designed, built, and flew it.
>
> Perfection is not only difficult to achieve, but difficult to maintain. The imperfection in Apollo 13 constituted a near disaster, averted only by outstanding performance on the part of the crew and the ground control team which supported them.[40]

Apollo 14 Launch Operations

The Apollo 14 launch, originally scheduled for February 1970, was postponed to July, then to October, then to December, and finally, after the Apollo 13 review board, was set for 13 January 1971. As Stuart A. Roosa remarked to a press conference, his "was the only crew that's been six months from launch four times."[41] The delays allowed the launch team to check and recheck the Apollo hardware, and ensured ample training time for all concerned. Roosa, for example, logged more than 1000 hours in the command module simulator.

The Apollo 14 command-service module had arrived at KSC on 19 November 1969 and moved into the altitude chamber the following week. The ascent stage of the lunar module was flown down from Bethpage, Long Island, on the 21st; the descent stage followed three days later. When tests in early December revealed a faulty oxidizer flow control valve on the descent stage, a new engine was substituted before Christmas. Operations continued during the holiday season; on the 29th and 30th, North American technicians replaced a defective hydrogen tank in the service module. The first major exercise of the new year involved a successful command-service-lunar module docking test on 9 January 1970. Two days later the S-IC stage sailed into its slip. The Boeing team erected the booster the following day on a mobile launcher. A week later the S-II and S-IVB stages arrived and were placed in low bay stalls. At the operations and checkout building, the descent stage entered the altitude chamber on 16 January. The Grumman team moved the ascent stage to the chamber on the 19th and began a three-day mating operation.

There were no significant problems for the next ten weeks until an accident in mid-April caused about a month's delay. North American's work schedule for the 15th included installation of a new inertial measurement unit with an improved gyroscope. A technician accidentally punched a hole in the unit and a pint of water glycol spilled out over the command module's lower equipment bay. Spacecraft officials initially estimated the cleanup and modification would take nine days. As the North American crew removed wires and equipment, the damage proved more extensive. However, there was no need to rush; the Apollo 13 accident had, by this time, delayed the launch of 14 indefinitely. When the cleanup was completed, a special altitude chamber run was conducted on 15 May to dry out the command module.[42]

The instrument unit arrived at KSC on 6 May; the following month North American engineers finished modifying the S-II stage's center engine. During the Apollo 13 flight the pogo effect had reappeared, this time on the second stage. Severe oscillations had forced an early shutdown (two minutes ahead of schedule) of the inboard engine. Although the outboard engines had burned longer and compensated for the loss, NASA officials did not want any more pogo. Marshall and North American engineers devised three changes to the second stage. They installed a helium gas accumulator in the LOX line of the center engine. This reservoir served to dampen fluid pressure oscillations, keeping them out of phase with the vibrations of the thrust structure and engines. North American added a cutoff device to shut down the center engine in case the accumulator failed to control the oscillations. Finally, simplified propellant valves were installed on all five J-2 engines. The valves controlled the propellant mixture to the engines, providing a rich mixture for high thrust during the early portion of the burn and a leaner mixture later.[43]

In the operations and checkout building, the primary and alternate crews conducted altitude chamber runs in the lunar module and simulated the command-service module altitude run. Grumman engineers traced noise problems in the VHF communications system to the VHF transceiver and the signal processor assembly. After replacing the defective parts, the lunar module team scheduled another run for 10 July.

The date for the altitude test slipped several times. Excessive leakage in a propellant quantity gauge caused the first delay. Tests at Houston and Bethpage resolved the problem by late July, and the rerun was set for 13 August. A conflict with the flight crew training schedule led to a second postponement, this time until the 18th. On 11 August, Houston asked KSC to check the ascent stage's ball valves, and on the 17th the Office of Manned Space Flight ordered ball valve leak checks on both stages. The test involved the removal of the lunar module from the altitude chamber to the high bay work stands and separation of the two stages. The spherical valves, located above the ascent and descent engines, controlled the flow of hypergolic fuel and oxidizer into the thrust chamber. The launch team used gaseous helium to test the valve seals. The leak checks and other propulsion system tests were completed by the end of August. On 2 September the lunar module returned to the altitude chamber, where all systems were reverified with an altitude run on 18 September.[44]

A stretch-out in the Apollo 14 launch schedule had prompted the decision to revalidate the ball valves. In early July, NASA Headquarters released a new flight schedule moving the launch date from 3 December 1970 to 31 January 1971. The postponement was caused by the Apollo 13 review board's recommended modifications for the command-service module. The board added a third cryogenic oxygen tank (placed in a previously empty bay of the service module), an auxiliary battery as a backup to the fuel cell, and an emergency supply of drinking water. The modifications recommended for the oxygen tanks—for example, replacing the Teflon insulation on internal wires with stainless steel conduits—required more time.

Following manned altitude runs in early September, North American removed the command-service module from the chamber on the 17th for cryogenic modifications (to comply with the Apollo 13 review board recommendations). The lunar module remained in the chamber until 13 October, when Grumman began installing the landing gear at the high bay stand. In late October, the launch vehicle team detected a condition that might inhibit S-II separation from the booster; paint on a mating flange had bonded it to the second stage. After the upper stages were removed and the area cleaned, the Saturn was restacked on 2 November. The spacecraft was added on the 4th and rollout followed five days later. Milestones passed in routine fashion the last two months:

• 7 December	Launch readiness review
• 14 December	Space vehicle overall test 1 completed

• 17 December	Flight readiness review
• 19 December	Flight readiness test completed*
• 19 January	Countdown demonstration test completed
• 25 January	Launch countdown begun.[45]

One major change in operations during the last month concerned the flight crew's health program. In December strict rules were instituted to preclude a recurrence of Apollo 13's measles. At KSC more than one hundred individuals were designated "primary contacts," i.e., people who had direct contact with the astronauts during the performance of essential duties. The primary contacts underwent immunization against nine diseases and were required to report any illnesses in their families. No one else was permitted in the astronauts' presence. Beginning at T-21 days, the Medical Surveillance Manager maintained a 24-hour command post near the astronauts' quarters on the third floor of the operations and checkout building. The astronauts were restricted during the last three weeks to their quarters, the flight crew training building, the flight line, and pad A's white room. Within these areas, bells and horns warned secondary contacts of approaching astronauts. Certain facilities were also modified. Air filtration units, installed in the air conditioning systems of the operations and checkout building and the flight crew training building, screened out 97% of airborne bacteria. Airtight doors and positive air pressure in the two buildings provided additional protection. Inside the training building an airtight glass partition protected the crew from secondary contacts. Communication with the crew was by intercom. Despite the elaborate precautions, the cooperation of the KSC work force was essential to the success of the program. Posters, adorned with comic strip characters, reminded workers to report any sign of illness. During the first week, five primary contacts reported in sick—all with a respiratory illness. But there was no recurrence of the problems that had beset Apollo 9 and 13.[46]

The Apollo 14 mission attracted widespread interest, in part because of its predecessor's near disaster, but also because its popular commander, Alan Shepard, was making a comeback after ten years. Following his 15-minute Mercury flight in May 1961, Shepard had been grounded for a minor ear disorder. He had continued in the program, serving for a while as chief of the Astronaut Office at Houston. Flights had passed him by, however, until surgery corrected his ear problem in 1969. Navy Captain Shepard's presence on the team bothered some junior members of the Flight

---

*During the flight readiness test, NASA officials received an anonymous telephone call threatening to blow up the launch center. KSC increased its security measures for the countdown and launch. *Washington Star*, 20 Dec. 1970.

The difficulties of practicing for work on the moon

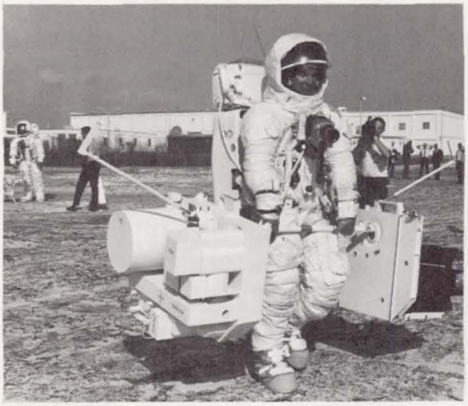


Figure 161

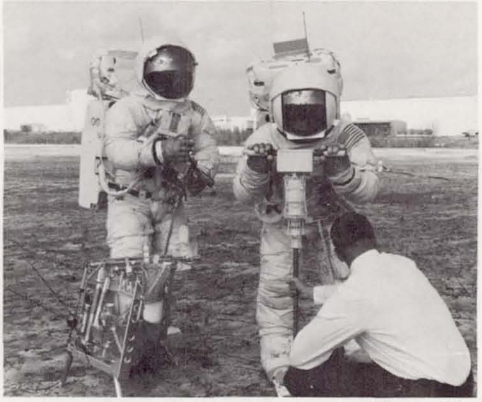


Figure 162

Figure 163

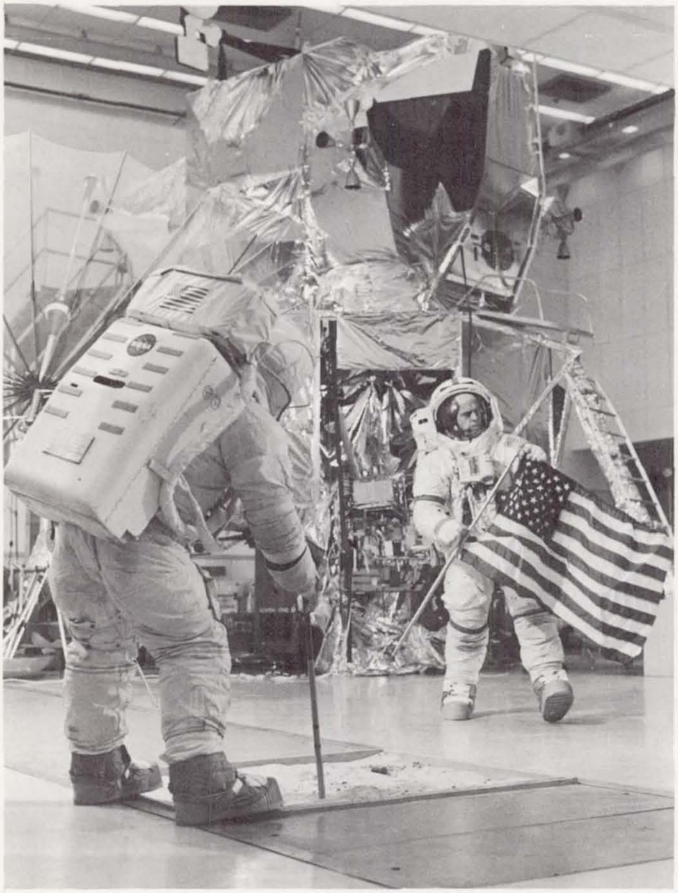


Fig. 161. Training aids were built much lighter than the actual equipment, to approximate the effects of lunar gravity; but those effects could never be duplicated exactly. Fig. 162. As the scientific tasks became more elaborate on the later missions, so also did training for making observations on the moon. Fig. 163. Even the simplest tasks were difficult to perform.

Crew Operations Branch. They feared that Shepard would "pull rank" and prove uncooperative. But as Riley McCafferty recalled:

> Shepard eased himself in and, over a period of about four weeks, he had a relationship with the young engineer on the floor that was good. They had a lot of confidence in each other and they talked back and forth; and the instructor, the young engineer, felt like he could tell Al Shepard, "you fouled up, buddy."[47]

There were no mishaps during the last week of Apollo 14 operations. The countdown, begun on 25 January, included 102 hours of scheduled tasks and five holds totaling 48 hours. The amount of intended hold time, representing rest periods and contingency planning for unforeseen problems, had changed little in four years. The holds proved largely unnecessary for Apollo 14. On launch day, 31 January, overcast skies gave Walter Kapryan some anxious moments. Light rain was falling on the large Sunday afternoon crowd when Kapryan halted the count at 3:15 p.m., only eight minutes from launch. Within 40 minutes, the cloud peaks had moved from the flight path. Launch officials changed the flight azimuth of the space vehicle from 72° to 75.6° and sent Apollo 14 on its way.[48]

Pruning the Apollo Program

While 1969-71 were the harvest years—four missions that put men on the moon, and the safe return of Apollo 13 after its breakdown in space—they were not so kind to Kennedy Space Center and the men who worked there. Congress cut the NASA budget, NASA cancelled Apollo missions, KSC and its contractors laid off thousands of employees—not in one fell swoop but in a succession of smaller blows. Space enthusiasts had hoped to go on to a manned landing on Mars in the mid-1980s; it was not to be. American public opinion was shifting its priorities to other matters: civil disorders, Vietnam, decaying cities, campus unrest, and inflation. And Apollo was a victim of its own success. For laymen, one moon landing after another was a little boring. Noting the public's limited interest in Apollo 12, the *New York Times* concluded that a collective sense of anticlimax was "perhaps predictable considering the intense national emotion spent on the first moon landing four months ago."[49]

Probably the biggest reason for Apollo's decline was the detente in American-Soviet relations. In 1961, amid cold war animosities, the United States was trailing the Soviet Union in the world's most widely publicized form of competition, manned spaceflight. Eight years later, the United States had clearly demonstrated its superiority. Despite the Russian invasion of Czechoslovakia, relations between the two nations had improved. Americans seemed less eager to spend "whatever it took" to surpass the Russians in space. Agreement on a U.S.-U.S.S.R. rendezvous mission (the Apollo-Soyuz flight of 1975), signed before the end of the Apollo program, clearly indicated a new policy of cooperation in space.

NASA budgets marked the contour intervals of Apollo's descent. Appropriations had exceeded $5 billion in the mid-1960s; in fiscal years 1969 and 1970 they fell below $4 billion. Apollo research and development funding declined from $2.9 billion in FY 1967 to $2 billion in FY 1969. Initially, NASA's follow-on programs to Apollo—Skylab, an earth orbital laboratory; Voyager, an unmanned Mars mission; and Nerva, a nuclear rocket engine—bore the brunt of the cutbacks. Funding for space programs to follow Apollo appeared in the Johnson administration's 1968 budget. Congress sharply reduced Nerva and Apollo Applications (Skylab) appropriations, cutting the latter from $454.7 million to $253 million. Voyager was eliminated entirely, while Apollo funds fell by less than 2%. For FY 1969 the Johnson administration budgeted $439.6 million for Apollo Applications, $38 million for 1971 and 1973 unmanned missions to Mars, and $41 million for Nerva. Again all three programs were cut sharply: Skylab eventually received $150 million that year. Apollo received all but $14 million of its $2.039 billion request. After the first lunar landing, however, Apollo lost its immunity to cutbacks, and further tight budgets brought reductions there as well.[50]

The Apollo flight schedule that was published on the eve of the first lunar landing called for nine additional flights before June 1971—a launch every 11 weeks. Apollo 12–15 would develop man's capability to work in the lunar environment; 16–20 would extend the astronauts' stay time on the moon to three days and increase their range of exploration. A primary purpose of the latter missions was to study the technological requirements for a potential lunar base.[51]

American lunar scientists opposed the rapid pace of the launches. They wanted 6–12 months between flights to study moon samples and plan future experiments. Dr. Lee A. DuBridge, Presidential Science Advisor, expressed the scientists' viewpoint in congressional testimony on the FY 1970 NASA budget: "Nothing can do more harm to support for the space program than to have a series of missions for which there are no clear objectives—such as a series of manned revisits to the moon without providing the capability to perform new scientific experiments and to exploit interesting new lunar features."[52] Three weeks after the first lunar landing, John Noble Wilford, space correspondent for the *New York Times*, publicized the dispute over Apollo's future. The scientific community, according to Wilford, sought a larger role in mission planning and more scientist-astronauts, as well as more time between missions.[53]

The July 1969 schedule had included an alternate plan that extended the nine remaining launches by 18 months and provided a launch interval of 4-5 months. Following the success of Apollo 11, NASA officials approved the compromise schedule. In defending the choice, George Mueller acknowledged the scientific arguments but cited other major factors. Among these, Mueller included "operational considerations in keeping a steady workload through the Cape" thereby "minimizing the cost."[54]

While NASA debated the pace of the remaining Apollo missions, a Space Task Group examined the future of America's space program. What lay beyond Apollo was the subject of their September 1969 report, "America's Next Decades in Space." The report's sponsors, a panel including Vice President Spiro T. Agnew and NASA Administrator Thomas O. Paine, recommended a balanced manned and unmanned space capability. The group listed three possible NASA programs leading to a manned landing on Mars before the end of the century. The most ambitious plan called for a lunar orbiting station by 1978, a lunar surface base and a 50-man, earth-orbiting station in 1980, and the first Mars mission in 1983. The cost of all this would reach an annual $8 billion by 1976. The least ambitious plan postponed the lunar base and earth-orbiting station by three years and left open the date for the initial Mars expedition. The funding estimates for this second plan ran slightly more than $4 billion a year during the 1970s. Apollo missions would lay the groundwork for the lunar surface base. The report generated little support, and NASA's budget slipped to $3.3 billion the following year.[55]

The decline in Apollo funding was even more severe; a reduction of nearly 50% dropped the program's budget below the $1 billion mark for the first time in eight years. While much of the decline represented an expected slowdown in costs, the shortage of funds forced drastic program changes. Edward Mathews, KSC's Apollo Program Manager, notified Debus in March 1970 that FY 1971 funding constraints had eliminated the Apollo 20 mission. There would be an average interval of six months between launches, with Apollo 18-19 put off until 1974 after a year of Skylab missions. Further budget cuts in September included a $50 million reduction for Apollo. NASA officials reluctantly cancelled missions 18 and 19. The flight of Apollo 17 in late 1972 would bring the program to a close.[56]

The Impact of the Apollo Slowdown on KSC

NASA budgets translated into people at KSC. Center employment peaked at 26000 during Apollo 7 operations in 1968, the same year that KSC's budget reached a high of $490 million. America's space program provided over 40% of Brevard County's employment. By the following spring, KSC faced sharp reductions in both money and manpower. Debus let community leaders know what was coming at a 30 April 1969 briefing. A revised FY 1970 budget, prompted by the Nixon administration's concern over inflation, lowered KSC's appropriation from $455 million to $410 million. The entire reduction came out of the $345 million earmarked for Apollo and reflected the intent to slow the program from five to three launches per year. In terms of manpower, the lower budget would reduce KSC's work force from 23500 to 18500 by 30 June 1970. A five-day work week would replace the six- and seven-day weeks that had been typical. Instead of three-shift operations, KSC would employ two, with only enough people on the second to continue necessary tests. Debus took an optimistic view of the cutbacks. The 20% reduction in force affected both stage and support contractors and could probably be met in large part through attrition. Contractor turnover rates at KSC in this period varied from an average of 14% annually for stage contractors to as high as 25% for some support contractors. He thought that "others will see the first lunar landing as a logical milestone in their career plans and move into other programs elsewhere." It would be "a difficult but orderly retrenchment."[57]

The reduction took a greater toll than Debus had predicted. By mid-1970 KSC's work force had fallen to 16235. The numbers engaged in Apollo launch operations showed an even steeper decline, 50% from the 17000 high of 1968. KSC civil service employment dropped less sharply in FY 1970, from 2920 to 2880. One reason NASA had contracted a large amount of Apollo work had been to avoid an excess of civil service personnel at the end of the program. Subsequently civil service enrollment at KSC was forced down to 2425 by the end of the program. Newspapers captioned the plight of Brevard County: "Cocoa Beach Boom Reaches Perigee"; "Most of Brevard in Gloomy Mood"; "Depressed Brevard Banks on Space Shuttle." Reporters described long lines at the employment office and a buyer's market of empty homes and stores. The articles were exaggerated; unemployment never exceeded 6.5%. Realtors and the Chamber of Commerce launched an aggressive campaign in metropolitan newspapers, describing Brevard homes as the best buys in Florida. Within two years an influx of retirees brought stability to the housing market. In similar fashion small businesses were encouraged to locate in the Cape area. Many members of the

Apollo team had found jobs in other parts of the country as stage and support contractors made a strong effort to relocate their personnel.[58]

Although KSC retrenched in orderly fashion, the atmosphere at the center showed a marked change. The pace slowed considerably as the time between launches stretched to eight months. Morale was jeopardized by the space program's uncertain future. As Alan Shepard, Apollo 14 commander, put it: "We kind of feel like the Wright brothers would have felt if they had been told there's not enough money for a second plane because there's no need for airplanes."[59] During Apollo's last three years, the launch team's esprit was of concern to center and contractor officials alike. The presence of the astronauts remained a positive factor. Launch Director Walter J. Kapryan made them as visible as possible, encouraging their visits with workers at the assembly building and on the pad. Efforts were made to keep everyone busy. That morale never became a significant problem is a tribute to effective civil servant and contractor leadership and to the personal pride of the launch team members.[60]

Page intentionally left blank

23

EXTENDED LUNAR EXPLORATION: APOLLO 15–17

A Change of Course for Apollo

Scientific investigations highlighted the last three Apollo missions. The cold war competition that had put men on the moon was fading. Congress and the American public now wanted tangible benefits from space expenditures. NASA adjusted its manned programs to the new climate. Skylab, the post-Apollo manned program, would focus on practical applications, most of them earth-oriented. Apollo, reduced by funding cuts to three more missions, would emphasize lunar exploration. Missions 15–17 did not disappoint American scientists; indeed those missions proved a fitting climax to one of the nation's great achievements.

NASA's plans for the concluding Apollo missions were announced on 2 September 1970. Modifications to the spacecraft and astronaut support systems would double the time the astronauts could stay on the moon. The weight devoted to lunar surface experiments would also double. A lunar rover vehicle—an appropriate gift to the moon from an America-on-wheels—would more than double the distance the astronauts could travel on the surface. Other new equipment included a lunar communications relay unit, which enabled the crew to maintain contact with earth while exploring beyond the lunar module's horizon. Transmissions from the portable relay station to Houston included voice, TV, and telemetry. Although the suitcase-sized device was normally mounted on the front of the rover, it could be detached and carried by an astronaut—a feature that ensured the crewmen a means of communication if they had to walk back to their spacecraft. The rover also mounted television cameras that were operated by remote control from Houston.[1]

The command-service module's lunar orbiting experiments, while less dramatic, were a vital part of the last missions. The scientific instrument module (SIM) in Apollo 15's service module included three spectrometers—gamma-ray, x-ray fluorescence, and alpha-particle—to measure the composition and distribution of the lunar surface. A mass spectrometer would measure the composition and distribution of the lunar atmosphere. A

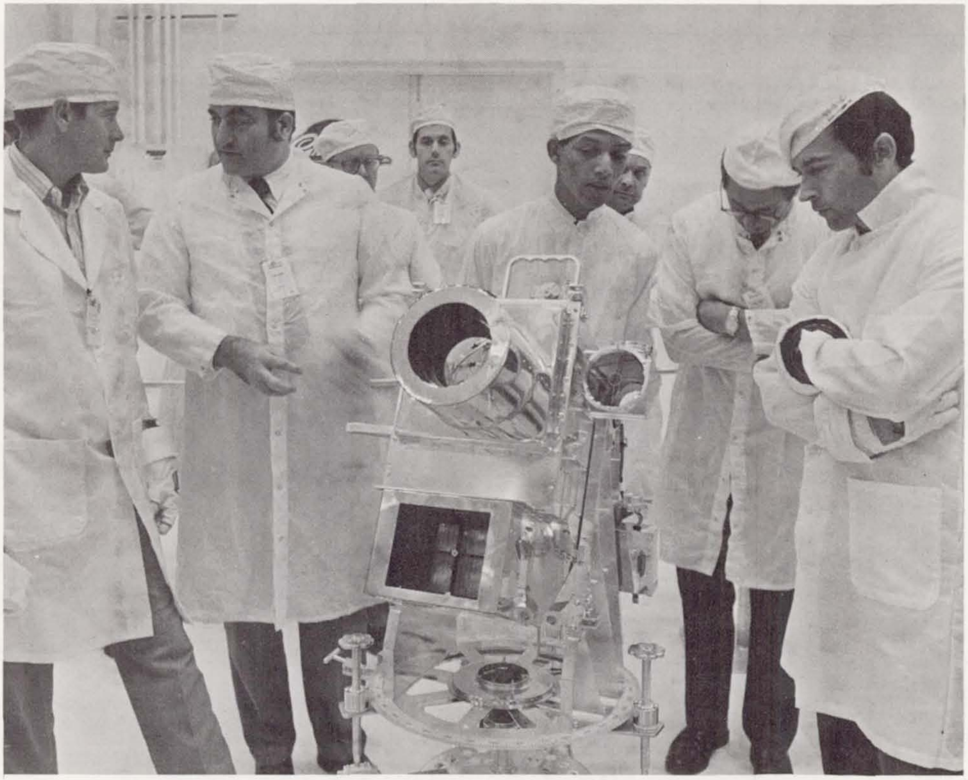


Fig. 164. Discussing the lunar surface ultraviolet camera during an experiments review in the operations and checkout building, November 1971. From left, lunar module pilot Charles Duke; Rocco Petrone, Apollo Program Director; George Carruthers, Naval Research Laboratory, the principal investigator for the camera; and Apollo 16 commander John Young.

subsatellite, ejected from the SIM bay into lunar orbit, would beam earthward information about solar winds, lunar gravity, and the earth's magnetosphere and its interaction with the moon. Other equipment in the SIM, two cameras and a laser altimeter, would map about 8% of the lunar surface, in all some three million square kilometers.[2]

The extended missions on the moon required major modifications to the lunar module. Supplies of water, oxygen for the portable life support system, and electrical power were increased. Grumman enlarged the capacity of the propellant tanks by 7% and redesigned the descent stage to make room for the lunar rover. Altogether, the lunar module modifications and the SIM additions added about 2270 kilograms to the Apollo 15 spacecraft, bringing its total weight to over 48 metric tons.[3] This put a burden on Saturn engineers. Marshall and its contractors met the payload increase through minor hardware changes in the S-IC stage and by revising the Saturn V's flight plan. The hardware modifications reduced the number of retrorocket motors, rebored the orifices on the F-1 engines, and set the burning time for the outboard engines nearer LOX depletion. Better use of the Saturn's thrust was achieved by launching the AS-510 rocket in a more southerly direction (changing the launch azimuth limits from 72–96 ° to 80–100 °) and by using an earth parking-orbit of 166 rather than 185 kilometers. Apollo 15 also stood to gain some advantage from the July launch date, when temperature and wind effects would be favorable.[4]

Interfaces with the First SIM

Apollo 15 launch operations got off to a slow start, impeded by spacecraft modifications. Checkout of the lunar module began in mid-June 1970, about the time the Apollo 13 review board announced its findings. Service module modifications, recommended by the board, delayed the launch date by five months. The September decision to enlarge the final missions brought further hardware changes. Spacecraft operations resumed in November with the arrival of the modified stages of the lunar module. Initial testing concentrated on the propulsion systems. Early in the new year Grumman engineers added three equipment pallets to the descent stage and brackets for the lunar rover. The new command-service module arrived in mid-January and went almost immediately into the altitude chambers.[5]

January also brought the first instruments for the scientific instrument module. By that time the Experiments Section had been at work on the SIM for more than a year. Preparations for the lunar orbiting experiments included the construction of a laboratory in the operations and checkout building and development of ground support equipment. When testing began, the 7-man Experiments Section supervised 25 engineers representing 8 contractors. An occasional visit from an experiment's scientist-author further complicated the three-shift operations. The contractor representatives proved invaluable from a logistical standpoint, securing minor design changes and spare parts. They did not always, however, seem to appreciate the need to meet a launch date.

From the very beginning the test engineers faced a familiar problem—hardware designed for use under conditions of zero gravity could not stand up to the rigors of earth gravity. The 7.5-meter extendable booms, which would deploy the mass and gamma-ray spectrometers, were built by North American for zero gravity. They could not support the spectrometers on

Merritt Island, Earth. North American designed a long rail to help carry the load for test purposes. The operation was generally unsatisfactory, however, since it introduced problems that would not occur in zero g.

The SIM work crew joined North American's spacecraft operation in late February and placed the SIM, with its eight experiments, inside the service module. Interface problems between the scientific instruments and the service module appeared almost immediately. The alpha spectrometer's data stream failed to synchronize with the spacecraft data-relay system. The Experiments Section had more trouble with the gamma-ray and mass spectrometer booms. When the engineers extended the boom, they received no indication that signals were being received. Investigation indicated that diodes in the boom circuitry were blocking the signal. North American subsequently modified the spectrometer booms.[6]

Test procedures caused nearly as much trouble as the hardware:

> The SIM bay complicated the checkout flow in every major procedure we ran. In some cases the vendors got the scientific instruments to us late. In other cases they would want to conduct a last-minute check at a very inconvenient time. Every time we powered up the ship for a major test somebody would come down with a special requirement for their instrument.[7]

The initial requirements for the calibration of the gamma-ray spectrometer called for halting all motor vehicles within 16 kilometers. NASA and the contractor negotiated the matter for several weeks, agreeing finally to a late night test with a traffic ban in nearby parking lots and roads. Following the weekend calibration exercise, the Experiments Section tested all SIM systems on 15 March and returned them to the factory for a month's rework by the responsible contractors.

The instruments arrived back at KSC in mid-April. While there were some minor problems, e.g., the mapping camera would not turn off, the test team closed out the SIM bay temporarily in late April for the move to the pad. When the subsatellite arrived a month later, the Experiments Section installed its batteries, checked out the transmitter, and tested the interface with the mechanism that would eject the subsatellite into a lunar orbit. Technicians entered the space vehicle stack on 9 June and added the subsatellite to the SIM bay.[8]

The Moon Gets an Automobile

For the public, the big feature of the Apollo 15 mission was its little lunar rover. Americans immersed in an automobile age contemplated with no small joy the beginnings of a stop-and-go traffic jam on the moon. And the rover was worthy of its homeland; it boasted bucket seats and power steering. The 207-kilogram vehicle would run for 65 kilometers on its two 36-volt batteries. As a safety precaution, NASA restricted travel to a 9.5-kilometer radius from the lunar module, the limit of the astronauts' ability to walk home. The rover's payload allowed about 363 kilograms for the two astronauts and their portable life support systems, 54 kilograms for scientific and photographic equipment, the same for communications equipment, and 27 kilograms to bring home lunar samples. All weights, of course, would be reduced by five-sixths when the little car operated in lunar gravity. To meet space limitations inside the lunar module, the rover folded into a wedge-shaped package less than half its operating size.[9]

The Boeing Company and its prime subcontractor, the Delco Electronics Subdivision of General Motors, designed and built the first lunar rover in 18 months—one of the major rush jobs of the Apollo program. While the forced schedule contributed to the $12.9 million cost, the high price was principally a result of the rover's unique engineering requirements. The harshness of the lunar environment—its extremes in temperature, lack of atmosphere, one-sixth gravity, and rough yet silt-soft surface—posed design problems in vehicle propulsion, stability, control, and wheel-soil interaction. Special wheels made of woven spring steel wire with titanium chevrons for traction were developed to meet the launch weight restrictions and still provide the support and mobility required on the moon. Each wheel had its own electric drive motor. The vehicle had independent steering motors for front and rear wheels so the driver could use front, rear, or both.

The two crewmen sat side by side on the vehicle. Control was provided by a T-bar "joy-stick" mounted on a console in the center. The joystick provided acceleration, brake, and steering control through complex electrical circuitry. It could be operated by either crewman. The console also provided electrical system control, monitor, and alarm capabilities.

Since a magnetic compass could not be used to indicate direction on the moon and because of other problems—such as having to go around craters—a special navigation system was built around a directional gyroscope, odometers, and a small computer. The system used the distance and direction traveled to determine range and bearing from the lunar module. With this information the astronauts could easily determine the shortest course back at any time. The navigational system also provided data for the location and placement of scientific equipment on the lunar surface.[10]

The launch team started preparing for the rover in late 1970 when the requirements document arrived from Marshall Space Flight Center. Arthur Scholz, Boeing's rover project manager at KSC, drew up the test and checkout plan describing the sequence of operations. The first events on the flow chart involved reception and inspection, activation, and calibration of the rover's ground support equipment. Meanwhile, Boeing engineers began preparing test procedures for the rover. They relied first on preliminary design data from the Seattle plant and then on the formal requirements document from Marshall. In January 1971 R. Dale Carothers, KSC's manager for rover operations, and a group of Boeing and government engineers journeyed to Seattle where they took part in the last two months of factory tests.

The action switched to KSC in mid-March when the rover arrived at the Cape's skid strip* aboard a C-130 Hercules aircraft. The first rover spent two days in the operations and checkout building undergoing inspections, first in its folded and then in its unfolded condition. During the next three days technicians installed simulators for the two 36-volt batteries and checked out the vehicle's power. The second week was taken up with electrical systems tests including front and rear wheel steering, the four drive motors, and the alarm system. During the tests the rover had to rest on a pedestal while the wheels turned in mid-air. The pedestal also supported the chassis when an engineer or astronaut entered the rover. The vehicle could support its own weight on earth, but no more. On one or two occasions, with the rover mounted on the pedestal, the test team witnessed a strange sight—the front wheels moving forward and the rear wheels in reverse. Boeing engineers said the drive motors were out of synchronization and that the phenomenon could not occur on the moon, where the wheels would be touching the lunar surface.

On 26 March the prime and backup crews went through the Crew Fit and Function Test, known in KSC parlance as CF^2. The test marked the astronauts' first opportunity at KSC to work with the rover. There were several operations: removing the rover's communication, television, photographic, and data-gathering equipment from the pallets in the spacecraft, placing the equipment in its proper place aboard the rover, and selecting items from the rover for further operations. The task was made more difficult by bulky gloves, the only part of their life support system the astronauts wore for the test. The exercise revealed a number of small problems such as recalcitrant strap fasteners and poorly fitting safety belts. As the rover's stowage date was only a month away, Scholz and Carothers sought immediate modifications. The paperwork took more time than the physical changes. Coordinating design modification with contractors and other NASA centers was always a slow process. On this occasion a money dispute threatened further delays. Marshall did not want to authorize additional funds to accomplish the changes. Houston wanted the modifications but did not want to finance the work. In the end, the astronauts' wishes prevailed; program managers from Marshall, Houston, KSC, and Boeing approved the proposed modifications and the work was under way in two weeks. The changes did not affect the stowage schedule.

---

*The Cape's hard-surface 45 × 3050-meter runway earned its name in the 1950s when Air Force launch teams retrieved winged Snark missiles by landing them on skids.

The third week of rover testing began with a navigational systems check. The rover was mounted on the work stand, the wheels started turning in mid-air, and an engineer moved the steering handle. The test team observed the computer's performance as it assimilated driving data from the odometers and gyroscope. The following day the launch team tested the rover's mechanical brakes. Wheel and fender replacements and the closing out of discrepancy records took the remainder of the week. During Easter week technicians completed most of the modifications. A silicone-oil leak from the shock absorbers caused several days' concern before the test team declared the shock absorbers "acceptable for flight." On 16 April Boeing undertook one of the more difficult tasks—loading the rover aboard the lunar module. Technicians successfully deployed the rover the following day, using a landing platform to reduce the distance it fell, so that the impact was equivalent to what would be experienced under lunar gravity.

A second CF^2 test inaugurated the last week of operations. The exercise provided a check on the various modifications that had been made since the first test. The rover group joined Grumman engineers the next two days for the electromagnetic compatibility test. As its name implied, this test was to detect interference, primarily with the lunar communications systems. With radios, computers, radars, even the rover's wheels operating, no problems developed in the lunar communications relay unit. The launch team then moved on to the climax—simulated mission runs with the two astronaut crews.

The simulated missions gave Test Conductor Herman Widick some uneasy moments. Whereas lunar module tests usually attracted little attention, the novelty of the rover drew a large crowd of Apollo officials. The simulation involved a number of organizations: a Hamilton Standard representative for the portable life support system, NASA spacesuit technicians, Grumman engineers for the lunar module and rover storage, RCA and Goddard Space Flight Center communications experts, and Houston observers. While Widick had worked with most of these men, the Boeing engineers were new. Matters were complicated by two communications systems. The test conductor talked with the crew by radio through the portable life support system; communications with the rest of the test team were over the operational intercommunication system. The astronauts, their vision limited by the spacesuits, unwittingly interrupted Widick on several occasions.

The lunar rover

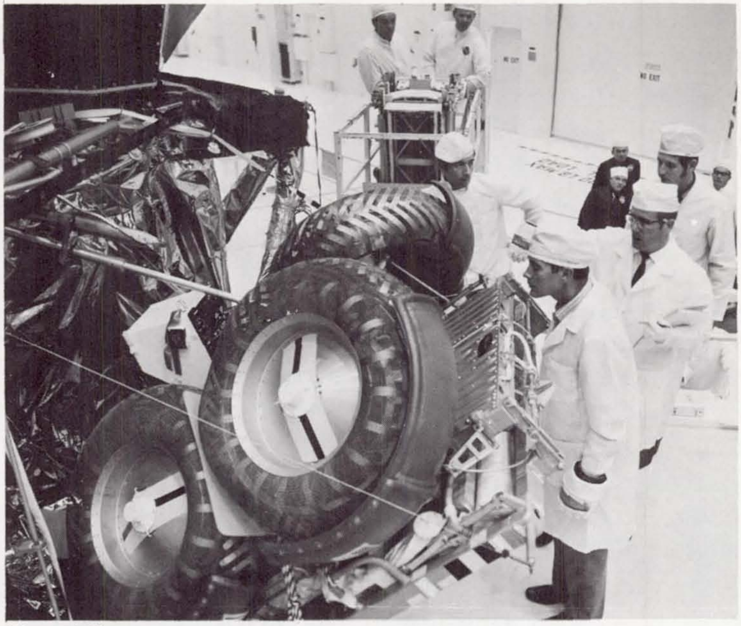


Figure 165

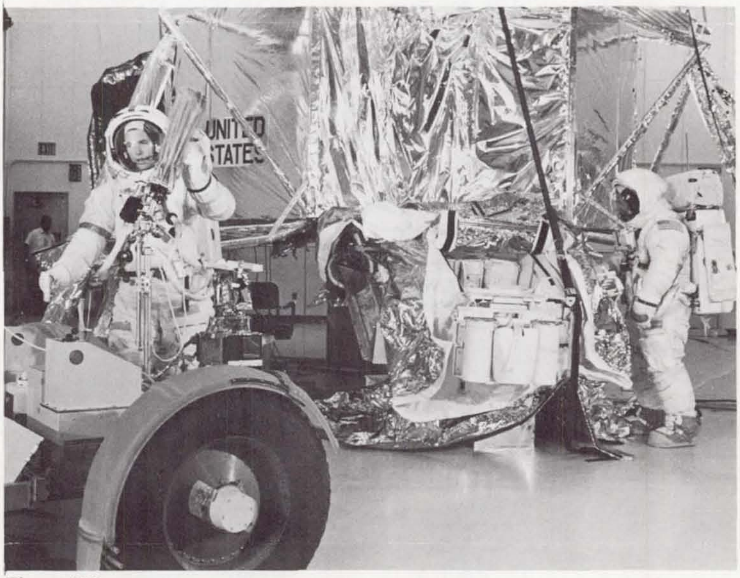


Figure 166

Fig. 165. Deployment of the rover watched by Apollo 16 astronauts Young (center) and Duke (right). Fig. 166. Apollo 15 astronauts training with the rover. David R. Scott (left) prepares to deploy the vehicle's antenna, while James Erwin considers a pile of equipment from a mockup of the lunar module.

Fig. 167. Apollo 17 astronauts Harrison H. Schmitt, geologist-pilot (left), and commander Eugene A. Cernan. The rover's antenna is fully deployed.

Fig. 168. Rep. Olin Teague (D., Texas), chairman of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, and Mrs. Teague seated in the training vehicle. Duke (left) and Young answer questions. James C. Fletcher, NASA Administrator, is in the background, left of the antenna mast.

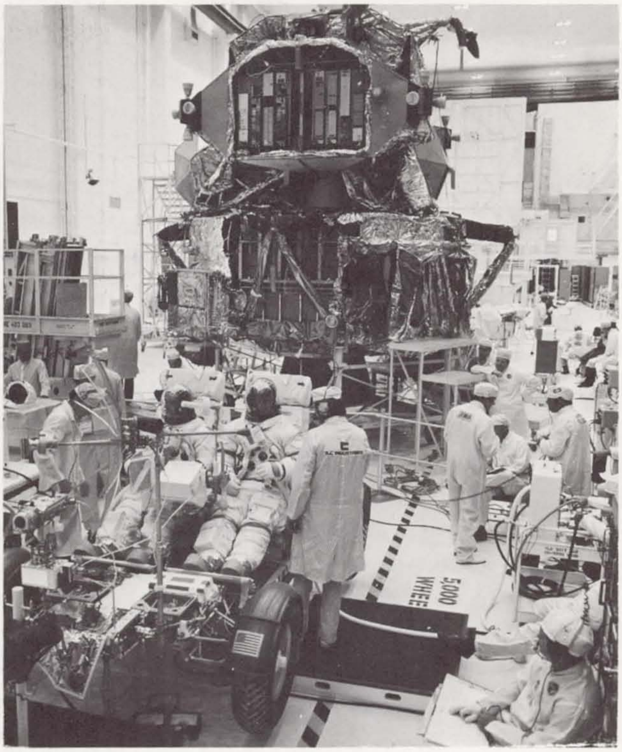
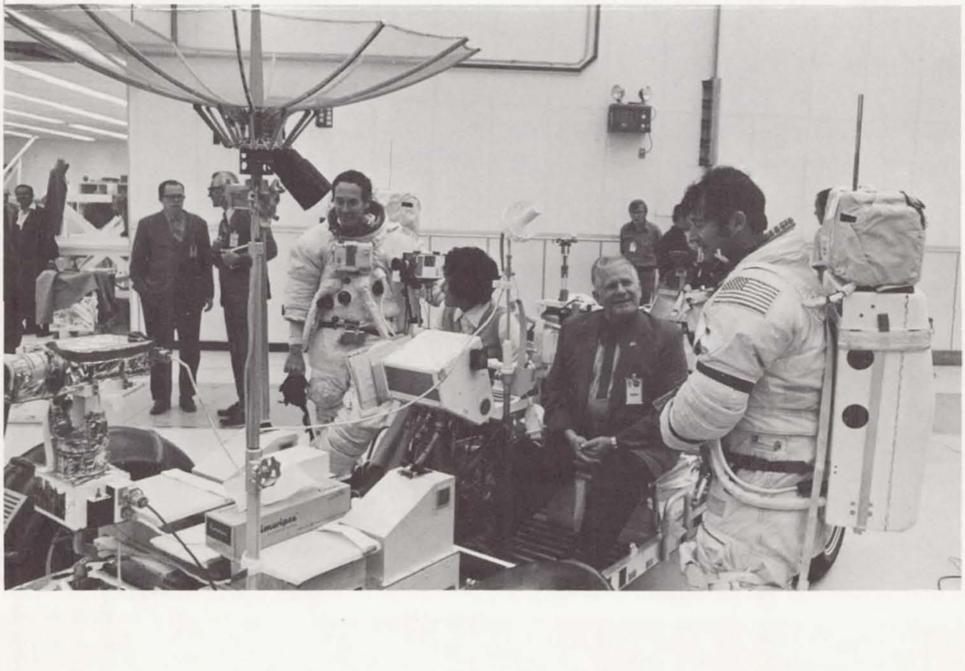


Figure 167

Figure 168



Spacecraft engineer Ernest Reyes had tried for several days to give the rover a sportier look, but Widick rejected every suggestion. As the test was about to begin, Commander David Scott pulled a fox tail from his spacesuit and attached it to the rover's low gain antenna.

The setting for the simulated mission resembled a science-fiction film of the 1940s. Sunlight gleamed off the lunar module's aluminum foil covering. Antennas stretched along the wall of the operations and checkout building's high bay. In the center of the scene the rover, fully deployed, rested on its pedestal. The astronauts, dressed in the lunar surface version of their Apollo spacesuits, completed the picture. Since the test employed the communications equipment within the portable life support system, the 38-kilogram unit was strapped to each astronaut's back. A reasonable load on the moon, it was too heavy to carry on earth, so a dolly with an overhead cantilevered arm supported the equipment. A technician guided each dolly as it moved behind the astronaut.

The mission simulation began with a communications check. While the astronauts stood in front of the rover, a test engineer switched on the drive motors. The wheels were noisy but produced no electrical interference. Technicians then removed the life support system from each astronaut's back and placed the packs on the rover seats. The crew moved to the back of the vehicle where they engaged the equipment pallet pin and disengaged the rear steering pin. The latter operation, a difficult maneuver, was only for emergencies. If the rear steering mechanism failed on the moon, the astronauts could lock the rear wheels in place and steer with only the front wheels. After these tests, the astronauts seated themselves in the rover. A wedge was placed between the life support system and the seat to give the astronaut the feel of lunar gravity with the pack. Wearing pressurized suits, the astronauts had considerable trouble with the seat belts. Finally ready, the astronauts began their lunar ride—simulating specific distances and directions until they returned to the lunar module. The astronauts also checked the TV signal that would return to earth over the relay unit.

After successful mission simulations with both crews, Boeing technicians folded the rover and reinstalled it. Two days of rover deployment followed. The exercise included possible malfunctions and appropriate responses. (On subsequent missions the launch team rigged various deployment malfunctions in the rover trainer and lunar module simulator.) On 25 April the launch team placed the rover inside the lunar module. The spacecraft joined the Saturn stack two weeks later.[11]

The rover was stowed away but not forgotten. On 5 May the training vehicle was demonstrated for the press. Scott and Irwin answered newsmen's questions and then drove the one-gravity rover trainer to the lunar simulation area. A few fortunate reporters tried their hand at the T-bar handle controls. The reporters, with instructors at their side, drove the rover through the astronauts' crater-pocked sandpile. Their enthusiastic response carried over to the next day's newspapers.[12]

Lunar Module Problems and More Lightning

The SIM and rover were the newest, but not necessarily the biggest, problems on Apollo 15; February and March 1971 were difficult months for the lunar module team. A combined systems test ran for ten days in February as test engineers attempted to resolve a series of discrepancies. Problem areas included the rendezvous radar, a frequent source of trouble in the past. The NASA–Grumman team discovered a malfunction in the radar's range-finding circuitry and called Bethpage for a replacement on the 24th. It arrived on the 26th and went immediately to the boresight range. Weekend tests disclosed another deficiency: the radar would not slue from its normal straight-ahead position to directly overhead, which would be needed for tracking the command-service module from the lunar surface. The fault was apparently in the mode position switch. On 1 March KSC asked Bethpage to send another radar. It arrived the following day and passed inspection at the boresight range; the self-tests (internal checks of electrical circuits), range determinations, and angle readout checks were all satisfactory. The angle readouts told what direction the radar was pointing and therefore the azimuth and elevation of the target. After installation, tests of the third radar looked all right except for some ambiguous range sensings. Then a technician reported an unusual grinding sound in the gyroscope assembly. The noise increased; a bearing had gone bad. With its fourth radar installed on 13 March, the launch team had a satisfactory rendezvous system.[13]

Herman Widick's test team uncovered more problems when the lunar module began altitude chamber runs in late March. During an unmanned run on the 26th, engineers noted unsatisfactory conditions in the communications system and the environmental control system. The radio problem involved extraneous noise from the transceiver. With no crew on board, the radios operated in a relay mode, i.e., signals went to the lunar module on the VHF uplink and came back immediately over the S-Band downlink. Harold Cockran's engineering team traced the problem to an improper setting on the VHF receiver squelch circuit.[14]

The possible malfunction in the environmental control system concerned a relief valve on the suit circuit assembly. Two demand regulators controlled the oxygen pressure to the assembly.* The relief valves protected the suit circuit from overpressurization. On the test of the 26th, the regulator's maximum pressure and the relief valve's minimum line were closer than the prescribed tolerance. It was realized, however, that the regulator pressure would drop somewhat during the manned runs. On the 29th, as the backup crew prepared for an altitude run, a technician inadvertently applied too much pressure to the commander's oxygen umbilical, damaging the hose. The rescheduled test failed when both demand regulators continued to pressurize the suit circuit after reaching the acceptable limit. Technicians removed the regulators the following day. Finally, on 6–7 April, the test team managed successful altitude runs with the prime and backup crews.[15]

The problems prompted James Irwin, Apollo 15's lunar module pilot, to speak out publicly. At a press conference in Houston, Irwin singled out the difficulties with the lunar module's environmental control system, the landing radar, and the rendezvous radar. Irwin attributed some of the problems to the extended shelf life of the Apollo equipment. Due to the stretch-out of Apollo flights, equipment was remaining in storage longer than manufacturers had expected. Irwin also noted that a lot of trained people were leaving the Cape and said, "I think maybe morale is slipping perhaps." Apollo 15's other two astronauts, David Scott and Alfred Worden, disagreed. Worden remarked: "I think the people there are more fired up about 15 than they have been before."[16] Concern about the lunar module lessened after the successful altitude runs.

Lightning strikes were the most significant events after the Saturn V was moved to the pad in early May. During the flight readiness test on 14–15 June, lightning struck the mobile service structure and mobile launcher. Although there was no apparent harm to the space vehicle, some ground support equipment was damaged. Schedules were revised to permit retesting of all spacecraft systems. On 25 June, the day following the flight readiness review, lightning struck again with the same results. Damaged electrical components were replaced and the spacecraft systems checked once more. Pad A experienced a third strike on the evening of 2 July during hypergolic loading. While there was no apparent damage, some tests were repeated during the countdown demonstration test.

Minor problems during the countdown demonstration test, 7–14 July, were corrected before the start of the countdown on 20 July. When more lightning struck LC-39A during countdown week, Kapryan delayed moving the service structure from the pad until the evening of the 25th.[17] Apollo 15 lifted off the next morning at 9:34 a.m. Commander Scott radioed back from space: "As we watch the S-IVB drift away here, how about passing along to Jim Harrington [Apollo 15 space vehicle test conductor] at the Cape congratulations from the crew to the launch team for a superior job."[18]

---

*The suit circuit assembly included fans, a heat exchanger (cooling water), and lithium hydroxide to remove CO_2 from the air. The suit circuit provided an environmental control system for the cabin and life support for the astronauts' spacesuits. When the mission called for cabin depressurization, e.g., prior to an extravehicular activity, the astronauts hooked up to the suit circuit assembly. The portable life support system provided the same support on the lunar surface.

Apollo 16 Operations

While astronauts Scott and Irwin motored around Hadley Rille, KSC officials turned their attention to the Apollo 16 mission scheduled for March 1972. In early August, North American mated the command and service modules. Three weeks later Grumman joined the two LM stages for their altitude tests. September saw the start of lunar rover checkout and the erection of the S-IC stage. In October the launch vehicle team stacked the Saturn stages. Meanwhile the astronauts went through the crew compartment fit and functional tests and the altitude chamber runs. The spacecraft modules moved out of the chambers in November and landing gear was installed on the lunar module. In December the spacecraft team mated the Apollo spacecraft to the lunar adapter and moved the combination to the assembly building. Twelve days before Christmas Apollo 16 rolled out to the pad.[19]

The launch team had made relatively few changes to the Apollo 16 spacecraft during the first five months of launch operations. Malfunctions on Apollo 15 prompted two command module changes: replacing panel switches for the spacecraft propulsion system and replacing the main parachutes. One of the three main parachutes had failed to open for the splashdown of Apollo 15, and NASA officials suspected hydrogen embrittlement in the connector links of the suspension lines. After replacing the suspect parts with steel alloy links, North American shipped a new set of parachutes to KSC in mid-November. That same week the launch team replaced the water glycol accumulators in two fuel cells of the service module. When the fuel cells converted oxygen and hydrogen to electricity and water, considerable heat was produced. As it transferred this heat to a series of radiators, the glycol expanded and the excess liquid accumulated in reservoirs. The accumulators had been damaged in September when technicians overpressurized the glycol system during a vacuum-purging test.[20]

One of the few problem areas in the Saturn operations involved the engine actuators on the S-IC stage. These hydraulic actuators, 1.5 meters in length, swivelled the four outboard F-1 engines to change pitch, yaw, and roll. Actuator tests included the calibration of a recorder in the launch control center. As the actuators swivelled the F-1 engines, a potentiometer sent a voltage to the recorder indicating the direction and amount of movement. During November tests, excessive noise in one actuator interfered with the signal to the control center; the actuator was replaced on the 25th. The following week Boeing engineers inspected the S-IC LOX and RP-1 tanks for stress corrosion but found no problem.[21]

Early in the new year a spacesuit alteration and two spacecraft problems delayed the Apollo 16 launch to 16 April. Grumman engineers had increased the capacity of the lunar module batteries and wanted more time to gather test data. At Downey technicians discovered that an explosive device used to separate the command-service and lunar modules would malfunction under certain conditions; modification required additional time. The delay proved a godsend for KSC in late January when a fuel tank in the command module's reaction control system ruptured.[22]

The hypergolic propellants of the reaction control system, which controlled the attitude of the command module during reentry, were forced from their tanks by high pressure helium gas. Within each fuel tank, the fuel was inside a teflon bladder. As gas entered the tank, outside the bladder, rising pressure squeezed the bladder and forced the hazardous fuel from its tank. The flow of helium was tested during the integrated systems test. The primary and secondary regulators were checked to guarantee that an accurate flow was maintained, that the regulator shut off properly, and that after shutoff the pressure did not creep up, which would indicate internal leakage.

Problems with ground support equipment had put the launch team about two shifts behind schedule on 25 January when technicians completed the fuel-tank relief-valve checks and moved to the regulator tests. For these tests, the bladders were filled with helium gas instead of the hazardous monomethyl hydrazine. Human error brought the team grief: a technician failed to fully engage a quick-disconnect valve that controlled the flow of helium to a pressure regulator. Pressure inside a fuel tank, but outside the filled bladder, dropped quickly, and the bladder ruptured.[23]

The seriousness of the problem stemmed from its location. Replacement of the fuel tank involved removing the command module's aft heatshield, an operation that had to be conducted in the operations and checkout building. KSC faced a roll-back of the space vehicle from the pad to the assembly building—the first time this had happened since a hurricane threatened 500-F in June 1966. At first glance the accident seemed to preclude the April launch, and NASA officials announced a possible second month's delay; but after reviewing the work needed to replace the damaged fuel tank, Kapryan and Petrone concluded that the launch team could recover in time for the 16 April launch. The space vehicle was returned to the assembly building on 27 January. The following day the launch team transferred the spacecraft to the operations and checkout building where both fuel tanks were replaced, along with the descent propulsion system regulators. By working overtime and weekends,* KSC had Apollo 16 back on the pad in less than two weeks.[24]

While operations resumed their smooth course for most of the KSC team, the propellants section experienced more headaches. The spacecraft was undergoing another integrated systems test on 17 February when a leak developed in a quick-disconnect test point. A North American engineer closed off test points improperly and excessive pressure ruptured discs on both oxidizer tanks. While the launch team waited for replacements to arrive, the program office rescheduled the remaining propulsion tests. New burst discs were emplaced and x-rayed on the 22d, and propulsion tests resumed the following day.[25]

Spacecraft Stowage

Stowing equipment on the Apollo spacecraft grew more complicated with the lunar exploration missions. The SIM bay and the rover have been described. The modularized equipment storage assembly occupied another quadrant of the descent stage. These cargo pallets provided room for tools, the lunar communications relay unit, various cameras including the color television equipment, and other items to be mounted aboard the rover. Inside the command and lunar modules the astronauts required more of nearly all supplies: food, clothing, film, and life support items. During the latter missions the Manned Spacecraft Center placed a number of experiments aboard the command module, e.g., Apollo 16 carried 60 million microbial passengers in a small rectangular container, a light flash detector, a biostack, and a Skylab food package.†[26]

The launch team stowed the spacecraft cabins on three separate occasions during the Apollo 16 operations: first, in the chambers prior to the astronauts' altitude runs, a second time for the crew compartment fit and function test; and finally the day before launch. KSC had dropped the practice of stowing the cabin for the countdown demonstration test; instead

---

*On 16 April 1972 the *Washington Post* noted that the damaged fuel tank had added an extra $200 000 to the cost of Apollo 16. Most of the money had gone for overtime pay at KSC.

†NASA measured the effects of reduced oxygen, zero gravity, and solar ultraviolet irradiation on the microbes representing five strains of bacteria, fungi, and viruses. On one flight experiment a crewman donned an emulsion plate device or deflector while his mates wore eye shields. The purpose was to correlate light flashes, seen on each mission since Apollo 11, to cosmic rays. The biostack, a cylindrical aluminum container 10 cm. high, contained live biological material that was exposed to high-energy heavy ions in cosmic radiation. The Skylab food package included some experimental snap-top cans with dried peaches, puddings, peanuts, and other items.

technicians placed empty lockers inside the command module to give the astronauts the appearance of a flight-ready cabin. A team of nine normally stowed the command module. Inside the cabin two technicians secured each item in its proper place. A KSC quality control representative observed their work. Outside, two technicians unpacked the flight articles. A North American quality representative and engineers from Houston, KSC, and North American completed the team. While the six "outside members" of the team found the white room of the mobile service structure confining, they preferred it to the occasional use of the ninth swing arm from the umbilical tower, which had to be used in changing flight articles when Swigert replaced Mattingly on Apollo 13. Carrying equipment across a catwalk a hundred meters above the ground unnerved some members of the group. During the countdown, stowage of the command module began about 24 hours before launch and ran for seven hours. If no problems arose, the team could finish with several hours to spare.

The stowage exercise culminated two weeks of intensive preparations for KSC's Anne Montgomery. Her group checked many of the flight articles such as cameras, communications equipment, and the lithium hydroxide canisters. The items were tested individually and then in conjunction with other flight articles and command module systems. Some items required special packaging; all were weighed and recorded by serial number. Every flight article received a detailed quality inspection and each mission disclosed a number of discrepancies.

James McKnight directed a similar activity for the lunar module, the final stowage of which began just before the start of the formal countdown. At T-55 hours Grumman technicians placed most of the articles aboard and checked out the lunar equipment conveyor. The astronauts relied on this moving clothesline to carry heavy items such as rocks inside the lunar module. The group completed stowage at T-30 hours. After placing a portable life support system on the cabin wall and another on the floor, the technicians took pictures of their work and then sealed the hatch.

Houston prepared the stowage plans for each mission; these took into consideration when and where the astronauts would use a particular flight article. Emergency items received first consideration. The Manned Spacecraft Center was also responsible for the contents of the crew preference kits, the bags in which astronauts carried their personal mementos. Following the incident with unauthorized postal covers on Apollo 15, NASA tightened its restrictions on what the astronauts could take to the moon.[27]

After a successful flight readiness test on 1 March, officials met for the launch readiness review. The session covered all major aspects of Apollo

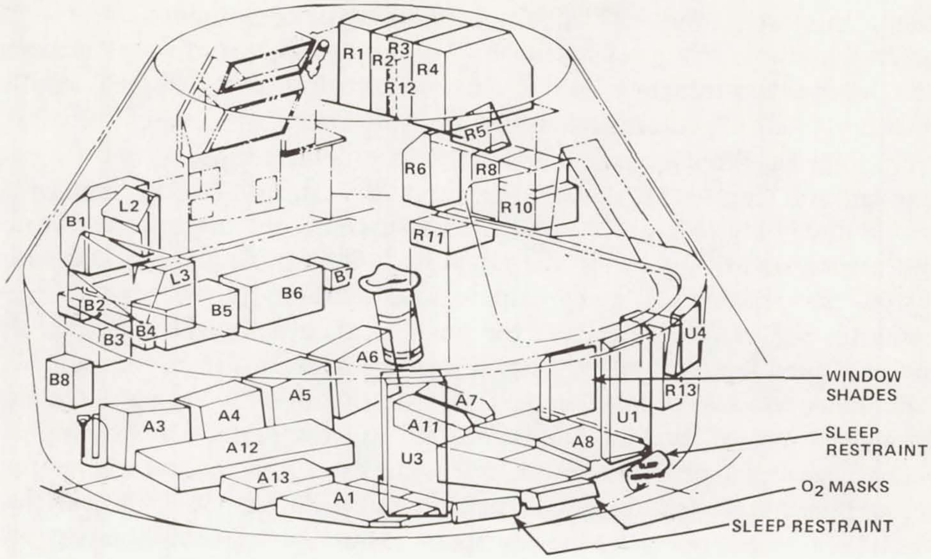


Fig. 169. Crew equipment stowage in Apollo 15 (partial).

A1 70mm camera adapter
H_2 gas separator in bag
5 tissue dispensers
2 penlights in bag
tool set
pressure garment O_2 interconnect, 3 in bag
snag line in bag
2 probe stowage straps
3 temporary stowage bags

A3 4 CO_2 absorbers
fire extinguisher
acoustic tone booster in bag
remote control cable

A5 2-speed interval timer
5 sleep restraint ropes
16mm camera sextant adapter
3 headrest pads

A6 TV monitor, monitor cable, and mounting bracket
2 CO_2 absorbers

A8 3 pilot preference kits
inflight exerciser
2 tissue dispensers
3 constant wear garments
extravehicular mobility unit maintenance kit
3 light-weight headsets
relief receptacle assembly and strap
16mm camera with magazine, powerpack, and 2 film magazines in bag

10mm lens
decontamination bags
O_2 umbilical interconnect
contingency lunar sample return container

R3 data card kit
eyepatch
2 meter covers
floodlight glare shield
fuse (16mm camera)
6 flight data file clips
flight data file books
lunar module transfer data card kit and flight data file books

R4 2 rucksack survival kits

R10 2 sanitation stowage boxes
30 fecal collection assemblies
water panel coupling assembly
waste management system water panel, quick disconnect, power cable, and quick disconnect pressure cap

R11 3 urine transfer systems
spare urine receiver assembly
roll-on cuff (red, white, blue)

U4 4 cassettes, 4 batteries for tape recorders
10 × 40 monocular
intervalometer (Hasselblad)
250mm lens

16 operations—range safety, operations safety, base support, Eastern Test Range support, Goddard's communications network support, the central instrumentation facility, technical support, and the status of the space vehicle. Despite the problem with the reaction control system fuel tank, Apollo 16 had been KSC's smoothest Apollo operation yet.[28]

One month before the scheduled liftoff, John Young, Apollo 16 commander, and Charles M. Duke, lunar module pilot, briefed KSC employees on the upcoming mission. Although 1500 attended the meeting, the crowd appeared insignificant inside the assembly building. Young and Duke discussed the problems they anticipated on landing in the high, rugged Descartes region. They outlined the goals of their extravehicular activities and explained the flight plan. After answering questions from the audience, Command Module Pilot Thomas K. Mattingly and Young circulated through the crowd, shaking hands and signing autographs. The briefing was one of the astronauts' last public appearances before the launch, as they began their three-week preflight quarantine on 26 March. This crew had special reason to appreciate the restriction; Mattingly's potential measles on Apollo 13 had prompted the quarantine and in January 1972 Duke had spent a week at the Patrick Air Force Base hospital with bacterial pneumonia.[29]

The last month of operations saw few hardware changes. The actual countdown went without a hitch. Liftoff came on a hot Sunday afternoon, 16 April, at 12:54.[30]

Apollo 17 Launch Operations

The Kennedy Space Center team saved its most spectacular liftoff for the last Apollo mission. Apollo 17, launched on a dark December night, lit up the Florida sky for miles. Despite its early hour (12:33 a.m.), the launch attracted nearly 500 000 watchers in the immediate vicinity. Where clouds did not obstruct the view, thousands more saw the ascending Apollo-Saturn from as far away as 800 kilometers. Of course there was television coverage: the Florida launch site had become familiar to millions of viewers.

Other aspects of the Apollo 17 mission reawakened the interest of the American public. It represented man's last journey to the moon for an indefinite period. Apollo 17 would carry more scientific equipment than any previous mission and would number among its crew the first scientist-astronaut, Harrison Schmitt. The mission also marked the end of a dramatic and controversial program. Appropriately for Apollo, the last mission met acclaim and success.[31]

The first launch vehicle stages for Apollo 17 arrived at KSC in late 1970 during preparations for the Apollo 14 flight. Spacecraft operations got under way in March 1972. During the next four months John Williams's directorate conducted the normal sequence of tests. Spacecraft engineers ran into some typical problems. In May Grumman engineers determined that the rendezvous radar assembly had received too much voltage during the tracking and pointing test at the boresight range. A new radar was installed on the 24th. A month later the landing radar began locking up intermittently and it was replaced. The lunar rover required several changes including replacement of forward and aft steering motors.[32]

The biggest change in command-service module operations concerned the scientific instrument module, which gained three new experiments: a lunar sounder, an infrared scanning radiometer, and a far ultraviolet spectrometer. The sounder was essentially a radar that could determine the physical properties of the lunar crust to a depth of 1.5 kilometers. This data, coupled with information gathered from cameras, the laser altimeter, and surface measurements, would allow the construction of a detailed topographical profile of the moon. The radiometer provided data from which scientists could prepare an accurate thermal map of the lunar surface. The new spectrometer measured compositional and density variations of the lunar atmosphere.[33]

The new experiments, particularly the lunar sounder, caused considerable headaches. For testing the sounder, the lunar surface had to be simulated. The sounder recorded the returning signals with an advanced optical recorder that required a special data reduction machine. After the launch team completed a lunar sounder test, the results were sent to the University of Kansas for interpretation. As the head of the Experiments Section recalled, "It would take weeks sometimes to get the results back and they might come back and say, 'You have nothing on the tapes.'" North American had trouble integrating the new experiments with the service module hardware.[34]

The stacked vehicle emerged from the assembly building on 28 August. Although another Saturn V would make the slow journey for Skylab, area residents reacted as if this were the last one. Five thousand spectators watched Apollo 17 creep toward pad A. The astronauts (Eugene Cernan, Ronald Evans, and Harrison Schmitt) joined the Bendix crew aboard the crawler for part of the trip.[35]

Launch operations during the next three months followed the routine established in earlier missions. The few changes in hardware went smoothly. There was one scare in late September, again involving the command module's reaction control system. While conducting a leak check, a technician overpressurized one of the oxidizer tanks. KSC officials feared the worst—the rupture of the bladder and the spacecraft's return to the operations and checkout building. At a press conference a few hours after the accident, NASA Administrator James Fletcher announced the possibility of a month's delay in the launch. Further tests, however, indicated that the teflon bladder was all right, and Apollo 17 stayed on schedule.[36]

In the outside world, there was an ill omen. A NASA request for 21 hours of Public Broadcasting Service network time to cover Apollo 17 stirred little excitement among the stations. Of some 70 replies, ten were favorable, ten opposed, and 50 expressed serious reservations. While this was blamed on a fear of governmental interference in programming, the commercial networks were no more enthusiastic. The prelaunch word was that they planned to cover only highlights of the flight.[37]

The morale at the spaceport remained generally high. For most companies, KSC contracts continued through Skylab and the Apollo-Soyuz flight. Apollo 17, however, marked the end of the road for the 600 members of the Grumman team. During its years at Merritt Island, Charles Kroupa's group had earned an excellent reputation with NASA counterparts and fellow contractors. The men working for test supervisor Ray Erickson wanted to assure the astronaut crew of their continued support. The result was a large poster at the lunar module working level of the mobile service structure. Signed by Grumman's employees, it read: THIS MAY BE OUR LAST BUT IT WILL BE OUR BEST. Fletcher said the slogan "should be the watchword for the entire Apollo team."[38]

The last Apollo mission was the first Saturn V launched after dark. As dusk approached, thousands of cars poured across the causeways leading onto Merritt Island. In front of the headquarters building, children threw footballs while the parents talked and listened for the progress of the countdown. The December weather did justice to Chamber of Commerce claims; in the mid-80s during the day, the temperature was 72° at launch.

The countdown proceeded. At T – 82 minutes launch control reported the cabin purge had been completed, and the booster protective cover closed. The spacecraft was pressurized and checked for leaks. Houston tested its command signals to the launch vehicle, and the first-motion signal was checked out with Houston and the Eastern Test Range; the next time, it would bring them word of liftoff. The last weather balloon was released to determine wind direction.

In the meantime the C-band and Q-ball tests were in hand. The first was used in tracking to report range velocity during the powered phase. The Q-ball, perched above the launch escape system, would warn the spacecraft commander of deviations in the first stages of flight. Cernan reported things looking good "up here." His next task was to check out the emergency hand control for the service module engine, normally operated by a computer. Far below him, little white wisps marked the topping off of the propellant loads.

At T - 1 hour, the close-out crew had secured the white room and was clearing the pad area. The elevators were set at the 96-meter level, for the astronauts' use in an emergency. At T – 50 minutes the launch control center initiated the power transfer test, switching the vehicle momentarily onto its own battery power and then restoring external power. Some five minutes later, swing arm 9—the access arm to the spacecraft—retracted 12° to a standby position. Range safety test signals were flashing to the still unarmed destruct receivers.[39]

At T – 30 minutes, reports came from around the circuit. The water system was ready to flush the pad two seconds after liftoff. Final propulsion checks were completed, the C-band tests repeated, and the reaction control systems armed on the service module. The recovery helicopters were on station, and the weather looked good—a major front remaining well to the west. The launch control center began chilling the second- and third-stage propulsion systems to condition them for the final flow of cryogenic propellants. Swing arm 9 was coming back to a fully retracted position. With the swing arm back, the launch escape system, with twice the power of a Redstone, could loft the astronauts to parachute deployment height. At T – 3 minutes and 7 seconds, the automatic sequencer took over.

This sequencer, the oldest and most reliable piece of automation on LC-39, chose this moment in the launching of the last Apollo to cause trouble. At T – 30 seconds it went into an automatic cutoff indicating that one of the essential operations leading to the launch of the space vehicle had not been properly completed. Besides halting the countdown, the cutoff started a series of "safing" procedures which included the return of swing arm 9 to a standby position.[40]

As Launch Director Walter Kapryan explained in a postlaunch press conference:

> At two minutes, 47 seconds, the countdown sequencer failed to output the proper command to pressurize the S-IVB LOX tank. The control room monitors noted it and immediately took steps to perform that pressurization manually. This was done, and at the time that we had the cutoff, we were up to pressure and everything was normal. The problem was that since the Terminal Count Sequencer did output the command, the logic circuitry said that we really didn't complete all of the

> launch preparation for the S-IVB stage. And we didn't have an interlock in our countdown circuitry that precludes the retracting of Swing Arm #1 which occurs at T – 30 seconds, and this is the reason for the cutoff. Now, it didn't take us very long to determine that we should bypass this command failure and go through the pressurization manually and go through the rest of the countdown.[41]

With the count returned to (and held at) T – 22 minutes the launch team installed jumpers that took the countdown around the faulty relays. The fix was verified on Huntsville's Saturn breadboard, the two centers making good use of the launch information exchange facility. The work took about an hour, and Marshall's confirmation took somewhat longer. Finally the launch team was satisfied that there was no problem. In Kapryan's words: "We picked up the count and went on our merry way."[42]

Apollo 17 lifted off into space at 12:33 a.m., 7 December. The flames, exploding into the darkness, made KSC momentarily as light as day. The launch was expected to be visible as far away as Montgomery. Miami observers saw a red streak crossing the northern sky, but Tampa was blacked out by a heavy ground fog and much of the Orlando area was under cloud cover.

During three days in the Taurus-Littrow valley on the moon, Cernan and Schmitt set up their multimillion-dollar array of scientific experiments, using the lunar rover to get them about the crater-pocked landscape. They took three excursions for a total of more than 32 kilometers in the rover, gathering rock samples and taking gravity measurements. Upon return to the command module, the team orbited the moon for nearly two more days of experimentation. They left the last of the Apollo lunar surface experiment packages. With four previously established nuclear-powered stations, the Apollo 17 equipment would allow scientists to monitor the moon's heat flow, volcanic activity, meteor impacts, and other phenomena. Also left behind were eight time bombs scheduled to go off after the astronauts started their return to earth. With the lunar module ascent stage, which was jettisoned into the moon, the bombs were expected to create artificial moonquakes that could be measured by seismometers and perhaps reveal more secrets of the moon's structure.[43] The Apollo program was leaving the moon with nine bangs and no whimpers.

24

FIVE YEARS AFTER

On the morning of 16 July 1974, a large crowd gathered at the LC-39 press site to dedicate the launch complex as a national historical site. At the front of the press stands, a countdown clock ticked off the minutes. At 9:32 a.m., exactly five years after the liftoff of Apollo 11, astronauts Armstrong, Aldrin, and Collins unveiled a plaque commemorating their historic journey. The inscription read in part:

> Men began the first journeys to the moon from this complex. The success of these explorations was made possible by the united efforts of Government, and Industry, and the support of the American people.

Without question, the teamwork that joined together thousands of men and machines was Kennedy Space Center's greatest contribution to the lunar landing. Other elements undergirding KSC's success included the confidence, diligence, and technological skills of the launch team and the generous support of Congress.

A spirit of optimism marked the launch team's efforts throughout the Apollo program. Wernher von Braun exemplified this attitude in 1962 when he defended the choice of a mobile launch complex for LC-39. As von Braun noted, the fundamental question was whether NASA leaders believed "a space program is here to stay, and will continue to grow." Grumman workers typified this same outlook ten years later with their Apollo 17 slogan, "This may be our last, but it will be our best." At times during the program, the optimism wavered, most notably in 1967 in the aftermath of the AS-204 fire and with the interminable checkout of AS-501. Despite these setbacks, the launch team continued to believe that it could meet President Kennedy's challenge.

Another vital ingredient in KSC's success was the old-fashioned virtue, perseverance. Problems were the norm during most Apollo launch operations. With so much new, exotic hardware, strenuous efforts at quality control did not eliminate defective parts; equipment failures were common. The situation was complicated further by frequent last-minute modifications to the spacecraft, particularly in the hectic years of 1967–1968. From the

Debus-Davis Study to the Apollo 13 rescue, there were numerous occasions when time clocks, Sundays, and holidays were ignored. The launch team's diligence allowed KSC management to recover from many schedule slips and maintain NASA's timetable.

The launch team overcame significant technical problems on its way to the lunar launch. Although the design of the Merritt Island facilities was generally straightforward and within the state of the art, LC-39's size posed a great challenge. URSAM's assignment on the vehicle assembly building was to design one of the world's largest buildings on a marsh, in hurricane country, with openings along the sides that precluded a conventional framework. The extensible platforms, enclosing the space vehicles inside the assembly building, did not allow any appreciable sidesway. The 8000-metric-ton load intended for Marion's crawler-transporter ruled out any pre-construction tests of its design. The many changes in space-vehicle requirements and the pressing construction schedule added to the problems of size. As Col. N. A. Lore of the Corps of Engineers wrote in 1966, nearly all of LC-39 "was designed prior to [firm] definition of Apollo systems and built to support concepts rather than detailed systems." Consequently, important parts of the launch facility required extensive design changes; the swing arms and mobile service structure were prominent examples.

While visitors marvel at the size of LC-39's major facilities, the automating of launch operations represented KSC's most important technological advance. The Saturn V ground computer complex and the spacecraft's automated checkout system were in the vanguard of industrial automation. Whereas computers had been employed previously in monitoring industrial operations, KSC's electrical engineers used their computers to command lengthy processes. The automation of launch operations took nearly a decade and caused many frustrations, at times threatening the entire operation. It is unlikely, however, that KSC could have launched an Apollo–Saturn V on time, without computers.

A major reason for the launch team's success was its ability to profit from mistakes. The AS-204 fire prompted necessary changes in test procedures and safety requirements. Just as importantly, it brought the Cape's spacecraft operations completely under KSC's direction for the first time. The lightning strike on Apollo 12 caused a thorough review of LC-39's electrical protection and a tightening of weather restrictions. After the blind flange incident on the SA-5 countdown, launch officials adopted the countdown demonstration test as the final test. The launch team failed to anticipate problems in a number of areas; when difficulties appeared, however, officials profited from the experience.

Congressional support paved the way to the moon. When the launch facilities were planned in 1961–1962, Congress was willing to fund whatever was necessary to overtake the Russians. NASA's ambitious requests were largely met. With a decline of congressional support after 1962, KSC had to lower its sights—the assembly building shrank from six to four high bays and there were similar reductions in other facilities. Although congressional generosity declined, the launch operation fared well through 1969. There were ample funds for overtime, cost overruns, and special efforts such as the Boeing-TIE contract. The cutback after Apollo 11 brought a sizable reduction in KSC's workforce, but in other areas (e.g., civil service grade level and contractor overtime) there were no significant changes until the program's end.

In retrospect NASA and Congress appear to have overbuilt the launch complex. NASA engineers developed the plans for the launch facilities in 1961-1962 when other aspects of Apollo were still undecided. (The decision to employ a mobile launch preceded the selection of lunar orbital rendezvous.) The plans for LC-39 were based on predictions of high launch rates. For two decades the von Braun team had employed a building-block approach to rocket testing. It was assumed that a new launch vehicle would undergo many test flights before qualification; 16 were scheduled initially for the Saturn I. The Huntsville center also believed that lunar landing could best be achieved via earth-orbital rendezvous, which required several launches per mission. Together, the building block philosophy and earth-orbital rendezvous might require 50 launches per year, a rate justifying a mobile launch complex. However, the high launch rate never materialized, partly because of NASA's "all-up" decision (made after congressional cutbacks in 1963). After Apollo 11, a significant portion of LC-39 was not needed.

Changes during the Apollo program had a similar impact on spacecraft facilities. Several activities planned for the launch site, such as parachute packing and static test-firing, were eventually conducted elsewhere. The size of the facilities also anticipated a higher launch rate. In some cases the vacant space was used for other purposes; thus the parachute-packing facility became a news center in 1968. KSC had few white elephants at the peak of Apollo operations, but much of the spacecraft facilities went unused during the program's last three years. Viewed from the perspective of the mid-1970s, midway between the eras of Apollo and the Space Shuttle, the manned launch complex appears grossly overbuilt. It can be argued, however, that the Apollo-Saturn launch facilities provided a margin for error in the hectic months of 1968-1969 when KSC had three vehicles in the operational flow. It can also be argued that those facilities may be used in the future.

Apollo placed a severe strain on the larger Cape community. Brevard County had grown with amazing rapidity during the 1950s. The increase brought about by the Apollo program further taxed the social and economic resources of the area and took a heavy toll of family life, as the divorce rates of the time indicate. Race relations at Kennedy Space Center seemed harmonious, but the limited numbers of black engineers and trained technicians kept most blacks in service or maintenance areas.

Labor disputes were among the most distressing aspects of the launch facility construction. Unions quarreled with NASA over tasks performed by civil servants; union members refused to work alongside nonunion labor; and most frequently they fought each other over jurisdictional rights to jobs. While not noticeably greater than in most industrial areas, work stoppages seemed as totally out of place in the space race as they had during World War II. The contrast between the total dedication of some workers intent on getting men to the moon, and others arguing about jurisdiction in areas of employment, tended to shock the nation.

The conflict at the Cape was not limited to the labor unions. Some members of the Air Force viewed the civilian agency's program as an infringement on their preserve. The manned spaceflight centers questioned each other's performance and objectives. Houston's and Huntsville's mistakes were magnified at Merritt Island, where the launch team corrected space-vehicle errors. It was easy to forget the thousands of parts that worked when the failure of one piece delayed a launch. The subordination of Houston and Goddard launch teams to KSC also caused hard feelings. Finally there were differing opinions as to the relative contributions of contractor and civil servant at KSC.

While many disagreements sprang up during the launch operations, the Apollo team subordinated its differences to the goal of a lunar landing. At the fifth anniversary of the Apollo 11 launch, James Webb noted:

> The successes achieved here resulted not only from teamwork between individuals, not only from effective interfaces between men and machines, but also because Dr. Kurt Debus and his associates in NASA, in the Air Force and other government agencies, in industry and in universities have created a team of organizations which is a much more difficult undertaking than to create a team of individuals.

The leadership was the more remarkable, coming in large part from engineers with little previous schooling in management. The demonstration of this teamwork of organizations—from the planning for LC-39 through the successful launch of Apollo 17—is the most impressive legacy of the Apollo launch program.

APPENDIXES

Page intentionally left blank

Apollo 12	Apollo 13	Apollo 14	Apollo 15	Apollo 16	Apollo 17
Deploy lunar experiments; investigate Surveyor III	Deploy lunar experiments; photograph later sites	Repeat 13	Extended investigations with lunar rover	Repeat 15	Repeat 15; return largest load of lunar samples
AS-507	AS-508	AS-509	AS-510	AS-511	AS-512
108	109	110	112	113	114
6	7	8	10	11	12
3	1	3	3	3	3
2	3	2	3	3	3
39A	39A	39A	39A	39A	39A
2	1	2	1	1	1
22 May 69	1 Aug 69	14 May 70	17 Sep 70	6 Oct 71	27 Jun 72
30 Jun 69	10 Dec 69	5 Nov 70	8 May 71	8 Dec 71, 5 Feb 72	23 Aug 72
29 Oct 69	26 Mar 70	19 Jan 71	14 Jul 71	31 Mar 72	21 Nov 72
Conrad Gordon Bean	Lovell Swigert Haise	Shepard Roosa Mitchell	Scott Worden Irwin	Young Mattingly Duke	Cernan Evans Schmitt
Ocean of Storms	(Fra Mauro intended)	Fra Mauro	Hadley Apennine	Descartes	Taurus Littrow
Harrington	Grenville	Henschel	Harrington	Turner	Schick
10–17 Nov	7–14 Apr	29 Jan– 3 Feb	24–30 Jul	16–23 Apr	5–17 Dec
14 Nov 69	11 Apr 70	31 Jan 71	26 Jul 71	16 Apr 72	7 Dec 72

Page intentionally left blank

APPENDIX B

Launch Complex 39

1. Vehicle (Vertical) Assembly Building (VAB)

Area: 32 500 sq m (8 acres).

Dimensions: 218 × 158 m, 160 m tall. Compare to Statue of Liberty, 93 m tall.

Volume: 3 665 000 cu m. Compare to Pentagon, 2 181 000 cu m.

Features: 4 high bays for assembly and checkout of launch vehicles with spacecraft, low bays for checkout of individual stages. 4 high bay doors, opening height 139 m. 71 lifting devices. 2 bridge cranes of 227-metric-ton capacity. 9070 metric tons of air conditioning, 125 ventilators.

Construction: 89 400 metric tons of steel, 49 700 cu m of concrete. 4225 open-end steel pipe piles, 0.4 m diameter, driven to depth of 49 m. Siding of 100 800 sq m of insulated aluminum panels and 6500 sq m of plastic panels.

Cost of construction: $117 000 000.

2. Launch Control Center (LCC)

The 4-story, electronic brain of LC-39, the LCC was built adjacent to the VAB and 5.6 km from pad A. During launch, 62 TV cameras provided closed-circuit pictures to 100 monitor screens in the LCC. The LCC was connected to the mobile launchers by a high-speed data link.

1st floor: offices, cafeteria, shops.

2d floor: telemetry, RF and tracking equipment, instrumentation, data reduction and evaluation equipment.

3d floor: 4 firing rooms, one for each of the high bays in the VAB. Each active room had 470 sets of control and monitoring equipment.

4th floor: conference and display rooms, offices, mechanical equipment.

Cost of construction: $10 000 000.

3. Mobile Launchers (3)

Weight: 5715 metric tons, with unfueled vehicle.

Height (on pedestals): 136 m to top of crane.

Launch platform: 2-story steel structure 49 × 41 m, 7.6 m high. Exhaust hole 14 m square. 4 hold-down arms, each 18 100 kg, held rocket vertical during thrust buildup, approximately 8.9 seconds to reach 95% of total thrust. Platform supported by 6 steel pedestals 7 meters high when in VAB or on pad. 4 additional extensible columns used at pad, to stiffen platform during firing.

Umbilical tower, mounted on platform, 18 levels, 2 elevators. 9 swing (service) arms for personnel access, propellant, electrical, pneumatic, and instrumentation lines. Arms weighed 15 900–23 600 kg, length 13.7–18.3 m. Top arm (9) used by astronauts to enter spacecraft. 4 arms retracted before liftoff, 5 at T – 0.

Cost of construction: $33 963 000.

4. Transporters (2)

Used to move mobile launcher, with assembled space vehicle, from VAB to pad, also to move mobile service structure to and from pad.

Weight: 2720 metric tons, largest tracked vehicle known.

Dimensions: 35 × 40 m, with top deck about size of baseball infield; height, 6–8 m.

4 double-tracked crawlers each 3 m high, 12 m long. 8 tracks per transporter, 57 shoes per track. Each tread shoe (or link in the track) weighed 0.9 metric ton.

Power: 16 traction motors powered by four 1000-kw generators, driven by 2 diesel engines; two 750-kw generators, driven by 2 diesel engines for jacking, steering, lighting, ventilating; two 150-kw generators for power to the mobile launcher.

Maximum speed: 1.6 km/hr loaded, 3.2 unloaded. Pad-to-VAB trip time, loaded, 7 hrs.

Levelling: top of space vehicle kept vertical within ±10′ of arc, including negotiation of 5% grade leading up to pad.

Cost of construction: $13 600 000.

5. Mobile Service Structure (1)

Weight: 4760 metric tons.

Height: 125 m.

Elevators: 2 for personnel and equipment in tower, 1 from ground to base work area.

Work platforms: 2 self-propelled, 3 fixed. Top 3 platforms served spacecraft, bottom 2 served Saturn V.

Parking position during launch: 2100 m from pad A.

Cost of construction: $11 600 000.

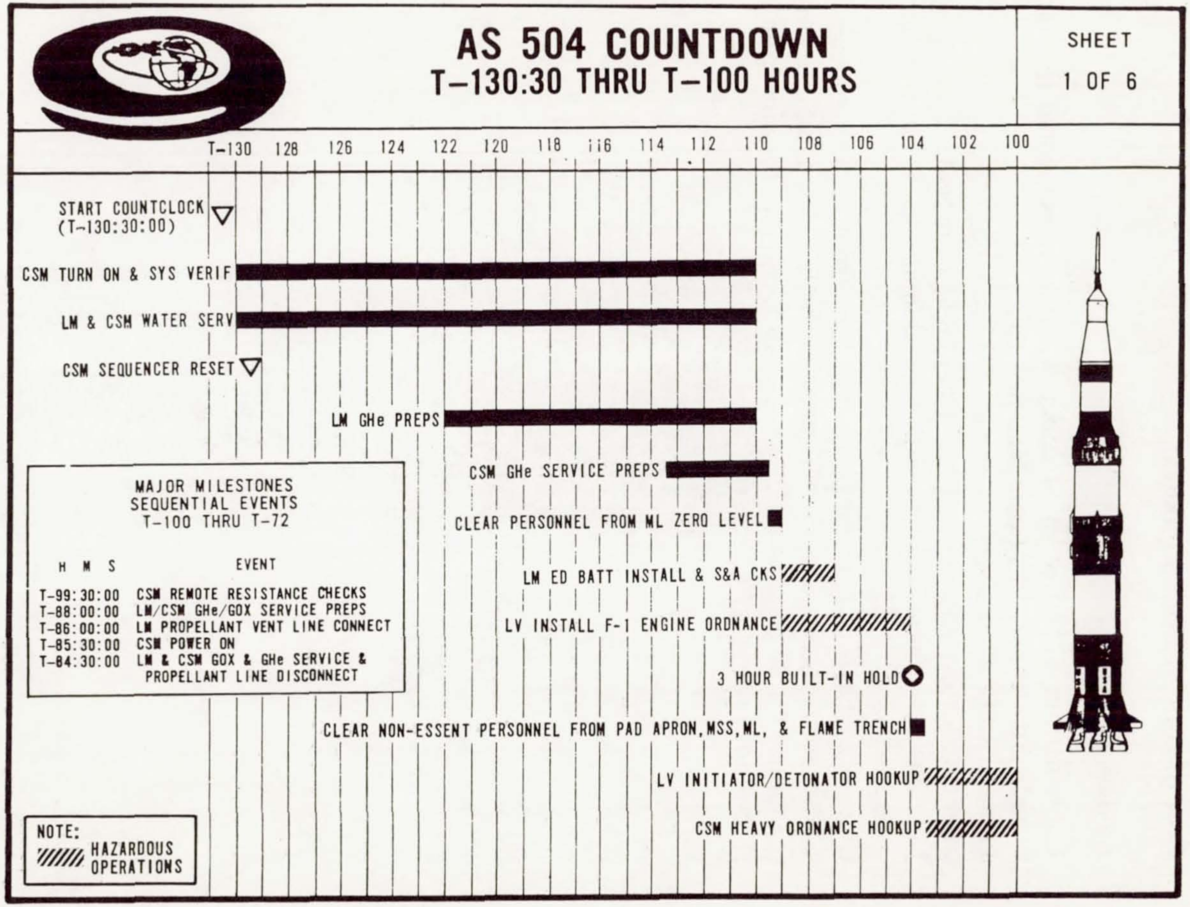
6. *Crawlerway*

Length: VAB to pad A, 5500 m; VAB to pad B, 6800 m.
Width: 2 lanes, each 12 m, separated by 15 m median.
Depth: average 2 m.
Cost of construction: $7 500 000.

7. *Launch Pads (2)*

Construction: 52 000 cu m of concrete, roughly octagonal in shape. 2 pads are virtually identical, 2660 m apart.
Flame trench: 13 m deep, 18 m wide, 137 m long.
Flame deflector: 635 metric tons, 12 m high, 15 m wide, 23 m long.
Lighting: 40 xenon high-intensity searchlights in 5 clusters around perimeter.
Emergency Egress System: 61-m escape tube from mobile launcher platform to blast-resistant room 12 m below pad, which contained survival supplies for 20 persons for 24 hours. Also, cab on slidewire from 98-m level to revetment 763 m away.

Appendix C

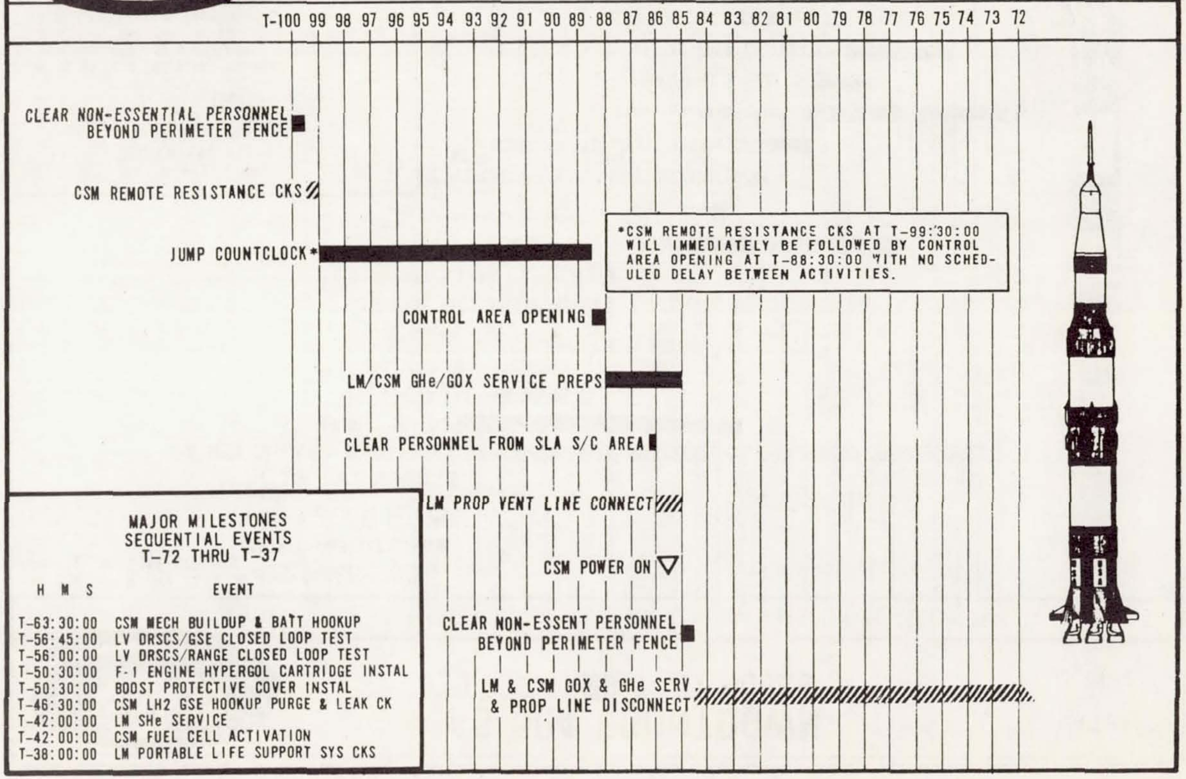


MAJOR MILESTONES
SEQUENTIAL EVENTS
T–100 THRU T–72

H M S	EVENT
T–99:30:00	CSM REMOTE RESISTANCE CHECKS
T–88:00:00	LM/CSM GHe/GOX SERVICE PREPS
T–86:00:00	LM PROPELLANT VENT LINE CONNECT
T–85:30:00	CSM POWER ON
T–84:30:00	LM & CSM GOX & GHe SERVICE & PROPELLANT LINE DISCONNECT

AS 504 COUNTDOWN
T–100 THRU T–72 HOURS

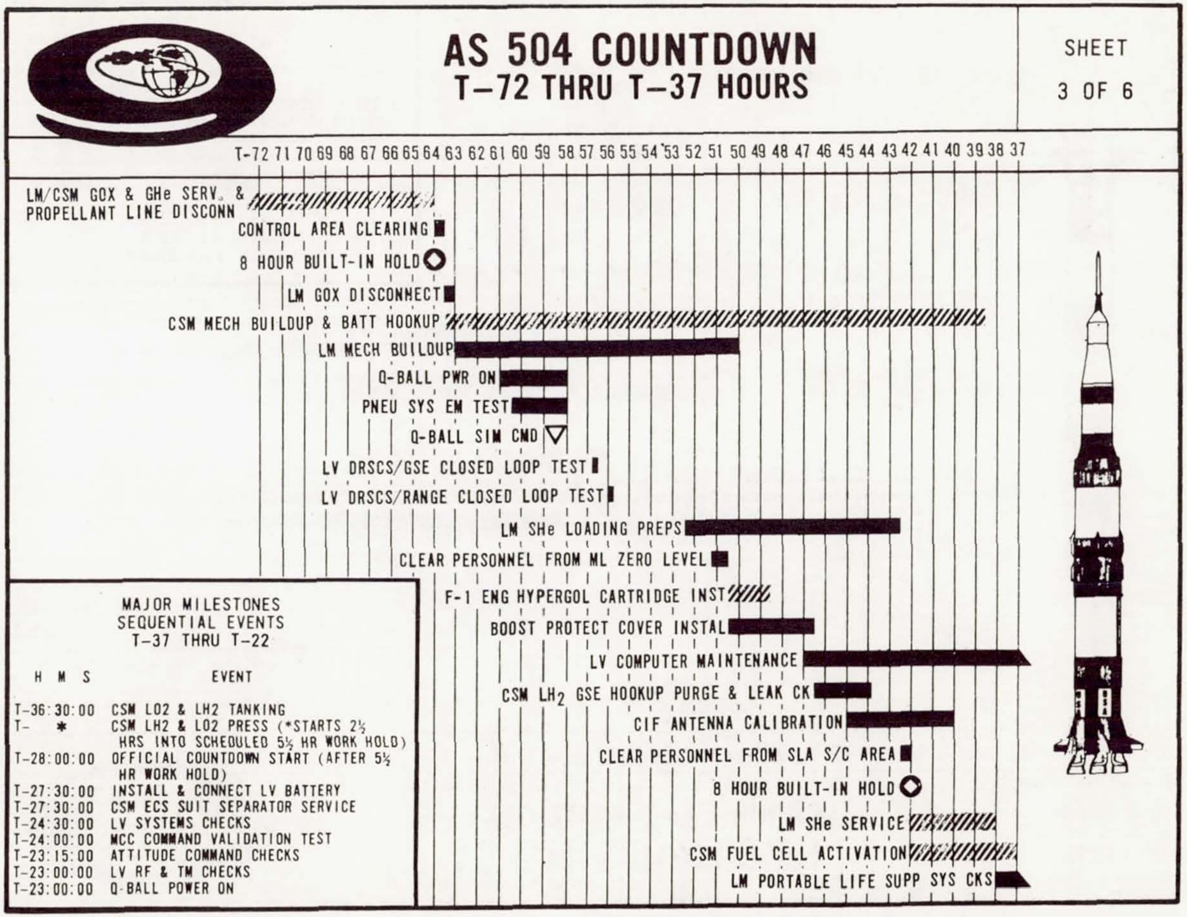
SHEET
2 OF 6



*CSM REMOTE RESISTANCE CKS AT T-99:30:00 WILL IMMEDIATELY BE FOLLOWED BY CONTROL AREA OPENING AT T-88:30:00 WITH NO SCHEDULED DELAY BETWEEN ACTIVITIES.

MAJOR MILESTONES
SEQUENTIAL EVENTS
T-72 THRU T-37

H M S	EVENT
T-63:30:00	CSM MECH BUILDUP & BATT HOOKUP
T-56:45:00	LV DRSCS/GSE CLOSED LOOP TEST
T-56:00:00	LV DRSCS/RANGE CLOSED LOOP TEST
T-50:30:00	F-1 ENGINE HYPERGOL CARTRIDGE INSTAL
T-50:30:00	BOOST PROTECTIVE COVER INSTAL
T-46:30:00	CSM LH2 GSE HOOKUP PURGE & LEAK CK
T-42:00:00	LM SHe SERVICE
T-42:00:00	CSM FUEL CELL ACTIVATION
T-38:00:00	LM PORTABLE LIFE SUPPORT SYS CKS



AS 504 COUNTDOWN
T–72 THRU T–37 HOURS

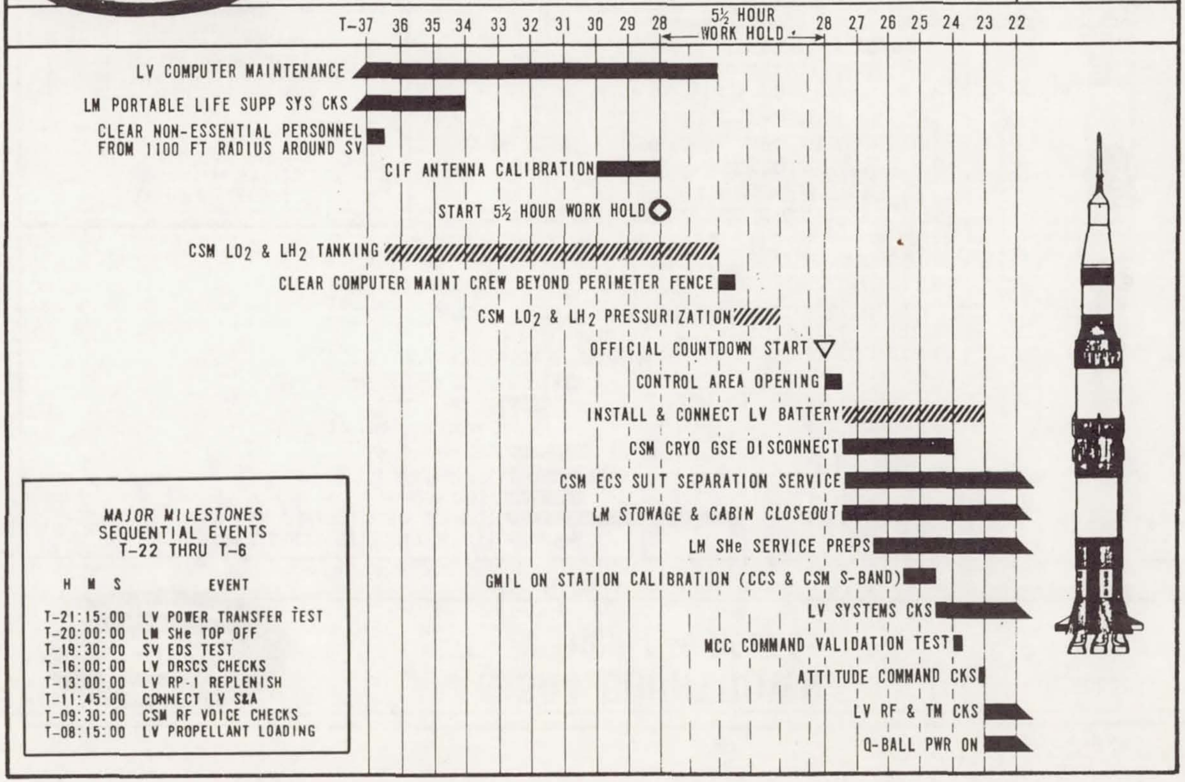
SHEET
3 OF 6

MAJOR MILESTONES
SEQUENTIAL EVENTS
T–37 THRU T–22

H M S	EVENT
T–36:30:00	CSM LO2 & LH2 TANKING
T– *	CSM LH2 & LO2 PRESS (*STARTS 2½ HRS INTO SCHEDULED 5½ HR WORK HOLD)
T–28:00:00	OFFICIAL COUNTDOWN START (AFTER 5½ HR WORK HOLD)
T–27:30:00	INSTALL & CONNECT LV BATTERY
T–27:30:00	CSM ECS SUIT SEPARATOR SERVICE
T–24:30:00	LV SYSTEMS CHECKS
T–24:00:00	MCC COMMAND VALIDATION TEST
T–23:15:00	ATTITUDE COMMAND CHECKS
T–23:00:00	LV RF & TM CHECKS
T–23:00:00	Q-BALL POWER ON

AS 504 COUNTDOWN
T−37 THRU T−22 HOURS

SHEET
4 OF 6

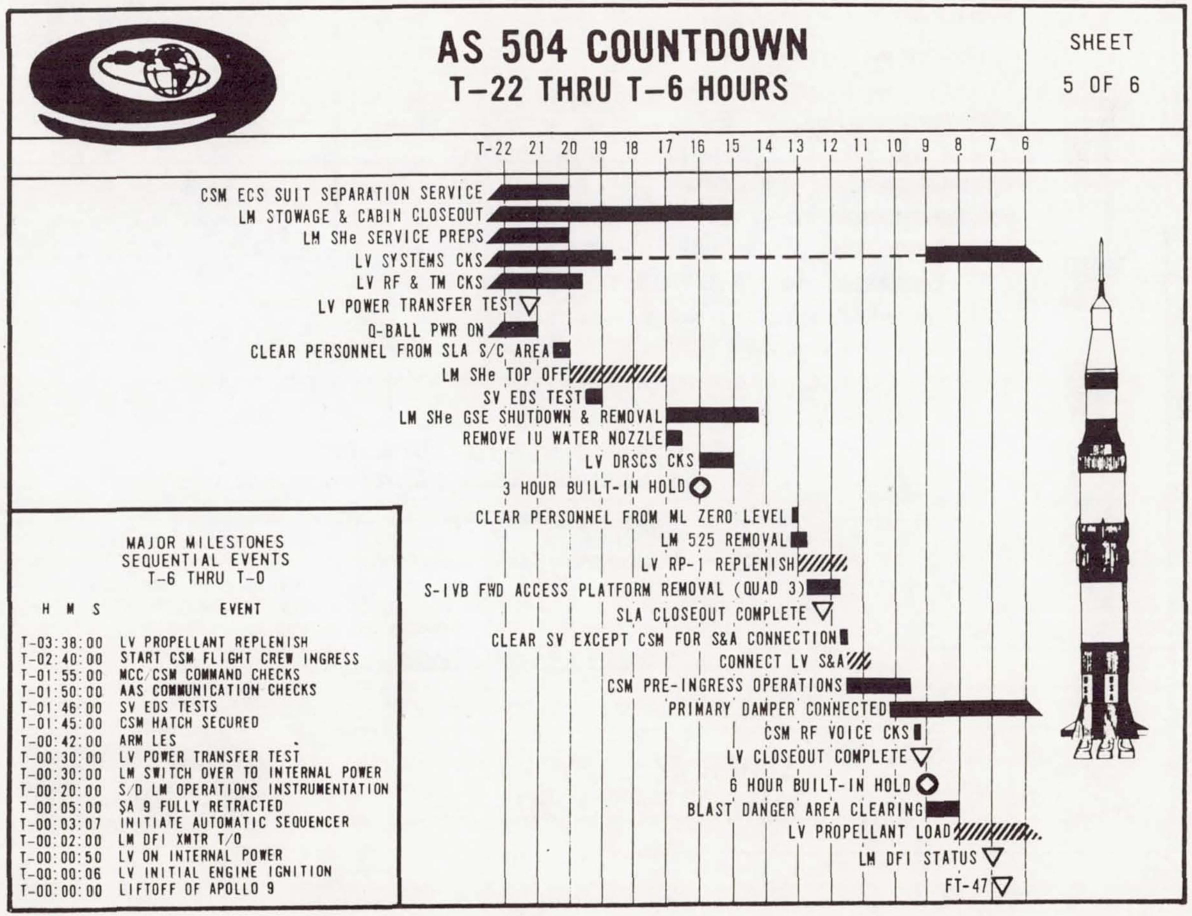


MAJOR MILESTONES
SEQUENTIAL EVENTS
T-22 THRU T-6

H M S	EVENT
T-21:15:00	LV POWER TRANSFER TEST
T-20:00:00	LM SHe TOP OFF
T-19:30:00	SV EDS TEST
T-16:00:00	LV DRSCS CHECKS
T-13:00:00	LV RP-1 REPLENISH
T-11:45:00	CONNECT LV S&A
T-09:30:00	CSM RF VOICE CHECKS
T-08:15:00	LV PROPELLANT LOADING

AS 504 COUNTDOWN
T–22 THRU T–6 HOURS

SHEET
5 OF 6

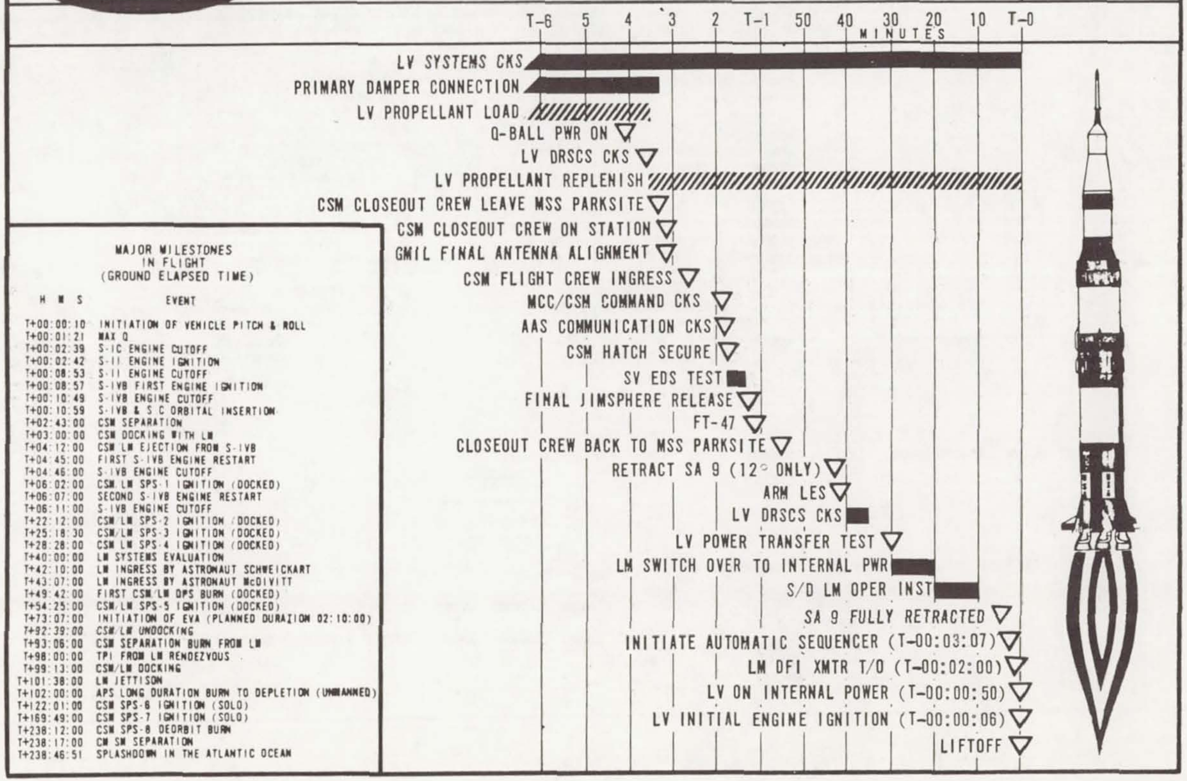


MAJOR MILESTONES
SEQUENTIAL EVENTS
T–6 THRU T–0

H M S	EVENT
T-03:38:00	LV PROPELLANT REPLENISH
T-02:40:00	START CSM FLIGHT CREW INGRESS
T-01:55:00	MCC/CSM COMMAND CHECKS
T-01:50:00	AAS COMMUNICATION CHECKS
T-01:46:00	SV EDS TESTS
T-01:45:00	CSM HATCH SECURED
T-00:42:00	ARM LES
T-00:30:00	LV POWER TRANSFER TEST
T-00:30:00	LM SWITCH OVER TO INTERNAL POWER
T-00:20:00	S/D LM OPERATIONS INSTRUMENTATION
T-00:05:00	SA 9 FULLY RETRACTED
T-00:03:07	INITIATE AUTOMATIC SEQUENCER
T-00:02:00	LM DFI XMTR T/O
T-00:00:50	LV ON INTERNAL POWER
T-00:00:06	LV INITIAL ENGINE IGNITION
T-00:00:00	LIFTOFF OF APOLLO 9

AS 504 COUNTDOWN
T–6 THRU T–0 HOURS

SHEET
6 OF 6

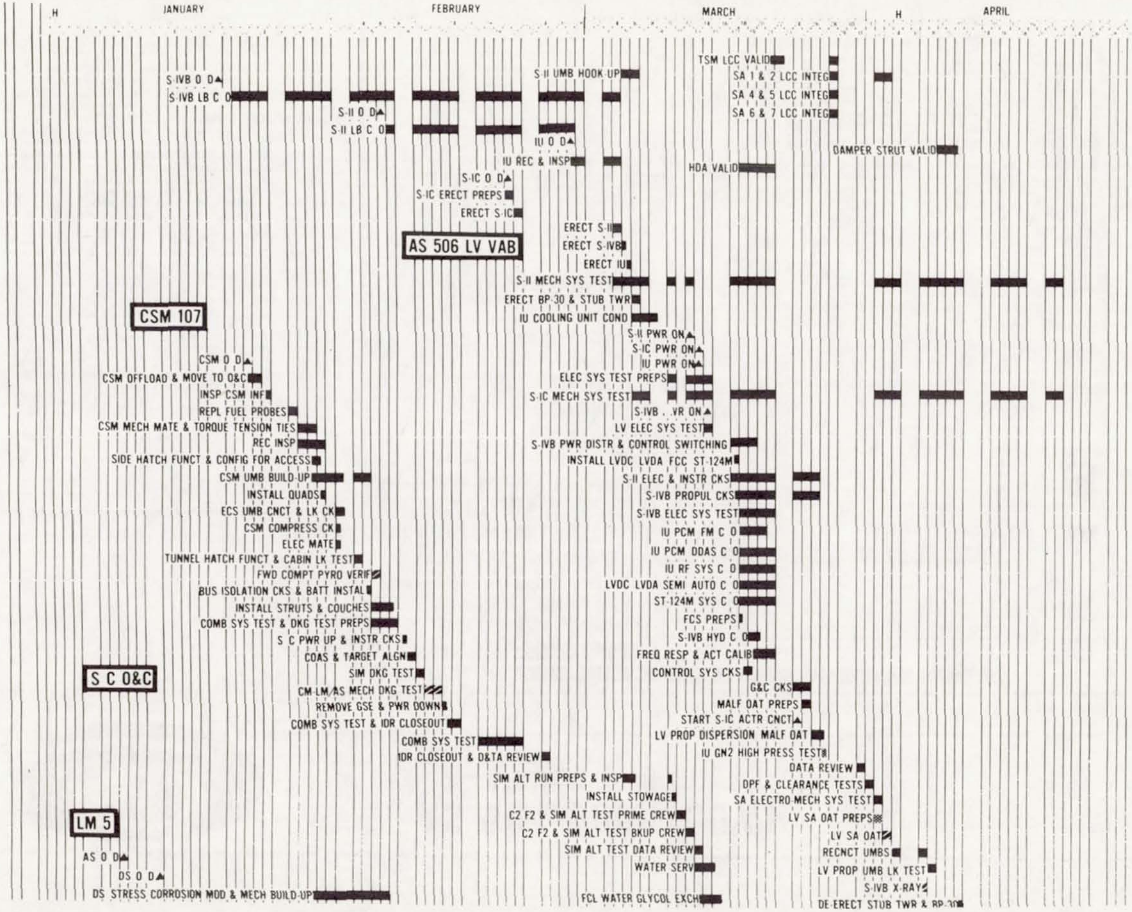


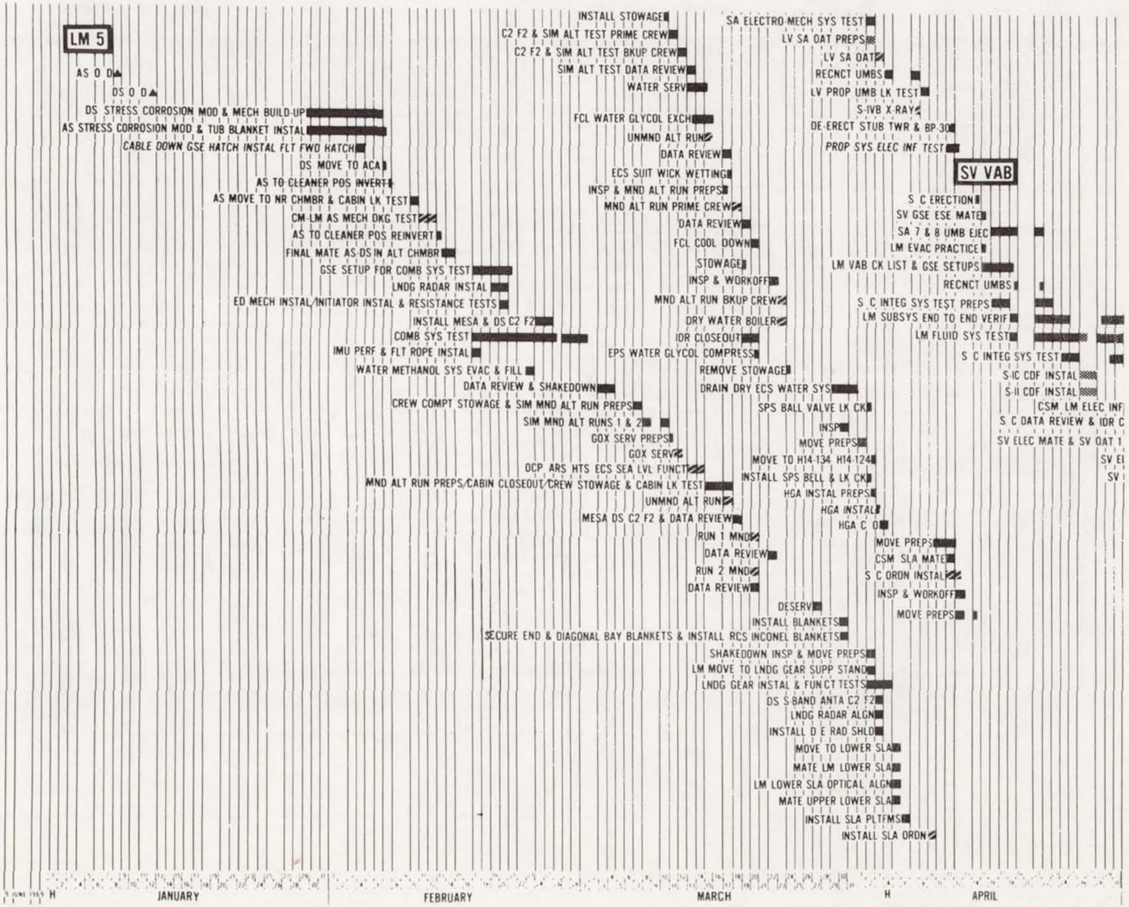
MAJOR MILESTONES
IN FLIGHT
(GROUND ELAPSED TIME)

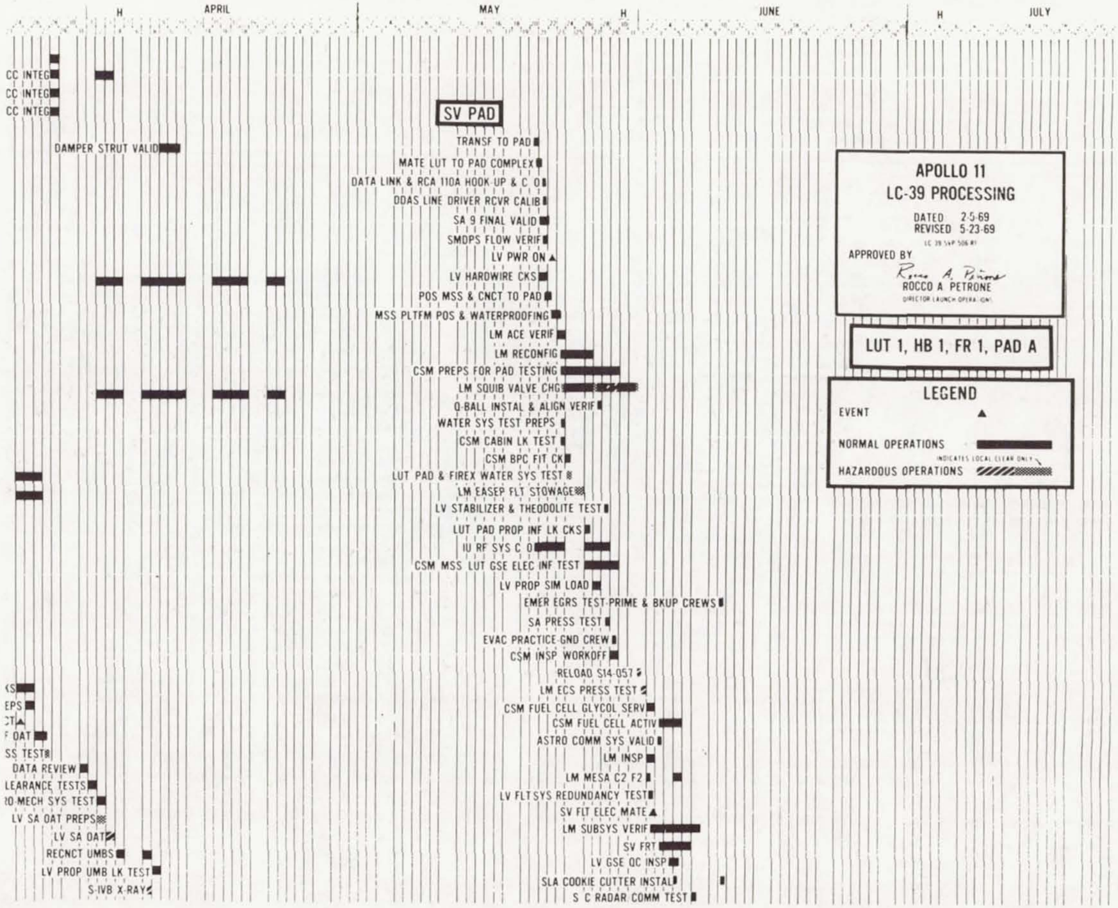
H M S	EVENT
T+00:00:10	INITIATION OF VEHICLE PITCH & ROLL
T+00:01:21	MAX Q
T+00:02:39	S-IC ENGINE CUTOFF
T+00:02:42	S-II ENGINE IGNITION
T+00:08:53	S-II ENGINE CUTOFF
T+00:08:57	S-IVB FIRST ENGINE IGNITION
T+00:10:49	S-IVB ENGINE CUTOFF
T+00:10:59	S-IVB & S C ORBITAL INSERTION
T+02:43:00	CSM SEPARATION
T+03:00:00	CSM DOCKING WITH LM
T+04:12:00	CSM LM EJECTION FROM S-IVB
T+04:45:00	FIRST S-IVB ENGINE RESTART
T+04:46:00	S-IVB ENGINE CUTOFF
T+06:02:00	CSM LM SPS-1 IGNITION (DOCKED)
T+06:07:00	SECOND S-IVB ENGINE RESTART
T+06:11:00	S-IVB ENGINE CUTOFF
T+22:12:00	CSM/LM SPS-2 IGNITION (DOCKED)
T+25:18:30	CSM/LM SPS-3 IGNITION (DOCKED)
T+28:28:00	CSM LM SPS-4 IGNITION (DOCKED)
T+40:00:00	LM SYSTEMS EVALUATION
T+42:10:00	LM INGRESS BY ASTRONAUT SCHWEICKART
T+43:07:00	LM INGRESS BY ASTRONAUT McDIVITT
T+49:42:00	FIRST CSM/LM DPS BURN (DOCKED)
T+54:25:00	CSM/LM SPS-5 IGNITION (DOCKED)
T+73:07:00	INITIATION OF EVA (PLANNED DURATION 02:10:00)
T+92:39:00	*CSM/LM UNDOCKING*
T+93:06:00	CSM SEPARATION BURN FROM LM
T+98:00:00	TPI FROM LM RENDEZVOUS
T+99:13:00	CSM/LM DOCKING
T+101:38:00	LM JETTISON
T+102:00:00	APS LONG DURATION BURN TO DEPLETION (UNMANNED)
T+122:01:00	CSM SPS-6 IGNITION (SOLO)
T+169:49:00	CSM SPS-7 IGNITION (SOLO)
T+238:12:00	CSM SPS-8 DEORBIT BURN
T+238:17:00	CM SM SEPARATION
T+238:46:51	SPLASHDOWN IN THE ATLANTIC OCEAN

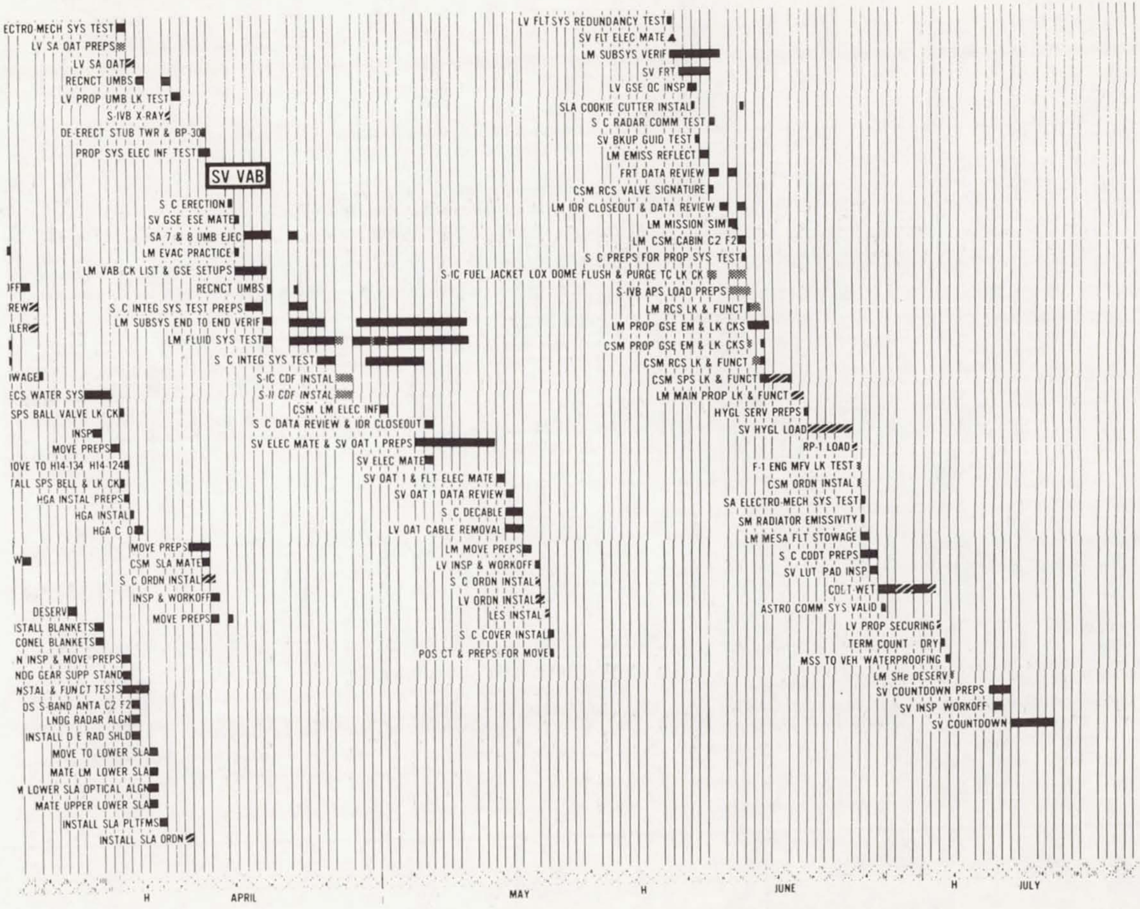
APPENDIX D

Processing Apollo 11 Through LC-39

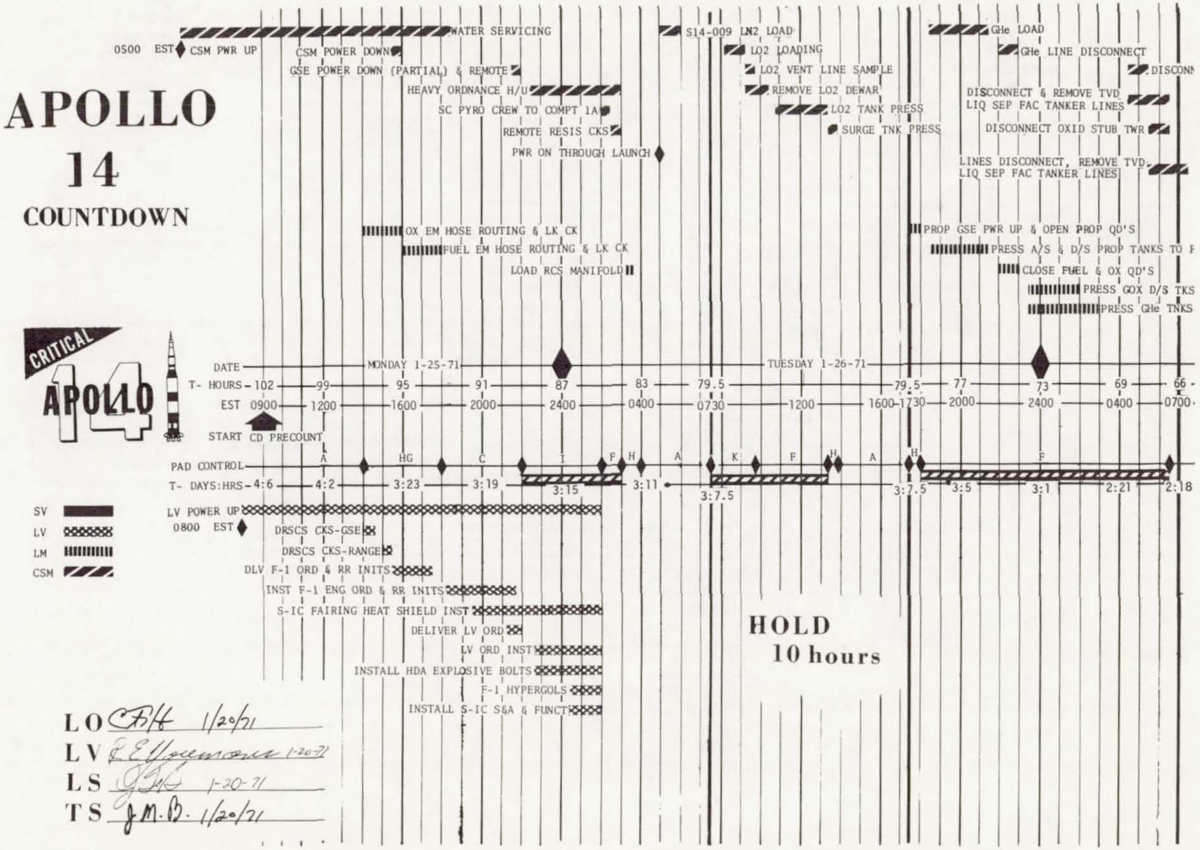


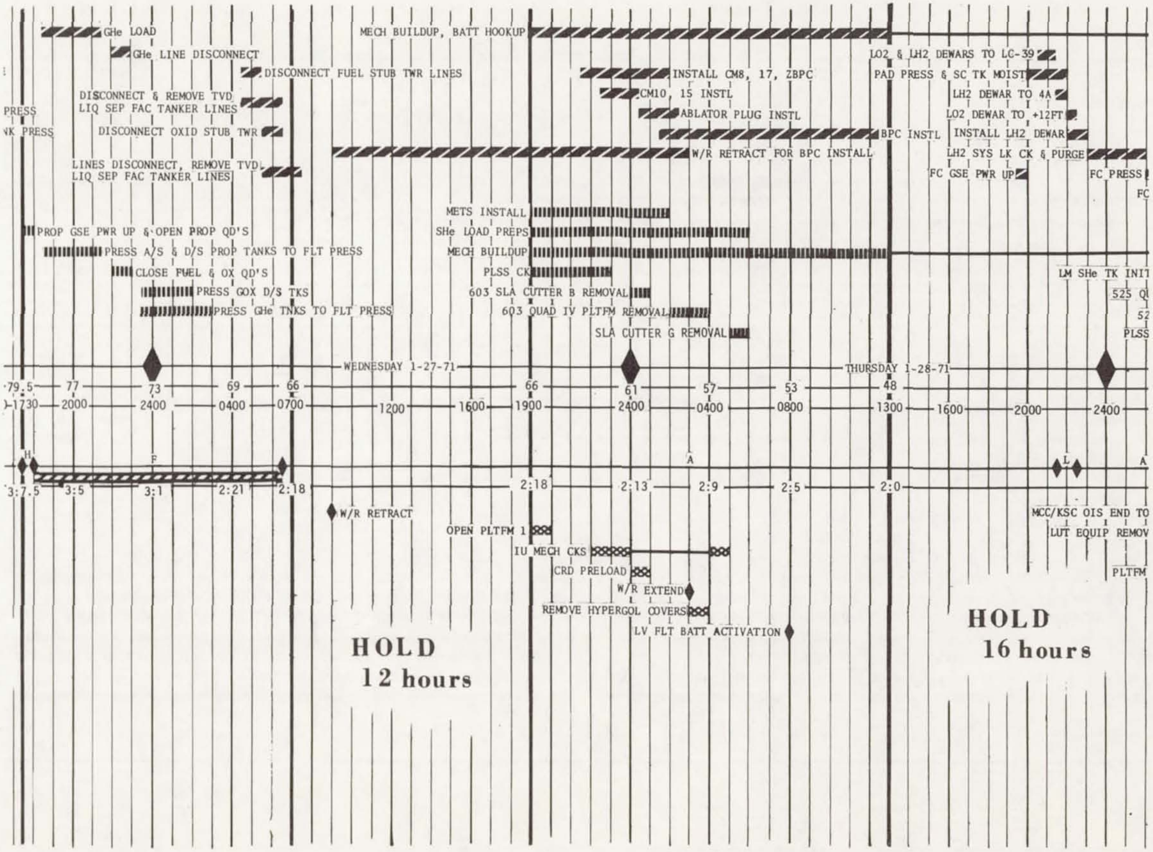

LM 5
AS O D
DS O D
DS STRESS CORROSION MOD & MECH BUILD-UP
AS STRESS CORROSION MOD & TUB BLANKET INSTAL
CABLE DOWN GSE HATCH INSTAL FLT FWD HATCH
DS MOVE TO ACA
AS TO CLEANER POS INVERT
AS MOVE TO NR CHMBR & CABIN LK TEST
CM-LM AS MECH DKG TEST
AS TO CLEANER POS REINVERT
FINAL MATE AS-DS IN ALT CHMBR
GSE SETUP FOR COMB SYS TEST
LNDG RADAR INSTAL
ED MECH INSTAL/INITIATOR INSTAL & RESISTANCE TESTS
INSTALL MESA & DS C2 F2
COMB SYS TEST
IMU PERF & FLT ROPE INSTAL
WATER METHANOL SYS EVAC & FILL
DATA REVIEW & SHAKEDOWN
CREW COMPT STOWAGE & SIM MND ALT RUN PREPS
SIM MND ALT RUNS 1 & 2
GOX SERV PREPS
GOX SERV
OCP ARS HTS ECS SEA LVL FUNCT
MND ALT RUN PREPS/CABIN CLOSEOUT/CREW STOWAGE & CABIN LK TEST
UNMND ALT RUN
MESA DS C2 F2 & DATA REVIEW
RUN 1 MND
DATA REVIEW
RUN 2 MND
DATA REVIEW
DESERV
INSTALL BLANKETS
SECURE END & DIAGONAL BAY BLANKETS & INSTALL RCS INCONEL BLANKETS
SHAKEDOWN INSP & MOVE PREPS
LM MOVE TO LNDG GEAR SUPP STAND
LNDG GEAR INSTAL & FUNCT TESTS
DS S-BAND ANTA C2 F2
LNDG RADAR ALGN
INSTALL D E RAD SHLD
MOVE TO LOWER SLA
MATE LM LOWER SLA
LM LOWER SLA OPTICAL ALGN
MATE UPPER LOWER SLA
INSTALL SLA PLTFMS
INSTALL SLA ORDN
INSTALL STOWAGE
C2 F2 & SIM ALT TEST PRIME CREW
C2 F2 & SIM ALT TEST BKUP CREW
SIM ALT TEST DATA REVIEW
WATER SERV
FCL WATER GLYCOL EXCH
UNMND ALT RUN
DATA REVIEW
ECS SUIT WICK WETTING
INSP & MND ALT RUN PREPS
MND ALT RUN PRIME CREW
DATA REVIEW
FCL COOL DOWN
STOWAGE
INSP & WORKOFF
MND ALT RUN BKUP CREW
DRY WATER BOILER
IDR CLOSEOUT
EPS WATER GLYCOL COMPRESS
REMOVE STOWAGE
DRAIN DRY ECS WATER SYS
SPS BALL VALVE LK CK
INSP
MOVE PREPS
MOVE TO H14-134 H14-124
INSTALL SPS BELL & LK CK
HGA INSTAL PREPS
HGA INSTAL
HGA C O
MOVE PREPS
CSM SLA MATE
S C ORDN INSTAL
INSP & WORKOFF
MOVE PREPS
SA ELECTRO-MECH SYS TEST
LV SA OAT PREPS
LV SA OAT
RECNCT UMBS
LV PROP UMB LK TEST
S-IVB X-RAY
DE-ERECT STUB TWR & BP-30
PROP SYS ELEC INF TEST
SV VAB
S C ERECTION
SV GSE ESE MATE
SA 7 & 8 UMB EJEC
LM EVAC PRACTICE
LM VAB CK LIST & GSE SETUPS
RECNCT UMBS
S C INTEG SYS TEST PREPS
LM SUBSYS END TO END VERIF
LM FLUID SYS TEST
S C INTEG SYS TEST
S-IC CDF INSTAL
S-II CDF INSTAL
CSM LM ELEC INF
S C DATA REVIEW & IDR C
SV ELEC MATE & SV OAT 1
SV El
SV
9 JUNE 1969
H
JANUARY
FEBRUARY
MARCH
H
APRIL

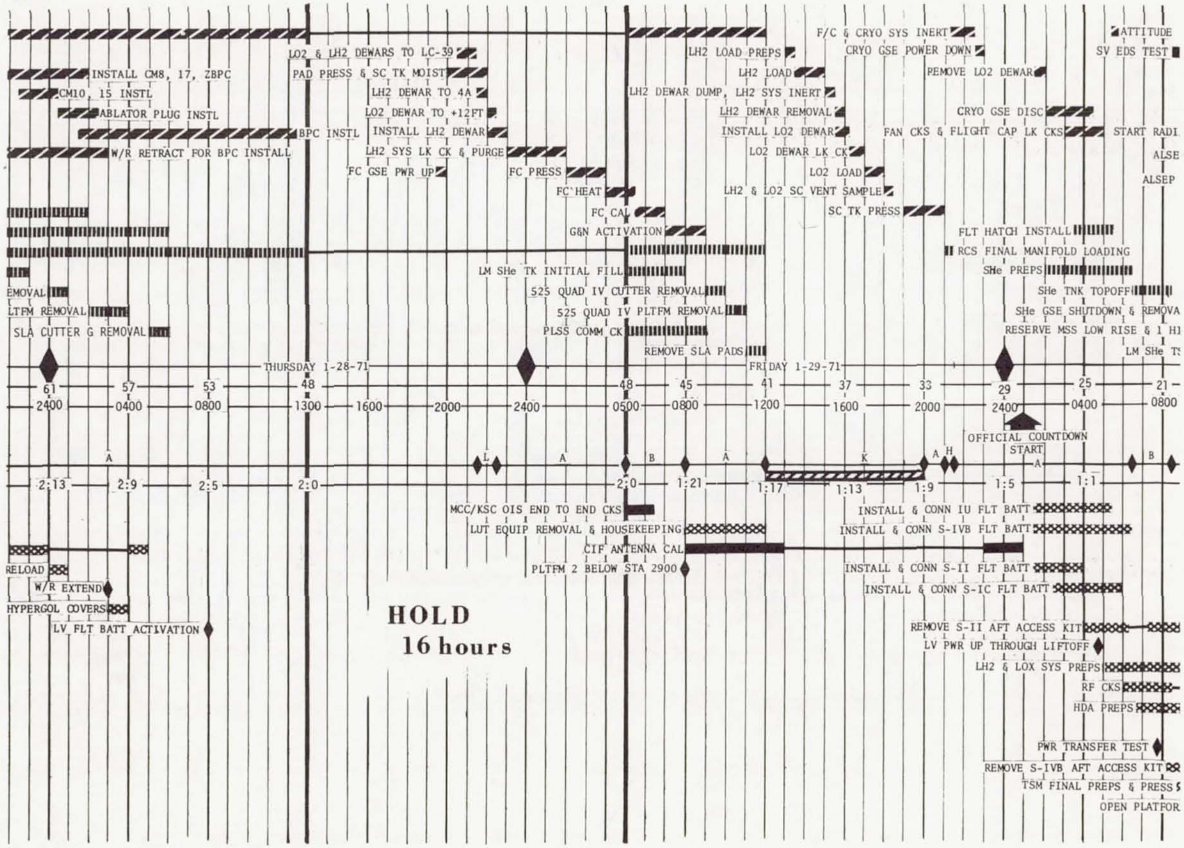

H
APRIL
MAY
H
JUNE
H
JULY
CC INTEG
CC INTEG
CC INTEG
DAMPER STRUT VALID
SV PAD
TRANSF TO PAD
MATE LUT TO PAD COMPLEX
DATA LINK & RCA 110A HOOK-UP & C O
DDAS LINE DRIVER RCVR CALIB
SA 9 FINAL VALID
SMDPS FLOW VERIF
LV PWR ON
LV HARDWIRE CKS
POS MSS & CNCT TO PAD
MSS PLTFM POS & WATERPROOFING
LM ACE VERIF
LM RECONFIG
CSM PREPS FOR PAD TESTING
LM SQUIB VALVE CHG
Q-BALL INSTAL & ALIGN VERIF
WATER SYS TEST PREPS
CSM CABIN LK TEST
CSM BPC FIT CK
LUT PAD & FIREX WATER SYS TEST
LM EASEP FLT STOWAGE
LV STABILIZER & THEODOLITE TEST
LUT PAD PROP INF LK CKS
IU RF SYS C O
CSM MSS LUT GSE ELEC INF TEST
LV PROP SIM LOAD
EMER EGRS TEST-PRIME & BKUP CREWS
SA PRESS TEST
EVAC PRACTICE-GND CREW
CSM INSP WORKOFF
RELOAD S14-057
LM ECS PRESS TEST
CSM FUEL CELL GLYCOL SERV
CSM FUEL CELL ACTIV
ASTRO COMM SYS VALID
LM INSP
LM MESA C2 F2
LV FLT SYS REDUNDANCY TEST
SV FLT ELEC MATE
LM SUBSYS VERIF
SV FRT
LV GSE QC INSP
SLA COOKIE CUTTER INSTAL
S C RADAR COMM TEST
KS
EPS
CT
F OAT
SS TEST
DATA REVIEW
LEARANCE TESTS
RO-MECH SYS TEST
LV SA OAT PREPS
LV SA OAT
RECNCT UMBS
LV PROP UMB LK TEST
S-IVB X-RAY
APOLLO 11
LC-39 PROCESSING
DATED 2-5-69
REVISED 5-23-69
LC 39 SVP 506 R1
APPROVED BY
Rocco A. Petrone
ROCCO A PETRONE
DIRECTOR LAUNCH OPERATIONS
LUT 1, HB 1, FR 1, PAD A
LEGEND
EVENT ▲
NORMAL OPERATIONS
INDICATES LOCAL CLEAR ONLY
HAZARDOUS OPERATIONS

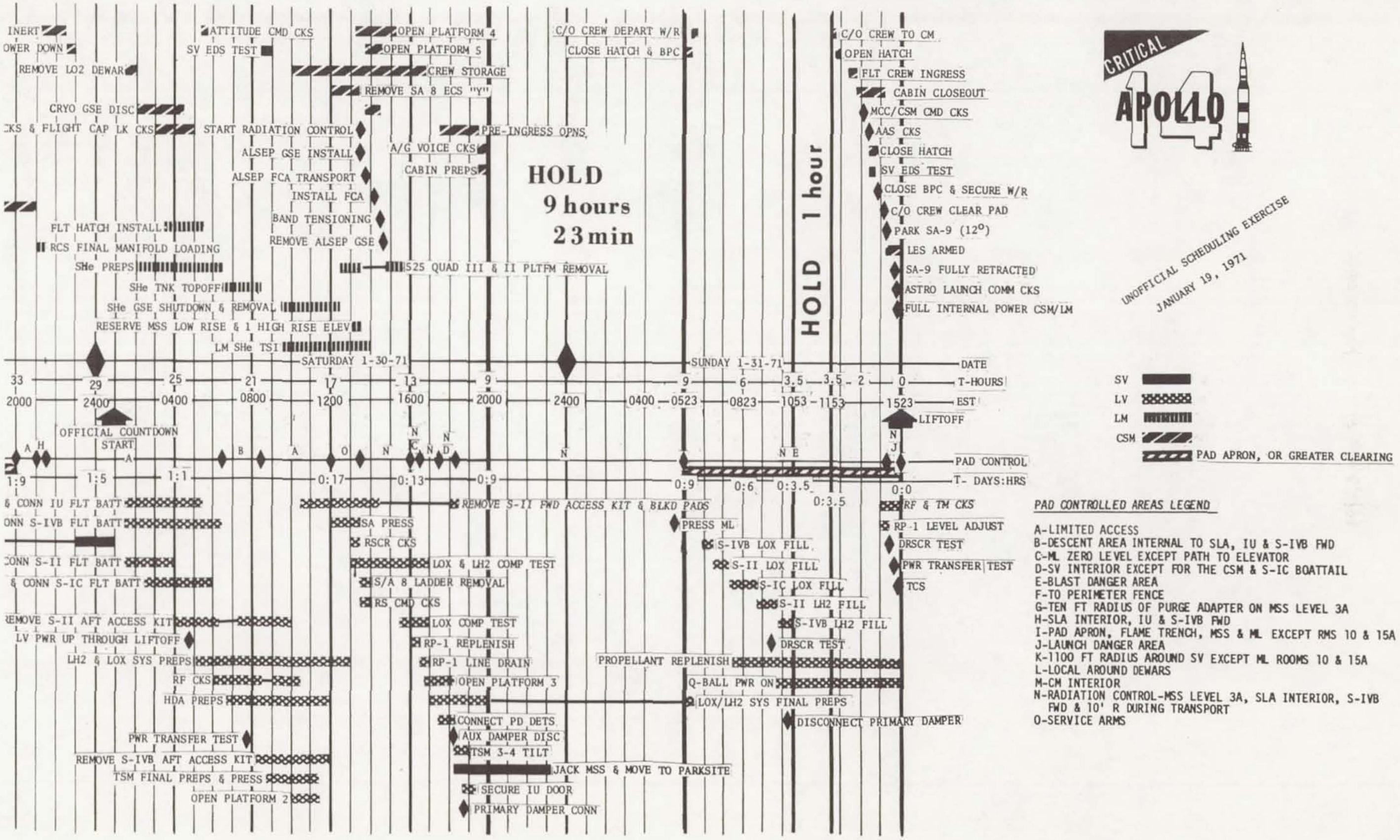

ECTRO-MECH SYS TEST
LV SA OAT PREPS
LV SA OAT
RECNCT UMBS
LV PROP UMB LK TEST
S-IVB X-RAY
DE-ERECT STUB TWR & BP-30
PROP SYS ELEC INF TEST
SV VAB
S C ERECTION
SV GSE ESE MATE
SA 7 & 8 UMB EJEC
LM EVAC PRACTICE
LM VAB CK LIST & GSE SETUPS
RECNCT UMBS
S C INTEG SYS TEST PREPS
LM SUBSYS END TO END VERIF
LM FLUID SYS TEST
S C INTEG SYS TEST
S-IC CDF INSTAL
S-II CDF INSTAL
CSM LM ELEC INF
S C DATA REVIEW & IDR CLOSEOUT
SV ELEC MATE & SV OAT 1 PREPS
SV ELEC MATE
SV OAT 1 & FLT ELEC MATE
SV OAT 1 DATA REVIEW
S C DECABLE
LV OAT CABLE REMOVAL
LM MOVE PREPS
LV INSP & WORKOFF
S C ORDN INSTAL
LV ORDN INSTAL
LES INSTAL
S C COVER INSTAL
POS CT & PREPS FOR MOVE
IFF
REW
ILER
IWAGE
ECS WATER SYS
SPS BALL VALVE LK CK
INSP
MOVE PREPS
IOVE TO H14-134 H14-124
TALL SPS BELL & LK CK
HGA INSTAL PREPS
HGA INSTAL
HGA C O
MOVE PREPS
CSM SLA MATE
S C ORDN INSTAL
INSP & WORKOFF
MOVE PREPS
W
DESERV
ISTALL BLANKETS
CONEL BLANKETS
N INSP & MOVE PREPS
NDG GEAR SUPP STAND
NSTAL & FUNCT TESTS
DS S-BAND ANTA C2 F2
LNDG RADAR ALGN
INSTALL D E RAD SHLD
MOVE TO LOWER SLA
MATE LM LOWER SLA
W LOWER SLA OPTICAL ALGN
MATE UPPER LOWER SLA
INSTALL SLA PLTFMS
INSTALL SLA ORDN
LV FLT SYS REDUNDANCY TEST
SV FLT ELEC MATE
LM SUBSYS VERIF
SV FRT
LV GSE QC INSP
SLA COOKIE CUTTER INSTAL
S C RADAR COMM TEST
SV BKUP GUID TEST
LM EMISS REFLECT
FRT DATA REVIEW
CSM RCS VALVE SIGNATURE
LM IDR CLOSEOUT & DATA REVIEW
LM MISSION SIM
LM CSM CABIN C2 F2
S C PREPS FOR PROP SYS TEST
S-IC FUEL JACKET LOX DOME FLUSH & PURGE TC LK CK
S-IVB APS LOAD PREPS
LM RCS LK & FUNCT
LM PROP GSE EM & LK CKS
CSM PROP GSE EM & LK CKS
CSM RCS LK & FUNCT
CSM SPS LK & FUNCT
LM MAIN PROP LK & FUNCT
HYGL SERV PREPS
SV HYGL LOAD
RP-1 LOAD
F-1 ENG MFV LK TEST
CSM ORDN INSTAL
SA ELECTRO-MECH SYS TEST
SM RADIATOR EMISSIVITY
LM MESA FLT STOWAGE
S C CDDT PREPS
SV LUT PAD INSP
CDDT-WET
ASTRO COMM SYS VALID
LV PROP SECURING
TERM COUNT - DRY
MSS TO VEH WATERPROOFING
LM SHe DESERV
SV COUNTDOWN PREPS
SV INSP WORKOFF
SV COUNTDOWN
H
APRIL
MAY
H
JUNE
H
JULY

APPENDIX E


APOLLO
14
COUNTDOWN
CRITICAL
APOLLO 14
0500 EST CSM PWR UP
WATER SERVICING
CSM POWER DOWN
GSE POWER DOWN (PARTIAL) & REMOTE
HEAVY ORDNANCE H/U
SC PYRO CREW TO COMPT 1A
REMOTE RESIS CKS
PWR ON THROUGH LAUNCH
S14-009 LN2 LOAD
LO2 LOADING
LO2 VENT LINE SAMPLE
REMOVE LO2 DEWAR
LO2 TANK PRESS
SURGE TNK PRESS
GHe LOAD
GHe LINE DISCONNECT
DISCONN
DISCONNECT & REMOVE TVD LIQ SEP FAC TANKER LINES
DISCONNECT OXID STUB TWR
LINES DISCONNECT, REMOVE TVD, LIQ SEP FAC TANKER LINES
OX EM HOSE ROUTING & LK CK
FUEL EM HOSE ROUTING & LK CK
LOAD RCS MANIFOLD
PROP GSE PWR UP & OPEN PROP QD'S
PRESS A/S & D/S PROP TANKS TO F
CLOSE FUEL & OX QD'S
PRESS GOX D/S TKS
PRESS GHe TNKS
DATE
MONDAY 1-25-71
TUESDAY 1-26-71
T- HOURS - 102
99
95
91
87
83
79.5
79.5
77
73
69
66
EST 0900
1200
1600
2000
2400
0400
0730
1200
1600-1730
2000
2400
0400
0700
START CD PRECOUNT
PAD CONTROL
A
HG
C
I
F
H
A
K
F
H
A
H
F
T- DAYS:HRS - 4:6
4:2
3:23
3:19
3:15
3:11
3:7.5
3:7.5
3:5
3:1
2:21
2:18
SV
LV
LM
CSM
LV POWER UP
0800 EST
DRSCS CKS-GSE
DRSCS CKS-RANGE
DLV F-1 ORD & RR INITS
INST F-1 ENG ORD & RR INITS
S-IC FAIRING HEAT SHIELD INST
DELIVER LV ORD
LV ORD INST
INSTALL HDA EXPLOSIVE BOLTS
F-1 HYPERGOLS
INSTALL S-IC S&A & FUNCT
HOLD
10 hours
LO CP/f 1/20/71
LV R E Hoffman 1-20-71
LS 1-20-71
TS J.M.B. 1/20/71


GHe LOAD
GHe LINE DISCONNECT
DISCONNECT FUEL STUB TWR LINES
DISCONNECT & REMOVE TVD, LIQ SEP FAC TANKER LINES
DISCONNECT OXID STUB TWR
LINES DISCONNECT, REMOVE TVD, LIQ SEP FAC TANKER LINES
PRESS
NK PRESS
MECH BUILDUP, BATT HOOKUP
INSTALL CM8, 17, ZBPC
CM10, 15 INSTL
ABLATOR PLUG INSTL
BPC INSTL
W/R RETRACT FOR BPC INSTALL
LO2 & LH2 DEWARS TO LC-39
PAD PRESS & SC TK MOIST
LH2 DEWAR TO 4A
LO2 DEWAR TO +12FT
INSTALL LH2 DEWAR
LH2 SYS LK CK & PURGE
FC GSE PWR UP
FC PRESS
FC
PROP GSE PWR UP & OPEN PROP QD'S
PRESS A/S & D/S PROP TANKS TO FLT PRESS
CLOSE FUEL & OX QD'S
PRESS GOX D/S TKS
PRESS GHe TNKS TO FLT PRESS
METS INSTALL
SHe LOAD PREPS
MECH BUILDUP
PLSS CK
603 SLA CUTTER B REMOVAL
603 QUAD IV PLTFM REMOVAL
SLA CUTTER G REMOVAL
LM SHe TK INIT
525 Q
52
PLSS
WEDNESDAY 1-27-71
THURSDAY 1-28-71
79.5
77
73
69
66
66
61
57
53
48
1730
2000
2400
0400
0700
1200
1600
1900
2400
0400
0800
1300
1600
2000
2400
H
F
A
L
A
3:7.5
3:5
3:1
2:21
2:18
2:18
2:13
2:9
2:5
2:0
W/R RETRACT
OPEN PLTFM 1
IU MECH CKS
CRD PRELOAD
W/R EXTEND
REMOVE HYPERGOL COVERS
LV FLT BATT ACTIVATION
MCC/KSC OIS END TO
LUT EQUIP REMOV
PLTFM
HOLD 12 hours
HOLD 16 hours


INSTALL CM8, 17, ZBPC
CM10, 15 INSTL
ABLATOR PLUG INSTL
BPC INSTL
W/R RETRACT FOR BPC INSTALL
EMOVAL
LTFM REMOVAL
SLA CUTTER & REMOVAL
LO2 & LH2 DEWARS TO LC-39
PAD PRESS & SC TK MOIST
LH2 DEWAR TO 4A
LO2 DEWAR TO +12FT
INSTALL LH2 DEWAR
LH2 SYS LK CK & PURGE
FC GSE PWR UP
FC PRESS
FC HEAT
FC CAL
G&N ACTIVATION
LM SHe TK INITIAL FILL
525 QUAD IV CUTTER REMOVAL
525 QUAD IV PLTFM REMOVAL
PLSS COMM CK
REMOVE SLA PADS
LH2 LOAD PREPS
LH2 LOAD
LH2 DEWAR DUMP, LH2 SYS INERT
LH2 DEWAR REMOVAL
INSTALL LO2 DEWAR
LO2 DEWAR LK CK
LO2 LOAD
LH2 & LO2 SC VENT SAMPLE
SC TK PRESS
F/C & CRYO SYS INERT
CRYO GSE POWER DOWN
REMOVE LO2 DEWAR
CRYO GSE DISC
FAN CKS & FLIGHT CAP LK CKS
FLT HATCH INSTALL
RCS FINAL MANIFOLD LOADING
SHe PREPS
SHe TNK TOPOFF
SHe GSE SHUTDOWN & REMOVA
RESERVE MSS LOW RISE & 1 HI
LM SHe TS
ATTITUDE
SV EDS TEST
START RADI
ALSE
ALSEP
THURSDAY 1-28-71
FRIDAY 1-29-71
61
57
53
48
48
45
41
37
33
29
25
21
2400
0400
0800
1300
1600
2000
2400
0500
0800
1200
1600
2000
2400
0400
0800
OFFICIAL COUNTDOWN START
A
L
A
B
A
K
A
H
A
B
2:13
2:9
2:5
2:0
2:0
1:21
1:17
1:13
1:9
1:5
1:1
MCC/KSC OIS END TO END CKS
LUT EQUIP REMOVAL & HOUSEKEEPING
CIF ANTENNA CAL
PLTFM 2 BELOW STA 2900
RELOAD
W/R EXTEND
HYPERGOL COVERS
LV FLT BATT ACTIVATION
HOLD
16 hours
INSTALL & CONN IU FLT BATT
INSTALL & CONN S-IVB FLT BATT
INSTALL & CONN S-II FLT BATT
INSTALL & CONN S-IC FLT BATT
REMOVE S-II AFT ACCESS KIT
LV PWR UP THROUGH LIFTOFF
LH2 & LOX SYS PREPS
RF CKS
HDA PREPS
PWR TRANSFER TEST
REMOVE S-IVB AFT ACCESS KIT
TSM FINAL PREPS & PRESS
OPEN PLATFOR


CRITICAL
APOLLO 14
UNOFFICIAL SCHEDULING EXERCISE
JANUARY 19, 1971
HOLD 9 hours 23min
HOLD 1 hour
INERT
OWER DOWN
REMOVE LO2 DEWAR
CRYO GSE DISC
CKS & FLIGHT CAP LK CKS
FLT HATCH INSTALL
RCS FINAL MANIFOLD LOADING
SHe PREPS
SHe TNK TOPOFF
SHe GSE SHUTDOWN & REMOVAL
RESERVE MSS LOW RISE & 1 HIGH RISE ELEV
LM SHe TSI
ATTITUDE CMD CKS
SV EDS TEST
START RADIATION CONTROL
ALSEP GSE INSTALL
ALSEP FCA TRANSPORT
INSTALL FCA
BAND TENSIONING
REMOVE ALSEP GSE
OPEN PLATFORM 4
OPEN PLATFORM 5
CREW STORAGE
REMOVE SA 8 ECS "Y"
A/G VOICE CKS
CABIN PREPS
PRE-INGRESS OPNS
525 QUAD III & II PLTFM REMOVAL
C/O CREW DEPART W/R
CLOSE HATCH & BPC
C/O CREW TO CM
OPEN HATCH
FLT CREW INGRESS
CABIN CLOSEOUT
MCC/CSM CMD CKS
AAS CKS
CLOSE HATCH
SV EDS TEST
CLOSE BPC & SECURE W/R
C/O CREW CLEAR PAD
PARK SA-9 (12°)
LES ARMED
SA-9 FULLY RETRACTED
ASTRO LAUNCH COMM CKS
FULL INTERNAL POWER CSM/LM
SATURDAY 1-30-71
SUNDAY 1-31-71
DATE
33
29
25
21
17
13
9
9
6
3.5
3.5
2
0
T-HOURS
2000
2400
0400
0800
1200
1600
2000
2400
0400
0523
0823
1053
1153
1523
EST
LIFTOFF
OFFICIAL COUNTDOWN START
A H A B A O N N C N D N N E N J
PAD CONTROL
1:9
1:5
1:1
0:17
0:13
0:9
0:9
0:6
0:3.5
0:3.5
0:0
T- DAYS:HRS
& CONN IU FLT BATT
ONN S-IVB FLT BATT
ONN S-II FLT BATT
& CONN S-IC FLT BATT
EMOVE S-II AFT ACCESS KIT
LV PWR UP THROUGH LIFTOFF
LH2 & LOX SYS PREPS
RF CKS
HDA PREPS
PWR TRANSFER TEST
REMOVE S-IVB AFT ACCESS KIT
TSM FINAL PREPS & PRESS
OPEN PLATFORM 2
REMOVE S-II FWD ACCESS KIT & BLKD PADS
SA PRESS
RSCR CKS
LOX & LH2 COMP TEST
S/A 8 LADDER REMOVAL
RS CMD CKS
LOX COMP TEST
RP-1 REPLENISH
RP-1 LINE DRAIN
OPEN PLATFORM 3
CONNECT PD DETS
AUX DAMPER DISC
TSM 3-4 TILT
JACK MSS & MOVE TO PARKSITE
SECURE IU DOOR
PRIMARY DAMPER CONN
PRESS ML
S-IVB LOX FILL
S-II LOX FILL
S-IC LOX FILL
S-II LH2 FILL
S-IVB LH2 FILL
DRSCR TEST
PROPELLANT REPLENISH
Q-BALL PWR ON
LOX/LH2 SYS FINAL PREPS
DISCONNECT PRIMARY DAMPER
RF & TM CKS
RP-1 LEVEL ADJUST
DRSCR TEST
PWR TRANSFER TEST
TCS
SV
LV
LM
CSM
PAD APRON, OR GREATER CLEARING

PAD CONTROLLED AREAS LEGEND

A-LIMITED ACCESS
B-DESCENT AREA INTERNAL TO SLA, IU & S-IVB FWD
C-ML ZERO LEVEL EXCEPT PATH TO ELEVATOR
D-SV INTERIOR EXCEPT FOR THE CSM & S-IC BOATTAIL
E-BLAST DANGER AREA
F-TO PERIMETER FENCE
G-TEN FT RADIUS OF PURGE ADAPTER ON MSS LEVEL 3A
H-SLA INTERIOR, IU & S-IVB FWD
I-PAD APRON, FLAME TRENCH, MSS & ML EXCEPT RMS 10 & 15A
J-LAUNCH DANGER AREA
K-1100 FT RADIUS AROUND SV EXCEPT ML ROOMS 10 & 15A
L-LOCAL AROUND DEWARS
M-CM INTERIOR
N-RADIATION CONTROL-MSS LEVEL 3A, SLA INTERIOR, S-IVB FWD & 10' R DURING TRANSPORT
O-SERVICE ARMS

Page intentionally left blank

SOURCE NOTES

Chapter 1: The First Steps

1. Army Ballistic Missile Agency (hereafter ABMA), *Juno V Space Vehicle Development Program (Phase I), Booster Feasibility Demonstration*, by H. H. Koelle et al., report DSP-TM-10-58 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Oct. 1958), p. 1; Oswald Lange, "Development of the Saturn Space Vehicle," in *From Peenemünde to Outer Space*, ed. Ernst Stuhlinger et al. (Huntsville, AL: Marshall Space Flight Center, 1962), p. 6. Probably the best source for an understanding of the complex developments of the American space program during the late 1950s is *The History of Rocket Technology*, ed. Eugene Emme (Detroit: Wayne State Press, 1964). Maj. Gen. John B. Medaris gives an interesting, albeit one-sided, account of ABMA's activities during this period in *Countdown for Decision* (New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1960).
2. R. Cargill Hall, *Project Ranger: A Chronology* (Pasadena: Jet Propulsion Laboratory, California Institute of Technology, 1971), pp. 48-52; ABMA, *Juno V Development*, pp. 1-2.
3. ABMA, *Juno V Development*, pp. 1-2; Lange, "Saturn Space Vehicle," p. 6; Medaris, *Countdown*, pp. 151-241, passim.
4. Memo of agreement, Advanced Research Projects Agency and Army Ordnance Missile Command, "High Thrust Booster Program Using Clustered Engines," 23 Sept. 1958, printed in ABMA, *Juno V Development*, Appendix A; NASA, *Historical Pocket Statistics*, July 1972 (Washington, 1972), p. E-4. The tenfold increase in the cost of the Saturn I program can be explained in large part by the changing purposes of the program. Initially the Defense Department viewed it as a four-vehicle test series relying extensively on available engines, fuel tanks, and tooling machinery. The program evolved into something quite different, requiring much unanticipated construction for launch vehicles and facilities. Warren G. Hunter, ARPA Coordinator, SSEL, to Hans Hueter, Dir., SSEL, "Juno V (Saturn) Program," 3 Oct. 1958. Unless specified otherwise, manuscript sources are in KSC Archives.
5. ABMA, *Juno V Development*, pp. 7-11, 19-20, 25-27, 47-51; ABMA, *Juno V Transportation Feasibility Study*, by J. S. Hamilton, J. L. Fuller, and P. F. Keyes, report DLMT-TM-58-58 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 5 Jan. 1959), pp. 1-4; ABMA, *Juno V Space Vehicle Development Program* (Status Report—15 Nov. 1958), by H. H. Koelle et al., report DSP-TM-11-58 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 15 Nov. 1958), pp. 2-3, 19-20.
6. NASA Special Committee on Space Technology, *Recommendations Regarding a National Civil Space Program* (Stever Committee Report), Washington, 28 Oct. 1958; ABMA, *Juno V Development*, pp. 19-20, 65; Army Ordnance Missile Command (hereafter cited as AOMC), *Saturn Systems Study*, by H. H. Koelle, F. L. Williams, and W. C. Huber, report DSP-TM-1-59 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Mar. 1959), pp. 16-19, 61-63, 183-89; House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Equatorial Launch Sites—Mobile Sea Launch Capability*, report 710, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 12 July 1961, pp. 1-5 (see hearings of same committee and topic, 15-16 May 1961, for fuller discussion); Mrazek interview. The debate over the merits of an equatorial launch site or a mobile sea launch capability continued for several years with congressional hearings in the spring of 1961. Vice Adm. John T. Hayward was a leading advocate of shipboard launches.
7. Missile Firing Laboratory, "Project Saturn, Facilities for Launch Site," n.d.

8. "Champagne Flight," *Spaceport News* 2 (18 July 1963): 3. For other details of this first attempt, see L. B. Taylor, *Liftoff: The Story of America's Spaceport* (New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., 1968), pp. 42-44.
9. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Management and Operation of the Atlantic Missile Range*, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 5 July 1960, pp. 1-2.
10. Zeiler interview, 24 Aug. 1972.
11. H. H. Koelle, ed., *Handbook of Astronautical Engineering* (New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1961), pp. 28-8 through 28-10.
12. Deese interview, 16 Mar. 1973.
13. E. R. Bramlitt, *History of Canaveral District, 1950-1971* (So. Atlantic Dist. U.S. Corps of Engineers, 1971), pp. 17-21.
14. AOMC, *Saturn System Study*, pp. 4-5, 21; AOMC, *Saturn System Study II*, report DSP-TM-13-59 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Nov. 1959), pp. 1-2.
15. Dept. of the Army, *Project Horizon, A U.S. Army Study for the Establishment of a Lunar Military Outpost*, I, *Summary* (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 8 June 1959).
16. Minutes, NASA Research Steering Committee on Manned Space Flight (the Goett Committee), 25-26 May 1959, pp. 2-10, NASA Hq. History Office. The authors wish to thank historian Thomas Ray of NASA Hq. for assistance on this subject.
17. NASA Hq. working draft, "Long Range Objectives," 1 June 1959, NASA Hq. History Office.
18. Medaris, *Countdown*, pp. 241-47; Eugene Emme, "Historical Perspectives on Apollo," NASA Historical Note 75 (Oct. 1967), pp. 14-17.
19. Medaris, *Countdown*, pp. 247-69.
20. Emme, "Historical Perspectives," p. 17.
21. Medaris, *Countdown*, pp. 262-66; ABMA, *Saturn System Study II*, pp. 1-2.
22. AOMC, *Saturn System Study II*, pp. 5-10; *Report to the Administrator, NASA, on Saturn Development Plan by Saturn Vehicle Team*, 15 Dec. 1959, p. 1.
23. *Report on Saturn*, pp. 4, 7, 8, and table III.
24. Emme, "Historical Perspectives," p. 18; Robert L. Rosholt, *An Administrative History of NASA, 1958-1963*, NASA SP-4101 (Washington, 1966), p. 114.

Chapter 2: Launch Complex 34

1. Chief, MFL, to Chief, Ops. Off., Guided Missile Development Div. (GMDD), "Manning Charts," 5 Jan. 1953; Chief, MFL, to Dep. Chief, GMDD, "Official List of Operations Personnel for Missile #1"; Launch Operations Directorate (hereafter cited as LOD), "Special Report on Support Operations at the AMR by LOD," 21 Dec. 1960, part 5.
2. ABMA, *Juno V Development*, p. 47; Georg von Tiesenhausen, "Saturn Ground Support and Operations," *Astronautics* 5 (Dec. 1960): 30.
3. Debus to C.O., Atlantic Missile Range (hereafter cited as AMR), "Juno V Program," 1 Oct. 1958; Robert F. Heiser, Technical Asst., Off. of the Dir., MFL, memo for record, "Juno V," 26 Sept. 1958.
4. Deese to Debus, priority TWX, "Feasibility Study and/or Criteria for a Launch Site at AMR for a Clustered First Stage of Juno V Project," 8 Oct. 1958; Koelle, ed., *Handbook of Astronautical Engineering*, pp. 28-1 to 28-10; MFL, *Juno V (Saturn) Heavy Missile Launch Facility, 1st Phase Request, 2d Phase Estimate*, by R. P. Dodd and J. H. Deese, 14 Feb. 1959, pp. 2-3.
5. Deese to Debus, "Feasibility Study for a Launch Site"; Warren G. Hunter, ARPA Coordinator, SSEL, memo, "Meeting at MFL, CCMTA on Juno V Launch Complex," 10 Nov. 1958; Pan American Aviation, "Juno V Program Siting Study," 24 Oct. 1958, pp. 1-3.

6. Glen W. Stover, Chief, Facilities Br., AMR, Army Field Off., memo for record, "Criteria Contract, Juno V Facilities," 10 Nov. 1958; Maurice H. Connell and Assoc., *Heavy Missile Launch Facility Criteria* (Miami, FL, 15 Mar. 1959).
7. ABMA, *Juno V Development*, p. 55; LOD, "Complex 34 Safety Plan for SA-1 Launch," 24 Oct. 1961, p. 2; Porcher interview.
8. MFL, *Juno V (Saturn) Facility*; Connell and Assoc., *Launch Facility Criteria*; Sparkman interview, 13 June 1974. For detailed descriptions of the Saturn C-1 Launch Complex with its ground support equipment, see Marshall Space Flight Center (hereafter cited as MSFC), *Saturn SA-1 Vehicle Data Book*, report MTP-M-S&M-E-61-3 (Huntsville, AL, 26 June 1961), pp. 133–65, and MSFC, *Project Saturn C-1, C-2 Comparison*, report M-MS-G-113-60 (Huntsville, AL, 16 Nov. 1960), pp. 33–47, 123–290.
9. Davis interview; Walter interview, 21 Sept. 1973.
10. Von Tiesenhausen interview, 20 July 1973; Buchanan interview, 22 Sept. 1972.
11. Davis interview; Koelle, ed., *Handbook of Astronautical Engineering*, p. 28-44.
12. MSFC, *C-1, C-2 Comparison*, pp. 167–83; Wasileski interview, 14 Dec. 1972.
13. Zeiler interview, 24 Aug. 1972; Connell and Assoc., *Launch Facility Criteria*, p. 2-9.
14. Zeiler, Chief of Mechanical Br., MFL, to Debus, "Servicing Equipment for Juno V on Launch Site," 24 Nov. 1958.
15. Connell and Assoc., *Heavy Missile Service Structure Criteria*; Army Engineer Dist., Jacksonville Corps of Engineers, "Minutes of Conference on Review of Criteria for Saturn Facilities," 7 Apr. 1959.
16. Robert E. Linstrom, DOD Saturn Project Engineer, memo for record, "Summary of Fifth Saturn Meeting," 1 Apr. 1959; Debus's Daily Journal (hereafter cited as DDJ), 13 Apr. 1959, KSC Director's Office; Debus, memo for record, "Meeting on Saturn Service Structure," 9 Apr. 1959.
17. Debus, memo for record, "Meeting on Saturn Service Structure," 9 Apr. 1959; Connell and Assoc., *Alternate "I" Heavy Missile Service Structure*, 24 Apr. 1959, R. P. Dodd's personal papers.
18. MSFC, *SA-1 Data Book*, pp. 131–33.
19. DDJ, 13 Apr., 22 June, 11 July 1959; "Corps of Engineers Contract Tabulations for LC-34, LC-37, and MILA Facilities," p. 3.
20. "Vibroflotation," Vibroflotation Foundation Co., Div. of Litton Industries, Pittsburgh, PA, undated pamphlet.
21. J. P. Claybourne to Robert Heiser, priority TWX, "Saturn Launch Facility Costs," 7 Sept. 1960.
22. J. P. Claybourne, memo for record, "Cost of Saturn Launch Facilities and Ground Support Equipment," 13 Sept. 1960.
23. C. C. Parker, Technical Program Dir., memo for record, "Saturn Launch Facilities at AMR," 3 Dec. 1959; Connell and Assoc., *Siting Study and Recommendation, Saturn Staging Building and Service Structure, Complex 34 AFMTC*, Jan. 1960, pp. 2–3; MSFC, *C-1, C-2 Comparison*, p. 35; Debus to Rees, "Additional Saturn Launch Complex," 29 Jan. 1960; ABMA, *A Committee Study of Blast Potentials at the Saturn Launch Site*, by Charles J. Hall, report DHM-TM-9-60 (Redstone Arsenal, AL, Feb. 1960).
24. MSFC, *C-1, C-2 Comparison*, pp. 100–102; Poppel interview, 12 Feb. 1973.
25. MSFC, *C-1, C-2 Comparison*, pp. 123–63, 206–20, 244–67; Poppel, memo, "Launch Equipment Installation at Complex 34, AMR," 27 May 1960; Sparkman interview, 15 Dec. 1972; Wasileski interview, 14 Dec. 1972.
26. Davis interview, 2 Feb. 1972; Poppel, memo for record, "Contract NAS8-46 Extension," 29 Dec. 1960; Poppel to Petrone, "Documentation of Major Facility and/or GSE Changes for Project Saturn," 23 Feb. 1961, p. 5.
27. C. C. Parker, Chief, Ops. Off., MSFC, "Saturn FY-61 LOD Budget," 29 July 1960, encl. 3.
28. Debus, memo, "Priority of Effort on Saturn Launch Facilities," 8 July 1960.

29. R. P. Dodd to C. C. Parker, 8 Aug. 1960.
30. Debus to Wernher von Braun, "Labor Situation," 21 Sept. 1960.
31. George V. Hanna, "Chronology of Work Stoppages and Related Events, KSC/NASA and AFETR through July 1965," KSC historical report (KSC, FL, Oct. 1965), pp. 26–27.
32. Ibid., pp. 30–35; DDJ, 15 and 28 Nov., 5 and 22 Dec. 1960.

Chapter 3: Launching the First Saturn I Booster

1. W. R. McMurran, ed., "The Evolution of Electronic Tracking, Optical, Telemetry, and Command Systems at the Kennedy Space Center," mimeographed paper (KSC, 17 Apr. 1973), fig. 2; MSFC, *Saturn SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, report MPR-SAT-WF-61-8 (Huntsville, AL, 14 Dec. 1961), p. 235. The Saturn Flight Evaluation Working Group at MSFC published reports on all the Saturn C-1 launches. See also MSFC, *Results of the First Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-1*, report MPR-SAT-64-14 (Huntsville, AL, 27 Apr. 1964) which superseded the above report, and MSFC, *Results of the Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flights*, report MPR-SAT-FE-66-9 (Huntsville, AL, 9 Dec. 1966).
2. MSFC, *C-1, C-2 Comparison*, pp. 3–7. See pp. 68, 78–82 for Long-Range Program (Sloop Committee Report) of Sept. 1960.
3. Oswald H. Lange, "Saturn Program Review," 27 Jan. 1961; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, pp. 13, 19.
4. F. A. Speer, "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation," American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics paper 64-322 given at Washington, D.C., 29 June–2 July 1964, p. 2; ARINC Research Corp., *Reliability Study of Saturn SA-3 Pre-Launch Operations*, by Arthur W. Green et al., publication 247-1-399 (Washington, 3 Jan. 1963), pp. 2-21 through 2-23.
5. ABMA, *Organizational Manual* (Redstone Arsenal, AL, 5 Mar. 1959), Sec. 530, pp. 13–15, copy available in Historical Div., Sec. of General Staff, Army Missile Div., Redstone Arsenal, AL; Russell interview.
6. Moser interview, 30 Mar. 1973.
7. Grady Williams interview.
8. Debus to Joseph Shea, "Principles of Operations of the MSFC Firing Team at Cape Canaveral," 22 Mar. 1962, Debus papers, KSC Archives.
9. Ibid.
10. Ibid.
11. Debus to Committee for LOD Scheduling and Test Procedures, "Day-by-Day Test Schedule for Saturn SA-1," 16 Mar. 1961, ibid.; DDJ, 14 Mar. 1961.
12. Moser interview, 30 Mar. 1973; DDJ, 17 Apr. 1961.
13. MSFC, *Catalog of Systems Tests for Saturn S-1 Stage*, pp. III-46–III-54 (Huntsville, AL, 1 Sept. 1961), Moser papers, Federal Archives and Records Center, East Point, GA, accession 68A1230, boxes 436257, 436259.
14. "Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office [hereafter cited as LFSEO] Monthly Progress Report," 12 June 1961, p. 2; "LFSEO Monthly Progress Report," 13 July 1961, pp. 2–3.
15. DDJ, 11, 12 May 1961; "LFSEO Monthly Progress Report," 12 June 1961, p. 3.
16. Zeiler to Debus, "Work Statement," 14 July 1961.
17. "Saturn SA-1 Schedule," 15 Aug. 1961, Moser papers, Federal Archives and Records Center, East Point, GA, accession 68A1230, boxes 436257, 436259.
18. DDJ, 24 Mar., 26 Apr. 1961; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, p. 18; Georg von Tiesenhausen, "Ground Equipment to Support the Saturn Vehicle," paper 1425-60 presented at the 15th annual meeting of the American Rocket Society, Washington, D.C., 5–8 Dec. 1960, pp. 2–3.

19. "LFSEO Monthly Progress Report," 13 July 1961, p. 4; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, pp. 21, 26–27.
20. MSFC, *SA-1 Vehicle Data Book*, pp. 123–30.
21. Karl L. Heimburg to MSFC Dep. Dir. for R & D, "Water Route for NASA Vessels to Cape Canaveral," 9 Feb. 1962, attached to a response from Debus, 14 Feb. 1962, in Debus papers.
22. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, p. 7; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, p. 26; Crunk interview; Zeiler interview, 23 July 1973; von Tiesenhausen, "Equipment to Support the Saturn," pp. 2–3.
23. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, p. 7; "LOD Daily Journal," 27 July 1961; "Saturn SA-1 Schedule," 15 Aug. 1961.
24. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, p. 8; MSFC, "Saturn Quarterly Progress Report," July–Sept. 1961, p. 1; "Saturn Schedule," 15 Aug. 1961; interviews with Newall, Marsh, and Humphrey.
25. Grady Williams interview.
26. MSFC, *SA-1 Vehicle Data Book*, pp. 74–81.
27. Interviews with Edwards and Glaser.
28. White interview; MSFC, *Consolidated Instrumentation Plan for Saturn Vehicle SA-1*, by Ralph T. Gwinn and Kenneth J. Dean, report MTP-LOD-61-36.2a (Huntsville, AL, 25 Oct. 1961).
29. White interview.
30. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, p. 7.
31. Moser interview, 30 Mar. 1973.
32. Ibid.; "Saturn SA-1 Schedule," 15 Aug. 1961; MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, pp. 8, 200–202.
33. Moser interview, 30 Mar. 1973; "Saturn SA-1 Schedule"; MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, pp. 7–9; LOD, "Saturn Test Procedures, SA-1 G & C Overall Test #3," Moser papers, Federal Archives and Records Center, East Point, GA, accession 68A1230, boxes 436257, 436259.
34. Moser interview, 30 Mar. 1973; "Saturn SA-1 Schedule"; MSFC, "SA-1 Flight Evaluation," pp. 8–9; George Alexander, "Telemetry Data Confirms Saturn Success," *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 6 Nov. 1961, pp. 30–32.
35. "Saturn Test Procedures: SA-1 Mechanical Office L – 1 Day Prelaunch Preparations," Moser papers; MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, pp. 9–10; interview with Chester Wasileski by Benson, 14 Dec. 1972; Pantoliano interview.
36. MSFC, *Launch Countdown Saturn Vehicle SA-1*, report MIP-LOD-61-35-2 (Huntsville, AL, 3 Oct. 1961), pp. 9–15, Moser papers.
37. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, p. 10; MSFC, *Countdown SA-1*.
38. MSFC, *Countdown SA-1*, pp. 20–23.
39. MSFC, *SA-1 Flight Evaluation*, pp. 11–12; MSFC, *Countdown SA-1*, pp. 28–30; LOD, *Saturn Test Procedures: Set Up LO_2 Facility for Fast Fill (T – 100)*, procedure LOD-M-703; LOD, *Saturn Test Procedures: Fast Fill LO_2 Loading (T – 60)*, procedure LOD-M-704.
40. MSFC, *Countdown SA-1*, pp. 36–39; Alexander, "Telemetry Confirms Success," p. 31; "Emergency Procedures SA-1," LOD Networks Group, pp. 2–3, Moser papers.
41. Richard Austin Smith, "Canaveral, Industry's Trial by Fire," *Fortune*, June 1962, pp. 204, 206; "Saturnalia at Canaveral," *Newsweek*, 6 Nov. 1961, p. 64; *Miami Herald*, 28 Oct. 1961, p. 1; "Saturn's Success," *Time*, 3 Nov. 1961, p. 15.
42. *New York Times*, 28 Oct. 1961, pp. 1, 9; *Miami Herald*, 28 Oct. 1961, p. 1. The MSFC news release on the SA-1 launch, dated 1 Nov. 1961, included a paragraph on the sound effect.
43. *Miami Herald*, 28 Oct. 1961, p. 1 (UPI release).
44. *New York Times*, 27 Oct. 1961, p. 1; 28 Oct. 1961, pp. 1, 9.

Chapter 4: Origins of the Mobile Moonport

1. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Report on Cape Canaveral Inspection*, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 27 June 1960, p. 1.
2. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Management and Operation of the Atlantic Missile Range*, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 5 July 1960, p. 4.
3. Francis L. Williams interview.
4. David S. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology* (MSFC, Jan. 1971), pp. 7-8; J. P. Claybourne, Saturn Project Office, memo, "Saturn C-2 Configurations," 6 July 1960; NASA, "A Plan for Manned Lunar Landing" (Low Committee report), 7 Feb. 1961, pp. 7-13, figs. 4, 7, NASA Hq. History Office.
5. Interview with Debus by Benson, 16 May 1972; H. H. Koelle, "Missiles and Space Systems," *Astronautics* 7 (Nov. 1962): 29-37.
6. Claybourne, "Saturn C-2 Configurations," 6 July 1960.
7. DDJ, 24 Apr. 1961.
8. Livingston Wever, Support Instrumentation Div., to Porcher, Facilities Br., Army Test Off., AFMTC, "Addendum to Scheme for Offshore Launching Platform for Space Vehicles," Mar. 1960; Wyle Laboratories, *Sonic and Vibration Environments for Ground Facilities—A Design Manual*, by L. C. Sutherland, report WR68-2, 1968, pp. 5-21, 10-2.
9. Nelson M. Parry, Army Test Off., AFMTC, "Land Developments for Missile Range Installations (Preliminary Notes)," 30 Dec. 1958, p. 3; Nelson Parry to Porcher, "Offshore Launch Platform for Heavy Space Vehicles," 6 Apr. 1960.
10. Porcher interview.
11. Von Tiesenhausen interview, 29 Mar. 1972; Sparks interview; von Tiesenhausen, "Vorversuche für Project Schwimmiweste," Electromechanische Werke Peenemünde, 11 Sept. 1944, typescript, von Tiesenhausen's private papers.
12. Poppel to Debus, "Offshore Complex," 6 May 1960.
13. MSFC, *Preliminary Feasibility Study on Offshore Launch Facilities for Space Vehicles*, by O. L. Sparks, report IN-LOD-DL-1-60 interim (Huntsville, AL, 29 July 1960).
14. DDJ, 28 Feb., 2 Mar. 1961.
15. Debus to Col. Asa Gibbs, Chief, NASA Test Support Off., AFMTC, "Future Saturn Launch Sites at Cape Canaveral (SR 2953)," 14 Feb. 1961.
16. Parry to Charles J. Hall, "Future Launch Sites at Cape Canaveral," 9 Mar. 1961.
17. Debus to Gibbs, "Siting for Third Saturn Launch Complex at AMR (SR 2953)," n.d.; Debus to Gibbs, "Siting of Fourth and Fifth Saturn Launch Complexes at AMR," 6 Apr. 1961. The siting requests were canceled 22 Sept. 1961, after the MILA purchase had changed the situation.
18. Future Launch Systems Study Off., LOD, "Progress Report," Jan. 1961; DDJ, 6 Feb. 1961.
19. Debus to Poppel, "Offshore Launch Facility Study," 4 Apr. 1961.
20. Nelson M. Parry, "Land Development (Offshore and Semi-Offshore Launch Sites)," 14 Apr. 1961; Deese interview, 10 May 1972; DDJ, 12 May 1961.
21. Petrone interview.
22. Joint Air Force-NASA Hazards Analysis Board, AFMTC, *Safety and Design Considerations for Static Test and Launch of Large Space Vehicles*, 1 June 1961, p. I-B-1.
23. Debus to von Braun, "Offshore Facilities Studies," 24 May 1961.
24. "Death on Old Shaky," *Time*, 27 Jan. 1961, pp. 15-16; von Tiesenhausen interview, 29 Mar. 1972; Debus interview, 16 May 1972.
25. Zeiler interview, 11 Aug. 1970.
26. Memo for record, "Phoenix Study Program," 3 July 1961, p. 2; Aerospace Corp. News Release, "Titan III Management and Technology to Be Model for Future Systems" (Los Angeles, June 1965), p. 2.

27. KSC Public Affairs Office, *Kennedy Space Center Story* (Kennedy Space Center, FL, Dec. 1972), p. 5. No document is cited for the statement that the three men met 16 days after JFK's inaugural. This would place the meeting on Sunday, 5 Feb. The Daily Journal for 6 Feb. mentions a Saturday meeting of the three men.
28. Duren interview, 16 May 1972.
29. DDJ, 22, 30, 31 Mar., 10 Apr. 1961.
30. MSFC, *Interim Report on Future Saturn Launch Facility Study*, by Olin K. Duren, report MIN-LOD-DL-1-61 (Huntsville, AL, 10 May 1961).
31. DDJ, 17, 20, 26 Apr. 1961.
32. Douglas Aircraft Co., *Saturn C-2 Operational Requirement Study*, prepared by J. Simmons, report SM-38771 (Santa Monica, CA, July 1961), p. 188.
33. Ibid., pp. 171-205; The Martin Co., *Saturn C-2 Operational Modes Study, Summary Report*, report ER-11816 (Baltimore, MD, June 1961), pp. 19-25, 46-47, 66-68.
34. John M. Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation of the Lunar Landing Decision," NASA HHN-81, Aug. 1969, typescript, pp. 1-6; Lunar Landing Working Group (Low Committee), "A Plan for Manned Lunar Landing," 7 Feb. 1961.
35. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Hearings, 1962 NASA Authorization*, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 23 Mar. 1961, pt. 1, p. 177.
36. Ibid.; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, p. 4.
37. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, pp. 17, 19, 22; Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation," p. 6; House, *1962 NASA Authorization*, pp. 170-77.
38. DDJ; Debus to von Braun, "Offshore Launch Facilities," 24 May 1961; MSFC, Future Projects Off., "Procurement Request," 26 Apr. 1961.
39. Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation," pp. 8-18.
40. DDJ, 6, 26 June 1961. The Fleming Master Flight Plan called for 167 flights prior to the first lunar landing, but this included launchings of Atlas, Agena, Centaur, Saturn C-1, Saturn C-3, and Nova rockets. Fourteen C-1s and 24 C-3s were to be launched in 1965-1966.
41. DDJ, 6, 20 June 1961.
42. NASA, *A Feasible Approach for an Early Manned Lunar Landing* (Fleming Committee Report), 16 June 1961, p. 26.
43. Robert C. Seamans, Jr., to Maj. Gen. Leighton I. Davis and Debus, "National Space Program Range Facilities and Resources Planning," 23 June 1961.
44. Seamans to Davis and Debus, "National Space Program Range Facilities and Resources Planning," 30 June 1961.
45. MSFC, LFSEO, *Preliminary Concepts of Launch Facilities for Manned Lunar Landing Program*, report MIN-LOD-DL-3-61, 1 Aug. 1961, pp. 4-6.
46. NASA-DOD, *Joint Report on Facilities and Resources Required at Launch Site to Support NASA Manned Lunar Landing Program* (hereafter cited as Debus-Davis Report), 31 July 1961, p. 3; Owens interview, 12 Apr. 1972; Petrone interview, 25 May 1972; Clark interview.
47. Petrone interview; Clark interview.
48. Petrone and Leonard Shapiro, "Guideline for Preparation of NASA Manned Lunar Landing Project Report," 7 July 1961; KSC Biographies, in KSC Archives.
49. Debus-Davis Report, passim; Owens interview, 12 Apr. 1972.
50. MSFC, *Interim Report on Future Saturn Launch*, p. 16.
51. Zeiler interview, 11 July 1972; von Tiesenhausen interview, 29 Mar. 1972.
52. Debus-Davis Report, pp. B-1 through B-7.
53. Ibid., pp. B-9, B-10.
54. The authors are indebted to Rocco Petrone for this idea: interview of 25 May 1972 and remarks delivered by Petrone to Apollo History Workshop, NASA Hq., 19-21 May 1971.

Chapter 5: Acquiring a Launch Site

1. DDJ, 26 Apr. 1961.
2. Joint Air Force-NASA Hazards Analysis Bd., *Safety and Design Considerations for Static Test and Launch of Large Space Vehicles*, 1 June 1961, part I, "Hazards Analysis," p. I-A-1.
3. Ibid., part I, pp. I-D-3, I-B-1, and I-B-2.
4. AFMTC, NASA, & Pan American, *Preliminary Field Report, Cumberland Island & Vicinity for Nova Launch Facilities*, 13-14 June 1961, pp. 22-23; Hal Taylor, "Big Moon Booster Decisions Looming," *Missiles and Rockets*, 28 Aug. 1961, p. 14.
5. Charles J. Hall to R. P. Dodd, "Land Development for Future Launch Sites," 12 May 1961.
6. Debus, memo for the record, "Land Acquisition Book II," 11 June 1961.
7. NASA, *A Feasible Approach for an Early Manned Lunar Landing* (the Fleming Report), 16 June 1961.
8. Roswell Gilpatric to the Secretaries of the Army, Navy, and Air Force, "National Space Program Facilities Planning," 16 June 1961.
9. *Air Force Systems Command News Review*, Mar. 1963.
10. Debus-Davis Report, reference b.
11. Petrone and Shapiro, memorandum of understanding, "Guideline for Preparation of NASA Manned Lunar Landing Project Report," 7 July 1961.
12. Gibbs interview.
13. Debus-Davis Report, pp. 19, 20.
14. Ibid., p. 20.
15. Ibid.
16. Ibid., pp. D-70, D-71.
17. Ibid., pp. D-19, D-20.
18. Gordon E. Dunn and Banner I. Miller, *Atlantic Hurricanes*, rev. ed. (Baton Rouge: LSU Press, 1960), pp. 266-67.
19. Bramlitt, *History of the Canaveral District*, p. 34.
20. Debus interview, 22 Aug. 1969; Owens interview, 12 Apr. 1972.
21. Debus interview, 16 May 1972.
22. DDJ, 27 July 1961.
23. *Washington Post*, 3 Aug. 1961.
24. Milton Rosen to Hugh Dryden and James Webb, "Selection of a Launch Site for the Manned Lunar Program," attached to a letter from Dryden to Webb, same subj., 18 Aug. 1961.
25. Hugh L. Dryden to Webb, "Selection of a Launch Site for the Manned Lunar Program," 18 Aug. 1961.
26. NASA release 61-189, "Manned Lunar Launch Site Selected," 24 Aug. 1961.
27. Interview with Gibbs by James Covington, 7 Aug. 1969.
28. Petrone interview.
29. "Agreement between DOD and NASA Relating to the Launch Site for the Manned Lunar Landing Program," signed by James Webb and Roswell Gilpatric, 24 Aug. 1961.
30. Ibid., p. 2.
31. NASA-LOD proposal, "Integrated Master Planning, Atlantic Missile and Space Operations Range," 22 Nov. 1961; Minutes of the meeting prepared by Raymond L. Clark, Asst. to the Director.
32. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, *Hearings, 1963 NASA Authorization*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., pt. 2, pp. 643-55.
33. Lloyd L. Behrendt, comp., *Development and Operation of the Atlantic Missile Range* (Patrick A.F.B., FL, 1963), pp. 63-64, Air Force Eastern Test Range Archives.

34. "Background Information on Agreement between DOD and NASA re: Management of the AMR of DOD and the Merritt Island Launch Area of NASA," prepared by Paul T. Cooper, Brig. Gen., USAF, Mar. 1963, p. 4.
35. Behrendt, *Development of AMR*, pp. 66–67.
36. Debus interview, 22 Aug. 1969; reiterated in an interview 16 May 1972.
37. DDJ, 14 July 1961.
38. Senate, *Amending the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act for the Fiscal Year 1962*, report 863 to accompany Senate Bill 2481, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 1 Sept. 1961.
39. Seamans to Lt. Gen. W. K. Wilson, Chief, Corps of Engineers, U.S. Army, 21 Sept. 1961.
40. Senate Committee on Appropriations, 87th Cong., 1st sess., *Hearing, Second Supplemental Appropriation Bill for 1962*, p. 154; Arthur G. Procher, memo for record, "Land Acquisition for NASA Lunar Launch Facility," 26 Sept. 1961.
41. NASA Audit Div., "Review of Management Controls over Contract Modifications Executed by the Corps of Engineers, Launch Operations Center, Cocoa Beach, Florida," report Bu/LO-W 64-7, Washington, DC, 23 Sept. 1963, p. 3.
42. Real Estate Div., U.S. Army Engineer Dist., Jacksonville, FL, "Progress and Status, Real Estate Acquisition and Manned Lunar Landing Program Project," Cape Canaveral, FL, 6 June 1962.
43. Sollohub to Debus, 8 June 1962.
44. *Titusville Star-Advocate*, 17 Feb. 1962.
45. Morgan T. Nealy, Jr., Proj. Mgr., Real Estate Project Off., Titusville, FL, to LOC, 21 Mar. 1963.
46. Telephone interview with Faherty, 1 May 1972. The lady preferred to remain anonymous.
47. "List of Buildings Retained for Interim Use, NASA-Merritt Island Launch Area," in R. J. Pollock's files, KSC Maintenance Div.
48. AFMTC, "Cape Canaveral Missile Test Annex Development Plan," 12 Mar. 1962; AFMTC, "Status Report, NASA-Merritt Island Launch Area Development," Patrick A.F.B., 27 Sept. 1962; James Trainor, "Titan III Plan Awaits DOD Approval," *Missiles and Rockets*, 14 May 1962, p. 35.
49. Shriever to Seamans, 14 Mar. 1962.
50. NASA, "Management Council Meeting of 29 May 1962," corrections, dated 7 Mar. 1962.
51. Debus, memo for record, "Holmes-Shriever-Davis-Debus Meeting, Saturday, 17 Mar. 1962, on Titan III Siting," 19 Mar. 1962.
52. NASA, "Minutes of the Management Council Meeting of 27 Mar. 1962."
53. *Hearings, 1963 NASA Authorization*, pp. 634–35.
54. Ibid., pp. 641–55.
55. Ibid., p. 652.
56. Behrendt, *Development of AMR*, p. 69.
57. Davis to District Engineer, "Real Property Accountability for MLLP Area," in "Background Information and Agreement between DOD and NASA: Re: Management of the AMR of DOD and the Merritt Island Launch Area of NASA," Mar. 1963. Brig. Gen. Paul T. Cooper, USAF, stated that when the question of title arose between the Launch Operations Center and the AF Missile Test Center, the two staff elements agreed to bring the matter to the attention of higher levels by this letter of Gen. Davis. We have seen no NASA document suggesting that this letter arose from a mutual decision, although several NASA communications refer to Davis's letter (Debus to Holmes, 3 Apr. and 4 Apr. 1962; Webb to Gilpatric, 23 May 1962).
58. Petrone interview.
59. Seamans to Webb and Dryden, 13 Apr. 1962.
60. Webb to McNamara, 17 Apr. 1962.

61. *Missiles and Rockets*, 30 Apr. 1962, p. 75.
62. Bell to McNamara, 3 May 1962.
63. Jackson to McNamara, 21 May 1962. The 18 June 1962 issue of *Aviation Week and Space Technology* credited Rep. George Miller with a major role in securing NASA's autonomy on Merritt Island.
64. McNamara to Jackson, 24 May 1962.
65. Debus to Davis, 14 June 1962.
66. Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Appropriations, *Hearings on H.R. 12711*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., pp. 861–904.
67. P.L. 87-584, *NASA Authorization Act for 1963*, sec. 5.
68. Webb to Gilpatric, 14 Aug. 1962, with enclosure, "Relationships and Responsibilities of the DOD & NASA at the AMR and the Manned Lunar Landing Program Area."
69. Cmdr., AFMTC, to Sec. of Defense, 4 Jan. 1963.
70. "Agreement, the Department of Defense and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration regarding Management of the Atlantic Missile Range of DOD and the Merritt Island Launch Area of NASA," signed by Robert S. McNamara and James E. Webb, 17 Jan. 1963.
71. The interim agreement that implemented the Webb-McNamara Agreement was signed on 10 May 1963 by Davis and Debus. Addenda covered joint instrumentation planning procedures, calibration equipment and services, chemical analysis, security and law enforcement, facilities management, visitor control, and other topics. Under the terms of addendum 5, LC-34, LC-36, LC-37, the Saturn Barge Canal, and other facilities were transferred by AFMTC to NASA-LOC. The 11 separate agreements were understood to be consolidated into a single document. Debus, "AFMTC-LOC Agreements Implementing the Webb-McNamara Agreement of 17 January 1963," 5 June 1963.
72. John P. Lacy to Center Dir., "Status of KSC Land Acquisition," 7 Dec. 1967.
73. Policicchio interview.
74. "List of Buildings to Be Retained for AFMTC Use in the Expanded Cape Area," Col. Colie Houck, 29 June 1962, to Mr. Owens; Joseph Hester, memo for record, "Disposition of House Trailers, Area 1," 5 Mar. 1962.
75. Debus to Peterson, 5 Mar. 1962; Bidgood to Debus, "Real Estate Procurement Policy," 22 Dec. 1961.
76. Senate Committee on Appropriations, *Hearings on H. R. 11038*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 4 Apr. 1962, pp. 155–56; *Spaceport News* 2 (10 Oct. 1963): 8.
77. "Audit of Merritt Island Purchase," Office, Chief of Engineers, 16 Nov. 1971, in Corps of Engineers Files, per telephone conversation with Joseph Hester, 18 May 1972.
78. *Spaceport News* 11 (1 June 1972): 1, 4; O'Conner interview.
79. "Agreement between National Aeronautics and Space Administration and Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife for Use of Property at John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA," 2 June 1972, signed by Willis H. Shapley for NASA and Nathaniel P. Reed for the Dept. of Interior.

Chapter 6: LC-39 Plans Take Shape

1. Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation," p. 22; Ivan D. Ertel and Mary Louise Morse, *The Apollo Spacecraft, A Chronology*, vol. 1 (NASA SP-4009, 1969), pp. 95, 108–109.
2. Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation," p. 34.
3. Ibid., pp. 40–44; Shea interview; Rosen interview, 14 Nov. 1969; Ertel and Morse, *Apollo Chronology*, 1: 118–20, 134.
4. Ertel and Morse, *Apollo Chronology*, 1: 131–34; Akens, *Saturn Chronology*, pp. 33–35.
5. James Grimwood and Barton Hacker, with Peter Vorzimmer, *Project Gemini, A Chronology* (NASA SP-4002, 1969), pp. 2–20.

6. Ertel and Morse, *Apollo Chronology*, 1: 111.
7. Ibid., p. 101.
8. Ibid., pp. 101-104, 121, 128; NASA release 66-15, "Apollo Spacecraft Contract," 21 Jan. 1966.
9. Martin Marietta Corp., *Saturn C-3 Launch Facilities Study Final Report*, vol. 1, *Selection of Optimum Concept*, report ER 12125-1 (Baltimore, Dec. 1969), p. 1.
10. Ibid., pp. vii, 1-11, 70-85; Martin Co., *Special Study Saturn Launch Facilities*, report ER 11996 (Baltimore, 17 Oct. 1961), pp. II-1 through II-5; calendar and schedule of events in O. K. Duren's private papers.
11. LFSEO, LOD, *A Preliminary Study of Launch Facility Requirements for the C-4* (Huntsville, AL, 27 Oct. 1961), p. 38.
12. George von Tiesenhausen, memo for record, "Launch Complex 39," 11 Oct. 1961.
13. Harvey F. Pierce, Maurice H. Connell & Assoc., Inc., to Debus, 21 Nov. 1961, Debus papers.
14. Poppel to Petrone, memo, "Saturn C-3/C-4 Study," 9 Oct. 1961.
15. Biographies, KSC Archives; Owens interview, 21 Nov. 1972.
16. MSFC, *Saturn Mobile (Canal) Concept Flame Deflector and Launcher/Transporter Emplacement Evaluation*, by George Walter, report MIN-LOD-DH-2-62 (Huntsville, AL, Feb. 1962).
17. Poppel to E. House, "Temporary Employment of Naval Architecture Consultant," 22 Dec. 1961; "LFSEO Monthly Progress Report," 15 Feb. 1962, p. 8.
18. Martin, *Saturn C-3 Study*, vol. 3, *Design Criteria for Launch Facilities*, report ER 12125-3, Dec. 1961, pp. 57-84.
19. "LFSEO Monthly Progress Report," 15 Feb. 1962, p. 8.
20. Debus to Petrone, "Transportation Proposals for Complex 39," 30 Jan. 1962; DDJ, 30 Jan. 1962.
21. Duren interview, 29 Mar. 1972; Zeiler interview, 24 Mar. 1972; private papers of Duren.
22. "LOD Weekly Notes," Petrone, 8 Feb. 1962; W. T. Clearman, Acting Sec., Heavy Vehicle Systems Off., memo for record, "Complex 39 Staff Meeting," 12 Mar. 1962, Petrone papers.
23. MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes for Saturn C-5 Mobile Systems as of 11 June 1962*, by Donald D. Buchanan and George W. Walter, report MIN-LOD-DH-9-62 (Huntsville, AL, 11 June 1962), pp. 5-8; Buchanan interview, 7 Nov. 1972; Walter interview, 7 Nov. 1972.
24. MSFC, *Transporter for Nova Track Design and Stresses*, by William H. Griffith, report NASA-MFSC-LOD-D; MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes*, p. 5; MSFC, *Saturn Mobile (Rail) Concept: An Examination of Rail Transfer Systems for a Launcher/Transporter*, by George W. Walter, report MIN-LOD-DH-3-62 (Huntsville, AL, 3 Apr. 1962).
25. Maurice H. Connell & Assoc., Inc., *Saturn C-5 Launch Facilities Complex 39: Study of Rail Systems for Vertical Transporter/Launcher Concept* (Huntsville, AL: MSFC, May 1962), p. 7.
26. MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes*, pp. 9-11; MSFC Weekly Notes, Debus to von Braun, 28 May 1962; Buchanan, memo for record, "Analysis by H. Pierce, 15 May 1962," Buchanan's private papers.
27. LOD Weekly Notes, Zeiler, 15 Feb. 1962; Poppel, Zeiler, Buchanan, and Duren made up the team.
28. Donald Buchanan, memo for record, "Launcher/Transporter Crawler Version," 23 Mar. 1962; Buchanan interview, 28 Nov. 1972; Duren interview, 29 Mar. 1972; MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes*, pp. 5, 8-9.
29. LOD Weekly Notes, Poppel, 16 May 1962; MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes*, p. 9; Buchanan, memo for record, "TDY at Bucyrus-Erie, South Milwaukee, Wisconsin," 16 Apr. 1962, Buchanan's private papers; Buchanan interview, 28 Nov. 1972; Buchanan, memo for record, "Analysis by H. Pierce, 15 May 1962," Buchanan's papers.

30. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville Off., "Summary of Opinions Developed by the Jacksonville District Engineering Staff on Mobile Launch Concepts for the Advanced Saturn C-5 Vehicle," June 1962, in Buchanan's papers.
31. MSFC, *Appraisal of Transfer Modes*, p. 11.
32. William T. Clearman, Jr., memo, "Launch Operations Directorate Complex 39 Review," 18 Sept. 1962; E. M. Briel's notes, 12-13 June 1962.
33. Biographies, in KSC Archives; Claybourne interview; Clearman interview, 5 Jan. 1973.
34. Launch Operations Center (hereafter cited as LOC), "Summary of Conference with Members of Manned Space Flight Sub-Committee of House Committee on Science and Astronautics at the NASA Launch Operations Center," 23 Mar. 1962, p. 27.
35. Martin, *Saturn C-3 Study*, 3: 46-52.
36. Clearman, "Complex 39 Staff Meeting," 12 Mar. 1962; Deese to Moser et al., "Preliminary Concepts, Vertical Building," 6 Mar. 1962; Brown Engineering Co., Inc., *An Evaluation of an Enclosed Concept for a C-5 Vertical Assembly Building (VAB)*," 2 Apr. 1962, pp. 7-8; Brown Engineering Co., Inc., *An Evaluation of an Open Concept for a C-5 Vertical Assembly Building*, 2 Apr. 1962, pp. 9-10.
37. Briel's notes, 12-13 June 1962; Brown Engineering Co., "Evolution of the Saturn C-5 Mobile System Vertical Assembly Building," a mimeographed report prepared by E. M. Briel, 7 Sept. 1962.
38. LOC, "Minutes of the Saturn C-5 Launch Operations Working Group Meeting, 18-19 July 1962," 8 Aug. 1962, pp. 2-6.
39. Briel's notes, 31 July 1962; DDJ, 15 Aug. 1962.
40. URSAM, "VAB-LC39: A Report of Meeting with Representatives of LOC, Corps of Engineers and Component Contractors" (Cape Canaveral, FL, 28 Aug. 1962), app. A.
41. Isom G. Rigell, memo, "LC-39 Networks," 4 Sept. 1962; Norman Gerstenzang, memo for record, 5 Sept. 1962; unsigned memo, "Information Required by LO-FEE for LC-39, VAB Criteria," 6 Sept. 1962.
42. Joe J. Koperski, Chief, Engineering Div., Corps of Engineers, to R. P. Dodd, "Back-to-Back vs. In-Line Configuration, Comparisons and Conclusions—Launch Complex 39-Vertical Assembly Building," 21 Sept. 1962.
43. Deese interview, 4 Oct. 1973.
44. NASA, "A Report on Launch Facility Concepts for Advanced Saturn Launch Facilities," by Marvin Redfield, John Hammersmith, and Jay A. Salmonson, 13 Feb. 1962.
45. House, *Hearings: 1963 NASA Authorization*, p. 941.
46. LOC, "Summary of Conference with Members of Manned Space Flight," 23 Mar. 1962, pp. 13-34.
47. Ibid., pp. 21, 30. In an interview with James Frangie on 13 Aug. 1969, Col. Bidgood pointed out that LC-39 provided launch rate flexibility but had limitations in its ability to accommodate different vehicles.
48. NASA, "Minutes of the Management Council Office of Manned Space Flight," 29 May 1962.
49. Ibid., 22 June 1962; DDJ, 15 June 1962.
50. Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation," pp. 56-60.
51. The mode selection story continued several more months as NASA had to defend the choice against strong criticism from the President's Science Advisory Committee. For a lengthier treatment of one of Apollo's most interesting episodes, see Logsdon, "NASA's Implementation."
52. "LOD Weekly Notes," Sendler, 5, 19 July 1962, Bidgood, 5 July, 2, 23 Aug. 1962; DDJ, 15, 21 Aug. 1962.
53. Poppel to Bidgood, "Preliminary Design for a Mobile Arming Tower for Launch Complex 39," 10 Aug. 1962.
54. LOC, "Minutes of the Saturn C-5 Launch Operations Working Group Meeting, 18-19 July 1962," 8 Aug. 1962, pp. 1-5 and app. 9.
55. Redfield interview.

Chapter 7: The Launch Directorate Becomes an Operating Center

1. Gen. Ostrander, "Proposed Organization for Launch Activities at AMR and PMR," 6 July 1961; Debus, "Proposed Organization for Launch Activities at Atlantic Missile Range and Pacific Missile Range Due to Proposed Realignment of NASA Programs," 12 June 1961.
2. Debus to Rees, Dep. Dir. for R&D, MSFC, "Operating Procedures and Responsibilities of MSFC Divisions and Others at Launch Site," 4 Aug. 1961.
3. Ibid.; see also DDJ, 27 July 1961.
4. D. M. Morris, Dep. Dir. of Admin., MSFC, to Albert Siepert, Dir., Office of Business Admin., NASA Hq., 6 June 1961; Harry H. Gorman, Assoc. Dep. Dir. for Admin., MSFC, to Seamans, 26 Sept. 1961.
5. Debus, "A Paper on Launch and Spaceflight Operations," 27 Sept. 1961.
6. Debus, "Analysis of Major Elements Regarding the Functions and Organization of Launch and Spaceflight Operations," 10 Oct. 1961.
7. Concurrence by Wernher von Braun, appended to n. 6 reference.
8. Seamans to Young and Siepert, 13 Oct. 1961; Debus interview, 16 May 1972.
9. Rees to von Braun, "New Organization Proposals for LOD," 17 Oct. 1961; Debus interview, 16 May 1972.
10. Debus interview, 22 Aug. 1969.
11. NASA release 62-53, "Establishment of the Launch Operations Center at AMR and the Pacific Launch Operations Office at PMR," 7 Mar. 1962.
12. Young to Seamans, "Internal Organization of the Launch Operations Center," 29 June 1962.
13. Debus interview, 22 Aug. 1969.
14. "MSFC-LOC Separation Agreement," 8 June 1962, printed in Francis E. Jarrett, Jr., and Robert A. Lindemann, "Historical Origins of NASA's Launch Operations Center to 1 July 1962" (KSC, 1964), app.; NASA release LOC-63-64, 24 Apr. 1963. The transfer of LVOD personnel from MSFC to LOC was completed by 6 May 1963. See James M. Ragusa, "John F. Kennedy Space Center (KSC) NASA Reorganization Policy and Methods," (M.S. thesis, Florida State Univ., Apr. 1968), p. 25.
15. Melton interview.
16. DDJ, 1 Sept. 1961; Clark interview.
17. *Missiles and Rockets,* 6 Nov. 1961, p. 18.
18. Ernest W. Brackett, Dir., Procurement and Supply, to Dir., Off. of Admin., with enclosure, "Establishment of Launch Operations Center," 15 June 1962.
19. Clarence Bidgood, "Facilities Office Memo No. 2," 1 Feb. 1962; *Spaceport News,* 22 Feb. 1963.
20. Debus interview, 22 Aug. 1969.
21. Parker interview, 14 Feb. 1969.
22. By early June 1962, 930 sq m of off-site space had been leased and plans were made to lease 1400 more by 30 July 1962. Robert Heiser to Rachel Pratt, "Notes from von Braun," 11 June 1962; Gordon Harris, Chief of Public Affairs, to Bagnulo, 1 Oct. 1964.
23. Hall to Facilities Program Off., "Justification for Leasing Additional Space in CAC Building," 13 Mar. 1963. During the period of limited office space, thought was given toward acquiring a barge from the Navy to be moored at the Saturn Barge Terminal and used as an office. Hall to Bidgood, "Barge Anchorage," 18 Sept. 1962; Hawkins to Hall, "Trailer Request for LC-34," 1 Mar. 1963; *Spaceport News,* 13 Oct. 1966, p. 6.
24. NASA General Management Instruction (hereafter GMI) 2-2-9.1, "Basic Operating Concepts for the Launch Operations Center at Merritt Island and the Atlantic Missile Range," 10 Jan. 1963.
25. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, *Hearings: 1964 NASA Authorization,* 88th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 2a, pp. 127, 129.

26. Bidgood interview, 13 Aug. 1969.
27. Seamans to Dir., LOC, "General Responsibilities and Functions of the NASA Center Director," 10 Jan. 1963, with enclosure, "General Responsibilities and Functions of a NASA Center Director," 10 Jan. 1963. These documents were circulated in LOC on 18 Jan. 1963; see Office of the Dir., "General Responsibilities and Functions of a NASA Center Director," 18 Jan. 1963. They were subsequently revised and published as attachments to NASA GMI 2-0-3, "Informational Material on Assignment of Responsibilities in the NASA Organization Structure," 3 June 1963.
28. NASA GMI 2-2-9.1, "Basic Operating Concepts for the Launch Operations Center at Merritt Island and the Atlantic Missile Range," 10 Jan. 1963. A 4 Mar. 1963 plan provided for an "Assistant Director for Program Management" (a title actually adopted in the reorganization of 28 Jan. 1964); a 28 Mar. 1963 plan provided for an "Assistant Director for LOC Programs," as did also a 2 Apr. 1963 plan.
29. The NASA Daytona Beach Operations was established and designated an integral part of LOC in NASA circular 2-2-9, 23 June 1963, which stated that the Manager would "report to the Director, Launch Operations Center, Cocoa Beach, Florida." See also Debus to George Mueller, "Change in Organizational Structure," 13 Dec. 1963; Debus to staff, "LOC Organization Structure," 6 Aug. 1963, and accompanying manual, "LOC Organization Structure," 2 Aug. 1963; LOC Organization Chart, approved by Hugh L. Dryden, 24 Apr. 1963
30. *Spaceport News,* 1 May 1963, p. 6.
31. Bidgood, who had joined LOC on 1 Nov. 1962, organized a Facilities Office by late 1962 and published his first organization chart on 13 Feb. 1963. Bidgood interview, 14 Nov. 1968.
32. "LOC Organization Structure," 2 Aug. 1963.
33. *Spaceport News,* 1 May 1963, p. 6. For Debus's views on the "development operational loop," see his "Analysis of Major Elements Regarding the Functions and Organization of Launch and Spaceflight Operations," 10 Oct. 1961; also "LOC Organizational Structure," 2 Aug. 1963, p. 9.
34. C. C. Parker, "Boards, Committees, Panels, Teams and Working Groups," 25 Sept. 1963.
35. *Spaceport News,* 30 June 1963.
36. Hugo Young, Bryan Silcock, and Peter Dunn, *Journey to Tranquility* (Garden City, NY: Doubleday & Co., 1970), p. 158.
37. Rosholt, *An Administrative History of NASA,* pp. 288-89.
38. *The Washington Post,* 21 Sept. 1963, p. A-10.
39. Thomas's letter and the President's reply appear in Senate Committee of Appropriations, *Hearings: Independent Offices Appropriations, 1964,* 88th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 2, pp. 1616-18.
40. *Fortune,* Nov. 1963, pp. 125-29, 270, 274, 280.
41. *Spaceport News,* 21, 27 Nov. 1963.
42. Executive Order 11129, *Designating Certain Facilities of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and of the Department of Defense in the State of Florida, as the John F. Kennedy Space Center,* 29 Nov. 1963; NASA announcement 63-283, "Designation of the John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA," 20 Dec. 1963; message SAF 82841, Sec. of the Air Force to Cmdr., AFSC, Andrews AFB, 7 Jan. 1964; "Decisions on Geographic Names in the United States, Dec. 1962 through December 1963," decision list 6303, U.S. Board on Geographic Names (Washington: Dept. of the Interior, 1964), p. 20.
43. Debus to Mrs. W. L. Stewart, 26 Dec. 1963.
44. Ernest G. Schwiebert, *A History of the U.S. Air Forces Ballistic Missiles,* pp. 130, 201-203, 247; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* pp. 67-68.
45. OMSF, "Management Council Minutes, 29 Oct. 1963," 31 Oct. 1963.

46. Rosholt, *Administrative History,* pp. 289-97. Newell headed the Office of Space Sciences and Applications, Bisplinghoff, the Office of Advanced Research and Technology.
47. NASA release KSC-10-64, 6 Feb. 1964; KSC, "NASA Organization Chart," 28 Jan. 1964; *Spaceport News,* 13 Feb. 1964.
48. "KSC Notes," Petrone to Debus, 29 Oct. 1964.
49. "Kennedy Space Center Apollo Document Tree," approved by Rocco Petrone, 3 Nov. 1965, Joel Kent's private papers.
50. Childers interview, 7 Nov. 1972; Gramer interview, 21 Sept. 1972.

Chapter 8: Funding the Project

1. Lyndon B. Johnson, *The Vantage Point: Perspectives of the Presidency, 1963-69* (New York: Popular Library, 1971), p. 283.
2. Unless otherwise indicated the information on the early budgetary process was gathered from interviews with Robert G. Long, Resources Management Br., KSC; William E. Pearson, Chief, Management Information Control Br., KSC; Alton D. Fryer, Resources Management Div., KSC; and Elizabeth A. Johnson, Financial Management Div., KSC. Much of this information was later formalized in OMSF, *Apollo Program Development Plan,* M-D MA 500, 1 Jan. 1966.
3. The real estate paragraph was usually omitted since land acquisition for the MLLP was provided for under separate CoF documents.
4. Robert C. Seamans, Jr., "Guidelines for Preparation of Detailed Fiscal Year 1964 Budget Estimates—Section I," 30 Aug. 1962, attach. 5, p. 6.
5. "It should be borne in mind, however, that, as a matter of policy, NASA may not choose to exercise its authority to the full extent permitted by law," General Counsel (John A. Johnson) to Paul C. Dembling, "Request from Congressman Karth regarding the 'extent of NASA's authority to reprogram or transfer appropriate funds within the agency,' " 3 Apr. 1963, with encl. NASA was authorized to transfer sums from one budget line item to another to the extent of 5% of the item to which the transfer was to be made, to meet unusual cost variations, provided the total amount authorized was not exceeded. It was also authorized to transfer up to 5% of the CoF appropriation to the RD&O appropriation, and vice versa. Additionally, the NASA Administrator was authorized under certain circumstances to use CoF funds for such things as emergency repairs if of greater urgency than the construction of new facilities.
6. C. C. Parker, Chief, Operations Off., LOD, to J. Martin, "FY-63 C&E Requirement," 19 Dec. 1960.
7. Don R. Ostrander, NASA Hq., to MSFC, "Preliminary Fiscal Year 1963 Budget," 27 Feb. 1961.
8. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* pp. 19, 22-23.
9. *Spaceport News,* 19 Jan. 1967, p. 7.
10. Burke interview.
11. Parker/Greenglass to D'Onofrio, "FY-63 CoF Budget Requirements," 13 Dec. 1961.
12. LOD, "Atlantic Missile Range Fiscal Year 1963 Estimates, Construction of Facilities," undated. See also House, *1963 NASA Authorization,* p. 879; Senate, *NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1963*, p. 126; and Senate Committee on Appropriations, 87th Cong., 2d sess., *Hearings: Second Supplemental Appropriation Bill for 1962,* 4 Apr. 1962, p. 149.
13. LOD, "Atlantic Missile Range, Fiscal Year 1963 Estimates, Construction of Facilities," undated (ca. Jan. 1962).

14. House, Manned Space Flight Subcommittee, "Summary of Conference with Members of Manned Space Flight Subcommittee of House Committee on Science and Astronautics at the NASA Launch Operations Center, Cocoa Beach, Fla., 23 Mar. 1962."
15. Ibid., pp. 19-21. The conference record frequently does not identify the speaker.
16. Ibid., p. 21.
17. Ibid.
18. Ibid., pp. 21, 24-27.
19. Ibid., pp. 29-30.
20. Ibid., pp. 55-57.
21. Ibid., p. 58.
22. William E. Lilly, Dir., Program Review and Resources Management Off., OMSF, to LOC, "Advance Approval of FY-63 CoF," 14 Mar. 1962; TWX, C. C. Parker to NASA Hq., "Advance Approval of FY-63 CoF," 21 May 1962.
23. Rosholt, *Administrative History,* pp. 233, 284; *Congress and the Nation, 1945-1964* (Washington: Congressional Quarterly Service, 1965), 1:320.
24. OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 21 Sept. 1962, item 8; LOC, "FY 1963 CoF Resubmission and Supplemental Program," 8 Sept. 1962.
25. C. C. Parker, Dep. Assoc. Dir. for Admin. Services, LOC, to William E. Lilly, Dir. Program Review and Resources Management, OMSF, 8 Sept. 1962.
26. LOC to NASA Hq., "LOC Fiscal Year 1963 Estimates, Advanced Saturn Complex No. 39," 8 Sept. 1962, with encl.
27. C. C. Parker, LOC, to William E. Lilly, 18 Sept. 1962.
28. *Congress and the Nation, 1945-1964,* pp. 320, 390.
29. Debus to Holmes, 26 Oct. 1962.
30. Project Approval Document, "Construction of Facilities, Advanced Saturn Launch Complex No. 39," code 46-46-990-933-3450, 6 Nov. 1962, p. AMR-63-10; NASA Form 504, "Allotment/Sub-Allotment Authorization," amendment 05, 16 Nov. 1962.
31. Frederick L. Dunlap, Chief, Budget Br., NASA Hq., to Ed Melton, Financial Management Off., LOC, 27 Dec. 1962.
32. NASA Procurement Div., KSC, "Status Summary of Active Contracts as of 31 Mar. 1964," sec. III, "Active Intergovernmental Purchase Orders," p. 3.
33. OMSF directive M-D 9330.01, "Manned Space Flight Program Launch Schedule for Apollo and Saturn Class Vehicles," 15 Oct. 1962. See also MSFC, "Reference Director, MSFC/MSC/OMSF, Flight and Mission Schedule History," 21 Feb. 1963; and OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 31 July 1962, item 5F.
34. Debus, "Fiscal Year 1964 Preliminary Budget," 8 Mar. 1962; Seamans to Dir., OMSF, "Guidelines for Preparation of Detailed Fiscal Year 1964 Budget Estimates," sec. I, 30 Aug. 1962; LOC, "FY 1964 CoF Program," 1 Nov. 1962.
35. LOC, "FY 1964 CoF Program," 1 Nov. 1962, pp. DF-B 16 through DF-B 18.
36. Ibid.
37. W. F. Barney, Chief, Control Off., MSFC, to Mr. Lada, "Fiscal Year 1963 Spacecraft CoF Projects," 19 Feb. 1962; OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 28 Aug. 1962.
38. G. Merritt Preston, MSC, AMR Ops., to NASA Hq., Attn: G. M. Low, "Chronology and Background Information on Gemini and Apollo Facilities at AMR," 18 Jan. 1963. This letter was prepared in response to an 11 Jan. 1963 request from Congressman George P. Miller of California, Chairman of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics, for an explanation of the decision to combine some Gemini and Apollo spacecraft facilities on Merritt Island. Combining facilities also made it difficult to extract costs directly chargeable to the Apollo program.
39. Manned Spacecraft Center/Atlantic Missile Range, "FY 1963 Construction of Facilities, Project Documentation," 15 Oct. 1962; Debus to William E. Lilly, 15 Oct. 1962. The use of the project title "Apollo Mission Support Facilities" persisted for several months.
40. LOC, "FY 1964 CoF Program," 1 Nov. 1962.

41. House Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, 88th Cong., 1st sess., *Hearings: 1964 NASA Authorization,* pt. 2(b), p. 986. In fact, the $432 million figure had been given to the subcommittee at Cape Canaveral on 23 Mar. 1962.
42. Ibid., pp. 987-89.
43. Ibid., pp. 989-90.
44. Ibid., p. 1276.
45. Ibid., pp. 991-94, 1275-83.
46. *Congress and the Nation, 1945-1964,* p. 326.
47. Ibid., pp. 326, 329.

Chapter 9: Apollo Integration

1. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Hearings: NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1963*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 14 June 1962, p. 486; see also House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, *1963 NASA Authorization*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 26 Mar. 1962, pt. 2, pp. 543-44.
2. "Weekly Notes," Petrone to Debus, 12 Apr., 17 May 1962; "Minutes of the Sixth Meeting of the Management Council of the Office of Manned Space Flight, 29 May 1962." OMSF realized that G.E.'s favored status would offend stage contractors and stipulated in the contract (NASw-410) certain provisions that restricted G.E.'s use of sensitive information.
3. "Agreements Reached at the August Meeting at the Cape Concerning the G.E. Contract," unsigned and undated (Debus and Petrone represented LOC).
4. DDJ, 7 Nov. 1962; OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 21 Sept., 27 Nov. 1962.
5. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, *Hearings: 1964 NASA Authorization*, 88th Cong., 1st sess., Mar.-June 1963. The G.E. contract and its ramifications crop up throughout these hearings, particularly in vol. 3, pt. 2(b). The subcommittee hearings at Daytona Beach are contained in app. C to pt. 2(b), pp. 1285-1352.
6. DDJ, 3, 9 July 1963; OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 27 Aug. 1963.
7. Manned Spacecraft Center, Langley AFB, VA, "Minutes of MSFC-MSC Space Vehicle Board No. 1, 3 Oct. 1961," 7 Nov. 1961.
8. Von Braun to Mueller, "Flight Missions Planning Panel," 30 Dec. 1963; Wagner interview.
9. MSC, "Minutes of MSFC-MSC Space Vehicle Board No. 1, 3 Oct. 1961," 7 Nov. 1961.
10. LOD Weekly Notes, Petrone, 8 Feb. 1962.
11. LOD Weekly Notes, Petrone, 3 May, 21 June 1962, and Poppel, 18 Apr. 1962; "Summary of Launch Operations Panel Activities," prepared by Emil Bertram for Joseph Shea, 18 July 1963.
12. Bertram, "Summary of Launch Operations Panel Activities," 18 July 1963; LOC, "Minutes of Meeting, Apollo-Saturn Launch Operations Panel, 6 Aug. 1963."
13. "Minutes of Systems Review Meeting, Houston, Texas, 10 Jan. 1963," JSC Archives.
14. "Panel Review Board Minutes, 9-10 Aug. 1963"; OMSF, "Management Council Minutes," 28 May 1963.
15. Gruene interview, 19 Nov. 1970. The U.S. Comptroller General ruled these "body-shop" contracts illegal in Mar. 1964. House Committee on Post Office and Civil Service, *Decision of Comptroller General of the United States Regarding Contractor Personnel in Department of Defense*, 89th Cong., 1st sess., report 188, 8 Mar. 1965.
16. Orvil Sparkman, "S-IV Propellant Loading Sequence," 26 Sept. 1961.
17. LOC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 29 Aug., 5 Sept. 1963; Petrone, 10 Oct. 1963.

18. Debus to Shea, Dep. Dir. for Systems, NASA Hq., "Apollo Interface Control Procedures," 24 June 1963; minutes of meeting, "Delineation of Interface Responsibility between Astrionics Division and LOC," 29 May 1962, signed by Poppel and H. J. Fichtner, Chief, Electrical Systems Integration.
19. Debus and von Braun, "Memo of Agreement: MSFC/KSC Relations," 11 Aug. 1964.
20. Debus and von Braun, "Clarification and Implementation Instruction, MSFC/KSC Relations Agreement dated 11 August 1964," 9 Mar. 1965.
21. Bertram, "LIEF Implementation," 3 Apr. 1964; Bertram interview, 15 Nov. 1973.
22. Bertram, "LIEF Implementation," 3 Apr. 1964.
23. Mary Louise Morse and Jean Kernahan Bays, *The Apollo Spacecraft: A Chronology*, vol. 2, *November 8, 1962—September 30, 1964*, NASA SP-4009 (Washington, 1973), pp. iii–vi; Jay Holmes, "Minutes of Special Staff Meeting, Office of Associate Administrator for Manned Space Flight," 31 Jan. 1964; Shea to Phillips, 27 Mar. 1964, Phillips File, NASA Hq. History Off.; Joachim P. Kuettner, Mgr., Saturn Apollo Systems Integrations, MSFC, "Trip Report," 22 Oct. 1962, in Petrone's notes.
24. Memo attached to DDJ, 6 Aug. 1962; Poppel interview, 24 Jan. 1973.
25. Petrone to M. Dell, Apollo Support Off., MSC, 5 Nov. 1962.
26. Debus to Holmes, 14 Nov. 1962 (letter summarizing discussions between the two men on 19 Oct.), Debus papers.
27. Petrone to J. T. Doke, Apollo Project Off., 22 Oct. 1962; Petrone to B. Porter Brown, 13 Nov. 1962.
28. B. Porter Brown, Prelaunch Ops. Div., Ops. Support Off., to Walter Wagner, KSC, "Mission Operations Control Room Information," 3 Feb. 1964; Petrone to Brown, 7 Feb. 1963.
29. KSC Weekly Notes, Petrone, 12 Dec. 1963.
30. KSC Weekly Notes, Petrone, Jan.-May 1965.
31. LOC Weekly Notes, Petrone, 20 Sept. 1962; Petrone to Kuettner, "Weekly Report to MSC," 19 Oct., 20 Nov., 18 Dec. 1962, in Petrone's notes (1962–1964).
32. Debus notes of 20 June 1963, in Petrone's notes; Bertram interview, 28 Sept. 1973; Horn interview; Moore interview; Hand interview.
33. MSFC, *Saturn V Flight Manual, SA 506*, 25 Feb. 1969, sec. 3, 9.
34. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Flight Safety Plan, Vehicle AS-501* (1967), pp. 1-1, 2-1, 3-1.
35. Taylor, *Liftoff!* p. 83; Adolf H. Knothe, "Range Safety—Do We Need It?" paper 70-249, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2–4 Feb. 1970, p. 2.
36. R. M. Montgomery, "Range Safety of the Eastern Test Range," paper 70-246, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2–4 Feb. 1970, p. 2; Arthur Moore to Benson, "Comments on Launch Operations History," 4 Oct. 1974.
37. Debus to Davis, "Range Safety Policies and Procedures," 11 June 1962, with attached letter from Davis to Debus, 10 May 1962, Debus papers.
38. Emil Bertram, memo for record, "Range Safety Information Channels," 30 Mar. 1962, KSC Range Safety Off. Notes; LOC Weekly Notes, Knothe, 3 May 1962; Bertram to Petrone, "Apollo Saturn Range Safety," 7 May 1962, KSC Range Safety Off. Notes; Bertram to Petrone, 9 May 1963, Petrone's notes.
39. AFETR Manual 127-1, *Range Safety Manual*, 1 Sept. 1972, 1:4–6; according to KSC officials the wording on this matter in the current manual is practically unchanged from the manual in force ten years earlier, no copy of which was available.
40. LOC Weekly Notes, Knothe, 9 May, 3 July 1963.
41. Knothe, "Minutes of Meeting on the Use of Liquid Explosives for a Fuel Dispersion System," 12 July 1963, in KSC Range Safety Off. Notes; LOC Weekly Notes, Knothe, 25 July 1963; Christopher C. Kraft, "Range Safety Aspects of the Apollo Program," 5 Aug. 1963.

42. Knothe to attendees, "Minutes of Meeting: Range Safety Aspects of Apollo Program, Held at NASA/LOC on 29 Aug. 1963," 5 Sept. 1963, KSC Range Safety Off. Notes.
43. Kraft, "Aspects of Apollo Range Safety," 1 Nov. 1963.
44. Kraft, "Apollo Range Safety," 11 Dec. 1963, in KSC Range Safety Off. Notes; Hans Gruene, "Apollo Service Module Propellant Dispersion System Interface Disagreement between MSC and KSC/MSFC," 25 Mar. 1964; LOC Weekly Notes, Knothe, 16 Apr. 1964 (marginal note by Debus); George E. Mueller, Assoc. Admin. for Manned Space Flight, to Cmdr., National Range Div., USAF, 18 Sept. 1964.

Chapter 10: Saturn I Launches (1962–1965)

1. LOD, "SA-2 Daily Status Reports," Robert Moser papers, Federal Archives and Records Center, East Point, GA, accession 68A1230, boxes 436257, 436259.
2. MSFC, *Results of the Second Saturn Launch Vehicle Test Flight SA-2*, report MPR-SAT-63-13 (Huntsville, AL, 16 Oct. 1963), pp. 1-5, 24, 49; Speer, *Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation*, pp. 1-6.
3. ARINC Research Corp., *Reliability Study of Saturn SA-3 Pre-Launch Operations*, by Arthur W. Green et al. (Washington, 3 Jan. 1963), pp. 4-7 through 4-11, 7-1.
4. MSFC, *Results of the Third Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-3*, report MPR-SAT-64-13 (Huntsville, AL, 26 Feb. 1964), pp. 1-8; Speer, "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation," p. 2; DDJ, 1 Nov. 1962.
5. MSFC, *Results of the Fourth Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-4*, report MPR-SAT-63-6 (Huntsville, AL, 10 May 1963), pp. 5–7; *Spaceport News*, 9 Apr. 1964, p. 3; Chambers interview.
6. MSFC, *Results of SA-4*, pp. 1-7, 16–17; Speer, "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation," p. 2.
7. MSFC, *Results of the Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flights*, report MPR-SAT-FE-66-9 (Huntsville, AL, 9 Dec. 1966), pp. 26–27.
8. MSFC, *Results of SA-3*, pp. 7-8; MSFC, *Results of SA-4*, p. 7; House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, *Hearings: 1964 NASA Authorization*, 88th Cong., 1st sess., 6 Mar. 1963, pt. 2(a), p. 198; MSFC, *Saturn Monthly Progress Reports* (Jan.-Aug. 1962).
9. Debus to Rees, "Additional Saturn Launch Complex," 29 Jan. 1960.
10. Capt. Arthur G. Porcher, Chief, Facilities Br., Army Test Off., AFMTC, "Additional Launch Facilities for Saturn Type Vehicle," 5 Feb. 1960; Col. Donald Heaton to Gen. Ostrander, "Price Increase in Second Saturn Launch Complex," 12 Feb. 1960.
11. Philip Claybourne, Saturn Project Off., to MFL Br. Chiefs, "Back-Up of Saturn Launch Facilities," 10 May 1960.
12. Harvey F. Pierce to Debus, 26 Feb. 1960.
13. Debus to Zeiler, "Formation of Committee to Review Service Structure Design," 9 Mar. 1960; DDJ, 11, 13 Apr. 1960.
14. Debus, memo for record, "Drift of the Saturn C-2 Vehicle at Launching," 12 July 1960; MSFC, "Summary Report and Recommendations of Saturn Service Structure No. II Design Committee," by Harvey F. Pierce, 12 July 1960, pp. 4–18.
15. MSFC, "Summary Report of Saturn Service Structure Committee," pp. 4–18.
16. Ibid.; LOC, "Concept Development of Saturn Service Structure, No. II," by James Deese, Apr. 1963, pp. 26–27, James Deese papers.
17. DDJ, 29 Aug. 1960.
18. Debus to von Braun, "Hazard Study of Liquid Hydrogen, LO_2 and RP-1," 10 Jan. 1961; DDJ, 9, 11, 13 Jan. 1961.
19. DDJ, 13 Jan. 1961.

20. LFSEO Monthly Progress Report, 12 June 1961, p. 1; Poppel to Parker, "Criteria for VLF 37," 22 Dec. 1960; J. W. Ault, memo for record, "Contract for LC-37 Design," 23 Feb. 1961; Dodd to Corps of Engineers, "Vibroflotation for Complex 37A," 18 Oct. 1961, Debus papers.
21. MSFC, *Saturn Quarterly Progress Report* (July–Sept. 1961), report MPR-SAT-61-11, 1 Dec. 1961, p. 94; MSFC, *Saturn Quarterly Progress Report* (Jan.–Mar. 1962), MPR-SAT-62-3, p. 36; Michael Getler, "Complex 37 Will Dwarf Predecessors," *Missiles and Rockets*, 18 Dec. 1961, pp. 24–25, 47.
22. Getler, "Complex 37," pp. 24–25, 47; "The Biggest Thing on Wheels in the World," prepared by Batten, Barton, Durstine, and Osborne, Inc., Pittsburgh, for U.S. Steel, Jan. 1963.
23. D. E. Eppert, Chief, Construction Div., Canaveral Dist., Corps of Engineers, to James J. Frangie, "List of Saturn Construction Contracts," 12 Sept. 1968, p. 16; *NASA Fifth Semi-Annual Report to Congress*, 1 Oct. 1960 through 30 June 1961, p. 145; Emil Bertram, memo for record, "Apollo-Saturn Subpanel Activities," 15 July 1963, p. 3.
24. MSFC, *Results of Saturn I Launch Vehicle Tests*, pp. 3–5.
25. "Daily Status Reports, LC-37B Wet Test Vehicle," Robert Moser papers; Moser interview, 18 July 1973; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, pp. 58–61.
26. Gruene to Debus, 12 Sept. 1963.
27. D. L. Childs to LVO, S-IV-5 Status Reports #23, 29 Aug., and #33, 11 Sept. 1963; S-IV-5 Daily Log, 21–22 Sept. 1963, Rober Moser papers; LVO, "SA-5 Daily Status Report," 23, 24, 25 Sept. 1953.
28. "SA-5 Daily Status Reports," 11, 14, 17 Oct. 1963; Gruene to Debus, 17 Oct. 1963.
29. LVO, "SA-5 Daily Status Reports," 11 Oct. 1963.
30. Ibid., 22 Oct., 7 Nov. 1963; Gruene to Debus, 31 Oct. 1963; Fannin interview.
31. LVO, "SA-5 Daily Status Reports," 27 Nov. 1963; Corn interview, 23 July 1973; Zeiler interview, 23 July 1973; Pickett interview.
32. LVO, "SA-5 Daily Status Report," 27 Nov., 6, 8, 10, 13 Dec. 1963.
33. Ibid., 23, 27 Dec. 1963, 14, 17, 19 Jan. 1964.
34. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, pp. 72–73; *Cocoa Tribune*, 29 Jan. 1964.
35. MSFC, *Results of the Fifth Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-5*, report MPR-SAT-FE-64-17 (Huntsville, AL, 22 Sept. 1964), pp. 5–7; *Cocoa Tribune*, 28, 29 Jan. 1964.
36. KSC, "Presentation to the Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics at KSC," 27 Jan. 1964; Sherrer interview.
37. *Cocoa Tribune*, 28 Jan. 1964, p. 2.
38. KSC, "Presentation to the Subcommittee," 27 Jan. 1964.
39. R. P. Eichelberger, "The Saturn Telemetry System," pp. 1–3; KSC, "Technical Progress Report," 24 Jan. 1964; *Spaceport News*, 23 Jan. 1964, p. 2; "Consolidated Instrumentation Plan," pt. IIA of *Firing Test Report, Saturn I SA-5*, 22 Jan. 1964 (TR-4-36), pp. 6, 19, 31.
40. *Spaceport News*, 4 June 1964, p. 1; NASA release 63-268, 23 Jan. 1964; *New York Times*, 27 Jan. 1964; Speer, "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation," pp. 1–8.
41. *Orlando Sentinel*, 30 Jan. 1964, pp.1, 42.
42. James Grimwood, JSC Historian, supplied information for this section.
43. *Spaceport News*, 4 June 1964, p. 2; NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1964*, pp. 70, 126; Sasseen interview, 26 July 1973.
44. *Orlando Sentinel*, 21 May 1964; *Melbourne Daily Times*, 26, 27 May 1964.
45. *Spaceport News*, 4 June 1964, p. 5; MSFC, *Results of the Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flights*, p. 23.
46. *Spaceport News*, 13 Aug. 1964, p. 3; Davidson interview.
47. *Cocoa Tribune*, 20 July 1964; *Spaceport News*, 23 July 1964, p. 2; Newall interview.
48. *Cocoa Tribune*, 28 Aug. 1964; *Orlando Sentinel Star*, 8, 9 Sept. 1964; *Miami Herald*, 16 Sept. 1964; *Spaceport News*, 27 Aug., 3, 10, 17 Sept. 1964; *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 28 Sept. 1964, p. 27.

49. Gen. Samuel Phillips to George Mueller, 14 Jan. 1965; Mueller to Debus, 10 Feb. 1965; weekly notes from Petrone to Debus, 4 Feb. 1965.
50. MSFC, *Results of the Eighth Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-9*, report MPR-SAT-FE-65-6 (Huntsville, AL, 30 Apr. 1965), p. 14; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, p. 104.
51. Ibid., pp. 9–14; "Pegasus Returning Meteoroid Flux Data," *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 22 Feb. 1965, p. 28.
52. MSFC, *Results of the Ninth Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-8*, report MPR-SAT-FE-11 (Huntsville, AL, 27 July 1965), pp. 7–15; "First Industry-Built Saturn I Puts Pegasus-2 in Precise Orbit," *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 31 May 1965, p. 21.
53. MSFC, *Results of the Tenth Saturn Launch Vehicle Test Flight, SA-10*, report MPR-SAT-FE-65-14 (Huntsville, AL, 24 Sept. 1965), p. 8.

Chapter 11: Ground Plans for Outer-Space Ventures

1. In this section the authors relied extensively on research by William Lockyer, Jr., and James Covington.
2. Col. J. V. Sollohub to Debus, 15 Oct. 1962.
3. "To Design for the Moon Age, Four Firms Work as One Team," *Engineering News-Record* 172 (6 Feb. 1964): 46–48.
4. Alexander interview; Anton Tedesko to Urbahn, Knecht, and Rutledge, 10 Aug. 1962.
5. URSAM, "VAB-LC39: Report of a Meeting with Representatives of LOC, Corps of Engineers and Component Contractors," Cape Canaveral, FL, 28 Aug. 1962.
6. Ibid., pp. 2–6.
7. Wesley Allen, Brown Engineering Co., memo for record, "Meeting with Facilities and MSC," 17 Sept. 1962.
8. Bidgood to Poppel, 26 Sept. 1962.
9. Col. Wm. Alexander, "Report on VAB," undated, p. 5; J. Bing to R. P. Dodd, 7 Nov. 1962; Theodor A. Poppel to Bidgood, 21 Nov. 1962; and Gerstenzang and Carraway to Dodd, 23 Nov. 1962.
10. William D. Alexander, "Vertical Assembly Building—Project Description, Organization, and Procedures," *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 42–44.
11. Ibid., p. 44.
12. Gerald C. Frewer, "Kennedy Space Center—Assembly Line on a Gigantic Scale," *The Engineering Designer,* May 1967, p. 7.
13. Anton Tedesko, "Base for USA Manned Space Rockets (Structures for Assembly and Launching)," *International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering Publications* 26 (May 1971): 535; Tedesko, "Design of the Vertical Assembly Building," *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 45–49.
14. Anton Tedesko, "Space Truss Braces Huge Building for Moon Rocket," *Engineering News-Record* 172 (6 Feb. 1964): 24–27.
15. James H. Deese, "The Problem of Low Level Wind Distribution," paper presented at the Structural Engineers Councils of Florida, First Annual Conference, Tampa, 9 Nov. 1964.
16. Kurt Debus, "Some Design Problems Encountered in Construction of Launch Complex 39," paper given in Darmstadt, Germany, 25 June 1964; R. P. Dodd, "HVAC Temperature Control System for VAB and LCC," with attachment, "VAB HVAC Temperature Control System," 14 July 1963; G. J. Burrus, LCC and Sup. Fac. Sec., memo for record, "LCC Air Conditioning Unit Reliability," 28 July 1965.
17. Debus, "Some Design Problems Encountered," p. 35. *Apollo Launch Complex 39 Facilities Handbook,* issued by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, South Atlantic Div.,

p. 14, gives different numbers: height of each door opening, 140 meters; lower door opening 46.32 meters wide and 34.74 meters high; upper door opening 23.16 meters wide and 104.24 meters high.

18. Alexander, "Report on VAB," p. 13; Tedesko, "Design of the Vertical Assembly Building," pp. 48-49; Dodd interview.
19. Philip C. Rutledge, "Vertical Assembly Building—Design of Foundations," *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 50-52.
20. Alexander, "Vertical Assembly Building—Project Description," pp. 43-44.
21. Stein interview; Bidgood to Clearman, "Design of the Vertical Assembly Building, Advanced Saturn Launch Complex 39," 6 Mar. 1963.
22. Bidgood to Mr. Lenezewski, CE Canaveral Dist., "LC-39 Transfer Aisles," 7 July 1963; Andrew Pickett to Dodd, "Platform Access to S-IC Inter-Tank Area VAB," 27 June 1963; Dodd to Bertram, "LC-39 VAB and LCC," 3 July 1963.
23. "Launch Complex 39," brochure issued by Corps of Engineers for contractors' conference, Oct. 1963, p. 4.
24. R. P. Young, NASA Exec. Off., to Webb, 13 June 1963.
25. M. Menghini, Field Rep., URSAM, memo for record, "Telephone calls to and from Col. Alexander," 31 Oct. 1962; Anton Tedesko, "Assembly and Launch Facilities for the Apollo Program, Merritt Island, Florida: Design of the Structure of the Vertical Assembly Building," paper presented at the ADCE Structural Engineering Conference and Annual Meeting, 19-21 Oct. 1964, p. 10.
26. Stein interview.
27. Brown interview. The NASA-Corps of Engineers movie *The Big Challenge* confirms Brown's testimony.
28. D. T. Brewster to W. W. Kavanaugh, "Minutes of Meeting between M-ASTRA and M-LVOD, 13 Sept. 1962," 31 Oct. 1962; MSFC, "Saturn V Electrical Ground Support Equipment for Launch Complex 39," pp. 1-11.
29. C. Q. Stewart, Mechanical Engineering, memo for record, 1 Aug. 1962.
30. "Minutes of Crawlerway Design Conference," NASA-LOC, Cape Canaveral, 21 Feb. 1963.
31. "Minutes of Crawler Transporter Crawlerway Meeting," LOC E & L Building, 27 Mar. 1963.
32. J. B. Bing, memo for record, 9 July 1963; Bing, memo for record, "Trip Report," 16 Aug. 1963. In line with the complaint of Mr. Bing, the authors found no reference on the part of URSAM people to Giffels and Rossetti in any of the many articles that appeared on URSAM's work on the VAB. In an article in *Engineering News-Record* for 6 Feb. 1964, p. 28, for instance, one of the URSAM principals mentions the companies that constructed the first launch pad and the crawlerway, but not the firm that designed both of them.
33. A. H. Bagnulo to U.S. Army Engineer Dist., Canaveral, 7 Oct. 1963; Lt. Col. Leo J. Miller, Corps of Engineers, Asst. Dist. Engineer, "Construction Coordination Group for NASA-LOC Complex 39," 14 Oct. 1963; Ernst interview.
34. Launch Support Equipment Engineering Div. Monthly Progress Reports, 10 Oct. 1962, 13 Mar. 1964.
35. J. H. Deese, Chief, Facilities Engineering Sec., memo for record, "Engineering Analysis of Launch Pad Diaphragm Construction, Launch Pad 39B," 11 Mar. 1963.
36. "Theoretical Analysis of Surface Temperatures, Flame Trench, Complex 39 A/B, KSC," technical memo 2-62, Mar. 1967, U.S. Army Engineer, Ohio River Div. Laboratories, Cincinnati.
37. Giffels and Rossetti, "Structural Design of Pad Terminal Connection Room and Environmental Control System Buildings," 11 Apr. 1963, sheet 85; Launch Support Equipment Engineering Div., "Preliminary Release Levels for Ground Support Equipment, Launch Complex 39," 19 Dec. 1963.

38. Poppel to Petrone, "Policy Statement and Design Concept for C-5 Propellant Loading Systems," 1 June 1962. A Complex 39 Foundation Prestudy Conference was held on 29 May 1962 at Jacksonvile: C. Q. Stewart, memo for record, "Foundation Design Prestudy Conference, Jacksonville DE, 29 May 1962," 31 May 1962.
39. *NASA Merritt Island Launch Area Master Plan,* vol. 3, pt. 1, *Industrial Area,* sec. 1, "General Site Plan," 22 Mar. 1963. Cf. *John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA, Master Plan,* pt. 2, *Industrial Area Plans,* sec. 1, "General Site Plan," 25 Oct. 1965.
40. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Master Planning of NASA Installations,* House report 167, 89th Cong., 1st sess., 15 Mar. 1965, p. 24.
41. MSC Florida Ops., *Merritt Island Facilities,* undated pamphlet describing facilities funded through FY 1963, 1964, and 1965.
42. Dir., Information Systems, KSC, "Project Development Plan for Launch Instrumentation," 6 June 1966, p. 2-1.
43. Bruns interview, 22 Aug. 1969.
44. Bidgood to CE Jacksonville, "Central Instrumentation Facility, MILA," 10 May 1963; B. Baker, memo for record, "Siting of the CIF," 22 Aug. 1963.
45. LOC Staff Study, *Concepts for Support Service at the Merritt Island Launch Area,* 6 May 1963.
46. Ibid.; Albert F. Siepert, memo for record, 20 Oct. 1966.
47. "Interim Agreement Implementing the 17 Jan. 1963 Agreement between the Department of Defense and NASA Regarding Management of the Atlantic Missile Range of DOD and the Merritt Island Launch Area of NASA, Part III, Logistic and Administrative Functions," signed 10 May 1963 by Maj. Gen. L. I. Davis, USAF, and Debus; NASA release 63-111, 23 May 1963.
48. C. C. Parker, LOC Asst. Dir. for Admin., to Debus, 23 May, 5, 19 June, 13 Aug., 9 Oct., 14 Nov. 1963, 8 Jan. 1964; LOC release 74-63, 4 Oct. 1963.
49. Parker to Debus, 18 Sept., 17 Oct., 7, 27 Nov. 1963, 2, 16 Jan. 1964; KSC release 56-64, 24 Apr. 1964.

Chapter 12: From Designs to Structures

1. LOC, "Construction Progress Reports," 6 Nov. 1962, p. 5; 27 Nov. 1962, p. 5; 10 July 1963, p. 2.
2. *Spaceport News,* 31 Oct. 1963, p. 4.
3. "Construction Progress Reports," 15 June 1963, p. 7; 13 Sept. 1963, p. 1; D. E. Eppert, Chief, Construction Div., Canaveral Dist., Corps of Engineers, to J. J. Frangie, with attachment: "Tabulation of Contracts Supervised by the Corps of Engineers for Construction of Complexes 34 and 37 as Well as Work on Merritt Island for NASA Facilities" (hereafter cited as Tabulation of Corps of Engineers Contracts).
4. *Spaceport News,* 8 Aug. 1963, pp. 4–5.
5. Ibid., 28 Feb., 8, 15 Aug. 1963, 29 July 1965.
6. Ibid., 15 Aug. 1963; "Launch Operations Progress Report," 26 Aug. 1963.
7. John F. Kennedy, address at Rice University 24 Sept. 1962, *Public Papers of the Presidents,* Washington, 1963, p. 329.
8. NASA Hq., OMSF Instruction MD-M9330.001, 15 Oct. 1962, with enclosure.
9. Facilities Programing Off., Facilities Engineering and Construction Div., LOC, "Summary Project Status Report," 29 Nov. 1963, p. III-1; Tabulation of Corps of Engineers Contracts, Sept. 1968.
10. *Spaceport News,* 16 Jan. 1964.
11. Corps of Engineers, South Atlantic Div., Canaveral Dist., *Apollo Launch Complex 39 Facilities Handbook* (hereafter cited as *LC-39 Facilities Handbook*), pp. 4–5.

12. *Spaceport News,* 16 Jan. 1964, p. 7.
13. "Construction Progress Reports," 16 Aug. 1963, p. 9; 20 Jan. 1964, p. 11; *Spaceport News,* 16 Jan. 1964, 26 Sept. 1963; *LC-39 Facilities Handbook,* p. 15.
14. *Spaceport News,* 16 Jan. 1964.
15. "Summary Project Status Report," 29 Nov. 1963, p. III-2.
16. "LOC Monthly Status Report to the Management Council, Office of Manned Space Flight," presented by Kurt H. Debus, 24 Sept. 1963, p. 15; Summary Project Status Report, 29 Nov. 1963, p. III-2.
17. "Construction Progress Report," 22 Nov. 1963, p. 15.
18. "Summary Project Status Reports," 29 Nov. 1963, p. III-3; 17 Apr. 1964, p. III-2; *Spaceport News,* 19 Sept. 1963, p. 1.
19. "Construction Progress Report," 29 Jan. 1964, p. 20.
20. "Narrative Project Status Report, 1-30 Apr. 1964," p. I-9.
21. "Construction Progress Report," 20 Jan. 1964, pp. 10-11; *LC-39 Facilities Handbook,* pp. 3, 5.
22. "Narrative Project Status Report, 1-28 Feb. 1964," p. I-9; "Summary Project Status Report," 2 Oct. 1964, pp. IV-1, IV-2.
23. *Detailed Construction Schedule, VAB Area Facilities,* 1 May 1964, rev. 30 June 1964, with cover letter from William E. Pearson, Chief, Schedules Off., 27 July 1964 (this series of schedules, revised and issued periodically, will be cited as *Detailed Construction Schedule,* facility, date).
24. "Narrative Project Status Report, 1-30 Apr. 1964," p. I-9.
25. *Apollo/Saturn V MILA Facilities Description,* report K-V-011, p. 1-13.
26. *Spaceport News,* 3, 10, 17 Sept. 1964.
27. Ibid., 3 Sept. 1964; Jones interview.
28. *Spaceport News,* 8 Oct. 1964.
29. "Narrative Project Status Report, 1-31 Dec. 1964," pp. I-4, I-5.
30. Ibid; *LC-39 Facilities Handbook,* pp. 9-10.
31. A. H. Bagnulo, Dir., Facilities Engineering and Construction Div., KSC, "Revised Designations for NASA Facilities," 3 Feb. 1965; George E. Mueller, Assoc. Admin. for Manned Space Flight, to Dir., KSC, "Facility Titles, KSC," with attachment, 8 Sept. 1965.
32. "Narrative Project Status Report," 1-31 Jan. 1965, pp. I-3 through I-5.
33. Ibid., 1-31 Mar. 1965, p. I-2; *Spaceport News,* 1 Apr. 1965.
34. "Construction Progress Report," 27 Nov. 1962.
35. Ibid., 22 Jan., 25 Feb. 1963.
36. MSC Florida Ops., "Description and Justification for Spacecraft Operations and Checkout Building," included in *John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA Fiscal Year 1963 Estimates, Apollo Mission Support Facilities, Project 7623;* "Manned Spacecraft Center Consolidated Activity Report for 16 Feb.-21 Mar. 1964," p. 78.
37. KSC, "Project Status Report," 1-31 Dec. 1964, p. I-39; Tabulation of Corps of Engineers Contracts, Sept. 1968.
38. Reyes interview, 24 June 1974; Chauvin interview, 24 June 1974.
39. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V MILA Facilities Description*, K-V-011, p. 3-1.
40. KSC, "Technical Progress Report," 19 Feb. 1964, p. 19.
41. Ling-Temco-Vought, Inc., "Historical Events—Calendar year 1964, Gemini and Apollo Programs and Facilities, Manned Spacecraft Center Florida Operations, Cape Kennedy and Merritt Island," 22 Dec. 1964; Morris interview.
42. *Spaceport News,* 15 Apr. 1965.
43. Ibid.
44. Ibid., 27 May 1965.
45. Ibid., 13 Sept., 26 Dec. 1965.

46. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 6 July 1964; Parker, 7 June 1964; KSC, *C. O. E., Report of Fatal Accident at LC-39,* signed by Col. W. L. Starnes.

Chapter 13: New Devices for New Deeds

1. D. D. Buchanan, memo for the record, 16 April 1962.
2. LOC, *Procurement Plan,* signed by Kurt Debus, Director, 11 Sept. 1962, p. 2.
3. DDJ, 1, 7 Nov. 1962; Debus to Brackett, 29 Nov. 1962; LOD, "Crawler/Transporter Proposal Conference Attendees, 17 December 1962" (in Buchanan file).
4. R. P. Young, Exec. Off., memo for record, 13 Mar. 1963, in NASA History Office; James E. Webb and Robert C. Seamans, Jr., "Statement of the NASA Administrator on Selection of a Contractor for the Crawler-Transporter," 13 May 1963, ibid.; *Congress and the Nation, 1945–1964* (Washington: Congressional Quarterly Service, 1965), p. 320.
5. "Briefing, Crawler-Transporter Procurement," 5 Feb. 1963, copy in Fred Renaud's private papers.
6. "Decision to Negotiate an Individual Contract under 10 USC 2394 (a) (11)," 5 Dec. 1963; "Determination and Findings for Method of Contracting, Cost-Plus-Incentive Fee," 7 Dec. 1962, both in NASA History Off.
7. W. Kraft, Admin. Asst., Marion Power Shovel Co., to Theodor A. Poppel, 11 Dec. 1963, pp. 1–4, in Fred Renaud's private papers.
8. Ibid., pp. 5–6.
9. Renaud interview, 4 Apr. 1973.
10. *Aviation Week* 84 (20 June 1966): 78.
11. Gramer interview, 19 July 1973.
12. "Fire Alarm System for Crawler-Transporter," 29 Jan. 1965, in Fred Renaud's private papers.
13. Gorman to Petrone, 22 Mar. 1965, including a memo of 29 Feb. (*sic*) 1965, in Fred Renaud's private papers.
14. "Fire Protection Survey and Recommendations," attachment to letter of C. W. Conway to Ronald Worchester, 16 June 1965; copies in Fred Renaud's private papers.
15. *Spaceport News,* 15 Feb. 1968, p. 6.
16. Unless otherwise cited, the descriptive information in this and the following paragraphs concerning the crawlerway and launch pad A facilities is based on the *LC-39 Facilities Handbook,* pp. 35–51.
17. *Spaceport News,* 19 Sept. 1963, p. 1; 17 Oct. 1963, p. 1; Tabulation of Corps of Engineers Contracts, Sept. 1968; "Summary Project Status Report," 29 Nov. 1963, pp. III-2, IV-3; *Technical Progress Report, Second Quarter CY 1965* (TR-194), 30 July 1965, p. 38.
18. *Apollo/Saturn V MILA Facilities Descriptions,* report K-V-011, p. 1-26.
19. Memo, Col. Bagnulo, 3 Feb. 1965.
20. Hahn interview.
21. Boylston interview.
22. Wm. Clearman, "Prototype of Service Arm 6," 30 July 1963, on microfilm in Vehicle Servicing and Accessories Sec. of Design Engineering Off., KSC.
23. "Qualification Test for Cable Retract Sled for Saturn V and Pneumatic Console No. 2," prepared by C. Dyer, Brown Engineering, in Design Engineering Files; photographs in Brad Downs's Design Engineering Files, KSC. The authors are indebted to Mr. Downs for his help in this section.
24. "Weekly Notes," Haworth, 5 Aug.; Clark, 6 Aug. 1964; Gramer interview, 19 Sept. 1972.
25. "Weekly Notes," 19 Aug. 1964.

26. *Technical Progress Report Third and Fourth Quarter CY 1964* (TR-159), 5 Mar. 1965, p. 61; "Saturn V Swing Arm Program Problem," an analytical statement, unsigned and undated. This contract was NAS 10-1751.
27. Rowland interview; R. D. Rowland, Hayes International Corp., to Benson, 25 July 1972.
28. James W. Dalton and Willard Halcomb, Apollo-Saturn V Test and Systems Engineering Off., to Petrone, 28 Oct. 1964; "Saturn V Swing Arm Program Problem," p. 1.
29. William L. Clearman, Jr., Chief, Apollo-Saturn V Test and Systems Engineering Off., to Chief, Launch Equipment Support Sec., Procurement Div., "Contract NAS10-1751, Proposed Changes to Incorporate Revised Drawing Lists," 23 Nov. 1966.
30. James W. Dalton, Apollo-Saturn V Test and Systems Engineering Off., "Minutes of Meeting—Change Review Board—Service Army Contract with International—17 Sept. 1964," 22 Sept. 1964; *Method of Handling Engineering Changes, Contracts NAS10-1751—NAS10-1847.*
31. James W. Dalton to William T. Clearman, "Status of Hayes Service Arm Contract as Result of Sole Source Vendor Items," 2 Dec. 1964.
32. "Saturn V Swing Arm Program Problem," p. 2.
33. Kurt H. Debus to L. F. Jeffers, Hayes International Corp., Birmingham, AL, 5 Nov. 1965.
34. "Saturn V Swing Arm Program Problem," p. 1; "Management Inquiry into the Procurement of Service Arms for Launch Complex 39," pp. 42, 43, 62.
35. "Saturn V Swing Arm Program Problem," p. 1; Gramer interview, 21 Sept. 1972.
36. *Spaceport News,* 28 Oct. 1965, p. 3.
37. *Technical Progress Report Third and Fourth Quarter CY 1964* (TR-159), 5 Mar. 1965, p. 61; Procurement Div., "Status Summary of Active Contracts as of 31 Mar. 1964," sec. II, p. 25.
38. *Technical Progress Report Third Quarter CY 1965* (TR-250), 30 Sept. 1965, pp. 3-18.
39. *Saturn V Launch Support Equipment General Criteria and Description* (SP-4-37-D), rev. 15 Sept. 1964, Launch Support Equipment Engineering Div., pp. 2-62; *Technical Progress Report First Quarter CY 1965,* 26 Apr. 1965, p. 46; KSC Procurement Div., "Status Summary of Active Contracts as of 30 Sept. 1966," sec. II, p. 6.
40. "Apollo/Saturn V MILA Facilities Descriptions," pp. 2-81, 2-82; "Construction Progress Reports," 1 July 1965, p. 4.
41. R. T. Cruden and J. R. Ellis, memo for record, "Ordnance Meeting, LC-39 Arming Tower," 25 Mar. 1963; J. R. Ellis, memo for record, "Ordnance Requirements, Arming Tower LC-39," 26 Mar. 1963; W. T. Clearman, Jr., and James H. Deese, "Meeting at Complex 34 Operations Support Building to Discuss Saturn-V Ordnance Installation Problem," 27 Mar. 1963. The authors are indebted to Francis Jarrett for research on this subject, which is covered more fully in Jarrett and Lindemann, "History of the John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA, to 1965," typescript.
42. J. R. Ellis, memo for record, "Meeting and Discussions Concerning Arming Tower, LC-39," 9 Apr. 1963; minutes of meeting, "Rust Contract BE-9002, LC-39 Arming Tower, Contract DA-08-123-ENG-(NASA-1752)," 15 Apr. 1963.
43. Off. of the Canaveral Dist. Engineer, "Report on Restudy of Arming Tower to Resolve Dead Load and Wind Load Problems," 20 Dec. 1963, pp. 1-5.
44. Ibid.
45. Vehicle Design Integration Working Group, "Minutes of the Saturn V Common Ordnance Meeting," Huntsville, AL, 10-11 Dec. 1963, pp. 1-4.
46. "Summary Project Status Report," 17 Apr. 1964, p. IV-3; "Development Summary Schedule, Complex 39, 1963"; *Technical Progress Report, Third and Fourth Quarter CY 1964,* 5 Mar. 1965, pp. 45, 58; Tabulation of Corps of Engineers Contracts, Sept. 1968;

Technical Progress Report, Second Quarter CY 1965, 30 July 1965, p. 38; *Technical Progress Report, Third Quarter CY 1965* (TR-250), 30 Sept. 1965, pp. 3-18; *LC-39 Facilities Handbook*, p. 54.

47. *Technical Progress Report, Third and Fourth Quarter CY 1964* (TR-159), 5 Mar. 1965, p. 45.
48. *Technical Progress Report, First Quarter CY 1965* (TR-168), 26 Apr. 1965, p. 33; *Technical Progress Report, Second Quarter CY 1965* (TR-194), 30 July 1965, p. 34.
49. H. D. Brewster and E. G. Hughes, *Lightning Protection for Saturn Launch Complex 39,* report TR-4-28-2-D, 18 Oct. 1963.
50. Ibid., app. A.
51. Ibid., pp. 3-6 through 3-16 and app. A.
52. Ibid., pp. 2-3, 3-3, 3-4, A-1; A. R. Raffaelli, "Introduction to Lightning," report LOC LT1R-2-DE-62-6, 14 Dec. 1962.
53. H. D. Brewster to Lightning Protection Committee, "Minutes of the Third Lightning Protection Committee Meeting, 29 Sept. 1965, at KSC," 20 Oct. 1965, KSC Technical Documents Library.
54. KSC, "Weather Effects on Apollo/Saturn V Operations, Apollo 4 through Apollo 13," report 630-44-0001, 27 July 1970.
55. KSC release 11-66, 21 Jan. 1966.
56. *Building Construction Magazine,* Feb. 1966, p. 29.

Chapter 14: Socio-Economic Problems on the Space Coast

1. Petrone interview, 25 May 1972, pp. 62-68. Petrone discussed the difference between the industrial and construction workers in a sympathetic and understanding way.
2. Senate Committee on Government Operations, Subcommittee on Investigations, *Hearings on Work Stoppages at Missile Bases*, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 25 Apr.-9 June 1961.
3. Ibid., pt. 1, pp. 11-15, 36-46.
4. The John F. Kennedy Space Center Missile Site Labor Relations Committee, "Function Responsibilities and Procedure," p. 1.
5. Glenn M. Parker, "The Missile Site Labor Commission," *ILR Research* 8 (1962): 11.
6. John Miraglia, "Project Stabilization Agreement," pp. 1-2.
7. Senate Committee on Government Operations, Subcommittee on Investigations, *Hearings on Work Stoppages at Missile Bases*, 87th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 2, 4 May 1961, pp. 520 ff.
8. Yates interview.
9. Edward Kiffmeyer, Labor Relations Off., AFETR, "Strike Summary Reports," Patrick Air Force Base, FL, monthly reports from Jan. 1962-July 1965; *History of Air Force Missile Test Center*, vol. 1, 1964, p. 166.
10. *Spaceport News*, 6 Feb. 1964.
11. *Melbourne Daily Times*, 18 Feb. 1964.
12. *Orlando Sentinel*, 5 Feb. 1964.
13. Charles L. Buckley, Jr., Chief, Security Off., memo for record, "FEC Incident, MILA," 1 Feb. 1964.
14. *Cocoa Tribune*, 10 Feb. 1964.
15. *Orlando Sentinel*, 12 Feb. 1964.
16. *Melbourne Daily Times*, 18 Feb. 1964.
17. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 14 Feb. 1964.
18. *Orlando Sentinel*, 19, 28 Feb. 1964.
19. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 22 Apr. 1964.
20. Ibid.

21. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 3 June 1964.
22. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 11 June 1964; Titusville *Star-Advocate*, 10 June 1964.
23. Paul Styles, Dir., Off. of Labor Relations, memo, 9 June, 1964, copy in files of KSC Security Office; *Miami Herald*, 19 June 1964, p. 2; Gooch interview; Horner interview.
24. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia (signed by Oliver E. Kearns), 25 June 1964.
25. Ibid.; *History of the Air Force Missile Test Center*, vol. 1, 1964, pp. 159, 165.
26. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 16 Sept. 1964.
27. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia (signed by Oliver E. Kearns), 23 July, 20 Aug., 2 Sept. 1964.
28. Ibid., 10 Sept. 1964. Several contractor representatives who dealt with labor matters shared Kearns' view of Baxley.
29. Ibid., 16 Sept. 1964.
30. *Cocoa Tribune*, 14 Sept. 1965.
31. KSC Weekly Notes, Kearns, 22 Sept. 1965; *Orlando Sentinel*, 17 Sept. 1965.
32. *Cocoa Tribune*, 4 Oct. 1965.
33. *Time*, 4 July 1969, p. 38.
34. George L. Simpson, Jr., to Webb and Dryden, 25 June 1965.
35. Annie May Hartsfield, Mary Alice Griffin, and Charles M. Grigg, eds., *Summary Report NASA Impact on Brevard County* (Tallahassee: Institute of Social Research, Florida State Univ., 1966), pp. 10–11, table 2, p. 21, citing U.S. census reports.
36. Ibid., pp. 13, 52.
37. Ibid., pp. 104, 106, 107.
38. Ibid., pp. 17, 18, 26, 96.
39. Charles Grigg and Wallace A. Dynes, *Selected Factors in the Deceleration of Social Change in a Rapidly Growing Area* (Tallahassee, 1966), table 3, p. 144.
40. *Spaceport News*, 16 May 1963, p. 6.
41. Ibid., 13 June 1963, p. 3.
42. Ibid., 14 May, 9 July 1964. Sixteen thousand individuals, 56% of the total work force, responded to the questionnaires.
43. Siebeneichen interview.
44. Peter Dodd, *Social Change in Space-Impacted Communities* (Cambridge, MA: The Committee on Space of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, Aug. 1964), pp. 20–21.
45. KSC Weekly Notes, Miraglia, 22 Apr., 27 May 1964.
46. KSC Weekly Notes, Van Staden, 7 Apr. 1965.
47. *Spaceport News*, 20 Aug. 1964.
48. Ibid., 1 July 1965.
49. *Florida Statistical Abstract, 1969* (Gainesville: Univ. of Florida, 1969), pp. 21, 28.
50. *Spaceport News*, 29 Feb. 1968.
51. *Time*, 4 July 1969, p. 38.
52. Quoted in John G. Rogers, "What Life at Cape Kennedy Does to Marriage," *Parade*, 9 July 1969.
53. Dr. Ronald C. Erbs, M.D., to Faherty, 17 July 1974, in author's personal files.
54. Nazaro interview.

Chapter 15: Putting It All Together: LC-39 Site Activation

1. KSC, "Apollo/Saturn V Facility Activation Plan," 3d Coordination Draft, 30 Dec. 1965; Petrone interview, 17 Sept. 1970; "Presentation of the NASA Oversight Subcommittee, Committee on Science and Astronautics, House of Representatives," 29 Oct. 1968, pp. 38–57.

2. William T. Clearman, Jr., to T. A. Strong, "Lt. Col. Donald R. Scheller, USAF (NASA)," 12 Oct. 1964; Clearman interview, 13 Sept. 1973.
3. KSC, "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #1," 19 Mar. 1965.
4. KSC, *LC-39 Site Activation Master Schedule (Preliminary), Level A,* rev. 17 Feb. 1967.
5. KSC, "Minutes of Site Activation Board Meeting #1"; "Presentation to the NASA Oversight Subcommittee," 29 Oct. 1968, pp. 43-44.
6. Gruene to Apollo/Saturn V Test Off., "Comments on Site Activation Board Charter," 1 Apr. 1965.
7. Bagnulo to Scheller, "Site Activation Board Charter," 30 Mar. 1965.
8. Clark to Scheller, "Comments on Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board," 31 Mar. 1965.
9. KSC, "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #3," 5 Aug. 1965.
10. Donald R. Scheller, "Management by Exception, Activation of Apollo/Saturn V Launch Complex 39," 15 May 1967; "Presentation to the NASA Oversight Subcommittee," 29 Oct. 1968, pp. 41-42.
11. L. S. Harris, Chief, Site Operation Gp., Engineering and Development Dir., KSC, to Bagnulo, "Activation Projects, LC-39," 23 Sept. 1965, in KSC Engineering and Development Dir. Reading Files, 1965-66; "Minutes of KSC Site Activation Working Group Meeting #1," 3 Dec. 1965; Scheller to SAB, "Apollo/Saturn V SAB Management Meeting Membership," 19 Jan. 1966.
12. Scheller, "Management by Exception"; Clearman interview, 26 Oct. 1973; Fulton interview; Chandler interview.
13. Boeing Atlantic Test Center Management Systems Staff, "ERS Recovery Plan," by A. J. Culver and K. G. Baird, Apr. 1966.
14. Scheller, "Management by Exception"; Murphy interview.
15. Petrone's notes, 14 Feb. 1963; Wagner interview, 21 Sept. 1973; Gassman interview; *NASA Apollo Inter-Center ICD Management Procedure*, report CM-001-001-1B, Jan. 1969, pp. 3-4.
16. Petrone, "KSC Apollo/Saturn Configuration Management Program Directive," 29 Sept. 1965, Management Configuration Off. files.
17. KSC Apollo Program Directive No. 2, 9 Dec. 1965.
18. Gassman interview; Leet interview, 8 Nov. 1973.
19. KSC/MSC, *ICD-IRN Processing,* 6 May 1968; Wagner interview, 21 Sept. 1973.
20. Petrone to Poppel, "VLF-39 Facility Checkout Vehicle Minimum Requirements and Operational Characteristic," 1 Mar. 1962; Poppel (signed by Owens) to Petrone, "Minimum Requirements for Facility Checkout Vehicle for Complex 39," 2 Apr. 1962.
21. Phillips to NASA Manned Space Flight Centers, "Apollo Delivery and Launch Schedules," 16 Feb. 1965; Phillips to NASA Manned Space Flight Centers, "Apollo Schedules and Mission Assignments," 12 Jan. 1965, in Phillips file, NASA Hq. History Off.; KSC, Plans, Program, and Resources Dir., "Verification of '500-F' Schedule Dates Based upon OMSF Approved Apollo Schedule," 10 Mar. 1966.
22. Petrone to Arthur Rudolph, Saturn V Program Manager, MSFC, 11 Jan. 1966.
23. Haggard interview; "Marion Power and Shovel Company, PMSLC Hearing, Miami, Florida, May 1965," contract NASA 10-477, KSC Labor Relations Off.
24. Michael E. Haworth, Jr., NASA Contracting Off., to Marion Power Shovel, "Contract NAS 10-477," 25 Jan. 1965.
25. Clearman to Petrone, Weekly Notes of 25 June 1965.
26. George W. Walter, *Modifications to Bearings for Traction Support Rollers on Crawler-Transporters*, report KSC TR-260-D, 15 Dec. 1965, pp. 1-2; KSC Weekly Notes, Poppel, 29 July 1965; F. Jones, Technical Supervisor, to Richard McCoy, "Contract NAS 10-477, Salvage of Bearings," 26 Oct. 1965.
27. Walter, *Modifications to Bearings*, p. 2; "KSC Press Briefing and Crawler Demonstration," 25 Jan. 1966, pp. 3-4, 12.

28. M. E. Haworth to Patrick Kraft, Treasurer, Marion Power Shovel Co., 15 June 1965.
29. M. E. Haworth to F. Boyle, Pres., Marion Power Shovel Co., "NAS 10-477," 14 Oct. 1965; Gordon Harris, Chief of Public Affairs, to Debus, 30 Sept. 1965.
30. Morgan F. Jones to Poppel, 15 Nov. 1965; Poppel, "Weekly Notes to Debus," 8 Oct. 1965; "Technical Progress Reports," Third Quarter 1965, pp. 3-16; Buchanan interview, 4 Oct. 1974; Walter, *Modifications to Bearings*, p. 12; "KSC Press Briefing and Crawler Demonstration," 25 Jan. 1966, pp. 16-17.
31. KSC Weekly Notes, Poppel, 3, 10 Dec. 1965; Bagnulo, 17 Dec. 1965; *Spaceport News*, 3 Feb. 1966.
32. NASA, *PERT, Program Evaluation and Review Technique, Handbook*, NPC-101, 1 Sept. 1961; "KSC Presentation to the NASA Oversight Subcommittee, Committee on Science and Astronautics," 29 Oct. 1968, pp. 38-58; Potate interview, 6 June 1972.
33. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #3," 5 Aug. 1965; KSC Weekly Notes, Petrone, 30 July 1965.
34. L. Steven Harris to Bagnulo, "Site Activation Board Meeting," 28 Oct. 1965, in Engineering and Development Dir. reading files, 1965-1966; Wiley interview, 31 Oct. 1973.
35. Petrone to Phillips, 4 Nov. 1965.
36. Petrone to Phillips, "Proposed SA500F-1/501 Work Around Schedule," 7 Dec. 1965.
37. KSC Weekly Notes, Bagnulo, 17 Nov. 1965; Bagnulo to Debus and others, "Pad A Settlement," 9 Dec. 1965; Roberts interview.
38. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn Site Activation Board Meeting #14," 6 Jan. 1966; "LC-39 Site Activation Master Schedule Meeting," 17 Jan. 1966.
39. Potter interview; Steven Harris interview; Tom Wills interview; "Reading File of Engineering Division's Site Activation Group," Sept. 1965, Steven Harris's files, KSC.
40. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #16," 3 Feb. 1966; KSC, "PERT Analysis Report," 20 Jan. 1966.
41. Clearman, Weekly Notes to Petrone, 7 Jan., 4, 18, 25 Feb., 3 Mar. 1966.
42. Clearman, Weekly Notes to Petrone, 3, 25 Mar., 1, 15 Apr. 1966.
43. "LC-39 Site Activation Status Reports," weekly for March and April 1966; Brewster interview; Hahn interview.
44. "LC-39 Site Activation Status Report," 27 Apr. 1966; Hahn interview.
45. "LC-39 Site Activation Status Reports," weekly reports for Mar. 1966; Weekly Notes, Bagnulo, 25 Mar. 1966; *Spaceport News*, 10, 31 Mar. 1966.
46. Rigell interview; "LC-39 Site Activation Weekly Reports," Mar., Apr. 1966.
47. "LC-39 Site Activation Reports," 13 Apr., 5 May, 3 Aug. 1966.
48. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #24," 26 May 1966; *Spaceport News*, 26 May 1966.
49. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #25," 16 June 1966; *Spaceport News*, 16 June 1966.
50. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meetings" 25, 26, and 27, dated 16, 23 June, 7 July 1966.
51. Barfus interview; Enlow interview; Sparkman interview, 6 Dec. 1973.
52. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meeting #27," 7 July 1966.
53. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meetings" 27 and 28, dated 7 and 21 July 1966; *Spaceport News*, 4 Aug. 1966.
54. "Minutes of Apollo/Saturn V Site Activation Board Meetings" 28 and 29, 21 July, 4 Aug. 1966.
55. William I. Moore and Raymond J. Arnold, "Failure of Apollo/Saturn V Liquid Oxygen Loading System," 1967 Cryogenic Engineering Conference, 21-23 Aug. 1967, Stanford Univ., CA, paper K-1, in *Advances in Cryogenic Engineering* 13 (1967): 534-44; Boeing Atlantic Test Center, "Technical Report of Complex 39A LOX System Failure, 10 Sept. 1966"; "Fund Board of Inquiry Findings on Failure of LOX Distribution System—19

Aug. 1966," J. G. Shinkle, Chairman; "Presentation to the Congressional Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight," pp. 114-19.

56. Moore and Arnold, "Failure of LOX Loading System," pp. 534-44; "Presentation to the Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight," pp. 114-19.
57. "LC-39 Site Activation Status Reports," weekly for Sept., Oct. 1966.
58. Robert Hotz, *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 22 Mar. 1965, p. 11.
59. "KSC Presentation to the NASA Oversight Subcommittee," 29 Oct. 1968; Petrone interview, 17 Sept. 1970.

Chapter 16: Automating Launch Operations

1. Sidney Sternberg, "Automated Checkout Equipment—The Apollo Hippocrates," in *Man on the Moon,* ed. Eugene Rabinowitch and Richard Lewis (New York: Basic Books, 1969), pp. 196-97.
2. W. Haeussermann, Dir., Guidance and Control Div., MSFC, memo for record, "Meeting on Saturn Checkout Equipment," 22 July 1960; Paul interview.
3. Debus to Dieter Grau, "Automatic Checkout Committee," 2 Sept. 1960; Richard interview, 12 Dec. 1973. See B. J. Funderburk, *Automation in Saturn I First Stage Checkout* (NASA TN D-4328, Jan. 1968), for story of the Packard Bell 250 and MSFC's early automation efforts.
4. Ludie Richard and Charles O. Brooks, *The Saturn Systems Automation Plan,* MSFC, 15 Sept. 1961, sec. II.
5. Ibid., sec. VII.
6. "Brief Chronological History of the Saturn V Breadboard," attached to *MSFC Automation Plan,* 8 May 1962; Burns interview; Greenfield interview.
7. Jafferis interviews, 19 Dec. 1973, 22 Jan. 1974; Greenfield interview; Whiteside interview, 4 Jan. 1974.
8. Jafferis interview, 19 Dec. 1973; "Description for Use of Saturn Ground Computer on SA-5," draft copy in Jafferis's private papers; *Spaceport News,* 21 May 1964, p. 2.
9. B. E. Duran, "Saturn I/IB Launch Vehicle Operational Status and Experience," read at Aeronautic and Space Engineering and Manufacturing Meeting, New York, 7-11 Oct. 1968, Society of Automotive Engineers reprint 680739; KSC, "Utilization of Saturn/Apollo Control and Checkout System for Prelaunch Checkout and Launch Operations," GP-663, 25 Mar. 1969.
10. W. O. Frost and D. E. Norvell, "Telemetry System Design for Saturn Vehicles," *Proceedings, 1966 International Telemetering Conference,* Los Angeles, 18-20 Oct. 1966, p. 70. See also E. A. Robin, "Development and Utilization of Computer Test Programs for Checkout of Space Vehicles," p. 297; Canaveral Council of Technical Societies, *Proceedings of the Second Space Congress,* Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965, pp. 617, 634; D. M. Schmidt, "Automatic Checkout Systems for Stages of the Saturn V Manned Space Vehicle," *International Convention Record of Electrical and Electronics Engineers* 13 (pt. 4, Mar. 1965), p. 87.
11. Canaveral Council of Technical Societies, *Proceedings of the Second Space Congress,* p. 656; William G. Bodie, "Techniques of Implementing Launch Automation Programs, Saturn IB Space Vehicle System," *Practical Techniques and Applications*, 4: 740. See also *Apollo/Saturn IB Launch Operations Plan AS-203,* KSC document K-IB-021.3, p. 6-8.
12. Duran, "Saturn I/IB Launch Vehicle Operational Status"; KSC, "Utilization of Saturn/Apollo Control and Checkout."
13. Richard Dutton and William Jafferis, "Utilization of Saturn/Apollo Control and Checkout System for Prelaunch Checkout and Launch Operations," paper read at New York

Univ., Project SETE, 24–28 July 1967, pp. 3-34 through 3-43; Medlock interview; Thompson interview.

14. F. Brooks Moore and William Jafferis, "Apollo/Saturn Prelaunch Checkout Display Systems," read at IEEE Conference on Displays, Univ. of Loughborough, England, 7–10 Sept. 1971, pp. 7–9.
15. Ibid., pp. 9, 15–16.
16. Ibid., p. 14.
17. Richard Jenke to Benson, 17 Jan. 1975; Richard Smith interview; Medlock interview; Thompson interview.
18. Dutton and Jafferis, "Utilization of Saturn/Apollo Control and Checkout System," pp. 3-44 through 3-48; Jenke to Benson, 17 Jan. 1975.
19. Jenke to Benson, 17 Jan. 1975; Medlock and Thompson interviews.
20. Jenke to Benson, 17 Jan. 1975; Medlock and Thompson interviews.
21. Fridtjof Speer, Chairman, Saturn System Evaluation Working Gp., MSFC, to LOD Dir., "Justification for Early Delivery of the Saturn Blockhouse Records and Sequence Records," 19 Sept. 1961, Debus reading file.
22. R. W. Bivans, G. D. Matthews, and F. T. Innes, "A Scanning and Digitizing System for Multiple Asynchronous Telemetry Data Sources," read at National Telemetry Conference, Los Angeles, June 1964, p. 1, G. D. Matthews's private papers.
23. Bruns interview, 3 Jan. 1974; Bobby Griffin and G. D. Matthews, *The Real-Time Telemetry Data Processing Effort at the Launch Operations Center,* MTP-LVO-63-2, MSFC, p. 1.
24. Griffin and Matthews, *Real-Time Telemetry Data,* pp. 9–11; Bruns interview, 3 Jan. 1974; Corbett, Hughes, and Jelen interviews.
25. Griffin and Matthews, *Real-Time Telemetry Data,* pp. 3–6; George Matthews interview.
26. Griffin and Matthews, *Real-Time Telemetry Data,* pp. 14–17; Bivans, Matthews, and Innes, "Scanning and Digitizing"; George Matthews interview; LOC Weekly Notes, Sendler to Debus, 23 Aug., 15 Nov. 1962.
27. KSC Computation Br., "Scientific Computation Support of Saturn/Apollo Vehicle, SA-7," TR-103-2, 3 Dec. 1964.
28. Joralan interview, 3 Jan. 1974; LOC Weekly Notes, Sendler to Debus, 22 Mar. 1962.
29. LOC Weekly Notes, Gruene to Debus, 21 Feb. 1962.
30. Raymond Clark, Asst. LOC Dir., to Col. Max Carey, "Request for Additional Data on NASA Telemetry Requirements," 6 Oct. 1962; Debus to Davis, "The AFMTC Launch Area Telemetry System Plan, 28 September 1962," 18 Oct. 1962.
31. Telephone directory, Project Mercury Field Ops., STG, Cape Canaveral, FL, Sept. 1961; "Patent Application on ACE, NASA Case No. 8012," encl. to letter, James O. Harrel to Harold G. Johnson, 20 Jan. 1967, Johnson's private papers; Walton interview, 17 Dec. 1970. The Cape launch team first appeared as Preflight Operations Division on a Sept. 1962 MSC organization chart. Earlier it was called Mercury Field Operations or MSC's Atlantic Missile Range Operations.
32. Parsons interview; Preston interview, 22 Jan. 1974.
33. Parsons interview; Walton interview, 17 Dec. 1970; Preston interview, 22 Jan. 1974; W. E. Parsons, Head, Flight Instrumentation Sec., to C. W. Frick, Head, Apollo Project Off., MSC, "Implementation Plan for Apollo SPACE System," 26 June 1962, Johnson's private papers; "PACE-S/C History," compiled by Harold Johnson ca. 1963, Johnson's private papers.
34. Parsons interview; Harold Johnson interview; "PACE-S/C History"; Walton interview, 17 Dec. 1970.
35. Tom S. Walton, MSC Florida Ops., *Experimental Station Implementation and Planning,* 18 Dec. 1964; Walton interview, 17 Dec. 1970.
36. "PACE-S/C History"; Parsons interview; Walton interview, 23 Jan. 1974.
37. Parsons interview; Norwalk interview; Walton interview, 23 Jan. 1974.

38. Parsons interview.
39. Page interview; *Spaceport News,* 6 Jan. 1966; Apollo Support Dept., General Electric Co., *ACE-S/C, Acceptance Checkout Equipment, Spacecraft,* Daytona Beach, FL, undated.
40. Apollo Support Dept., General Electric Co., *ACE-S/C;* James O. Hassell to Harold G. Johnson, "Patent Application on ACE," 20 Jan. 1967, with encl. 1, "Patent Application on ACE, NASA Case No. 8012," Johnson's private papers; Harold Johnson interview.
41. Moore and Jafferis, "Apollo/Saturn Prelaunch Checkout," pp. 4-7.

Chapter 17: Launching the Saturn IB

1. Debus to Dep. Assoc. Admin. for Manned Space Flight, "Saturn I/IB Pad Utilization," 13 Nov. 1963; T. F. Goldcamp, memo for record, "Modification of LC-34 for Saturn IB," 12 Dec. 1963.
2. OMSF, *Mission Operation Report, Apollo/Saturn Flight Mission AS-201,* NASA report M-932-66-01, pp. 14-17; KSC Weekly Notes, Poppel, 1 July 1965; NASA release 66-32, *Apollo/Saturn 201 Press Kit,* 17 Feb. 1966, pp. 41-43.
3. OMSF, *Mission Operation Report, AS-201,* pp. 14-17; NASA, *AS-201 Press Kit,* pp. 41-43.
4. KSC Weekly Notes, Bagnulo, 5 Aug. 1965; *Spaceport News,* 26 Aug. 1965; KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-201," 27 Dec. 1965-Jan. 1966.
5. KSC Weekly Notes, Hans Gruene, 26 Aug. 1965.
6. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* p. 117; KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 26 Aug. 1965.
7. KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 17 Sept., 1 Oct. 1965.
8. KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 17, 24 Sept., 1 Oct. 1965; Petrone, 7 Oct. 1965.
9. *Brevard Sentinel,* 20 Feb. 1966; KSC release 17-66, 16 Feb. 1966; *Spaceport News,* 18 Feb., 3 Mar. 1966.
10. MSFC, *Saturn IB Vehicle Handbook,* vol. 1, *Vehicle Description* (prepared by Chrysler Corp. Space Div.), 25 July 1966, p. II-7 (S-IB stage data summary); MSFC, *Saturn-Apollo Space Vehicle Summary, AS-201,* p. 21; NASA, *AS-201 Press Kit,* pp. 37-38; KSC Weekly Notes, Von Staden, 19 Aug. 1965.
11. MSFC, *Saturn-Apollo Space Vehicle Summary, AS-201;* Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* p. 121; KSC Weekly Notes, John J. Williams, 28 Oct. 1965; NASA, *AS-201 Press Kit,* pp. 22, 39-40.
12. KSC Weekly Notes, Preston, 30 Sept. 1965; Petrone, 30 Sept. 1965.
13. KSC Weekly Notes, Petrone, 7, 28 Oct. 1965; Gruene, 8, 15, 22, 29 Oct. 1965.
14. KSC Weekly Notes, John J. Williams, 28 Oct., 10, 18 Nov. 1965; Preston, 10, 18 Nov. 1965.
15. KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 10 Nov. 1965.
16. KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene, 26 Nov., 3 Dec. 1965.
17. KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-201," 8-23 Dec. 1965; KSC Weekly Report, John J. Williams to Debus, 6 Jan. 1966.
18. KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-201," 8-23 Dec. 1965; KSC Weekly Report, Gruene to Debus, 10 Dec. 1965.
19. KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-201," 27 Dec. 1965-7 Jan. 1966; KSC Weekly Reports, Gruene to Debus, 7 Jan. 1966; Williams to Debus, 6 Jan. 1966.
20. *Miami Herald,* 13 Jan. 1966.
21. Carlson interview, 16 Dec. 1970.
22. Bryan interview.
23. KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-201," 24 Jan.-18 Feb. 1966; KSC Weekly Notes, Gruene to Debus, 15 Oct. 1965; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn IB Launch Plan, AS-201,* 27 Oct. 1965.

24. Phillips to Petrone, TWX, 17 Feb. 1966, Phillips chronological files.
25. KSC, Launch Vehicle Operations, "Problems in AS-201 Checkout," 11 Mar. 1966.
26. Donnelly interview, 17 Nov. 1970.
27. Gruene interview, 19 Nov. 1970.
28. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn IB Ground Systems Evaluation Report, AS-201,* Apr. 1966.
29. Melvyn Savage, Apollo Test Dir., to Phillips, Apollo Program Dir., "A/S 201 Hold," 3 Mar. 1966.
30. Gruene interview, 19 Nov. 1970.
31. Savage to Phillips, "A/S 201 Hold," 3 Mar. 1966.
32. *Brevard Sentinel,* 20 Feb. 1966; NASA, *Apollo/Saturn 201 Press Kit,* pp. 6-8; KSC, *AS-201 Ground Systems Evaluation Report,* p. iii.
33. Carlson interview, 16 Dec. 1970.
34. KSC, *AS-201 Ground Systems Evaluation Report,* p. iii; NASA, *Sixteenth Semi-Annual Report to Congress,* 1 July-31 Dec. 1966, p. 58; Weekly Notes, E. P. Bertram to Petrone, 3 Mar. 1966.
35. Debus to KSC Management Board, 17 Jan. 1966; Siepert to Debus, "Approach and Status of KSC Task Force on Management Appraisal," 1 Mar. 1966. The research for this portion on KSC's 1966 reorganization was done by Robert Lindemann and Frank Jarrett.
36. KSC, draft briefing memo, "Proposed KSC Reorganization," n.d., p. 3; NASA announcement, "Approval of Revised KSC Organizational Structure," 29 Apr. 1966.
37. KSC, draft briefing memo, "Proposed KSC Reorganization"; KSC, "Approval of Revised KSC Organizational Structure," KSC release 123-66, 29 Apr. 1966.
38. Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* p. 138; *Spaceport News,* 30 June, 7 July 1966; NASA, *Apollo/Saturn 203 Press Kit*, 21 June 1966, pp. 2-3, 18-19; KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-203," 6-15 Apr. 1966.
39. KSC, "Daily Status Report, AS-203," 19 Apr.-31 May 1966.
40. Guy Thomas to Chief, NASA Requirements Br., 1 June 1966, in Rocco Petrone's notes, 1966.
41. NASA, *Apollo/Saturn, AS-203, Post-Launch Report No. 1,* 22 July 1966; Akens, *Saturn Illustrated Chronology,* p. 144; *Spaceport News,* 7 July 1966.
42. KSC, "Daily Status Reports, AS-202," 28 Feb.-22 Aug. 1966, in particular see 30 Mar., 14, 27 Apr., 22 June, 5, 15, 29 July, 8, 15 Aug.; Sasseen interview, 4 Feb. 1974.
43. *Spaceport News,* 18 Aug. 1966.
44. NASA, *Sixteenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 July-31 Dec. 1966,* pp. 47-48; NASA release 66-213, 25 Aug. 1966.

Chapter 18: The Fire That Seared the Spaceport

1. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Report on Apollo 204 Accident,* report 956, 90th Cong., 2d sess., 30 Jan. 1968, pp. 3-7.
2. Idem, *Apollo Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 1, pp. 13-54. Dr. Charles A. Berry, chief of medical programs at MSC, introduced and discussed Dr. E. Roth's four-part report, "The Selection of Space-Cabin Atmosphere."
3. Frank J. Handel, "Gaseous Environments during Space Missions," *Journal of Space Craft and Rockets* 1 (July-Aug. 1964): 361.
4. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board to the Administrator, NASA,* 5 Apr. 1967, app. D, panel 2, pp. D-2-25, D-2-26.
5. *Science Journal* 2 (Feb. 1966): 83.
6. *Space/Aeronautics* 45 (Feb. 1966): 26, 28, 32.
7. Gen. Samuel Phillips, Apollo Program Dir., to John Leland Atwood, Pres., North American Aviation, "NASA Review Team Report," 19 Dec. 1965.

8. Ibid., p. 1.
9. Ibid., p. 66.
10. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Report on Apollo 204 Accident,* pt. 4, p. 318.
11. House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 404.
12. Ibid., p. 450.
13. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* p. 4-1.
14. "Daily Status Report, AS-204," 29 Aug. 1966; unless otherwise noted, the material in this section is based on these reports between 29 Aug. 1966 and 26 Jan. 1967.
15. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* p. 4-1.
16. Ibid., pp. 4-1, 4-2.
17. Chauvin interview, 6 June 1974.
18. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* p. 4-2.
19. Chauvin and Reyes interviews, 6–7 June 1974.
20. Ibid.
21. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* p. 4-2.
22. Ibid.
23. Notes by M. Mogilevsky, signed, undated, relative to his conversation with Thomas R. Baron, 12–13 Dec. 1966, in files of Frank Childers, KSC.
24. Statement of Frank Childers, 9 Feb. 1967, submitted at the request of the KSC Director, copy in files of Childers.
25. John H. Brooks, Chief, NASA Regional Inspections Off., to Kurt Debus, "Thomas Ronald Baron, North American Aviation Employee," 3 Feb. 1967.
26. Ibid.
27. Hansel interview.
28. Brooks to Debus, 3 Feb. 1967.
29. *Orlando Sentinel,* 6 Feb. 1967. John Hansel said later than North American had ample reason for firing Baron, because he had violated procedural requirements that brought automatic dismissal. Hansel interview.
30. Brooks to Debus, 3 Feb. 1967.
31. Ibid.
32. Titusville *Star-Advocate,* 7 Feb. 1967.
33. Childers interview.
34. Reyes interview, 19 Jan. 1973.
35. House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 498 ff.
36. Erlend A. Kennan and Edmund H. Harvey, Jr., *Mission to the Moon* (New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1969), pp. 115–16, 147n. This book is highly critical of NASA and the space program, with special emphasis on the 204 fire.
37. Chauvin and Reyes interviews, 6–7 Jun. 1974.
38. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* app. D, panel 7, p. D-7-12.
39. Ibid., app. B, p. B-142, testimony of Clarence Chauvin.
40. Ibid., p. B-145, testimony of William Schick.
41. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* app. D, panel 7, p. D-7-13.
42. Ibid., pp. D-7-4, D-7-5.
43. Ibid., app. B, pp. B-153, B-154, testimony of Gary W. Propst; p. B-159, testimony of A. R. Caswell.
44. Ibid., p. B-91, testimony of Bruce W. Davis.
45. Ibid., p. B-39, testimony of D. O. Babbitt.
46. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* app. D, panel 11, p. D-11-36. At least one member of the Pan American Fire Department, James A. Burch, testified that he had arrived in

time to help open the hatch—even though he admitted the trip to the gantry took from five to six minutes and ascent on the slow elevator consumed two minutes more. Ibid., app. B, p. B-177.

47. *Time,* 10 Feb. 1967, p. 19.
48. *Newsweek,* 13 Feb. 1967, pp. 96–97.
49. *The Sunday Star,* Washington, 21 May 1967.
50. Quoted in *Today,* 14 Apr. 1967; 14 May 1967.
51. *New York Times*, 4 Apr. 1967.
52. H. Bliss, "NASA's in the Cold, Cold Ground," *ATCHE Journal* 13 (May 1967): 419.
53. Lyndon B. Johnson, *The Vantage Point: Perspectives of the Presidency, 1963–1969* (New York: Popular Library, 1971), p. 284.
54. House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 207.
55. Announcement of Dr. Kurt H. Debus, 3 Feb. 1967, "KSC Cooperation with the Apollo 204 Investigation."
56. *Time,* 10 Feb. 1967, reported rumors of lengthy suffering that preceded the astronauts' deaths. The autopsy disproved these charges.
57. *Aviation Week and Space Technology,* 13 Feb. 1967, p. 33.
58. *Time,* 14 Apr. 1967.
59. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* 6 Apr. 1967, pp. 5-1, 5-2.
60. Ibid., p. 5-9.
61. Ibid., pp. 6-1, 6-2, 6-3.
62. Atkins interview, 29 May 1974.
63. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* pp. 6-2, 6-3.
64. Ibid., p. 6-3.
65. House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 81.
66. Atkins interview, 5 Sept. 1973.
67. *Report of Apollo 204 Review Board,* app. B, pp. B-39 through B-146.
68. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Apollo Accident: Hearings,* pts. 1, 2.
69. Ibid., pt. 4, p. 365; House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 13.
70. Senate Commitee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Apollo Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 6, p. 541.
71. Ibid., pt. 2, p. 127; pt. 5, pp. 416–17; House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 265.
72. House Subcommittee on NASA Oversight of the Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., 1: 386–87.
73. Ibid., pp. 390–91.
74. Ibid., p. 391.
75. Ibid., 1: 460–80, 501.
76. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Report on Apollo 204 Accident,* report 956, 90th Cong., 2d sess., p. 7; Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Apollo Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 4, p. 319. "Some early tendency to shift blame for the fire upon North American Aviation," Tom Alexander wrote in *Fortune,* July 1969, p. 117, "was gradually supplanted by NASA's admission that the fire was largely its own management's failure. NASA had overlooked and thereby in effect approved an inherent fault in design, namely the locking up of men in a capsule full of inflammable materials in an atmosphere of pure oxygen at sixteen pounds per

square inch of pressure. NASA, after all, had more experience in the design and operation of space hardware than any other organization and was, therefore, more to blame than North American if the hardware worked badly."

In 1972, however, North American Rockwell Corp., North American Aviation, Inc., Rockwell Standard Corp., and Rockwell Standard Co. settled out of court with the widows of the three astronauts who charged the spacecraft builders with negligence. The widows of White and Chaffee each received $150000, the widow of Grissom $300000. *Washington Post,* 11 Nov. 1972.

77. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Apollo Accident: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 1st sess., pt. 5, pp. 397, 428.
78. Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, *Report on Apollo 204 Accident,* report 956, 90th Cong., 1st sess., pp. 11, 20.
79. "New Hatch Slashes Apollo Egress Time," *Aviation Week and Space Technology,* 15 May 1967, p. 26.
80. William J. Normyle, "NASA Details Sweeping Apollo Revisions," *Aviation Week and Space Technology,* 15 May 1967, p. 24.
81. George E. Mueller, "Apollo Actions in Preparation for the Next Manned Flight," *Astronautics and Aeronautics* 5 (Aug. 1967): 28–33; "Records of Spacecraft Testing, July 1968," in files of R. E. Reyes, Preflight Operations Br., KSC.
82. Normyle, "NASA Details," p. 25; Reyes interview, 30 Oct. 1973; Atkins interview, 5 Nov. 1973. Actually the official reports to Debus during 1966 show no written reports from the Safety Office. Atkins must have reported orally at irregular intervals.
83. Mueller, "Apollo Actions," p. 33.
84. House Special Studies Subcommittee of the Committee on Government Operations, *Investigation of the Boeing-TIE Contract: Hearings,* 90th Cong., 2d sess., pp. 3–9.
85. Ibid., pp. 10, 13–14, 24.
86. "Technical Integration and Evaluation Contract," NASw 1650, Statement of Work, 15 June 1967.
87. Wagner interview; "Boeing-TIE Goals and Accomplishments," copy in file of Walter Wagner, KSC.

Chapter 19: Apollo 4: The Trial Run

1. OMSF, *Apollo Program Flight Summary Report, Apollo Missions AS-201 through Apollo 8,* pp. 13–17; MSFC, *Technical Information Summary, AS-501, Apollo Saturn V Flight Vehicle,* R-ASTR-S-67-65, 15 Sept. 1967.
2. "NASA Announces Changes in Saturn Missions," NASA release 63-246, 30 Oct. 1963.
3. Dir., Apollo Program, "Clarification of Apollo Saturn IB and V Flight Mission Designations," 12 Apr. 1965.
4. MSFC, *Technical Information Summary, AS-501,* pp. 24–75.
5. OMSF, *Apollo Program Directive No. 4D,* 1 July 1966; *No. 4E,* 22 Sept. 1966; *No. 4F,* 30 Nov. 1966; Proffitt interview; NASA, *Sixteenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 July–31 Dec. 1966,* pp. 49, 51–52. See also NASA, *Seventeenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 Jan.–30 June 1967,* p. 11, for information on the spacer.
6. KSC, "LC-39 Site Activation Status Report," 14 Sept. 1966; *Spaceport News,* 15 Sept. 1966; KSC, "Apollo 4 (AS-501) Daily Status Reports," Sept.–6 Oct. 1966.
7. KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," 29 Nov., 1, 2, 6, 7, 13 Dec. 1966.
8. Ibid., Dec. 1966 and Jan. 1967; KSC, "Program Milestone Data—Apollo," 15 July 1971.
9. KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," Feb.–Mar. 1967 (see 16 Mar. for number of wiring discrepancies in spacecraft); NASA, *Seventeenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 Jan.–30 June 1967,* pp. 11–12.

10. *Spaceport News,* 3 Mar. 1966; Fowler interview.
11. KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," Feb. 1967; *Spaceport News,* 15 Feb. 1968.
12. KSC, "LC-39 Site Activation Status Report," 19, 26 Apr. 1967.
13. NASA release 67-132, summarized in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1967,* p. 164; KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," May–Aug. 1967; *Spaceport News,* 31 Aug. 1967.
14. KSC, *Catalog of Launch Vehicle Tests, Saturn V, Apollo/Saturn V, Revision 1,* 15 June 1966, GP-244.
15. Ibid., p. 1-27; Carlson interview, 5 Sept. 1974.
16. KSC, *Catalog of Launch Vehicle Tests, Saturn V,* p. 2-18.
17. Ibid., pp. 1-18, 1-28.
18. KSC, "Apollo 11 (AS-506) Daily Status Report," 25 Mar. 1969.
19. *Catalog of Launch Vehicle Tests, Saturn V,* pp. 7-1 through 7-13.
20. Ibid., pp. 9-1 through 9-43; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn Program Development/Operations Plan,* 2: 3-90 and 3-93 provide a comparison of the two tests and their objectives.
21. KSC, *Catalog of Launch Vehicle Tests, Saturn V,* pp. 9-1 through 9-43.
22. Ibid., pp. 9-21 and 9-25.
23. Ibid., p. 9-3.
24. Ibid.; Donnelly interview, 19 June 1974.
25. Harris interview; Carlson interview, 5 Sept. 1974.
26. KSC, "Program Milestone Data, Apollo," 6 June 1973.
27. KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," Sept. 1967; Donnelly interview, 19 June 1974.
28. KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," 27 Sept.–13 Oct. 1967; Richard S. Lewis, *Appointment on the Moon: The Inside Story of America's Space Venture* (New York: Viking Press, 1968), p. 406.
29. Donnelly interview, 19 Nov. 1970.
30. NASA release 67-274 and *Baltimore Sun,* 26 Oct. 1967, p. A6, summarized in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1967,* p. 319.
31. Phillips to Mueller, memo for record, 5 Sept. 1968; KSC, "Apollo 4 Daily Status Reports," 19–20 Oct. 1967.
32. *Spaceport News,* 23 Nov. 1967.
33. Ibid.
34. Ibid.
35. *KSC Information and Protocol Operations Plan—Apollo 4 Mission,* pp. 1–4.
36. Ibid.
37. J. E. Ballou, GAO Area Audit Mgr., Atlanta, to L. Melton, KSC, 30 Mar. 1965; *Aviation Week* 89 (23 Sept. 1968): 74; H. L. DeLung, Acting Regional Mgr., GAO, Atlanta, to Debus, 20 Aug. 1965. The authors recognize their reliance on thorough researches of Maj. James J. Frangie in this section.
38. Debus to DeLung, 15 Oct. 1965.
39. R. J. Madison, Mgr., GAO Regional Off., Atlanta, to Debus, 6 July 1966. See also p. 16 of draft report, Comptroller General of the U.S., "Review of Launch Complex 39 Facilities for the Saturn V Vehicle, John F. Kennedy Space Center, Florida, NASA," undated, accompanying letter of Clerio P. Pin, Assoc. Dir., GAO, to Webb, 8 June 1967 (hereafter cited as "GAO Draft Report, KSC, 1967"); Mueller to William Parker, Asst. Dir., Civil Accounting and Auditing Div., GAO, Washington, 16 Aug. 1966.
40. Melton, memo for record, 29 Aug. 1966; Malcolm S. Stringer, memo for record, "GAO Review of Justification for Redundant and Duplicate Launch Complex 39 Facilities, 31 Oct. 1967."
41. Raymond Einhorn, Dir. of Audits, to Debus, "GAO Draft Report on Review of Launch Complex 39 Facilities for the Saturn V Vehicle, KSC, NASA," 13 June 1967; "GAO Draft Report, KSC, 1967," p. 24.
42. Debus to Mueller, 19 July 1967, in NASA Hq. History Office; Einhorn to Debus, 15 Sept. 1967.

43. Raymond Middleton to KSC Liaison Representative with GAO, 30 Oct. 1967; Melton, memo for record, 19 Oct. 1967; Debus to Mueller, 2 Nov. 1967, in NASA Hq. History Office; Harold B. Finger, Assoc. Admin. for Organization and Management, to Clerio P. Pin, Assoc. Dir., GAO, Washington, 24 Jan. 1968, with enclosures, pp. 10–12, NASA Hq. History Office.
44. Pin to Finger, 27 Mar. 1968, in NASA Hq. History Office.
45. Stringer interview; Finger to Pin, 24 Jan. 1968, NASA Hq. History Office.
46. House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *1964 NASA Authorization,* 88th Cong., 1st sess., 1963, pt. 1, p. 5; pt. 2, pp. 126–27.

Chapter 20: Man on Apollo

1. NASA, OMSF, *Apollo Program Directive No. 4H,* 3 Nov. 1967.
2. KSC, "Apollo 5 Daily Status Reports," 3 Mar.–14 Apr. 1967.
3. KSC release 1-68, 3 Jan. 1968; Widick interview.
4. "Apollo 5 Daily Status Reports," 23 June, 14–21 Aug., 19 Nov., 22 Dec. 1967, 19 Jan. 1968.
5. Statement of Rocco Petrone and Gen. S. Phillips, "Apollo 5 Post-Launch Press Conference," 22 Jan. 1968; NASA, OMSF, *Apollo Program Flight Summary Report, Apollo Missions AS-201 through Apollo 8,* Jan. 1969, pp. 20–22.
6. "LC-39 Site Activation Status Report," 5, 26 Apr. 1967; KSC, "Apollo 6 (AS-502) Daily Status Report," 22 Mar. 1967.
7. "Apollo 6 Daily Status Report," Mar. 1967.
8. Ibid., May–June 1967.
9. Ibid., July–Aug. 1967.
10. Ibid., 12 Sept.–Oct. 1967.
11. Ibid., Dec. 1967.
12. Ibid., 28 Dec. 1967–11 Jan. 1968.
13. Ibid., 15–16, 30 Jan., 6–9 Feb. 1968; *Spaceport News,* 15 Feb. 1968.
14. Phillips to Mueller, 5 Sept. 1968; "Apollo 6 Daily Status Report," 8–21 Mar. 1968.
15. "Apollo 6 Daily Status Report," 25 Mar. 1968; Phillips to Mueller, 5 Sept. 1968; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Ground Systems Evaluation Report, AS-502,* KSC document 140-44-0010, pp. 2-2, 4-1; NASA, "Apollo 6 Pre-Launch Press Conference," Cocoa Beach, 3 Apr. 1968, pp. 3–4, 7–10.
16. House Committee on Government Operations, *Hearing: Investigation of the Boeing-TIE Contract,* 90th Congress, 2d sess., 15 July 1968, p. 10.
17. NASA Hq., "Apollo 6 SLA Problem and Resolution," 17 Dec. 1968; NASA, *Nineteenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 Jan.–30 June 1968,* p. 19.
18. NASA, *Nineteenth Semiannual Report,* pp. 8–18.
19. NASA, "Apollo 6 Post-Launch Press Conference," LC-39 Press Site, 4 Apr. 1968, pp. 3–5.
20. *Spaceport News,* 11 Apr. 1968.
21. Erlend A. Kennan and Edmund H. Harvey, Jr., *Mission to the Moon,* pp. 284–85.
22. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1968,* pp. 83, 119–20; NASA, *Nineteenth Semiannual Report,* p. 19.
23. Phillips to Mueller, 5 Sept. 1968; Erich E. Goerner, "LOX Prevalve to Prevent POGO Effect on Saturn V," *Space/Aeronautics,* Dec. 1968, p. 72; House Committee on Science and Astronautics, *Hearings on 1970 NASA Authorization,* 91st Cong., 1st sess., pt. 2, pp. 27–29.
24. MSC, *Apollo Spacecraft Program Quarterly Status Report,* no. 25, 30 Sept. 1968, pp. 1–9.

25. *Spaceport News,* 29 Feb. 1968.
26. Robert Sherrod, "The Selling of the Astronauts," *Columbia Journalism Review,* May–June 1973, pp. 17-25.
27. Ibid., pp. 16-17. When former astronaut John Glenn entered the Ohio senatorial primary in the spring of 1964, news broke that he and the other original astronauts had financial interests in Cape Colony Inn in Cocoa Beach. Profitability of the Inn was obviously related to the space program.
28. One of the astronauts was so fearful of heights that he hesitated to cross the catwalk at the 31st floor of the VAB, so the ground crew covered the grating on the swing arm with boards whenever he crossed to the spacecraft.
29. *Spaceport News,* 4 Oct. 1968.
30. Wendt interview.
31. Neil Armstrong et al., *First on the Moon* (Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1970), nondocumented, interesting account of Apollo 11, previous Apollos, and the astronauts and their families, based on interviews.
32. *Spaceport News,* 28 Mar. 1968.
33. Ibid.
34. *Kennedy Space Center Story* (1971 ed.), pp. 227-28.
35. NASA, OMSF, "Apollo Program Directive 4H," 3 Nov. 1967; KSC, "Apollo 7 (AS-205) Daily Status Reports," 11 May-3 June 1968.
36. "Apollo 7 Daily Status Reports," June-July 1968; KSC, "Minutes of Apollo Launch Operations Committee (ALOC) Meetings," 13 June, 11 July, 1 Aug. 1968; *Spaceport News,* 1 Aug. 1968.
37. "Minutes of ALOC Meetings," 1, 15, 29 Aug. 1968; *Spaceport News,* 29 Aug., 12 Sept. 1968; Ragusa interview.
38. NASA, OMSF, *Mission Operation Report: Apollo 7 (AS-205) Mission,* 30 Sept. 1968.
39. Ibid.
40. Wernher von Braun and Frederick L. Ordway III, *History of Rocketry and Space Travel* (New York: Thomas V. Crowell and Co., 1969), pp. 226-27.
41. *Spaceport News,* 24 Oct. 1968.
42. Ibid.
43. KSC release 22-68, 29 Jan. 1968; NASA, *Nineteenth Semiannual Report to Congress,* 19 Jan.-30 June 1968, p. 13; Roderick O. Middleton, KSC Apollo Program Mgr., to Samuel C. Phillips, TWX, 7 Mar. 1968; MSFC, *Saturn V Launch Vehicle Flight Evaluation Report—AS-503*, p. 3-1.
44. Harold B. Finger to Mueller, 1 May 1968.
45. Ibid.
46. MSFC, *Saturn V Launch Vehicle Flight Evaluation Report—AS-503,* pp. 3-1, 3-2; KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 29 Apr.-6 May 1968; unsigned document on working schedule for manned (CSM-103) and unmanned (BP-30) AS-503 missions, 21 Apr. 1968; Phillips to Debus, TWX, 29 Apr. 1968.
47. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 8, 10, 17, 31 May 1968.
48. Ibid., 14, 17 June 1968.
49. Proffitt interview, 1 Dec. 1970.
50. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1968,* p. 191.
51. George M. Low to C. H. Bolender and K. S. Kleinknecht, "Chuck Mathews Review of KSC Activities," 14 Sept. 1968, Apollo discussion papers, JSC Historical Archives.
52. Debus to Mueller, 16 July 1968.
53. Phillips to Debus, 24 Aug. 1968.
54. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 10 June-22 July 1968.
55. Ibid., 22 July-4 Aug. 1968; George M. Low, memo for record, 19 Aug. 1968, in Apollo discussion papers, JSC Historical Archives.

56. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 28 June–25 July 1968.
57. Ibid., 12–16 Aug. 1968; Low, memo for record, 19 Aug. 1968; "Transcript of News Conference on Apollo Program Changes," 19 Aug. 1968.
58. Phillips to Debus, 10, 20 Aug. 1968.
59. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Launch Operations Test and Checkout Requirements, AS-503,* document K-V-051-01/3, p. 6-1.
60. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Report," 16 Sept. 1968.
61. NASA, "Transcript of Saturn AS-503 Delta Design Certification Review," 19 Sept. 1968; KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 8–10 Oct. 1968.
62. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1968,* p. 266.
63. Ibid., p. 278.
64. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 15, 19 Nov. 1968; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Launch Mission Rules, Apollo 8 (AS-503/CSM 103),* document K-V-05.10/3, pp. 1-2 through 1-29.
65. KSC, "Apollo 8 Daily Status Reports," 5–11 Dec. 1968.
66. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1968,* p. 313.
67. John N. Wilford, "Final Countdown On for Moon Shot Tomorrow," *New York Times,* 20 Dec. 1968.
68. "Apollo 8 Onboard Voice Transcription, As Recorded on the Spacecraft Onboard Recorder (Data Storage Equipment)," MSC, Jan. 1969, tape 58-4.
69. *Kennedy Space Center Story* (1971 ed.), pp. 101–102.
70. *Boeing Atlantic Test Center News* 6 (13 Jan. 1969): 1.
71. MSC, *Apollo 8 Technical Debriefing,* 2 Jan. 1969, p. 139.
72. *Spaceport News,* 16 Jan. 1969; Reyes interview and Chauvin interview, June 1973.
73. "Briefing by KSC-NASA for the Congressional Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight," 28 Feb. 1969, pp. 4–5.

Chapter 21: Success

1. MSC, *Apollo Spacecraft Program Quarterly Status Report No. 25*, 30 Sept. 1968, p. 28.
2. NASA, *Current News*, 20 December 1968, p. 1; NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1969*, p. 16.
3. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1967*, pp. 330–31; Phillips to Debus, 19 Aug. 1968.
4. KSC, "Apollo 9 (AS-504) Daily Status Reports," May–Oct. 1968.
5. Ibid., 8–26 Nov. 1968.
6. Ibid., 2–31 Dec. 1968.
7. Titusville *Star-Advocate*, 16 Dec. 1968.
8. Renaud interview, 16 May 1973.
9. Titusville *Star-Advocate*, 16 Dec. 1968.
10. Ibid.
11. Ibid.
12. Ibid.
13. KSC, "Apollo 9 (AS-504) Daily Status Reports," 3–9 Jan. 1969.
14. Ibid., 10–11 Feb. 1969; KSC release 33–69, 4 Feb. 1969.
15. Ibid., 12, 20 Feb. 1969; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Test and Checkout Plan, AS-504 and All Subsequent Missions*, pp. 4-9 through 4-12; Widick interview, 15 Dec. 1970; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Space Vehicle Countdown Demonstration Test (Apollo 9)*, p. vi.
16. KSC, "Apollo 9 Daily Status Report," 27–28 Feb. 1969; NASA, "Apollo 9 Postponement News Conference," 27 Feb. 1969, CST 12:05, pp. 9A/1 through 9C/2; KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Space Vehicle Countdown (Apollo 9)*, pp. v–vi.

17. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Ground Systems Evaluation Report, Apollo 9*, p. 2-1.
18. KSC, "Briefing for the Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight, Committee on Science and Astronautics, House of Representatives," 28 Feb. 1969, pp. 44–70.
19. Youmans interview, 5 Feb. 1971; Proffitt interview, 1 Dec. 1970; George Low to C. H. Bolender and K. S. Kleinknecht, "Chuck Mathews Review of KSC Activities," 14 Sept. 1968, JSC Archives, Apollo activity file.
20. KSC, *Apollo/Saturn V Launch Operations Test and Checkout Requirements, AS-504 and All Subsequent Missions*, document K-V-051-01, p. 1-1; Proffitt interview, 1 Dec. 1970.
21. Chart included in folder with John M. Marshall's interview with Henry C. Paul at KSC, 9 Dec. 1970, in KSC Historian's Office, illustrates graphically the growth of automation overall and of Atoll in particular for the period both before and subsequent to AS-504.
22. R. B. Johansen, "Developments in On-Board and Ground Checkout Systems," American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2–4 Feb. 1970, AIAA paper 70-245, pp. 3–5; James E. Rorex and Robert P. Eichelberger, "Digital Data Acquisition System in Saturn V," in *Proceedings of the Second Space Congress*, 5–7 Apr. 1965, Cocoa Beach, FL, sponsored by Canaveral Council of Technical Societies, pp. 632–49; Debus, "Launching the Moon Rocket," p. 25.
23. W. V. George and C. A. Stinson, "An Automated Telemetry Checkout Station for the Saturn V Systems," *NTC/66: Proceedings, National Telemetering Conference*, Boston, 10–12 May 1966, p. 117.
24. NASA *Proceedings of the Apollo Unified S-Band Technical Conference*, p. 248; Edmund F. O'Conner, "Launch Vehicles for the Apollo Program," pp. 165–66; Walyer O. Frost, "SS-FM: A Telemetry Technique for Wide-Band Data," Institute of Radio Engineers, *Transactions on Space Electronics and Telemetry*, SET-2 (Dec. 1962), p. 289, notes the first use of SS-FM telemetry on the SA-2 flight.
25. NASA, *Proceedings of the Apollo Unified S-Band Technical Conference*, p. 248.
26. Samuel C. Phillips to MSFC, 28 June 1965; Adolf H. Knothe, "Range Safety—Do We Need It?" American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, Feb. 1970, p. 3.
27. "Tracking and Data Acquisition," *Spaceflight* 11 (June 1969): 190; NASA, *Proceedings of the Apollo Unified S-Band Technical Conference*, p. 3.
28. "How We Will Communicate with Astronauts on the Moon," *Space World*, Jan. 1969, pp. 33, 35.
29. "Tracking and Data Acquisition," p. 190; NASA, *Sixteenth Semiannual Report to Congress*, 1 July-31 Dec. 1966, pp. 167–68.
30. Frank Leary, "Support Net for Manned Space Flight," *Space/Aeronautics*, Dec. 1966, pp. 71–72. KSC, "Apollo/Saturn V Launch Operations Plan," AS-501/502, pp. 7-18 through 7-20 contains a general description of the LIEF and ALDS systems and their relationship to each other and to operations at KSC.
31. Edmond C. Buckley to Mueller, 26 Aug. 1964.
32. *Space Daily*, 28 Jan. 1966, p. 177.
33. John F. Mason, "Modernizing the Missile Range: Part 1," *Electronics*, Feb. 1965, pp. 94–95.
34. This conclusion is derived from the chart shown in NASA, *Proceedings of the Apollo Unified S-Band Technical Conference*, p. 296; NASA, *Sixteenth Semiannual Report to Congress, 1 July-31 Dec. 1966*, p. 165.
35. Twigg interview.
36. KSC, "Apollo 11 (AS-506) Daily Status Reports," Jan.-Apr. 1969; KSC, *Kennedy Space Center Story*, 1971 ed., p. 119.
37. NASA, *Apollo Flight Summary Report*, pp. 82–83.
38. KSC, "Apollo Program Milestone Data," 15 July 1973; KSC, "Apollo 11 Daily Status Reports," 20 May–4 July 1969.

39. KSC, *Kennedy Space Center Story*, 1971, pp. 121-25; *Spaceport News*, 23 July 1969.
40. *Kennedy Space Center Story*, 1971, pp. 222-23.
41. Ibid., p. 124; KSC, "Apollo Countdown Document, C-07."
42. *Spaceport News*, 23 July 1969.
43. Ibid.
44. Ibid., 30 July 1969.
45. Anne M. Lindbergh, *Earthshine* (Harcourt Brace Jovanovich: New York, 1969), pp. 42-43.

Chapter 22: A Slower Pace: Apollo 12-14

1. KSC, "AS-507 Daily Status Reports."
2. NASA, *Apollo 12 Press Kit*, pp. 1-2; Lt. Gen. Samuel Phillips, transcript of news conference at MSC, 24 July 1969, summarized in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1969*, p. 243; KSC, "AS-507 Daily Status Reports," June-July 1969.
3. *Armed Forces Journal*, 27 Sept. 1969, p. 8; NASA releases 69-151, 10 Nov. 1969; 70-4, 8 Jan. 1970; *Spaceport News*, 28 Aug., 11 Sept., 4 Dec. 1969.
4. *Spaceport News*, 28 Aug., 11 Sept. 1969, 18 June 1970.
5. KSC, "AS-507 Daily Status Reports"; Chauvin interview, 2 Apr. 1974; *Washington Post*, 30 Oct. 1969, p. A8.
6. KSC, "AS-507 Daily Status Report," 13 Nov. 1969; *Washington Post*, 13 Nov. 1969, p. A1; *Spaceport News*, 20 Nov. 1969; Sieck interview; KSC, "Apollo 12 (AS-507) Quick Look Assessment Report," 26 Nov. 1969; NASA, "Pre-Launch Press Conference," KSC and MSC, 13 Nov. 1969, pp. 6B-3, 6B-4.
7. NASA, *Apollo 12 Press Kit*, pp. 43-45; Widick interview, 23 May 1974.
8. "Launch VIP List Headed by Nixon," *Orlando Sentinel*, 13 Nov. 1969; NASA, *Analysis of Apollo 12 Lightning Incident*, MSC-01540, Feb. 1970, p. 12; Manned Spacecraft Center, "Apollo 12 Technical Crew Debriefing," 1 Dec. 1969, p. 2-1.
9. MSC, "Apollo 12 Technical Crew Debriefing," 1 Dec. 1969, p. 2-1.
10. NASA, "Apollo 12 Post Launch Briefing," 14 Nov. 1969, at KSC, p. 8A/2.
11. Ibid.; Kapryan interview.
12. MSC, "Apollo 12 Technical Crew Debriefing," p. 3-2.
13. NASA, "Apollo 12 Mission Commentary," p. 15/1.
14. NASA, "Apollo 12 Post Launch Briefing," pp. 8A-3, 8D-2.
15. Richard M. Nixon, "Remarks to NASA Personnel at the Kennedy Space Center," 14 Nov. 1969, *Public Papers of the Presidents, 1969* (Washington, 1971), p. 936.
16. NASA, "Apollo 12 Mission Commentary," summarized in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1969*, pp. 372-78.
17. *Spaceport News*, 1 Jan. 1970.
18. Ibid.
19. NASA, *Analysis of Apollo 12 Lightning Incident*; for one contribution from the scientific community see app. B, M. Brook, C. R. Holmes, and C. B. Moore, "Exploration of Some Hazards to Naval Equipment and Operations beneath Electrified Clouds."
20. KSC, *Launch Mission Rules Apollo 13 (SA-508/CSM 109.LM-7)*, 17 Feb. 1970, p. 1-17.
21. NASA, *Analysis of Apollo 12 Lightning Incident*, pp. 29, 36.
22. KSC, "Apollo 13 (AS-508) Daily Status Report," July 1969-Mar. 1970; KSC, "Proceedings of Manned Space Flight Subcommittee Hearings at Kennedy Space Center, 10 Apr. 1970," pp. 20-26; Moser interview, 17 Apr. 1974.
23. KSC Board of Investigation, "Investigation of Circumstances Surrounding Incident Resulting in Destruction by Fire of Three Motor Vehicles in Vicinity of Perimeter Fence on Pad A of LC-39 on 3/25/70," see part II, 2A and 2B, for narrative of events and committee recommendations; "Transcript of Proceedings of Manned Space Flight Subcommittee at KSC, 10 Apr. 1970," pp. 31-32; Corn interview, 22 Apr. 1974.

24. KSC, "Apollo 13 (AS-508) Daily Status Report," 27, 30, 31 Mar. 1970; NASA, *Report of the Apollo 13 Review Board*, 15 June 1970, pp. 4-21 through 4-23; Lamberth interview.
25. NASA, "Apollo 13 Status Report," A13-1, 9:30 a.m., 5 Apr. 1970; NASA, "Apollo 13 Change of Shift Briefing," 13 Apr. 1970, 2:30 p.m., p. 20A/1; KSC, "Apollo 13 (AS-508) Daily Status Report," 6 Apr. 1970; Lamberth interview; KSC Weekly Report, Kapryan, 2 Apr. 1970.
26. KSC releases 41-70, 6 Mar.; 43-70, 11 Mar.; 153-70, 23 Mar. 1970; *Spaceport News*, 12, 26 Mar., 23 Apr. 1970; KSC Weekly Report, Kapryan, 9 Apr. 1970.
27. KSC, Apollo News Center, "Apollo 13 Status Reports," 1–4, 6–7, 9–10 Apr. 1970; NASA, "Apollo 13 Medical Status Briefing #1," 6 Apr. 1970, 6:50 p.m., p. 8c/1; NASA, "Apollo 13 Medical Status Briefing #2," 8 Apr. 1970, 6:46 p.m.
28. *Baltimore Sun*, 10 Apr. 1970. The $800000 represented overtime pay for workers at KSC and the cost of the recovery force for the Pacific Ocean splashdown.
29. MSC, "Apollo 13 Prelaunch Press Conference," at KSC, 10 Apr. 1970, 2:10 p.m., pp. 12B/1–12B/4.
30. McCafferty interview, 28 Jan. 1971.
31. MSC, "Apollo 13 Prelaunch Press Conference," pp. 12A/2 and 12B/2.
32. KSC, "Apollo 13 (AS-508) Post Launch Report," 24 Apr. 1970; KSC, "Apollo 13 (AS-508) Flight Summary."
33. MSC, "Apollo 13 Mission Commentary," 13 Apr. 1970, CST 8:34 p.m. GET 55:11, pp. 165/1 through 168/1.
34. Ibid., p. 196/1.
35. NASA, *Report of Apollo 13 Review Board,* pp. 4-25 through 4-46.
36. Ibid., pp. 4-46 through 4-48; NASA, *Current News*, 11, 17 Apr. 1970; McCafferty interview, 28 Jan. 1971; KSC, *Kennedy Space Center Story*, 1971, pp. 152–54.
37. *Washington Post*, 17 Apr. 1970.
38. NASA, *Report of Apollo 13 Review Board*, p. 5-1.
39. Ibid., pp. 4-17 through 4-23, 5-1 through 5-9.
40. Ibid., preface.
41. NASA, "Transcript of Press Conference at KSC on 9 Nov. 1970," quoted in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1970*, p. 364; *New York Times*, 10 Nov. 1970, p. 33; for changes in Apollo 14 launch dates see Apollo Program Directives 4K, 4M, 4N; also *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1970*, pp. 7, 205, 218.
42. KSC, "Apollo 14 (AS-509) Daily Status Reports."
43. NASA, *Apollo 14 Press Kit*, 8 Jan. 1971, p. 93; Humphrey interview.
44. KSC, "Apollo 14 (AS-509) Daily Status Reports"; OMSF, "Apollo Program Weekly Status Reports," June–Aug. 1970.
45. KSC, "Apollo 14 (AS-509) Daily Status Reports"; KSC, "Apollo 14 Post Launch Report," 16 Feb. 1971.
46. *Spaceport News*, 3 Dec. 1970; *Washington Post*, 12 Jan. 1971; *Houston Chronicle*, 18 Jan. 1971.
47. McCafferty interview, 28 Jan. 1971.
48. KSC, "Apollo 14 Post Launch Report"; *Spaceport News*, 11 Feb. 1971.
49. *New York Times*, 15 Nov. 1969, quoted in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1969*, p. 380.
50. NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1967*, pp. 17, 337; *1968*, pp. 19, 241; *NASA Historical Pocket Statistics*, Jan. 1974, pp. D-2 through D-7.
51. OMSF, "Apollo Program Directive 4-K, Subject: Apollo Program Schedule and Hardware Planning Guidelines and Requirements," 10 July 1969, pp. 5-7 and 10-11.
52. Lee A. DuBridge, testimony on NASA FY 70 Authorization before the Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, 9 May 1969, quoted in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1969*, p. 134.
53. *New York Times*, 10 Aug. 1969, p. 44; see *Lunar Exploration: Strategy for Research 1969-1975*, published by the National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council,

Space Science Board, for further evidence of attitudes in the scientific community.

54. *Washington Post*, 5 Oct. 1969.
55. NASA, *America's Next Decades in Space, A Report for the Space Task Group*, Sept. 1969.
56. NASA, "Apollo Program Directive 4-M," 16 Mar. 1970, with cover sheet from Mathews to Debus, 6 Apr. 1970; George Low, Dep. Admin., NASA, "Fiscal Year 1971 Budget Briefing for Community Leaders," KSC, 2 Feb. 1970; transcript of NASA news conference, Washington, D.C., 2 Sept. 1970, summarized in *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1970*, pp. 284-85.
57. Debus, "Briefing for Community Leaders on FY-1970 Budget at the Kennedy Space Center," 30 Apr. 1960; Miles Ross, Dep. Dir., KSC, "Briefing at Breakfast Meeting of Brevard County Chamber of Commerce," 25 Sept. 1973; Kaufman interview.
58. *New York Times*, 26 Oct. 1969, p. F15; *Orlando Sentinel*, 13 Nov. 1969, p. 2A; *Miami Herald*, 11 Oct. 1970, p. H14; Charles Johnson interview.
59. *Philadelphia Evening Bulletin*, 17 Nov. 1970.
60. Kapryan discussed the question of morale at the Apollo 12 prelaunch briefing, 13 Nov. 1969; see the minutes, p. PC/6E/2.

Chapter 23: Extended Lunar Exploration: Apollo 15-17

1. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, 15 July 1971, pp. 1-8; *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1970*, pp. 284-85; *Time*, 9 Aug. 1971, pp. 10-15.
2. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, pp. 5, 60-69.
3. Ibid., pp. 94-100, 134-44; Petrone, Apollo Program Dir., to Manned Space Flight Centers, "6/12/70 Weight and Performance Review Agreements and Actions," 7 July 1970.
4. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, p. 133.
5. KSC, "Apollo 15 Post Launch Report," 12 Aug. 1971, pp. 1-1 and 1-2; OMSF, "Apollo Program Weekly Status Reports," June-Sept. 1970; KSC, "Apollo 15 (AS-510) Daily Status Reports," May 1970-Jan. 1971.
6. KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," Jan.-May 1971; Jackie Smith interview.
7. Chauvin interview, 23 May 1974.
8. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, pp. 61-69; KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," Jan.-May 1971; KSC, "Apollo 15 Post Launch Report," pp. 1-2; Edwin Johnson interview.
9. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, pp. 78-82.
10. KSC release 41-71, "LRV Flight Model Delivery," 10 Mar. 1971; NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, 15 July 1971, pp. 77-97; *Time*, 9 Aug. 1971; Arthur Scholz to Benson, 18 Oct. 1974. The authors found several different costs cited for the rover. The $12.9 million price is *Time*'s figure and reflects the total project cost of $38+ million divided by three flight vehicle rovers. The cost per vehicle drops if the training rover is included, or if the $13 million R&D costs are excluded. Goldsmith interview.
11. NASA, *Apollo 15 Press Kit*, pp. 77-97; Widick interview, 23 May 1974; Reyes interview, 6 June 1974; Carothers interview; Scholz interview; "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," 15 Mar.-25 Apr. 1971.
12. *Washington Post*, 5 May 1971; *New York Times*, 5 May 1971; *Spaceport News*, 6 May 1971.
13. KSC, "Apollo 15 Post Launch Report," p. 1-2; KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," Feb.-Mar. 1971; Collner interview.
14. KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," 29 Mar. 1971; Cochran interview.
15. KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," 29 Mar.-8 Apr. 1971; Lang interview.
16. *Houston Post*, 3 Apr. 1971; *Los Angeles Times*, 3 Apr. 1971.

17. KSC, "Apollo 15 Post Launch Report," pp. 1-2, 1-3; KSC, "Apollo 15 Daily Status Reports," June-July 1971.
18. NASA, "Apollo 15 Mission Commentary," 26 July 1971, 4:11 GET, 12:43 CDT, p. 41/2.
19. KSC, "Apollo 16 (AS-511) Daily Status Reports," Aug.-Nov. 1971; KSC, "Apollo 16 (AS-511) Post Launch Report," 2 May 1972.
20. KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report"; Crawford interview; Hangartner interview.
21. Ely interview; KSC, S-IC Flight Control, "Test Problem Report," 3 Dec. 1971; KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report."
22. *New York Times*, 8, 10 Jan. 1972; KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report."
23. Moxley interview.
24. *New York Times*, 28, 31 Jan. 1972; *Spaceport News*, 27 Jan. 1972; KSC, "Apollo 16 Daily Status Reports," Jan.-Feb. 1972; KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report."
25. Moxley interview; KSC, "Apollo 16 Daily Status Reports," Feb. 1972.
26. NASA, *Apollo 16 Press Kit*, 22 Mar. 1972.
27. Montgomery interview; McKnight interview.
28. KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report"; *Spaceport News*, 9 Mar. 1974.
29. *Spaceport News*, 23 Mar. 1972; KSC release 62-72, "Apollo 16 Crewmen Outline Lunar Mission for Spaceport Launch Team," 16 Mar. 1972.
30. KSC, "Apollo 16 Daily Status Reports"; KSC, "Apollo 16 Post Launch Report."
31. *Miami Herald*, 3 Oct. 1972, p. B1; *Baltimore Sun*, 21 Nov. 1972; *Spaceport News*, 21 Sept.-14 Dec. 1972; *Time*, 18 Dec. 1972.
32. KSC, "Apollo 17 Post Launch Report," 19 Dec. 1972, pp. 5-1, 5-2.
33. NASA, *Apollo 17 Press Kit*, 14 Nov. 1972, pp. 56-61.
34. Jackie Smith interview.
35. KSC, "Apollo 17 Post Launch Report," pp. 5-2 to 5-4; *Miami Herald*, 29 Aug. 1972, p. 1.
36. *Lawrence* (Kansas) *Daily Journal-World*, 30 Sept. 1972; *Huntsville Times*, 1 Oct. 1972; NASA, *Astronautics and Aeronautics, 1972*, p. 330; KSC, "Apollo 17 Daily Status Reports," 29 Sept. 1972.
37. *Wall Street Journal*, 13 Nov. 1972, p. 12.
38. *Los Angeles Times*, 27 Nov. 1972; *Spaceport News*, 16 Nov. 1972.
39. NASA, "Apollo 17 Commentary"; KSC, "Apollo 17 Post Launch Report," 19 Dec. 1972.
40. NASA, "Apollo 17 Commentary."
41. *Spaceport News*, 14 Dec. 1972.
42. NASA, "Apollo 17 Commentary"; NASA, "Apollo 17 Post Launch Press Conference"; NASA Apollo Program Dir., "Apollo 17 Mission (AS-512) Post Mission Operation Report No. 1," 19 Dec. 1972, pp. 3-4; *Spaceport News*, 14 Dec. 1972.
43. NASA, "Apollo 17 Flight Summary."

BIBLIOGRAPHY

While a great number of books have been written about the Apollo program, there has been no previous history of the launch facilities and operations. *Liftoff*, by L. B. Taylor, Jr. (see *Books*, below) provides a lively journalistic account of the spaceport in the 1960s. Unfortunately, the book ends before Apollo reached its goal. William R. Shelton's *Countdown: The Story of Cape Canaveral* is an entertaining eyewitness account of launch operations at the Cape during the 1950s. Gordon Harris's *Selling Uncle Sam* recalls Apollo events as seen from the Office of Public Affairs at KSC. Michael Collins's *Carrying the Fire* contains an astronaut's views of the Gemini and Apollo programs. The Apollo 11 astronaut set himself a high goal—writing a book without a dull or confusing passage—and then accomplished it. His treatment of technical problems is to be envied. While there is no balanced account of the AS-204 fire, the near tragedy of Apollo 13 is well covered in Henry Cooper's *Thirteen: The Flight That Failed*. A good general account of the Apollo program is John Noble Wilford's *We Reach the Moon*.

The reader will find a wealth of detailed information about Apollo launch facilities and operations in journal articles and conference papers. The popular aerospace magazines (*Missiles and Rockets, Aviation Week and Space Technology*, *Space/Aeronautics*, and *Astronautics and Aeronautics*) trace the progress of the Apollo program. Numerous scientific and engineering journals contain articles by members of the launch team. An even better source for technical exposition is the papers prepared for conferences such as the annual Space Congress held in Cocoa Beach, Florida. The proceedings for most of these conferences were printed.

NASA's dealings with Congress are revealed in thousands of pages of briefings, testimony, and hearings. The agency's *Semiannual Report to Congress* (1958–1969) provides a detailed account of the progress toward a manned lunar landing. At the annual budget hearings, top NASA officials made similar statements and answered numerous questions about specific activities. Special committee hearings at KSC regarding launch operations appear as appendixes in the annual hearings or as special congressional reports.

The authors relied on *Astronautics and Aeronautics* as a basic guide to aerospace events of the 1960s. NASA's History Office has compiled these annual chronologies since 1961; the first two years the work appeared as a report to the House Committee on Science and Astronautics and subsequently as a NASA special publication. Although there are several thousand entries in each volume, the series is well indexed. Another helpful source is *Current News*, a compilation of newspaper articles about NASA activities prepared by the agency's Office of Public Affairs. The authors obtained information on specific missions from surprisingly detailed NASA press kits (e.g., the Apollo 8 press kit is 105 pages), mission summaries, and the transcripts of press conferences. The publications are available in the KSC archives and other NASA installations.

KSC's public affairs publications proved very helpful. *The Kennedy Space Center Story* (1969, 1972, 1974) is a well-written informative account of events at the space center since the early 1960s. The first edition attempted no historical evaluation and ignored unpleasant events, such as the AS-204 fire. Hundreds of KSC news releases about the Apollo program provided interesting sidelights for the history. The Center's newspaper, *Spaceport News*, prepared under the direction of the Public Affairs Office, served a similar function. Distinctly a house organ, the paper avoided controversy, but was, nevertheless, useful for background and specific facts.

Three unpublished works, prepared at KSC, blazed a research path for the authors. Frank Jarrett and Robert Lindemann's "History of the John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA (Origins through December 1965)" provides a detailed, carefully researched account of early center history. Even more helpful are the unpublished manuscripts of James Covington, James Frangie, and William Lockyer (Apollo Launch Facilities) and George Bittle and John Marshall (Apollo Launch Operations). Both manuscripts are in the KSC historical archives.

Concerning primary sources, the General Accounting Office's criticisms notwithstanding, the authors found an overabundance of source material at the Kennedy Space Center. Documents on the AS-204 fire, alone, occupy more than 60 large cartons in the KSC records-holding area. The card catalog in the center's documents department references several thousand studies and procedures for the Apollo/Saturn. Fortunately, KSC's records retrieval and library systems provide quick access to documents.

Dr. Kurt Debus's "Daily Journal" (1959–1963) and the weekly reports rendered to him by the KSC staff (1962–1972) were key sources of information. These documents are located in the center director's office at KSC. The authors found other valuable data in Debus's correspondence files, in storage at the Federal Records Center in Atlanta. While the originals can be retrieved through KSC's records management office, the letters used for this history have been reproduced for the KSC archives. Rocco Petrone's program office was another rich source of reports, memoranda, and letters. Some carbon copies are on file in the KSC archives, but the bulk of this material has been retired to Atlanta. Similar documents from other KSC sources, numbering in the thousands, have been collected by the KSC staff during the past ten years.

The progress of design and construction of the three Saturn launch complexes is reflected in a series of reports: Saturn Monthly and Quarterly Progress Reports (published at Huntsville with a section on the Cape), the Monthly Progress Reports of the Launch Facilities Support Equipment Office (mainly about ground support equipment), and Construction Progress Reports and Project Status Reports on LC-39. These documents are available in the KSC historical archives along with the minutes of the Site Activation Board meetings and the Site Activation Status Reports. Important documents for the launch operations include the minutes of the Apollo Launch Operations Committee, the daily status reports for Apollo missions, Apollo/Saturn V test procedures, and the postlaunch reports. The daily status reports and the test procedures for the Saturn I launches were secured from Robert Moser's papers in the Federal Records Center at Atlanta.

A number of documents in the KSC archives concern the center's relations with other members of the Apollo team. The minutes of the Management Council Meetings relate important discussions while Brainerd Holmes was head of the Office of Manned Space Flight. Other sets of minutes from 1961-1963 cover the activities of the Launch Operations Panel and the Panel Review Board. Management instructions from the Headquarters and KSC program offices are contained in the Apollo Program Directives. The offices established the crucial scheduling dates in the series of directives referred to as "dash 4"; the frequent revisions chart the vicissitudes of the Apollo program from 1965 through 1972. Most of these directives are available in the historical archives or the documents department. The researcher may wish to make use of other documents in the archives including mission flight manuals and safety plans, interface control documents, and the Apollo Program Development Plans prepared by the Office of Manned Space Flight.

Interviews with participants were among the most valuable sources of information. Whenever possible, the authors evaluated the objectiveness and accuracy of an interview against other accounts of the same events. A list of the interviews is included in the bibliography. The transcripts are available in the KSC archives.

Books

Akens, David S. *Historical Origins of the George C. Marshall Space Flight Center*. Huntsville, AL: Marshall Space Flight Center, 1960.

———. *Saturn Illustrated Chronology*, 5th ed. Huntsville, AL: Marshall Space Flight Center, 1971.

Aldrin, Edwin E., with Wayne Wargo. *Return to Earth*. New York: Random House, 1973.

Alexander, Tom. *Project Apollo: Man to the Moon*. New York: Harper and Row, 1964.

Armstrong, Neil, Michael Collins, and Edwin E. Aldrin, Jr., written with Gene Farmer and Dora Jane Hambilin. *First on the Moon*. Epilogue by Arthur C. Clarke. Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1970.

Behrendt, Lloyd L., comp. *Development and Operation of the Atlantic Missile Range*, History of the Air Force Missile Test Center, vol. 2. Patrick Air Force Base, FL: Air Force Missile Test Center, 1963.

Bergaust, Erik. *Murder on Pad 34*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1968.

Booker, P. J., G. C. Frewer, and G. K. C. Pardoe. *Project Apollo: Way to the Moon*. American Elsevier Publishing Co., 1969.

Bramlitt, E. R. *History of Canaveral District*, South Atlantic Division, U.S. Corps of Engineers, 1971.

Cantafio, Leopold J., ed. *Range Instrumentation*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1967.

Collins, Michael. *Carrying the Fire: An Astronaut's Journeys*, with a foreword by Charles A. Lindbergh. New York: Farrar, Straus, and Giroux, 1974.

Cooper, Henry S. F., Jr. *Apollo on the Moon*. New York: Dial Press, 1969.

———. *Thirteen: The Flight That Failed*. New York: Dial Press, 1973.

Emme, Eugene, ed. *The History of Rocket Technology*. Detroit: Wayne State Press, 1964.

———. *A History of Space Flight*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1965.

Ertel, Ivan D., and Mary Louise Morse. *The Apollo Spacecraft: A Chronology*, vol. 1, *Through November 7, 1962*. NASA SP-4009. Washington, 1969.

Etzioni, Amitoi. *The Moon-Doggle: Domestic and International Implications of the Space Race*. Garden City, NY: Doubleday & Co., 1964.

Green, Constance McLaughlin, and Milton Lomask. *Vanguard: A History*. NASA SP-4202. Washington, 1970.

Grey, Jerry, and Vivian Grey, eds. *Space Flight Report to the Nation*. New York: Basic Books, 1962.

Grimwood, James M., and Barton C. Hacker, with Peter Vorzimmer. *Project Gemini Technology and Operations: A Chronology*. NASA SP-4002. Washington, 1969.

Harris, Gordon L. *Selling Uncle Sam*. Hicksville, NY: Exposition Press, 1976.

Holmes, Jay. *America on the Moon: The Enterprise of the Sixties*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co., 1962.

Huzel, Dieter K. *Peenemuende to Canaveral*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall 1962.

Johnson, Lyndon B. *The Vantage Point: Perspectives of the Presidency, 1963–1969*. New York: Popular Library, 1971.

Kennan, Erlend A., and Edmund H. Harvey, Jr. *Mission to the Moon: A Critical Examination of NASA and the Space Program*. New York: William Morrow and Co., 1969.

Klee, Ernest, and Otto Mark. *Birth of the Missile: The Secrets of Peenemuende*. New York: E. P. Dutton and Co., 1963.

Koelle, Heinz H., ed. *Handbook of Astronautical Engineering*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1961.

Lay, Beirne, Jr. *Earthbound Astronauts: The Builders of Apollo-Saturn*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1971.

Lewis, Richard S. *Appointment on the Moon: The Inside Story of America's Space Venture*. New York: Viking Press, 1968.

Ley, Willy. *Rockets, Missiles, and Men in Space.* New York: Viking Press, 1968.

Logsdon, John M. *The Decision to Go to the Moon: Project Apollo and the National Interest.* Cambridge: MIT Press, 1970.

McGovern, James. *Crossbow and Overcast.* New York: William Morrow & Co., 1964.

Medaris, John B. *Countdown for Decision*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1960.

Morse, Mary Louise, and Jean Kernahan Bays. *The Apollo Spacecraft: A Chronology*, vol. 2, *November 8, 1962–September 30, 1964*. NASA SP-4009. Washington, 1973.

Nieburg, H. L. *In the Name of Science*. Chicago: Quadrangle Books, 1966.

Ordway, Frederick L., III, ed. *Advances in Space Science and Technology*, vol. 6. New York: Academic Press, 1964.

Rabinowitch, Eugene, and Richard Lewis, eds. *Man on the Moon: The Impact on Science, Technology and International Cooperation*. New York: Basic Books, 1969.

Rosholt, Robert L. *An Administrative History of NASA, 1958–1963*. NASA SP-4101. Washington, 1966.

Sänger, Eugene. *Space Flight: Countdown for the Future*, trans. Karl Frucht. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1965.

Schwiebert, Ernest G. *A History of the U.S. Air Force Ballistic Missiles*. Washington: Frederick A. Prager, Publishers, 1965.

Shelton, William R. *Countdown: The Story of Cape Canaveral*. Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1960.

———. *American Space Exploration: The First Decade*. Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1967.

Swenson, Loyd S., Jr., James M. Grimwood, and Charles C. Alexander. *This New Ocean: A History of Project Mercury*. NASA SP-4201. Washington, 1966.

Sorenson, Theodore C. *Kennedy*. New York: Harper & Row, 1965.

Taylor, L. B., Jr. *Liftoff! The Story of America's Spaceport*. New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., 1968.

Von Braun, Wernher, and Frederick L. Ordway III. *History of Rocketry and Space Travel.* New York: Thomas V. Crowell and Co., 1966, 1969, 1975.

———. *Space Frontier.* New York: Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 1967.

Wilford, John N. *We Reach the Moon.* New York: Bantam Books, 1964.

Webb, James E. *Space Age Management: The Large-Scale Approach*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1969.

Young, Hugo, Bryan Silcock, and Peter Dunn. *Journey to Tranquility.* Garden City, NY: Doubleday & Co., 1970.

Journal Articles

Alelyunas, Paul. "Checkout: Man's Changing Role." *Space/Aeronautics* 44 (Dec. 1965): 66–73.

Alexander, George. "Cape Canaveral to Expand for Lunar Task." *Aviation Week*, 31 July 1961, p. 28.

———. "Telemetry Data Confirms Saturn Success." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 6 Nov. 1961, pp. 30–32.

———. "Inquiry Focuses on Electrical Systems." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 6 Feb. 1967, pp. 30–34.

Alexander, Tom. "The Unexpected Payoff of Project Apollo." *Fortune* 80 (July 1969): 114–117.

Alexander, William D. "Vertical Assembly Building—Project Description, Organization, and Procedures." *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 42–44.

"Apollo 15: The Most Perilous Journey." *Time*, 9 Aug. 1971, pp. 10-15.

"Apollo: Giant Equipment Problems," *Missiles and Rockets*, 18 Sept. 1961, p. 19.

Bleymaier, Joseph S. "ITL and Titan III." *Astronautics and Aerospace Engineering* 1 (Mar. 1963): 33-36.

Bliss, H. "NASA's in the Cold, Cold Ground." *ATCHE Journal* 13 (May 1967): 419.

Campbell, John B. "What Happened to Apollo." *Space/Aeronautics* 48 (Aug. 1967): 54-70.

Cerquettini, C. "Sprayable Polyurethane Foam Insulation, Saturn II Booster." *SAMPE Journal* 5 (June-July 1969): 28-29.

"Death on Old Shaky." *Time*, 27 Jan. 1961, pp. 15-16.

Debus, Kurt H. "Launching the Moon Rocket." *Astronautics and Aerospace Engineering* 1 (Mar. 1963): 20-32.

————. "Saturn Launch Complex." *Ordnance* 46 (Jan.-Feb. 1962): 522-23.

"First Industry-Built Saturn I Puts Pegasus-2 in Precise Orbit." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 31 May 1965, p. 21.

Fisher, Allen C., Jr. "Cape Canaveral's 6000-Mile Shooting Gallery." *National Geographic* 116 (Oct. 1959).

Fleming, William A. "Launch Operations Challenge." *Astronautics* 6 (June 1961): 20-23.

Frewer, Gerald C. "Kennedy Space Center—Assembly Line on a Gigantic Scale." *The Engineering Designer*, May 1967, p. 7.

————. "The Crawler Transporter for Project Apollo." *The Designing Engineer*, July 1967, p. 15.

Getler, Michael. "Apollo: Was It Worth It?" *Space/Aeronautics* 3 (Sept. 1969): 48.

————. "Complex 37 Will Dwarf Predecessors." *Missiles and Rockets*, 18 Dec. 1961, p. 24.

Goerner, Erich E. "LOX Prevalve to Prevent POGO Effect on Saturn V." *Space/Aeronautics* 50 (Dec. 1968): 72-74.

Heaton, Donald H. "Approaches to Rendezvous." *Astronautics* 7 (Apr. 1962): 24.

Hendel, Frank J. "Gaseous Environments during Space Missions." *Journal of Spacecraft and Rockets* 1 (July-Aug. 1964): 353-64.

Holmes, D. Brainerd. "Man in Space—A Challenge to Engineers." *Challenge* 1 (Spring 1963): 28.

Houbolt, John C. "Lunar-Orbit Rendezvous and Manned Lunar Landing." *Astronautics* 7 (Apr. 1962): 26.

"How Soon the Moon?" *Time*, 14 Apr. 1967, pp. 86-87.

"Inquest on Apollo." *Time*, 10 Feb. 1967, pp. 18-19.

Knothe, Adolf H. "Range Safety—A Necessary Evil." *Aerospace Engineering* 20 (June 1961): 20.

Kolcum, Edward H. "S-1 Award Puts Chrysler in Space Field." *Aviation Week and Space Technology* 75 (27 Nov. 1961): 22.

Kovit, Bernard. "The Saturns." *Space/Aeronautics* 42 (Aug. 1964): 40-52.

"Launch Complex 39 Built Specifically for Saturn V." *Space Age News* 12 (Aug. 1969): 92.

"Launch Vehicles." *Spaceflight* 11 (Mar. 1969): 74.

Leary, Frank. "Support Net for Manned Space Flight." *Space/Aeronautics* 46 (Dec. 1966): 68-80.

Lewis, Richard S. "The Kennedy Effect." *Bulletin of the Atomic Scientists* 24 (Mar. 1968): 2.

"Life in the Space Age." *Time*, 4 July 1969, pp. 38-39.

Mason, John F. "Modernizing the Missile Range: Part I." *Electronics* 22 (Feb. 1965): 94-105.

Mast, Larry T. "Automatic Test and Checkout in Missile and Space Systems." *Astronautics and Aerospace Engineering* 1 (Mar. 1963): 41-44.

McGuire, Frank G. "Kapustin Yar Serves as Russia's Cape Canaveral." *Missiles and Rockets* 3 (Feb. 1958): 61-62.

McMillan, Brockway. "The Military Role in Space." *Astronautics* 7 (Oct. 1962): 18-21.

Means, Paul. "Group Taking on Another Vital Role." *Missiles and Rockets*, 14 Mar. 1960, pp. 22-24.

"Men of the Year." *Time*, 3 Jan. 1969, pp. 9-16.

Mendelbaum, Leonard. "Apollo: How the United States Decided to Go to the Moon." *Science*, 14 Feb. 1969, pp. 649-54.

Moore, W. I., and R. J. Arnold. "Failures of Apollo/Saturn V Liquid Oxygen Loading System." *Advances in Cryogenic Engineering* 13 (1966): 534-44.

Norcross, J. S., and Berl W. Martin. "Air Force Eastern Test Range UHF Telemetry Status Report." *Telemetry Journal* 4 (Apr./May 1969): 25-31.

Normyle, William J. "NASA Details Sweeping Apollo Revisions." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 15 May 1967, pp. 24-26.

Parker, Glenn M. "The Missile Site Labor Commission." *ILR Research* 8 (1962): 11.

Parker, P. J. "Apollo 9 Tests Lunar Module." *Spaceflight* 11 (July 1969): 230-33.

"Pegasus Returning Meteoroid Flux Data." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 22 Feb. 1965, p. 28.

Rogers, John G. "What Life at Cape Kennedy Does to Marriage." *Parade*, 9 July 1969.

Rosen, Milton W. "Big Rockets." *International Science and Technology*, Dec. 1962, pp. 66-71.

Rutledge, Philip C. "Vertical Assembly Building—Design of Foundations." *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 50-52.

"SA-9 Launch." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 22 Feb. 1965, p. 27.

"Saturnalia at Canaveral." *Newsweek*, 6 Nov. 1961.

"Saturn Flight Specs. Manned Shot Plan." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 30 Apr. 1962, p. 32.

"Saturn's Success." *Time*, 3 Nov. 1961.

Sherrod, Robert. "The Selling of the Astronauts." *Columbia Journalism Review*, May/June 1973, pp. 17-25.

Smith, Richard A. "Canaveral, Industry's Trial by Fire." *Fortune* 65 (June 1962): 135.

———. "Now It's an Agonizing Reappraisal of the Moon Race." *Fortune* 68 (Nov. 1963): 124-29, 270-80.

Sloan, James E., and Jack F. Underwood. "Systems Checkout for Apollo." *Astronautics and Aerospace Engineering* 1 (Mar. 1963): 37-40.

Taylor, Hal. "Big Moon Booster Decisions Looming." *Missiles and Rockets*, 28 Aug. 1961, pp. 14-15.

Tedesko, Anton. "Base for USA Manned Space Rockets (Structures for Assembly and Launching)." *International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering Publications* 26 (1967): 535.

———. "Space Truss Braces Huge Building for Moon Rocket." *Engineering News-Record*, 6 Feb. 1964, pp. 24-27.

———. "Design of the Vertical Assembly Building." *Civil Engineering* 35 (Jan. 1965): 45-49.

"To Design for the Moon Age, Four Firms Work as One Team." *Engineering News-Record*, 6 Feb. 1964, pp. 46-48.

"To Strive, to Seek, to Find, and Not to Yield. . . ." *Time*, 3 Feb. 1967, pp. 13-16.

"To the Moon." *Time*, 18 July 1969, pp. 20-31.

"Tracking and Data Acquisition." *Spaceflight* 11 (June 1969): 190.

Trainer, James. "Titan III Plans Await DOD Approval." *Missiles and Rockets*, 14 May 1962, pp. 35-36.

Vonbun, Friedrich O. "Ground Tracking of Apollo." *Astronautics and Aeronautics* 4 (May 1966): 104-15.

von Braun, Wernher. "Exploring the Space Sea." *Ordnance* 49 (July-Aug. 1964): 50.

von Tiesenhausen, Georg. "Saturn Ground Support and Operations." *Astronautics* 5 (Dec. 1960): 30.

"Washington Roundup." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, 18 June 1962, p. 25.

Congressional Documents

House Committee on Government Operations, Subcommittee. *Investigation of the Boeing-TIE Contract*. Hearing, 90th Cong., 2d sess., 15 July 1968.

House Committee on Post Office and Civil Service, Subcommittee on Manpower. *Decision of Comptroller General of the United States Regarding Contractor Technical Personnel*. H. Rept. 188, 89th Cong., 1st sess., 18 Mar. 1965.

House Committee on Science and Astronautics. *Apollo 13 Accident*. Hearing, 91st Cong., 2d sess., 16 June 1970.

———. *Cape Canaveral: The Hope of the Free World*. Print, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 24 May 1962.

———. *Equatorial Launch Sites—Mobile Sea Launch Capability*. H. Rept. 710, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 12 July 1961.

———. *Management and Operation of the Atlantic Missile Range*. Print, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 5 July 1960.

———. *Master Planning of NASA Installations*. H. Rept. 167, 89th Cong., 1st sess., 15 Mar. 1965.

———. *1962 NASA Authorization*. Hearings, pt. 1, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 13 Mar.-17 Apr. 1961.

———. *Report on Cape Canaveral Inspection*. Print, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 27 June 1960.

———. *Space, Missiles, and the Nation*. Rept. 2092 pursuant to H. Res. 133, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 5 July 1960.

———. *Transfer of the Development Operations Division of the Army Ballistic Missile Agency to the National Aeronautics and Space Administration*. Hearing on H.J. Res. 567, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 3 Feb. 1960.

House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight. *1968 NASA Authorization*. Hearings on H. R. 4450, H. R. 6470, pt. 2, 90th Cong., 1st sess., 14-21 Mar. 1967.

———. *1964 NASA Authorization*. Hearings on H. R. 5466, pts. 2a, 2b, 88th Cong., 1st sess., 6 Mar.-6 June 1963.

———. *1963 NASA Authorization*. Hearings on H. R. 10100, pt. 2, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 6 Mar.-10 Apr. 1962.

House Committee on Science and Astronautics, Subcommittee on NASA Oversight. *Apollo Program Pace and Progress*. Print, 90th Cong., 1st sess., 17 Mar. 1967.

———. *Engineering Management of Design and Construction of Facilities of NASA*. Print, 91st Cong., 1st sess., 11 Aug. 1969.

———. *Investigation into Apollo 204 Accident*. Hearings, 2 vols., 90th Cong., 1st sess., 10 Apr.-10 May 1967.

———. *NASA-DOD Relationship*. Print, 88th Cong., 1st sess., 26 Mar. 1964.

———. *Pacing Systems of the Apollo Program*. Print, 89th Cong., 1st sess., 15 Oct. 1965.

Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences. *Amending the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act for the Fiscal Year 1962*. S. Rept. 863 to accompany S. 2481, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 1 Sept. 1961.

———. *Apollo Accident*. Hearings, pts. 1-6, 90th Cong., 1st sess., 7 Feb.-9 May 1967.

———. *Apollo 204 Accident*. S. Rept. 956, 90th Cong., 2d sess., 30 Jan. 1968.

———. *NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1963*. Hearings on H. R. 11737, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 13-15 June 1962.

———. *NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1965*. Hearings on S. 2446, pt. 2, 88th Cong., 2d sess., 4-18 Mar. 1964.

———. *NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1966*. Hearings on S. 927, pt. 2, 89th Cong., 1st sess., 22-30 Mar. 1965.

Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, NASA Authorization Subcommittee. *NASA Authorization for Fiscal Year 1961*. Hearings on H. R. 10809, pt. 1, 86th Cong., 2d sess., 28-30 Mar. 1960.

Senate Committee on Appropriations, Subcommittee. *Independent Offices Appropriations, 1964*. Hearing on H. R. 8747, pt. 2, 88th Cong., 1st sess., 18 Oct. 1963.

Senate Committee on Government Operations, Permanent Subcommittee on Investigations. *Work Stoppage at Missile Bases*. Hearings pursuant to S. R. 69, pts. 1, 2, 87th Cong., 1st sess., 25 Apr.-9 June 1961.

———. *Work Stoppage at Missile Bases,* S. Rept. 1312, 87th Cong., 2d sess., 29 Mar. 1962.

Conference Papers

Aden, R. M. "Electrical Support Equipment for the Saturn V Launch Vehicle System." *Proceedings of 2d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965.

Clements, J. S. "S-1C Stage Instrumentation Checkout Concepts at KSC." *Proceedings of 3d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 7-10 March 1966.

Debus, Kurt. "Some Design Problems Encountered in Construction of Launch Complex 39." Hermann Oberth Gesellschaft, Darmstadt, Germany, 25 June 1964.

———. "Trends and Problems in Instrumentation and Operations in NASA's Future Space Efforts." AFMTC-AFESD-AFCEA Symposium, Patrick A.F.B., FL, 6 Mar. 1962.

———. "Launch Operations for Saturn V/Apollo." 10th Annual Meeting of the American Astronautical Society, New York, 6 May 1964.

Deese, James H. "The Problem of Low Level Wind Distribution." Structural Engineers Councils of Florida, Tampa, FL, 9 Nov. 1964.

Duran, B. E. "Saturn I/IB Launch Vehicle Operational Status and Experience." Paper 680739, Society of Automotive Engineers, Los Angeles, 7-11 Oct. 1968.

Eudy, Glenn. "Saturn V Mechanical Ground Support Equipment." *Proceedings of 2d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965.

George, W. V., and C. A. Stinson. "An Automated Telemetry Checkout Station for the Saturn V Systems." 1966 National Telemetering Conference, Boston, MA, 12 May 1966.

Goff, H. C., and J. M. Schabacker. "Apollo Spacecraft Integrated Checkout Planning." *Proceedings of 3d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 7-10 Mar. 1966.

Hope, J. R., and C. J. Neumann. "Probability of Tropical Cyclone Induced Winds at Cape Kennedy." *Proceedings of 5th Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 11-14 Mar. 1968.

Jafferis, William. "Prelaunch and Launch Checkout Operations—Uprated Saturn and Saturn V Vehicles." Project SETE, New York, 24-28 July 1967.

Johansen, R. B. "Developments in On-Board and Ground Checkout Systems." AIAA paper 70-245, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2-4 Feb. 1970.

Knothe, Adolf H. "Range Safety—Do We Need It?" AIAA paper 70-249, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2-4 Feb. 1970.

Marshall, John M. "The Mobile Concept and Automated Checkout of the Apollo/Saturn V Space Vehicle." 22d International Astronautical Congress, Brussels, Sept. 1971.

Montgomery, R. M. "Range Safety of the Eastern Test Range." AIAA paper 70-246, AIAA Launch Operations Meeting, Cocoa Beach, FL, 2-4 Feb. 1970.

Moore, F. Brooks, and William Jafferis. "Apollo/Saturn Prelaunch Checkout Display Systems." IEEE Conference on Displays, Univ. of Loughborough, England, 7-10 Sept. 1971.

Petrone, Rocco. "Apollo/Saturn V Launch Operations." AIAA Third Annual Meeting, Boston, 29 Nov.-2 Dec. 1966.

———. "Ground Support Equipment and Launch Installations at John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA, for the Manned Lunar Landing Program." 15th International Astronautical Congress, Warsaw, 1964.

———. "Saturn V/Apollo Launch Operations Plan." AIAA Space Flight Testing Conference, Cocoa Beach, FL, 18-20 Mar. 1963.

Richard, Ludie G. "Saturn V System Philosophies." *Proceedings of 2d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965.

Robin, E. A. "Development and Utilization of Computer Test Programs for Checkout of Space Vehicle." *Proceedings of 4th Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 3-6 Apr. 1967.

Rorex, James E., and Robert P. Eichelberger. "Digital Data Acquisition System in Saturn V." *Proceedings of 2d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965.

Rudolph, Arthur. "Operational Experience with the Saturn V." AIAA paper 68-1003, AIAA 5th Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, 21-24 Oct. 1968.

Salvador, G., and R. W. Eddy. "Saturn IB Stage Launch Operations." *Proceedings of 5th Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 11-14 Mar. 1968.

Speer, F. A. "Saturn I Flight Test Evaluation." AIAA paper 64-322, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Washington, July 1964.

Taylor, G. H. "Operational Television System for Launch Complex 39 at the John F. Kennedy Space Center." *Proceedings of 5th Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 11-14 Mar. 1968.

Taylor, T., Jr. "System Considerations for Establishing Prelaunch Checkout Effectiveness." *Proceedings of 2d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 5-7 Apr. 1965.

Tedesko, Anton. "Assembly and Launch Facilities for the Apollo Program, Merritt Island, Florida: Design of the Structure of the Vertical Assembly Building." ASCE Structural Engineering Conference, 21 Oct. 1964.

Thilges, J. N. "Range Safety, A Thorn in the Flesh." *Proceedings of 3d Space Congress*, Cocoa Beach, FL, 7-10 Mar. 1966.

von Tiesenhausen, Georg. "Ground Equipment to Support the Saturn Vehicle." American Rocket Society, Washington, Dec. 1960.

Technical Reports

Army Ballistic Missile Agency:

Dodd, R. P., and J. H. Deese. *Juno V (Saturn) Heavy Missile Launch Facility, 1st Phase Request, 2nd Phase Estimate.* Atlantic Missile Range, 14 Feb. 1959.

Hall, Charles J. *A Committee Study of Blast Potentials at the Saturn Launch Site*, Rep. No. DHM-TM-9-60. Redstone Arsenal, AL, Feb. 1960.

Hamilton, J. S., J. L. Fuller, and P. F. Keyes. *Juno V Transportation Feasibility Study*, Rep. No. DLMT-TM-58-58. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 5 Jan. 1959.

Koelle, H. H., F. L. Williams, W. G. Huber, and R. C. Callaway, Jr. *Juno V Space Vehicle Development Program (Phase I), Booster Feasibility Demonstration,* Rep. DSP-TM-10-58. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Oct. 1958.

———. *Juno V Space Vehicle Development Program (Status Report)*, Rep. No. DSP-TM-11-58. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 15 Nov. 1958.

Organizational Manual, Army Ballistic Missile Agency, Redstone Arsenal, AL, 5 Mar. 1959.

Army Corps of Engineers:

Apollo Launch Complex 39 Facilities Handbook. South Atlantic Division, Canaveral District, undated.

Army Ordnance Missile Command:

Koelle, H. H., F. L. Williams, and W. G. Huber. *Saturn Systems Study*, Rep. No. DSP-TM-1-59. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Mar. 1959.

Project Horizon: A. U.S. Army Study for the Establishment of a Lunar Military Outpost. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 8 June 1959.

Saturn Systems Study II, Rep. No. DSP-TM-13-59. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 13 Nov. 1959.

Air Force:

Air Force Eastern Test Range. *Range Safety Manual*. AFETR Manual 127-1. Patrick A.F.B., FL, 1 Sept. 1972.

Joint Air Force/NASA Hazards Analysis Board. *Safety and Design Considerations for Static Test and Launch of Large Space Vehicles*. Patrick Air Force Base, FL; Air Force Missile Test Center, 1 June 1961.

Headquarters, NASA:

Ad Hoc Task Group. *A Feasible Approach for an Early Manned Lunar Landing* (Fleming Committee Report). Washington, D.C., 16 June 1961.

Allen, William H., ed. *Dictionary of Technical Terms for Aerospace Use*. Washington, D.C.: GPO, 1965.

America's Next Decades in Space, A Report for the Space Task Group. Washington, D.C., Sept. 1969.

Apollo Inter-Center ICD Management Procedure, CM-001, 001-1B. Washington, D.C., Jan. 1969.

Logsdon, John M. *NASA's Implementation of the Lunar Landing Decision*, HHN-81 (comment edition). Washington, D.C., Aug. 1969.

NASA-DOD. *Joint Report on Facilities and Resources Required at Launch Site to Support NASA Manned Lunar Landing Program* (Debus-Davis Report). Cape Canaveral, FL, 31 July 1961.

NASA Special Committee on Space Technology. *Recommendations Regarding a National Civil Space Program* (Stever Committee Report). 28 Oct. 1958.

Office of Manned Space Flight. *Apollo Configuration Management Manual*, NPC 500-1. Washington, D.C., 18 May 1964.

———. *Apollo Program Flight Summary Report*, Apollo Missions AS-201 through Apollo 8. Washington, D.C., Jan. 1969.

———. *Apollo Program Development Plan*, Rep. No. M-D MA500. Washington, D.C., 1 Jan. 1966.

PERT: Program Evaluation and Review Technique, Handbook, NPC-101. Washington, D.C., 1 Sept. 1961.

"A Plan for Manned Lunar Landing" (Low Committee Report). Washington, D.C., 7 Feb. 1961.

Report of Apollo 204 Review Board to the Administrator, NASA, 5 Apr. 1967, 1 vol. plus 14 vols. of appendixes and a set of looseleaf color photographs.

Report of the Apollo 13 Review Board. Washington, D.C., 15 June 1970.

Report to the Administrator, NASA, on Saturn Development Plan, by Saturn Vehicle Team (Silverstein Committee Report). Washington, D.C., 15 Dec. 1959.

Kennedy Space Center:

Apollo/Saturn V Launch Operations Test and Checkout Requirements, AS-504 and All Subsequent Missions, K-V-051-01. KSC, FL, 1968.

Apollo/Saturn V MILA Facilities Descriptions, K-V-011, Coordination Draft. KSC, FL, 30 June 1965.

Brewster, H. D., and W. G. Hughes. *Lightning Protection for Saturn Launch Complex 39*, KSC, FL, 18 Oct. 1963.

Catalog of Launch Vehicle Tests, Saturn V, Apollo/Saturn V, Revision 1, GP-244. KSC, FL, 15 June 1966.

Hanna, George V. *Chronology of Work Stoppage and Related Events, KSC/AFETR through July 1965*. KSC, FL, Oct. 1965.

Index of KSC Apollo Tree Documents and other KSC Generated Documents in the KSC Library, GP-856. KSC, FL, 1970.

Jarrett, Francis E., Jr., and Robert A. Lindemann. *Historical Origins of NASA's Launch Operations Center to July 1, 1962,* KHM-1. Cocoa Beach, FL, Apr. 1964.

KSC Apollo/Saturn Program Development/Operations Plan, 100-39-0001, 2 vols. KSC, FL, 10 Oct. 1965.

Launch Support Equipment Engineering Division. *Development of Design Criteria for Saturn V Flame Deflector*, TR-174-D. KSC, FL, 1 June 1965.

———. *Saturn V Launch Support Equipment General Criteria and Description*, SP-4-37-D. KSC, FL, 15 Sept. 1964.

———. *Saturn V Electrical Ground Support Equipment for Launch Complex 39*, SP-96-D. KSC, FL, 21 Dec. 1964.

———. *Saturn V Launch Support Equipment General Criteria and Description*, SP-4-37-D, Revision. KSC, FL, 15 Sept. 1964.

Launch Vehicle Checkout Automation and Programming Office. *Apollo (Saturn) Automated Checkout*. KSC, FL, 23 Aug. 1974.

McMurran, W. R., ed. "The Evolution of Electronic Tracking, Optical, Telemetry and Command Systems at the Kennedy Space Center." KSC, FL, 17 Apr. 1973.

Public Affairs Office. *Kennedy Space Center Story*. KSC, FL, Dec. 1971.

Saturn Launch Vehicle Checkout Automation Development Plan, KSC-100-39-0007. Cocoa Beach, FL, 8 Aug. 1966.

Scheller, Donald R. "Management by Exception, Activation of Apollo/Saturn V Launch Complex 39." KSC, FL, 15 May 1967.

A Selective List of Acronyms and Abbreviations, GP-589 Revised. KSC, FL, July 1972.

Walter, George W. *Modifications to Bearing for Traction Support Rollers on Crawler-Transporters*. KSC, FL, 15 Dec. 1965.

"Weather Effects on Apollo/Saturn V Operations, Apollo 4 through Apollo 13," 630-44-0001. KSC, FL, 27 July 1970.

Manned Spacecraft Center:

Analysis of Apollo 12 Lightning Incident, MSC-01540. Houston, TX, Feb. 1970.

Atlantic Missile Range Operations: Facilities, 1959–1964. Houston, TX, 15 Apr. 1963.

John F. Kennedy Space Center, NASA Fiscal Year 1963 Estimates, Apollo Mission Support Facilities. Cape Canaveral, FL; Florida Operations, 1963.

Launch Operations Center:

Concepts for Support Service at the Merritt Island Launch Area. Cape Canaveral, FL, 6 May 1963.

Criteria for Design Pad "A" Launch Complex 39. Cape Canaveral, FL, 19 Dec. 1962.

Criteria for Launch Complex 39, Crawler Transfer System and Utilities. Cape Canaveral, FL, 5 Sept. 1962.

Deese, James. "Concept Development of Saturn Service Structure No. II." Cape Canaveral, FL, Apr. 1963.

Saturn C-5 Facilities Evaluation for Complex 39, LTR-1-2. Cape Canaveral, FL, 10 Sept. 1962.

Raffaelli, A. R. *Introduction to Lightning*, LT1R-2-DE-62-6. Cape Canaveral, FL, 14 Dec. 1962.

Marshall Space Flight Center:

Buchanan, Donald D., and George W. Walter. *Appraisal of Transfer Modes for Saturn C-5 Mobile Systems*, Rep. No. MIN-LOD-DH-9-62. Huntsville, AL, 11 June 1962.

Catalog of Systems Tests for Saturn S-1 Stage. Huntsville, AL, 1 Sept. 1961.

Chrysler Corporation Space Division. *Saturn IB Vehicle Handbook*. Huntsville, AL, 25 July 1966.

Duren, O. K. *Interim Report on Future Saturn Launch Site*, Rep. No. MIN-LOD-DL-1-61. Huntsville, AL, 10 May 1961.

Gwinn, Ralph T., and Kenneth J. Dean. "*Consolidated Instrumentation Plan for Saturn Vehicle SA-1*," Rep. No. MTP-LOD-61-36.2a. Huntsville, AL, 25 Oct. 1961.

Launch Countdown, Saturn Vehicle SA-1, Rep. No. MTP-LOD-61-35.2. Redstone Arsenal, AL, 30 Oct. 1961.

Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office, Launch Operations Directorate. *A Preliminary Study of Launch Facility Requirements for the C-4 Space Vehicle*. Huntsville, AL, Oct. 1961.

———. *Project Saturn, C-1, C-2 Comparison*. Rep. No. M-MS-G-113-60. Huntsville, AL, 21 Jan. 1961.

MSFC Automation Plan. Huntsville, AL, 8 May 1962 (revised, 1 June 1964).

Results of the Saturn I Launch Vehicle Test Flights, Rep. No. MPR-SAT-FE-66-9. Huntsville, AL, 1 Aug. 1961.

Richard, Ludie G., and Charles O. Brooks. *The Saturn Systems Automation Plan*. Huntsville, AL, 15 Sept. 1961.

SA-1 Vehicle Data Book, Rep. No. MTP-MS and M-E-61-3. Huntsville, AL, 26 June 1961.

Software for IU 201 at MSFC, SA-201 at KSC, SA-501 at KSC, Rep. No. R-DIR-64-1. Huntsville, AL, 1 Dec. 1964.

Sparks, Owen L., comp. *Preliminary Concepts of Launch Facilities for Manned Lunar Landing Program*, Rep. No. MIN-LOD-DL-3-61. Huntsville, AL, 1 Aug. 1961.

———. *Preliminary Feasibility Study on Offshore Launch Facilities for Space Vehicles*, Rep. No. IN-LOD-DL-1-60 Interim. Huntsville, AL, 29 July 1960.

Technical Information Summary, AS-501, Apollo Saturn V Flight Vehicle, R-ASTR-S-67-65. Huntsville, AL, 15 Sept. 1967.

Walter, George W. *Saturn Mobile (Canal) Concept Flame Deflector and Launcher/Transporter Emplacement Evaluation*, Rep. No. MIN-LOD-2-62. Huntsville, AL, Feb. 1962.

———. *Saturn Mobile (Rail) Concept: An Examination of Rail Transfer Systems for a Launcher/Transporter*, Rep. No. MIN-LOD-DH-3-62. Huntsville, AL, 3 Apr. 1962.

Contractor:

Beech Aircraft Corporation. *Saturn C-5 Propellant Transportation Optimization Study, ER-13539*. Boulder, CO, 25 June 1962.

Boeing Atlantic Test Center. *Launch Complex 39 GSE Systems Descriptions*. KSC, FL, 3 Aug. 1965.

Brown Engineering Co. *An Evaluation of an Enclosed Concept for a C-5 Vertical Assembly Building*. Huntsville, AL, 2 Apr. 1962.

———. *An Evaluation of an Open Concept for a C-5 Vertical Assembly Building*. Huntsville, AL, 2 Apr. 1962.

———. *Fixed Pad Concept of Launch Complex 39 for the Saturn C-5 Vehicle*. Huntsville, AL, 28 Sept. 1962.

Chrysler Corp. Space Division. *Saturn I/IB Automation Orientation, HSE-R 115*. Huntsville, AL, undated.

Culver, A. J., and K. G. Baird. "ERS Recovery Plan." KSC, FL: Boeing Atlantic Test Center Management Systems Staff, Apr. 1966.

General Electric Co. Apollo Support Department. *Systems Description of Saturn V Launch Vehicle Ground Electrical Support Equipment at Vehicle Launch Facility 39-1*. Daytona Beach, FL, 27 Sept. 1965.

Green, Arthur W., Lewis E. Williamson, Robert P. Dell, and Reed B. Jenkins. *Reliability Study of Saturn SA-3 Pre-Launch Operations*. Washington, D.C.: ARINC Research Corporation, 3 Jan. 1963.

Hartsfield, Annie May, Mary Alice Griffin, and Charles M. Grigg, eds. *Summary Report NASA Impact on Brevard County*. Tallahassee, FL: Institute of Social Research, Florida State University, 1966.

The Martin Co. *Rescue and Escape Systems from Tall Structures (RESTS)*. Denver, CO, Oct. 1963.

———. *Saturn C-2 Operational Modes Study, Summary Report*. Baltimore, MD, June 1961.

———. *Saturn C-3 Launch Facilities Study*, Rep. No. ER 12125, 3 vols. Baltimore, MD, Dec. 1961.

Maurice H. Connell and Associates. *Alternate "I" Heavy Missile Service Structure*. Miami, FL, 24 Apr. 1959.

———. *Heavy Missile Launch Facility Criteria*. Miami, FL, 15 Mar. 1959.

———. *Heavy Missile Service Structure Criteria*. Miami, FL, undated.

———. *Siting Study and Recommendation, Saturn Staging Building and Service Structure, Complex 34 AFMTC*. Miami, FL, Jan. 1960.

———. *Saturn C-5 Launch Facilities, Study of Rail Systems for Vertical Transporter/Launcher Concept*. Huntsville, AL, May 1962.

Sutherland, L. C. *Sonic and Vibration Environments for Ground Facilities—A Design Manual*, report WR 68-2. Wyle Laboratories, 1968.

TRW Space Technology Laboratories. *A Study of the KSC Safety Program*. Cape Canaveral, FL, May 1965.

Interviews

Aden, Robert, MSFC Astrionics, Electrical, by Benson, 30 Oct. 1974.

Alexander, William, Washington, D.C., by James Frangie, 8 Aug. 1969.

Atkins, John R., KSC Safety Off., by Faherty, 5 Sept., 5 Nov. 1973, 29 May 1974.

Barfus, Armond, KSC Support Ops., Development Testing Lab., by Benson, 5 Dec. 1973.

Bertram, Emil, KSC Launch Ops., Requirements and Resources Off., by Benson, 28 Sept.,* 15 Nov. 1973.*

Bidgood, Clarence, Washington, D.C., by Frangie, 14 Nov. 1968, 13 Aug. 1969.

Black, Dugald, KSC Dep. Dir., Support Ops., by Benson, 28 Feb. 1974.

Bobik, Joseph, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Quality Surveillance Div., by Benson and Faherty, 26 June 1974.

Boylston, Clifford, Brown Engineering Co., Huntsville, AL, by Benson, 21 July 1972.

Brewster, Heyward, KSC Design Engineering, Design Documentation Br., by Benson, 30 Nov. 1973.*

Brown, Joseph Andrew, KSC Design Engineering, Architectural Sec., by Faherty, 25 Sept. 1973.

Bruns, Rudolf, KSC Information Systems, Computer Systems Div., by Frangie, 22 Aug. 1969; by Benson, 3 Jan. 1974.

Bryan, Frank, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops. Engineering Staff, by Benson, 19 Dec. 1973.

Buchanan, Donald, KSC Design Engineering, by Frangie, 5 Sept. 1969; by Benson, 22 Sept., 7 Nov., 28 Nov. 1972; 4 Oct. 1974.

Burke, J. F., Chief, KSC Saturn/Apollo Facilities Br., by Frangie, 23 Apr. 1969.

Carlson, Norman, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Test Ops. Br., by John Marshall, 16 Dec. 1970; by Benson, 5 Sept. 1974.*

Carothers, Ralph Dale, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Preflight Ops. Br., by Benson, 14 June 1974.*

Chambers, Milton, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Gyro and Stabilizer Systems Br., by Benson, 19 Aug. 1974.*

---

*Indicates telephone interview.

Chandler, William, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Electrical Systems Br. (LCC), by Benson, 20 Nov. 1973.*

Chauvin, Clarence, KSC Spacecraft Ops. CSM Test Staff, by Benson, 2 Apr.,* 23 May, 6–7 June 1974; by Faherty, 24 June 1974.

Childers, Frank, KSC Information Systems, Quality Surveillance Off., by Faherty, 7 Nov. 1972, 18 Mar. 1973.

Clark, Raymond, KSC Design Engineering, by Benson, 30 June 1972.

Claybourne, John P., KSC Sciences and Applications Project Off., Earth Resources, by Benson, 5 Jan. 1973.

Clearman, William T., Jr., Cocoa Beach, FL, by Benson, 5 Jan., 13 Sept.,* 26 Oct. 1973.*

Cochran, Harold, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Communications and R. F. Sec., by Benson, 7 June 1974.*

Collner, Joseph D., KSC Spacecraft Ops., Communications and R. F. Sec., by Benson, 7 June 1974.

Corbett, Belzoni A., Jr., KSC Information Systems, by Benson, 11 Jan. 1974.

Corn, Graydon F., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Propellants Br., by Benson, 23 July 1973,* 22 Apr. 1974.*

Crawford, Harvey, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Environmental Control and Cryogenics Sec., by Benson, 28 June 1974.*

Crunk, Henry, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Mechanical and Propulsion Systems, by Benson, 12 Apr. 1973.*

Davidson, James, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Electrical Systems, by Benson, 31 July 1973.*

Davis, Edwin, KSC Design Engineering, Launch Accessories, by Benson, 18 Jan. 1973.*

Debus, Kurt H., KSC Center Dir., by James Covington, 22 Aug. 1969; by Benson and Faherty, 16 May 1972.

Deese, James, KSC Design Engineering, Systems Analysis, by Benson, 10 May 1972, 4 Oct. 1973; by Faherty, 16 Mar. 1973.

Dodd, Richard P., KSC Design Engineering, Project Integration Off., by Benson, 13 Aug. 1974.

Donnelly, Paul, KSC Assoc. Dir. for Ops., by John Marshall, 19 Nov. 1970; by Benson and Faherty, 19 June 1974.*

Duggan, Orton L., KSC Apollo Off., by James Grimwood, 13 Nov. 1969.

Duren, Olin K., MSFC Astronautical Lab., Materials, by Benson, 29 Mar., 16 May 1972,* 1 Nov. 1974.*

Edwards, Marion, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Launch Instrumentation, by Benson, 7 May 1973.

Ely, George, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Flight Control, by Benson, 8 July 1974.

Enlow, Roger, KSC Technical Support, by Benson, 5 Dec. 1973.*

Ernst, Lloyd, KSC Design Engineering, LC-39 Area Management Br., by Faherty, 8 Nov. 1973.

Fannin, Edward, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Mechanical and Propulsion, by Benson, 23 July 1973.*

Finn, James E., Design Engineering, Cables and Special Power Sec., by Faherty, 16 Jan. 1973.

Fiorenza, Vincent, GE Space Div., Apollo and Ground Systems, KSC, by Benson, 25 Apr. 1974.

Foster, Leroy, General Electric, Daytona Beach, FL, by Benson, 30 Apr. 1974.

Fowler, Calvin, GE Space Div., Apollo and Ground Systems, KSC, by Benson, 25 Apr. 1974.

Fulton, James, KSC Design Engineering, by Benson, 26 Oct. 1973.*

Gassman, Marvin, Apollo-Skylab Program Off., Configuration Management Br., by Benson, 8 Nov. 1973.

Gibbs, Asa, Satellite Beach, FL, by James Covington, 7 Aug. 1969.

Glaser, William, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Telemetry, by Benson, 7 May 1973.

Goldsmith, James, MSFC Procurement Off., Saturn Div., by Benson, 6 Nov. 1974.*

Gooch, Harold, KSC Administration, Labor Relations, by Faherty, 1 July 1974.

Gramer, Russell, KSC Installation Support, Quality Surveillance Div., by Faherty, 19, 21 Sept. 1972, 19 July 1973.

Greenfield, Terry, KSC Design Engineering, Digital Electronics, by Benson, 3 Jan. 1974.

Gruene, Hans, KSC Dir. of Launch Vehicle Ops., by John Marshall, 19 Nov. 1970; by Benson and Faherty, 10 May 1972.

Haggard, Ken M., Lockheed, Personnel Industrial Relations, by Faherty, 16 July 1973.

Hahn, Richard, KSC Design Engineering, Analysis, by Benson, 3 Dec. 1973.

Hand, Larry, KSC Design Engineering, Communications, by Benson, 2 Oct. 1973.

Hangartner, James, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Mechanical Systems, by Benson, 3 July 1974.*

Hansel, John, KSC Quality Control, by Faherty, 11 July 1973.

Harris, Gordon, KSC Chief, Public Affairs, by Benson, 12 Apr. 1974.

Harris, Steven, KSC Design Engineering, Field Engineering Off., by Benson, 24 Oct. 1973.*

Henschel, Charles F., KSC/NASA Test Ops. Off., by John Marshall, 17 Nov. 1970.

Horn, Frank W., Jr., KSC Apollo-Skylab Programs, by Benson, 28 Sept. 1973.

Horner, William J., Jr., KSC Security Off., by Faherty, 1 July 1974.

Huffman, Bobby R., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Launch Instrumentation Systems Div., by Benson, 7 May 1973.

Hughes, R. Bradley, KSC Information Systems Engineering Application, by Benson, 11 Jan. 1974.

Humphrey, John T., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Propulsion and Vehicle Mechanical, by Benson, 2 Aug. 1974.*

Jafferis, William, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Systems Engineering, by Benson, 19 Dec. 1973, 22 Jan. 1974.*

Jelen, Wilfred G., KSC Information Systems Data, by Benson, 15 Jan. 1974.

Jenke, Richard, Huntsville, AL, by Benson, 29 Oct. 1974.

Johnson, Charles, Florida Dept. of Commerce, Employment Service, Cocoa, FL, by Benson, 8 Apr. 1974.*

Johnson, Edwin C., KSC Spacecraft Ops., CSM and Payloads Project Engineering, by Benson, 10 June 1974.*

Johnson, Harold G., KSC Support Ops., Planning and Contract, by Benson, 17 Dec. 1973.

Jones, James, Information and Measurement Systems, Test Analysis Sec., by Faherty, 8 Apr. 1973.

Joralan, Albert, KSC Design Engineering Data Systems, by Benson, 3 Jan. 1974.

Kapryan, Walter, KSC Dir. of Launch Ops., by Benson, 25 Apr. 1974.

Kaufman, James R., KSC Administration, Manpower Utilization, by Benson, 27 Mar. 1974.*

Lamberth, Horace, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Fluid Systems, by Benson, 24 Apr. 1974.*

Lang, J. Robert, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Environmental Control and Cryogenic, by Benson, 7 June 1974.*

Lealman, Roy, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Electrical G and C Systems, by Benson and Faherty, 27 June 1974.

Leet, Joel, KSC Shuttle Project Planning, by Benson, 8 Nov. 1973, 13 Feb. 1974.

Lloyd, Russell, KSC Support Ops., by Benson, 13 Feb. 1974.

Lowell, Albert, General Electric, Daytona Beach, FL, by Benson, 16 Apr. 1974.

McCafferty, Riley, Johnson Space Center, Crew Training and Simulation, by Ivan Ertel, 28 Jan. 1971; by Benson, 20 Feb. 1974.
McKnight, James N., KSC Spacecraft Ops., Preflight, by Benson, 26 June 1974.*

Malley, George, Chief Counsel, Langley Research Center, by Faherty, 6 Nov. 1973.*
Marsh, Thomas, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Propulsion and Vehicle, by Benson, 7 May 1973.
Mathews, Edward, JSC Manager, Space Shuttle Systems Integration, by Benson, 19 Feb. 1974.
Matthews, George D., KSC Information Systems, Telemetry, by Benson, 11 Jan. 1974.
Medlock, Joe, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Checkout, Automation and Programming Off., by Benson, 7 Oct. 1974.
Melton, Lewis, KSC Administration, Resources and Financial Management, by Covington, 18 Feb. 1969.
Montgomery, Ann, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Preflight Ops., by Benson, 26 June 1974.
Moore, Robert T., KSC Information Systems, Planning and Technical Support, by Benson, 27 Sept. 1973.
Morris, Owen, JSC Manager, Apollo Spacecraft Program Off., by Benson, Grimwood, and Courtney Brooks, 20 Dec. 1972.
Moser, Robert, KSC Test Planning Off., by Benson, 30 Mar., 18 July 1973,* 17 Apr. 1974.*
Moxley, Paul, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Propulsion Systems, by Benson, 19 July 1974.
Mrazek, William, MSFC Assoc. Dir. for Engineering, by Benson, 2 Aug. 1972.*
Murphy, John, KSC Apollo-Skylab Program Off., Launch Vehicle and Workshop Br., by Benson, 9 Nov. 1973.

Nazaro, Ron, IBM, KSC, by Faherty, 8 July 1974.
Newall, Robert, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., S-IC Systems, by Benson, 31 July 1973.*
Norwalk, William, Hqs. Auditing Div., by Benson, 23 Jan. 1974.*

O'Conner, H. J., Mgr., Wildlife Refuge, by Faherty, 31 May 1972.
O'Hara, Alfred D., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops. Management, by Benson, 14 Jan. 1974.*
Owens, Lester, KSC Design Engineering Systems, by Benson, 12 Apr., 21 Nov. 1972.

Page, George F., KSC Spacecraft Ops., by Benson, 28 Jan. 1974.*
Pantoliano, Thomas, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Mechanical and Propulsion, by Benson, 18 Apr. 1973.*
Parker, Clarence C., KSC Installation Support, by James L. Frangie, 14 Feb. 1969; by Benson and Faherty, 2 Feb. 1972.
Parsons, Walter, KSC Design Engineering Systems, by Benson, 21 Jan. 1974.
Paul, Henry C., KSC, Chief, Checkout Automation and Programming Off., by John Marshall, 9 Dec. 1970.
Petrone, Rocco, NASA Hq., Apollo Program Dir., by Eugene Emme and Tom Ray, 17 Sept. 1970; by Benson, Emme, and Faherty, 25 May 1972.
Pickett, Andrew, KSC Shuttle Projects Off., by Benson, 26 July 1973.*
Policicchio, Mrs. Caroline, KSC, by James Covington, 4 Aug. 1969.
Poppel, Theodor, KSC Design Engineering, Field Engineering Off., by Benson, 12 Jan. 1973,* 24 Jan. 1973.
Porcher, Arthur G., KSC Design Engineering, by Benson, 28 Apr. 1972.*
Potate, John, NASA Office of Manned Space Flight, by Benson, Faherty, and Ray, 25 May 1972.
Potter, John, KSC Design Engineering, Field Engineering Off., by Benson, 24 Oct. 1973.
Preston, G. Merritt, KSC Manager, Shuttle Project, by Benson and Faherty, 12 Dec. 1973, by Benson, 22 Jan. 1974.*
Proffitt, Richard C., KSC Spacecraft Ops., Launch Complex 39, by John Marshall, 1 Dec. 1970; by Faherty, 20 June 1974.

Ragusa, James, KSC, Off. of the Dep. Director, by Benson, 11 Sept. 1974.*

Redfield, Marvin, NASA Hqs., Advanced Development, by Benson, Faherty, and Ray, 25 May 1972.

Reyes, Raul Ernest, KSC Spacecraft Ops. Preflight, by Faherty, 19 Jan., 3 June, 30 Oct. 1973, 24 June 1974.

Renaud, Fred, KSC, Bendix Launch Support, by Faherty, 4 Apr., 16 May 1973.

Richard, Ludie, MSFC Dep. Dir., Science and Engineering, by Benson, 12 Dec. 1973,* 30 Oct. 1974.

Rigell, Isom, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., by Benson, 3 Dec. 1973.*

Roberts, John T., KSC Design Engineering, Utilities Sec., by Benson, 1 Nov. 1973.*

Rosen, Milton W., NASA Hqs., by Barton Hacker and Eugene Emme, 14 Nov. 1969; by Benson and Faherty, 25 May 1972.

Rowland, R. D., Asst. to the President, Hays International Corp., Birmingham, AL, by Benson, 25 July 1972.*

Russell, Labrada, KSC Installation Support, Librarian, by Benson, 15 Mar. 1973.

Sasseen, George T., KSC Spacecraft Ops., Engineering, by Benson, 26 July 1973,* 4 Feb. 1974*; by Faherty, 8 July 1974.

Scholz, Arthur, KSC, Boeing Aerospace Co., Field Ops. and Support, by Benson, 18 June 1974.

Seully, Edward J., McDonnell-Douglas Astronautics Co., by Faherty, 20 Apr. 1973.

Shea, Joseph, at Washington, D.C., by Eugene Emme, 6 May 1970.

Sherrer, Leroy, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops. Contractor Technical Management, by Benson, 25 July 1973.

Siebeneichen, Paul, KSC Community Relations Off., by Faherty, 29 Jan. 1973.*

Sieck, Robert, KSC Spacecraft Ops., Shuttle Project, by Benson, 4 Apr. 1974.*

Smith, Jackie E., KSC Spacecraft Ops., Experiments, by Benson, 4 June 1974.

Smith, Richard G., MSFC, Manager Saturn Program Off., by Benson, 29 Oct. 1974.

Sparkman, Orval, KSC Design Engineering, Mechanical Design, by Benson, 15 Dec. 1972, 13 June 1974.*

Sparks, Owen L., MSFC, Performance and Flight Mechanics, by Benson, 31 Mar. 1972.

Stringer, M. S., KSC Internal Review Staff, by James Frangie, 19 Dec. 1968.

Stein, Martin, URSAM Project Architect for LCC, by Covington, 8 Aug. 1969.

Thompson, John, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Checkout, Automation and Programming Off., by Benson, 7 Oct. 1974.

Twigg, John M., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Skylab and Space Shuttle, by John Marshall, 23 Nov. 1970.

von Tiesenhausen, Georg, by Benson, 29 Mar. 1972, 20 July 1973.

Wagner, Walter, KSC Apollo-Skylab Programs, Configuration Management, by Faherty, 7 Aug. 1973; by Benson, 21 Sept. 1973.

Walter, George, KSC Design Engineering, Structures, by Benson, 7 Nov. 1972, 26 Jan. 1973.

Walton, Thomas, KSC Design Engineering, LPS Systems, by John Marshall, 17 Dec. 1970; by Benson, 23 Jan. 1974.*

Wasileski, Chester, KSC Design Engineering, Facilities and Systems, by Benson, 14 Sept., 14 Dec. 1972.

Wedding, Michael A., Chief, Checkout Equipment Br., Automation—Spacecraft, by John Marshall, 11 Dec. 1970.

Wendt, F. Gunter, North American Rockwell Test Management, by Faherty, 18 June 1973.

White, James, KSC Design Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Design, by Benson, 9 May 1973.

Whiteside, Carl, KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Electrical G and C, by Benson, 4 Jan.,* 29 Aug. 1974.

Widick, Herman K., KSC Spacecraft Ops., LM and Skylab Test, by John Marshall, 15 Dec. 1970; by Benson, 23 May 1974.

Wiley, Alfred N., KSC Spacecraft Ops., by Benson, 31 Oct. 1973, 13 Feb. 1974.

Williams, Francis L., NASA Hq. Off. of Analysis and Evaluation, by Benson, 6 Apr. 1972.*

Williams, Grady, KSC Dep. Dir. for Design Engineering, by Benson, 29 Mar. 1973.

Wills, Tom, KSC Design Engineering, Mechanical Design, by Benson, 28 Nov. 1973.

Wojtalik, Fred, MSFC Astrionics Lab., Guidance and Control, by Benson, 30 Oct. 1974.

Yates, Maj. Gen. Donald N. (USAF, Ret.), by Faherty, 17 Sept. 1973.

Youmans, Randell E., KSC Launch Vehicle Ops., Test Ops., by John Marshall, 5 Feb. 1971.

Zeiler, Albert, KSC Design Engineering, Mechanical Design, by F. E. Jarrett and W. Lockyer, 11 Aug. 1970; by Benson, 24 Mar., 11 July, 24 Aug. 1972, 23 July 1973*; by Faherty, 24 Aug. 1972.

Page intentionally left blank

INDEX

Abelson, Philip, 146, 170
Acceptance Checkout Equipment (ACE), 360–64, 374, 379
Acceptance Test or Launch Language (ATOLL), 355–56, 467–68
Advanced Research Projects Agency, 2, 11–13, 20
Aerex, 189
Aeroballistics Division (of MSFC), 235
Agent, 94–95. *See also* Webb-Gilpatrick Agreement
Agnew, Vice President Spiro, 474, 481, 501
Air Force: and labor relations, 36, 303–04; MLLP role, 90; as NASA agent on Merritt Island, 94–95; Titan siting controversy, 98–104; and range safety, 185–90; Apollo agreements, 470
Air Force Missile Test Center (AFMTC), 3, 7, 19–20, 89, 157, 161. *See also* Air Force
Air Force-NASA Hazards Analysis Board, 73
Aldrin, Edwin, Jr., 471, 474–77, 527
Alexander, Col. William D., 224, 229
"All-up" concept, 148, 403
Altitude chambers, 267–68, 446–47, 495–96, 517. *See also* O & C Building
American Bridge Division (of U.S. Steel), 253, 257–60
American Machine and Foundry, 117–18, 273, 287, 335
Anders, William, 456–58
Apollo: document trees, 150; Range Safety Committee, 189; boilerplate, 191, 215; Review Board, 385, 394–96, 402; Mission Failure Contingency Plan, 395
Apollo missions:
  AS-201, 356, 362, 367–76
  AS-202, 379–80
  AS-203, 378–79
  AS-204, 384–87. *See also* Fire on AS-204
  Apollo 4; significance, 403–04, 435; stages, 405; delays, 408–09, 411–13, 427–28; tests, 413, 419, 421, 425; launch, 429
  Apollo 5, 435–37
  Apollo 6; site activation, 437; operations, 437–40; conflict with Apollo 4 checkout, 438; test problems, 438–39; pogo effect, 440–41
  Apollo 7, 447–49
  Apollo 8, 449–59
  Apollo 9: early plans for, 461; crew, 461; erection, 462; roll-out, 464; countdown, 465; lift-off, 466; automated programs for, 467–68; integration of tracking, 471
  Apollo 10, 470
  Apollo 11; crew, 471; lunar module, 472; testing, 473; roll-out, 474; fueling, 475; launch, 476; landing on moon, 475–77; Mrs. Lindbergh on significance of, 477
  Apollo 12; launch operations, 479–81; lightning strike, 481; lunar activities, 483; crew's return to KSC, 483–84; as cause of lightning, 484
  Apollo 13; weather restrictions, 485; automobiles burned in LOX fog, 485–86; CDDT, 485–87; trouble with LOX tanks during CDDT, 486–87; the measles, 488–89; accident and rescue, 490–91; accident investigation, 492–94
  Apollo 14, 494–97, 499
  Apollo 15; testing the SIM, 507–08; launch operations, 507, 515–16; checkout of the rover, 508–14; lightning strikes, 516–17; unauthorized postal covers, 520
  Apollo 16, 517–18
  Apollo 17, 525–26
Apollo program: three phases, 112, criticism of program, 144–46; flight schedules, 165, 325; Air Force safety requirements, 188–90; plans for spacecraft support facilities, 240–42; interface control documents, 323; automating spacecraft checkout, 359–64; budget cuts, 499–501; mission plans after Apollo 11, 505–06
Apollo spacecraft: contract requirements, 112; impacted by lunar module development, 183; dispute over facility criteria,

184; changing launch requirements, 268; checkout, 359-64, 371-74, 425; built by NAA, 381; atmosphere in, 382, 397; comes to KSC for testing, 384-87; fire in, 391-94; Review Board's analysis of, 396-97; reentry, 403; flight plan for, 408; removal of, 411; illustration of, 414; modifications after Apollo 15, 517; problems with RCS force Apollo 16 roll-back, 518-19; stowage of equipment, 519-21
Aquarius, 490-91
Architectural award (1965), 231
Arming tower. *See* Mobile service structure
Armstrong, Neil, 471, 474-77, 527
Army Ballistic Missile Agency, 1-2, 11-13
Army Corps of Engineers. *See* Corps of Engineers
Arnold Engineering Development Center, 442
ARPA-NASA Large Booster Review Committee, 13
Arthur D. Little Company, 202
Ascension Island, 7, 89
Astrionics Laboratory (at MSFC), 349, 355-56
Astronauts: dispute over launch aborts, 186; opposition to Apollo destruct system, 189; stereotype, 443; work at KSC, 444-45; provide incentive for launch team, 456; health program after Apollo 13, 497
Atlantic Missile Range. *See* Cape Canaveral
Atlas missile, 8, 11
Atmosphere in spacecraft, 382, 397
Atwood, John Leland, 383, 400
Automation, 62, 342, 347-64, 374-75, 528
Automation Board (of MSFC), 349
Automation Office (of KSC), 355-56
Azusa, 57 n, 469
Azzarelli Construction Co., 266

Babbitt, Donald O., 391-92
Bagnulo, Col. Aldo, 320, 333, 366
Bahamas Long Range Proving Ground Agreement, 7
Ball, Edward, 304
Baron, Thomas R., 387-89
Bean, Alan, 483, 780
"Beat-Beat," 45, 57
Beech Aircraft Corp., 486, 492-94
Bellcomm, Inc., 361
Bendix Corp.: Saturn I ground support, 219; wins MILA support contract, 245-56; and crawler, 273; completes service-mast cables, 335; practice runs with crawler and MSS, 343; Apollo 17 roll-out, 523
Berkner, Lloyd, 145
Berry, Dr. Charles, 488
Bertram, Emil, 186. *See also* Crew Safety Panel
Beta cloth, 400
Bethpage. *See* Grumman Aircraft
Bidgood, Col. Clarence: cautions against building too much flexibility into VAB, 127-28; LC-39 siting controversy, 129; head of LOC's construction, 138, 140-41; problem of getting money on schedule, 160; VAB planning, 223, 229
Black, Dugald, 161, 361
"Black box," 216
Blount Brothers Construction Co.: LC-37 construction, 203; VAB contract, 253; pile driving, 254; CIF construction, 268; crawlerway, 277; pads, 288
Boeing Co.: selected as prime contractor for Saturn S-I stage, 111; and site activation, 320-22, 437; interface control documents, 324; TIE contract, 401-02; and pogo effect, 454; contribution of, 466, 474; Apollo 14 operations, 495; construction of lunar rover, 509; lunar rover testing, 509-14; Apollo 16 operations, 518
Booz, Allen and Hamilton, 285
Borman, Frank: on Apollo review board, 395-97; Apollo 8 mission, 456-458
Boylston, Cliff, 283
Brandt, Willy, 445
Brevard County (Florida): and KSC expansion, 92; Mosquito Control District, 251; impact of Apollo program, 502-03, 529-30
Briel, Ernest, 123
Brown Engineering Co., 123-24, 283
Brownsville, Texas, 91
Brucker, Wilbur, Secretary of the Army, 12, 356
Bruns, Dr. Rudolf, 356
Buchanan, Donald: and LC-34 flame deflector, 34; background, 116; and launcher, 121; and crawler, 122; and crawlerway surface, 234; and crawler bearings, 328
Bucyrus-Erie, 118-21, 272
Budget (NASA), 78, 153-56
Building-block concept, 14, 148

Bumper rocket, 6–7
Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife, 107
Bureau of the Budget, 153–56
Burke, J. F., 157
Burn ponds (LC-37), 203

Cable accounting system, 322
Cape Canaveral: advantages of, 3–4; conditions in 1950, 4–7; lack of space, 65, 87; as launch area, 89, 92; name change, 148
Cape Canaveral Locks, 368
Cape Canaveral Missile Test Annex, 7
Cape Kennedy Air Force Station, 148, 187
Carlson, Norm, 373, 376
Carothers, R. Dale, 510
Centaur, 11, 205
Central Instrumentation Facility (CIF), 125, 166–67, 243–44, 271
Cernan, Eugene, 446–47, 471, 523, 525–26
Chaffee, Roger B.: previous experience, 381; test runs, 385; the fire, 390–94; death, 394
Chambers, Milton, 216
Chandler, W. O., Jr., 233
Chauvin, Clarence, 390–91, 475
Checkout, 52–60, 404, 408–09, 412–27. *See also* Tests, Saturn launches, Apollo missions
Childers, Frank, 388–89
Christmas Island, 3, 91
Chrylser Corp., 180, 219, 367, 379, 447
Civil Engineering Award (1966), 297
Clark, Raymond, 137, 320
Claybourne, Phillip, 122, 130
Clearman, William T., 122–23, 283, 317–18, 324
Clemens, William, 464
Cleo (hurricane), 216
Cockran, Harold, 515
Cocoa Beach, 308
Colby Cranes Manufacturing Co., 256, 265, 515
Cold War, 64, 499–500
Columbia Journalism Review, 443
Communications satellite, 3, 11
Community Impact Committee, 97
Compromise, 50
Configuration control boards, 323–24
Configuration Management Office (of KSC), 323–24
Congress, 528–29
Connell and Associates, 26–27, 120–21, 202–03
Conrad, Charles "Pete," 409, 480–84
Consolidated Steel, 196
Construction Coordination Group for Complex 39, 235
Construction of Facilities funds, 164–67
Construction workers (Building Trades), 300, 305
Contractors, MILA support, 244–46
Contracts, 180–81. *See also* Fixed-price contracts
Cooper, Gordon, 144, 186, 250, 360–61
Corn, Graydon, 485
Corps of Engineers, 10, 292, 334; purchase of Merritt Island, 97–98; selection of VAB architect, 222–23; and crawlerway surface, 234; awarding of contracts, 252–53, 256–57; crawler bearing, 328
Cortright, Edgar M., 492
Countdown Demonstration Test (CDDT), 426, 428. *See also* Tests
Cracked sleeve, 208–09
Cranes (in VAB), 229, 337
Crawler-transporter: early studies, 118–21; approval on Saturn transporter, 122; modeled after strip-mining device, 272; Marion Power Shovel to build, 272–76; leveling systems on, 273; "shoes" on, 274; road for crawler, 277; on LC-39, 288; wind-load factors, 292; escape from, 296; labor problem, 325–26; the bearing problem, 326–28; and launches, 403, 422; Apollo 6 roll-out, 439
Crawlerway, 169, 250, 274, 277, 279, 294, 326, 463–64, 474
Creighton, Col. Verne, 90
Crew Safety Panel, 186
Critical paths. *See* PERT schedules
Cronkite, Walter, 327–28
Crunk, Henry, 51
Cuban missile crisis, 194
Cumberland Island, 88–89, 91, 93
Cunningham, Walter, 444, 447

Daddario, Congressman Emilio Q., 167–68
Data reduction, 356–59
David Taylor Model Basin, 118–20
Davis, Edwin, 23, 34
Davis, Gen. Leighton: background, 89; requests transfer of Merritt Island property, 102; on possible duplication of NASA-Air Force operations, 105; on range safety, 187; waives requirements for Apollo destruct system, 189–90

Daytona Beach, 177

Debus, Dr. Kurt: background, 17–18; siting of LC-34, 19; recommends second complex for Saturn I, 30; and organized labor, 36–37; test philosophy, 45–46; SA-1 success, 63; landfill studies, 71–72; opposes Texas tower launch, 72; and studies of mobile concept, 75–76; concern about launch rates, 80; opposes planning for solid rockets, 80; briefs Seamans on mobile launch concept, 87; and need for more land at Cape Canaveral, 88; Apollo program at Canaveral, 92; space needs at Canaveral, 93; reasons for agreeing to Well-Gilpatric Agreement, 96; Titan siting, 100–01; early preference for a large transporter, 118; defends mobile concept before congressional subcommittee, 127; and launch operations at Cape Canaveral, 133–37; defends KSC FY 63 budget, 158–62; complains of slow funding, 164; and GE's integration role, 177; relations with MSFC, 181–82; views on range safety, 188; opposes Apollo destruct requirement, 189–90; and Cuban missile crisis, 194; request for LC-37, 196–98; briefs congressmen on "blind" flange error, 212; and MILA support contractors, 245; VAB topping-out ceremony, 269; formal opening of Headquarters building, 269; competitive bidding, 272; discusses swing-arm contract, 285; consults Corps of Engineers on swing arms, 292; views on strike at KSC, 306; and Saturn automation, 348, 358–59; KSC reorganization (1966), 377–78; invokes Apollo Mission Failure Contingency Plan, 395; testifies before House Committee on Science and Astronautics, 398–99; and GAO Audit, 431 ff; difficulty with Apollo operations, 451–52; and Apollo 8, 454; significance of Apollo 8, 459; return of Apollo 12 crew, 483; investigation of cars burning in LOX fog, 486; reductions in KSC manpower, 502–03

Debus-Davis Study: purpose, 80; ground rules, 81; NASA-Air Force relations, 82; analysis of, 89–93; key fiscal document, 157

Deese, James H., 19–23, 72, 224

Delco Electronics (General Motors), 509

Development Operations Division (of ABMA), 2, 11, 14, 29–30

Digital data acquisition system, 350–51, 373

Digital events evaluator, 350–51

Dispenette, William, 472

Display consoles, 233

Documentation panel, 179

Dodd, R. P., 21–23, 223

Dogleg technique, 3

Donnelly, Paul, 374–75, 428, 456

Doppler Velocity and Position (DOVAP), 45n

Douglas Aircraft Company: mobile concept study, 77; selected for S-IV stage, 111, 180, 205; disagreement over propellant loading, 181; Saturn I operations, 208, 219; Saturn IB operations, 368–69, 379; Saturn V operations, 405, 419

Downey, NAA plant at, 384–85. *See also* North American Aviation

Downs, Bradley, 130

Dryden, Hugh, 93

DuBridge, Dr. Lee A., 500

Duke, Charles M., 164, 488, 522

Dunlap, Frederick L., 164

Dunmeyer, Bruce, 463–64

Duren, O. K., 118

Dyal, Stanley, 431

Dyna Soar, 14

Eagle, 476–77

Earle, M. Mack, 117

Earth-orbital rendezvous, 129

Earthshine, 477

Eastern Test Range, 187–90

Eisele, Donn, 444, 447

Eisenhower, President Dwight D.: fiscal conservatism delays Saturn, 2; transfers Saturn to NASA, 13; gives Saturn DX rating and additional funds, 14; transfers von Braun team to NASA, 14–15; criticism of Apollo, 170

Electrical Engineering Guidance and Control Office (MFL), 44

Electrical support equipment, 330, 333, 351–52, 374–75. *See also* Ground support equipment

Employment problems at KSC, 263, 502–03

Enlow, Roger, 339

Environmental control system (LC-39), 237–38, 288, 436–38

Equatorial launch sites, 3

Equipment records system, 319

Equipment Tracking Group, 323

Ets-Hokin-Galvin, 196
Evans, Ronald, 523
Experiments Section (KSC), 507-08, 523
Explorer 1, 1-2
Explosive hazards, 19, 25

Facilities Vertical Assembly Task Group, 125-26
False Cape, 88-89
Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service, 302
Finley, Col. G. A., 253
Finn, James, 251
Fire on AS-204, 390-95, 399, 528
Firing Rooms, 425, 471. *See also* Launch control center
Fixed-price contracts, 272, 285
Flame deflector, 24, 32-34, 235-36, 296-97
Flame trench, 288. *See also* Launch pad
Fleming Committee, 79-81
Fletcher, James, 524
Flight Instrumentation Planning and Analysis Group (LOD), 357
Flight readiness review (Apollo 6), 439
Florida: mosquito control, 251; labor situation, 299
Florida East Coast Railroad, 303, 306
Florida Operations Division: as a part of MSC, 140; work force as of October 1964, 263; occupies O & C Building, 268; brought under KSC, 270; development of ACE, 361-62
Fluid test complex, 242
F-1 engine, 78, 109-11
Franchi Construction Co., 268
Fulbright, Sen. William, 171
Fulton, Congressman James, 398
Future Launch Systems Study Office, 75-76
Future Projects Office (MSFC), 67

Gahagan Dredging Co., 203, 247-50, 277, 288, 333
Gantry, 6. *See also* Service support tower
Gas converter-compressors, 277, 279
Gemini Program, 111, 161, 167
General Electric Company: proposed Apollo role, 173-76; opposition to G. E. contract, 176-77; lightning protection study, 295; computer used for data reduction, 357-58; develops ACE, 361-62; contribution, 466
Genesis, 457
George A. Fuller Co., 277
Gerstenzang, N., 223-24
Gibbs, Asa, 71-72, 90, 93
Giffels and Rossetti, 234-36
Gilpatrick, Roswell, 89, 94-95
Gilruth, Dr. Robert, 111-12, 178
Glennan, Dr. T. Keith, 12, 14
Goddard Space Flight Center, 140, 469, 470, 511
Goett, Harry J., 12
Goldman (S. I.) Co., 266
Golovin, Nicolas, 110
Gordon, Richard, 409, 480, 485
Gore, Robert, 215
Gorman, Harry H., 134-35
Gorman, Robert, 44, 250-51
Gould, Lt. Col. Harold A., 167-69
Government Accounting Office (GAO), 131, 431-434
Grammer, Russell, 139
Grand Bahamas Bank, 7
Grand Turk Island, 7
Greenfield, Terry, 216
Greenglass, Bertram, 157
Griffith, William G., 118-20
Grissom, Virgil I. (Gus): Gemini flight, 345; other experience, 381; anticipates accidents, 382; test runs, 385; the fire, 390-94; death, 394
Ground Equipment Test Sets (GETS), 366, 369
Ground safety zone, 19
Ground support equipment, 23, 30-34, 85, 317, 319, 322, 436
Ground Support Equipment Section (of KSC), 211-12
Gruene, Dr. Hans: training, 44; opposes open VAB concept, 123; heads Launch Vehicle Operations, 140; and problems on LC-37, 206; recommends safety study, 289, 292; and Site Activation Board, 319-20; and 201 checkout, 366; and automation, 375; AS-201 launch, 376
Grumman Aircraft: LC-37 modifications for LM, 435-36; lunar module problems on Apollo 8, 451-52; Apollo 9, 466; Apollo 11, 474; Apollo 12 operations, 479; Apollo 13 rescue, 491; Apollo 14 operations, 495-96; LM modifications for last missions, 506; Apollo 15 checkout, 511, 515; Apollo 16 operations, 517-18; lunar module stowage, 520; Apollo 17

operations, 523–24; Apollo 17 slogan, 524, 527
Guidance and Control Division (MSFC), 56
Guided Missile Range Division, 238. *See also* Pan American World Airways
Guild (C.L.) Construction Co., 229
Gurney, Congressman Edward, 169

Hahn, Richard, 336
Haise, Fred, Jr., 475, 488, 490
Halcomb, Willard L., 285
Hall, C. J., 157
Hall, Charles, 30, 72, 196–98
Hall committee, 196–98
Hall, LTC. Richard C., 322
Hamilton Standard, 511
Hangar AF, 203
Hansel, John L., 388–89
Harrington, Jim, 517
Harris, Steven, 269
Hatch: inward-opening, 381, 391; and fire, 394; outward-opening, 397, 400
Hawkins, George M., 139
Haworth, M. E., Jr., 327
Hayes International Corp., 32, 283–86, 330, 336
Hayes, Gen. Thomas J., III, 230
Headquarters building, 268–69
Heaton Committee, 109
Heavy Launch Vehicle Systems Office (LOD), 72
Heavy Space Vehicle Systems Office (LOD), 122–23
Heimburg, Karl L., 50
Helium facility, 48
Hello, Bastian, 400
Hendel, Dr. Frank J., 382
Henry C. Beck Construction Co., 29
High-pressure gas-storage facility, 288
History of the Air Force Missile Test Center, 95
Holcomb, John K., 168–70
Hold-down arms: LC-34 design, 23–24; function of, 279, 286; designed by James Phillips, 286–87
Holland, Senator Spessard L., 106
Holmes, D. Brainerd: defends mobile launch concept, 127; proposes FY 63 supplemental request, 163; announces first flight schedule, 165; defines GE's integration role, 176–77; selection of MILA support contractor, 244–45; urges Debus to use competitive bidding, 277
Holtz, Robert, 345
Horizon, 11, 67
House Committee on Science and Astronautics, 158–62, 167–70, 384, 398
Houston, 112, 136, 183–85, 470, 511, 519–21. *See also* Manned Spacecraft Center
Huntsville, 1-2, 10, 17, 73, 110, 136, 138, 182, 403, 470. *See also* Marshall Space Flight Center
Hurricanes, 92, 261–63, 339, 343
Hypergolics, loading of, 465

IBM, 219, 355–56, 405, 466, 474
ICBM row, 8
IDECO, 26–27
Independent launch center, 134–37
Ingalls Iron Works, 281–82
Instrument unit (IU), 405–08
Instrumentation Branch (of Preflight Operations Division), 359–60
Integration, 173, 176–77
Intercenter panels, 178–79
Interface control documentation (ICD), 323–24
Intracoastal Waterway, 88
Investigations: LOX spill, 343–45; AS-204 fire, 394–400; lightning, 484–85; burning of patrol cars, 486; Apollo 13 accident, 491–95
Irwin, James, 514, 516–17

Jackson, Senator Henry, 103
Jeffs, George, 395
Jenke, Richard, 349
Jet Propulsion Laboratory, 469
Johnson, Harold, 359–60
Johnson, President Lyndon B.: renames NASA launch center in memory of Kennedy, 146–48; problems of funding Apollo, 154; signs FY 1964 NASA appropriation, 171; congratulations for SA-5, 214; visit in September 1964, 216; views Apollo 11 launch, 474; and funding for NASA, 500
Johnson, Roy, 2, 10–11
Joint Air Force-NASA Hazards Analysis Board, 87–88
Joint Community Impact Coordination Committee (Subcommittee on Mosquito Control), 251

Joint Facilities Planning Group, 238
Joint Instrumentation Planning Group, 242
Joint Long Range Proving Ground Division, 7
Joint Report on Facilities and Resources Required at Launch Sites to Support NASA Manned Lunar Landing Program, 80–83. *See also* Debus-Davis Study
Jones, "Hurricane," 263
Joralan, Albert, 379
J-2 engine, 405, 441–43
Juno V, 1 n
Jupiter, 2, 24 n

Kaiser Steel Corp., 27
Kansas, University of, 523
Kapryan, Walter J.: background, 480; Apollo 12 lightning strike, 482–83; Apollo 14 launch, 499; maintains morale during layoffs, 503; lightning delays, Apollo 15, 516–17; Apollo 16 roll-back, 518–19; problem during Apollo 17 countdown, 525–26
Kearns, Oliver, 303, 307
Kennedy, President John F.: Berlin callup of USAR, 64; proposed joint U.S.-USSR effort in space, 145; visit to Canaveral, 146; suggests U.S.-Soviet cooperation in space, 171; assassination's impact on SA-5 checkout, 209; speech at Rice University, 252; and labor relations, 301, 304
Kennedy, John F., Space Center (KSC): name change, 146–48; reorganization of, 149; dispute over Apollo destruct system, 188–90; work force (1964), 263; civil service force (1965), 270; and crawler, 272; launch pads, 272; and untested service arms, 286; construction of, 287–88; and mobile launcher, 292; lightning danger, 294–95; labor problems, 299; review of AS-201 problems, 374; 1966 reorganization, 377–78; Apollo 8 problems, 449–55; KSC-contractor relations, 466; Apollo 13 accident, 490–91; Apollo 13 investigation, 492; budget cuts after Apollo 11, 499–501; impact of budget cuts on work force, 502–03; Apollo 16 roll-back, 518–19; teamwork, 527
Kerr, Senator Robert, 97
King, John W., 430
King's Bay Ammunition Facility, 88
Knothe, Dr. Adolf, 188–89
Koehring, Philip, 272, 328
Koelle, Herman, 11, 67–68
Kolesa, Edward, 273
Kraft, Christopher C., Jr., 189, 453–54

Labor relations: LC-34, 36; jurisdictional issues, 36–37; labor problems at KSC, 299–303; strikes, 303–08; in retrospect, 530
Langley Research Center, 77
Launch aborts, 185–86
Launch complex 34: disagreement over siting, 19–20; criteria, 20; design for launch control center, 20–21; launch umbilical tower, 21–23; service structure, 21–23, 26–27, 30; propellant facilities, 21, 24–26, 31–32; plans for assembly and checkout of Saturn, 26–27; increased funding, 29–30; blockhouse construction, 30; flame deflectors, 32–33; increasing cost and construction priorities, 34; labor disputes on, 36–37; construction and formal dedication, 37; projected launch rates as of 1960, 67–68; provisions for launch abort, 185–86; automated checkout, 350–52; modifications for IB, 365–67; problems with IB, 369–76; operations, 379–80; disaster at, 390–94
Launch complex 37: origins, 30; rising costs and construction priorities, 34; projected launch rates as of 1960, 68; impact on Debus-Davis Report, 94; and Titan overflights, 100; proposed siting and estimated cost, 198; request for a second pad, 202; contrasted with LC-34, 203; facilities verification for LM, 435–36
Launch complex 39: Titan-Saturn siting controversy, 100; fixed launch facilities recommended by Connell and Associates, 115; FY 63 budget request, 158; target date for completion, as of March 1962, 159; construction money arrives at LOC, 165; estimated cost for design and engineering, 169; construction schedules (May 1963), 169–70; construction schedule, 253; construction, 260, 263; work force (Oct. 1964), 263; launch pads, 287–89; rumors of a sinking foundation, 333; operational problems with Apollo 8, 451–52
Launch control center (of LC-39): design of early centers, 7–8; early plans to include

center in VAB, 125-26, 164; design, 230, 260-61; automated checkout, 352-53
Launch Facilities and Support Equipment Office (LFSEO), 113, 116-17
Launch Information Exchange Facility (LIEF), 182-83, 526
Launch Operations Center (LOC): debate over authority, 133-37; role spelled out, 139-40; basic organizational structure, 140; FY 1963 budget (authorization), 162; FY 1963 supplemental request, 163; FY 1964 budget request, 166-67; relations with MSFC, 181-83; relations with MSC, 183-85; difficulty in securing spacecraft data, 184-85; disagreement over criteria for spacecraft facilities, 184; equipping the LCC, 233; selecting MILA support contractors, 244-46; mosquito control, 251
Launch Operations Directorate (LOD), roles and missions, 43; relations with MSFC, 46; offshore and landfill studies, 71-73; facilities planning with AFMTC, 157, 161; facilities budget for FY 1963, 158; disagreement with Douglas on loading of Saturn, 181
Launch Operations Division (Goddard Space Flight Center), 270
Launch Operations Division (of KSC), 480-81
Launch Operations Panel, 178-79. *See also* Intercenter panels
Launch Operations Working Group, 130-31
Launch pads, 163, 287-89
Launch rate projected as of 1960, 67-68
Launch readiness review, 520-22
Launch Support Equipment Engineering Division (LSEED), 138, 140-43, 233, 283
Launch Vehicle Operations Division (of KSC): test of LC-37B, 205; delays on SA-6, 215; operational problems of AS-201, 366-67, 373; problems with printed circuit boards, 379
Launch Vehicle Operations Division (of MSFC): reasons for establishment, 136-37; ties with Huntsville and Cape, 182; performance on SA-3, 194
Launcher umbilical towers (LUT), 163. *See also* Mobile launcher
Lehman, Gunther, 326
Life, 443-44
Lightning protection, 294-96, 516-17
Lilly, William E., 167-69
Lindbergh, Anne Morrow, 477
Line of sight, 8-10, 23
Lingle, Walter, 177
Ling-Temco-Vought, 245, 467
Liquid hydrogen, 406, 426
Long Range Objectives and Program Planning Committee, 12
Lore, Col. N. A., 528
Lovell, Bernard, 487
Lovell, James, 456-58, 488-90
Low, George, 12, 77-78, 452-53
LOX, 343-45, 404-06, 412, 426
LOX fill mast, 196
Lunar-landing plans, 67, 77-80
Lunar module: early development problems, 183-85; Apollo 5 operations, 435-37; and delays in Apollo 8 checkout, 451-54; goal of Apollo 9, 461, 466; Apollo 10, 471; Apollo 11 modifications, 472-73; Apollo 15 radar problems, 515
Lunar-module adapter, 441-43
Lunar-orbital rendezvous, 129
Lunar rover, 505, 508-15
Lunar-surface experiments, 526
Lundin Committee, 79, 109

McCafferty, Riley, 489, 499
McClellan Subcommittee, 301-02
McDivitt, James, 461, 471
McDonnell Aircraft Corp., 444
McDonnell-Douglas, 466, 474. *See also* Douglas Aircraft Co.
McKnight, James, 520
McMath, Daniel C., 56, 209-11
McNamara, Robert, 103
Manned Lunar Landing Program, 90-95, 129. *See also* Apollo Program
Manned Lunar Landing Program Master Planning Board, 238
Manned Spacecraft Center: established, 111-12; funding Apollo launch facilities, 167; relations with LOC, 183-85; regarding spacecraft servicing at pad, 184; dispute over Apollo destruct system, 188-90; spacecraft guidelines for VAB, 224, 229; astronaut training, 444-45; Apollo experiments, 519-20; spacecraft stowage, 519-21
Manned spacecraft operations building. *See* Operations and checkout building
Manned Space Flight Network, 470-71
Marion Power Shovel Co., 237, 272-74, 326-28

Mars, Charles, 491
Marshall Space Flight Center: designated by Eisenhower, 15; advocates earth-orbital rendezvous, 77; responsibility for Saturn V, 111; relieved of responsibility for Atlas-Centaur and Atlas-Agena, 139; relations with Saturn contractors and LOD, 181–82; dispute over Apollo destruct system, 189; testing of service arms, 286; late delivery of electrical support equipment, 333; construction of S-II spacer, 342; correcting Apollo 6 pogo, 441–42; corrections made for Apollo 13 pogo, 495; modifying Saturn V for final Apollo missions, 506–07; lunar rover modifications, 510–11
Martin Marietta Corp.: mobile concept study, 97; attempts to sell NASA on use of Titan II, 111; and Saturn C-3 and C-4, 112–13; recommends barge, 117
Master Planning Review Board, 138
Mathews, Charles, 451
Mathews, Edward R., 480, 501
Mattingly, Thomas K., 488, 522
Mayaguana Island (Bahamas), 91
Measles. *See* Apollo 13
Measuring and Tracking Office, 45
Measuring devices, 53
Measuring Group (LOD), 53
Mechanical, Structural, and Propulsion Office (of MFL), 26–29, 44
Medaris, Maj. Gen. John B., 1–2, 10–12, 27, 377
Medical Surveillance Manager, 497
Melton, Lewis, 137–38
Mercury, 11–12
Merritt Island: announcement of plans to purchase, 93; land purchase for Apollo, 96–98; Air Force tries to take title, 102; advantages enjoyed by absentee landholders, 105–06; problems in disposing of orange groves, 105–06; supporting crawler-transporter on marshy terrain, 233; master plan for LC-39 and industrial area, 238
Merritt Island National Wildlife Refuge, 107
Miami Herald, 63
Michoud, La., 111, 367, 404, 408, 479
Middleton, Admiral R. O., 433, 449, 479
MILA Planning Group, 142–43
Minimum intraline distance, 19
Miraglia, John, 303, 306, 307
Missile Firing Laboratory (MFL): experience at Cape Canaveral, 3; launch responsibilities at start of Saturn design phase, 10–11; established, 17; early planning for LC-34, 19–20; developing LC-34 criteria, 20–21; increased funding for Saturn, 29–30; initial plans for LC-37, 198
Missile Sites Labor Commission, 301, 306
Missiles and Rockets, 103
Mission Control Center (of MSC), 457–58
Mississippi Test Facility, 450
Mitchell, Secretary of Labor James P., 37
Mobile launch concept: automated checkout, 73; advantages, 73–74; at Peenemünde, 74; initial studies, 74–77, 85; elimination of horizontal transfer, 83; Debus-Davis Report, 83–85; initial plans for checkout, 85; lack of space at Cape Canaveral, 87; reasons for its approval, 109; the breakeven point, 113; critics of, 126–27; approved by Management Council, 128; comparison of costs for mobile and fixed facilities, 160; estimated pad time as of 1963, 169; proves efficiency, 471
Mobile launcher, 169, 271, 277, 279–84, 288–89, 292, 295, 412, 462
Mobile service structure, 271, 279, 288, 423–25; initial plans, 83–84; early studies, 128–30; converted to movable structure, 163; design problems, 185; built by Morrison Knudsen, 294; construction lags on, 330; practice runs on crawler, 343
Modes of transport, 116–22
Montgomery, Anne, 520
Moore, Arthur, 188–89
Moore, Robert, 130
Moran, Proctor, Mueser, and Rutledge, 223–24, 230
Morris, D. M., 134
Morrison-Knudsen Co., Inc.: wins VAB contract, 257; VAB construction, 260; contract for O & C building, 266; builds service structure, 294
Moser, Jacob, 359
Moser, Robert, 44, 49, 194, 208–09
Mosquito control, 250–51
Mosquito Lagoon, 4
Mouse on the Moon, 143–44
Mueller, George: background, 148, introduces "all-up" concept, 148–49; and Apollo destruct requirement, 189–90; reviews spacecraft for AS-204, 385–86;

Apollo 6 pogo effect, 440–41; plans for Apollo 8, 450; wholesale modifications, 451; leaves NASA, 479; defends schedule of lunar exploration, 501

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA): seeks control of Saturn, 12–13; relations with Air Force, 82; responsibilities on Debus-Davis Study, 89; position regarding authority and funding of MLLP, 90; interpretation of Air Force role as "agent" for NASA, 94–95; 1963 authorization act, 104; major reorganization of 1963, 149; asks LOD to review FY 1963 program, 162; views on crawler-transporter, 274; and service arms, 283; and mobile service structure, 289; and labor problems at KSC, 302; subcommittee on NASA oversight, 384; chooses crew for AS-204, 381; studies on cabin atmosphere, 382; and customer acceptance review of Spacecraft 012, 384; impounds everything at LC-34, 394; appoints review board, 394–97; Senate committee interviews officials, 400; inaugurates special procedures, 400–02; pogo problem, 442–43; declining budgets, 500–01; relations with Air Force, 530

National Labor Relations Board (NLRB), 304

National Wildlife Service, 107

Newswald, Ronald G., 382–83

New York Times, 499, 501

Nixon, President Richard M., 481, 483

Non-union workers, 305

North American Aviation: selected to build Saturn S-II stage, 111; proposals for Apollo destruct system, 187; late delivery of S-II stage, 335; gift to Petrone, 346; critical of ACE, 360; first use of ACE, 361; AS-201 operations, 371, 373–74; builds spacecraft, 381; and Phillips Report, 383–84; plant at Downey, 383–85; completes spacecraft, 384–87; Baron's complaints about, 388–90; and review board, 395; and congressional hearings, 398–400; changes personnel, 400; builder of second stage, 405; finds cracked gussets on S-II, 409; replaces wiring, 411; conducts tests of S-II, 413; Apollo 6 problems, 439, 442–43; Apollo 9 operations, 461; Apollo role, 466; Apollo 12 operations, 479–81; Apollo 13 LOX detanking problems, 486–87; Apollo 13 rescue, 491; Apollo 13 investigation, 492–94; Apollo 14 operations, 495–96; SIM checkout, 507–08; Apollo 16 operations, 517–19; Apollo stowage, 520; Apollo 17 operations, 523

Nova, 87–89, 127, 500

Ocean of Storms (moon), 479

Office of Launch Vehicle Programs (NASA), 77

Office of Manned Space Flight (NASA Hqs.): proposes a FY 1963 supplemental request, 162–63; proposes integration role for GE, 173, 176–77; name change for VAB, 264–65; and competitive bidding, 284

Office of Manned Space Flight Management Council: Saturn-Titan launch site controversy, 101; established, 111 n; approves mobile launch concept, 128; FY 1963 budget hearings, 158–61; FY 1964 budget hearings, 167–70; GE integration controversy, 176–77; LCC design, 230; and Apollo 9, 465

Offshore launch complex, 68–72, 91

O'Hara, Alfred, 379–80

"Operation Big Move," 269–70

Operations and checkout building (O & C): plans for, 240–41, 266–68; white room, 266; altitude chambers, 267–68; first occupied, 268; under way, 271; ACE complex, 362–64; astronaut training, 446; construction of SIM laboratory, 507

Ordnance storage building, 242

Ostrander, Gen. Donald R., 59, 75, 88, 202

Overflight, 8, 19

Owens, Lester, 31, 116

Pacific Crane and Rigging, 336–37

"Pacing item," 128, 408

Page, George F., 458

Paige, Earl, 486

Paine, Dr. Thomas O., 455, 489, 492, 501

Palaemon, 49–50

Pan American World Airways, 7, 244–45

Panel review board, 179, 323

Pantoliano, Thomas, 60

Parker, C. C., 155

Parry, Nelson M., 69, 72

Parsons, Walter, 359

Patrick Air Force Base, 7
Patten, Congressman Edward J., 168
Paul Hardeman, Inc., 257, 260, 266
Peenemünde, 74
Pegasus, 191, 217
Pendry, John, 269
Perini Corp., 257, 260
PERT schedules, 318–22, 329–35, 411–12, 418, 423
Petrone, Rocco: LC-34's helium facilities, 47–48; mobile concept briefing, 75; background, 82; Debus-Davis Study, 90; presents Debus-Davis Report, 93; reasons behind Canaveral selection for Apollo, 93–94; and title to Merritt Island, 103; defends mobile launch concept, 127; responsibilities as chief of Saturn project offices, 138; head of LOC's Plans and Projects, 140, 141; actions taken to control Apollo documents, 149–50; responsible for Apollo budgeting, 155; congressional briefing on FY 1963 budget, 158–62; opposes integration role for GE, 176; pushes use of Launch Operations Panel, 178–79; agrees to a mobile arming tower, 184; tardy spacecraft requirements, 184–85; problems with design of mobile service structure, 185; recommends TV coverage for tower clearance, 185–86; briefs newsmen on "blind" flange error, 212; initiates site activation, 317, 320; opposes delay in Saturn deliveries, 325; protests delays of electrical support equipment, 333; moves to launch operations, 345; gift from North American, 346; AS-201 operations schedule, 369; and Baron Report, 388–89; Apollo 5 operations, 437; Apollo 6 countdown, 446; Apollo 7 operations, 447–48; leaves Apollo program, 479
Phillips, Donald, 437
Phillips, James, 286
Phillips, Gen. Samuel, 404, 408, 461, 469; doubts about site activation, 317; configuration control, 323; announces Apollo schedule, 325; adjusts delivery dates for ESE, 333; reviews shortcomings of AS-201 operation, 374; questions NAA performance, 383–84; quoted, 429; Apollo flight plans, 435, 447; Apollo 6 flight, 441; Apollo 7's performance, 449; Apollo 8 plans and problems, 450–54; leaves Apollo program, 479. *See also* Phillips report
Phillips report, 383–84, 400
Phoenix study, 74
Pickett, Andrew, 52–53, 60, 209
Pierce, Harvey, 113–15, 121, 178. *See also* Connell and Associates
Pogo effect, 440–43, 451, 454, 495
Pompidou, President Georges, 445, 485
Poppel, Theodor, 31, 116, 138–42, 182
Porcher, Arthur, 69, 137
Poseidon, 409
Potate, John, 328–29, 330, 334–35
Preflight Operations Division (of MSC), 178–79, 359–64
"Pregnant Guppy," 205
Preston, G. Merritt, 184, 359–61, 369, 371
Price, Rep. Robert, 463
Printed-circuit board. *See* RCA 110 computer
Procurement office (of LOC), 245
Proffitt, Richard, 380
Program operating plans, 170
Project "High Water," 193
Project Stabilization Agreement, 301, 306
Promise, 368
Propellant facilities (of LC-34), 366
Propellant loading (at LC-39), 238
Propellant system, 462
Propellants Section (of LOD), 60–61
Propulsion and Vehicle Engineering Laboratory (of MSFC), 192–93
Proxmire, Senator William: attempts to amend NASA's FY 1963 appropriation, 162; proposes cut in FY 63 budget, 171; protests crawler contract, 272
Public Affairs Office, 139
Public Broadcasting System, 524
Putney, Ben, 269

Q-ball, 465, 524–25
Quality Division (of MSFC), 348, 355

Radio Corporation of America (RCA), 7
Radio frequency, 209–11
Range safety, 186–90
RCA 110 computer: selection for Saturn checkout, 348; Saturn I/IB checkout, 349–52, 354, Saturn V checkout, 352–53; AS-201 operations, 369, 372–75; problems with printed-circuit boards, 373, 379; Apollo 8 problems, 451
RCA Service Co., 245, 511

Records, Jack, 361
Redfield, Marvin, 131
Redstone Arsenal, 1 n
Redstone rocket, 2, 7-8, 10
Rees, Eberhard, 88, 135, 383
Renaud, Fred, 463-64
Republicans, 170
Research Steering Committee on Manned Space Flight, 12
Reyes, Raul Ernest, 389, 390, 514
Reynolds, Smith, and Hills, 121, 202-03, 281
Richard, Ludie, 348-49
Rigell, Isom, 372
Roads at KSC, 312
Roberts and Schaefer, 223
Rocketdyne division (of NAA), 192, 403-04
Rockwell International, 466, 474
Roosa, Stuart A., 494
Rosen, Milton, 93, 110, 126, 128
Ross, Miles, 480
Roth, Dr. Emmanuel, 382
RP-1, 404-06
Rubel, John H., 101
Rudolph, Dr. Arthur, 325
Russia. *See* Soviet Union
Rust Engineering, 186, 288, 292

Sacramento, 211
Saline, Dr. Lyndell, 361
Sanders Display System, 352
Sasseen, George T., 215
Saturn: origins, 1-3; uncertainty of early planning, 10-11; Army or NASA control, 12-13; studies, 13; transferred to NASA, 13; challenge for launch team, 18-19; clustered booster, 62, 191; propellant loading test, 192-93; dredging operations for barge canal, 247-50; telemetry links, 468-69; communications network, 469-71
Saturn concepts (C-1 through C-5), 14, 67-68, 78, 87-89, 109-11
Saturn launch vehicles:
  Saturn I, 41-43, 47, 52-63, 196, 203-05
  Saturn IB, 129, 349, 365, 367-69
  Saturn V; 1963 flight schedule, 253; automated checkout, 352-53; significance of, 403; components, 406 illus; tests, 413; stages, 427; modifications for lunar exploration, 506-07; Apollo 16 problems, 517-18
Saturn launches:
  SA-1; test catalog, 47; launch checkout, 52-61; modifications, 58; critics, 62; concern about sound wave, 62; countdown and launch, 60-63
  SA-2, 191-93
  SA-3, 193-94
  SA-4, 194-96
  SA-5: contrasted with block I Saturns, 205; launch date delayed, 205, 209; cracked sleeves, 208-09; checkout, 208-11; radio interference, 209-11; countdown, 211-12; liftoff and tracking, 212; successful flight, 214
  SA-6, 215-16, 349
  SA-7, 216-17, 350
  SA-8, 180, 219
  SA-9, 219
  SA-10, 219
Saturn stages:
  S-I, 49-51, 181, 205
  S-IC, 111, 189, 403-05, 517-18
  S-II, expected delivery at Cape, 335; use of spacer, 342, 345, 409, 437; description, 405-06; delay in arrival, 408-09; erection, 412; further trouble, 412-13; stacking, 414 illus; checkout, 427
  S-IV, 111, 181, 205
  S-IVB: contract, 111; description, 367-70, 405, 407 illus; objectives of AS-203, 378-79; arrival, 409; stacking, 414 illus; checkout, 427
Scheduling and Test Procedures Committee, 46-47
Scheller, LTC. Donald R., 317-20, 332-34
Schick, William H., 391, 399
Schirra, Wally, 444, 447
Schlenk, Barrett, 118, 272
Schmitt, Harrison, 522-23, 526
Scholz, Arthur, 509-10
Schweickart, Russell, 461, 471
Scientific data systems, 243
Scientific instrument module (SIM), 505-08, 523
Scott, David, 461, 471, 512 illus, 514, 516-17
Seamans, Robert: initiates Debus-Davis Study, 80, 89; requests acquisition on Merritt Island, 97; Titan-Saturn siting controversy, 101; agrees to Air Force purchase of additional land on M.I., 103; consideration of an independent launch center, 135; rules against FY 1963 supple-

mental, 163; approves initial LC-39 funding, 164; significance of SA-5, 214; rejects Pan American as MILA support contractor, 244-45
Seattle, 510. *See also* Boeing Company
Seelye, Stevenson, Value and Knecht, 223
Senate Committee on Aeronautical and Space Sciences, 398, 400
Sendler, Karl, 44, 129, 140, 242, 244
Service arms (swing arms): plans for, 130; significance of, 271; designed by Brown Engineering, 282-84; built by Hayes International, 183-86, 289; delay in delivery, 330, 333, 336-37
Service structure: early support tower, 6; of LC-34, 26, 365-66; of LC-37, 199, 203, 206; of LC-39, *see* Mobile service structure
Shapiro, Col. Leonard, 90
Silverstein, Dr. Abe, 13-14, 205
Simmons, Donald, 322
Simmons, Oscar, 270
Site Activation Board: organization, 318; early activities, 319-22; and 500-F tests, 324; progress of site activation, 334, 338-45; use of competition, 345-46; "second flow," 437
Skid strip, 510
Skylab, 485, 500-01, 505, 523-24
Slattery, Bart, 63
Slayton, D. K., 185, 384, 482, 489
Sloan, James, 176-77, 360
Smith, Richard Austin, 145-46
Smith, Stanley, 337
Snyder, Samuel, 71, 88, 96
Socio-economic studies of Brevard County, 308-10
Southern Bell Telephone Co., 245
South Point, Hawaii, 91
Soyuz, 524
Spacecraft Operations Division (of KSC), 372
Spaceport News, 261-63
Spacer (the "spool"). *See* Saturn S-II stage
Space Task Group, 501
Space Task Group (of NASA), 77, 111-12, 178
Space Technology Laboratory, 74
Sparkman, Orvil, 24-26, 181
Sparks, Owen, 69-72
Speer, Fridtjof, 356
Spellman Engineering, 339, 343
Spooner, Morris A., 97
Sputnik 2, 1-2
Stafford, Thomas, 446-47, 471, 482-83
Stewart, C. Q., 233-34
Stewart, Dr. Homer Joe, 12
ST-124 stabilized platform, 194
Stowage of equipment. *See* Apollo spacecraft
Strikes, 301-08. *See also* Labor relations
Strobel and Rengved, 230, 292
Studies: offshore and landfill, 71-73; Saturn launch concepts, 78-79; umbilical tower (at LC-34), 185-86; tower clearance (at LC-37), 199; service structure (at LC-37), 199-203; lightning protection, 295, 484-85
Styles, Paul, 303, 307
Subcommittee on Manned Space Flight of the House Committee on Science and Astronautics: hearings on Titan-Saturn siting dispute, 101-02; hearings on GE's integration role, 177; "blind" flange incident, 212; hearings on the 204 fire, 384, 390, 398-99; hearings on role of contractors, 466-67
Summard, R. H., 223-24
Sundt (M. M.) Construction Co., 277, 288
Supply, shipping, and receiving building, 241
Support arms (at LC-34), 23-24
Surveyor, 435
Swigert, John, 488-90
Systems Support Equipment Laboratory, 20, 23-26

Tail service masts, 286, 335
Tanner, Charles, 472
Teague, Congressman Olin: concern about Titan siting, 101-02; conducts hearing on FY 1963, 158-62; conducts hearing on fire, 390, 399; conducts hearing on contractors, 466-67
Technical Planning and Scheduling Office (of KSC), 217
Tedesko, Anton, 223
Telemetry, 403, 425, 428; Saturn I requirements, 41; SA-1's R-F links, 56; automating data reduction, 356-59; changes in, 468-71
Telemetry Group (of LOD), SA-1 checkout, 56-57
Tensions, familial and personal, 313
Terminal connection room (at LC-39), 237-38

Test Division (of MSFC), 49–50, 235

Tests: philosophy expressed by Debus, 45–46; catalog for SA-1, 49; RF compatibility, 58; countdown demonstration, 216–17, 374, 379, 426, 428; AS-201, 372–74; sequence for Apollo 4, 412, 421, 424; plugs-out, 425; flight readiness, 425; crew fit and function, 510–11, 517; C-band, 524; Q-ball, 524–25

Texas Tower, 68–73, 117

Thomas, Congressman Albert, 145

Titan, 11, 13–14, 98–101

Titusville, Fla., 97

Titusville *Star Advocate*, 97–98

Torus ring, 196, 219

Tower clearance, 199

Tracking Group (of LOD), 57

Tranquility Base, 476

Trans World Airlines, 245

Treib, Albert J., 270

"Turn-key concept," 155

Twigg, John, 369, 371–72

UDOP, 45 n, 57

Umbilical tower (of LC-34), 185–86

Umbilical tower (of LC-37), 202

Unionization, 299, 307. *See also* Labor relations

United States of America, 499–500

United States Steel, 267

Urbahn, Max, 253–54

URSAM: wins VAB contract and firms up design, 125–26; organization of combine, 222–23; initial VAB planning, 223–25; wins VAB design contract, 225; designing the VAB, 225–30; designing the launch control center, 230–31; crawlerway design discussions, 234–35

Usery, W. J., 308, 326

Vander Arend, Peter C., 344–45

Vehicle and Missile Systems Group (of LOD), 52–53

Vehicle Assembly Building (VAB): as described in Debus-Davis Report, 83; evolution of design, 123–26; four high bays (rather than six), 163; FY 1964 funding, 166; design requirements, 222–30; arrangement of high bays, 223–24; construction contracts, 225; windload, 227; air conditioning, 227–28; doors, 228; cranes, 229; foundation, 229; dredging operations, 247; pile-driving, 254–56; work-platforms assembly, 264, name change, 264–65; topping-out ceremony, 265, 268–69; changing requirements, 269; plans for, 271–72, 277–79, 281, 289; delays in readying high bay 1, 330; challenge, 528

Vibroflotation, 29, 203

Visitors at KSC, 313, 430–01

Von Braun, Wernher: concern about delay on LC-34, 48; initial planning for mobile concept, 76; proposes a fifth engine to Saturn design, 110; asks Martin for a study of Saturn C-4 launch requirements, 113; throws his support to LOR, 129; supports an independent launch operations center, 135; establishes Space Vehicle Board, 178; on the importance of intercenter panels, 178; relations with LOC, 182; approves a second pad on LC-37, 202; remarks on SA-5, 214; importance of automation, 347; establishes Automation Board, 349; reaction to success of Apollo 4, 429; Apollo 7's performance, 449; justification of LC-39, 527

Von Braun team, 1–3. *See also* Development Operations Division

Von Tiesenhausen, Georg: design for LC-34 holddown arms, 23–24; background, 69; offshore launch study contractors, 72, 78; initial studies of mobile concept, 75; comment on opposition to mobile launch concept, 113

Voskhod 2, 345

Voyager, 500

V-2, 6–7, 74

WAC Corporal, 6–7

Wackenhut Detective Agency, 467

Walter, George, 23, 118, 120

Walton, Thomas, 359–60

Wasileski, Chester, 31–32, 130

Watson, Nolan, 486

Webb, James: agreement on Merritt Island, 94; on purchase of additional property, 103; proposes change of NASA–Air Force relations, 105; selection of contractors, 245; approves KSC reorganization (of 1966), 378; sets up review board, 394; gets report, 395; plans for Apollo 8, 450, 454; significance of Apollo, 530

Webb-Gilpatrick Agreement, 94-96, 102
Webb-McNamara Agreement, 105, 140, 187
Weight and balance building, 241-42
Wendt, Gunter, 444, 475
Western Contracting Co., 27-29
"Wet tests," 47, 324-25, 367
Wever, Livingston, 68-69
White, Edward: previous experience, 381; test runs, 385; the fire, 390-94; death, 394
White, Jim, 57
White Sands Missile Range, 91
White Sands Proving Grounds, 215
Widick, Herman, 511, 514-15
Wilford, John Noble, 501
Wilkinson, Reuben, 53
Williams, Grady, 44-45
Williams, John (of MSFC), 185
Williams, John (of Spacecraft Operations Dir.), 480, 523
Wilson, Charles, 1
Wind loads, 199-202
Woods, Gary, 35, 60
Worden, Alfred, 516
Working-group panels, 130
Wyle Company, 339

Yates, Maj. Gen. Donald N., 19-20, 36 n
York, Dr. Herbert F., 12-13
Young, John D., 136-37, 377, 446-47, 471, 522
Young, R. P., 230

Zeiler, Albert: responsibility with early Redstone launches, 7-8; recommendation for LC-34 service structure, 26; background, 44; unfinished items on SA-1, 48-49; considers mobile concept, 75; favorable report on crawler, 121; study for LC-37 service structure, 199-202; SA-5 pad fire, 209

Page intentionally left blank

THE AUTHORS

Charles Dunlap Benson grew up in Winter Park, Florida, not far from Cape Canaveral's missile ranges. He attended Davidson College, earning Phi Beta Kappa honors and All-Southern Conference selection in football. After service with the 82d Airborne Division, Benson pursued graduate training at the University of Florida (Ph.D., 1970). His dissertation concerned roles and missions of the armed services after World War II. After completing *Moonport*, he was co-author of the official history of Skylab. In 1977 he was recalled to active duty in the U.S. Army as a major.

William Barnaby Faherty, S.J., was educated at St. Mary College (Kansas) and St. Louis University (Ph.D., 1949), where he is currently professor of history. He spent seven years in editorial work and seventeen years in college teaching before accepting the position of senior member of the research team of the University of Florida to work on the history of Project Apollo at the Kennedy Space Center. His eleven books deal with women's social position, regional and ecclesiastical history, and midwestern education. His historical novel, *A Wall for San Sebastian*, was adapted by MGM for a motion picture. *Wide River, Wide Land* deals with the Mississippi Valley during the Revolutionary War. His articles have appeared in the *Wisconsin Magazine of History*, the *Missouri Historical Review*, *Labor History*, and the *History of Education Quarterly*.

THE NASA HISTORY SERIES

Histories

Anderson, Frank W., Jr., *Orders of Magnitude: A History of NACA and NASA, 1915-1976*, NASA SP-4403, 1976, GPO.*

Byers, Bruce K., *Destination Moon: A History of the Lunar Orbiter Program*, NASA TM X-3487, 1977, NTIS.+

Corliss, William R., *NASA Sounding Rockets, 1959-1968: A Historical Summary*, NASA SP-4401, NTIS.

Ezell, Edward C. and Linda N., *The Partnership: A History of the Apollo-Soyuz Test Project*, NASA SP-4209, 1978, GPO.

Green, Constance McL., and Milton Lomask, *Vanguard: A History*, NASA SP-4202, 1970, GPO; also Washington: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1971.

Hacker, Barton C., and James M. Grimwood, *On the Shoulders of Titans: A History of Project Gemini*, NASA SP-4203, 1977, GPO.

Hall, R. Cargill, *Lunar Impact: The History of Project Ranger*, NASA SP-4210, 1977, GPO.

Hartman, Edwin P., *Adventures in Research: A History of the Ames Research Center, 1940-1965*, NASA SP-4302, 1970, NTIS.

Link, Mae Mills, *Space Medicine in Project Mercury*, NASA SP-4003, 1965, NTIS.

Rosholt, Robert L., *An Administrative History of NASA, 1958-1963*, NASA SP-4101, 1966, NTIS.

Sloop, John L., *Liquid Hydrogen as a Propulsive Fuel, 1945-1959*, NASA SP-4404, 1978, GPO.

Swenson, Loyd S., James M. Grimwood, and Charles C. Alexander, *This New Ocean: A History of Project Mercury*, NASA SP-4201, 1966, NTIS.

Reference Works

Aeronautics and Space Report of the President, annual volumes for 1975-1977, GPO.

The Apollo Spacecraft: A Chronology, NASA SP-4009: vol. 1, 1969, NTIS; vol. 2, 1973, GPO; vol. 3, 1976, GPO; vol. 4, in press.

Astronautics and Aeronautics: A Chronology of Science, Technology, and Policy, annual volumes 1961-1974, with an earlier summary, *Aeronautics and Astronautics, 1915-1960*. Early volumes available from NTIS, recent ones from GPO.

Hall, R. Cargill, ed., *Essays on the History of Rocketry and Astronautics: Proceedings of the Third through the Sixth History Symposia of the International Academy of Astronautics*, NASA CP-2014, 2 vols., 1977, GPO.

Roland, Alex F., *A Guide to Research in NASA History*, HHR-50, 2d ed., Nov. 1977, looseleaf, available from NASA History Office.

Skylab: A Chronology, NASA SP-4011, 1977, GPO.

Van Nimmen, Jane, and Leonard C. Bruno, *NASA Historical Data Book, 1958-1968*, NASA SP-4012, vol. 1, *NASA Resources*, 1976, NTIS.

Wells, Helen T., Susan H. Whiteley, and Carrie E. Karegeannes, *Origins of NASA Names*, NASA SP-4402, 1976, GPO.

---

*GPO: Order from Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

+NTIS: Order from National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 22161.

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1978 O—273-508